



**Maryland Stadium Authority**

**Request for Proposals**

**Testing and Inspection Services**

**Phase III – Ocean City Convention Center Expansion and Improvements**

**Issue Date: November 15, 2019**

**KEY INFORMATION SUMMARY SHEET**

**MARYLAND STADIUM AUTHORITY**

**Request for Proposals  
Testing and Inspection Services**

**Phase III – Ocean City Convention Center Expansion and Improvements**

**RFP Issue Date:** November 15, 2019

**Procurement Officer:** Yamillette Waite  
Maryland Stadium Authority  
351 West Camden Street, Suite 300  
Baltimore, Maryland 21201  
Office Phone: 410-223-4103  
E-mail: [ywaite@mdstad.com](mailto:ywaite@mdstad.com)

**Procurement Method:** Competitive Sealed Proposals

**MBE Participation Goal:** 10% overall

**Closing Dates and Times (Local Time)**

**Technical Proposal:** January 6, 2020 at 1:00 p.m., Local Time.

**Financial Proposal  
(Short-Listed firms only):** Details will be provided to short-listed Offerors only.

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**SECTION 1..... GENERAL INFORMATION**

**SECTION 2..... OFFEROR'S QUALIFICATIONS**

**SECTION 3..... PURPOSE AND SCOPE OF WORK**

**SECTION 4..... PROPOSAL SUBMISSION AND  
REQUIREMENTS**

**SECTION 5..... EVALUATION CRITERIA AND SELECTION  
PROCEDURE**

## SECTION 1

### GENERAL INFORMATION

#### 1.1 Summary Statement

The Maryland Stadium Authority (“MSA”) is issuing this Request for Proposals (“RFP”) to select a firm to provide testing and inspection services for the Phase III – Ocean City Convention Center Expansion and Improvements Project at the Roland E. Powell Convention Center in Ocean City, Maryland (the “Project”). The Project is located at 4001 Coastal Highway, Ocean City, Maryland 21842. MSA is engaging in the 30,000 square foot expansion of the existing exhibit hall space, construction of new support space to accommodate said expansion, making improvements to existing spaces within the facility, addressing the parking needs for the expanded facility, conducting HVAC modifications including, but not limited to, conversion of existing electric resistant heating to new hot water heating, new cooling towers, air handling units, centrifugal chiller(s), and associated pumps, and conducting a Life Safety Assessment in order to facilitate a building wide life safety upgrade.

The project is being designed and built under a guaranteed maximum price via the Construction Manager at Risk method.

#### 1.2 Abbreviations and Definitions

For purposes of this RFP, the following abbreviations and terms have the meanings indicated below:

- a. Architectural/Engineering (“A/E”)** - The team of architects, engineers, and other professional consultants required and assembled to perform architectural and engineering services, including design and construction administration services, on this Project.
- b. COMAR** - Code of Maryland Regulations (available at [www.dsd.state.md.us](http://www.dsd.state.md.us)).
- c. Construction Manager (“CM”)** – The pre-construction services and construction management firm engaged to perform those services for this Project.
- d. Consultant** - The Offeror selected under the requirements and procedures contained in this RFP.
- e. Contract** – The contract entered into between MSA and the selected Offeror. The Contract will include all general terms and conditions, and will incorporate the entire RFP, including any amendments and addenda to the RFP, and all or indicated portions of the selected Offeror’s proposal. A sample contract is attached hereto as **Attachment J.**
- f. eMMA** - eMaryland Marketplace Advantage (<https://procurement.maryland.gov>).

- g. Local Time** – Time in the Eastern Time Zone as observed by the State.
- h. MBE** –Minority Business Enterprise certified by the Maryland Department of Transportation (“MDOT”).
- i. MSA** – Maryland Stadium Authority ([www.mdstad.com](http://www.mdstad.com))
- j. MSA Business Hours** – 8:30 A.M. to 5:00 P.M., local time, Monday through Friday, excluding State holidays.
- k. MSA Procurement Policies** – MSA procurement policies and procedures (available at [www.mdstad.com](http://www.mdstad.com)).
- l. Notice to Proceed (“NTP”)** – A formal notification issued by the Procurement Officer that directs the Consultant to perform work and establishes the date on which the work is to commence on a project.
- m. Offeror** - An entity that submits a Proposal in response to this RFP.
- n. Procurement Officer (“PO”)** – The MSA representative responsible for this RFP. MSA may change the Procurement Officer at any time and will provide written notice to the Offerors of any such change.
- o. Project** – Phase III – Ocean City Convention Center Expansion and Improvements at the Roland E. Powell Convention Center in Ocean City, Maryland.
- p. Project Manager (“PM”)** - The MSA representative that is primarily responsible for monitoring the daily activities of the Contract and for providing technical assistance to the Consultant.
- q. Project Team** – The MSA, TOC, A/E, CM, and any other consultant/entity the MSA may engage to participate in the project.
- r. Proposal** - The submission provided by an Offeror in response to this RFP.
- s. RFP** - This Request for Proposals.
- t. Selection Committee**- The MSA and TOC representatives selecting the Consultant.
- u. State** - The State of Maryland.
- v. TOC** – The Town of Ocean City.

### **1.3 Contract Type**

The contract that results from this RFP will be for a not-to-exceed amount, which will include an Owner's contingency. The Owner's contingency will be used at Owner's sole discretion. The Contract amount shall not be exceeded without the necessary contract modification.

### **1.4 Contract Duration**

The term of the Contract will be for a period necessary to complete the scope of work and as agreed upon by MSA and the Consultant.

### **1.5 Procurement Officer**

The sole point-of-contact for purposes of this RFP is the Procurement Officer listed below:

**Yamillette Waite**  
**Maryland Stadium Authority**  
**351 West Camden Street, Suite 300**  
**Baltimore, Maryland 21201**  
**Telephone: 410-223-4103**  
**Email: [ywaite@mdstad.com](mailto:ywaite@mdstad.com)**

MSA may change the Procurement Officer at any time and will provide written notice to the Offerors.

### **1.6 Pre-Proposal Conference**

No pre-proposal conference will be held for this procurement.

### **1.7 The Project Manager**

The Project Manager is:

Matthew Bodt  
Maryland Stadium Authority  
351 West Camden Street, Suite 300  
Baltimore, Maryland 21201

MSA may change the Project Manager at any time by written notice to the Consultant.

### **1.8 e-Maryland Marketplace Advantage**

In order to receive a contract award, a vendor must be registered on eMMA. Registration is free. Go here to register: <https://procurement.maryland.gov>. Click on "Registration" to begin the process and follow the prompts.

## **1.9 Questions**

Questions regarding this RFP shall be submitted electronically in Word or PDF formats via the following link no later than **December 13, 2019 at 1:00 p.m. (Local Time)**:

<https://mdstad.sharefile.com/r-r1c415b2542c47f2b>

Please include information regarding the name of the firm, representative's name, and contact information. Based on the availability of time to research and communicate an answer, the Procurement Officer will decide whether an answer can be given before the proposal closing date. Answers to all substantive questions, that have not previously been answered and are not clearly specific to the requestor, will be provided via addendum.

## **1.10 Technical Proposals - Closing Date and Time**

In order to be considered, Technical Proposals must be uploaded to this link, no later than **January 6, 2020 at 1:00 p.m. (Local Time)**:

<https://mdstad.sharefile.com/r-r47c233d4d554aca9>

Requests for extension of this date or time will not be granted. Offerors should allow sufficient electronic transmission time to ensure timely receipt. Proposals received by MSA after the deadline will not be considered. Proposals will not be reviewed publicly.

## **1.11 Duration of Offer**

Proposals submitted in response to this RFP are irrevocable for **180 days** following the closing date for proposals. This period may be extended at the Procurement Officer's request only with the Offeror's written agreement.

## **1.12 Proposal Affidavit**

A completed Bid/Proposal Affidavit must accompany the Proposal submitted by an Offeror. A copy of this Affidavit is included as **Attachment A** of this RFP.

## **1.13 Contract Affidavit**

All Offerors are advised that if a contract is awarded as a result of this RFP, the successful Offeror will be required to complete a Contract Affidavit. A copy of this Affidavit is included for informational purposes only as **Attachment C** of this RFP. This Affidavit must be provided within 5 business days after notification of proposed contract award.

## **1.14 Procurement Method**

The Contract resulting from this RFP will be awarded in accordance with the Competitive Sealed Proposals process under Section 3 (C) of MSA's Procurement Policies. MSA's Procurement Policies are available for review on MSA's website at [www.mdstad.com](http://www.mdstad.com) or

may be obtained by contacting the Procurement Officer.

### **1.15 Arrearages**

By submitting a response to this RFP, an Offeror represents that it is not in arrears in the payment of any obligations due and owing the State of Maryland, including, by way of example only, the payment of taxes and employee benefits, and that it will not become so in arrears during the term of the Contract if selected for contract award.

### **1.16 Revisions to the RFP**

If it becomes necessary to revise this RFP before the closing date for proposals, amendments will be provided to all prospective Offerors that were sent this RFP. Amendments made after the closing date for proposals will be sent only to those Offerors who submitted a responsive and timely proposal.

Acknowledgment of the receipt of all amendments to this RFP issued before the proposal closing date must accompany the Offeror's Proposal as identified in Section 4. Acknowledgement of the receipt of amendments to the RFP issued after the proposal closing date shall be in the manner specified in the amendment notice. Failure to acknowledge receipt of amendments does not relieve the Offeror from complying with all terms of any such amendment.

### **1.17 Cancellations; Discussions**

MSA reserves the right to cancel this RFP, to accept or reject any and all proposals, in whole or in part, received in response to this RFP, to waive or permit cure of minor irregularities, and to conduct discussions with any or all qualified or potentially qualified Offerors in any manner necessary to serve the best interests of MSA and the TOC. This may be followed by submission of Offeror-revised Proposals and best and final offers ("BAFO"). MSA also reserves the right, in its sole discretion, to award a contract based upon written proposals received, without prior discussions or negotiations.

### **1.18 False Statements**

MSA incorporates by reference the provisions of Section 11-205.1 of the State Finance and Procurement Article of the Annotated Code of Maryland regarding truthfulness in the information included in the contract documents. Offeror shall comply with the obligations set forth therein, including, without limitation, the following:

- a) In connection with a procurement contract, a person may not willfully:
  1. Falsify, conceal, or suppress a material fact by any scheme or device;
  2. Make a false or fraudulent statement or representation of a material fact; or
  3. Use a false writing or document that contains a false or fraudulent statement or entry of a material fact.
  4. A person may not aid or conspire with another person to commit an act under subsection of this section.
- b) A person who violates any provision of this section is guilty of a felony and on

conviction is subject to a fine not exceeding \$20,000 or imprisonment not exceeding five years or both.

### **1.19 Minority Business Enterprise**

A minimum overall MBE subcontract participation goal of ten percent (10%) has been established for this RFP, with no subgoals. All subconsultants named by the Offeror as part of their MBE Schedule must be certified with the Maryland Department of Transportation (MDOT). Offerors' submissions must also include the MBE subconsultant's MDOT certification number as well as the North American Industry Classification System (NAICS) product and service description to be performed. The forms (with instructions) that are required for submissions in response to this RFP are attached hereto as **Attachment D**. The most up-to-date information on certified MBE firms is available on MDOT's directory: <http://mdot.state.md.us>. The Governor's Office of Small, Minority & Women Business Affairs has issued a Q&A regarding counting participation by MBE primes. Please refer to GOSBA's website: (<http://goma.maryland.gov/Pages/Contact-Us.aspx>).

### **1.20 Incurred Expenses; Economy of Preparation**

MSA and/or the TOC will not be responsible for any costs incurred by an Offeror in preparing and submitting a proposal, making an oral presentation, providing a demonstration or performing any other activities relative to this RFP. Proposals should be prepared simply and economically, providing a straightforward, concise description of how the Offeror proposes to meet the requirements of this RFP.

### **1.21 Protests/Disputes**

Any protest or dispute related to this RFP or a resulting Contract will be subject to Section 10 of MSA's Procurement Policies and Procedures and the relevant provisions of the Contract. MSA's Procurement Policies are available for review on MSA's website at [www.mdstad.com](http://www.mdstad.com) or may be obtained by contacting the Procurement Officer.

### **1.22 Access to Public Records Act Notice**

An Offeror should give specific attention to the clear identification of those portions of the Proposal that it considers confidential, proprietary commercial information or trade secrets, and provide written justification why such materials, upon request, should not be disclosed by the State under the Public Information Act, Title 4 of the General Provisions Article of the Annotated Code of Maryland. Offerors are advised that, upon request for this information from a third party, the Procurement Officer is required to make an independent determination whether the information may be disclosed.

### **1.23 Offeror Responsibilities**

The Consultant shall be responsible for all products and services required by this RFP. Subconsultants must be identified, and a complete description of their roles relative to the Proposal must be included in the Proposal. The Consultant retains responsibility for all

work to be performed by and any deliverable submitted by a subconsultant. If an Offeror that seeks to perform or provide the services required by this RFP is the subsidiary of another entity, all information submitted by the Offeror such as, but not limited to, references and financial reports, shall pertain exclusively to the Offeror, unless the parent organization will guarantee the performance of the subsidiary. If applicable, the Offeror's proposal must contain an explicit statement that the parent organization will guarantee the performance of the subsidiary.

#### **1.24 Patents, Copyrights, and Intellectual Property**

a) If the Consultant furnishes any design, device, material, process or other item that is covered by a patent or copyright or that is proprietary to or a trade secret of another, it shall obtain the necessary permission or license to permit MSA and/or the TOC to use such item.

b) The Consultant will defend or settle, at its own expense, any claim or suit against MSA and/or the TOC alleging that any such item furnished by the Consultant infringes any patent, trademark, copyright, or trade secret. If a third party claims that a product infringes that party's patent, trademark, copyright or trade secret, the Consultant will defend MSA and/or The TOC against that claim at the Consultant's expense and will pay all damages, costs, and attorney's fees that a court finally awards, provided MSA and/or The TOC: (i) promptly notifies the Consultant in writing of the claim; and (ii) allows the Consultant to control and cooperates with the Consultant in, the defense and any related settlement negotiations. The obligations of this paragraph are in addition to those stated in the next paragraph.

c) If any products furnished by the Consultant become, or in the Consultant's opinion are likely to become, the subject of a claim of infringement, the Consultant will, at its option and expense: (i) procure for MSA and/or The TOC the right to continue using the applicable item; (ii) replace the product with a non-infringing product substantially complying with the item's specifications; or (iii) modify the item so that it becomes non-infringing and performs in a substantially similar manner to the original item.

#### **1.25 Non-Availability of Funding**

If the General Assembly fails to appropriate funds or if funds are not otherwise made available for continued performance for any fiscal period of a contract succeeding the first fiscal period, the contract shall be canceled automatically as of the beginning of the fiscal year for which funds were not appropriated or otherwise made available; provided, however, that this will not affect the rights of the Consultant, MSA, and The TOC under any termination clause in the contract. The effect of termination of the contract hereunder will be to discharge the Consultant, MSA, and The TOC from future performance of the contract, but not from their rights and obligations existing at the time of termination. The Consultant shall be reimbursed for the reasonable value of any nonrecurring costs incurred but not amortized in the price of the contract. MSA and/or The TOC shall notify the Consultant as soon as it has knowledge that funds may not be available for the continuation of the contract for each succeeding fiscal period beyond the first.

## **1.26 Financial Disclosure**

The Consultant shall comply with Section 13-221 of the State Finance and Procurement Article of the Annotated Code of Maryland, which requires that every person that enters into contracts, leases, or other agreements with the State or its agencies during a calendar year under which the business is to receive in the aggregate, \$100,000 or more, shall, within 30 days after the aggregate value of these contracts, leases or other agreements reaches \$100,000, file with the Secretary of the State of Maryland certain specified information to include disclosure of beneficial ownership of the business.

## **1.27 Non-Exclusive Use**

Neither this RFP nor any resulting Contract shall be construed to require MSA or The TOC to use any Offeror or exclusively use the Consultant for the services described in this RFP. MSA and The TOC reserve the right to obtain services of any nature from other sources when it is in the best interest of MSA and The TOC to do so and without notice to any party. MSA and The TOC make no guarantees that it will purchase any products or services from the Consultant resulting from this RFP.

## **1.28 Sustainability Policies**

MSA is committed to procuring all supplies, services, maintenance, construction, and architect-engineer services in a manner consistent with the promotion of sound environmental practices. Moreover, MSA and the TOC have committed to certain environmental standards as more fully set forth in the Memorandum of Understanding, identified in this RFP in Section 3. All goods and services provided in response to this solicitation shall conform to those environmental standards.

## **1.29 Payments by Electronic Fund Transfer**

By submitting a response to this RFP, the Offeror agrees to accept payments by electronic funds transfer (EFT) for contracts exceeding \$200,000. A form will be provided to the selected Offeror.

## **1.30 Confidentiality**

Subject to the Maryland Public Information Act and any other applicable laws, all confidential or proprietary information and documentation relating to either party to a Contract resulting from this RFP (including without limitation any information or data stored within the Consultant's computer systems) shall be held in absolute confidence by the other party. Each party shall, however, be permitted to disclose relevant confidential information to its officers, agents, and employees to the extent that such disclosure is necessary for the performance of their duties under the Contract, provided that the data may be collected, used, disclosed, stored, and disseminated only as provided by and consistent with the law. The provisions of this section shall not apply to information that (a) is lawfully in the public domain; (b) has been independently developed by the other party without violation of the Contract; (c) was already in the possession of such party; (d) was supplied to such party by a third-party lawfully in possession thereof and legally

permitted to further disclose the information; or (e) such party is required to disclose by law.

### **1.31 Loss of Data**

In the event of loss of any MSA and/or the TOC data or records where such loss is due to the intentional act or omission or negligence of the Consultant or any of its subconsultants or agents, the Consultant shall be responsible for recreating such lost data in the manner and on the schedule set by the Procurement Officer. The Consultant shall ensure that all data is backed up and recoverable by the Consultant.

### **1.32 Non-Hiring of Employees**

No official or employee of the State, as defined in State Government Article, § 15-102, Annotated Code of Maryland, whose duties as such official or employee include matters relating to or affecting the subject matter of this procurement, shall, during the pendency and term of a resulting Contract, and while serving as an official or employee of the State, become or be an employee of the Consultant or any entity that is a subconsultant on said Contract.

### **1.33 Nondiscrimination in Employment**

The Consultant agrees: (a) not to discriminate in any manner against an employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, religion, creed, age, sex, marital status, sexual orientation, national origin, ancestry, or disability of a qualified individual with a disability; (b) to include a provision similar to that contained in subsection (a) above in any subcontract except a subcontract for standard commercial supplies or raw materials; and (c) to post, and to cause subconsultants to post, in conspicuous places available to employees and applicants for employment, notices setting forth the substance of this clause.

### **1.34 Contingent Fee Prohibition**

The Consultant warrants that it has not employed or retained any person, partnership, corporation, or other entity, other than a bona fide employee, bona fide agent, bona fide salesperson or commercial selling agency working for the Consultant, to solicit or secure a Contract, and that it has not paid or agreed to pay any person, partnership, corporation, or other entity, other than a bona fide employee, bona fide agent, bona fide salesperson or commercial selling agency, any fee or other consideration contingent on the making of a Contract.

### **1.35 Political Contribution Disclosure**

The Consultant shall comply with Election Law Article, §§14-101 to 14-108, Annotated Code of Maryland, which requires that every person that enters into contracts, leases, or other agreements with the State, a county, or an incorporated municipality, or their agencies, during a calendar year in which the person receives in the aggregate \$100,000 or more, shall file with the State Board of Elections a statement disclosing contributions in

excess of \$500 made during the reporting period to a candidate for elective office in any primary or general election. The statement shall be filed with the State Board of Elections: (1) before a purchase or execution of a lease or contract by the State, a county, an incorporated municipality, or their agencies, and shall cover the preceding two calendar years; and (2) if the contribution is made after the execution of a lease or contract, then twice a year, throughout the contract term, on: (a) February 5, to cover the 6-month period ending January 31; and (b) August 5, to cover the 6-month period ending July 31.

### **1.36 Verification of Registration and Tax Payment**

Before a corporation can do business in the State, it must be registered with the Department of Assessments and Taxation, State Office Building, Room 803, 301 West Preston Street, Baltimore, Maryland 21201. It is strongly recommended that any potential Offeror complete registration prior to the closing date for receipt of Proposals. An Offeror's failure to complete registration with the Department of Assessments and Taxation may disqualify an otherwise successful Offeror from final consideration and recommendation for Contract award.

### **1.37 MBE and Prevailing Wage Compliance System**

As part of MSA's commitment to assist firms in complying with legal and contractual requirements, MSA maintains a web-based MBE and prevailing wage compliance system. The system was designed to provide various workflow automation features that improve the project reporting process. This system will monitor contract compliance for all Program contracts. The prime firm, its first tier consultants, and all MBE participation subconsultants awarded contracts will be required to use the web-based system to submit project information including, but not limited to, certification of payments made and received and certified payroll records (if the contract includes prevailing wage and/or workforce development requirements). MSA may require additional information related to the contract to be provided electronically through the system at any time before, during, or after contract award.

### **1.38 Use of GovDelivery Platform**

Offerors agree to receive this procurement and other documentation associated with this procurement through GovDelivery and **to update any security settings to ensure delivery**. Proposals shall be uploaded via the upload link to Share File provided in Section 1.10 of this RFP.

### **1.39 Maryland Law**

This RFP and any subsequent RFPs or Contracts shall be construed, interpreted, and enforced according to the laws of the State of Maryland.

## SECTION 2

### **OFFEROR'S QUALIFICATIONS**

The Offeror's proposal should clearly and accurately demonstrate specialized knowledge and experience required for consideration for materials testing and inspection services. Proposals should provide straightforward, concise information that satisfies the requirements specified in this RFP.

The Offeror shall be able to provide testing and inspection services in accordance with the applicable codes and practices, including, without limitation, 2018 International Building Code, the Town of Ocean City Building Code, American Council of Independent Laboratories, and as specified in the applicable Project construction documents.

At a minimum the Offeror shall meet the following qualifications to be considered for award:

- a) Has been in business for at least 5 years;
- b) Is a firm licensed to operate in the State of Maryland;
- c) Has experience providing testing and inspection services including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Earthwork/soils
  - 2. Asphalt
  - 3. Erosion and Sediment Control
  - 4. Concrete
  - 5. Masonry
  - 6. Steel
  - 7. Roofing
  - 8. Fireproofing/Fire Resistant Materials
  - 9. Roofing

## SECTION 3

### **PURPOSE AND SCOPE OF WORK**

#### **3.1 Purpose**

The MSA is issuing this RFP to select a qualified Testing and Inspection firm to provide testing and inspection services related to the Phase III – Ocean City Convention Center Expansion and Improvements Project at the Roland E. Powell Convention Center (the “Project”), in Ocean City, Maryland.

The Offeror will contract directly with the MSA but will be required to work in close coordination with the Project Team. The Construction Manager (CM) for this Project is Barton-Malow Company. The Architect/Engineer for this Project (A/E) is the Becker Morgan Group, Incorporated.

#### **3.2 Scope of Services**

As part of the requirements outlined in the project drawings and specifications (see **Attachment F**), the scope of testing, inspection, and lab services may include, but is not limited to, the following disciplines:

- Earthwork/soils:
  - Soil density, soil bearing capacity, suitability of soils, asphalt compaction, etc.
- Environmental Conditions:
  - Erosion and sediment control compliance with MDE requirements
- Concrete:
  - Compressive strength, slump, rebar, moisture testing, floor flatness etc.
- Masonry:
  - Mortar, grout strength, cast stone, etc.
- Steel:
  - Visual inspections (connection, painting, etc.), specialized weld inspections (magnetic particle, ultrasonic, liquid penetration, radiographic), compliance with erection plans, bearing plates, nelson studs, etc.
- Roofing
  - Electronic leak detection of new roof prior to substantial completion
- Fireproofing/Fire Resistant Materials:
  - Intumescent paint and spray applied fireproofing.

Further, the scope shall include the following performance requirements:

- The Consultant shall provide qualified personnel to construction site, as required, upon 24-hour notice.
- The Consultant shall attend necessary onsite construction meetings as required by the MSA, CM, or A/E.

- The Consultant shall coordinate sequence of inspections with MSA and Construction Manager as to not delay the construction schedule.
- Inspections shall be coordinated and performed so the necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing & inspections is avoided entirely.
- The Consultant shall perform specified inspections, sampling, and testing of materials as required by the specifications for this Project.
- The Consultant shall prepare lists of uncompleted work, non-conformance reports, and notice(s) of deficiency(ies).
- Reports shall be submitted to MSA, CM, and A/E simultaneously within (1) day of site visit and/or completion of lab testing.
- The Consultant shall supply all field personnel with a direct means of communication and reporting protocols for its office and the CM/MSA.
- The Consultant shall be responsible for providing, storing, and protecting its own tools, materials, and equipment. This includes the provisions for concrete cylinder cure boxes.
- The Consultant shall comply with the CM's safety plan

The anticipated date for testing and inspections to begin is April 2020.

### **3.3** Schedule

The anticipated schedule outlining the current project timeline is attached (see **Attachment I**).

## SECTION 4

### **PROPOSAL SUBMISSION AND REQUIREMENTS**

#### **4.1 Submission – General Requirements**

Offerors shall submit proposals labeled “**Phase III - Ocean City Convention Center Expansion and Improvements - Request for Proposals – Commissioning Services – Volume I - Technical Proposal, or Volume II – Financial Proposal.**” All pages of each proposal volume must be consecutively numbered from beginning (Page 1) to end (Page “x”). The final page shall state “Final Page.”

Offerors shall submit the Technical Proposals by the due date and time set forth in the Key Information Summary Sheet, as revised by any addendum. Technical proposals must be uploaded electronically to the link provided in Section 1.10. **The electronic submissions (formatted as .pdf file) shall include the firm’s name in the file name and shall be formatted so each page can be printed in 8 ½ x 11.**

Upon receipt, the Selection Committee will review the Offerors’ Technical Proposals. Firms deemed as meeting all the requirements will be ranked and, based on the achieved rankings, selected firms will then be “short-listed.” Short-listed Offerors will be requested to submit a Financial Proposal.

Offerors must respond to all requirements identified in the RFP. Offerors who fail to do so will be deemed not reasonably susceptible of being selected for award.

#### **4.2 Volume I – Technical Proposal**

This section provides specific instructions for submission of the Offeror’s Technical Proposal. The Technical Proposal shall include:

##### **a) Transmittal Letter**

A transmittal letter must accompany the Technical Proposal. The purpose of this letter is to transmit the proposal to the Procurement Officer. The transmittal letter should be brief, and signed by an individual who is authorized to commit the Offeror to the services and requirements as stated in this RFP.

**b) Title and Table of Contents**

The Technical Proposal shall begin with a title page bearing the name and address of the Offeror, point of contact information (including e-mail address), and the name of this RFP. A table of contents for the Proposal should follow the title page. Information that is claimed to be confidential shall be clearly identified. **Unless there is a compelling case, an entire proposal** should not be labeled confidential; only those portions that can reasonably be shown to be proprietary or confidential should be so labeled.

**c) Executive Summary**

The Offeror shall condense and highlight the contents of the Technical Proposal in a separate section titled “Executive Summary.” The summary shall identify any exceptions the Offeror has taken to the requirements of this RFP and attachments (including the sample contract), acknowledge the receipt of any amendments/addenda associated with this RFP, and identify the tax identification number of the “prime” Offeror. The Executive Summary shall not exceed two (2) pages.

**Warning: Exceptions to terms and conditions may result in having the proposal deemed unacceptable or classified as not reasonably susceptible of being selected for award. If an Offeror takes no exception, the Executive Summary should so state.**

**d) Required Submission - Work Plan and Experience**

Section 2 (Offeror’s Qualification) and Section 3 (Scope of Work) of this RFP, provides Offerors with information on the desired outcome of this solicitation. At a minimum, Offerors shall address the following:

- 1) The Offeror’s organization and how it intends to complete the scope of work outlined in the RFP.
- 2) The names, titles, and resumes of key management personnel (staffing plan) directly involved with managing the work that will be required under the Contract.
- 3) Information regarding the Offeror’s experience and capabilities, including an overview of the Offeror’s experience providing testing and inspection services.
- 4) Offerors shall also identify any known subconsultants and/or joint ventures at the time of submission, if any, and the roles these relationships will have in the performance of the Contract. Upon MSA’s request, Offerors shall make available within 24 hours all Subcontractor/Joint venture scope of work documents and proposals.

**e) Other Required Submissions**

Offerors must submit the following items in the Technical Proposal:

- 1) A completed Bid/Proposal Affidavit (**Attachment A**);
- 2) A completed Conflict of Interest Information/Affidavit and Disclosure (**Attachment B**);
- 3) Capacity Summary Sheet for Key Management and Personnel (**Attachment G**);
- 4) Corporate Profile (**Attachment E**); and
- 5) Certificates of Insurance with the limits and coverage required in the Sample Contract (see **Attachment J**).

**4.3 Volume II - Financial Proposal**

**a) Required Submissions**

Upon request, short-listed Offerors must submit the following items in the Financial Proposal:

- 1) The Pricing Form included in this RFP as **Attachment H**. Using the Pricing Form (**Attachment H**), the fee proposal shall be broken down to illustrate the fixed fees per test and labor rates for each activity or category. Please note that the hourly rates identified in the pricing form are fully-loaded rates inclusive of all expenses and direct and indirect costs in connection with providing the services required under this Contract (e.g. overhead, travel, lodging, meals, mailing costs, printing, mailing, courier costs). The estimated hours and quantities included in the Pricing Form shall be a not-to-exceed amount for the tests and services for the Project. For the section related to test procedures, if the Offeror deems that these tests are already incorporated in the labor rates, Offerors can state N/A in the unit price field. Other than this exception, Offerors **MUST NOT** revise the quantities set forth in the Pricing Form.
- 2) An accurately completed and signed MBE Form D1- “MBE Utilization and Fair Solicitation Affidavit and MBE Participation Schedule.” Per COMAR regulation 21.11.03.09.C (5), failure to include and/or accurately complete this form shall result in a determination that the proposal is not susceptible for award.

## SECTION 5

### **EVALUATION CRITERIA AND SELECTION PROCEDURE**

#### **5.1 Evaluation Criteria**

Evaluation of the Proposals will be performed by the Selection Committee and will be based on the criteria set forth below. Technical criteria shall be given more weight than financial criteria.

#### **5.2 Technical Criteria**

Criteria used to rate the Technical Proposal includes, without limitation, the following:

- a) Adequacy of the Work Plan to provide the proposed services.
- b) Experience and qualifications of the Offeror and its key management personnel (staffing plan), with specific emphasis on similar projects.
- c) Past Performance and References for both the Offeror and its subconsultants.
- d) Quality of Submission.

#### **5.3 Financial Criteria**

All qualified short-listed Offerors will be given a score based on their evaluated financial proposal. The lowest evaluated financial proposal will receive the maximum score. The score for each other financial proposal will be determined on a pro-rata basis compared to the lowest evaluated financial proposal.

#### **5.4 Reciprocal Preference**

Although Maryland law does not authorize procuring agencies to favor resident Offeror in awarding procurement contracts, many other states do grant their resident businesses preferences over Maryland contractors. Therefore, as described in COMAR 21.05.01.04, a resident business preference may be given if: a responsible Offeror whose headquarters, principal base of operations, or principal site that will primarily provide the services required by this RFP is in another state submits the most advantageous offer; the other state gives a preference to its residents through law, policy, or practice; and the preference does not conflict with a federal law or grant affecting the Contract. The preference given will be identical to the preference that the other state, through law, policy, or practice gives to its residents.

## **5.5 General Selection Process**

- a) The Contract will be awarded in accordance with the competitive sealed proposals process under Section 3(C) of MSA's Procurement Policies.
- b) Prior to award of a contract pursuant to this RFP, MSA may require any or all Offerors to submit such additional information bearing upon the Offeror's ability to perform the contract as MSA may deem appropriate. MSA may also consider any information otherwise available concerning the financial, technical and other qualifications or abilities of the Offeror.
- c) MSA may hold discussions with any or all Offerors judged reasonably susceptible of being selected for award, or potentially so. MSA also reserves the right to develop a short-list of Offerors deemed most qualified based upon their Technical Proposals and conduct discussions with only the short-listed Offerors. However, MSA also reserves the right to make an award without holding discussions. Whether or not discussions are held, MSA may determine an Offeror to be not responsible or not reasonably susceptible of being selected for award, in its sole and absolute discretion, at any time after the initial closing date for receipt of proposals and the review of those proposals.

## **5.6 Award Determination**

Upon completion of all evaluations, discussions and negotiations, and reference checks, the Procurement Officer will recommend award of the contract to the responsible Offeror(s) whose proposal is determined to be the most advantageous considering technical evaluation factors and price factors as set forth in this RFP. The award is subject to approval by the MSA Board of Directors.

## **5.7 Contracts**

The Contract will be held by MSA.

## ATTACHMENTS

All attachments can be downloaded via the following link:

<https://mdstad.sharefile.com/d-sdea9a3b71134da9a>

- A. .... BID/PROPOSAL AFFIDAVIT**
- B. .... CONFLICT OF INTEREST  
AFFIDAVIT/DISCLOSURE**
- C. .... CONTRACT AFFIDAVIT**
- D. .... MBE INSTRUCTIONS AND FORMS**
- E. ....CORPORATE PROFILE**
- F. ....50% CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS**
- G. ....CAPACITY SUMMARY SHEET**
- H. ....SAMPLE REQUEST FOR FINANCIAL PROPOSAL**
- I. ....ANTICIPATED SCHEDULE**
- J. ....SAMPLE CONTRACT (to be issued via addendum)**
- K. ....EXPERIENCE FORM**

**Attachment A**  
**Bid/Proposal Affidavit**

## ATTACHMENT - Bid/Proposal Affidavit

### A. AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE

I HEREBY AFFIRM THAT:

I am the (title) \_\_\_\_\_ and the duly authorized representative of (business) \_\_\_\_\_ and that I possess the legal authority to make this Affidavit on behalf of myself and the business for which I am acting.

### B. CERTIFICATION REGARDING COMMERCIAL NONDISCRIMINATION

The undersigned bidder hereby certifies and agrees that the following information is correct: In preparing its bid on this project, the bidder has considered all proposals submitted from qualified, potential subcontractors and suppliers, and has not engaged in "discrimination" as defined in §19-103 of the State Finance and Procurement Article of the Annotated Code of Maryland. "Discrimination" means any disadvantage, difference, distinction, or preference in the solicitation, selection, hiring, or commercial treatment of a vendor, subcontractor, or commercial customer on the basis of race, color, religion, ancestry, or national origin, sex, age, marital status, sexual orientation, or on the basis of disability or any otherwise unlawful use of characteristics regarding the vendor's, supplier's, or commercial customer's employees or owners. "Discrimination" also includes retaliating against any person or other entity for reporting any incident of "discrimination". Without limiting any other provision of the solicitation on this project, it is understood that, if the certification is false, such false certification constitutes grounds for the State to reject the bid submitted by the bidder on this project, and terminate any contract awarded based on the bid. As part of its bid or proposal, the bidder herewith submits a list of all instances within the past 4 years where there has been a final adjudicated determination in a legal or administrative proceeding in the State of Maryland that the bidder discriminated against subcontractors, vendors, suppliers, or commercial customers, and a description of the status or resolution of that determination, including any remedial action taken. Bidder agrees to comply in all respects with the State's Commercial Nondiscrimination Policy as described under Title 19 of the State Finance and Procurement Article of the Annotated Code of Maryland.

#### B-1. Certification Regarding Minority Business Enterprises.

The undersigned bidder hereby certifies and agrees that it has fully complied with the State Minority Business Enterprise Law, State Finance and Procurement Article, §14-308(a)(2), Annotated Code of Maryland, which provides that, except as otherwise provided by law, a Contractor may not identify a certified minority business enterprise in a bid or proposal and:

- (1) Fail to request, receive, or otherwise obtain authorization from the certified minority business enterprise to identify the certified minority proposal;
- (2) Fail to notify the certified minority business enterprise before execution of the contract of its inclusion in the bid or proposal;
- (3) Fail to use the certified minority business enterprise in the performance of the contract; or
- (4) Pay the certified minority business enterprise solely for the use of its name in the bid or proposal.

Without limiting any other provision of the solicitation on this project, it is understood that if the certification is false, such false certification constitutes grounds for the State to reject the bid submitted by the bidder on this project, and terminate any contract awarded based on the bid.

C. AFFIRMATION REGARDING BRIBERY CONVICTIONS

I FURTHER AFFIRM THAT:

Neither I, nor to the best of my knowledge, information, and belief, the above business (as is defined in Section 16-101(b) of the State Finance and Procurement Article of the Annotated Code of Maryland), or any of its officers, directors, partners, controlling stockholders, or any of its employees directly involved in the business's contracting activities including obtaining or performing contracts with public bodies has been convicted of, or has had probation before judgment imposed pursuant to Criminal Procedure Article, §6-220, Annotated Code of Maryland, or has pleaded nolo contendere to a charge of, bribery, attempted bribery, or conspiracy to bribe in violation of Maryland law, or of the law of any other state or federal law, except as follows (indicate the reasons why the affirmation cannot be given and list any conviction, plea, or imposition of probation before judgment with the date, court, official or administrative body, the sentence or disposition, the name(s) of person(s) involved, and their current positions and responsibilities with the business):

---

---

---

D. AFFIRMATION REGARDING OTHER CONVICTIONS

I FURTHER AFFIRM THAT:

Neither I, nor to the best of my knowledge, information, and belief, the above business, or any of its officers, directors, partners, controlling stockholders, or any of its employees directly involved in the business's contracting activities including obtaining or performing contracts with public bodies, has:

(1) Been convicted under state or federal statute of:

(a) A criminal offense incident to obtaining, attempting to obtain, or performing a public or private contract; or

(b) Fraud, embezzlement, theft, forgery, falsification or destruction of records or receiving stolen property;

(2) Been convicted of any criminal violation of a state or federal antitrust statute;

(3) Been convicted under the provisions of Title 18 of the United States Code for violation of the Racketeer Influenced and Corrupt Organization Act, 18 U.S.C. §1961 et seq., or the Mail Fraud Act, 18 U.S.C. §1341 et seq., for acts in connection with the submission of bids or proposals for a public or private contract;

(4) Been convicted of a violation of the State Minority Business Enterprise Law, §14-308 of the State Finance and Procurement Article of the Annotated Code of Maryland;

(5) Been convicted of a violation of §11-205.1 of the State Finance and Procurement Article of the Annotated Code of Maryland;

(6) Been convicted of conspiracy to commit any act or omission that would constitute grounds for conviction or liability under any law or statute described in subsections (1)—(5) above;

(7) Been found civilly liable under a state or federal antitrust statute for acts or omissions in connection with the submission of bids or proposals for a public or private contract;

(8) Been found in a final adjudicated decision to have violated the Commercial Nondiscrimination Policy under Title 19 of the State Finance and Procurement Article of the Annotated Code of Maryland with regard to a public or private contract; or

(9) Admitted in writing or under oath, during the course of an official investigation or other proceedings, acts or omissions that would constitute grounds for conviction or liability under any law or statute described in §§B and C and subsections D(1)—(8) above, except as follows (indicate reasons why the affirmations cannot be given, and list any conviction, plea, or imposition of probation before judgment with the date, court, official or administrative body, the sentence or disposition, the name(s) of the person(s) involved and their current positions and responsibilities with the business, and the status of any debarment):

---

---

---

**E. AFFIRMATION REGARDING DEBARMENT**

**I FURTHER AFFIRM THAT:**

Neither I, nor to the best of my knowledge, information, and belief, the above business, or any of its officers, directors, partners, controlling stockholders, or any of its employees directly involved in the business's contracting activities, including obtaining or performing contracts with public bodies, has ever been suspended or debarred (including being issued a limited denial of participation) by any public entity, except as follows (list each debarment or suspension providing the dates of the suspension or debarment, the name of the public entity and the status of the proceedings, the name(s) of the person(s) involved and their current positions and responsibilities with the business, the grounds of the debarment or suspension, and the details of each person's involvement in any activity that formed the grounds of the debarment or suspension).

---

---

---

**F. AFFIRMATION REGARDING DEBARMENT OF RELATED ENTITIES**

**I FURTHER AFFIRM THAT:**

(1) The business was not established and it does not operate in a manner designed to evade the application of or defeat the purpose of debarment pursuant to Sections 16-101, et seq., of the State Finance and Procurement Article of the Annotated Code of Maryland; and

(2) The business is not a successor, assignee, subsidiary, or affiliate of a suspended or debarred business, except as follows (you must indicate the reasons why the affirmations cannot be given without qualification):

---

---

---

G. SUB-CONTRACT AFFIRMATION

I FURTHER AFFIRM THAT:

Neither I, nor to the best of my knowledge, information, and belief, the above business, has knowingly entered into a contract with a public body under which a person debarred or suspended under Title 16 of the State Finance and Procurement Article of the Annotated Code of Maryland will provide, directly or indirectly, supplies, services, architectural services, construction related services, leases of real property, or construction.

H. AFFIRMATION REGARDING COLLUSION

I FURTHER AFFIRM THAT:

Neither I, nor to the best of my knowledge, information, and belief, the above business has:

(1) Agreed, conspired, connived, or colluded to produce a deceptive show of competition in the compilation of the accompanying bid or offer that is being submitted;

(2) In any manner, directly or indirectly, entered into any agreement of any kind to fix the bid price or price proposal of the bidder or offeror or of any competitor, or otherwise taken any action in restraint of free competitive bidding in connection with the contract for which the accompanying bid or offer is submitted.

I. FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE AFFIRMATION

I FURTHER AFFIRM THAT:

I am aware of, and the above business will comply with, the provisions of Section 13-221 of the State Finance and Procurement Article of the Annotated Code of Maryland, which require that every business that enters into contracts, leases, or other agreements with the State of Maryland or its agencies during a calendar year under which the business is to receive in the aggregate \$100,000 or more shall, within 30 days of the time when the aggregate value of the contracts, leases, or other agreements reaches \$100,000, file with the Secretary of State of Maryland certain specified information to include disclosure of beneficial ownership of the business.

J. POLITICAL CONTRIBUTION DISCLOSURE AFFIRMATION

I FURTHER AFFIRM THAT:

I am aware of, and the above business will comply with, Election Law Article, §§14-101—14-108, Annotated Code of Maryland, which requires that every person that enters into contracts, leases, or other

agreements with the State of Maryland, including its agencies or a political subdivision of the State, during a calendar year in which the person receives in the aggregate \$100,000 or more shall file with the State Board of Elections a statement disclosing contributions in excess of \$500 made during the reporting period to a candidate for elective office in any primary or general election.

K. DRUG AND ALCOHOL FREE WORKPLACE

(Applicable to all contracts unless the contract is for a law enforcement agency and the agency head or the agency head's designee has determined that application of COMAR 21.11.08 and this certification would be inappropriate in connection with the law enforcement agency's undercover operations.)

I CERTIFY THAT:

(1) Terms defined in COMAR 21.11.08 shall have the same meanings when used in this certification.

(2) By submission of its bid or offer, the business, if other than an individual, certifies and agrees that, with respect to its employees to be employed under a contract resulting from this solicitation, the business shall:

(a) Maintain a workplace free of drug and alcohol abuse during the term of the contract;

(b) Publish a statement notifying its employees that the unlawful manufacture, distribution, dispensing, possession, or use of drugs, and the abuse of drugs or alcohol is prohibited in the business' workplace and specifying the actions that will be taken against employees for violation of these prohibitions;

(c) Prohibit its employees from working under the influence of drugs or alcohol;

(d) Not hire or assign to work on the contract anyone whom the business knows, or in the exercise of due diligence should know, currently abuses drugs or alcohol and is not actively engaged in a bona fide drug or alcohol abuse assistance or rehabilitation program;

(e) Promptly inform the appropriate law enforcement agency of every drug-related crime that occurs in its workplace if the business has observed the violation or otherwise has reliable information that a violation has occurred;

(f) Establish drug and alcohol abuse awareness programs to inform its employees about:

(i) The dangers of drug and alcohol abuse in the workplace;

(ii) The business' policy of maintaining a drug and alcohol free workplace;

(iii) Any available drug and alcohol counseling, rehabilitation, and employee assistance programs; and

(iv) The penalties that may be imposed upon employees who abuse drugs and alcohol in the workplace;

(g) Provide all employees engaged in the performance of the contract with a copy of the statement required by §K(2)(b), above;

(h) Notify its employees in the statement required by §K(2)(b), above, that as a condition of continued employment on the contract, the employee shall:

(i) Abide by the terms of the statement; and

(ii) Notify the employer of any criminal drug or alcohol abuse conviction for an offense occurring in the workplace not later than 5 days after a conviction;

(i) Notify the procurement officer within 10 days after receiving notice under §K(2)(h)(ii), above, or otherwise receiving actual notice of a conviction;

(j) Within 30 days after receiving notice under §K(2)(h)(ii), above, or otherwise receiving actual notice of a conviction, impose either of the following sanctions or remedial measures on any employee who is convicted of a drug or alcohol abuse offense occurring in the workplace:

(i) Take appropriate personnel action against an employee, up to and including termination; or

(ii) Require an employee to satisfactorily participate in a bona fide drug or alcohol abuse assistance or rehabilitation program; and

(k) Make a good faith effort to maintain a drug and alcohol free workplace through implementation of §K(2)(a)—(j), above.

(3) If the business is an individual, the individual shall certify and agree as set forth in §K(4), below, that the individual shall not engage in the unlawful manufacture, distribution, dispensing, possession, or use of drugs or the abuse of drugs or alcohol in the performance of the contract.

(4) I acknowledge and agree that:

(a) The award of the contract is conditional upon compliance with COMAR 21.11.08 and this certification;

(b) The violation of the provisions of COMAR 21.11.08 or this certification shall be cause to suspend payments under, or terminate the contract for default under COMAR 21.07.01.11 or 21.07.03.15, as applicable; and

(c) The violation of the provisions of COMAR 21.11.08 or this certification in connection with the contract may, in the exercise of the discretion of the Board of Public Works, result in suspension and debarment of the business under COMAR 21.08.03.

**L. CERTIFICATION OF CORPORATION REGISTRATION AND TAX PAYMENT**

**I FURTHER AFFIRM THAT:**

(1) The business named above is a (domestic \_\_\_ ) (foreign \_\_\_ ) corporation registered in accordance with the Corporations and Associations Article, Annotated Code of Maryland, and that it is in good standing and has filed all of its annual reports, together with filing fees, with the Maryland State Department of Assessments and Taxation, and that the name and address of its resident agent filed with the State Department of Assessments and Taxation is:

Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Address: \_\_\_\_\_  
(If not applicable, so state). \_\_\_\_\_

(2) Except as validly contested, the business has paid, or has arranged for payment of, all taxes due the State of Maryland and has filed all required returns and reports with the Comptroller of the Treasury, the State Department of Assessments and Taxation, and the Department of Labor, Licensing, and

regulation, as applicable, and will have paid all withholding taxes due the State of Maryland prior to final settlement.

M. CONTINGENT FEES

I FURTHER AFFIRM THAT:

The business has not employed or retained any person, partnership, corporation, or other entity, other than a bona fide employee, bona fide agent, bona fide salesperson, or commercial selling agency working for the business, to solicit or secure the Contract, and that the business has not paid or agreed to pay any person, partnership, corporation, or other entity, other than a bona fide employee, bona fide agent, bona fide salesperson, or commercial selling agency, any fee or any other consideration contingent on the making of the Contract.

N. Repealed.

O. ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

I ACKNOWLEDGE THAT this Affidavit is to be furnished to the Procurement Officer and may be distributed to units of: (1) the State of Maryland; (2) counties or other subdivisions of the State of Maryland; (3) other states; and (4) the federal government. I further acknowledge that this Affidavit is subject to applicable laws of the United States and the State of Maryland, both criminal and civil, and that nothing in this Affidavit or any contract resulting from the submission of this bid or proposal shall be construed to supersede, amend, modify or waive, on behalf of the State of Maryland, or any unit of the State of Maryland having jurisdiction, the exercise of any statutory right or remedy conferred by the Constitution and the laws of Maryland with respect to any misrepresentation made or any violation of the obligations, terms and covenants undertaken by the above business with respect to (1) this Affidavit, (2) the contract, and (3) other Affidavits comprising part of the contract.

I DO SOLEMNLY DECLARE AND AFFIRM UNDER THE PENALTIES OF PERJURY THAT THE CONTENTS OF THIS AFFIDAVIT ARE TRUE AND CORRECT TO THE BEST OF MY KNOWLEDGE, INFORMATION, AND BELIEF.

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_

(Authorized Representative and Affiant)

**Attachment B**

**Conflict of Interest Affidavit**

**CONFLICT OF INTEREST AFFIDAVIT/DISCLOSURE**

- A. "Conflict of Interest" means that because of other activities or relationships with other persons, a person is unable or potentially unable to render impartial assistance or advice to the State, or the person's objectivity in performing the contract work is or might be otherwise impaired, or a person has an unfair competitive advantage."
  
- B. "Person" has the meaning stated in COMAR 21.01.02.01B (64) and includes an Offeror, Bidder, Contractor, consultant, or subcontractor or subconsultant at any tier, and also includes an employee or agent of any of them if the employee or agent has or will have the authority to control or supervise all or a portion of the work for which a bid or offer is made.
  
- C. The Offeror/Bidder warrants that, except as disclosed in §D, below, there are no relevant facts or circumstances now giving rise or which could, in the future, give rise to a conflict of interest.
  
- D. The following facts or circumstances give rise or could in the future give rise to a conflict of interest (explain in detail—attach additional sheets if necessary).
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
  
- E. The Offeror/Bidder agrees that if an actual or potential conflict of interest arises after the date of this affidavit, the Offeror/Bidder shall immediately make a full disclosure in writing to the Procurement Officer of all relevant facts and circumstances. This disclosure shall include a description of actions, which the Offeror/Bidder has taken and proposes to take to avoid, mitigate, or neutralize the actual or potential conflict of interest. If the Contract has been awarded and performance of the Contract has begun, the Contractor shall continue performance until notified by the Procurement Officer of any contrary action to be taken.

I DO SOLEMNLY DECLARE AND AFFIRM UNDER THE PENALTIES OF PERJURY THAT THE CONTENTS OF THIS AFFIDAVIT ARE TRUE AND CORRECT TO THE BEST OF MY KNOWLEDGE, INFORMATION, AND BELIEF.

Date: \_\_\_\_\_ By: \_\_\_\_\_  
(Authorized Representative and Affiant)

**Attachment C**  
**Contract Affidavit**

**CONTRACT AFFIDAVIT**

**A. AUTHORITY**

I HEREBY AFFIRM THAT:

I, (print name) \_\_\_\_\_ possess the legal authority to make this Affidavit.

**B. CERTIFICATION OF REGISTRATION OR QUALIFICATION WITH THE STATE DEPARTMENT OF ASSESSMENTS AND TAXATION**

I FURTHER AFFIRM THAT:

\_\_\_\_\_ is a (check applicable items):

- (1) Corporation – \_\_\_\_ domestic or \_\_\_\_ foreign;
- (2) Limited Liability Company – \_\_\_\_ domestic or \_\_\_\_ foreign;
- (3) Partnership – \_\_\_\_ domestic or \_\_\_\_ foreign;
- (4) Statutory Trust – \_\_\_\_ domestic or \_\_\_\_ foreign;
- (5) \_\_\_\_ Sole Proprietorship

And is registered or qualified as required under Maryland Law.

I further affirm that the above business is in good standing both in Maryland and (if applicable) in the jurisdiction where it is presently organized, and has filed all of its annual reports, together with filing fees, with the Maryland State Department of Assessments and Taxation.

The Department ID given to the above business by the State Department of Assessments and Taxation is:

\_\_\_\_\_

The name and address of its resident agent (IF APPLICABLE) filed with the State Department of Assessments and Taxation is:

(Print name) \_\_\_\_\_

(Print address) \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

and that if it does business under a trade name, it has filed a certificate with the State Department of Assessments and Taxation that correctly identifies the true name and address of the principal or owner as:

Name and Department ID Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

**C. FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE AFFIRMATION**

I FURTHER AFFIRM THAT:

I am aware of, and the above business will comply with, the provisions of State Finance and Procurement Article §13-221, Annotated Code of Maryland, which require that every business that enters into contracts, leases, or other agreements with the State of Maryland or its agencies during a calendar year under which the business is to receive in the aggregate \$100,000 or more shall, within 30 days of the time when the aggregate value of the contracts, leases, or other agreements reaches \$100,000, file with the Secretary of State of Maryland certain specified information to include disclosure of beneficial ownership of the business.

**D. POLITICAL CONTRIBUTION DISCLOSURE AFFIRMATION**

I FURTHER AFFIRM THAT:

I am aware of, and the above business will comply with, Subtitle 1 of Title 14 of the Election Law Article of the Annotated Code of Maryland and all regulations promulgated by the State Board of Elections pursuant thereto, which provisions require that every person that enters into contracts, leases, or other agreements with the State, a county, or an incorporated municipality, or their agencies, during a calendar year in which the person receives the specified aggregate amount or more, shall file with the State Board of Elections statements disclosing certain contributions at specified times.

**E. DRUG AND ALCOHOL FREE WORKPLACE**

I CERTIFY THAT:

(1) Terms defined in COMAR 21.11.08 shall have the same meanings when used in this certification.

(2) By submission of its bid or offer, the business, if other than an individual, certifies and agrees that, with respect to its employees to be employed under a contract resulting from this solicitation, the business shall:

- (a) Maintain a workplace free of drug and alcohol abuse during the term of the contract;
- (b) Publish a statement notifying its employees that the unlawful manufacture, distribution, dispensing, possession, or use of drugs, and the abuse of drugs or alcohol is prohibited in the business' workplace and specifying the actions that will be taken against employees for violation of these prohibitions;
- (c) Prohibit its employees from working under the influence of drugs or alcohol;
- (d) Not hire or assign to work on the contract anyone who the business knows, or in the exercise of due diligence should know, currently abuses drugs or alcohol and is not actively engaged in a bona fide drug or alcohol abuse assistance or rehabilitation program;
- (e) Promptly inform the appropriate law enforcement agency of every drug-related crime that occurs in its workplace if the business has observed the violation or otherwise has reliable information that a violation has occurred;
- (f) Establish drug and alcohol abuse awareness programs to inform its employees about:
  - (i) The dangers of drug and alcohol abuse in the workplace;
  - (ii) The business's policy of maintaining a drug and alcohol free workplace;
  - (iii) Any available drug and alcohol counseling, rehabilitation, and employee assistance programs; and
  - (iv) The penalties that may be imposed upon employees who abuse drugs and alcohol in the workplace;
- (g) Provide all employees engaged in the performance of the contract with a copy of the statement required by §E(2)(b) of this affidavit;
- (h) In the statement required by §E(2)(b) of this affidavit, notify its employees that as a condition of continued employment on the contract, the employee shall:
  - (i) Abide by the terms of the statement; and
  - (ii) Notify the employer of any criminal drug or alcohol abuse conviction for an offense occurring in the workplace not later than 5 days after a conviction;

- (i) Notify the procurement officer within 10 days after receiving notice under §E(2)(h)(ii) of this affidavit or otherwise receiving actual notice of a conviction;
  - (j) Within 30 days after receiving notice under §E(2)(h)(ii) of this affidavit or otherwise receiving actual notice of a conviction, impose either of the following sanctions or remedial measures on any employee who is convicted of a drug or alcohol abuse offense occurring in the workplace:
  - (k) Take appropriate personnel action against an employee, up to and including termination; or
  - (l) Require an employee to satisfactorily participate in a bona fide drug or alcohol abuse assistance or rehabilitation program; and
  - (m) Make a good faith effort to maintain a drug and alcohol free workplace through implementation of §E(2)(a) through (j) of this affidavit.
- (3) If the business is an individual, the individual shall certify and agree, as set forth in §E(4) of this affidavit, that the individual shall not engage in the unlawful manufacture, distribution, dispensing, possession, or use of drugs or the abuse of drugs or alcohol in the performance of the contract.
- (4) I acknowledge and agree that:
- (a) The award of the contract is conditional upon compliance with COMAR 21.11.08 and this certification;
  - (b) The violation of the provisions of COMAR 21.11.08 or this certification shall be cause to suspend payments under, or terminate the contract for default under COMAR 21.07.01.11 or 21.07.03.15, as applicable; and
  - (c) The violation of the provisions of COMAR 21.11.08 or this certification in connection with the contract may, in the exercise of the discretion of the Board of Public Works, result in suspension and debarment of the business under COMAR 21.08.03.

<b>F. CERTAIN AFFIRMATIONS VALID</b>
--------------------------------------

I FURTHER AFFIRM THAT:

To the best of my knowledge, information, and belief, each of the affirmations, certifications, or acknowledgements contained in that certain Bid/Proposal Affidavit dated \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_, and executed by me for the purpose of obtaining

the contract to which this Exhibit is attached remains true and correct in all respects as if made as of the date of this Contract Affidavit and as if fully set forth herein.

I DO SOLEMNLY DECLARE AND AFFIRM UNDER THE PENALTIES OF PERJURY THAT THE CONTENTS OF THIS AFFIDAVIT ARE TRUE AND CORRECT TO THE BEST OF MY KNOWLEDGE, INFORMATION, AND BELIEF.

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

By:

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Printed name of Authorized Representative and affiant)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature of Authorized Representative and affiant)

**Attachment D**

**MBE Instructions and Forms**

**MBE ATTACHMENT D-1A:  
MBE UTILIZATION AND FAIR SOLICITATION AFFIDAVIT  
& MBE PARTICIPATION SCHEDULE**

**PART 1 - INSTRUCTIONS**

*PLEASE READ BEFORE COMPLETING THIS DOCUMENT*

**This form includes Instructions and the MBE Utilization and Fair Solicitation Affidavit & MBE Participation Schedule which must be submitted with the bid/proposal. If the bidder/offeror fails to accurately complete and submit this Affidavit and Schedule with the bid or proposal, the Procurement Officer shall deem the bid non-responsive or shall determine that the proposal is not reasonably susceptible of being selected for award.**

1. Contractor shall structure its procedures for the performance of the work required in this Contract to attempt to achieve the minority business enterprise (MBE) subcontractor participation goal stated in the Invitation for Bids or Request for Proposals. Contractor agrees to exercise good faith efforts to carry out the requirements set forth in these Instructions, as authorized by the Code of Maryland Regulations (COMAR) 21.11.03.
2. MBE Goals and Subgoals: Please review the solicitation for information regarding the Contract's MBE overall participation goals and subgoals. After satisfying the requirements for any established subgoals, the Contractor is encouraged to use a diverse group of subcontractors and suppliers from the various MBE classifications to meet the remainder of the overall MBE participation goal.
3. MBE means a minority business enterprise that is certified by the Maryland Department of Transportation ("MDOT"). Only MBEs certified by MDOT may be counted for purposes of achieving the MBE participation goals. In order to be counted for purposes of achieving the MBE participation goals, the MBE firm, including a MBE prime, must be MDOT-certified for the services, materials or supplies that it is committed to perform on the MBE Participation Schedule. A firm whose MBE certification application is pending may not be counted.
4. Please refer to the MDOT MBE Directory at <https://mbe.mdot.maryland.gov/directory/> to determine if a firm is certified with the appropriate North American Industry Classification System ("NAICS") code **and** the product/services description (specific product that a firm is certified to provide or specific areas of work that a firm is certified to perform). For more general information about NAICS codes, please visit <https://www.census.gov/eos/www/naics/>. Only those specific products and/or services for which a firm is certified in the MDOT Directory can be used for purposes of achieving the MBE participation goals. **CAUTION:** If the firm's NAICS code is in graduated status, such services/products may not be counted for purposes of achieving the MBE participation goals. A NAICS code is in the graduated status if the term "Graduated" follows the code in the MDOT MBE Directory.
5. **Guidelines Regarding MBE Prime Self-Performance.** Please note that when a certified MBE firm participates as a prime contractor on a Contract, a procurement agency may count the distinct, clearly defined portion of the work of the Contract that the certified MBE firm performs with its own workforce toward fulfilling up to, but no more than, fifty-percent (50%) of the overall MBE participation goal, including up to one hundred percent (100%) of not more than one of the MBE participation subgoals, if any, established for the Contract.

- ✓ In order to receive credit for self-performance, an MBE prime must be certified in the appropriate NAICS code to do the work and must list its firm in the MBE Participation Schedule, including the certification category under which the MBE prime is self-performing and include information regarding the work it will self-perform.
  - ✓ For the remaining portion of the overall goal and the remaining subgoals, the MBE prime must also identify on the MBE Participation Schedule the other certified MBE subcontractors used to meet those goals or request a waiver.
  - ✓ These guidelines apply to the work performed by the MBE Prime that can be counted for purposes of meeting the MBE participation goals. These requirements do not affect the MBE Prime's ability to self-perform a greater portion of the work in excess of what is counted for purposes of meeting the MBE participation goals.
  - ✓ Please note that the requirements to meet the MBE participation overall goal and subgoals are distinct and separate. If the contract has subgoals, regardless of MBE Prime's ability to self-perform up to 50% of the overall goal (including up to 100% of any subgoal), the MBE Prime must either commit to use other MBEs for each of any remaining subgoals or request a waiver. As set forth in Attachment 1-B Waiver Guidance, the MBE Prime's ability to self-perform certain portions of the work of the Contract will not be deemed a substitute for the good faith efforts to meet any remaining subgoal or the balance of the overall goal.
  - ✓ In certain instances where the percentages allocated to MBE participation subgoals add up to more than 50% of the overall goal, the portion of self-performed work that an MBE Prime may count toward the overall goal may be limited to less than 50%. Please refer to the Governor's Office of Small Minority & Women Business Affairs' website for the MBE Prime Regulations Q&A for illustrative examples.  
[http://www.goMDsmallbiz.maryland.gov/Documents/MBE\\_Toolkit/MBEPrimeRegulation\\_QA.pdf](http://www.goMDsmallbiz.maryland.gov/Documents/MBE_Toolkit/MBEPrimeRegulation_QA.pdf)
6. Subject to items 1 through 5 above, when a certified MBE performs as a participant in a joint venture, a procurement agency may count a portion of the total dollar value of the Contract equal to the distinct, clearly-defined portion of the work of the Contract that the certified MBE performs with its own forces toward fulfilling the Contract goal, and not more than one of the Contract subgoals, if any.
7. The work performed by a certified MBE firm, including an MBE prime, can only be counted towards the MBE participation goal(s) if the MBE firm is performing a commercially useful function on the Contract. Please refer to COMAR 21.11.03.12-1 for more information regarding these requirements.

8. **Materials and Supplies: New Guidelines Regarding MBE Participation.**

- ✓ **Regular Dealers:** Up to 60% of the costs of materials and supplies provided by a certified MBE may be counted towards the MBE participation goal(s) if such MBE is a Regular Dealer of such materials and supplies. Regular Dealer is defined as a firm that owns, operates, or maintains a store, a warehouse, or any other establishment in which the materials, supplies, articles, or equipment are of the general character described by the specifications required under the contract and are bought, kept in stock, or regularly sold or leased to the public in the usual course of business; and does not include a packager, a broker, a manufacturer's representative, or any other person that arranges or expedites transactions. Generally, a Regular Dealer will be identified as a wholesaler or supplier in the MDOT Directory.

*Example for illustrative purposes of applying the 60% rule*

*Overall contract value: \$2,000,000*

*Total value of supplies: \$100,000*

*Calculate Percentage of Supplies to overall contract value:*

*\$100,000 divided by \$2,000,000 = 5%*

***Apply 60% Rule - Total percentage of Supplies/Products 5% x 60% = 3%***

***3%*** would be counted towards achieving the MBE Participation Goal and Subgoal, if any, for the MBE supplier in this example.

- ✓ **Manufacturers:** A certified MBE firm's participation may be counted in full if the MBE is certified in the appropriate NAICS code(s) to provide products and services as a manufacturer.
- ✓ **Brokers:** With respect to materials or supplies purchased from a certified MBE that is neither a manufacturer nor a regular dealer, a unit may apply the entire amount of fees or commissions charged for assistance in the procurement of the materials and supplies, fees, or transportation charges for the delivery of materials and supplies required on a procurement toward the MBE contract goals, provided a unit determines the fees to be reasonable and not excessive as compared with fees customarily allowed for similar services. A unit may not apply any portion of the costs of the materials and supplies toward MBE goals.
- ✓ **Furnish and Install and other Services:** The participation of a certified MBE supplier, wholesaler, and/or regular dealer certified in the proper NAICS code(s) to furnish and install materials necessary for successful contract completion may be counted in full.

9. **Dually certified firms.** An MBE that is certified in more than one subgroup category may only be counted toward goal fulfillment of ONE of those categories with regard to a particular contract.

***Example: A woman-owned Hispanic American (dually certified) firm may be used to fulfill the women-owned OR Hispanic American subgoal, but not both on the same contract.***

10. CAUTION: The percentage of MBE participation, computed using the percentage amounts determined for all of the MBE firms listed in Part 3, MUST meet or exceed the MBE participation goal and subgoals (if applicable) as set forth in Part 2- for this solicitation. If a bidder/offeror is unable to meet the MBE participation goal or any subgoals (if applicable), then the bidder/offeror must request a waiver in Part 2 or the bid will be deemed not responsive, or the proposal not reasonably susceptible of being selected for award. You may wish to use the attached Goal/Subgoal Worksheet to assist in calculating the

percentages and confirming that your commitment meets or exceeds the applicable MBE participation goal and subgoals (if any).

11. If you have any questions as to whether a firm is certified to perform the specific services or provide specific products, please contact MDOT's Office of Minority Business Enterprise at 1-800-544-6056 or via email to [mbe@mdot.state.md.us](mailto:mbe@mdot.state.md.us) sufficiently prior to the submission due date.

### **Subgoals (if applicable)**

Total African American MBE Participation:	_____	%
Total Asian American MBE Participation:	_____	%
Total Hispanic American MBE Participation:	_____	%
Total Women-Owned MBE Participation:	_____	%

### **Overall Goal**

Total MBE Participation (include all categories):	_____	%
---	-------	---

## **PART 2 - MBE UTILIZATION AND FAIR SOLICITATION AFFIDAVIT**

**This MBE Utilization and Fair Solicitation Affidavit and MBE Participation Schedule must be completed and included with the bid/proposal. If the bidder/offeror fails to accurately complete and submit this Affidavit and the Schedule in Part 3 with the bid or proposal as required, the Procurement Officer shall deem the bid non-responsive or shall determine that the proposal is not reasonably susceptible of being selected for award.**

In connection with the bid/proposal submitted in response to RFP for Testing and Inspection Services Phase III – Ocean City Convention Center Expansion and Improvements, I affirm the following:

1. **MBE Participation (PLEASE CHECK ONLY ONE)**

I acknowledge and intend to meet IN FULL both the overall certified Minority Business Enterprise (MBE) participation goal of 10% percent. Therefore, I am not seeking a waiver pursuant to COMAR 21.11.03.11. I acknowledge that by checking the above box and agreeing to meet the stated goal and subgoal(s), if any, I **must** complete Part 3 - MBE Participation Schedule and Part 4 Signature Page in order to be considered for award.

**OR**

I conclude that I am unable to achieve the MBE participation goal and/or subgoals. I hereby request a waiver, in whole or in part, of the overall goal and/or subgoals. I acknowledge that by checking this box and requesting a partial waiver of the stated goal and/or one or more of the stated subgoal(s) if any, I **must** complete Part 3, the MBE Participation Schedule for the portion of the goal and/or subgoal(s) if any, for which I am not seeking a waiver, in order to be considered for award.

### **Additional MBE Documentation**

I understand that if I am notified that I am the apparent awardee or as requested by the Procurement Officer, I must submit the following documentation within 10 working days of receiving notice of the potential award or from the date of conditional award (per COMAR 21.11.03.10), whichever is earlier:

- (a) Good Faith Efforts Documentation to Support Waiver Request (Attachment D-1C)
- (b) Outreach Efforts Compliance Statement (Attachment D-2);
- (c) MBE Subcontractor/MBE Prime Project Participation Statement (Attachments D-3A and 3B);
- (d) Any other documentation, including additional waiver documentation if applicable, required by the Procurement Officer to ascertain bidder or offeror responsibility in connection with the certified MBE participation goal and subgoals, if any.

I understand that if I fail to return each completed document within the required time, the Procurement Officer may determine that I am not responsible and therefore not eligible for contract award. If the contract has already been awarded, the award is voidable.

### **Information Provided to MBE firms**

In the solicitation of subcontract quotations or offers, MBE firms were provided not less than the same information and amount of time to respond as were non-MBE firms.

## PART 3 - MBE PARTICIPATION SCHEDULE

Set forth below are the (i) certified MBEs I intend to use, (ii) the percentage of the total Contract value allocated to each MBE for this project and, (iii) the items of work each MBE will provide under the Contract. I have confirmed with the MDOT database that the MBE firms identified below (including any self-performing MBE prime firms) are performing work activities for which they are MDOT-certified.

Prime Contractor	Project Description	Project/Contract Number
	Testing and Inspection Services Phase III – Ocean City Convention Center Expansion and Improvements	

LIST INFORMATION FOR EACH CERTIFIED MBE FIRM YOU AGREE TO USE TO ACHIEVE THE MBE PARTICIPATION GOAL AND SUBGOALS, IF ANY. **MBE PRIMES:** PLEASE COMPLETE BOTH SECTIONS A AND B BELOW.

### SECTION A: For MBE Prime Contractors ONLY (including MBE Primes in a Joint Venture)

<p>MBE Prime Firm Name: _____</p> <p>MBE Certification Number: _____</p> <p>(If dually certified, check only one box.)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> African American-Owned  <input type="checkbox"/> Hispanic American- Owned  <input type="checkbox"/> Asian American-Owned  <input type="checkbox"/> Women-Owned  <input type="checkbox"/> Other MBE Classification</p> <p>NAICS code: _____</p>	<p>Percentage of total Contract Value to be performed with own forces and counted towards the MBE <b>overall participation goal</b> (up to 50% of the overall goal): _____% <b>Please refer to Item #8 in Part 1- Instructions of this document for new MBE participation guidelines regarding materials and supplies.</b></p> <p>Percentage of total Contract Value to be performed with own forces and counted towards the <b>subgoal</b>, if any, for my MBE classification (up to 100% of not more than one subgoal): _____%</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Supplier, wholesaler and/or regular dealer (count 60%)  <input type="checkbox"/> Manufacturer (count 100%)  <input type="checkbox"/> Broker (count reasonable fee/commission only)  <input type="checkbox"/> Furnish and Install and other Services (count 100%)</p> <p><b>Complete the applicable prompt (select only one) from prompts A-C below that applies to the type of work your firm is self-performing to calculate amount to be counted towards achieving the MBE Participation Goal and Subgoal, if any.</b></p> <p><b>A. Percentage amount of subcontract where the MBE Prime firm is being used for manufacturer, furnish and install, and/or services</b> (excluding products / services from suppliers, wholesalers, regular dealers and brokers) _____%</p> <p><b>B. Percentage amount for items of work where the MBE Prime firm is being used as supplier, wholesaler, and/or regular dealer (60% Rule).</b>  Total percentage of Supplies/Products _____% x 60% = _____%</p> <p><b>C. Percentage amount of fee where the MBE Prime firm is being used as broker</b> (count reasonable fee/commission only) _____%</p> <p>Description of the Work to be performed with MBE prime's own forces:  _____  _____</p>
---	--

**SECTION B: For all Contractors (including MBE Primes and MBE Primes in a Joint Venture)**

<p>MBE Firm Name: _____</p> <p>MBE Certification Number: _____</p> <p>(If dually certified, check only one box.)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> African American-Owned</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Hispanic American- Owned</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Asian American-Owned</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Women-Owned</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Other MBE Classification</p> <p>NAICS code: _____</p>	<p><b>Please refer to Item #8 in Part 1- Instructions of this document for new MBE participation guidelines regarding materials and supplies.</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Supplier, wholesaler and/or regular dealer (count 60%)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Manufacturer (count 100%)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Broker (count reasonable fee/commission only)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Furnish and Install and other Services (count 100%)</p> <p><b>Complete the applicable prompt (select only one) from prompts A-C below that applies to the type of work that the MBE firm named to the left will be performing to calculate the amount to be counted towards achieving the MBE Participation Goal and Subgoal, if any.</b></p> <p><b>A. Percentage amount of subcontract where the MBE firm is being used for manufacturer, furnish and install, and/or services</b> (excluding products/services from suppliers, wholesalers, regular dealers and brokers) _____%</p> <p><b>B. Percentage amount for items of work where the MBE firm is being used as supplier, wholesaler, and/or regular dealer</b> (60% Rule)). Total percentage of Supplies/Products _____% X 60% = _____%</p> <p><b>C. Percentage amount of fee where the MBE firm is being used as broker</b> (count reasonable fee/commission only) _____ %</p> <p>Description of the Work to be Performed: _____</p>
<p>MBE Firm Name: _____</p> <p>MBE Certification Number: _____</p> <p>(If dually certified, check only one box.)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> African American-Owned</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Hispanic American- Owned</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Asian American-Owned</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Women-Owned</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Other MBE Classification</p> <p>NAICS code: _____</p>	<p><b>Please refer to Item #8 in Part 1- Instructions of this document for new MBE participation guidelines regarding materials and supplies.</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Supplier, wholesaler and/or regular dealer (count 60%)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Manufacturer (count 100%)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Broker (count reasonable fee/commission only)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Furnish and Install and other Services (count 100%)</p> <p><b>Complete the applicable prompt (select only one) from prompts A-C below that applies to the type of work that the MBE Firm named to the left will be performing to calculate the amount to be counted towards achieving the MBE Participation Goal and Subgoal, if any.</b></p> <p><b>A. Percentage amount of subcontract where the MBE Firm is being used for manufacturer, furnish and install, and/or services</b> (excluding products/services from suppliers, wholesalers, regular dealers and brokers) _____%</p> <p><b>B. Percentage amount for items of work where the MBE firm is being used as supplier, wholesaler, and/or regular dealer</b> (60% Rule)). Total percentage of Supplies/Products _____% X 60% = _____%</p> <p><b>C. Percentage amount of fee where the MBE firm is being used as broker</b> (count reasonable fee/commission only) _____ %</p> <p>Description of the Work to be Performed: _____</p>

<p>MBE Firm Name: _____</p> <p>MBE Certification Number: _____</p> <p>(If dually certified, check only one box.)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> African American-Owned</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Hispanic American- Owned</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Asian American-Owned</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Women-Owned</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Other MBE Classification</p> <p>NAICS code: _____</p>	<p><b>Please refer to Item #8 in Part 1- Instructions of this document for new MBE participation guidelines regarding materials and supplies.</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Supplier, wholesaler and/or regular dealer (count 60%)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Manufacturer (count 100%)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Broker (count reasonable fee/commission only)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Furnish and Install and other Services (count 100%)</p> <p><b>Complete the applicable prompt (select only one) from prompts A-C below that applies to the type of work that for the MBE firm named to the left will be performing to calculate the amount to be counted towards achieving the MBE Participation Goal and Subgoal, if any.</b></p> <p><b>A. Percentage amount of subcontract where the MBE firm is being used for manufacturer, furnish and install, and/or services</b> (excluding products/services from suppliers, wholesalers, regular dealers and brokers) _____%</p> <p><b>B. Percentage amount for items of work where the MBE firm is being used as supplier, wholesaler, and/or regular dealer</b> (60% Rule).              Total percentage of Supplies/Products _____% X 60% = _____%</p> <p><b>C. Percentage amount of fee where the MBE firm is being used as broker</b> (count reasonable fee/commission only) _____ %</p> <p>Description of the Work to be Performed:              _____</p>
<p>MBE Firm Name: _____</p> <p>MBE Certification Number: _____</p> <p>(If dually certified, check only one box.)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> African American-Owned</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Hispanic American- Owned</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Asian American-Owned</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Women-Owned</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Other MBE Classification</p> <p>NAICS code: _____</p>	<p><b>Please refer to Item #8 in Part 1- Instructions of this document for new MBE participation guidelines regarding materials and supplies.</b></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Supplier, wholesaler and/or regular dealer (count 60%)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Manufacturer (count 100%)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Broker (count reasonable fee/commission only)</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Furnish and Install and other Services (count 100%)</p> <p><b>Complete the applicable prompt (select only one) from prompts A-C below that applies to the type of work that the MBE firm named to the left will be performing to calculate the amount to be counted towards achieving the MBE Participation Goal and Subgoal, if any.</b></p> <p><b>A. Percentage amount of subcontract where the MBE firm is being used for manufacturer, furnish and install, and/or services</b> (excluding products/services from suppliers, wholesalers, regular dealers and brokers) _____%</p> <p><b>B. Percentage amount for items of work where the MBE firm is being used as supplier, wholesaler, and/or regular dealer</b> (60% Rule)).              Total percentage of Supplies/Products _____% X 60% = _____%</p> <p><b>C. Percentage amount of fee where the MBE firm is being used as broker</b> _____ %</p> <p>Description of the Work to be Performed:              _____</p>

**CONTINUE ON SEPARATE PAGE IF NEEDED**

**I solemnly affirm under the penalties of perjury that: (i) I have reviewed the instructions for the MBE Utilization & Fair Solicitation Affidavit and MBE Schedule, and (ii) the information contained in the MBE Utilization & Fair Solicitation Affidavit and MBE Schedule is true to the best of my knowledge, information and belief.**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Bidder/Offeror Name  
*(PLEASE PRINT OR TYPE)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Authorized Representative

\_\_\_\_\_  
Address

\_\_\_\_\_  
Printed Name and Title

\_\_\_\_\_  
City, State and Zip Code

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

**SUBMIT THIS AFFIDAVIT WITH BID/PROPOSAL**

## **MBE ATTACHMENT D-1B WAIVER GUIDANCE**

### **GUIDANCE FOR DOCUMENTING GOOD FAITH EFFORTS TO MEET MBE PARTICIPATION GOALS**

In order to show that it has made good faith efforts to meet the Minority Business Enterprise (MBE) participation goal (including any MBE subgoals) on a contract, the bidder/offeror must either (1) meet the MBE Goal(s) and document its commitments for participation of MBE Firms, or (2) when it does not meet the MBE Goal(s), document its Good Faith Efforts to meet the goal(s).

#### **I. Definitions**

**MBE Goal(s)** – “MBE Goal(s)” refers to the MBE participation goal and MBE participation subgoal(s).

**Good Faith Efforts** – The “Good Faith Efforts” requirement means that when requesting a waiver, the bidder/offeror must demonstrate that it took all necessary and reasonable steps to achieve the MBE Goal(s), which, by their scope, intensity, and appropriateness to the objective, could reasonably be expected to obtain sufficient MBE participation, even if those steps were not fully successful. Whether a bidder/offeror that requests a waiver made adequate good faith efforts will be determined by considering the quality, quantity, and intensity of the different kinds of efforts that the bidder/offeror has made. The efforts employed by the bidder/offeror should be those that one could reasonably expect a bidder/offeror to take if the bidder/offeror were actively and aggressively trying to obtain MBE participation sufficient to meet the MBE contract goal and subgoals. Mere *pro forma* efforts are not good faith efforts to meet the MBE contract requirements. The determination concerning the sufficiency of the bidder's/offeror's good faith efforts is a judgment call; meeting quantitative formulas is not required.

**Identified Firms** – “Identified Firms” means a list of the MBEs identified by the procuring agency during the goal setting process and listed in the procurement as available to perform the Identified Items of Work. It also may include additional MBEs identified by the bidder/offeror as available to perform the Identified Items of Work, such as MBEs certified or granted an expansion of services after the procurement was issued. If the procurement does not include a list of Identified Firms, this term refers to all of the MBE Firms (if State-funded) the bidder/offeror identified as available to perform the Identified Items of Work and should include all appropriately certified firms that are reasonably identifiable.

**Identified Items of Work** – “Identified Items of Work” means the bid items identified by the procuring agency during the goal setting process and listed in the procurement as possible items of work for performance by MBE Firms. It also may include additional portions of items of work the bidder/offeror identified for performance by MBE Firms to increase the likelihood that the MBE Goal(s) will be achieved. If the procurement does not include a list of Identified Items of Work, this term refers to all of the items of work the bidder/offeror identified as possible items of work for performance by MBE Firms and should include all reasonably identifiable work opportunities.

**MBE Firms** – “MBE Firms” refers to a firm certified by the Maryland Department of Transportation (“MDOT”) under COMAR 21.11.03. Only MDOT-certified MBE Firms can participate in the State's MBE Program.

## **II. Types of Actions Agency will Consider**

The bidder/offeror is responsible for making relevant portions of the work available to MBE subcontractors and suppliers and to select those portions of the work or material needs consistent with the available MBE subcontractors and suppliers, so as to facilitate MBE participation. The following is a list of types of actions the procuring agency will consider as part of the bidder's/offeror's Good Faith Efforts when the bidder/offeror fails to meet the MBE Goal(s). This list is not intended to be a mandatory checklist, nor is it intended to be exclusive or exhaustive. Other factors or types of efforts may be relevant in appropriate cases.

### **A. Identify Bid Items as Work for MBE Firms**

#### 1. Identified Items of Work in Procurements

(a) Certain procurements will include a list of bid items identified during the goal setting process as possible work for performance by MBE Firms. If the procurement provides a list of Identified Items of Work, the bidder/offeror shall make all reasonable efforts to solicit quotes from MBE Firms to perform that work.

(b) Bidders/Offerors may, and are encouraged to, select additional items of work to be performed by MBE Firms to increase the likelihood that the MBE Goal(s) will be achieved.

#### 2. Identified Items of Work by Bidders/Offerors

(a) When the procurement does not include a list of Identified Items of Work or for additional Identified Items of Work, bidders/offerors should reasonably identify sufficient items of work to be performed by MBE Firms.

(b) Where appropriate, bidders/offerors should break out contract work items into economically feasible units to facilitate MBE participation, rather than perform these work items with their own forces. The ability or desire of a prime contractor to perform the work of a contract with its own organization does not relieve the bidder/offeror of the responsibility to make Good Faith Efforts.

### **B. Identify MBE Firms to Solicit**

#### 1. MBE Firms Identified in Procurements

(a) Certain procurements will include a list of the MBE Firms identified during the goal setting process as available to perform the items of work. If the procurement provides a list of Identified MBE Firms, the bidder/offeror shall make all reasonable efforts to solicit those MBE firms.

(b) Bidders/offerors may, and are encouraged to, search the MBE Directory to identify additional MBEs who may be available to perform the items of work, such as MBEs certified or granted an expansion of services after the solicitation was issued.

#### 2. MBE Firms Identified by Bidders/Offerors

(a) When the procurement does not include a list of Identified MBE Firms, bidders/offerors should reasonably identify the MBE Firms that are available to perform the Identified Items of Work.

(b) Any MBE Firms identified as available by the bidder/offeror should be certified to perform the Identified Items of Work.

### C. Solicit MBEs

1. Solicit all Identified Firms for all Identified Items of Work by providing written notice. The bidder/offeror should:

(a) provide the written solicitation at least 10 days prior to bid opening to allow sufficient time for the MBE Firms to respond;

(b) send the written solicitation by first-class mail, facsimile, or email using contact information in the MBE Directory, unless the bidder/offeror has a valid basis for using different contact information; and

(c) provide adequate information about the plans, specifications, anticipated time schedule for portions of the work to be performed by the MBE, and other requirements of the contract to assist MBE Firms in responding. (This information may be provided by including hard copies in the written solicitation or by electronic means as described in C.3 below.)

2. "All" Identified Firms includes the MBEs listed in the procurement and any MBE Firms you identify as potentially available to perform the Identified Items of Work, but it does not include MBE Firms who are no longer certified to perform the work as of the date the bidder/offeror provides written solicitations.

3. "Electronic Means" includes, for example, information provided *via* a website or file transfer protocol (FTP) site containing the plans, specifications, and other requirements of the contract. If an interested MBE cannot access the information provided by electronic means, the bidder/offeror must make the information available in a manner that is accessible to the interested MBE.

4. Follow up on initial written solicitations by contacting MBEs to determine if they are interested. The follow up contact may be made:

(a) by telephone using the contact information in the MBE Directory, unless the bidder/offeror has a valid basis for using different contact information; or

(b) in writing *via* a method that differs from the method used for the initial written solicitation.

5. In addition to the written solicitation set forth in C.1 and the follow up required in C.4, use all other reasonable and available means to solicit the interest of MBE Firms certified to perform the work of the contract. Examples of other means include:

(a) attending any pre-bid meetings at which MBE Firms could be informed of contracting and subcontracting opportunities; and

(b) if recommended by the procurement, advertising with or effectively using the services of at least two minority focused entities or media, including trade associations, minority/women community organizations, minority/women contractors' groups, and local, state, and federal minority/women business assistance offices listed on the MDOT Office of Minority Business Enterprise website.

### D. Negotiate With Interested MBE Firms

Bidders/Offerors must negotiate in good faith with interested MBE Firms.

1. Evidence of negotiation includes, without limitation, the following:

(a) the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of MBE Firms that were considered;

(b) a description of the information provided regarding the plans and specifications for the work selected for subcontracting and the means used to provide that information; and

(c) evidence as to why additional agreements could not be reached for MBE Firms to perform the work.

2. A bidder/offeror using good business judgment would consider a number of factors in negotiating with subcontractors, including MBE subcontractors, and would take a firm's price and capabilities as well as contract goals into consideration.

3. The fact that there may be some additional costs involved in finding and using MBE Firms is not in itself sufficient reason for a bidder's/offeror's failure to meet the contract MBE goal(s), as long as such costs are reasonable. Factors to take into consideration when determining whether a MBE Firm's quote is excessive or unreasonable include, without limitation, the following:

(a) the dollar difference between the MBE subcontractor's quote and the average of the other subcontractors' quotes received by the bidder/offeror;

(b) the percentage difference between the MBE subcontractor's quote and the average of the other subcontractors' quotes received by the bidder/offeror;

(c) the percentage that the MBE subcontractor's quote represents of the overall contract amount;

(d) the number of MBE firms that the bidder/offeror solicited for that portion of the work;

(e) whether the work described in the MBE and Non-MBE subcontractor quotes (or portions thereof) submitted for review is the same or comparable; and

(f) the number of quotes received by the bidder/offeror for that portion of the work.

4. The above factors are not intended to be mandatory, exclusive, or exhaustive, and other evidence of an excessive or unreasonable price may be relevant.

5. The bidder/offeror may not use its price for self-performing work as a basis for rejecting a MBE Firm's quote as excessive or unreasonable.

6. The "average of the other subcontractors' quotes received" by the bidder/offeror refers to the average of the quotes received from all subcontractors. Bidder/offeror should attempt to receive quotes from at least three subcontractors, including one quote from a MBE and one quote from a Non-MBE.

7. A bidder/offeror shall not reject a MBE Firm as unqualified without sound reasons based on a thorough investigation of the firm's capabilities. For each certified MBE that is rejected as unqualified or that placed a subcontract quotation or offer that the bidder/offeror concludes is not acceptable, the bidder/offeror must provide a written detailed statement listing the reasons for this conclusion. The bidder/offeror also must document the steps taken to verify the capabilities of the MBE and Non-MBE Firms quoting similar work.

(a) The factors to take into consideration when assessing the capabilities of a MBE Firm, include, but are not limited to the following: financial capability, physical capacity to perform, available personnel and equipment, existing workload, experience performing the type of work, conduct and performance in previous contracts, and ability to meet reasonable contract requirements.

(b) The MBE Firm's standing within its industry, membership in specific groups, organizations, or associations and political or social affiliations (for example union vs. non-union employee status) are not legitimate causes for the rejection or non-solicitation of bids in the efforts to meet the project goal.

## E. Assisting Interested MBE Firms

When appropriate under the circumstances, the decision-maker will consider whether the bidder/offeror:

1. made reasonable efforts to assist interested MBE Firms in obtaining the bonding, lines of credit, or insurance required by the procuring agency or the bidder/offeror; and
2. made reasonable efforts to assist interested MBE Firms in obtaining necessary equipment, supplies, materials, or related assistance or services.

## III. Other Considerations

In making a determination of Good Faith Efforts the decision-maker may consider engineering estimates, catalogue prices, general market availability and availability of certified MBE Firms in the area in which the work is to be performed, other bids or offers and subcontract bids or offers substantiating significant variances between certified MBE and Non-MBE costs of participation, and their impact on the overall cost of the contract to the State and any other relevant factors.

The decision-maker may take into account whether a bidder/offeror decided to self-perform subcontract work with its own forces, especially where the self-performed work is Identified Items of Work in the procurement. The decision-maker also may take into account the performance of other bidders/offerors in meeting the contract. For example, when the apparent successful bidder/offeror fails to meet the contract goal, but others meet it, this reasonably raises the question of whether, with additional reasonable efforts, the apparent successful bidder/offeror could have met the goal. If the apparent successful bidder/offeror fails to meet the goal, but meets or exceeds the average MBE participation obtained by other bidders/offerors, this, when viewed in conjunction with other factors, could be evidence of the apparent successful bidder/offeror having made Good Faith Efforts.

## IV. Documenting Good Faith Efforts

At a minimum, a bidder/offeror seeking a waiver of the MBE Goal(s) or a portion thereof must provide written documentation of its Good Faith Efforts, in accordance with COMAR 21.11.03.11, within 10 business days after receiving notice that it is the apparent awardee. The written documentation shall include the following:

### A. Items of Work (Complete Good Faith Efforts Documentation Attachment 1-C, Part 1)

A detailed statement of the efforts made to select portions of the work proposed to be performed by certified MBE Firms in order to increase the likelihood of achieving the stated MBE Goal(s).

### B. Outreach/Solicitation/Negotiation

1. The record of the bidder's/offeror's compliance with the outreach efforts prescribed by COMAR 21.11.03.09C(2)(a). **(Complete Outreach Efforts Compliance Statement – Attachment 2).**

2. A detailed statement of the efforts made to contact and negotiate with MBE Firms including:

- (a) the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of the MBE Firms who were contacted, with the dates and manner of contacts (letter, fax, email, telephone, etc.) **(Complete Good Faith Efforts Attachment 1-C- Part 2, and submit letters, fax cover sheets, emails, etc. documenting solicitations);** and

- (b) a description of the information provided to MBE Firms regarding the plans, specifications, and anticipated time schedule for portions of the work to be performed and the means used to provide that information.

**C. Rejected MBE Firms (Complete Good Faith Efforts Attachment 1-C, Part 3)**

1. For each MBE Firm that the bidder/offeror concludes is not acceptable or qualified, a detailed statement of the reasons for the bidder's/offeror's conclusion, including the steps taken to verify the capabilities of the MBE and Non-MBE Firms quoting similar work.

2. For each certified MBE Firm that the bidder/offeror concludes has provided an excessive or unreasonable price, a detailed statement of the reasons for the bidder's/offeror's conclusion, including the quotes received from all MBE and Non-MBE firms bidding on the same or comparable work. **(Include copies of all quotes received.)**

3. A list of MBE Firms contacted but found to be unavailable. This list should be accompanied by a MBE Unavailability Certificate (see Exhibit A to this Part 1) signed by the MBE contractor or a statement from the bidder/offeror that the MBE contractor refused to sign the MBE Unavailability Certificate.

**D. Other Documentation**

1. Submit any other documentation requested by the Procurement Officer to ascertain the bidder's/offeror's Good Faith Efforts.

2. Submit any other documentation the bidder/offeror believes will help the Procurement Officer ascertain its Good Faith Efforts.

**Exhibit A**

**MBE Subcontractor Unavailability Certificate**

1. It is hereby certified that the firm of \_\_\_\_\_  
(Name of Minority firm)  
located at \_\_\_\_\_  
(Number) (Street)  
\_\_\_\_\_  
(City) (State) (Zip)

was offered an opportunity to bid on Solicitation No. \_\_\_\_\_  
in \_\_\_\_\_ County by \_\_\_\_\_  
(Name of Prime Contractor's Firm)

\*\*\*\*\*

2. \_\_\_\_\_ (Minority Firm), is either unavailable for the  
work/service or unable to prepare a bid for this project for the following reason(s):

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
**Signature of Minority Firm's MBE Representative**      **Title**      **Date**  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

MDOT Certification # \_\_\_\_\_ Telephone # \_\_\_\_\_

\*\*\*\*\*

3. To be completed by the prime contractor if Section 2 of this form is not completed by the minority firm.  
To the best of my knowledge and belief, said Certified Minority Business Enterprise is either unavailable  
for the work/service for this project, is unable to prepare a bid, or did not respond to a request for a price  
proposal and has not completed the above portion of this submittal.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Prime Contractor      Title      Date

**MBE ATTACHMENT D-1C**  
**GOOD FAITH EFFORTS DOCUMENTATION TO SUPPORT WAIVER REQUEST**

PAGE \_\_\_ OF \_\_\_

Prime Contractor	Project Description	Solicitation Number

**PARTS 1, 2, AND 3 MUST BE INCLUDED WITH THIS CERTIFICATE ALONG WITH ALL DOCUMENTS SUPPORTING YOUR WAIVER REQUEST.**

I affirm that I have reviewed Attachment \_\_\_-1B, Waiver Guidance. I further affirm under penalties of perjury that the contents of Parts 1, 2, and 3 of this Attachment \_\_\_-1C Good Faith Efforts Documentation Form are true to the best of my knowledge, information, and belief.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Company Name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Representative

\_\_\_\_\_  
Address

\_\_\_\_\_  
Printed Name and Title

\_\_\_\_\_  
City, State and Zip Code

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

**GOOD FAITH EFFORTS DOCUMENTATION  
TO SUPPORT WAIVER REQUEST**

**PART 1 – IDENTIFIED ITEMS OF WORK BIDDER/OFFEROR MADE AVAILABLE TO  
MBE FIRMS**

PAGE \_\_\_ OF \_\_\_

Prime Contractor	Project Description	Solicitation Number

Identify those items of work that the bidder/offeror made available to MBE Firms. This includes, where appropriate, those items the bidder/offeror identified and determined to subdivide into economically feasible units to facilitate the MBE participation. For each item listed, show the anticipated percentage of the total contract amount. It is the bidder's/offeror's responsibility to demonstrate that sufficient work to meet the goal was made available to MBE Firms, and the total percentage of the items of work identified for MBE participation equals or exceeds the percentage MBE goal set for the procurement. Note: If the procurement includes a list of bid items identified during the goal setting process as possible items of work for performance by MBE Firms, the bidder/offeror should make all of those items of work available to MBE Firms or explain why that item was not made available. If the bidder/offeror selects additional items of work to make available to MBE Firms, those additional items should also be included below.

Identified Items of Work	Was this work listed in the procurement?	Does bidder/offeror normally self-perform this work?	Was this work made available to MBE Firms? If no, explain why?
	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No

Please check if Additional Sheets are attached.

## GOOD FAITH EFFORTS DOCUMENTATION TO SUPPORT WAIVER REQUEST

### PART 2 – IDENTIFIED MBE FIRMS AND RECORD OF SOLICITATIONS

PAGE \_\_\_ OF \_\_\_

Prime Contractor	Project Description	Solicitation Number

Identify the MBE Firms solicited to provide quotes for the Identified Items of Work made available for MBE participation. Include the name of the MBE Firm solicited, items of work for which bids/quotes were solicited, date and manner of initial and follow-up solicitations, whether the MBE provided a quote, and whether the MBE is being used to meet the MBE participation goal. MBE Firms used to meet the participation goal must be included on the MBE Participation Schedule. Note: If the procurement includes a list of the MBE Firms identified during the goal setting process as potentially available to perform the items of work, the bidder/offeror should solicit all of those MBE Firms or explain why a specific MBE was not solicited. If the bidder/offeror identifies additional MBE Firms who may be available to perform Identified Items of Work, those additional MBE Firms should also be included below. Copies of all written solicitations and documentation of follow-up calls to MBE Firms must be attached to this form. This list should be accompanied by a Minority Contractor Unavailability Certificate signed by the MBE contractor or a statement from the bidder/offeror that the MBE contractor refused to sign the Minority Contractor Unavailability Certificate (see Exhibit A to MBE Attachment 1-B). If the bidder/offeror used a Non-MBE or is self-performing the identified items of work, Part 3 must be completed.

Name of Identified MBE Firm & MBE Classification	Describe Item of Work Solicited	Initial Solicitation Date & Method	Follow-up Solicitation Date & Method	Details for Follow-up Calls	Quote Rec'd	Quote Used	Reason Quote Rejected
<b>Firm Name:</b> <hr/> <b>MBE Classification (Check only if requesting waiver of MBE subgoal.)</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> African American-Owned <input type="checkbox"/> Hispanic American-Owned <input type="checkbox"/> Asian American-Owned <input type="checkbox"/> Women-Owned <input type="checkbox"/> Other MBE Classification <hr/>		<b>Date:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Mail <input type="checkbox"/> Facsimile <input type="checkbox"/> Email	<b>Date:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Phone <input type="checkbox"/> Mail <input type="checkbox"/> Facsimile <input type="checkbox"/> Email	<b>Time of Call:</b>  <b>Spoke With:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Left Message	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Used Other MBE <input type="checkbox"/> Used Non-MBE  <input type="checkbox"/> Self-performing
<b>Firm Name:</b> <hr/> <b>MBE Classification (Check only if requesting waiver of MBE subgoal.)</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> African American-Owned <input type="checkbox"/> Hispanic American-Owned <input type="checkbox"/> Asian American-Owned <input type="checkbox"/> Women-Owned <input type="checkbox"/> Other MBE Classification <hr/>		<b>Date:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Mail <input type="checkbox"/> Facsimile <input type="checkbox"/> Email	<b>Date:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Phone <input type="checkbox"/> Mail <input type="checkbox"/> Facsimile <input type="checkbox"/> Email	<b>Time of Call:</b>  <b>Spoke With:</b>  <input type="checkbox"/> Left Message	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	<input type="checkbox"/> Used Other MBE <input type="checkbox"/> Used Non-MBE  <input type="checkbox"/> Self-performing

Please check if Additional Sheets are attached.

**GOOD FAITH EFFORTS DOCUMENTATION  
TO SUPPORT WAIVER REQUEST**

**PART 3 – ADDITIONAL INFORMATION REGARDING REJECTED MBE QUOTES**

PAGE \_\_\_ OF \_\_\_

Prime Contractor	Project Description	Solicitation Number

This form must be completed if Part 2 indicates that a MBE quote was rejected because the bidder/offeror is using a Non-MBE or is self-performing the Identified Items of Work. Provide the Identified Items Work, indicate whether the work will be self-performed or performed by a Non-MBE, and if applicable, state the name of the Non-MBE. Also include the names of all MBE and Non-MBE Firms that provided a quote and the amount of each quote.

Describe Identified Items of Work Not Being Performed by MBE (Include spec/section number from bid)	Self-performing or Using Non-MBE (Provide name)	Amount of Non-MBE Quote	Name of Other Firms who Provided Quotes & Whether MBE or Non-MBE	Amount Quoted	Indicate Reason Why MBE Quote Rejected & Briefly Explain
	<input type="checkbox"/> Self-performing <input type="checkbox"/> Using Non-MBE _____	\$ _____	_____ <input type="checkbox"/> MBE <input type="checkbox"/> Non-MBE	\$ _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Price <input type="checkbox"/> Capabilities <input type="checkbox"/> Other
	<input type="checkbox"/> Self-performing <input type="checkbox"/> Using Non-MBE _____	\$ _____	_____ <input type="checkbox"/> MBE <input type="checkbox"/> Non-MBE	\$ _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Price <input type="checkbox"/> Capabilities <input type="checkbox"/> Other
	<input type="checkbox"/> Self-performing <input type="checkbox"/> Using Non-MBE _____	\$ _____	_____ <input type="checkbox"/> MBE <input type="checkbox"/> Non-MBE	\$ _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Price <input type="checkbox"/> Capabilities <input type="checkbox"/> Other
	<input type="checkbox"/> Self-performing <input type="checkbox"/> Using Non-MBE _____	\$ _____	_____ <input type="checkbox"/> MBE <input type="checkbox"/> Non-MBE	\$ _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Price <input type="checkbox"/> Capabilities <input type="checkbox"/> Other
	<input type="checkbox"/> Self-performing <input type="checkbox"/> Using Non-MBE _____	\$ _____	_____ <input type="checkbox"/> MBE <input type="checkbox"/> Non-MBE	\$ _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Price <input type="checkbox"/> Capabilities <input type="checkbox"/> Other
	<input type="checkbox"/> Self-performing <input type="checkbox"/> Using Non-MBE _____	\$ _____	_____ <input type="checkbox"/> MBE <input type="checkbox"/> Non-MBE	\$ _____	<input type="checkbox"/> Price <input type="checkbox"/> Capabilities <input type="checkbox"/> Other

Please check if Additional Sheets are attached.

## **MBE Attachment D - 2 OUTREACH EFFORTS COMPLIANCE STATEMENT**

Complete and submit this form within 10 working days of notification of apparent award or actual award, whichever is earlier.

In conjunction with the bid/proposal submitted in response to Solicitation No. \_\_\_\_\_, I state the following:

1. Bidder/Offeror identified subcontracting opportunities in these specific work categories:

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

2. Attached to this form are copies of written solicitations (with bidding/proposal instructions) used to solicit certified MBE firms for these subcontract opportunities.

3. Bidder/Offeror made the following attempts to personally contact the solicited MDOT-certified MBE firms: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

4. **Please Check One:**

- This project does not involve bonding requirements.
- Bidder/Offeror assisted MDOT-certified MBE firms to fulfill or seek waiver of bonding requirements. (DESCRIBE EFFORTS): \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

5. **Please Check One:**

- Bidder/Offeror did attend the pre-bid/pre-proposal conference.
- No pre-bid/pre-proposal meeting/conference was held.
- Bidder/Offeror did not attend the pre-bid/pre-proposal conference.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Company Name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Representative

\_\_\_\_\_  
Address

\_\_\_\_\_  
Printed Name and Title

\_\_\_\_\_  
City, State and Zip Code

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

**MBE Attachment D-3A  
MBE SUBCONTRACTOR PROJECT PARTICIPATION CERTIFICATION**

**PLEASE COMPLETE AND SUBMIT ONE FORM FOR EACH CERTIFIED MBE FIRM LISTED ON THE MBE PARTICIPATION SCHEDULE (ATTACHMENT D-1A) WITHIN 10 WORKING DAYS OF NOTIFICATION OF APPARENT AWARD. IF THE BIDDER/OFFEROR FAILS TO RETURN THIS FORM WITHIN THE REQUIRED TIME, THE PROCUREMENT OFFICER MAY DETERMINE THAT THE BIDDER/OFFEROR IS NOT RESPONSIBLE AND THEREFORE NOT ELIGIBLE FOR CONTRACT AWARD.**

Provided that \_\_\_\_\_ (Prime Contractor) is awarded the State contract in conjunction with \_\_\_\_\_ (Project Name), such Prime Contractor intends to enter into a subcontract with \_\_\_\_\_ (Second Tier) committing to participation by the MBE firm \_\_\_\_\_ (Name of Second or Third Tier as applicable) with MDOT Certification Number \_\_\_\_\_, which will receive at least \_\_\_% of the Total Payments made to the Prime Contractor for performing the products/services for the State contract. The initial commitment to the MBE firm is \$\_\_\_\_\_ (Contract Amount) based on the Prime Contractor's contract amount minus the amounts identified for Owner's contingency, allowances, and reimbursable expenses as described in the RFP.

NAICS CODE	WORK ITEM, SPECIFICATION NUMBER, LINE ITEMS OR WORK CATEGORIES (IF APPLICABLE)	DESCRIPTION OF SPECIFIC PRODUCTS AND/OR SERVICES

Each of the Contractor and Subcontractor acknowledges that, for purposes of determining the accuracy of the information provided herein, the Procurement Officer may request additional information, including, without limitation, copies of the subcontract agreements and quotes. Each of the Contractor and Subcontractor solemnly affirms under the penalties of perjury that: (i) the information provided in this MBE Subcontractor Project Participation Affidavit is true to the best of its knowledge, information and belief, and (ii) has fully complied and will comply with the State Minority Business Enterprise law, State Finance and Procurement Article §14-308(a)(2), Annotated Code of Maryland (Procurement Article) which provides that, except as otherwise provided by law, a contractor may not identify a certified minority business enterprise in a Bid/Proposal and:

- (1) fail to request, receive, or otherwise obtain authorization from the certified minority business enterprise to identify the certified Minority Business Enterprise in its Bid/Proposal;
- (2) fail to notify the certified Minority Business Enterprise before execution of the Contract of its inclusion of the Bid/Proposal;
- (3) fail to use the certified Minority Business Enterprise in the performance of the Contract; or
- (4) pay the certified Minority Business Enterprise solely for the use of its name in the Bid/Proposal.

Further, each signatory agrees that the MBE firm will be performing a commercially useful function as required by the Procurement Article and the Code of Maryland Regulations. Each signatory solemnly affirms under the penalties of perjury that the information provided in this form is true to the best of their knowledge, information and belief.

<p><b>PRIME CONTRACTOR</b></p> <p>Signature of Representative: _____</p> <p>Printed Name and Title: _____</p> <p>Firm's Name: _____</p> <p>Federal Identification Number: _____</p> <p>Address: _____</p> <p>Telephone: _____</p> <p>Date: _____</p>	<p><b>SUBCONTRACTOR (SECOND-TIER)</b></p> <p>Signature of Representative: _____</p> <p>Printed Name and Title: _____</p> <p>Firm's Name: _____</p> <p>Federal Identification Number: _____</p> <p>Address: _____</p> <p>Telephone: _____</p> <p>Date: _____</p>	<p><b>SUBCONTRACTOR (THIRD-TIER):</b></p> <p>Signature of Representative: _____</p> <p>Printed Name and Title: _____</p> <p>Firm's Name: _____</p> <p>Federal Identification Number: _____</p> <p>Address: _____</p> <p>Telephone: _____</p> <p>Date: _____</p>
--	---	---

**MBE Attachment D-3B  
MBE PRIME - PROJECT PARTICIPATION CERTIFICATION**

**PLEASE COMPLETE AND SUBMIT THIS FORM TO ATTEST EACH SPECIFIC ITEM OF WORK THAT YOUR MBE FIRM HAS LISTED ON THE MBE PARTICIPATION SCHEDULE (ATTACHMENT D-1A) FOR PURPOSES OF MEETING THE MBE PARTICIPATION GOALS. THIS FORM MUST BE SUBMITTED WITHIN 10 WORKING DAYS OF NOTIFICATION OF APPARENT AWARD. IF THE BIDDER/OFFEROR FAILS TO RETURN THIS AFFIDAVIT WITHIN THE REQUIRED TIME, THE PROCUREMENT OFFICER MAY DETERMINE THAT THE BIDDER/OFFEROR IS NOT RESPONSIBLE AND THEREFORE NOT ELIGIBLE FOR CONTRACT AWARD.**

Provided that \_\_\_\_\_ (Prime Contractor's Name) with Certification Number \_\_\_\_\_ is awarded the State contract in conjunction with \_\_\_\_\_ (Project Name), such MBE Prime Contractor intends to perform with its own forces at least \$\_\_\_\_\_ which equals to \_\_\_\_\_% (Total MBE Payments to MBE Firm as a percentage of Total Payments made to Prime) with an initial commitment of \$\_\_\_\_\_ (Contract Amount) for performing the products or services for the Contract described below.

<b>NAICS CODE</b>	<b>WORK ITEM, SPECIFICATION NUMBER, LINE ITEMS OR WORK CATEGORIES (IF APPLICABLE). FOR CONSTRUCTION PROJECTS, GENERAL CONDITIONS MUST BE LISTED SEPARATELY.</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION OF SPECIFIC PRODUCTS AND/OR SERVICES</b>	<b>VALUE OF THE WORK</b>

<p><b>MBE PRIME CONTRACTOR</b></p> <p>Signature of Representative: _____</p> <p>Printed Name and Title: _____</p> <p>Firm's Name: _____</p> <p>Federal Identification Number: _____</p> <p>Address: _____</p> <p>Telephone: _____</p> <p>Date: _____</p>
--

**Attachment E**  
**Corporate Profile**

**Consultant Corporate Profile**

**Firm Contact Information**

Firm Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Federal ID Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Point of Contact: \_\_\_\_\_ Phone Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Regional Office Address: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**Firm Background Information**

Year Firm Founded: \_\_\_\_\_

Is the firm MDOT MBE Certified? Yes/No

If certified, provide the certification number and minority status.

\_\_\_\_\_

Primary Business / Service Provided: \_\_\_\_\_

Number of Years Performing Services: \_\_\_\_\_

Number Full Time Employees (Corporate / Regional Office): \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_

Provide a brief narrative outlining the firm's history.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Provide a brief narrative outlining what services the firm intends to self-perform.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Provide a brief narrative outlining what services the firm intends to subcontract to others.

---

---

---

---

---

---

Provide a brief narrative outlining the firm's familiarity with standards, laws and conditions as they apply to the work to be performed under this project.

---

---

---

---

---

---

Provide a brief narrative clarifying the firm's capacity to perform services as outlined in the RFP.

---

---

---

---

---

---

Provide sales volume and project completion data for the most recently completed three-year period. Note that information provided is to be for the regional / local office that would be responsible for completing work under this solicitation.

Volume	Annual Sales	Completed Projects	Largest Project
2015	_____	_____	_____
2016	_____	_____	_____
2017	_____	_____	_____
2018	_____	_____	_____

**Firm References**

Provide three (3) references. Note that references are to be from different projects; that is, only one reference per project is allowed.

Project Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_  
Company Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Phone Number and email: \_\_\_\_\_  
Project Relationship: \_\_\_\_\_

Project Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_  
Company Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Phone Number and email: \_\_\_\_\_  
Project Relationship: \_\_\_\_\_

Project Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_  
Company Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Phone Number and email: \_\_\_\_\_  
Project Relationship: \_\_\_\_\_

**Disclosure of Contract Issues; Litigation; Criminal Investigations**

In the last five years, list and discuss any alleged prior or ongoing contract failures (potential judgment/settlement in excess of \$100,000), contract breaches (potential judgment/settlement in excess of \$100,000), other significant civil litigation, and all criminal litigation or investigations, which involved your firm.

---

---

---

---

**Failure to Complete**

In the last five (5) years, disclose any projects that your firm was involved with that were not completed.

---

---

---

---

**Insurance**

Include current certificates of insurance showing the limits of liability maintained by your firm in each of the following categories: workers' compensation, employer's liability, commercial general liability, automobile liability, umbrella or excess liability, and property insurance.

---

---

---

---

**Prepared By:**

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**Attachment F**  
**50% Construction Documents**

**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

**VOLUME I**

**DIVISION 00 - PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS**

BY BARTON MALOW

**DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

011000	SUMMARY
012100	ALLOWANCES
012200	UNIT PRICES
012300	ALTERNATES
012500	SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES
012600	CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES
012900	PAYMENT PROCEDURES
013100	PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION
013200	CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION
013233	PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION
013300	SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES
014000	QUALITY REQUIREMENTS
014200	REFERENCES
015000	TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS
015639	TEMPORARY TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION
016000	PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS
017300	EXECUTION
017419	CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL
017700	CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES
017823	OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA
017839	PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS
017900	DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

**DIVISION 02 - EXISTING CONDITIONS**

024119	SELECTIVE STRUCTURE DEMOLITION
--------	--------------------------------

**DIVISION 03 - CONCRETE**

031100	CONCRETE FORMING
031500	CONCRETE ACCESSORIES
032000	CONCRETE REINFORCEMENT
033000	CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE
033510	POLISHED CONCRETE FINISHING
033600	SPECIAL CONCRETE FLOOR FINISHES

**DIVISION 04 - MASONRY**

042200	CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY
042200A	ACOUSTICAL CONCRETE MASONRY UNIT ((DIFFUSORBLOX®)
047200	CAST STONE MASONRY

**DIVISION 05 - METALS**

051200	STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING
051213	ARCHITECTURALLY EXPOSED STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING
052100	STEEL JOISTS
053113	STEEL FLOOR DECKING
053114	STEEL FLOOR CENTERING
053123	STEEL ROOF DECKING
054000	COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING
055000	METAL FABRICATIONS

055213 PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS  
055813 COLUMN COVERS

**DIVISION 06 - WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES**

061053 MISCELLANEOUS ROUGH CARPENTRY  
061600 SHEATHING  
064023 INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

**DIVISION 07 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

071113 BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING  
071800 TRAFFIC COATINGS  
071900 WATER REPELLENTS  
072100 THERMAL INSULATION  
072419 WATER-DRAINAGE EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEM (EIFS)  
072500 WEATHER BARRIERS  
074113 METAL ROOF PANELS  
074213 METAL WALL PANELS  
075216 STYRENE-BUTADIENE-STYRENE (SBS) MODIFIED BITUMINOUS MEMBRANE  
ROOFING  
076100 SHEET METAL ROOFING  
076200 SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM  
077100 ROOF SPECIALTIES  
077129 MANUFACTURED ROOF EXPANSION JOINTS  
077200 ROOF ACCESSORIES  
078100 APPLIED FIREPROOFING  
078123 INTUMESCENT MASTIC FIREPROOFING  
078413 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING  
078446 FIRE-RESISTANT JOINT SYSTEMS  
079200 JOINT SEALANTS  
079500 EXPANSION CONTROL

**DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS**

081113 HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES  
081416 FLUSH WOOD DOORS  
082200 FIBERGLASS (FRP) DOORS AND FRAMES  
083113 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES  
083300 VERTICAL ACTING FIRE & SMOKE RATED DOORS WITH INTEGRAL EGRESS DOORS  
083323 OVERHEAD COILING DOORS  
084113 ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS  
084413 GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS  
087100 DOOR HARDWARE  
088000 GLAZING  
089000 LOUVERS AND VENTS

**DIVISION 09 - FINISHES**

092116.23 GYPSUM BOARD SHAFT WALL ASSEMBLIES  
092216 NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING  
092900 GYPSUM BOARD  
093000 TILING  
095113 ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS  
096816 CARPETING  
097800 RESIN INFUSED COMPOSITE WALL PANELS  
098000 ACOUSTICAL METAL WALL PANELS  
099113 EXTERIOR PAINTING  
099123 INTERIOR PAINTING  
099600 HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS

**DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES**

101400	SIGNAGE
102113.19	PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS
102239	FOLDING PANEL PARTITIONS
102800	TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES
104413	FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS
105113	METAL LOCKERS
107316	PREFABRICATED CANOPY SYSTEMS

**DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT**

111300	LOADING DOCK EQUIPMENT
--------	------------------------

**DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS**

122413	ROLLER WINDOW SHADES
124813	ENTRANCE FLOOR MATS AND FRAMES

**DIVISION 13 - SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION**

NOT APPLICABLE

**DIVISION 14 - CONVEYING EQUIPMENT**

NOT APPLICABLE

**VOLUME II**

**DIVISION 21 - FIRE SUPPRESSION**

210000	BASIC FIRE SUPPRESSION REQUIREMENTS
210517	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING
210518	ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING
210523	GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR FIRE PROTECTION PIPING
210529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
210553	IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
211119	FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS
211200	FIRE-SUPPRESSION STANDPIPES
211313	WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS
211316	DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

**DIVISION 22 - PLUMBING**

220513	COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT
220517	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220518	ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220519	METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220523.12	BALL VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220523.13	BUTTERFLY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220523.14	CHECK VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING
220529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
220548.13	VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
220553	IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
220719	PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION
221113	FACILITY WATER DISTRIBUTION PIPING
221116	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING
221119	DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES
221123.21	INLINE, DOMESTIC-WATER PUMPS

221313	FACILITY SANITARY SEWERS
221316	SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING
221319	SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES
221319.13	SANITARY DRAINS
221413	FACILITY STORM DRAINAGE PIPING
221423	STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES
223300	ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS
224213.13	COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS
224213.16	COMMERCIAL URINALS
224216.13	COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES
224216.16	COMMERCIAL SINKS
224223	COMMERCIAL SHOWERS
224500	EMERGENCY PLUMBING FIXTURES
224716	PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

**DIVISION 23 – HEATING VENTILATING AND AIR CONDITIONING**

230513	COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT
230516	EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING
230517	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING
230518	ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING
230519	METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING
230523.11	GLOBE VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING
230523.12	BALL VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING
230523.13	BUTTERFLY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING
230523.14	CHECK VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING
230529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
230548.13	VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC
230553	IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT
230593	TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC
230713	DUCT INSULATION
230716	HVAC EQUIPMENT INSULATION
230719	HVAC PIPING INSULATION
230923	DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) SYSTEM FOR HVAC
231123	FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING
232113	HYDRONIC PIPING
232116	HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES
232123	HYDRONIC PUMPS
232516	WATER TREATMENT FOR OPEN-LOOP HYDRONIC SYSTEMS
232533	HVAC MAKEUP-WATER FILTRATION EQUIPMENT
233113	METAL DUCTS
233300	AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES
233346	FLEXIBLE DUCTS
233423	HVAC POWER VENTILATORS
233600	AIR TERMINAL UNITS
233713.13	AIR DIFFUSERS
233713.23	REGISTERS AND GRILLES
233723	HVAC GRAVITY VENTILATORS
235113.16	VENT DAMPERS
235216	CONDENSING BOILERS
236416	CENTRIFUGAL WATER CHILLERS
236514.13	OPEN-CIRCUIT, INDUCED-DRAFT, COUNTERFLOW COOLING TOWERS
237343.16	OUTDOOR, SEMI-CUSTOM AIR-HANDLING UNITS
238219	FAN COIL UNITS

**DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL**

260519	LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES
260523	CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES
260526	GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
260529	HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
260533	RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
260544	SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING
260553	IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
260573.13	SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDIES
260573.16	COORDINATION STUDIES
260573.19	ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS
260800	COMMISSIONING OF ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS
260923	LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES
260943.16	ADDRESSABLE-LUMINAIRE LIGHTING CONTROLS
262213	LOW-VOLTAGE DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS
262416	PANELBOARDS
262726	WIRING DEVICES
262813	FUSES
262816	ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS
262923	VARIABLE-FREQUENCY MOTOR CONTROLLERS
264113	LIGHTNING PROTECTION FOR STRUCTURES
265119	LED INTERIOR LIGHTING
265213	EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

**DIVISION 27 - COMMUNICATIONS**

BY TOWN OF OCEAN CITY

**DIVISION 28 - ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY**

NOT APPLICABLE

**DIVISION 31 - EARTHWORK**

311000	SITE CLEARING
312000	EARTHMOVING – CIVIL
312000	EARTHMOVING – STRUCTURAL
312319	DEWATERING
314600	NEEDLING & SHORING
315000	EXCAVATION SUPPORT AND PROTECTION

**DIVISION 32 - EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS**

321216	ASPHALT PAVING
321313	CONCRETE PAVING
321373	CONCRETE PAVING JOINT SEALANTS
321723	PAVEMENT MARKINGS

**DIVISION 33 - UTILITIES**

330510	UTILITY STRUCTURES
334100	STORM UTILITY DRAINAGE PIPING

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 011000 - SUMMARY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Project information.
2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
3. Work under separate contracts.
4. Access to site.
5. Coordination with occupants.
6. Work restrictions.
7. Specification and drawing conventions.
8. Miscellaneous provisions.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities.

1.3 PROJECT INFORMATION

A. Project Identification: Ocean City Convention Center Expansion Phase 3.

1. Project Location: 4001 Coastal Highway, Ocean City, Maryland.

B. Owner: Town of Ocean City.

1. Owner's Representative: Terry McGean, P.E., City Engineer, 410.279.8845.

C. Architect: Becker Morgan Group, Inc., 312 West Main Street, Suite 300, Salisbury, Maryland 21801.

1. Architect's Representatives: W. Ronald Morgan, AIA, Principal Architect, and Jack Mumford, III, Project Architect, 410.546.9100.

D. Architect's Consultants: The Architect has retained the following design professionals who have prepared designated portions of the Contract Documents:

1. Civil Engineering – Carroll Engineering, Inc. – Judy Carroll – jcarroll@ceiengineering.com, 443.386.4500.
2. Structural Engineering – Morabito Consultants, Inc. – Fred Morabito, P.E. – fred@morabitoconsultants.com, 410.467.2377.
3. Mechanical, Electrical, Plumbing Engineer – WFT Engineering – Mike Gentry – mikeg@wfteng.com, 202.256.0855.
4. Construction Manager: Barton Malow – Rebecca Howe – rebecca.howe@bartonmalow.com, 443.757.1000.

1.4 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents:
- B. Type of Contract:
  - 1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

1.5 WORK UNDER SEPARATE CONTRACTS

- A. General: Cooperate fully with separate contractors so work on those contracts may be carried out smoothly, without interfering with or delaying work under this Contract or other contracts. Coordinate the Work of this Contract with work performed under separate contracts.

1.6 ACCESS TO SITE

- A. General: Contractor shall have limited use of Project site for construction operations as indicated on Drawings by the Contract limits and as indicated by requirements of this Section.
- B. Use of Site: Limit use of Project site to work in areas indicated. Do not disturb portions of Project site beyond areas in which the Work is indicated.
  - 1. Limits: Confine construction operations to areas where work is permitted.
  - 2. Driveways, Walkways and Entrances: Keep driveways loading areas, and entrances serving premises clear and available to Owner, Owner's employees, and emergency vehicles at all times. Do not use these areas for parking or storage of materials.
    - a. Schedule deliveries to minimize use of driveways and entrances by construction operations.
    - b. Schedule deliveries to minimize space and time requirements for storage of materials and equipment on-site.
- C. Condition of Existing Building: Maintain portions of existing building affected by construction operations in a weathertight condition throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.

1.7 COORDINATION WITH OCCUPANTS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy site and existing building(s) during entire construction period. Cooperate with Owner during construction operations to minimize conflicts and facilitate Owner usage. Perform the Work so as not to interfere with Owner's day-to-day operations. Maintain existing exits unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Maintain access to existing walkways, corridors, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities. Do not close or obstruct walkways, corridors, or other occupied or used facilities without written permission from Owner and approval of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Notify Owner not less than 72 hours in advance of activities that will affect Owner's operations.
- B. Owner Limited Occupancy of Completed Areas of Construction: Owner reserves the right to occupy and to place and install equipment in completed portions of the Work, prior to Substantial Completion of the Work, provided such occupancy does not interfere with completion of the Work. Such placement of equipment and limited occupancy shall not constitute acceptance of the total Work.
  - 1. Architect will prepare a Certificate of Substantial Completion for each specific portion of the Work to be occupied prior to Owner acceptance of the completed Work.

2. Obtain a Certificate of Occupancy from authorities having jurisdiction before limited Owner occupancy.
3. Before limited Owner occupancy, mechanical and electrical systems shall be fully operational, and required tests and inspections shall be successfully completed. On occupancy, Owner will operate and maintain mechanical and electrical systems serving occupied portions of Work.
4. On occupancy, Owner will assume responsibility for maintenance and custodial service for occupied portions of Work.

#### 1.8 WORK RESTRICTIONS

- A. Work Restrictions, General: Comply with restrictions on construction operations.
  1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets and with other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. On-Site Work Hours: Limit work in the existing building to hours determined by Owner's restrictions, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Weekend Hours: Coordinate with Owner restrictions.
  2. Early Morning Hours: Coordinate with Owner restrictions.
  3. Hours for Utility Shutdowns: Coordinate with Owner restrictions.
  4. Hours for pile driving: Coordinate with Owner restrictions.
- C. Existing Utility Interruptions: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after providing temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  1. Notify Owner not less than 7 days in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with utility interruptions.
- D. Noise, Vibration, and Odors: Coordinate operations that may result in high levels of noise and vibration, odors, or other disruption to Owner occupancy with Owner.
  1. Notify Owner not less than 7 days in advance of proposed disruptive operations.
  2. Obtain Owner's written permission before proceeding with disruptive operations.
- E. Nonsmoking Building: Smoking is not permitted within the building or within 25 feet (8 m) of entrances, operable windows, or outdoor-air intakes.
- F. Controlled Substances: Use of tobacco products and other controlled substances within the existing building is not permitted.
- G. Employee Identification: Owner will provide identification tags for Contractor personnel working on Project site. Require personnel to use identification tags at all times.
- H. Employee Screening: Comply with Owner's requirements for drug and background screening of Contractor personnel working on Project site.
  1. Maintain list of approved screened personnel with Owner's representative.

#### 1.9 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:

1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
  2. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- C. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
  2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations published as part of the U.S. National CAD Standard and scheduled on Drawings.
  3. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Section numbers found in this Project Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 011000

SECTION 012100 - ALLOWANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.
  - 1. Certain items are specified in the Contract Documents by allowances. Allowances have been established in lieu of additional requirements and to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when direction will be provided to Contractor. If necessary, additional requirements will be issued by Change Order.
- B. Types of allowances include the following:
  - 1. Lump-sum allowances.
  - 2. Unit-cost allowances.
  - 3. Quantity allowances.
  - 4. Contingency allowances.
  - 5. Testing and inspecting allowances.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Unit Prices" for procedures for using unit prices.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for procedures governing the use of allowances for testing and inspecting.
  - 3. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for items of Work covered by allowances.

1.3 SELECTION AND PURCHASE

- A. At the earliest practical date after award of the Contract, advise Architect of the date when final selection and purchase of each product or system described by an allowance must be completed to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. At Architect's request, obtain proposals for each allowance for use in making final selections. Include recommendations that are relevant to performing the Work.
- C. Purchase products and systems selected by Architect from the designated supplier.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit proposals for purchase of products or systems included in allowances, in the form specified for Change Orders.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit invoices or delivery slips to show actual quantities of materials delivered to the site for use in fulfillment of each allowance.

- B. Submit time sheets and other documentation to show labor time and cost for installation of allowance items that include installation as part of the allowance.
- C. Coordinate and process submittals for allowance items in same manner as for other portions of the Work.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate allowance items with other portions of the Work. Furnish templates as required to coordinate installation.

#### 1.7 LUMP-SUM UNIT-COST AND QUANTITY ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.
- C. Unused Materials: Return unused materials purchased under an allowance to manufacturer or supplier for credit to Owner, after installation has been completed and accepted.
  - 1. If requested by Architect, retain and prepare unused material for storage by Owner. Deliver unused material to Owner's storage space as directed.

#### 1.8 CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCES

- A. Use the contingency allowance only as directed by Architect for Owner's purposes and only by Change Orders that indicate amounts to be charged to the allowance.
- B. Contractor's overhead, profit, and related costs for products and equipment ordered by Owner under the contingency allowance are included in the allowance and are not part of the Contract Sum. These costs include delivery, installation, taxes, insurance, equipment rental, and similar costs.
- C. Change Orders authorizing use of funds from the contingency allowance will include Contractor's related costs and reasonable overhead and profit margins.
- D. At Project closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the contingency allowance to Owner by Change Order.

#### 1.9 TESTING AND INSPECTING ALLOWANCES

- A. Testing and inspecting allowances include the cost of engaging testing agencies, actual tests and inspections, and reporting results.
- B. The allowance does not include incidental labor required to assist the testing agency or costs for retesting if previous tests and inspections result in failure. The cost for incidental labor to assist the testing agency shall be included in the Contract Sum.
- C. Costs of services not required by the Contract Documents are not included in the allowance.
- D. At Project closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the testing and inspecting allowance to Owner by Change Order.

1.10 ADJUSTMENT OF ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance Adjustment: To adjust allowance amounts, prepare a Change Order proposal based on the difference between purchase amount and the allowance, multiplied by final measurement of work-in-place where applicable. If applicable, include reasonable allowances for cutting losses, tolerances, mixing wastes, normal product imperfections, and similar margins.
  - 1. Include installation costs in purchase amount only where indicated as part of the allowance.
  - 2. If requested, prepare explanation and documentation to substantiate distribution of overhead costs and other margins claimed.
  - 3. Submit substantiation of a change in scope of work, if any, claimed in Change Orders related to unit-cost allowances.
  - 4. Owner reserves the right to establish the quantity of work-in-place by independent quantity survey, measure, or count.
  
- B. Submit claims for increased costs because of a change in scope or nature of the allowance described in the Contract Documents, whether for the purchase order amount or Contractor's handling, labor, installation, overhead, and profit.
  - 1. Do not include Contractor's or subcontractor's indirect expense in the Change Order cost amount unless it is clearly shown that the nature or extent of work has changed from what could have been foreseen from information in the Contract Documents.
  - 2. No change to Contractor's indirect expense is permitted for selection of higher- or lower-priced materials or systems of the same scope and nature as originally indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine products covered by an allowance promptly on delivery for damage or defects. Return damaged or defective products to manufacturer for replacement.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate materials and their installation for each allowance with related materials and installations to ensure that each allowance item is completely integrated and interfaced with related work.

END OF SECTION 012100

SECTION 012200 - UNIT PRICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for unit prices.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Contract Modification Procedures" for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for general testing and inspecting requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Unit price is an amount incorporated in the Agreement, applicable during the duration of the Work as a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment, or services, or a portion of the Work, added to or deducted from the Contract Sum by appropriate modification, if the scope of Work or estimated quantities of Work required by the Contract Documents are increased or decreased.

1.4 PROCEDURES

- A. Unit prices include all necessary material, plus cost for delivery, installation, insurance, applicable taxes, overhead, and profit.
- B. Measurement and Payment: See individual Specification Sections for work that requires establishment of unit prices. Methods of measurement and payment for unit prices are specified in those Sections.
- C. Owner reserves the right to reject Contractor's measurement of work-in-place that involves use of established unit prices and to have this work measured, at Owner's expense, by an independent surveyor acceptable to Contractor.
- D. List of Unit Prices: A schedule of unit prices is included in Part 3. Specification Sections referenced in the schedule contain requirements for materials described under each unit price.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012200

SECTION 012300 - ALTERNATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the bidding requirements that may be added to or deducted from the base bid amount if Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Alternates described in this Section are part of the Work only if enumerated in the Agreement.
  - 2. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate alternate into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.

1.4 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.
  - 1. Include as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation whether or not indicated as part of alternate.
- B. Notification: Immediately following award of the Contract, notify each party involved, in writing, of the status of each alternate. Indicate if alternates have been accepted, rejected, or deferred for later consideration. Include a complete description of negotiated revisions to alternates.
- C. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other work of the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

- A. Alternate No. 1: Stainless Steel Railings.
  - 1. Base Bid: Provide aluminum pipe railings as specified in Division 05 number Section "Pipe and Tube Railings."
  - 2. Alternate: Provide stainless steel pipe railings as specified in Division 05 number Section "Pipe and Tube Railings."
- B. Alternate No. 2: Roof Access.

1. Base Bid: Provide roof access from room Roof Access S-3R only.
  2. Alternate: In addition to base bid work, provide access to roof on north side from Hall M220, similar to south roof access.
- C. Alternate No. 3: Stair at Storage 167A.
1. Base Bid: No work.
  2. Alternate: In lieu of base bid work, provide stair and 45-minute rated door in Storage 167A per SKA-05.
- D. Alternate No. 4: Wider Ramp at 167C.
1. Base Bid: Provide ramp as detailed on 5/A402.
  2. Alternate: In lieu of base bid work, provide 10'-0" wide ramp and 14'-9" wide stair. Railings shall be provided as drawn, except as specifically noted. At stair, one intermediate, floor-mounted handrail shall be removed (i.e., provide two). At ramp, provide one intermediate, floor-mounted, removable handrail.
- E. Alternate No. 5: Ballroom Flooring.
1. Base Bid: Provide carpet in Ballroom 226 and 227 as shown on Finish Schedule.
  2. Alternate: In lieu of carpet, provide Norament Grano rubber flooring. Architect may select up to three (3) colors for floor pattern.
- F. Alternate No. 6: Roofing.
1. Base Bid: Provide standing seam metal roofing system and SBS modified bituminous roofing system from manufacturer as listed in Specifications.
  2. Alternate: Provide standing seam metal roofing system and SBS modified bituminous roofing system from The Garland Company, Inc., including sheet metal roofing, flashing, and other roofing specialties and accessories as required for complete installation.

END OF SECTION 012300

## SECTION 012500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.
  - 4. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific requirements and limitations for substitutions.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
  - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
  - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use CSI Form 13.1A.
  - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
    - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation cannot be provided, if applicable.
    - b. Coordination information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors, that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
    - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
    - d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
    - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.

- f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
  - g. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.
  - h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
  - i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from ICC-ES.
  - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
  - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
  - l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials, and is appropriate for applications indicated.
  - m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor through Construction Manager of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
  - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

## 1.6 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
  - 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
    - a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.

- b. Requested substitution provides sustainable design characteristics that specified product provided.
- c. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- d. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
- e. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- f. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- g. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- h. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- i. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

B. Substitutions for Convenience: Not allowed unless otherwise indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012500

SECTION 012600 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Substitution Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after the Contract award.

1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue through Construction Manager supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710, "Architect's Supplemental Instructions."

1.4 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Construction Manager will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
  - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Construction Manager are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
  - 2. Within 20 days, when not otherwise specified, after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
    - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
    - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
    - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
    - d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
    - e. Quotation Form: Use forms acceptable to Architect.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Construction Manager.
  - 1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.

2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
6. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
7. Proposal Request Form: Use form acceptable to Architect.

#### 1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGE ORDERS

- A. Allowance Adjustment: See Division 01 Section "Allowances" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect actual costs of allowances.
- B. Unit-Price Adjustment: See Division 01 Section "Unit Prices" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect measured scope of unit-price work.

#### 1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Changes Proposal Request, Construction Manager will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701.

#### 1.7 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Construction Change Directive: Construction Manager may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G714. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
  1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.
  1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012600

SECTION 012900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Contract Modification Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Construction Progress Documentation" for administrative requirements governing the preparation and submittal of the Contractor's construction schedule.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with other required administrative forms and schedules, including the following:
    - a. Application for Payment forms with continuation sheets.
    - b. Submittal schedule.
    - c. Items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Submit the schedule of values to Architect through Construction Manager at earliest possible date, but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
  - 3. Subschedules for Phased Work: Where the Work is separated into phases requiring separately phased payments, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with each phase of payment.
  - 4. Subschedules for Separate Elements of Work: Where the Contractor's construction schedule defines separate elements of the Work, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with each element.
  - 5. Subschedules for Separate Design Contracts: Where the Owner has retained design professionals under separate contracts who will each provide certification of payment requests, provide subschedules showing values coordinated with the scope of each design services contract as described in Division 01 Section "Summary."
- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
  - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:

- a. Project name and location.
  - b. Name of Architect.
  - c. Architect's project number.
  - d. Contractor's name and address.
  - e. Date of submittal.
2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703.
  3. Arrange the schedule of values in tabular form with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
    - a. Related Specification Section or Division.
    - b. Description of the Work.
    - c. Name of subcontractor.
    - d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
    - e. Name of supplier.
    - f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
    - g. Dollar value of the following, as a percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent.
      - 1) Labor.
      - 2) Materials.
      - 3) Equipment.
4. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Coordinate with Project Manual table of contents. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.
    - a. Include separate line items under Contractor and principal subcontracts for Project closeout requirements in an amount totaling five percent of the Contract Sum and subcontract amount.
  5. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; total shall equal the Contract Sum.
  6. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
    - a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site. If required, include evidence of insurance.
  7. Provide separate line items in the schedule of values for initial cost of materials, for each subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value of that part of the Work.
  8. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each allowance. Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
  9. Purchase Contracts: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each purchase contract. Show line-item value of purchase contract. Indicate owner payments or deposits, if any, and balance to be paid by Contractor.
  10. Each item in the schedule of values and Applications for Payment shall be complete. Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each item.
    - a. Temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place may be shown either as separate line items in the schedule of values or distributed as general overhead expense, at Contractor's option.

11. Schedule Updating: Update and resubmit the schedule of values before the next Applications for Payment when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum.

#### 1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and Construction Manager and paid for by Owner.
  1. Initial Application for Payment, Application for Payment at time of Substantial Completion, and final Application for Payment involve additional requirements.
- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Agreement between Owner and Contractor. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- C. Payment Application Times: Submit Application for Payment to Architect by the first day of the month or as directed by Owner. The period covered by each Application for Payment is one month, ending on the last day of the month or as directed by Owner.
  1. Submit draft copy of Application for Payment seven days prior to due date for review by Architect.
- D. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702/CMA and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment.
- E. Application for Payment Forms: Use forms provided by Owner for Applications for Payment. Sample copies are included in Project Manual.
- F. Application for Payment Forms: Use forms acceptable to Architect and Owner for Applications for Payment. Submit forms for approval with initial submittal of schedule of values.
- G. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
  1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
  2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
  3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
  4. Indicate separate amounts for work being carried out under Owner-requested project acceleration.
- H. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
  1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment, for stored materials.
  2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.

3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
  - a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
  - b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
  - c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.
  
- I. Transmittal: Submit three signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
  1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
  
- J. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from entities lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract and related to the Work covered by the payment.
  1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
  2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
  3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
  4. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms acceptable to Owner.
  
- K. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's liens from subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, and suppliers for construction period covered by the previous application.
  1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
  2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
  3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
  4. Submit final Application for Payment with or preceded by conditional final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
  5. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms, acceptable to Owner.
  
- L. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
  1. List of subcontractors.
  2. Schedule of values.
  3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
  4. Combined Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final) incorporating Work of multiple contracts, with indication of acceptance of schedule by each Contractor.
  5. Products list (preliminary if not final).
  6. Schedule of unit prices.
  7. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
  8. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
  9. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
  10. Copies of building permits.
  11. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.

12. Initial progress report.
  13. Report of preconstruction conference.
  14. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
  15. Performance and payment bonds.
  16. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.
- M. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
  2. This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- N. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
  2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
  3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
  4. AIA Document G706, "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims."
  5. AIA Document G706A, "Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens."
  6. AIA Document G707, "Consent of Surety to Final Payment."
  7. Evidence that claims have been settled.
  8. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
  9. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012900

SECTION 013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. General coordination procedures.
  - 2. Coordination drawings.
  - 3. Requests for Information (RFIs).
  - 4. Project Web site.
  - 5. Project meetings.
- B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility are assigned to a specific contractor.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Execution" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating closeout of the Contract.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RFI: Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
  - 1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
  - 2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
  - 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
- B. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and telephone numbers, including home, office, and cellular telephone numbers and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.
  - 1. Post copies of list in project meeting room, in temporary field office, and by each temporary telephone. Keep list current at all times.

## 1.5 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations, included in different Sections, that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
  3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
  4. Where availability of space is limited, coordinate installation of components to ensure maximum performance and access required for maintenance, service, and repair of all components, including but not limited to mechanical, electrical, and fire protection components.
- B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
  3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
  4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
  5. Progress meetings.
  6. Preinstallation conferences.
  7. Project closeout activities.
  8. Startup and adjustment of systems.
- D. Conservation: Coordinate construction activities to ensure that operations are carried out with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.
1. Salvage materials and equipment involved in performance of, but not actually incorporated into, the Work. See other Sections for disposition of salvaged materials that are designated as Owner's property.

## 1.6 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely shown on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:

- a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
  - b. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
  - c. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
  - d. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
  - e. Indicate required installation sequences.
  - f. Indicate dimensions shown on the Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternate sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
  2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within ceiling plenum to accommodate layout of light fixtures indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
  3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
  4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
  5. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
    - a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
    - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
    - c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
  6. Electrical Work: Show the following:
    - a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) in diameter and larger.
    - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
    - c. Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor control center locations.
    - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.
  7. Fire-Protection System: Show the following:
    - a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
  8. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make changes as directed and resubmit.

9. Coordination Drawing Prints: Prepare coordination drawing prints according to requirements in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures."

- C. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following requirements:

1. File Preparation Format: DWG, Version 2007, operating in Microsoft Windows operating system.
2. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using format same as file preparation format and Portable Data File (PDF) format.
3. Contractor may license from Architect digital data files of Drawings for use in preparing coordination digital data files according to requirements in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures."

#### 1.7 REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION (RFIs)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.

1. Architect will return RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor with no response.
2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.

- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:

1. Project name.
2. Project number.
3. Date.
4. Name of Contractor.
5. Name of Architect.
6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
7. RFI subject.
8. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
9. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
10. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
11. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
12. Contractor's signature.
13. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
  - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.

- C. RFI Forms: Software-generated form generated through Project website.

1. Attachments shall be electronic files in Adobe Acrobat PDF format.

- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.

1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
    - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
    - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
    - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
    - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
    - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
    - f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
    - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
  2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt of additional information.
  3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Division 01 Section "Contract Modification Procedures."
    - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly. Include the following:
1. Project name.
  2. Name and address of Contractor.
  3. Name and address of Architect.
  4. RFI number including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
  5. RFI description.
  6. Date the RFI was submitted.
  7. Date Architect's response was received.
- F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.
1. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
- 1.8 PROJECT WEB SITE
- A. Use Architect's Project Web site for purposes of hosting and managing project communication and documentation until Final Completion. Project Web site shall include the following functions:
1. RFI forms and logs.
  2. Submittals forms and logs.
- 1.9 PROJECT MEETINGS
- A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times.
  2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.

3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.
- B. Preconstruction Conference: Schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.
1. Conduct the conference to review responsibilities and personnel assignments.
  2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
    - a. Tentative construction schedule.
    - b. Phasing.
    - c. Critical work sequencing and long-lead items.
    - d. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
    - e. Lines of communications.
    - f. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
    - g. Procedures for RFIs.
    - h. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
    - i. Submittal procedures.
    - j. Preparation of record documents.
    - k. Use of the premises and existing building.
    - l. Work restrictions.
    - m. Working hours.
    - n. Owner's occupancy requirements.
    - o. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
    - p. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
    - q. Construction waste management and recycling.
    - r. Parking availability.
    - s. Office, work, and storage areas.
    - t. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
    - u. First aid.
    - v. Security.
    - w. Progress cleaning.
  4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.
1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
  2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
    - a. Contract Documents.
    - b. Options.
    - c. Related RFIs.
    - d. Related Change Orders.
    - e. Purchases.

- f. Deliveries.
  - g. Submittals.
  - h. Review of mockups.
  - i. Possible conflicts.
  - j. Compatibility requirements.
  - k. Time schedules.
  - l. Weather limitations.
  - m. Manufacturer's written instructions.
  - n. Warranty requirements.
  - o. Compatibility of materials.
  - p. Acceptability of substrates.
  - q. Temporary facilities and controls.
  - r. Space and access limitations.
  - s. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - t. Testing and inspecting requirements.
  - u. Installation procedures.
  - v. Coordination with other work.
  - w. Required performance results.
  - x. Protection of adjacent work.
  - y. Protection of construction and personnel.
- 3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
  - 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
  - 5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- D. Project Closeout Conference: Schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 90 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
- 1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
  - 2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  - 3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:
    - a. Preparation of record documents.
    - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
    - c. Submittal of written warranties.
    - d. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
    - e. Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts.
    - f. Requirements for demonstration and training.
    - g. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
    - h. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
    - i. Submittal procedures.
    - j. Owner's partial occupancy requirements.
    - k. Installation of Owner's furniture, fixtures, and equipment.
    - l. Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls.
  - 4. Minutes: Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.

- E. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at biweekly intervals.
1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
  2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
      - 1) Review schedule for next period.
    - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
      - 1) Sequence of operations.
      - 2) Status of submittals.
      - 3) Deliveries.
      - 4) Off-site fabrication.
      - 5) Access.
      - 6) Site utilization.
      - 7) Temporary facilities and controls.
      - 8) Progress cleaning.
      - 9) Quality and work standards.
      - 10) Status of correction of deficient items.
      - 11) Field observations.
      - 12) Status of RFIs.
      - 13) Status of proposal requests.
      - 14) Pending changes.
      - 15) Status of Change Orders.
      - 16) Pending claims and disputes.
  4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
    - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- F. Coordination Meetings: Conduct Project coordination meetings at biweekly intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.
1. Attendees: Representatives of each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meetings shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.

- a. Representatives of Owner and Architect may be requested to attend if such attendance is necessary to resolve conflicts. Request for attendance shall be made not less than three days prior to the meeting and shall include specific information regarding agenda items for Owner's and/or Architect's attention.
2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
  - a. Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to combined Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
  - b. Schedule Updating: Revise combined Contractor's construction schedule after each coordination meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
  - c. Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:
    - 1) Interface requirements.
    - 2) Sequence of operations.
    - 3) Status of submittals.
    - 4) Deliveries.
    - 5) Off-site fabrication.
    - 6) Access.
    - 7) Site utilization.
    - 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
    - 9) Work hours.
    - 10) Hazards and risks.
    - 11) Progress cleaning.
    - 12) Quality and work standards.
    - 13) Change Orders.
3. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance, to Owner, and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013100

SECTION 013200 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:

- 1. Startup construction schedule.
- 2. Contractor's construction schedule.
- 3. Construction schedule updating reports.
- 4. Daily construction reports.
- 5. Material location reports.
- 6. Site condition reports.
- 7. Special reports.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures" for submitting schedules and reports.
- 2. Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for submitting a schedule of tests and inspections.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.

- 1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
- 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
- 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.

- B. Cost Loading: The allocation of the schedule of values for the completion of an activity as scheduled. The sum of costs for all activities must equal the total Contract Sum unless otherwise approved by Architect.

- C. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine when activities can be performed and the critical path of Project.

- D. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.

- E. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.

- F. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.

1. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is a jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet schedule milestones and Contract completion date.
2. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the successor activity.
3. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.

G. Resource Loading: The allocation of manpower and equipment necessary for the completion of an activity as scheduled.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:

1. Working electronic copy of schedule file, where indicated.
2. PDF electronic file.
3. Two paper copies.

B. Startup construction schedule.

1. Approval of cost-loaded, startup construction schedule will not constitute approval of schedule of values for cost-loaded activities.

C. Startup Network Diagram: Of size required to display entire network for entire construction period. Show logic ties for activities.

D. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.

1. Submit a working electronic copy of schedule, using software indicated, and labeled to comply with requirements for submittals. Include type of schedule (initial or updated) and date on label.

E. CPM Reports: Concurrent with CPM schedule, submit each of the following reports. Format for each activity in reports shall contain activity number, activity description, cost and resource loading, original duration, remaining duration, early start date, early finish date, late start date, late finish date, and total float in calendar days.

1. Activity Report: List of all activities sorted by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
2. Logic Report: List of preceding and succeeding activities for all activities, sorted in ascending order by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
3. Total Float Report: List of all activities sorted in ascending order of total float.
4. Earnings Report: Compilation of Contractor's total earnings from the Notice to Proceed until most recent Application for Payment.

F. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.

G. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at weekly intervals.

H. Material Location Reports: Submit at weekly intervals.

I. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.

J. Special Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.

- K. Qualification Data: For scheduling consultant.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Scheduling Consultant Qualifications: An experienced specialist in CPM scheduling and reporting, with capability of producing CPM reports and diagrams within 24 hours of Architect's request.
- B. Prescheduling Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to the preliminary construction schedule and Contractor's construction schedule, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Review software limitations and content and format for reports.
  - 2. Verify availability of qualified personnel needed to develop and update schedule.
  - 3. Discuss constraints, including phasing work stages area separations interim milestones and partial Owner occupancy.
  - 4. Review delivery dates for Owner-furnished products.
  - 5. Review schedule for work of Owner's separate contracts.
  - 6. Review submittal requirements and procedures.
  - 7. Review time required for review of submittals and resubmittals.
  - 8. Review requirements for tests and inspections by independent testing and inspecting agencies.
  - 9. Review time required for Project closeout and Owner startup procedures, including commissioning activities.
  - 10. Review and finalize list of construction activities to be included in schedule.
  - 11. Review procedures for updating schedule.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate preparation and processing of schedules and reports with performance of construction activities and with scheduling and reporting of separate contractors.
- B. Coordinate Contractor's construction schedule with the schedule of values, list of subcontracts, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
  - 1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
  - 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice to Proceed to date of final completion.
  - 1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- B. Activities: Treat each story or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
  - 1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.

2. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for the following long lead items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
  3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's construction schedule with submittal schedule.
  4. Startup and Testing Time: Include no fewer than 15 days for startup and testing.
  5. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect's and Construction Manager's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
  6. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and final completion.
- C. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
1. Phasing: Arrange list of activities on schedule by phase.
  2. Work under More Than One Contract: Include a separate activity for each contract.
  3. Work by Owner: Include a separate activity for each portion of the Work performed by Owner.
  4. Products Ordered in Advance: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Division 01 Section "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
  5. Owner-Furnished Products: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Division 01 Section "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
  6. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:
    - a. Coordination with existing construction.
    - b. Limitations of continued occupancies.
    - c. Uninterruptible services.
    - d. Partial occupancy before Substantial Completion.
    - e. Use of premises restrictions.
    - f. Provisions for future construction.
    - g. Seasonal variations.
    - h. Environmental control.
  7. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Subcontract awards.
    - b. Submittals.
    - c. Purchases.
    - d. Mockups.
    - e. Fabrication.
    - f. Sample testing.
    - g. Deliveries.
    - h. Installation.
    - i. Tests and inspections.
    - j. Adjusting.
    - k. Curing.
    - l. Building flush-out.
    - m. Startup and placement into final use and operation.

8. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:
  - a. Structural completion.
  - b. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
  - c. Permanent space enclosure.
  - d. Completion of mechanical installation.
  - e. Completion of electrical installation.
  - f. Substantial Completion.
- D. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and final completion., and the following interim milestones:
  1. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
- E. Cost Correlation: Superimpose a cost correlation timeline, indicating planned and actual costs. On the line, show planned and actual dollar volume of the Work performed as of planned and actual dates used for preparation of payment requests.
  1. See Division 01 Section "Payment Procedures" for cost reporting and payment procedures.
- F. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
  1. Unresolved issues.
  2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
  3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
  4. Notations on returned submittals.
  5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and Contract Time.
- G. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, and equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.
- H. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.

## 2.2 STARTUP CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Bar-Chart Schedule: Submit startup, horizontal, bar-chart-type construction schedule within seven days of date established for the Notice to Proceed.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line. Outline significant construction activities for first 90 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.

## 2.3 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (GANTT CHART)

- A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit a comprehensive, fully developed, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type, Contractor's construction schedule within 30 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed. Base

schedule on the startup construction schedule and additional information received since the start of Project.

- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line.
  - 1. For construction activities that require three months or longer to complete, indicate an estimated completion percentage in 10 percent increments within time bar.

#### 2.4 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (CPM SCHEDULE)

- A. General: Prepare network diagrams using AON (activity-on-node) format.
- B. Startup Network Diagram: Submit diagram within 14 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed. Outline significant construction activities for the first 90 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.
- C. CPM Schedule: Prepare Contractor's construction schedule using a cost- and resource-loaded, time-scaled CPM network analysis diagram for the Work.
  - 1. Develop network diagram in sufficient time to submit CPM schedule so it can be accepted for use no later than 60 days after date established for the Notice to Proceed.
    - a. Failure to include any work item required for performance of this Contract shall not excuse Contractor from completing all work within applicable completion dates, regardless of Architect's approval of the schedule.
  - 2. Conduct educational workshops to train and inform key Project personnel, including subcontractors' personnel, in proper methods of providing data and using CPM schedule information.
  - 3. Establish procedures for monitoring and updating CPM schedule and for reporting progress. Coordinate procedures with progress meeting and payment request dates.
  - 4. Use "one workday" as the unit of time for individual activities. Indicate nonworking days and holidays incorporated into the schedule in order to coordinate with the Contract Time.
- D. CPM Schedule Preparation: Prepare a list of all activities required to complete the Work. Using the startup network diagram, prepare a skeleton network to identify probable critical paths.
  - 1. Activities: Indicate the estimated time duration, sequence requirements, and relationship of each activity in relation to other activities. Include estimated time frames for the following activities:
    - a. Preparation and processing of submittals.
    - b. Mobilization and demobilization.
    - c. Purchase of materials.
    - d. Delivery.
    - e. Fabrication.
    - f. Utility interruptions.
    - g. Installation.
    - h. Work by Owner that may affect or be affected by Contractor's activities.
    - i. Testing and commissioning.
    - j. Punch list and final completion.
    - k. Activities occurring following final completion.
  - 2. Critical Path Activities: Identify critical path activities, including those for interim completion dates. Scheduled start and completion dates shall be consistent with Contract milestone dates.

3. Processing: Process data to produce output data on a computer-drawn, time-scaled network. Revise data, reorganize activity sequences, and reproduce as often as necessary to produce the CPM schedule within the limitations of the Contract Time.
4. Format: Mark the critical path. Locate the critical path near center of network; locate paths with most float near the edges.
  - a. Subnetworks on separate sheets are permissible for activities clearly off the critical path.
5. Cost- and Resource-Loading of CPM Schedule: Assign cost to construction activities on the CPM schedule. Do not assign costs to submittal activities. Obtain Architect's approval prior to assigning costs to fabrication and delivery activities. Assign costs under main subcontracts for testing and commissioning activities, operation and maintenance manuals, punch list activities, Project record documents, and demonstration and training (if applicable), in the amount of 5 percent of the Contract Sum.
  - a. Each activity cost shall reflect an appropriate value subject to approval by Architect.
  - b. Total cost assigned to activities shall equal the total Contract Sum.
- E. Contract Modifications: For each proposed contract modification and concurrent with its submission, prepare a time-impact analysis using a network fragment to demonstrate the effect of the proposed change on the overall project schedule.
- F. Initial Issue of Schedule: Prepare initial network diagram from a sorted activity list indicating straight "early start-total float." Identify critical activities. Prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
  1. Contractor or subcontractor and the Work or activity.
  2. Description of activity.
  3. Main events of activity.
  4. Immediate preceding and succeeding activities.
  5. Early and late start dates.
  6. Early and late finish dates.
  7. Activity duration in workdays.
  8. Total float or slack time.
  9. Average size of workforce.
  10. Dollar value of activity (coordinated with the schedule of values).
- G. Schedule Updating: Concurrent with making revisions to schedule, prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
  1. Identification of activities that have changed.
  2. Changes in early and late start dates.
  3. Changes in early and late finish dates.
  4. Changes in activity durations in workdays.
  5. Changes in the critical path.
  6. Changes in total float or slack time.
  7. Changes in the Contract Time.
- H. Value Summaries: Prepare two cumulative value lists, sorted by finish dates.
  1. In first list, tabulate activity number, early finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
  2. In second list, tabulate activity number, late finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
  3. In subsequent issues of both lists, substitute actual finish dates for activities completed as of list date.
  4. Prepare list for ease of comparison with payment requests; coordinate timing with progress meetings.

- a. In both value summary lists, tabulate "actual percent complete" and "cumulative value completed" with total at bottom.
- b. Submit value summary printouts one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.

## 2.5 REPORTS

- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:

1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
4. Equipment at Project site.
5. Material deliveries.
6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
7. Accidents.
8. Meetings and significant decisions.
9. Unusual events (see special reports).
10. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
11. Meter readings and similar recordings.
12. Emergency procedures.
13. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
14. Change Orders received and implemented.
15. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
16. Services connected and disconnected.
17. Equipment or system tests and startups.
18. Partial completions and occupancies.
19. Substantial Completions authorized.

- B. Material Location Reports: At weekly intervals, prepare and submit a comprehensive list of materials delivered to and stored at Project site. List shall be cumulative, showing materials previously reported plus items recently delivered. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site. Indicate the following categories for stored materials:

1. Material stored prior to previous report and remaining in storage.
2. Material stored prior to previous report and since removed from storage and installed.
3. Material stored following previous report and remaining in storage.

- C. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.

## 2.6 SPECIAL REPORTS

- A. General: Submit special reports directly to Owner within one day(s) of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.
- B. Reporting Unusual Events: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, response by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Scheduling Consultant: Engage a consultant to provide planning, evaluation, and reporting using CPM scheduling.
  - 1. In-House Option: Owner may waive the requirement to retain a consultant if Contractor employs skilled personnel with experience in CPM scheduling and reporting techniques. Submit qualifications.
  - 2. Meetings: Scheduling consultant shall attend all meetings related to Project progress, alleged delays, and time impact.
  
- B. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
  - 1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
  - 2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
  - 3. As the Work progresses, indicate final completion percentage for each activity.
  
- C. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect, Construction Manager, Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
  - 1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
  - 2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

END OF SECTION 013200

SECTION 013233 - PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
  - 1. Preconstruction photographs.
  - 2. Periodic construction photographs.
  - 3. Final completion construction photographs.
  - 4. Preconstruction video recordings.
  - 5. Periodic construction video recordings.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Unit Prices" for procedures for unit prices for extra photographs.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures" for submitting photographic documentation.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for submitting photographic documentation as project record documents at Project closeout.
  - 4. Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training" for submitting video recordings of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.
  - 5. Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for photographic documentation before selective demolition operations commence.
  - 6. Division 31 Section "Site Clearing" for photographic documentation before site clearing operations commence.

1.3 ALLOWANCES

- A. Costs: Photographic documentation services are included under the cash allowance for construction photographic services established in Division 01 Section "Allowances".

1.4 UNIT PRICES

- A. Basis for Bids: Base number of construction photographs on average of twenty (20) photographs per week over the duration of Project.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For photographer.
- B. Key Plan: Submit key plan of Project site and building with notation of vantage points marked for location and direction of each photograph video recording. Indicate elevation or story of construction. Include same information as corresponding photographic documentation.
- C. Digital Photographs: Submit image files within three days of taking photographs.
  - 1. Digital Camera: Minimum sensor resolution of 8 megapixels.

2. Format: Minimum 3200 by 2400 pixels, in unaltered original files, with same aspect ratio as the sensor, uncropped, date and time stamped, in folder named by date of photograph, accompanied by key plan file.
3. Identification: Provide the following information with each image description in file metadata tag:
  - a. Name of Project.
  - b. Name and contact information for photographer.
  - c. Name of Architect and Construction Manager.
  - d. Name of Contractor.
  - e. Date photograph was taken.
  - f. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
  - g. Unique sequential identifier keyed to accompanying key plan.

D. Construction Photographs: Submit two prints of each photographic view within seven days of taking photographs.

1. Format: 8-by-10-inch (203-by-254-mm) smooth-surface matte prints on single-weight, commercial-grade photographic paper; enclosed back to back in clear plastic sleeves that are punched for standard three-ring binder.
2. Identification: On back of each print, provide an applied label or rubber-stamped impression with the following information:
  - a. Name of Project.
  - b. Name and contact information for photographer.
  - c. Name of Architect and Construction Manager.
  - d. Name of Contractor.
  - e. Date photograph was taken if not date stamped by camera.
  - f. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
  - g. Unique sequential identifier keyed to accompanying key plan.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Photographer Qualifications: An individual who has been regularly engaged as a professional photographer of construction projects for not less than three years.

1.7 USAGE RIGHTS

- A. Obtain and transfer copyright usage rights from photographer to Owner for unlimited reproduction of photographic documentation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PHOTOGRAPHIC MEDIA

- A. Digital Images: Provide images in JPG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor size of 8 megapixels, and at an image resolution of not less than 3200 by 2400 pixels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

- A. Photographer: Engage a qualified photographer to take construction photographs.
- B. General: Take photographs using the maximum range of depth of field, and that are in focus, to clearly show the Work. Photographs with blurry or out-of-focus areas will not be accepted.
  - 1. Maintain key plan with each set of construction photographs that identifies each photographic location.
- C. Digital Images: Submit digital images exactly as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.
  - 1. Date and Time: Include date and time in file name for each image.
  - 2. Field Office Images: Maintain one set of images accessible in the field office at Project site, available at all times for reference. Identify images in the same manner as those submitted to Architect and Construction Manager.
- D. Preconstruction Photographs: Before starting construction, take photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction, from different vantage points, as directed by Construction Manager.
  - 1. Flag construction limits before taking construction photographs.
  - 2. Take twenty (20) photographs to show existing conditions adjacent to property before starting the Work.
  - 3. Take twenty (20) photographs of existing buildings either on or adjoining property to accurately record physical conditions at start of construction.
  - 4. Take additional photographs as required to record settlement or cracking of adjacent structures, pavements, and improvements.
- E. Periodic Construction Photographs: Take 20 photographs weekly, with timing each month adjusted to coincide with the cutoff date associated with each Application for Payment. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.
- F. Construction Manager-Directed Construction Photographs: From time to time, Construction Manager will instruct photographer about number and frequency of photographs and general directions on vantage points. Select actual vantage points and take photographs to show the status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.
- G. Final Completion Construction Photographs: Take 20 color photographs after date of Substantial Completion for submission as project record documents. Construction Manager will inform photographer of desired vantage points.
  - 1. Do not include date stamp.
- H. Additional Photographs: Construction Manager may request photographs in addition to periodic photographs specified. Additional photographs will be paid for by Change Order and are not included in the Contract Sum.
  - 1. Three days' notice will be given, where feasible.
  - 2. In emergency situations, take additional photographs within 24 hours of request.
  - 3. Circumstances that could require additional photographs include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Special events planned at Project site.
- b. Immediate follow-up when on-site events result in construction damage or losses.
- c. Photographs to be taken at fabrication locations away from Project site. These photographs are not subject to unit prices or unit-cost allowances.
- d. Substantial Completion of a major phase or component of the Work.
- e. Extra record photographs at time of final acceptance.
- f. Owner's request for special publicity photographs.

END OF SECTION 013233

## SECTION 013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for the submittal schedule and administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Payment Procedures" for submitting Applications for Payment and the schedule of values.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination".
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 4. Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for submitting test and inspection reports and for mockup requirements.
  - 5. Division 01 Section "Execution" for survey requirements.
  - 6. Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for submitting warranties.
  - 7. Division 01 Section "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.
  - 8. Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 9. Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training" for submitting videotapes of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.
  - 10. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific requirements for submittals in those Sections.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as action submittals.
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as informational submittals.
- C. File Transfer Protocol (FTP): Communications protocol that enables transfer of files to and from another computer over a network and that serves as the basis for standard Internet protocols. An FTP site is a portion of a network located outside of network firewalls within which internal and external users are able to access files.
- D. Portable Document Format (PDF): An open standard file format licensed by Adobe Systems used for representing documents in a device-independent and display resolution-independent fixed-layout document format.

- E. Project Website: Internet website, requiring user name and password for log in, used for the controlled transmission and exchange of project-related information and data including Requests for Information, Submittals, Field Bulletins, etc., between Owner, Contractor, Architect, and other authorized parties.
- F. Large-format Submittal: Submittal with page size in excess of 11” x 17”.
- G. Complex Submittal: Submittal containing dense diagrams, schedules, tables, or other information difficult to review in electronic format. Examples include door schedule, mechanical equipment schedules, ATC diagrams, electrical panel schedules, etc.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or modifications to submittals noted by the Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.
  - 1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with start-up construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first sixty (60) days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
  - 3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
    - a. Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
      - 1) Revisions shall be provided to Architect and Owner not less than once per month during the submittal process.
      - 2) Contractor may suspend revision of submittal schedule upon completion of required construction-phase submittals, but shall resume revisions at Architect’s direction for close-out submittals.
  - 4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format. Contractor shall use Microsoft Excel template file provided by Architect.
    - a. Submittal number.
    - b. Specification Section number
    - c. Specification Section title.
    - d. Scheduled date for first submittal.
    - e. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
    - f. Description of the Work covered.
    - g. Name of subcontractor.
    - h. Submittal category: Action, informational.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Architect's Digital Data Files: Electronic copies of CAD Drawings of the Contract Drawings will be made available by Architect for Contractor's use in preparing submittals, upon specific request of the Contractor.

1. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data drawing files of the Contract Drawings for use in preparing Shop Drawings.
  - a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data drawing files as they relate to the Contract Drawings.
  - b. Digital Drawing Software Program: The Contract Drawings are available in native Microstation V8 XM edition DGN files or converted AutoCAD 2004 or 2007 DWG files.
  - c. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement(s) in the form of Agreement included in Project Manual.
  - d. Charges for digital data files shall be as described in the data licensing agreement, and shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.
    - 1) Charge: \$200 per electronic file.
  - e. Contractor shall follow the prescribed Digital Data File request procedure.
    - 1) Contractor shall inform Architect that digital data files will be requested, including information required for Architect to complete data licensing agreement.
      - a) Name of Contractor.
      - b) Name and title of Contractor's agent who will sign form.
      - c) Email address and name of person to receive digital data files.
      - d) File format: DGN, DWG 2004, or DWG 2007.
      - e) List of drawings for which digital data files are being requested.
    - 2) Architect will provide data licensing agreement(s) to Contractor and indicate charges.
    - 3) Contractor shall sign data licensing agreement(s) and return to Architect along with payment for charges.
    - 4) Upon receipt of signed agreement(s) and payment for charges, Architect will convert files and send to Contractor through project website.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
  1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
  2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
  3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
  4. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
    - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
  1. Initial Review: Allow fifteen (15) days average for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.

2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
  3. Resubmittal Review: Allow fifteen (15) days average for review of each resubmittal.
  4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow twenty-one (21) days average for initial review of each submittal.
    - a. All submittals pertaining to work by: Civil, Structural, Fire Protection, Plumbing, Mechanical, and Electrical.
- D. Identification and Information: Place a permanent label or title block on each paper copy submittal item for identification.
1. Indicate name of firm or entity that prepared each submittal on label or title block.
  2. Provide a space approximately 6 by 8 inches (150 by 200 mm) on label or beside title block to record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
  3. Include the following information for processing and recording action taken:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name of Architect.
    - d. Name of Contractor.
    - e. Name of subcontractor.
    - f. Name of supplier.
    - g. Name of manufacturer.
    - h. Submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
      - 1) Submittal number shall use Specification Section number followed by a dash and then a sequential number (e.g., 061000-01). Resubmittals shall include an alphabetic suffix (e.g., 061000-01A).
    - i. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
    - j. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
    - k. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
    - l. Other necessary identification.
- E. Identification and Information: Identify and incorporate information in each electronic submittal file as follows:
1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file with links enabling navigation to each item.
  2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
    - a. File name shall use project identifier and Specification Section number followed by a dash and then a sequential number (e.g., OCCC-061000-01.pdf). Resubmittals shall include an alphabetic suffix (e.g., OCCC-061000-01A.pdf).
  3. Provide means for insertion to permanently record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
  4. Include the following information on an inserted cover sheet:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name of Architect.
    - d. Name of Contractor.
    - e. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.

- f. Name of subcontractor.
  - g. Name of supplier.
  - h. Name of manufacturer.
  - i. Submittal number, including revision identifier.
  - j. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
  - k. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  - l. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
  - m. Related physical samples submitted directly.
    - 1) Submittal number and name
  - n. Other necessary identification.
5. Include the following information as keywords in the electronic file metadata:
- a. Project name.
  - b. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
  - c. Manufacturer name.
  - d. Product name.
- F. Options: Identify options requiring selection by the Architect.
- G. Deviations: Identify deviations from the Contract Documents on submittals.
- 1. Deviations not explicitly noted on submittal and not explicitly approved by Architect shall be considered disapproved regardless of whatever action is indicated for submittal.
- H. Additional Paper Copies: Unless additional copies are required for final submittal, and unless Architect observes noncompliance with provisions in the Contract Documents, initial submittal may serve as final submittal.
- I. Transmittal: Assemble each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using a transmittal form. Architect will discard submittals received from sources other than Contractor.
- 1. Transmittal Form: Provide locations on form for the following information:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Destination (To:).
    - d. Source (From:).
    - e. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
    - f. Category and type of submittal.
    - g. Submittal purpose and description.
    - h. Specification Section number and title.
    - i. Indication of full or partial submittal.
    - j. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
    - k. Transmittal number.
    - l. Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
    - m. Remarks.
    - n. Signature of transmitter.
  - 2. On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals, and

deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same identification information as related submittal.

- J. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
  - 1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
  - 2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
  - 3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.
- K. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- L. Use for Construction: Use only final submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. General Submittal Procedure Requirements: Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
  - 1. Post electronic submittals as PDF electronic files directly to Project Web site specifically established for Project.
    - a. Architect will return annotated file.
    - b. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
    - c. At conclusion of project, provide one hard copy and one electronic copy of annotated electronic Project record document files to Owner.
      - 1) Assemble into three ring, D-ring style binders.
      - 2) Collate by specification section and submittal number.
      - 3) Provide tab dividers and label (number only) for each Specification Section.
      - 4) Within each specification section, pages may be printed single or double sided, up to two (2) submittal pages per side of 8 ½" x 11" printed sheet.
        - a) Large format and complex submittals shall be printed full size.
      - 5) Provide DVD or CD with annotated electronic files. Organize files into folders arranged by MasterFormat 2004 Divisions, as used in the Project Manual. Provide printed labels identifying disc contents. Assemble DVD(s) or CD(s) in binder in CD binder sheets.
  - 2. Large-format and Complex Action Submittals: In addition to PDF electronic files, which shall be the Project record documents, submit two paper copies of each submittal for Architect's use, unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
  - 3. Large-format and Complex Informational Submittals: In addition to PDF electronic files, which shall be the Project record documents, submit two paper copies of each submittal for Architect's use, unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
  - 4. Closeout Submittals and Maintenance Material Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures."

5. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Provide a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
    - a. Provide a digital signature with digital certificate on electronically-submitted certificates and certifications where indicated.
  6. Test and Inspection Reports Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements."
- B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  2. Mark submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - c. Standard color charts.
    - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
    - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - h. Availability and delivery time information.
  4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
    - a. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
    - b. Printed performance curves.
    - c. Operational range diagrams.
    - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
  5. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
  6. Submit Product Data in the following format:
    - a. PDF electronic file.
    - b. Large-format and Complex Submittals: In addition to the PDF electronic files, two paper copies of Product Data, unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
- C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data, unless submittal based upon Architect's digital data drawing files is otherwise permitted.
1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Identification of products.
    - b. Schedules.
    - c. Compliance with specified standards.
    - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
    - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.

- g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
  - 2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches (215 by 280 mm) but no larger than 30 by 42 inches (750 by 1067 mm).
  - 3. Submit Shop Drawings in the following format:
    - a. PDF electronic file.
    - b. Large-format and Complex Submittals: In addition to PDF electronic file, two opaque (bond) copies of each submittal. Architect will not return copies.
- D. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
- 1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
  - 2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
    - a. Generic description of Sample.
    - b. Designation used in Contract Drawings and Specifications, if applicable.
    - c. Product name and name of manufacturer.
    - d. Sample source.
    - e. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
  - 3. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
    - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
    - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
  - 4. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will not return samples.
    - b. In addition to Samples, submit transmittal form, submittal identification and information sheet, and other relevant information in PDF electronic file. Architect will indicate selection through electronic submittal.
  - 5. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit three (3) sets of Samples. Architect will retain one Sample sets; remainder will be returned. Mark up and retain one (1) returned Sample set as a Project record sample.

- 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
  - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three (3) sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
  - 3) In addition to Samples, submit transmittal form, submittal identification and information sheet, and other relevant information in PDF electronic file. Architect will indicate selection through electronic submittal.
- E. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents.
  2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
  3. Number and name of room or space.
  4. Location within room or space.
  5. Submit product schedule in the following format:
    - a. PDF electronic file.
- F. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Construction Progress Documentation."
- G. Application for Payment: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Payment Procedures."
- H. Schedule of Values: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Payment Procedures."
- I. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Use CSI Form 1.5A or equivalent. Include the following information in tabular form:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
  2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
  3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
  4. Submit subcontract list in the following format:
    - a. PDF electronic file.
    - b. Number of Copies: In addition to PDF electronic file, one (1) paper copy of subcontractor list, unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
- J. Coordination Drawings: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
- K. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- L. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on American Welding Society (AWS) forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.

- M. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
- N. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
- O. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- P. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- Q. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- R. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- S. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
  - 1. Name of evaluation organization.
  - 2. Date of evaluation.
  - 3. Time period when report is in effect.
  - 4. Product and manufacturers' names.
  - 5. Description of product.
  - 6. Test procedures and results.
  - 7. Limitations of use.
- T. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements."
- U. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
- V. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- W. Field Test Reports: Submit reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- X. Maintenance Data: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- Y. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of

assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.

## 2.2 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
  - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally-signed PDF electronic file and three (3) paper copies of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
  - 1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Project Closeout and Maintenance/Material Submittals: Refer to requirements in Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures."
- C. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

### 3.2 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

- A. General: Architect will not review submittals that do not bear Contractor's approval stamp and will return them without action.
- B. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or modifications required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action, as follows:
  - 1. Approved: No further action on submittal is required.
  - 2. Approved as Noted: Incorporate corrections noted in Work and indicate in record drawings. If corrections cannot be incorporated into Work, resubmit with explanation of why corrections cannot be complied with and indicate proposed response to address intent of corrections.
  - 3. Received for Record/Not Reviewed: Submittal provided to satisfy record submittal requirement from previous submittal notes or Contract Documents, or submittal not required and not reviewed. Any notes provided are for Contractor reference and use, but do not imply standard level of review by Architect.
  - 4. Revise and Resubmit: Incorporate corrections noted in Work and resubmit.

5. Disapproved: Submittal does not meet intent of Contract Documents. Correct deficiencies noted and resubmit .
- C. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- D. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- E. Incomplete submittals are not acceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned without review.
- F. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may not be reviewed and may be discarded.

END OF SECTION 013300

## SECTION 014000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 1. Specific quality-assurance and -control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in the Sections that specify those activities. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.
  - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and -control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and -control services required by Architect, Owner, Construction Manager, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Allowances" for testing and inspecting allowances.
  - 2. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific test and inspection requirements.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- B. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect or Construction Manager.
- C. Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies that are constructed on-site. Mockups are constructed to verify selections made under Sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and, where indicated, qualities of materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances. Mockups are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.
  - 1. Laboratory Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies constructed at testing facility to verify performance characteristics.
  - 2. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope erected separately from the building but on Project site, consisting of multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies.

3. Room Mockups: Mockups of typical interior spaces complete with wall, floor, and ceiling finishes, doors, windows, millwork, casework, specialties, furnishings and equipment, and lighting.
- D. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.
- E. Product Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed by an NRTL, an NVLAP, or a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- F. Source Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source, e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop.
- G. Field Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- I. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations.
  1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- J. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Referenced Standards: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For mockups, provide plans, sections, and elevations, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
  1. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
  2. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. Qualification Data : For Contractor's quality-control personnel.
- C. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility sent to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
  - 1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the designated seismic system quality-assurance plan prepared by Architect.
  - 2. Main wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the wind-force-resisting system quality-assurance plan prepared by Architect.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- E. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
  - 1. Specification Section number and title.
  - 2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
  - 3. Description of test and inspection.
  - 4. Identification of applicable standards.
  - 5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
  - 6. Number of tests and inspections required.
  - 7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
  - 8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
  - 9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.

## 1.7 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice to Proceed, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities. Coordinate with Contractor's construction schedule.
- B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified full-time personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.
  - 1. Project quality-control manager may also serve as Project superintendent.
- C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- D. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
  - 1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections including subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections.

2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the "Statement of Special Inspections."
  3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents.
- E. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.
- F. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports including log of approved and rejected results. Include work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.8 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Date of issue.
  2. Project title and number.
  3. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency.
  4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
  5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
  6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
  7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
  8. Complete test or inspection data.
  9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
  10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspecting.
  11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
  12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
  13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.
- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of technical representative making report.
  2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
  3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
  4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
  5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of factory-authorized service representative making report.
  2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.

3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
4. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

D. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's records, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents, established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

#### 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.

C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.

D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.

F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.

1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.

G. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.

1. NRTL: A nationally recognized testing laboratory according to 29 CFR 1910.7.
2. NVLAP: A testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program.

H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.

I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.

- J. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
1. Contractor responsibilities include the following:
    - a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
    - b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
    - c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
    - d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
    - e. Build laboratory mockups at testing facility using personnel, products, and methods of construction indicated for the completed Work.
    - f. When testing is complete, remove test specimens, assemblies, and mockups, and laboratory mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
  2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, through Construction Manager, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
- K. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
1. Build mockups in location and of size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
  2. Notify Architect in seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
  3. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers that will be employed during the construction at Project.
  4. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
  5. Obtain Architect's and Construction Manager's approval of mockups before starting work, fabrication, or construction.
    - a. Allow seven (7) days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
  6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Construct integrated exterior mockup according to approved Shop Drawings. Coordinate installation of exterior envelope materials and products for which mockups are required in individual Specification Sections, along with supporting materials.
- M. Room Mockups: Construct room mockups incorporating required materials and assemblies, finished according to requirements. Provide required lighting and additional lighting where required to enable Architect to evaluate quality of the Work. Provide room mockups of the following rooms:
1. Exhibit Hall
  2. Ballroom.
- N. Laboratory Mockups: Comply with requirements of preconstruction testing and those specified in individual Specification Sections in Divisions 02 through 33.

1.10 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspecting they are engaged to perform.
  2. Payment for these services will be made from testing and inspecting allowances, as authorized by Change Orders.
  3. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities required to verify that the Work complies with requirements, whether specified or not.
1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
  2. Where services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services.
    - a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
  3. Notify testing agencies at least twenty-four (24) hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspecting will be performed.
  4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
  5. Testing and inspecting requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
  6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures."
- D. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- E. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- F. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect, Construction Manager, and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
1. Notify Architect, Construction Manager, and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.

2. Determine the location from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
  3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
  4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
  5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
  6. Do not perform any duties of Contractor.
- G. Associated Services: Cooperate with agencies performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
1. Access to the Work.
  2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspecting. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
  4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
  5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
  6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
  7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at Project site.
- H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and -control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.
1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- I. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents as a component of Contractor's quality-control plan. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's construction schedule. Update as the Work progresses.
1. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, Construction Manager, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.
- 1.11 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS
- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Engage a qualified testing agency or special inspector to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner, and as follows:
- B. Special Tests and Inspections: Conducted by a qualified testing agency or special inspector as required by authorities having jurisdiction, as indicated in individual Specification Sections, and as follows:
1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviews the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
  2. Notifying Architect, Construction Manager, and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect, through Construction Manager, with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.

4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
5. Interpreting tests and inspections and stating in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
  1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
  2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
  3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
  4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's and Construction Manager's reference during normal working hours.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
  1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Division 01 Section "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 014000

SECTION 014200 - REFERENCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."
- D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
- E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
- F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- G. "Install": Operations at Project site including unloading, temporarily storing, unpacking, assembling, erecting, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar operations.
- H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

1.3 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.

1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

#### 1.4 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Thomson Gale's "Encyclopedia of Associations" or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the U.S."
- B. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Names, telephone numbers, and Web sites are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

AA	Aluminum Association (The) www.aluminum.org	(703) 358-2960
AABC	Associated Air Balance Council www.aabchq.com	(202) 737-0202
AAMA	www.aamanet.org	
AASHTO	American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials	(202) 624-5800
AATCC	American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists www.aatcc.org	(919) 549-8141
ABAA	Air Barrier Association of America www.airbarrier.org	(866) 956-5888
ABMA	www.abma-dc.org	
ACI	American Concrete Institute	(248) 848-3700
ACPA	American Concrete Pipe Association www.concrete-pipe.org	(972) 506-7216
AEIC	Association of Edison Illuminating Companies, Inc. (The) www.aeic.org	(205) 257-2530
AF&PA	www.afandpa.org	(202) 463-2700
AGA	American Gas Association	(202) 824-7000
AHAM	Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers www.aham.org	(202) 872-5955

AHRI	Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute, The www.ahrinet.org	(703) 524-8800
AI	www.asphaltinstitute.org	
AIA	American Institute of Architects (The)	(800) 242-3837
AISC	American Institute of Steel Construction www.aisc.org	(800) 644-2400 (312) 670-2400
AISI	American Iron and Steel Institute www.steel.org	(202) 452-7100
AITC	www.aitc-glulam.org	
ALSC	American Lumber Standard Committee, Incorporated	(301) 972-1700
AMCA	Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc. www.amca.org	(847) 394-0150
ANSI	American National Standards Institute www.ansi.org	(202) 293-8020
AOSA	www.aosaseed.com	
APA	APA - The Engineered Wood Association	(253) 565-6600
APA	Architectural Precast Association www.archprecast.org	(239) 454-6989
API	American Petroleum Institute www.api.org	(202) 682-8000
ARI	www.ari.org	
ARMA	Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association	(202) 207-0917
ASCE	American Society of Civil Engineers www.asce.org	(800) 548-2723 (703) 295-6300
ASCE/SEI	American Society of Civil Engineers/Structural Engineering Institute (See ASCE)	
ASHRAE	www.ashrae.org	(404) 636-8400
ASME	ASME International www.asme.org	(800) 843-2763

ASSE	American Society of Sanitary Engineering	(440) 835-3040
ASTM	ASTM International (American Society for Testing and Materials International)	(610) 832-9500
ATIS	Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions www.atis.org	(202) 628-6380
AWCMA	American Window Covering Manufacturers Association (Now WCMA)	
AWCI	www.awci.org	
AWI	Architectural Woodwork Institute	(571) 323-3636
AWPA	American Wood Protection Association (Formerly: American Wood Preservers' Association)	(205) 733-4077
AWS	American Welding Society www.aws.org	(800) 443-9353 (305) 443-9353
AWWA	American Water Works Association www.awwa.org	(800) 926-7337 (303) 794-7711
BHMA	www.buildershardware.com	
BIA	Brick Industry Association (The)	(703) 620-0010
BICSI	BICSI, Inc. www.bicsi.org	(800) 242-7405 (813) 979-1991
BIFMA	BIFMA International (Business and Institutional Furniture Manufacturer's Association International) www.bifma.com	(616) 285-3963
BISSC	Baking Industry Sanitation Standards Committee www.bissc.org	(866) 342-4772
CCC	www.carpetcushion.org	
CDA	Copper Development Association	(800) 232-3282
CEA	Canadian Electricity Association www.canelect.ca	(613) 230-9263
CEA	Consumer Electronics Association www.ce.org	(866) 858-1555 (703) 907-7600

CFFA	<a href="http://www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com">www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com</a>	
CGA	Compressed Gas Association	(703) 788-2700
CIMA	Cellulose Insulation Manufacturers Association <a href="http://www.cellulose.org">www.cellulose.org</a>	(888) 881-2462 (937) 222-2462
CISCA	Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association <a href="http://www.cisca.org">www.cisca.org</a>	(630) 584-1919
CISPI	<a href="http://www.cispi.org">www.cispi.org</a>	
CLFMI	Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute	(301) 596-2583
CPA	Composite Panel Association <a href="http://www.pbmdf.com">www.pbmdf.com</a>	(703) 724-1128
CRI	Carpet and Rug Institute (The) <a href="http://www.carpet-rug.com">www.carpet-rug.com</a>	(800) 882-8846 (706) 278-3176
CRRC	<a href="http://www.coolroofs.org">www.coolroofs.org</a>	(510) 485-7175
CRSI	Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute	(847) 517-1200
CRRC	Cool Roof Rating Council <a href="http://www.coolroofs.org">www.coolroofs.org</a>	(866) 465-2523 (510) 485-7175
CSA	Canadian Standards Association <a href="http://www.csa.ca">www.csa.ca</a>	(800) 463-6727 (416) 747-4000
CSA	(Formerly: IAS - International Approval Services) <a href="http://www.csa-international.org">www.csa-international.org</a>	(416) 747-4000
CSI	<a href="http://www.csinet.org">www.csinet.org</a>	(703) 684-0300
CSSB	Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau	(604) 820-7700
CTI	Cooling Technology Institute (Formerly: Cooling Tower Institute)	(281) 583-4087
DHI	Door and Hardware Institute <a href="http://www.dhi.org">www.dhi.org</a>	(703) 222-2010
ECA	Electrical Components Association <a href="http://www.ec-central.org">www.ec-central.org</a>	(703)907-8024
EIA	<a href="http://www.eia.org">www.eia.org</a>	
EIMA	EIFS Industry Members Association	(800) 294-3462
EJCDC	Engineers Joint Contract Documents Committee	(703) 295-6000

	<a href="http://content.asce.org/ejcdc/">http://content.asce.org/ejcdc/</a>	
EJMA	Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc. <a href="http://www.ejma.org">www.ejma.org</a>	(914) 332-0040
ESD	(Electrostatic Discharge Association) <a href="http://www.esda.org">www.esda.org</a>	
ETL SEMCO	(Formerly: ITS - Intertek Testing Service NA) <a href="http://www.intertek-etlsemko.com">www.intertek-etlsemko.com</a>	
FIBA	(The International Basketball Federation) <a href="http://www.fiba.com">www.fiba.com</a>	
FIVB	(The International Volleyball Federation) <a href="http://www.fivb.ch">www.fivb.ch</a>	
FM Approvals	<a href="http://www.fmglobal.com">www.fmglobal.com</a>	
FM Global	FM Global <a href="http://www.fmglobal.com">www.fmglobal.com</a>	(401) 275-3000
FRSA	Florida Roofing, Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors Association, Inc.	(407) 671-3772
FSA	Fluid Sealing Association <a href="http://www.fluidsealing.com">www.fluidsealing.com</a>	(610) 971-4850
FSC	Forest Stewardship Council <a href="http://www.fsc.org">www.fsc.org</a>	49 228 367 66 0
GA	<a href="http://www.gypsum.org">www.gypsum.org</a>	(301) 277-8686
GANA	Glass Association of North America	(785) 271-0208
GRI	(Part of GSI)	
GS	<a href="http://www.greenseal.org">www.greenseal.org</a>	
GSI	Geosynthetic Institute	(610) 522-8440
HI	Hydronics Institute <a href="http://www.gamanet.org">www.gamanet.org</a>	(908) 464-8200
HI/GAMA	Hydronics Institute/Gas Appliance Manufacturers Association Division of Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute (AHRI) <a href="http://www.ahrinet.org">www.ahrinet.org</a>	(908) 464-8200

HMMA	Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association (Part of NAAMM)	
HPVA	<a href="http://www.hpva.org">www.hpva.org</a>	
HPW	H. P. White Laboratory, Inc.	(410) 838-6550
IAPSC	International Association of Professional Security Consultants <a href="http://www.iapsc.org">www.iapsc.org</a>	(515) 282-8192
ICBO	International Conference of Building Officials <a href="http://www.iccsafe.org">www.iccsafe.org</a>	(888) 422-7233
ICEA	<a href="http://www.icea.net">www.icea.net</a>	
ICRI	International Concrete Repair Institute, Inc.	(847) 827-0830
ICPA	International Cast Polymer Association <a href="http://www.icpa-hq.org">www.icpa-hq.org</a>	(703) 525-0320
IEC	International Electrotechnical Commission <a href="http://www.iec.ch">www.iec.ch</a>	41 22 919 02 11
IEEE	<a href="http://www.ieee.org">www.ieee.org</a>	
IES	Illuminating Engineering Society of North America	(703) 525-0320
IEST	Institute of Environmental Sciences and Technology <a href="http://www.iest.org">www.iest.org</a>	(847) 255-1561
IGMA	Insulating Glass Manufacturers Alliance <a href="http://www.igmaonline.org">www.igmaonline.org</a>	(613) 233-1510
ILI	<a href="http://www.iliai.com">www.iliai.com</a>	
ISA	Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society, The	(919) 549-8411
ISO	International Organization for Standardization <a href="http://www.iso.ch">www.iso.ch</a>	41 22 749 01 11
ISSFA	International Solid Surface Fabricators Association <a href="http://www.issfa.net">www.issfa.net</a>	(877) 464-7732 (801) 341-7360
ITS	(Now ETL SEMCO)	
ITU	International Telecommunication Union	41 22 730 51 11
KCMA	Kitchen Cabinet Manufacturers Association <a href="http://www.kcma.org">www.kcma.org</a>	(703) 264-1690

LGSEA	Light Gauge Steel Engineers Association www.arcata.com	(202) 263-4488
LMA	(Now part of CPA)	
LPI	Lightning Protection Institute	(800) 488-6864
MBMA	Metal Building Manufacturers Association www.mbma.com	(216) 241-7333
MCA	Metal Construction Association www.metalconstruction.org	(847) 375-4718
MFMA	www.maplefloor.org	
MFMA	Metal Framing Manufacturers Association, Inc.	(312) 644-6610
MH	Material Handling (Now MHIA)	
MHIA	Material Handling Industry of America www.mhia.org	(800) 345-1815 (704) 676-1190
MIA	www.marble-institute.com	
MPI	Master Painters Institute	(888) 674-8937
MSS	Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc. www.mss-hq.com	(703) 281-6613
NAAMM	National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers www.naamm.org	(630) 942-6591
NACE	(National Association of Corrosion Engineers International) www.nace.org	(281) 228-6200
NADCA	www.nadca.com	
NAGWS	National Association for Girls and Women in Sport	(800) 213-7193, ext. 453
NAIMA	North American Insulation Manufacturers Association www.naima.org	(703) 684-0084
NBGQA	National Building Granite Quarries Association, Inc. www.nbgqa.com	(800) 557-2848
NCAA	www.ncaa.org	

NCMA	National Concrete Masonry Association	(703) 713-1900
NCTA	National Cable & Telecommunications Association www.ncta.com	(202) 222-2300
NEBB	National Environmental Balancing Bureau www.nebb.org	(301) 977-3698
NECA	www.necanet.org	
NeLMA	Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association	(207) 829-6901
NEMA	National Electrical Manufacturers Association www.nema.org	(703) 841-3200
NETA	InterNational Electrical Testing Association www.netaworld.org	(888) 300-6382 (269) 488-6382
NFHS	www.nfhs.org	
NFPA	NFPA www.nfpa.org	(800) 344-3555
NFRC	National Fenestration Rating Council	(301) 589-1776
NGA	National Glass Association www.glass.org	(866) 342-5642 (703) 442-4890
NHLA	National Hardwood Lumber Association www.natlhardwood.org	(800) 933-0318 (901) 377-1818
NLGA	www.nlga.org	
NOFMA	NOFMA: The Wood Flooring Manufacturers Association www.nofma.org	(901) 526-5016
NOMMA	National Ornamental & Miscellaneous Metals Association	(888) 516-8585
NRCA	National Roofing Contractors Association www.nrca.net	(800) 323-9545 (847) 299-9070
NRMCA	National Ready Mixed Concrete Association www.nrmca.org	(888) 846-7622 (301) 587-1400
NSF	(National Sanitation Foundation International) www.nsf.org	(734) 769-8010
NSSGA	www.nssga.org	(703) 525-8788
NTMA	National Terrazzo & Mosaic Association, Inc. (The)	(800) 323-9736

NWFA	National Wood Flooring Association www.nwfa.org	(800) 422-4556 (636) 519-9663
PCI	Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute www.pci.org	(312) 786-0300
PDI	www.pdionline.org	(978) 557-0720
PGI	PVC Geomembrane Institute	(217) 333-3929
PTI	Post-Tensioning Institute www.post-tensioning.org	(248) 848-3180
RCSC	Research Council on Structural Connections www.boltcouncil.org	
RFCI	www.rfci.com	(706) 882-3833
RIS	Redwood Inspection Service	
SAE	SAE International www.sae.org	(877) 606-7323 (724) 776-4841
SCAQMD	South Coast Air Quality Management District www.aqmd.com	(909) 396-2000
SCTE	www.scte.org	(610) 363-6888
SDI	Steel Deck Institute	(847) 458-4647
SDI	Steel Door Institute www.steeldoor.org	(440) 899-0010
SEFA	Scientific Equipment and Furniture Association www.sefalabs.com	(877) 294-5424 (516) 294-5424
SEI/ASCE	(See ASCE)	
SIA	Security Industry Association	(866) 817-8888
SJI	Steel Joist Institute www.steeljoist.org	(843) 626-1995
SMA	Screen Manufacturers Association www.smacentral.org	(561) 533-0991
SMACNA	National Association www.smacna.org	
SMPTE	www.smppte.org	

SPFA	Spray Polyurethane Foam Alliance <a href="http://www.sprayfoam.org">www.sprayfoam.org</a>	(800) 523-6154
SPIB	Southern Pine Inspection Bureau (The)	(850) 434-2611
SPRI	Single Ply Roofing Industry <a href="http://www.spri.org">www.spri.org</a>	(781) 647-7026
SSINA	Specialty Steel Industry of North America <a href="http://www.ssina.com">www.ssina.com</a>	(800) 982-0355 (202) 342-8630
SSPC	<a href="http://www.sspc.org">www.sspc.org</a>	(412) 281-2331
STI	Steel Tank Institute	(847) 438-8265
SWI	Steel Window Institute <a href="http://www.steelwindows.com">www.steelwindows.com</a>	(216) 241-7333
SWPA	Submersible Wastewater Pump Association <a href="http://www.swpa.org">www.swpa.org</a>	(847) 681-1868
TCA	<a href="http://www.tilt-up.org">www.tilt-up.org</a>	
TCNA	Tile Council of North America, Inc.	(864) 646-8453
TEMA	Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association <a href="http://www.tema.org">www.tema.org</a>	(914) 332-0040
TIA/EIA	Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance <a href="http://www.tiaonline.org">www.tiaonline.org</a>	(703) 907-7700
TMS	<a href="http://www.masonrysociety.org">www.masonrysociety.org</a>	
TPI	Truss Plate Institute, Inc.	(703) 683-1010
TPI	Turfgrass Producers International <a href="http://www.turfgrassod.org">www.turfgrassod.org</a>	(800) 405-8873 (847) 649-5555
TRI	Tile Roofing Institute <a href="http://www.tilerroofing.org">www.tilerroofing.org</a>	(312) 670-4177
UL	<a href="http://www.ul.com">www.ul.com</a>	(847) 272-8800
UNI	Uni-Bell PVC Pipe Association	(972) 243-3902
USAV	USA Volleyball	(888) 786-5539

	<a href="http://www.usavolleyball.org">www.usavolleyball.org</a>	(719) 228-6800
USGBC	U.S. Green Building Council <a href="http://www.usgbc.org">www.usgbc.org</a>	(800) 795-1747
USITT	<a href="http://www.usitt.org">www.usitt.org</a>	(315) 463-6463
WASTEC	Waste Equipment Technology Association	(800) 424-2869
WCLIB	West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau <a href="http://www.wclib.org">www.wclib.org</a>	(800) 283-1486 (503) 639-0651
WCMA	Window Covering Manufacturers Association <a href="http://www.wcmanet.org">www.wcmanet.org</a>	(212) 297-2122
WDMA	(Formerly: NWWDA - National Wood Window and Door Association) <a href="http://www.wdma.com">www.wdma.com</a>	(312) 321-6802
WI	<a href="http://www.wicnet.org">www.wicnet.org</a>	
WMMPA	Wood Moulding & Millwork Producers Association	(800) 550-7889
WSRCA	Western States Roofing Contractors Association <a href="http://www.wsrca.com">www.wsrca.com</a>	(800) 725-0333 (650) 570-5441
WWPA	Western Wood Products Association <a href="http://www.wwpa.org">www.wwpa.org</a>	(503) 224-3930

C. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Names, telephone numbers, and Web sites are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

DIN	<a href="http://www.din.de">www.din.de</a>	
IAPMO	International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials	(909) 472-4100
ICC	International Code Council <a href="http://www.iccsafe.org">www.iccsafe.org</a>	(888) 422-7233
ICC-ES	ICC Evaluation Service, Inc. <a href="http://www.icc-es.org">www.icc-es.org</a>	(800) 423-6587 (562) 699-0543

D. Federal Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Names, telephone numbers, and Web sites are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

COE Army Corps of Engineers

	<a href="http://www.usace.army.mil">www.usace.army.mil</a>	
CPSC	Consumer Product Safety Commission <a href="http://www.cpsc.gov">www.cpsc.gov</a>	(800) 638-2772 (301) 504-7923
DOC	Department of Commerce <a href="http://www.commerce.gov">www.commerce.gov</a>	(202) 482-2000
DOD	Department of Defense <a href="http://dodssp.daps.dla.mil">http://dodssp.daps.dla.mil</a>	(215) 697-6257
DOE	Department of Energy <a href="http://www.energy.gov">www.energy.gov</a>	(202) 586-9220
EPA	Environmental Protection Agency	(202) 272-0167
FAA	Federal Aviation Administration <a href="http://www.faa.gov">www.faa.gov</a>	(866) 835-5322
FCC	Federal Communications Commission <a href="http://www.fcc.gov">www.fcc.gov</a>	(888) 225-5322
FDA	<a href="http://www.fda.gov">www.fda.gov</a>	
GSA	General Services Administration	(800) 488-3111
HUD	Department of Housing and Urban Development <a href="http://www.hud.gov">www.hud.gov</a>	(202) 708-1112
LBL	Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory <a href="http://www.lbl.gov">www.lbl.gov</a>	(510) 486-4000
NCHRP	(See TRB)	
NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology	(301) 975-6478
OSHA	Occupational Safety & Health Administration <a href="http://www.osha.gov">www.osha.gov</a>	(800) 321-6742 (202) 693-1999
PBS	Public Buildings Service (See GSA)	
PHS	<a href="http://www.hhs.gov/ophs/">http://www.hhs.gov/ophs/</a>	
RUS	Rural Utilities Service	(202) 720-9540
SD	State Department <a href="http://www.state.gov">www.state.gov</a>	(202) 647-4000
TRB	Transportation Research Board <a href="http://gulliver.trb.org">http://gulliver.trb.org</a>	(202) 334-2934

USDA

[www.usda.gov](http://www.usda.gov)

USP

U.S. Pharmacopeia

(800) 227-8772

USPS

Postal Service  
[www.usps.com](http://www.usps.com)

(202) 268-2000

E. Standards and Regulations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the standards and regulations in the following list. Names, telephone numbers, and Web sites are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

ADAAG

Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)  
Architectural Barriers Act (ABA)  
Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities  
Available from U.S. Access Board  
[www.access-board.gov](http://www.access-board.gov)

(202) 272-0080

CFR

Code of Federal Regulations  
Available from Government Printing Office  
[www.gpoaccess.gov/cfr/index.html](http://www.gpoaccess.gov/cfr/index.html)

(866) 512-1800  
(202) 512-1800

DOD

Department of Defense Military Specifications and Standards  
Available from Department of Defense Single Stock Point  
<http://dodssp.daps.dla.mil>

(215) 697-2664

DSCC

Defense Supply Center Columbus  
(See FS)

FED-STD

Federal Standard  
(See FS)

FS

Available from Department of Defense Single Stock Point  
<http://dodssp.daps.dla.mil/>

[www.dsp.dla.mil](http://www.dsp.dla.mil)

Available from General Services Administration

(202) 619-8925

Available from National Institute of Building Sciences  
[www.wbdg.org/ccb](http://www.wbdg.org/ccb)

(202) 289-7800

FTMS

Federal Test Method Standard  
(See FS)

MIL

MIL-STD

(See MILSPEC)

MILSPEC

Available from Department of Defense Single Stock Point  
<http://dodssp.daps.dla.mil>

UFAS

Available from Access Board  
[www.access-board.gov](http://www.access-board.gov)

(202) 272-0080

- F. State Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Names, telephone numbers, and Web sites are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

CBHF

[www.dca.ca.gov/bhfti](http://www.dca.ca.gov/bhfti)

(916) 574-2041

CCR California Code of Regulations

(916) 323-6815

CDHS California Department of Health Services  
[www.dhcs.ca.gov](http://www.dhcs.ca.gov)

(916) 445-4171

CDPH California Department of Public Health, Indoor Air Quality Section  
[www.cal-iaq.org](http://www.cal-iaq.org)

CPUC

[www.cpuc.ca.gov](http://www.cpuc.ca.gov)

TFS Texas Forest Service

<http://txforests-service.tamu.edu>

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 014200

SECTION 015000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Summary" for work restrictions and limitations on utility interruptions.
  - 2. Division 31 Section "Dewatering" for disposal of ground water at Project site.
  - 3. Division 32 Section "Asphalt Paving" for construction and maintenance of asphalt pavement for temporary roads and paved areas.
  - 4. Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving" for construction and maintenance of cement concrete pavement for temporary roads and paved areas.

1.3 USE CHARGES

- A. General: Installation and removal of and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Architect, occupants of Project, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sewer Service: Pay sewer-service use charges for sewer usage by all entities for construction operations.
- C. Water Service: Pay water-service use charges for water used by all entities for construction operations.
- D. Electric Power Service: Pay electric-power-service use charges for electricity used by all entities for construction operations.
- E. Water and Sewer Service from Existing System: Water from Owner's existing water system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.
- F. Electric Power Service from Existing System: Electric power from Owner's existing system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.
- G. Sewer, Water, and Electric Power Service: Use charges are specified in Division 01 Section "Multiple Contract Summary."

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Plan: Show temporary facilities, utility hookups, staging areas, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Erosion- and Sedimentation-Control Plan: Show compliance with requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.

- C. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.
- D. Moisture-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage.
  - 1. Describe delivery, handling, and storage provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage.
  - 2. Indicate procedures for discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and replacing water-damaged Work.
  - 3. Indicate sequencing of work that requires water, such as sprayed fire-resistive materials, plastering, and terrazzo grinding, and describe plans for dealing with water from these operations. Show procedures for verifying that wet construction has dried sufficiently to permit installation of finish materials.
- E. Dust- and HVAC-Control Plan: Submit coordination drawing and narrative that indicates the dust- and HVAC-control measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation. Identify further options if proposed measures are later determined to be inadequate. Include the following:
  - 1. Locations of dust-control partitions at each phase of work.
  - 2. HVAC system isolation schematic drawing.
  - 3. Location of proposed air-filtration system discharge.
  - 4. Waste handling procedures.
  - 5. Other dust-control measures.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.
- C. Accessible Temporary Egress: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch (50-mm), 0.148-inch- (3.8-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet (1.8 m) high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- (60-mm-) OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- (73-mm-) OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- (42-mm-) OD top rails, with galvanized barbed-wire top strand.
- B. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch (50-mm), 0.148-inch- (3.8-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet (1.8 m) high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-

inch- (60-mm-) OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- (73-mm-) OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- (42-mm-) OD top and bottom rails. Provide concrete galvanized-steel bases for supporting posts.

- C. Wood Enclosure Fence: Plywood, 6 feet (1.8 m) high, framed with four 2-by-4-inch (50-by-100-mm) rails, with preservative-treated wood posts spaced not more than 8 feet (2.4 m) apart.
- D. Polyethylene Sheet: Reinforced, fire-resistive sheet, 10-mil (0.25-mm) minimum thickness, with flame-spread rating of 15 or less per ASTM E 84 and passing NFPA 701 Test Method 2.
- E. Dust-Control Adhesive-Surface Walk-off Mats: Provide mats minimum 36 by 60 inches (914 by 1624 mm).
- F. Insulation: Unfaced mineral-fiber blanket, manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively.

## 2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of Owner, Architect, Construction Manager, and construction personnel office activities and to accommodate Project meetings specified in other Division 01 Sections. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
  - 1. Furniture required for Project-site documents including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
  - 2. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 10 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with no fewer than one receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and 4-foot- (1.2-m-) square tack and marker boards.
  - 3. Drinking water and private toilet.
  - 4. Coffee machine and supplies.
  - 5. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F (20 to 22 deg C).
  - 6. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc (215 lx) at desk height.
- C. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
  - 1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

## 2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
- B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
  - 1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
  - 2. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 3. Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 8 at each return-air grille in system and

remove at end of construction, and clean HVAC system as required in Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures."

- C. Air-Filtration Units: Primary and secondary HEPA-filter-equipped portable units with four-stage filtration. Provide single switch for emergency shutoff. Configure to run continuously.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
  - 1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Division 01 Section "Summary."
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

#### 3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
  - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
  - 1. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.
- D. Water Service: Connect to Owner's existing water service facilities. Clean and maintain water service facilities in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.
- E. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
  - 1. Toilets: Use of Owner's existing toilet facilities will be permitted, as long as facilities are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.
- F. Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
- G. Isolation of Work Areas in Occupied Facilities: Prevent dust, fumes, and odors from entering occupied areas.
  - 1. Prior to commencing work, isolate the HVAC system in area where work is to be performed according to coordination drawings.

- a. Disconnect supply and return ductwork in work area from HVAC systems servicing occupied areas.
    - b. Maintain negative air pressure within work area using HEPA-equipped air-filtration units, starting with commencement of temporary partition construction, and continuing until removal of temporary partitions is complete.
  2. Maintain dust partitions during the Work. Use vacuum collection attachments on dust-producing equipment. Isolate limited work within occupied areas using portable dust-containment devices.
  3. Perform daily construction cleanup and final cleanup using approved, HEPA-filter-equipped vacuum equipment.
- H. Ventilation and Humidity Control: Provide temporary ventilation required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce ambient condition required and minimize energy consumption.
1. Provide dehumidification systems when required to reduce substrate moisture levels to level required to allow installation or application of finishes.
- I. Electric Power Service: Connect to Owner's existing electric power service. Maintain equipment in a condition acceptable to Owner.
- J. Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
1. Install electric power service underground unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Connect temporary service to Owner's existing power source, as directed by Owner.
- K. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
  2. Install lighting for Project identification sign.
- L. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all construction personnel. Install one telephone line(s) for each field office.
1. Provide additional telephone lines for the following:
    - a. Provide a dedicated telephone line for each facsimile machine in each field office.
    - b. Provide one telephone line(s) for Owner's use.
  2. At each telephone, post a list of important telephone numbers.
    - a. Police and fire departments.
    - b. Ambulance service.
    - c. Contractor's home office.
    - d. Contractor's emergency after-hours telephone number.
    - e. Architect's office.
    - f. Engineers' offices.
    - g. Owner's office.
    - h. Principal subcontractors' field and home offices.

3. Provide superintendent with cellular telephone or portable two-way radio for use when away from field office.
- M. Electronic Communication Service: Provide a desktop computer in the primary field office adequate for use by Architect and Owner to access Project electronic documents and maintain electronic communications. Equip computer with not less than the following:
1. Processor: Intel Pentium D or Intel CoreDuo, 3.0 GHz processing speed.
  2. Memory: 4 gigabyte.
  3. Disk Storage: 300 gigabyte hard-disk drive and combination DVD-RW/CD-RW drive.
  4. Display: 22-inch (560-mm) LCD monitor with 256-Mb dedicated video RAM.
  5. Full-size keyboard and mouse.
  6. Network Connectivity: 10/100BaseT Ethernet.
  7. Operating System: Microsoft Windows XP Professional or Microsoft Windows Vista Business.
  8. Productivity Software:
    - a. Microsoft Office Professional, XP or higher, including Word, Excel, and Outlook.
    - b. Adobe Reader 7.0 or higher.
    - c. WinZip 7.0 or higher.
  9. Printer: "All-in-one" unit equipped with printer server, combining color printing, photocopying, scanning, and faxing, or separate units for each of these three functions.
  10. Internet Service: Broadband modem, router and ISP, equipped with hardware firewall, providing minimum 384 Kbps upload and 1 Mbps download speeds at each computer.
  11. Internet Security: Integrated software, providing software firewall, virus, spyware, phishing, and spam protection in a combined application.
  12. Backup: External hard drive, minimum 40 gigabyte, with automated backup software providing daily backups.

### 3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with the following:
1. Provide construction for temporary offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet (9 m) of building lines that is noncombustible according to ASTM E 136. Comply with NFPA 241.
  2. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas within construction limits indicated on Drawings.
1. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and nontracking. Reapply treatment as required to minimize dust.
- C. Temporary Use of Permanent Roads and Paved Areas: Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.
1. Coordinate elevations of temporary roads and paved areas with permanent roads and paved areas.
  2. Prepare subgrade and install subbase and base for temporary roads and paved areas according to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

3. Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, regrading, proofrolling, compacting, and testing.
  4. Delay installation of final course of permanent hot-mix asphalt pavement until immediately before Substantial Completion. Repair hot-mix asphalt base-course pavement before installation of final course according to Division 32 Section "Asphalt Paving."
- D. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
  2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
- E. Parking: Use designated areas of Owner's existing parking areas for construction personnel.
- F. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties or endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
  2. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.
- G. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs as indicated on Drawings.
  2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
    - a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
  3. Maintain and touchup signs so they are legible at all times.
- H. Waste Disposal Facilities: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- I. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with progress cleaning requirements in Division 01 Section "Execution."
- J. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.
- K. Temporary Elevator Use: See Division 14 Sections for temporary use of new elevators.
- L. Existing Elevator Use: Use of Owner's existing elevators will be permitted, provided elevators are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore elevators to condition existing before initial use, including replacing worn cables, guide shoes, and similar items of limited life.
1. Do not load elevators beyond their rated weight capacity.
  2. Provide protective coverings, barriers, devices, signs, or other procedures to protect elevator car and entrance doors and frame. If, despite such protection, elevators become damaged, engage elevator Installer to restore damaged work so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in field to the shop, make required repairs and refinish entire unit, or provide new units as required.

- M. Temporary Stairs: Until permanent stairs are available, provide temporary stairs where ladders are not adequate.
- N. Existing Stair Usage: Use of Owner's existing stairs will be permitted, provided stairs are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore stairs to condition existing before initial use.
  - 1. Provide protective coverings, barriers, devices, signs, or other procedures to protect stairs and to maintain means of egress. If stairs become damaged, restore damaged areas so no evidence remains of correction work.
- O. Temporary Use of Permanent Stairs: Use of new stairs for construction traffic will be permitted, provided stairs are protected and finishes restored to new condition at time of Substantial Completion.

### 3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
- B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
  - 1. Comply with work restrictions specified in Division 01 Section "Summary."
- C. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Comply with requirements of 2003 EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent and requirements specified in Division 31 Section "Site Clearing."
- D. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to undisturbed areas and to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings requirements of 2003 EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
  - 1. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree- or plant- protection zones.
  - 2. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
  - 3. Clean, repair, and restore adjoining properties and roads affected by erosion and sedimentation from Project site during the course of Project.
  - 4. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.
- E. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- F. Tree and Plant Protection: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."
- G. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.

- H. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Perform control operations lawfully, using environmentally safe materials.
- I. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
  - 1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations.
  - 2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel. Furnish one set of keys to Owner.
- J. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each work day.
- K. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- L. Temporary Egress: Maintain temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- M. Covered Walkway: Erect protective, covered walkway for passage of individuals through or adjacent to Project site. Coordinate with entrance gates, other facilities, and obstructions. Comply with regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Construct covered walkways using scaffold or shoring framing.
  - 2. Provide overhead decking, protective enclosure walls, handrails, barricades, warning signs, exit signs, lights, safe and well-drained walkways, and similar provisions for protection and safe passage.
  - 3. Paint and maintain appearance of walkway for duration of the Work.
- N. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
  - 1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is incomplete, insulate temporary enclosures.
- O. Temporary Partitions: Provide floor-to-ceiling dustproof partitions to limit dust and dirt migration and to separate areas occupied by Owner and tenants from fumes and noise.
  - 1. Construct dustproof partitions with gypsum wallboard with joints taped on occupied side, and fire-retardant-treated plywood on construction operations side.
  - 2. Construct dustproof partitions with two layers of 6-mil (0.14-mm) polyethylene sheet on each side. Cover floor with two layers of 6-mil (0.14-mm) polyethylene sheet, extending sheets 18 inches (460 mm) up the sidewalls. Overlap and tape full length of joints. Cover floor with fire-retardant-treated plywood.
    - a. Construct vestibule and airlock at each entrance through temporary partition with not less than 48 inches (1219 mm) between doors. Maintain water-dampened foot mats in vestibule.

3. Where fire-resistance-rated temporary partitions are indicated or are required by authorities having jurisdiction, construct partitions according to the rated assemblies.
  4. Insulate partitions to control noise transmission to occupied areas.
  5. Seal joints and perimeter. Equip partitions with gasketed dustproof doors and security locks where openings are required.
  6. Protect air-handling equipment.
  7. Provide walk-off mats at each entrance through temporary partition.
- P. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire-prevention program.
1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas.
  2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
  4. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

### 3.5 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Contractor's Moisture-Protection Plan: Avoid trapping water in finished work. Document visible signs of mold that may appear during construction.
- B. Exposed Construction Phase: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
  2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
  3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
  4. Remove standing water from decks.
  5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.
- C. Partially Enclosed Construction Phase: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:
1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
  2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
  3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
  4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
  5. Do not install material that is wet.
  6. Discard, replace, or clean stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
  7. Perform work in a sequence that allows any wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in drywall or other interior finishes.
- D. Controlled Construction Phase of Construction: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:
1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
  2. Use permanent HVAC system to control humidity.

3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.
  - a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective.
  - b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
  - c. Remove materials that can not be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.

### 3.6 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
  1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Operate Project-identification-sign lighting daily from dusk until 12:00 midnight.
- D. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- E. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
  1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
  2. Remove temporary roads and paved areas not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent construction. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 015000

SECTION 015639 - TEMPORARY TREE AND PLANT PROTECTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general protection and pruning of existing trees and plants that are affected by execution of the Work, whether temporary or permanent construction.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary site fencing.
  - 2. Division 31 Section "Site Clearing" for removing existing trees and shrubs.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Caliper: Diameter of a trunk measured by a diameter tape or the average of the smallest and largest diameters at 6 inches (150 mm) above the ground for trees up to, and including, 4-inch (100-mm) size; and 12 inches (300 mm) above the ground for trees larger than 4-inch (100-mm) size.
- B. Plant-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees, groups of trees, shrubs, or other vegetation to be protected during construction, and indicated on Drawings.
- C. Tree-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction, and defined by a circle concentric with each tree with a radius 1.5 times the diameter of the drip line unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Vegetation: Trees, shrubs, groundcovers, grass, and other plants.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples for Verification: For each type of the following:
  - 1. Organic Mulch: 1-pint (0.5-L) volume of organic mulch; in sealed plastic bags labeled with composition of materials by percentage of weight and source of mulch.
  - 2. Protection-Zone Fencing: Assembled Samples of manufacturer's standard size made from full-size components.
  - 3. Protection-Zone Signage: Full-size Samples of each size and text, ready for installation.
- C. Tree Pruning Schedule: Written schedule detailing scope and extent of pruning of trees to remain that interfere with or are affected by construction.
  - 1. Species and size of tree.
  - 2. Location on site plan. Include unique identifier for each.
  - 3. Reason for pruning.
  - 4. Description of pruning to be performed.
  - 5. Description of maintenance following pruning.

- D. Qualification Data: For qualified arborist and tree service firm.
- E. Certification: From arborist, certifying that trees indicated to remain have been protected during construction according to recognized standards and that trees were promptly and properly treated and repaired when damaged.
- F. Maintenance Recommendations: From arborist, for care and protection of trees affected by construction during and after completing the Work.
- G. Existing Conditions: Documentation of existing trees and plantings indicated to remain, which establishes preconstruction conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by construction activities.
  - 1. Use sufficiently detailed photographs or videotape.
  - 2. Include plans and notations to indicate specific wounds and damage conditions of each tree or other plants designated to remain.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Arborist Qualifications: Licensed arborist in jurisdiction where Project is located.
- B. Tree Service Firm Qualifications: An experienced tree service firm that has successfully completed temporary tree and plant protection work similar to that required for this Project and that will assign an experienced, qualified arborist to Project site during execution of the Work.
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review methods and procedures related to temporary tree and plant protection including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Construction schedule. Verify availability of materials, personnel, and equipment needed to make progress and avoid delays.
    - b. Enforcing requirements for protection zones.
    - c. Arborist's responsibilities.
    - d. Field quality control.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:
  - 1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
  - 2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
  - 3. Foot traffic.
  - 4. Erection of sheds or structures.
  - 5. Impoundment of water.
  - 6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
  - 7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust toward protection zones.
- C. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones and organic mulch.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Topsoil: Natural or cultivated top layer of the soil profile or manufactured topsoil; containing organic matter and sand, silt, and clay particles; friable, pervious, and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter; and free of weeds, roots, and toxic and other nonsoil materials.
  - 1. Obtain topsoil only from well-drained sites where topsoil is 4 inches (100 mm) deep or more; do not obtain from bogs or marshes.
- B. Topsoil: Imported or manufactured topsoil complying with ASTM D 5268.
- C. Organic Mulch: Free from deleterious materials and suitable as a top dressing for trees and shrubs, consisting of one of the following:
  - 1. Type: Shredded hardwood.
  - 2. Size Range: 3 inches (76 mm) maximum, 1/2 inch (13 mm) minimum.
  - 3. Color: Natural.
- D. Protection-Zone Fencing: Fencing fixed in position and meeting one of the following requirements.
  - 1. Chain-Link Protection-Zone Fencing: Galvanized-steel fencing fabricated from minimum 2-inch (50-mm) opening, 0.148-inch- (3.76-mm-) diameter wire chain-link fabric; with pipe posts, minimum 2-3/8-inch- (60-mm-) OD line posts, and 2-7/8-inch- (73-mm-) OD corner and pull posts; with 1-5/8-inch- (42-mm-) OD top rails ; with 0.177-inch- (4.5-mm-) diameter top tension wire and 0.177-inch- (4.5-mm-) diameter bottom tension wire; with tie wires, hog ring ties, and other accessories for a complete fence system.
    - a. Height: 6 feet (1.8 m).
  - 2. Plywood Protection-Zone Fencing: Plywood framed with four 2-by-4-inch (50-by-100-mm) rails, with 4-by-4-inch (100-by-100-mm) preservative-treated wood posts spaced not more than 8 feet (2.4 m) apart.
    - a. Height: 6 feet (1.8 m).
    - b. Plywood and Lumber: Comply with requirements in Division 06 Section " Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry."
  - 3. Gates: Single or double swing access gates matching material and appearance of fencing, to allow for maintenance activities within protection zones; leaf width 36 inches (914 mm).
- E. Protection-Zone Signage: Shop-fabricated, rigid plastic or metal sheet with attachment holes prepunched and reinforced; legibly printed with nonfading lettering.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Examine the site to verify that temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures are in place. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross protection zones.

- B. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by arborist, listing conditions detrimental to tree and plant protection.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Locate and clearly identify trees, shrubs, and other vegetation to remain or to be relocated. Flag each tree trunk at 54 inches (1372 mm) above the ground.
- B. Protect tree root systems from damage caused by runoff or spillage of noxious materials while mixing, placing, or storing construction materials. Protect root systems from ponding, eroding, or excessive wetting caused by dewatering operations.
- C. Tree-Protection Zones: Mulch areas inside tree-protection zones and other areas indicated.
  - 1. Apply 4-inch (100-mm) average thickness of organic mulch. Do not place mulch within 6 inches (150 mm) of tree trunks.

### 3.3 TREE- AND PLANT-PROTECTION ZONES

- A. Protection-Zone Fencing: Install protection-zone fencing along edges of protection zones before materials or equipment are brought on the site and construction operations begin in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering protected area except by entrance gates. Construct fencing so as not to obstruct safe passage or visibility at vehicle intersections where fencing is located adjacent to pedestrian walkways or in close proximity to street intersections, drives, or other vehicular circulation.
  - 1. Chain-Link Fencing: Install to comply with ASTM F 567 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Posts: Set or drive posts into ground one-third the total height of the fence without concrete footings. Where a post is located on existing paving or concrete to remain, provide appropriate means of post support acceptable to Architect.
  - 3. Access Gates: Install where required; adjust to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
- B. Protection-Zone Signage: Install protection-zone signage in visibly prominent locations in a manner approved by Architect. Install one sign spaced approximately every 50 feet (15 m) on protection-zone fencing, but no fewer than four signs with each facing a different direction.
- C. Maintain protection zones free of weeds and trash.
- D. Repair or replace trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or be relocated that are damaged by construction operations, in a manner approved by Architect.
- E. Maintain protection-zone fencing and signage in good condition as acceptable to Architect and remove when construction operations are complete and equipment has been removed from the site.
  - 1. Do not remove protection-zone fencing, even temporarily, to allow deliveries or equipment access through the protection zone.
  - 2. Temporary access is permitted subject to preapproval in writing by arborist if a root buffer effective against soil compaction is constructed as directed by arborist. Maintain root buffer so long as access is permitted.

### 3.4 EXCAVATION

- A. General: Excavate at edge of protection zones and for trenches indicated within protection zones according to requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
- B. Trenching near Trees: Where utility trenches are required within protection zones, hand excavate under or around tree roots or tunnel under the roots by drilling, auger boring, or pipe jacking. Do not cut main lateral tree roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots that interfere with installation of utilities. Cut roots as required for root pruning.
- C. Redirect roots in backfill areas where possible. If encountering large, main lateral roots, expose roots beyond excavation limits as required to bend and redirect them without breaking. If encountered immediately adjacent to location of new construction and redirection is not practical, cut roots approximately 3 inches (75 mm) back from new construction and as required for root pruning.
- D. Do not allow exposed roots to dry out before placing permanent backfill. Provide temporary earth cover or pack with peat moss and wrap with burlap. Water and maintain in a moist condition. Temporarily support and protect roots from damage until they are permanently relocated and covered with soil.

### 3.5 ROOT PRUNING

- A. Prune roots that are affected by temporary and permanent construction. Prune roots as required and as follows:
  - 1. Cut roots manually by digging a trench and cutting exposed roots with sharp pruning instruments; do not break, tear, chop, or slant the cuts. Do not use a backhoe or other equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
  - 2. Cut Ends: Coat cut ends of roots more than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter with an emulsified asphalt or other coating formulated for use on damaged plant tissues and that is acceptable to arborist.
  - 3. Temporarily support and protect roots from damage until they are permanently redirected and covered with soil.
  - 4. Cover exposed roots with burlap and water regularly.
  - 5. Backfill as soon as possible according to requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
- B. Root Pruning at Edge of Protection Zone: flush with the edge of the protection zone, by cleanly cutting all roots to the depth of the required excavation.
- C. Root Pruning within Protection Zone: Clear and excavate by hand to the depth of the required excavation to minimize damage to root systems. Use narrow-tine spading forks, comb soil to expose roots, and cleanly cut roots as close to excavation as possible.

### 3.6 CROWN PRUNING

- A. Prune branches that are affected by temporary and permanent construction. Prune branches as required and as follows:
  - 1. Prune trees to remain to compensate for root loss caused by damaging or cutting root system. Provide subsequent maintenance during Contract period as recommended by arborist.
  - 2. Pruning Standards: Prune trees according to ANSI A300 (Part 1):
  - 3. Cut branches with sharp pruning instruments; do not break or chop.
  - 4. Do not apply pruning paint to wounds.
- B. Chip removed branches and dispose of off-site.

### 3.7 REGRADING

- A. Lowering Grade: Where new finish grade is indicated below existing grade around trees, slope grade beyond the protection zone. Maintain existing grades within the protection zone.
- B. Lowering Grade within Protection Zone: Where new finish grade is indicated below existing grade around trees, slope grade away from trees as recommended by arborist unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Root Pruning: Prune tree roots exposed by lowering the grade. Do not cut main lateral roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots. Cut roots as required for root pruning.
- C. Raising Grade: Where new finish grade is indicated above existing grade around trees, slope grade beyond the protection zone. Maintain existing grades within the protection zone.
- D. Minor Fill within Protection Zone: Where existing grade is 2 inches (50 mm) or less below elevation of finish grade, fill with topsoil. Place topsoil in a single uncompacted layer and hand grade to required finish elevations.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspections: Engage a qualified arborist to direct plant-protection measures in the vicinity of trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain and to prepare inspection reports.

### 3.9 REPAIR AND REPLACEMENT

- A. General: Repair or replace trees, shrubs, and other vegetation indicated to remain or be relocated that are damaged by construction operations, in a manner approved by Architect.
  - 1. Submit details of proposed root cutting and tree and shrub repairs.
  - 2. Have arborist perform the root cutting, branch pruning, and damage repair of trees and shrubs.
  - 3. Treat damaged trunks, limbs, and roots according to arborist's written instructions.
  - 4. Perform repairs within 24 hours.
  - 5. Replace vegetation that cannot be repaired and restored to full-growth status, as determined by Architect.
- B. Trees: Remove and replace trees indicated to remain that are more than 25 percent dead or in an unhealthy condition before the end of the corrections period or are damaged during construction operations that Architect determines are incapable of restoring to normal growth pattern.
  - 1. Provide new trees of same size and species as those being replaced for each tree that measures 6 inches (150 mm) or smaller in caliper size.
  - 2. Provide one new tree(s) of 6-inch (150-mm) caliper size for each tree being replaced that measures more than 6 inches (150 mm) in caliper size.
    - a. Species: Species selected by Architect.
  - 3. Plant and maintain new trees as specified in Division 32 Section "Plants."
- C. Soil Aeration: Where directed by Architect, aerate surface soil compacted during construction. Aerate 10 feet (3 m) beyond drip line and no closer than 36 inches (900 mm) to tree trunk. Drill 2-inch- (50-mm-) diameter holes a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) deep at 24 inches (600 mm) o.c. Backfill holes with an equal mix of augered soil and sand.

3.10 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Disposal: Remove excess excavated material, displaced trees, trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 015639

## SECTION 016000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "References" for applicable industry standards for products specified.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
  - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature, that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
  - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
  - 3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved through submittal process to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Comparable Product Requests: Submit request for consideration of each comparable product. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 1. Include data to indicate compliance with the requirements specified in "Comparable Products" Article.
  - 2. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within one week of receipt of a comparable product request. Architect will notify Contractor through Construction Manager of approval or rejection of proposed comparable product request within fifteen (15) days of receipt of request, or seven (7) days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.

- a. Form of Approval: As specified in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures."
- b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.

- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures." Show compliance with requirements.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
  1. Each contractor is responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
  2. If a dispute arises between contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.

#### 1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:
  1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
  2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
  3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
  4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.
- C. Storage:
  1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
  2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
  3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.
  4. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
  5. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
  6. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
  7. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

#### 1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.

1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written warranty furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
  2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner.
- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
  2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included with the Specifications, prepare a written document using indicated form properly executed.
  3. See Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
  2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
  3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.
  4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
  5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
  6. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," or "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
- B. Product Selection Procedures:
1. Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
  2. Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
  3. Products:
    - a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Non-restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed, or an unnamed product,

that complies with requirements. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product.

4. Manufacturers:
    - a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Nonrestricted List: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed, or a product by an unnamed manufacturer, that complies with requirements. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed manufacturer's product.
  5. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
- C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require "match Architect's sample", provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.
- D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

## 2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
1. Evidence that the proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, that it is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce the indicated results, and that it is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant qualities include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, and specific features and requirements indicated.
  3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
  4. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
  5. Samples, if requested.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 016000

SECTION 017300 - EXECUTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Construction layout.
2. Field engineering and surveying.
3. Installation of the Work.
4. Cutting and patching.
5. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
6. Progress cleaning.
7. Starting and adjusting.
8. Protection of installed construction.
9. Correction of the Work.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 01 Section "Summary" for limits on use of Project site.
2. Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
3. Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, and final cleaning.
4. Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for demolition and removal of selected portions of the building.
5. Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for patching penetrations in fire-rated construction.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of other work.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For land surveyor.
- B. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by land surveyor certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.
- C. Cutting and Patching Plan: Submit plan describing procedures at least ten (10) days prior to the time cutting and patching will be performed. Include the following information:
  1. Extent: Describe reason for and extent of each occurrence of cutting and patching.

2. Changes to In-Place Construction: Describe anticipated results. Include changes to structural elements and operating components as well as changes in building appearance and other significant visual elements.
3. Products: List products to be used for patching and firms or entities that will perform patching work.
4. Dates: Indicate when cutting and patching will be performed.
5. Utilities and Mechanical and Electrical Systems: List services and systems that cutting and patching procedures will disturb or affect. List services and systems that will be relocated and those that will be temporarily out of service. Indicate length of time permanent services and systems will be disrupted.
  - a. Include description of provisions for temporary services and systems during interruption of permanent services and systems.

D. Landfill Receipts: Submit copy of receipts issued by a landfill facility, licensed to accept hazardous materials, for hazardous waste disposal.

E. Certified Surveys: Submit two copies signed by land surveyor.

F. Final Property Survey: Submit ten (10) copies showing the Work performed and record survey data.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.

B. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.

1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection
2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Operational elements include the following:
  - a. Primary operational systems and equipment.
  - b. Fire separation assemblies.
  - c. Air or smoke barriers.
  - d. Fire-suppression systems.
  - e. Mechanical systems piping and ducts.
  - f. Control systems.
  - g. Communication systems.
  - h. Fire-detection and -alarm systems.
  - i. Conveying systems.
  - j. Electrical wiring systems.
  - k. Operating systems of special construction.
3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Other construction elements include but are not limited to the following:

- a. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
  - b. Membranes and flashings.
  - c. Exterior curtain-wall construction.
  - d. Sprayed fire-resistive material.
  - e. Equipment supports.
  - f. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
  - g. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- C. Cutting and Patching Conference: Before proceeding, meet at Project site with parties involved in cutting and patching, including mechanical and electrical trades. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of products and equipment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
1. For projects requiring compliance with sustainable design and construction practices and procedures, use products for patching that comply with requirements in Division 01 sustainable design requirements Section.
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.
1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; underground electrical services, and other utilities.
  2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for

compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.

1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.

C. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:

1. Description of the Work.
2. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
3. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
4. Recommended corrections.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility and Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.

D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Architect according to requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

### 3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect and Construction Manager promptly.

B. General: Engage a land surveyor to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.

1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.

6. Notify Architect and Construction Manager when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
  7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect and Construction Manager.
- 3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING
- A. Identification: Owner will identify existing benchmarks, control points, and property corners.
- B. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect and Construction Manager. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect and Construction Manager before proceeding.
  2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- C. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
  2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
  3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.
- D. Certified Survey: On completion of foundation walls, major site improvements, and other work requiring field-engineering services, prepare a certified survey showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations of construction and sitework.
- E. Final Property Survey: Engage a land surveyor to prepare a final property survey showing significant features (real property) for Project. Include on the survey a certification, signed by land surveyor, that principal metes, bounds, lines, and levels of Project are accurately positioned as shown on the survey.
1. Show boundary lines, monuments, streets, site improvements and utilities, existing improvements and significant vegetation, adjoining properties, acreage, grade contours, and the distance and bearing from a site corner to a legal point.

2. Recording: At Substantial Completion, have the final property survey recorded by or with authorities having jurisdiction as the official "property survey."

### 3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
  1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
  2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
  3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches (2440 mm) in occupied spaces and 90 inches (2300 mm) in unoccupied spaces.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produce harmful noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions.
  1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
  2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
  3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- J. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.

### 3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
  - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Adjacent Occupied Areas: Where interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas is unavoidable, coordinate cutting and patching according to requirements in Division 01 Section "Summary."
- F. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to prevent interruption to occupied areas.
- G. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
  - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
  - 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
  - 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
  - 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Division 31 Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
  - 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
  - 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- H. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
  - 1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
  - 2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will minimize evidence of patching and refinishing.

- a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
  - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
- a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, prepare substrate and apply primer and intermediate paint coats appropriate for substrate over the patch, and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition and ensures thermal and moisture integrity of building enclosure.
- I. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

### 3.7 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

- A. Site Access: Provide access to Project site for Owner's construction personnel.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel.
1. Construction Schedule: Inform Owner of Contractor's preferred construction schedule for Owner's portion of the Work. Adjust construction schedule based on a mutually agreeable timetable. Notify Owner if changes to schedule are required due to differences in actual construction progress.
  2. Preinstallation Conferences: Include Owner's construction personnel at preinstallation conferences covering portions of the Work that are to receive Owner's work. Attend preinstallation conferences conducted by Owner's construction personnel if portions of the Work depend on Owner's construction.

### 3.8 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
  2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F (27 deg C).
  3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
    - a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
  4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and other contractors are working concurrently.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.

- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
  - 1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
  - 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls" and Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

### 3.9 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Coordinate startup and adjusting of equipment and operating components with requirements in Division 01 Section "General Commissioning Requirements."
- B. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- C. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
- D. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements."

### 3.10 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

END OF SECTION 017300

SECTION 017419 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
  - 1. Salvaging nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
  - 2. Recycling nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
  - 3. Disposing of nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for disposition of waste resulting from partial demolition of buildings, structures, and site improvements, and for disposition of hazardous waste.
  - 2. Division 04 Section "Concrete Unit Masonry" for disposal requirements for masonry waste.
  - 3. Division 04 Section "Cast Stone Masonry" for disposal requirements for excess stone and stone waste.
  - 4. Division 31 Section "Site Clearing" for disposition of waste resulting from site clearing and removal of above- and below-grade improvements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Construction Waste: Building and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
- B. Demolition Waste: Building and site improvement materials resulting from demolition or selective demolition operations.
- C. Disposal: Removal off-site of demolition and construction waste and subsequent sale, recycling, reuse, or deposit in landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Recycle: Recovery of demolition or construction waste for subsequent processing in preparation for reuse.
- E. Salvage: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent sale or reuse in another facility.
- F. Salvage and Reuse: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent incorporation into the Work.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Practice efficient waste management in the use of materials in the course of the Work. Use all reasonable means to divert construction and demolition waste from landfills and incinerators. Facilitate recycling and salvage of materials, including the following:
  - 1. Demolition Waste:

- a. Asphalt paving.
- b. Concrete.
- c. Concrete reinforcing steel.
- d. Brick.
- e. Concrete masonry units.
- f. Wood studs.
- g. Wood joists.
- h. Plywood and oriented strand board.
- i. Wood paneling.
- j. Wood trim.
- k. Structural and miscellaneous steel.
- l. Rough hardware.
- m. Roofing.
- n. Insulation.
- o. Doors and frames.
- p. Door hardware.
- q. Windows.
- r. Glazing.
- s. Metal studs.
- t. Gypsum board.
- u. Acoustical tile and panels.
- v. Carpet.
- w. Carpet pad.
- x. Demountable partitions.
- y. Equipment.
- z. Cabinets.
- aa. Plumbing fixtures.
- bb. Piping.
- cc. Supports and hangers.
- dd. Valves.
- ee. Sprinklers.
- ff. Mechanical equipment.
- gg. Refrigerants.
- hh. Electrical conduit.
- ii. Copper wiring.
- jj. Lighting fixtures.
- kk. Lamps.
- ll. Ballasts.
- mm. Electrical devices.
- nn. Switchgear and panelboards.
- oo. Transformers.

2. Construction Waste:

- a. Masonry and CMU.
- b. Lumber.
- c. Wood sheet materials.
- d. Wood trim.
- e. Metals.
- f. Roofing.
- g. Insulation.
- h. Carpet and pad.
- i. Gypsum board.
- j. Piping.
- k. Electrical conduit.

1. Packaging: Regardless of salvage/recycle goal indicated in "General" Paragraph above, salvage or recycle 100 percent of the following uncontaminated packaging materials:
    - 1) Paper.
    - 2) Cardboard.
    - 3) Boxes.
    - 4) Plastic sheet and film.
    - 5) Polystyrene packaging.
    - 6) Wood crates.
    - 7) Plastic pails.
  - B. Records of Donations: Indicate receipt and acceptance of salvageable waste donated to individuals and organizations. Indicate whether organization is tax exempt.
  - C. Records of Sales: Indicate receipt and acceptance of salvageable waste sold to individuals and organizations. Indicate whether organization is tax exempt.
  - D. Recycling and Processing Facility Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of recyclable waste by recycling and processing facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.
  - E. Landfill and Incinerator Disposal Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of waste by landfills and incinerator facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.
  - F. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by EPA-approved certification program.
  - B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

## PART 2 - EXECUTION

### 2.1 SALVAGING DEMOLITION WASTE

- A. Salvaged Items for Reuse in the Work: Salvage items for reuse and handle as follows:
  1. Clean salvaged items.
  2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers with label indicating elements, date of removal, quantity, and location where removed.
  3. Store items in a secure area until installation.
  4. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
  5. Install salvaged items to comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make items functional for use indicated.
- B. Salvaged Items for Sale and Donation: Not permitted on Project site.
- C. Salvaged Items for Owner's Use: Salvage items for Owner's use and handle as follows:

1. Clean salvaged items.
  2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers with label indicating elements, date of removal, quantity, and location where removed.
  3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
  4. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner.
  5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
- D. Doors and Hardware: Brace open end of door frames. Except for removing door closers, leave door hardware attached to doors.
- E. Equipment: Drain tanks, piping, and fixtures. Seal openings with caps or plugs. Protect equipment from exposure to weather.
- F. Plumbing Fixtures: Separate by type and size.
- G. Lighting Fixtures: Separate lamps by type and protect from breakage.
- H. Electrical Devices: Separate switches, receptacles, switchgear, transformers, meters, panelboards, circuit breakers, and other devices by type.

## 2.2 RECYCLING DEMOLITION AND CONSTRUCTION WASTE, GENERAL

- A. General: Recycle paper and beverage containers used by on-site workers.
- B. Recycling Incentives: Revenues, savings, rebates, tax credits, and other incentives received for recycling waste materials shall accrue to Owner.
- C. Preparation of Waste: Prepare and maintain recyclable waste materials according to recycling or reuse facility requirements. Maintain materials free of dirt, adhesives, solvents, petroleum contamination, and other substances deleterious to the recycling process.
- D. Procedures: Separate recyclable waste from other waste materials, trash, and debris. Separate recyclable waste by type at Project site to the maximum extent practical.
1. Provide appropriately marked containers or bins for controlling recyclable waste until removed from Project site. Include list of acceptable and unacceptable materials at each container and bin.
    - a. Inspect containers and bins for contamination and remove contaminated materials if found.
  2. Stockpile processed materials on-site without intermixing with other materials. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
  3. Stockpile materials away from construction area. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.
  4. Store components off the ground and protect from the weather.
  5. Remove recyclable waste from Owner's property and transport to recycling receiver or processor.

## 2.3 RECYCLING DEMOLITION WASTE

- A. Asphalt Paving: Grind asphalt to maximum 4-inch (100-mm) size.
1. Crush asphaltic concrete paving and screen to comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for use as general fill.
- B. Asphalt Paving: Break up and transport paving to asphalt-recycling facility.
- C. Concrete: Remove reinforcement and other metals from concrete and sort with other metals.

1. Pulverize concrete to maximum 4-inch (100-mm) size.
  2. Crush concrete and screen to comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for use as satisfactory soil for fill or subbase.
- D. Masonry: Remove metal reinforcement, anchors, and ties from masonry and sort with other metals.
1. Pulverize masonry to maximum 4-inch (100-mm) size.
    - a. Crush masonry and screen to comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for use as satisfactory soil for fill or subbase.
    - b. Crush masonry and screen to comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Plants" for use as mineral mulch.
  2. Clean and stack undamaged, whole masonry units on wood pallets.
- E. Wood Materials: Sort and stack members according to size, type, and length. Separate lumber, engineered wood products, panel products, and treated wood materials.
- F. Metals: Separate metals by type.
1. Structural Steel: Stack members according to size, type of member, and length.
  2. Remove and dispose of bolts, nuts, washers, and other rough hardware.
- G. Asphalt Shingle Roofing: Separate organic and glass-fiber asphalt shingles and felts. Remove and dispose of nails, staples, and accessories.
- H. Gypsum Board: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets or in container and store in a dry location. Remove edge trim and sort with other metals. Remove and dispose of fasteners.
- I. Acoustical Ceiling Panels and Tile: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets and store in a dry location.
- J. Metal Suspension System: Separate metal members including trim, and other metals from acoustical panels and tile and sort with other metals.
- K. Carpet and Pad: Roll large pieces tightly after removing debris, trash, adhesive, and tack strips.
1. Store clean, dry carpet and pad in a closed container or trailer provided by Carpet Reclamation Agency or carpet recycler.
- L. Carpet Tile: Remove debris, trash, and adhesive.
1. Stack tile on pallet and store clean, dry carpet in a closed container or trailer provided by Carpet Reclamation Agency or carpet recycler.
- M. Piping: Reduce piping to straight lengths and store by type and size. Separate supports, hangers, valves, sprinklers, and other components by type and size.
- N. Conduit: Reduce conduit to straight lengths and store by type and size.
- 2.4 RECYCLING CONSTRUCTION WASTE
- A. Packaging:
1. Cardboard and Boxes: Break down packaging into flat sheets. Bundle and store in a dry location.
  2. Polystyrene Packaging: Separate and bag materials.

3. Pallets: As much as possible, require deliveries using pallets to remove pallets from Project site. For pallets that remain on-site, break down pallets into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.
4. Crates: Break down crates into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.

B. Wood Materials:

1. Clean Cut-Offs of Lumber: Grind or chip into small pieces.
2. Clean Sawdust: Bag sawdust that does not contain painted or treated wood.
  - a. Comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Plants." for use of clean sawdust as organic mulch.

C. Gypsum Board: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets or in container and store in a dry location.

1. Clean Gypsum Board: Grind scraps of clean gypsum board using small mobile chipper or hammer mill. Screen out paper after grinding.
  - a. Comply with requirements in Division 32 Section "Plants." for use of clean ground gypsum board as inorganic soil amendment.

2.5 DISPOSAL OF WASTE

- A. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged, recycled, or otherwise reused, remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
  2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.
- C. Disposal: Remove waste materials from Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

END OF SECTION 017419

SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:

- 1. Substantial Completion procedures.
- 2. Final completion procedures.
- 3. Warranties.
- 4. Final cleaning.
- 5. Repair of the Work.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Division 01 Section "Photographic Documentation" for submitting final completion construction photographic documentation.
- 2. Division 01 Section "Execution" for progress cleaning of Project site.
- 3. Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.
- 4. Division 01 Section "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.
- 5. Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training" for requirements for instructing Owner's personnel.
- 6. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific closeout and special cleaning requirements for the Work in those Sections.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For cleaning agents.
- B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- C. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.
- C. Field Report: For pest control inspection.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items specified in other Sections.

## 1.6 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.
- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
  2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, final completion construction photographic documentation, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
  3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Divisions 02 through 33 Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
  4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Divisions 02 through 33 Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Construction Manager. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
    - a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Construction Manager's signature for receipt of submittals.
  5. Submit test/adjust/balance records.
  6. Submit sustainable design submittals required in Division 01 sustainable design requirements Section and in individual Division 02 through 33 Sections.
  7. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
  2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
  3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
  4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
  5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."
  6. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
  7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
  8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
  9. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
  10. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of

request, Architect and Construction Manager will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.

#### 1.7 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:

1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Division 01 Section "Payment Procedures."
2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
4. Submit pest-control final inspection report.

B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect and Construction Manager will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

#### 1.8 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.

1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first and proceeding from lowest floor to highest floor.
2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
  - a. Project name.
  - b. Date.
  - c. Name of Architect and Construction Manager.
  - d. Name of Contractor.
  - e. Page number.
4. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:
  - a. PDF electronic file. Architect, through Construction Manager, will return annotated file.
  - b. Three paper copies. Architect, through Construction Manager, will return two copies.

## 1.9 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of Substantial Completion is indicated, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within fifteen (15) days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period by separate agreement with Contractor.
- C. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
  - 1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch (215-by-280-mm) paper.
  - 2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
  - 3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
  - 4. Warranty Electronic File: Scan warranties and bonds and assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single indexed electronic PDF file with links enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
- D. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.
  - 1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:

- a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
  - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
  - c. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
  - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
  - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
  - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
  - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
  - h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
  - i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
  - j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
  - k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
  - l. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, elevator equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
  - m. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
  - n. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
  - o. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
    - 1) Clean HVAC system in compliance with NADCA Standard 1992-01. Provide written report on completion of cleaning.
  - p. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
  - q. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Pest Control: Comply with pest control requirements in Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Prepare written report.
- D. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste disposal requirements in Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- 3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK
- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
  - B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
    - 1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.

2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
  - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.
4. Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

END OF SECTION 017700

SECTION 017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
  - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
  - 2. Emergency manuals.
  - 3. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 4. Product maintenance manuals.
  - 5. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 2. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific operation and maintenance manual requirements for the Work in those Sections.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Manual Content: Operations and maintenance manual content is specified in individual Specification Sections to be reviewed at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
  - 1. Architect will comment on whether content of operations and maintenance submittals are acceptable.
  - 2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operations and maintenance manuals in the following format:
  - 1. PDF electronic file. Assemble each manual into a composite electronically indexed file. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
    - a. Name each indexed document file in composite electronic index with applicable item name. Include a complete electronically linked operation and maintenance directory.
    - b. Enable inserted reviewer comments on draft submittals.

2. Three paper copies. Include a complete operation and maintenance directory. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves. Architect, through Construction Manager, will return two copies.
- C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at least thirty (30) days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will comment on whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.
- D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least fifteen (15) days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will return copy with comments.
1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within fifteen (15) days of receipt of Architect's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY

- A. Directory: Prepare a single, comprehensive directory of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials, listing items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information. Include a section in the directory for each of the following:
1. List of documents.
  2. List of systems.
  3. List of equipment.
  4. Table of contents.
- B. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
- C. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
- D. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

### 2.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
1. Title page.
  2. Table of contents.
  3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:

1. Subject matter included in manual.
  2. Name and address of Project.
  3. Name and address of Owner.
  4. Date of submittal.
  5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
  6. Name and contact information for Construction Manager.
  7. Name and contact information for Architect.
  8. Name and contact information for Commissioning Authority.
  9. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
  10. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
  2. File Names and Bookmarks: Enable bookmarking of individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.
- F. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit manuals in the form of hard copy, bound and labeled volumes.
1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf or post-type binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch (215-by-280-mm) paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
    - a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-reference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.
    - b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents, and indicate Specification Section number on bottom of spine. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
  2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.

3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software storage media for computerized electronic equipment.
4. Supplementary Text: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (215-by-280-mm) white bond paper.
5. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
  - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
  - b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

## 2.3 EMERGENCY MANUALS

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
  1. Type of emergency.
  2. Emergency instructions.
  3. Emergency procedures.
- B. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
  1. Fire.
  2. Flood.
  3. Gas leak.
  4. Water leak.
  5. Power failure.
  6. Water outage.
  7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  8. Chemical release or spill.
- C. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- D. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
  1. Instructions on stopping.
  2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
  3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
  4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

## 2.4 OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
  1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
  2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
  3. Operating standards.
  4. Operating procedures.
  5. Operating logs.
  6. Wiring diagrams.

7. Control diagrams.
8. Piped system diagrams.
9. Precautions against improper use.
10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.

B. Descriptions: Include the following:

1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
2. Manufacturer's name.
3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
4. Equipment function.
5. Operating characteristics.
6. Limiting conditions.
7. Performance curves.
8. Engineering data and tests.
9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.

C. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Startup procedures.
2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
4. Regulation and control procedures.
5. Instructions on stopping.
6. Normal shutdown instructions.
7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
9. Special operating instructions and procedures.

D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.

E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color-coding where required for identification.

## 2.5 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.

B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.

C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Product name and model number.
2. Manufacturer's name.
3. Color, pattern, and texture.
4. Material and chemical composition.
5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.

D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:

1. Inspection procedures.
2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
5. Repair instructions.

E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.

F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

## 2.6 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.

B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.

C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:

1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins.
2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.

D. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:

1. Test and inspection instructions.
2. Troubleshooting guide.
3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.

E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.

1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.

- F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- G. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- H. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
  - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION

- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- C. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  - 2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- E. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
  - 1. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
- F. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
  - 1. Do not use original project record documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 2. Comply with requirements of newly prepared record Drawings in Division 01 Section "Project Record Documents."
- G. Comply with Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

END OF SECTION 017823

SECTION 017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
  - 1. Record Drawings.
  - 2. Record Specifications.
  - 3. Record Product Data.
  - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Execution" for final property survey.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.
  - 4. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific requirements for project record documents of the Work in those Sections.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Number of Copies: Submit copies of record Drawings as follows:
    - a. Initial Submittal:
      - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one set of prints.
      - 2) Submit record digital data files and one (1) set of plots.
      - 3) Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.
    - b. Final Submittal:
      - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and three sets of prints.
      - 2) Print each drawing, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit one paper copy annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit one paper copy annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
  - 1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.

- D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: See other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit one paper copy annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
- E. Reports: Submit written report weekly indicating items incorporated into project record documents concurrent with progress of the Work, including revisions, concealed conditions, field changes, product selections, and other notations incorporated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
  - 1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
    - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
    - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
    - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
    - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
    - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding archive photographic documentation.
  - 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
    - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
    - c. Depths of foundations below first floor.
    - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
    - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
    - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
    - g. Actual equipment locations.
    - h. Duct size and routing.
    - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
    - j. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
    - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
    - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
    - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
    - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
  - 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
  - 4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
  - 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
  - 6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.

- B. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect and Construction Manager. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:
1. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
  2. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
  3. Refer instances of uncertainty to Architect through Construction Manager for resolution.
  4. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of the Contract Drawings for use in recording information.
    - a. See Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures" for requirements related to use of Architect's digital data files.
    - b. Architect will provide data file layer information. Record markups in separate layers.
- C. Newly Prepared Record Drawings: Prepare new Drawings instead of preparing record Drawings where Architect determines that neither the original Contract Drawings nor Shop Drawings are suitable to show actual installation.
1. New Drawings may be required when a Change Order is issued as a result of accepting an alternate, substitution, or other modification.
  2. Consult Architect and Construction Manager for proper scale and scope of detailing and notations required to record the actual physical installation and its relation to other construction. Integrate newly prepared record Drawings into record Drawing sets; comply with procedures for formatting, organizing, copying, binding, and submitting.
- D. Format: Identify and date each record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
1. Record Prints: Organize record prints and newly prepared record Drawings into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
  2. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
  3. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
  4. Identification: As follows:
    - a. Project Name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
    - d. Name of Architect and Construction Manager.
    - e. Name of Contractor.

## 2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
  3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.

4. For each principal product, indicate whether record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as record Product Data.
5. Note related Change Orders, record Product Data, and record Drawings where applicable.

- B. Format: Submit record Specifications as annotated PDF electronic file or scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up paper copy of Specifications.

### 2.3 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.

1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
3. Note related Change Orders, record Specifications, and record Drawings where applicable.

- B. Format: Submit record Product Data as annotated PDF electronic file or scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up paper copy of Product Data.

1. Include record Product Data directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of record Product Data.

### 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

- A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.

- B. Format: Submit miscellaneous record submittals as PDF electronic file or scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up miscellaneous record submittals.

1. Include miscellaneous record submittals directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of miscellaneous record submittals.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.

- B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store record documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's and Construction Manager's reference during normal working hours.

END OF SECTION 017839

SECTION 017900 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
  - 1. Demonstration of operation of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 2. Training in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 3. Demonstration and training video recordings.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Divisions 02 through 33 Sections for specific requirements for demonstration and training for products in those Sections.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
  - 1. Indicate proposed training modules using manufacturer-produced demonstration and training video recordings for systems, equipment, and products in lieu of video recording of live instructional module.
- B. Qualification Data: For facilitator, instructor and videographer.
- C. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.
- D. Evaluations: For each participant and for each training module, submit results and documentation of performance-based test.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Demonstration and Training Video Recordings: Submit two (2) copies within seven (7) days of end of each training module.
  - 1. Identification: On each copy, provide an applied label with the following information:
    - a. Name of Project.
    - b. Name and address of videographer.
    - c. Name of Architect.
    - d. Name of Construction Manager.
    - e. Name of Contractor.
    - f. Date of video recording.

2. Transcript: Prepared and bound in format matching operation and maintenance manuals. Mark appropriate identification on front and spine of each binder. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding video recording. Include name of Project and date of video recording on each page.
3. Transcript: Prepared in PDF electronic format. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding video recording and a table of contents with links to corresponding training components. Include name of Project and date of video recording on each page.
4. At completion of training, submit complete training manual(s) for Owner's use prepared and bound in format matching operation and maintenance manuals and in PDF electronic file format on compact disc.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Facilitator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in training or educating maintenance personnel in a training program similar in content and extent to that indicated for this Project, and whose work has resulted in training or education with a record of successful learning performance.
- B. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.
- C. Videographer Qualifications: A professional videographer who is experienced photographing demonstration and training events similar to those required.
- D. Preinstruction Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to demonstration and training including, but not limited to, the following:
  1. Inspect and discuss locations and other facilities required for instruction.
  2. Review and finalize instruction schedule and verify availability of educational materials, instructors' personnel, audiovisual equipment, and facilities needed to avoid delays.
  3. Review required content of instruction.
  4. For instruction that must occur outside, review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures to follow if conditions are unfavorable.

#### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.
- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data has been reviewed and approved by Architect.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.

- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:
1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
    - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
    - b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
    - c. Operating standards.
    - d. Regulatory requirements.
    - e. Equipment function.
    - f. Operating characteristics.
    - g. Limiting conditions.
    - h. Performance curves.
  2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
    - a. Emergency manuals.
    - b. Operations manuals.
    - c. Maintenance manuals.
    - d. Project record documents.
    - e. Identification systems.
    - f. Warranties and bonds.
    - g. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
  3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
    - a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
    - b. Instructions on stopping.
    - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
    - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
    - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
    - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
  4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
    - a. Startup procedures.
    - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
    - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
    - d. Regulation and control procedures.
    - e. Control sequences.
    - f. Safety procedures.
    - g. Instructions on stopping.
    - h. Normal shutdown instructions.
    - i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
    - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
    - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
    - l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
    - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
  5. Adjustments: Include the following:
    - a. Alignments.
    - b. Checking adjustments.
    - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.

- d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
- 6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
  - a. Diagnostic instructions.
  - b. Test and inspection procedures.
- 7. Maintenance: Include the following:
  - a. Inspection procedures.
  - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - d. Procedures for routine cleaning
  - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
  - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
  - g. Instruction on use of special tools.
- 8. Repairs: Include the following:
  - a. Diagnosis instructions.
  - b. Repair instructions.
  - c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  - d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
  - e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Division 01 Section "Operations and Maintenance Data."
- B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

#### 3.2 INSTRUCTION

- A. Facilitator: Engage a qualified facilitator to prepare instruction program and training modules, to coordinate instructors, and to coordinate between Contractor and Owner for number of participants, instruction times, and location.
- B. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
  - 1. Architect will furnish an instructor to describe basis of system design, operational requirements, criteria, and regulatory requirements.
  - 2. Owner will furnish an instructor to describe Owner's operational philosophy.
  - 3. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.
- C. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
  - 1. Schedule training with Owner, through Construction Manager, with at least seven (7) days advance notice.

- D. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.
- E. Evaluation: At conclusion of each training module, assess and document each participant's mastery of module by use of a demonstration performance-based test.
- F. Cleanup: Collect used and leftover educational materials and give to Owner. Remove instructional equipment. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

### 3.3 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING VIDEO RECORDINGS

- A. General: Engage a qualified commercial videographer to record demonstration and training video recordings. Record each training module separately. Include classroom instructions and demonstrations, board diagrams, and other visual aids, but not student practice.
  - 1. At beginning of each training module, record each chart containing learning objective and lesson outline.
- B. Video: Provide minimum 640 x 480 video resolution converted to format file type acceptable to Owner, on electronic media.
  - 1. Electronic Media: Read-only format compact disc acceptable to Owner, with commercial-grade graphic label.
  - 2. File Hierarchy: Organize folder structure and file locations according to project manual table of contents. Provide complete screen-based menu.
  - 3. File Names: Utilize file names based upon name of equipment generally described in video segment, as identified in Project specifications.
  - 4. Contractor and Installer Contact File: Using appropriate software, create a file for inclusion on the Equipment Demonstration and Training DVD that describes the following for each Contractor involved on the Project, arranged according to Project table of contents:
    - a. Name of Contractor/Installer.
    - b. Business address.
    - c. Business phone number.
    - d. Point of contact.
    - e. E-mail address.
- C. Recording: Mount camera on tripod before starting recording, unless otherwise necessary to adequately cover area of demonstration and training. Display continuous running time.
  - 1. Film training session(s) in segments not to exceed fifteen (15) minutes.
    - a. Produce segments to present a single significant piece of equipment per segment.
    - b. Organize segments with multiple pieces of equipment to follow order of Project Manual table of contents.
    - c. Where a training session on a particular piece of equipment exceeds fifteen (15) minutes, stop filming and pause training session. Begin training session again upon commencement of new filming segment.
- D. Light Levels: Verify light levels are adequate to properly light equipment. Verify equipment markings are clearly visible prior to recording.
  - 1. Furnish additional portable lighting as required.

- E. Narration: Describe scenes on video recording by audio narration by microphone while or dubbing audio narration off-site after video recording is recorded. Include description of items being viewed.
- F. Transcript: Provide a transcript of the narration. Display images and running time captured from videotape opposite the corresponding narration segment.
- G. Preproduced Video Recordings: Provide video recordings used as a component of training modules in same format as recordings of live training.

END OF SECTION 017900

## SECTION 024119 - SELECTIVE STRUCTURE DEMOLITION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
2. Demolition and removal of selected site elements.
3. Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.

##### B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 01 Section "Summary" for restrictions on the use of the premises, Owner-occupancy requirements, and phasing requirements.
2. Division 01 Section "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection" for temporary protection of existing trees and plants that are affected by selective demolition.
3. Division 01 Section "Execution" for cutting and patching procedures.
4. Division 31 Section "Site Clearing" for site clearing and removal of above- and below-grade improvements.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be removed and salvaged or removed and reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Carefully detach from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to Owner.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, prepare for reuse, and reinstall where indicated.
- D. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be permanently removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

#### 1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.
- B. Historic items, relics, antiques, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be uncovered during demolition remain the property of Owner.
  1. Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to Owner.

#### 1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Predemolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
2. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
3. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
5. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For refrigerant recovery technician.
- B. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit report, including drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property, for environmental protection, for dust control and, for noise control. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.
- C. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
  1. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure Owner's building manager's and other tenants' on-site operations are uninterrupted.
  2. Interruption of utility services. Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted.
  3. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
  4. Use of elevator and stairs.
  5. Coordination of Owner's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building and of Owner's partial occupancy of completed Work.
- D. Inventory: Submit a list of items to be removed and salvaged and deliver to Owner prior to start of demolition.
- E. Predemolition Photographs or Video: Submit before Work begins.
- F. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.
- G. Warranties: Documentation indicated that existing warranties are still in effect after completion of selective demolition.

#### 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Inventory: Submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.
- B. Landfill Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of hazardous wastes by a landfill facility licensed to accept hazardous wastes.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by an EPA-approved certification program.

#### 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.

- B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
- C. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- D. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
  - 1. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner before start of the Work.
  - 2. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.
- E. Hazardous Materials: Hazardous materials are present in buildings and structures to be selectively demolished. A report on the presence of hazardous materials is on file for review and use. Examine report to become aware of locations where hazardous materials are present.
  - 1. Hazardous material remediation is specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
  - 2. Do not disturb hazardous materials or items suspected of containing hazardous materials except under procedures specified elsewhere in the Contract Documents.
  - 3. Owner will provide material safety data sheets for suspected hazardous materials that are known to be present in buildings and structures to be selectively demolished because of building operations or processes performed there.
- F. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- G. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
  - 1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during selective demolition, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties. Notify warrantor before proceeding.
- B. Notify warrantor on completion of selective demolition, and obtain documentation verifying that existing system has been inspected and warranty remains in effect. Submit documentation at Project closeout.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards: Comply with ANSI/ASSE A10.6 and NFPA 241.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.

- B. Review record documents of existing construction provided by Owner. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in record documents.
- C. Survey existing conditions and correlate with requirements indicated to determine extent of selective demolition required.
- D. When unanticipated mechanical, electrical, or structural elements that conflict with intended function or design are encountered, investigate and measure the nature and extent of conflict. Promptly submit a written report to Architect.
- E. Engage a professional engineer to perform an engineering survey of condition of building to determine whether removing any element might result in structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of structure or adjacent structures during selective building demolition operations.
  - 1. Perform surveys as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from selective demolition activities.
  - 2. Steel Tendons: Locate tensioned steel tendons and include recommendations for de-tensioning.
- F. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of preconstruction photographs.
  - 1. Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Photographic Documentation."
  - 2. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged. Provide photographs or video of conditions that might be misconstrued as damage caused by salvage operations.
  - 3. Before selective demolition or removal of existing building elements that will be reproduced or duplicated in final Work, make permanent record of measurements, materials, and construction details required to make exact reproduction.

### 3.2 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage.
  - 1. Comply with requirements for existing services/systems interruptions specified in Division 01 Section "Summary."
- B. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
  - 1. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by Contractor.
  - 2. Arrange to shut off indicated utilities with utility companies.
  - 3. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
  - 4. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, plumbing, and HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
    - a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
    - b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
    - c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
    - d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.

- e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
  - f. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
  - g. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
- C. Refrigerant: Remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment to be selectively demolished according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
- 1. Comply with requirements for access and protection specified in Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- B. Temporary Facilities: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
- 1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
  - 2. Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
  - 3. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
  - 4. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
  - 5. Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling specified in Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- C. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
- 1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.

### 3.4 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
- 1. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
  - 2. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping, to minimize disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
  - 3. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.

4. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain fire watch and portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
5. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
6. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
7. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
8. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
9. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.

B. Removed and Salvaged Items:

1. Clean salvaged items.
2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
4. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner.
5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.

C. Removed and Reinstalled Items:

1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse.
2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.

- D. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition and cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

### 3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION PROCEDURES FOR SPECIFIC MATERIALS

- A. Concrete: Demolish in small sections. Using power-driven saw, cut concrete to a depth of at least 3/4 inch (19 mm) at junctures with construction to remain. Dislodge concrete from reinforcement at perimeter of areas being demolished, cut reinforcement, and then remove remainder of concrete. Neatly trim openings to dimensions indicated.
- B. Concrete: Demolish in sections. Cut concrete full depth at junctures with construction to remain and at regular intervals using power-driven saw, then remove concrete between saw cuts.
- C. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, then remove masonry between saw cuts.
- D. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, then break up and remove.
- E. Resilient Floor Coverings: Remove floor coverings and adhesive according to recommendations in RFCI's "Recommended Work Practices for the Removal of Resilient Floor Coverings."
- F. Roofing: Remove no more existing roofing than what can be covered in one day by new roofing and so that building interior remains watertight and weathertight. See Division 07 for new roofing requirements.

1. Remove existing roof membrane, flashings, copings, and roof accessories.
2. Remove existing roofing system down to substrate.

### 3.6 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. General: Except for items or materials indicated to be recycled, reused, salvaged, reinstalled, or otherwise indicated to remain Owner's property, remove demolished materials from Project site.
  1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
  2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
  3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
  4. Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- B. Disposal: Transport demolished materials and dispose of at designated spoil areas on Owner's property.
- C. Disposal: Transport demolished materials off Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

### 3.7 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION 024119

## SECTION 03 1100 - CONCRETE FORMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS: The General Conditions, any Supplementary General Conditions and Division 1, General Requirements, are hereby made a part of this Section as fully as if repeated herein.
- 1.2 SECTION INCLUDES
- A. Job-Built Formwork, Prefabricated Forms, Form Ties and Accessories; Design; Construction and removal of forms, including shoring, bracing, cribbing, and screeds.
1. Embedded Items: Provide accurate setting and placing of items built into the concrete to provide openings, recesses, attachment, or anchorage. Certain products are to be furnished as a part of this Contract and are specified in other sections.
  2. Formwork Design: Contractor shall hire a registered professional engineer who shall be responsible for the design of all temporary formwork including stripping procedures for concrete flat slabs, walls, columns, etc.
- 1.3 RELATED WORK
- A. Sections of DIVISION 3, CONCRETE, as well as all other sections involving interface with concrete work.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. References: Comply with the following minimum standards:
1. ACI-347R94 (ANSI A 145.1) Recommended Practice for Concrete Formwork.
  2. ACI-318-95 (ANSI A 89.1) Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete
  3. ACI-301-96 (ANSI A 138.1) Specification for Structural Concrete for Buildings.
  4. ACI-117-90 Standard Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials.
  5. ASTM E-1155 Standard Method for Determining Floor Flatness & Levelness Using the F-Number System.
  6. ACI 302.1 R89 Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction.
- 1.5 QUALITY CONTROL SUBMITTALS
- A. Certification: Form release materials will not discolor concrete and without removal from concrete are compatible with materials to be used for setting materials, adhesives, applied finishes, and coatings.
- 1.6 JOB CONDITIONS
- A. Design Loads: Do not place, handle or store products, equipment or other materials on structure, before concrete has reached its design strength and in such a manner as to not exceed design loads. Check with Structural Engineer for design loads of each area and review of construction loads. Any area damaged by construction operations must be repaired or replaced at no costs.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 FORM MATERIALS

- A. Lumber: Western Wood Products or Southern Forest Products grading. Common or Utility grades for non-exposed surfaces. Structural or Construction grades for walers, braces and supports.
- B. Plywood: US Product Standard PA-1 "B-B (Concrete Form) Plywood" Class I, exterior grade or better, milled oiled and edge sealed, with each piece bearing legible inspection trademark.
  - 1. All form materials for exposed slabs, columns and spandrels shall be plastic coated or medium density.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES: Furnish hairpin clips, bands, clamps, braces, adjustable shoring jacks, fasteners, form ties, etc., necessary to execute installation of formwork. No aluminum devices or fasteners (including nails) will be permitted.

- A. Form Ties: Non-corrosive, non-staining; minimum working strength as required by concrete sections being contained when full liquid concrete and construction loads; adjustable in length to permit complete tightening of forms and of such types as to leave no metal closer than 1-1/2" the surface, spacing as required to maintain formwork and finish concrete within tolerances and at a uniform spacing approved by the Architect, generally 24 inches on center.
- B. Form Release: Non-staining liquid which will impart a waterproof film to prevent adhesion of concrete and will not stain, cause imperfections, or leave a paint-impeding coating on the face of the concrete. When finished surface is to be painted or to receive other surface treatment, the material applied to form surfaces shall be compatible with the type of paint or surface treatment to be used.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DESIGN: Formwork and its supports shall carry adequately all liquid concrete, men, and equipment, in absolute safety under loads imposed during construction.

- A. Design and Placement of Forms: ACI 347, Chapter 2: Design and ACI 318, Chapter 6: Formwork, Embedded Pipes, and Construction Joints.
- B. Tolerances: ACI-347 paragraphs 3.3 and 3.4, and ACI 117 will be considered absolute maximum, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.2 CONSTRUCTION: Construct forms to slopes, lines and dimensions shown, plumb and straight and sufficiently tight to prevent leakage; securely brace and shore forms to prevent displacement and to safely support construction loads. Provide for openings, offsets, sinkages, keyways, recesses, moldings, rustications, reglets, chamfers, blocking, screeds, bulkheads, anchorages, inserts and other features required in work.

- A. Forms for exposed finish concrete shall be furnished in the largest practicable sizes to minimize the number of joints and to conform to the joint system shown on the drawings.
- B. Forms for textured finish concrete shall be units of face design, size, arrangement and configuration as shown on the contract drawings or as required to match the Architect's control

sample. Provide solid backing and form supports to ensure stability of textured form liners.

- C. Cylindrical columns and supports shall be constructed of metal, fiberglass reinforced plastic, or round section members with paper or fiber tubes, constructed of laminated plies using water-resistant adhesive with wax-impregnated exterior for weather and moisture protection. Provide units with sufficient wall thickness to resist loads imposed by wet concrete without deformation.

3.3 BUILT-IN EMBEDDED ITEMS: Provide for installation of fastening devices required for attachment of other work. Properly locate in cooperation with other trades; secure and maintain in position before concrete is poured.

- A. Coordination: Ascertain requirements and extent, location and details of items to be embedded or built into concrete. Templates or setting diagrams shall be furnished by the various trades or manufacturers when items are to be set, embedded or blocked -out by this trade. Ensure that anchors reach adequate penetration and engage with reinforcement. Temporary support shall not be evident when forms are removed.

- B. Work by Others: Allow sufficient time between erection of forms and placing of concrete for various trades to properly set embedded items required for their work. Maintain in position and protect all (provided and placed in the forms by the various trades) until concrete is completed.

1. Conduits: Cannot be run in the concrete.
2. Conduits: Can be run in the concrete slab on grade only when indicated. Do not space conduit or pipes closer than three diameters on center; they must be so placed as to avoid changing the location of the reinforcement from that shown on the drawings. Do not run conduit in concrete topping over metal decking (if any).

- C. Anchorages: Items required to be set as a part of this work generally include: Inserts, sleeves, hangers, ties, anchors, bolts, base & leveling plates, frames, angle guards, dowels, anchor slots, reglets, nailing strips, blocking, grounds, sleepers, and adjustable wedge inserts. Refer to Miscellaneous Metals and Masonry Sections for certain products.

1. Accurately locate utilizing a level or transit. Set in position with proper penetration, exposure and engagement with reinforcement. Maintain in position by double bolting to formwork or wood templates.
2. Plates, Frames, Sleeves, Blocking and Miscellaneous Metals: Set item with perimeter flush with concrete surface. Ensure adequate bonding, anchorage and protection of dissimilar materials. Items shall have a thickness of not less than 1/8" (i.e. no cans, cups, etc.) Prevent leakage and infiltration of mortar into openings.

3.4 LINES AND LEVELS: Check the lines and levels of the completed formwork for all exposed columns, grade beams, walls, etc., before concrete is placed. Make whatever corrections or adjustments to the formwork to correct any deviations which exceed specified tolerances allowed.

- A. Adjust height of formwork at construction joint locations in post-tensioned slabs after post-tensioning and prior to pouring of adjacent slabs to compensate for rise in slab due to prestress force.

3.5 CLEANING FORMWORK: Force debris to and out of clean-out panels with a jet stream of compressed air. Clean-out all debris. Hose form thoroughly with water and air-jet out any

standing water when weather permits.

- A. If concrete placing does not commence immediately after cleaning, cover openings in forms with tarpaulins.

3.6 FORM REMOVAL: Remove forms in accordance with ACI 301, Paragraphs 2.3.3 and 2.3.4; ACI 318 paragraph 6.2, and ACI 347 paragraphs 3.7 and 3.8. Removal strength of concrete for stripping shall be determined in accordance with ACI 301, paragraph 4.7.

- A. Appearance: No steel spreaders, ties, or other metal, shall project from or be visible on any concrete surface.
- B. Shoring: Leave shoring in place until concrete member will safely support its own weight, plus any loads that may be placed upon it. Any reshoring done must meet the requirements of ACI 347; without producing excessive stress, excessive deflection or permanent deformation of the floor.

END OF SECTION 03 1100

## SECTION 03 1500 – CONCRETE ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this section.

#### 1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Construction joints, expansion joints and control joints.
- B. Vapor retarders under all interior concrete slabs on grade.

#### 1.3 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 03 1000 Concrete Formwork.
- B. Section 03 3000 Cast-In-Place Concrete.

#### 1.4 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM - American Society for Testing and Materials
- B. ASTM A 924 – Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet Metallic Coated by the Hot Dip Process
- C. ASTM C 578 - Specification for Preformed, Cellular Polystyrene Thermal Insulation
- D. ASTM E 1745 - Plastic Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Soil or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs.
- E. ASTM E 1643 - Standard Practice for Installation of Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturers' Literature: Indicate compliance with product specifications.
- B. Samples: Each type product with accessories, if requested.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate proposed locations of all construction joints, and pouring sequence.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EXPANSION JOINT FILLERS

- A. Expanded Polystyrene: Closed-cell, extruded polystyrene with high density skin.
  - 1. ASTM D-3575

2. Density = 2.0 pcf
3. Compressive Set (25%) = 40 psi.
4. Water Absorption = 1% maximum
5. Manufacturers:
  - a. “Deck-O-Foam” by W.R.Meadows
  - b. “Foamtastic” by Hohmann & Barnard

## 2.2 JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Polyurethane: One or two component, polyurethane joint sealant, Non-Sag conforming to F.S. II-S-227E. Color as selected by the Architect.
  1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Sonneborn - Sonolastic NP I
    - b. Sika Chem. Co. - Sikaflex 1a; 2c-NS/SL
    - c. Tremco - Dymeric
  2. Locations: All exposed joints.

## 2.3 CONTROL JOINTS

- A. Metal Load Transferring type 24 gauge galvanized steel, (ASTM A-924), shaped to form a continuous tongue and groove load transferring key between concrete slabs, punched for doweling including stakes, splice plates and removable 1/8” plastic cap.
  1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Jahn Div. of Superior – Screed Key
    - b. Heckman Building Products – Tongue and Groove Joint
    - c. Cardinal Mfg. Co. – Form-A-Key
    - d. Vulcan Metal Products, Inc. – Vulco Screed Joint
  2. Locations: All interior concrete slabs on grade.
- B. Joint formed with 2 x 6 lumber and containing smooth steel dowels.
  1. Locations: All interior concrete slabs on grade and concrete walls.
- C. Sawcut control joints made with a wet saw.
  1. Locations: All interior concrete slabs on grade.
- D. Preformed removable inserts.
  1. Locations: All interior concrete slabs on grade.
- E. Chamfer Strips:
  1. Locations: All concrete walls.

## 2.4 VAPOR RETARDER

- A. Provide vapor retarder cover over prepared base material where needed to prevent rapid escape of moisture into subbase and where indicated. Use only materials which are resistant to decay when

tested in accordance with ANSI/ASTM E-154, as follows:

1. Polyethylene sheet not less than 10 mils thick.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 JOINT ARRANGEMENTS

- A. Location Criteria: Locate as to least impair the strength of the structure, and at locations coincident with designed structural and architectural features (specifically column lines). Maximum horizontal dimensions of a single unit of placement, 40 feet in a straight line (except footings).
  1. Locations: All locations are subject to approval.
- B. Joint Design: Follow a plane perpendicular to the principal reinforcement with a bulkhead shaped to produce a keyed surface except of expansion joints.
- C. Pouring Sequence: Continuous pouring between joints; however, do not place concrete in adjacent sections until 48 hours have elapsed from placement of original sections.

#### 3.2 CONSTRUCTION JOINTS

- A. One edge of all construction joints shall have a 1/4" wide by 3/8" deep minimum blockout for the installation of the joint filler. Particular care shall be exercised to keep the surface of concrete in exactly the same plane on both sides of the joint.
- B. Framed Concrete Slab Surfaces: Roughen joint surfaces with a chipping hammer or by another approved method which will remove laitance, loose particles or aggregate, or damage concrete. After the surface of the joint has been cleaned of dust, chips, or other foreign material, an approved bonding agent (as specified in Section 03300) shall be placed on the joint surface prior to placing the next lift of concrete.
- C. Slab On Grade Construction Joints: Establish longitudinal and transverse control joints. With elevations checked by instrument stretch line over entire length. Drive stakes 2 ft. o.c. and attached screed to stakes. Provide lateral support where used as a bulkhead. Install smooth dowels and locate joints as specified in the contract documents.
  1. Locations: As indicated on the drawings, or if not shown, locate joints at 40'-0" o.c. maximum spacing for all concrete slabs on grade.

#### 3.3 EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Exposed slabs on grade: Place joint filler 1/2 inch below the finished surface of the slab and extend to the bottom of the slab. The joint between the top of the filler and the finished slab shall be filled with a joint sealer.
  1. Locations: Where indicated. If not shown, divide exterior slabs into areas not exceeding 400 sq. ft. and exterior sidewalks into areas not exceeding 150 sq. ft.
  2. Type and Size: Use 1/2" thick expansion joint filler or other thickness indicated for full width and depth of concrete section.

### 3.4 CONTROL JOINTS

- A. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install control joints in slabs on grade, walls and sidewalks as indicated on the drawings, or if not shown, locate joints at 20'-0" o.c. maximum spacing for slabs on grade and concrete walls and at 5'-0" o.c. for exterior sidewalks.
- B. Type and Size: Concrete slabs shall have 1/8" wide sawcut joints or preformed removable inserts. Both joints must be installed 1/4 of the slab depth below the top surface within 8 hours of pouring slab. Concrete walls shall have 1 inch deep minimum chamfer strips installed on the inside and outside of the wall.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF FILM TYPE VAPOR RETARDERS FOR CONCRETE SLABS

- A. Ensure subbase for concrete is compacted; sharp objects and scraps are removed.
- B. Place vapor barrier in widest practical widths with all joints lapped minimum 6 inches. Seal vapor barrier overlap together with Raven Vapor Bond Tape.
- C. Positioning: Maintain in place. Stretch and weight edges and laps to maintain their position until concrete is placed.
- D. Protection and Patching: Protect vapor barrier from rips. Hold patches in readiness during the concrete pouring operation and lay over all rips (beneath wire fabric and reinforcing steel.)
- E. Penetration: (Pipe, anchors, and other items) Seal vapor barrier material to the pipe and other penetrations with an elastomeric sealant that is approved by the vapor barrier manufacturer and architect.

### 3.6 JOINT SEALANTS

- A. The surfaces to receive the sealant shall be cleaned of any loose materials, dirt, dust, laitance, etc. Cleaning shall be done by power wire brushing followed by blasting with oil-free compressed air. No cleaning solvents shall be used.
- B. Install extensible epoxy sealant flush with the edges of the adjacent concrete and install polyurethane sealant 1/8" below edges of the adjacent concrete per the manufacturer's recommendations. In areas where the joints have been overfilled, remove excess while still fluid or remove after hardening by grinding.
  - 1. The extensible epoxy shall be installed after the concrete has cured a minimum of 180 days, and the temperature of the building is relatively constant. Since the concrete slab on grade will continue to shrink after the extensible epoxy has been installed, the contractor shall allocate sufficient monies in his bid to refill the extensible epoxy joints if cracking of the extensible epoxy occurs.
- C. Where the depth of the joint appears excessive, the following procedures shall be followed:
  - 1. The depth of the polyurethane sealant may be limited to 0.5" by installing closed cell backer rod and non-bonding tape.
  - 2. The extensible epoxy shall completely fill the entire depth of the joint without adding any filler material in the joints, no matter what the depth or width of the joint may be.

- D. Follow manufacturer's recommendations covering the proper method of curing the sealant. Prevent any contact with sealant before it has cured.
- E. Make test applications to insure that proper adhesion is being attained. If not, determine what additional steps are needed to provide it.
- F. Following the completion of the work, the Architect shall inspect the joints. Where the smoothness of the joint is determined to be unsatisfactory, the contractor shall grind down the surface of the joint to make it acceptable.

END OF SECTION 03 1500

## SECTION 03 2000 - CONCRETE REINFORCEMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this section.

#### 1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Steel reinforcing bars, ties, dowels and welded wire fabric, miscellaneous reinforcement and accessories.

#### 1.3 RELATED WORK

- A. Sections of DIVISION 3, CONCRETE, as well as all other sections including interface with concrete work.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. References: Conform to and perform work in accordance with the current editions of:
  - 1. Local and State Building Codes.
  - 2. "Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete", ACI 318-95.
  - 3. "Manual of Standard Practice for Detailing Reinforced Concrete Structures", ACI 315, and CRSI 63 and CRSI 65.
  - 4. Specifications for Structural Concrete Buildings ACI 301.
  - 5. ANSI/AWS D1.4 Welding Code.
  - 6. "Standard Specification for Epoxy-Coated Steel Wire and Welded Wire Fabric for Reinforcement", ASTM A-884.
- B. Manufacturing Source: Reinforcing Steel of domestic origin.
- C. Fabricator: Maintain a competent engineering department and adequate equipment to fabricate steel in accordance with CRSI Manual of Standard Practice, latest edition.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Show plan layouts (including dimensioned slab openings), elevation drawings, bending, splicing, sizes, spacing and details of all reinforcing and accessories. **Please note that the Contract Documents in CADD format will not be made available to the contractor for their use in the preparation of the shop drawings, unless a release is signed, and a fee is paid for each cadd file requested.**

#### 1.6 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Packing: Reinforcement must be tagged as required to indicate respective mill test and job condition.
- B. Shipping: Epoxy coated bars shall be bundled together for shipment using excelsior or equivalent, and plastic or padded metal bands. All personnel responsible for loading or unloading coated bars

shall use caution to avoid dragging or dropping the bundles. If, during shipment, any damage results, the damaged product shall be repaired as directed by the Engineer.

- C. Storage and Handling: Protect products in such a manner as to prevent damage, bending, or undue rusting.
  - 1. Reinforcing Steel: Store at site to permit easy access for proper inspection and identification of each shipment. Separate material of each shipment for size and shape.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 REINFORCING: Manufacture and deform in accordance with ANSI/ASTM A-615, except all reinforcing to be welded shall conform to ASTM A-706. All rebar shall consist of domestic manufacture billet steel of clean, new stock.
  - A. All column vertical bars (except dowels): Use grade 75 (yield) minimum 75000 psi.
  - B. All other Bars: Use Grade 60 (yield) min. 60,000 psi.
- 2.2 WELDED WIRE FABRIC: Manufacture in accordance with ANSI/ASTM A185.
  - A. Unless otherwise specified in the contract documents, provide 6"x 6"-W.2.9 / W2.9 W.W.F., Grade 65 (yield) min. 65,000 psi.
- 2.3 FASTENERS AND SPLICE
  - A. Tie Wire: Double annealed steel wire, minimum #16 gauge, conforming to ANSI/ASTM A497.
- 2.4 ACCESSORIES: Provide all spacers, chairs, bolsters, ties and other devices necessary to properly place, space, support, and maintain reinforcement in locations. Provide in accordance with ACI-315. No aluminum inserts or accessories will be permitted.
  - A. Bar Supports: Conform to "Bar Support Specifications", CRSI Manual of Standard Practice, Chapter 3, latest edition, and be of the following types:
    - 1. Support reinforcing in footings with precast concrete blocks.
    - 2. For exposed-to-view concrete surfaces, where legs of supports are in contact with forms, provide supports with legs which are plastic protected (CRSI, Class 1) or stainless steel protected (CRSI, Class 2).
    - 3. Support reinforcement for slabs on grade with precast concrete blocks, or No. 5 rebar placed on metal chairs with plate bases as required to prevent penetration of earth or vapor barrier. Spacing of blocks, chairs, and No. 5 rebar shall be as necessary to prevent sagging of the reinforcement under the weight of construction workers and wet concrete.
    - 4. Support reinforcement for framed slabs (including slabs poured on metal deck) with No. 5 rebar placed on slab bolsters or chairs spaced as necessary to prevent sagging of the reinforcement under the weight of construction workers and wet concrete.
- 2.5 FABRICATION: Shop fabrication according to approved shop drawings. All fabrication of bars performed in a shop, with field fabrication done only where unavoidable, and approved.
  - A. Reference: Fabricate in accordance with CRSI Manual of Standard Practice for Reinforced Concrete

Construction.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 INTENT: All concrete shall be reinforced. For conditions not specifically shown or detailed, framing and reinforcement shall be provided in a manner consistent with other similar details or conditions shown on the drawings. Prior to work under these conditions, notify the Architect for confirmation.
- 3.2 PREPARATION
- A. Clean bars of loose mill scale, rust, oil, and all coatings that will destroy or reduce the bond before placing, and again before concrete is placed.
  - B. Examine the drawings and specifications for all other Sections of Work, especially the mechanical and electrical work.
- 3.3 PLACEMENT OF REINFORCEMENT: Accurately place in positions and spacings shown. Securely support and fasten to prevent displacement before or during concrete placement. Place reinforcing steel, bar supports, and splice devices, in accordance with CRSI Manual of Standard Practice, latest edition; ACI 315 and ACI 318.
- A. Support: Use approved accessories to hold reinforcement at proper distances from surrounding surfaces, with minimum coverage as indicated. Tying reinforcing steel with wire to nails in forms or using wood spacers is not permitted.
  - B. Spacing: In no case shall the clear distance between bars be less than 1 inch, nor less than 1-1/2 times the maximum size of coarse aggregate in the concrete, unless specifically indicated as bundled.
    - 1. Concrete Coverage and Protection: ACI-318.2.
    - 2. Clearance: The clear distance between bars also shall apply to the clear distance between contact splices and adjacent splices or bars.
  - C. Layering: Where reinforcement in beams or girders is placed in two or more layers, the clear distance between layers shall not be less than 1 inch, and the bars in the upper layers shall be placed directly above those in the bottom layer.
  - D. Field Adjustments: Move concrete reinforcing steel as necessary to avoid interference with other reinforcing steel, other embedded items; however prior to placing concrete, bars moved more than tolerances herein shall be inspected and approved.
    - 1. Sleeves and Embedded Items: Do not cut bars to clear sleeves or slots through slabs or walls. Wrap bars around these openings.
    - 2. Openings: Bar reinforcement terminated at openings in slabs and walls shall be compensated for by placing one half of reinforcement terminated on each side of openings for the full span length.
  - E. Install welded wire fabric in as long lengths as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh and lace splices with wire. Offset end laps in adjacent widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.
  - F. Minimum Rebar and Dowel Extent: Provide minimum temperature reinforcing in all walls and slabs

where no reinforcing is shown or noted.

- G. Minimum Placement: All reinforcing steel must be in place, wired, and inspected, before depositing concrete.
  - H. Protection: Protection care must be exercised in placing reinforcing steel to prevent any marring of interior faces of forms, shifting of forms, or damaging epoxy coating on reinforcing.
  - I. Provide protection for all vertical reinforcing bars that are not immediately enclosed by formwork.
- 3.4 FASTENING INTERSECTIONS: Wire tie reinforcement together at all points where bars cross. Splice as indicated. Welding or tack welding of reinforcement bars to other bars or to plates, angles, etc. is prohibited. Work shall be performed in accordance with CRSI Recommendations.
- 3.5 LAP SPLICES: Lap bars as scheduled on drawings and securely tie with wire at frequent intervals. Stagger so that adjacent splices will be apart with care taken to maintain proper clearance, between parallel bars and between bars and forms. Make lap splices in a manner to provide laps consistent with structural drawings, and CRSI.
- A. Tie Wires: Cut loose ends and turn wire twists inside of the section and bend so that placement of concrete will not force ends to exposed concrete surfaces.
  - B. All lap splices for epoxy coated reinforcing steel shall be increased as required by Chapter 12, paragraph 12.2.4.3 of the ACI 318 Building Code.
- 3.6 DOWELS: Install with a template to hold bars in the proper position, placed as located on the drawings.
- A. Size: Dowels shall be of the diameter size indicated in various sections with lengths equivalent to twice that required for the indicated spliced. One-half of the length shall be embedded with the required splice length exposed for attachment.
- 3.7 INSPECTION
- A. Comply with inspection requirements of Sections 01 4000, Quality Control, 03 3000 Cast in Place Concrete, and Division 4 Masonry.
  - B. Inspect concrete and masonry reinforcement as indicated in ACI 301, Section 1.6; IBC 2012 Chapter 17, Sections 1701 thru 1706; and ACI 311 “Recommended Practice for Concrete Inspection.”
  - C. Inspect reinforcing size, quantity, strength, position (location), and arrangement. Concrete and masonry reinforcement includes welded wire fabric, mild reinforcing bars, and fibrous types. Inspection shall include but is not limited to the following.
    - 1. Insure rebar and welded wire fabric is not displaced during placement of concrete and masonry grout.
    - 2. Rebar size, quantity, strength, position (location) and arrangement in columns, beams, slabs, footings, walls, masonry, precast concrete plank grout keys, etc.
    - 3. Fibermesh slab reinforcing in concrete slabs.

4. Evaluation of cross sectional area of reinforcing steel and placement of supplemental bars.
- D. Submit daily reports indicating conformance and exceptions of concrete operation to contract documents.
- E. See specification Section 03 3000 for further requirements.

### 3.9 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY

- A. Submit copies of all reports indicating conformance and exceptions to contract documents in a timely fashion to General Contractor for distribution to design consultants, owner, subcontractors and other interested parties.
- B. Final Report: The Inspection Agency shall prepare a written report that summarizes the work inspected during the course of the project, and certifies that the work meets the requirements of the contract documents, specifications, and all governing agencies.

END OF SECTION 03 2000

## SECTION 03 3000 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Condition and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this section.

#### 1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Cast-in-place concrete including preparation, conveying, placement, leveling, finishing, hardening, sealing, curing, bonding, jointing, cutting, patching and grouting.
- B. Specific elements include foundations, walls, slabs, columns, stairs, etc.

#### 1.3 RELATED WORK

- A. Sections of Division 3, Concrete, as well as all other sections involving interface with concrete work.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer's Representation: Arrange with the manufacturer to provide a representative to assist and instruct the trades in the proper application of his product. The manufacturer's representative shall be available to visit the site if it becomes necessary for this purpose, and certification of application.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American Concrete Institute (ACI): The following constitute part of this specification. Reference to Portland Cement shall mean type and color specified.
  - 1. 318 (ANSI A89.1) - Building Code Requirement for Reinforced Concrete.
  - 2. 306 (ANSI A144.1) - Recommended Practice for Cold Weather Concreting.
  - 3. 305 - Recommended Practice for Hot Weather Concreting.
  - 4. 211.1 (ANSI A167.1) - Recommended Practice for Selecting Proportions/Normal Weight Concrete.
  - 5. 304 (ANSI A186.1) - Recommended Practice for Measuring, Mixing and Placing Concrete
  - 6. 301 (ANSI A138.1) - Specification for Structural Concrete for Buildings.
  - 7. 311 (ANSI A188.2) - Recommended Practice for Concrete Inspection.
  - 8. 302.1 Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction.
  - 9. 117 Standard Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials.
- B. American Society of Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. C-150 - Portland Cement
  - 2. C-309 - Liquid Membrane - Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete
  - 3. C-979 - Specifications for Pigments for Integrally Colored Concrete.
  - 4. E-1155 Standard Method for Determining Floor Flatness & Levelness Using the F-Number System.

## 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Mix Designs: All classes of concrete include aggregate gradation and actual proportioning.
- B. Manufacturer's Literature: Each material and accessory include manufacturer's directions and product specifications with recommended unit quantities.
- C. Certification:
  - 1. Compliance: Notarized statement issued by manufacturers of the respective products that the supplied products meet requirements and are tested in accordance with standards specified.
  - 2. Compatibility: Certify that curing compounds, sealers and form release agents will not discolor concrete and without removal from concrete will not be harmful to later application of setting materials.
  - 3. Installation: Certify that the materials have been installed/applied in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Delivery Tickets: Duplicate tickets with each load; stating:
  - 1. Producer's Name; Delivery Date; Time Dispatched; Time Delivered; Truck Number; Number of Cubic Yards; Type and Brand of Cement; Amount of Admixture; Class of Concrete or Cement Content (Bags/Cubic Yards); Amount of Water Added at Job.
- E. Qualifications of inspection agency including past experience of field personnel to perform required inspection.
- F. Testing and Inspection Reports:
  - 1. Results of compression cylinders and grout cubes.
  - 2. Test Reports: Indicating strength and density of furnished product.
  - 3. Inspection reports: Certifying rebar, fibermesh and weld wire fabric placement, post-tensioned tendon placement and results of jacking operation, etc. (See Section 3.16 – Testing and Inspection).

## 1.7 PRODUCT HANDLING

- A. Storage: Store cements in dry, well ventilated enclosures.
- B. Do not use cement showing indication of moisture damage, caking and other deterioration.

## 1.8 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

- A. Excess Moisture: Place no concrete during periods of rain, sleet or snow, unless adequate and approved protection is provided; allow no rain or other weather produced moisture to increase mixing water or to damage finished surfaces.
- B. Cold Weather Concrete: ACI-306.
  - 1. Admixtures: Do not use salt, chemicals or other foreign materials mixed with the concrete for the purpose of preventing freezing.

2. Ground freezing: Cover concrete slabs on earth, footings and walls, as required to protect the ground underneath from freezing.
  3. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength which could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures by using insulating blankets or other approved method.
  4. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 degrees Fahrenheit uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 degrees Fahrenheit and not more than 80 degrees Fahrenheit at point of placement.
- C. Hot Weather Concrete: ACI-305. Prevent accelerated set from heat and winds. Maintain moist as required.
1. During hot weather, or under conditions contributing to rapid setting of concrete, a shorter mixing time than specified in ASTM C-94 may be required.
  2. When air temperature is between 85 degrees Fahrenheit and 90 degrees Fahrenheit, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes, and when air temperature is above 90 degrees Fahrenheit, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.
  3. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature at time of placement below 90 degrees Fahrenheit for normal strength concrete and below 75 degrees for high strength concrete ( $f_c'$  greater than 6000 psi). Mixing water may be chilled, or chopped ice may be used to control temperature provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Use of liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
  4. Cover reinforcing steel with water-soaked burlap if it becomes too hot, so that steel temperature will not exceed the ambient air temperature immediately before embedment in concrete.
  5. Fog spray forms, reinforcing steel and subgrade just before concrete is placed.
- D. Thermal Change: Protect all concrete from rapid drying due to wind, overheating due to the direct sun, freezing or thermal shock, to assure consistent curing for all concrete. Covering, reflective covering, shading, heating, insulating, cooling, wetting are measures which should be considered in maintaining minimal moisture loss at a relatively constant temperature during curing.

## 1.9 JOB CONDITIONS

- A. Design Loads: Do not place, handle or store products, equipment, or other materials on structure, before concrete has reached its design strength and in such a manner as to not exceed design loads. Check with Structural Engineer for design loads of each area and review of construction loading and proposed distribution of construction loads. Any area damaged by construction operation must be repaired or replaced at no cost to the Owner.
- B. Construction Damage: Do not permit walking or wheeling on fresh concrete until it has set for a sufficient length of time. Protect all concrete which will be permanently exposed in finished work from damage from construction operations specifically falling tools, mortar or other objects.
- C. On the framed floors, the steel beams and metal deck have been designed to deflect under the weight of the wet concrete. The contractor shall provide additional concrete fill as necessary to produce a level floor.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

## 2.1 CEMENT

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C-150, Type I (unless otherwise approved by the Structural Engineer). Use one brand of cement throughout project unless otherwise acceptable to the Architect.
- B. Fly Ash: ASTM C-618, Type C or Type F.
  - 1. 15% - 20% fly ash may be used in concrete poured and cured above 50° Fahrenheit
- C. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C595, excluding types S and SA.
- D. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C989, Grade 120.
  - 1. 25% - 35% granulated slag may be used in concrete poured and cured above 50° Fahrenheit

## 2.2 FINE AGGREGATE

- A. Sand: ASTM C-33. Clean, hard, natural sand, or manufactured sand, or a combination of both.
  - 1. Source: From the same source throughout the work for each type of concrete. Approval subject to color evaluation.

## 2.3 COARSE AGGREGATE

- A. Normal Weight Concrete: ASTM C-33, ACI-211.1, ACI-304-1. Aggregate shall have similar color characteristics of sand and cement.
  - 1. Maximum Size Aggregate: Maximum of 1-1/2" (3/4" for post-tensioned concrete or concrete poured on metal deck) but not more than 3/4 of clear distance between forms and the reinforcing bar and 3/4 of minimum clear spacing between reinforcing bars, and as recommended in ACI-211.
- B. Grout for Masonry: ASTM C404; maximum size of aggregate shall be 3/8" but not more than 3/4" of the clear distance between the inside block face and the reinforcing bar.

## 2.4 WATER

- A. Clean and free from deleterious amounts of acids, alkalis or organic materials.

## 2.5 ADMIXTURES

- A. Modifiers: To accelerate the hardening of the concrete or to produce higher than normal strength at early periods; will not be permitted unless specifically approved. Do not use any admixture which will affect the concrete color. Do not use admixtures without written approval and strict quality control.
- B. Water-Reducing Admixtures: ANSI/ASTM C-494, Type A, and contain not more than 0.05% chloride ions.
  - 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Euclid Chemical Co. - "Eucon WR-75"
  - b. Master Builders Technologies - "Pozzolith Normal" or "Polyheed"
  - c. Sika Chemical Corp. - "Plastocrete 161"
  - d. Chem-Masters Corp - "Chemtard"
2. Products are subject to compliance to all project requirements.
- C. Accelerating Admixtures: ANSI/ASTM C-494, Type C, A non-corrosive, non-chloride set accelerating admixture that accelerates cement hydration resulting in shortened setting times and increased early age strengths, especially in cooler temperatures. Admixture shall not contain not more than 0.05% chloride ions.
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Master Builders Technologies - "Pozzolith 555"
    - b. Grace Construction Products - "PolarSet"
  2. Products are subject to compliance to all project requirements.
  3. Use accelerating admixture in concrete slabs placed at ambient temperatures below 50 degrees Fahrenheit.
- D. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixtures: ASTM C-494, Type D.
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Sika Chemical Corp. - "Plastiment"
    - b. Master Builders Technologies - "Pozzolith R"
    - c. Gifford Hill - PSI 400N/PSI 400R
  2. Locations: Not permitted in footings or foundations. Retarding densifier shall be used as required by climatic conditions at the time of the pour as recommended by the manufacturer.
  3. Manufacturers Assistance: The admixture manufacturer shall be required to have available a qualified representative to assist in the proportioning and to advise on the use of the product for adjustment due to weather or job conditions.
- E. High Range Water-Reducing Admixture (Super Plasticizer): ASTM C-494, Type F or Type G and contain not more than 0.05% chloride ions.
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. W. R. Grace - "WRDA 19" or "Daracem"
    - b. Prokrete Industries, Inc. - "PSP"
    - c. Anti-Hydro - "Super P"
    - d. Sika Chemical Corp. - "Sikament 300"
    - e. ICI Americas Corp. - "Mighty 150"
    - f. Euclid Chemical Co. - "Eucon 37"
    - g. Gifford-Hill - "PSI Super"
    - h. Master Builders Technologies - "Rheobuild"
  2. Products are subject to compliance with all project requirements.
- F. Air Entraining Admixture: ASTM C-260; Air Content 6% +/- 1%.
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. W. R. Grace - "Darex AEA" or "Daravair"
    - b. Sika Chemical Corp. - "Sika-AER"
    - c. Sonneborn/Contech - "Aerolith"
    - d. Master Builders Technologies: - "MB-VR" or "Micro-Air"

- e. Gifford Hill - "Air-tite"
- 2. Locations: Use in all concrete which is exposed to the weather. Air Entraining Admixture shall not be used in slabs with a trowel finish.
- G. Calcium Chloride or admixture containing more than 0.05% chloride ions are not permitted.
- H. Corrosion Inhibitor: ASTM C494, Type C, containing a minimum of 30% calcium nitrite.
  - 1. Manufacturer: W.R. Grace - DCI ; Master Builders Technologies – Rheocrete CNI
  - 2. Rate = 3.0 gals/yd<sup>3</sup>
  - 3. Air Content = 5% minimum.
  - 4. Locations: Use in all concrete slabs, beams, columns, and walls of the parking structure (except footings and slab on grade).
  - 5. Manufacturer Assistance: The admixture manufacturer shall be required to have available a qualified representative to assist in the proportioning and to advise on the use of the product for adjustment due to weather or job conditions.

## 2.6 BONDING AGENTS

- A. Presoak existing concrete surface to a saturated surface dry condition immediately prior to pouring of adjacent concrete slab sections [new concrete topping slab or patch material].
  - 1. Location: All top surface slabs and other areas where sufficient exposed reinforcing exists to assure a good bond.
- B. Apply waterborne epoxy bonding agent to existing concrete surface immediately prior to installation of new concrete.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Kaufman Products, Inc. - "Sure-Poxy 686"
    - b. Sika Corporation - "Sikadur 32"
  - 2. Location: All overhead and vertical repair surfaces where sufficient exposed reinforcing does not exist to assure a good bond.
- C. Apply cement slurry bond material ( $f_c' = 4000$  psi) immediately prior to installation of concrete patch material.
  - 1. Presoak existing concrete surface prior to installing bonding material.
  - 2. Concrete patch material must be completed within 15 minutes of installing cement slurry.

## 2.7 NON-BONDING

- A. Non-bonding agents shall conform to ASTM C-309, Type I and AASHTO M-148, Type I.
  - 1. Products: "Tilt-Eez" by Dayton Products.
- B. Non-bonding agents shall be applied in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

## 2.8 CLEANING AGENT

- A. Existing concrete slabs shall be thoroughly cleaned and all dust, laitance, rust, grease, oil, curing compounds, impregnations, waxes or other contaminants shall be removed.
- B. Existing concrete slabs shall be thoroughly cleaned by one of the following methods:
  - 1. Sandblasting, abrading or wire brushing and vacuum cleaning.
  - 2. Light chipping hammers.
  - 3. Compressed air-jet.
  - 4. Waterblast.

## 2.9 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Curing Compound: Liquid-Type membrane-forming; ASTM C-309, Type I, Class A. Moisture loss not more than 0.055 GR./SQ.CM. when applied at 200 SQ. FT./GAL.
  - 1. Manufacturer:
    - a. "US Cure & Seal" by US Concrete Products
    - b. "Conspec Cure & Seal WB" by Dayton Superior Corporation
    - c. "EUCOCure VOX" by Euclid Chemical Co.
    - d. "Kure-N-Seal-W" by BASF
    - e. or approved equal
  - 2. Note: Certified compatibility with approved surface sealing agents, mastics, adhesives, colored hardeners, finishes and deferred bonding, is required, before compound may be used where subsequent finishes are indicated.
  - 3. Location: All concrete walls, slabs, beams, stairs and columns of the building prior to and immediately after removal of forms.

## 2.10 SURFACE TREATMENTS

- A. Liquid Hardener: A clear penetrating, curing, sealing and hardening compound which results in increased abrasion resistance, and reduced permeability of the finished treated concrete surface.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. "Intraseal" - Conspec Marketing & Mfg. Co.
    - b. "Lapidolith" - Sonneborn - Rexnord
    - c. "Diamond Hard" - Euclid Chemical Co.
    - d. "Ashford Formula" - Curecrete Chemical Company, Inc.
    - e. Or approved equal.
  - 2. Locations: All interior concrete floor slabs and stairs left exposed at the completion of the project.

## 2.11 NON-SHRINK GROUT

- A. CRD C-621 and ASTM C 1107, factory pre-mixed non-metallic grout subject to compliance with requirements. Provide one of the following:
  - 1. "Masterflow 713"; Master Builders
  - 2. "Sonogrout"; Sonneborn-Contech.
  - 3. "Euco-NS"; Euclid Chemical Co.
  - 4. "Five Star Grout"; U. S. Grout Co.
  - 5. "Duragrout"; L & M Const. Chemical Co.
  - 6. "Supreme"; Gifford Hill

## 2.12 UNDERLAYMENT COMPOUND

- A. Free-flowing, self-leveling, pumpable, cement-based compound for applications from one inch thick to feathered edges with a minimum compressive strength shall be 3000 psi. Provide one of the following:
1. "K-15" - Ardex, Inc.
  2. "Conflow" - Conspec Marketing & Mfg. Co.
  3. "Flo-Top" - Euclid Chemical Co.
  4. "Pourcrete" - Master Builders, Inc.
  5. "Thoro Underlayment Self-Leveling" - Thoro System Products

## 2.13 CONCRETE MIXES

- A. Compressive Strengths: Minimum concrete compressive strengths are as follows:
1. 3000 psi; 28-day compressive strength; 517 lbs. cement per cu.yd. minimum W/C ratio, 0.56 maximum. (All concrete spread footings.)
  2. 3500 psi; 28 day compressive strength; 517 lbs. cement per cu. yd. minimum; W/C ratio, 0.45 maximum. (Interior concrete slab on grade.)
  3. 4000 psi; 28 day compressive strength; 564 lbs. cement per cu. yd. minimum; W/C ratio, 0.50 maximum. (All concrete slabs poured on metal deck.)
  4. 4500 psi; 28 day compressive strength; 635 lbs. cement per cu. yd. minimum; W/C ratio, 0.45 maximum. (All exterior concrete)
- B. Mix Design: Proportion by the procedure described in ACI 318. All concrete; ready-mixed; on site batch plant; mixed and transported in accordance with ASTM C-94, Alternate No. 1 or No. 2 and ACI 304.
1. Responsibility: The Contractor is solely responsible for creating and paying for all concrete design mixes fully workable of required strengths that produce finishes acceptable to the Architect. All mixes shall be purchased from the same supplier throughout the work.
- C. Mixing: After introduction of water to the cement and aggregates, concrete which has been mixed longer than 1-1/2 hours or 300 revolutions, shall not be placed. In no case shall concrete be used that has been mixed so long that the initial set of the concrete shall occur sooner than 15 minutes after placement.
1. Truck mixing: Trucks must be equipped with water gauges and revolution counters. Defer addition of water to latest possible revolution counters. Defer addition of water to latest possible time. When temperatures or other conditions cause a deviation in slump or setting characteristics, provide approved measures to maintain normal conditions.
- D. Slumps: ACI 301, paragraph 4.2.2.2. Proportion and design mixes to result in concrete slump at point of placement as follows:
1. Ramps, slabs, and sloping surfaces: Not more than 3".
  2. Reinforced foundation systems: Not less than 1" and not more than 3".
  3. Concrete containing HRWR admixture (super plasticizer): Not more than 8" after addition of HRWR to verified 2" - 3" slump concrete.
  4. Other Concrete: Not more than 4".

E. Dry Density:

1. Structural Normal Weight Concrete: 148 lbs./c.f. maximum. (all concrete except as otherwise noted)

2.14 MASONRY GROUT MIX

- A. Compressive Strengths: Minimum 28 day compressive strength shall be 3000 psi; standard weight; 5.5 bags (94 lbs.)/c.f. w/c = 0.60 maximum for all masonry grout.
- B. Mix Design: Proportion per the requirements of ASTM C476-83 - "Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry" ready mixed and transported in accordance with ASTM C-94, alternate No. 1 and ACI 304.
  1. Responsibility: The Contractor is solely responsible for creating and paying for all grout design mixes fully workable, of required strengths that produce finishes acceptable to the architect. All mixes shall be purchased from the same supplier throughout the work.
- C. Mixing: After introduction of water to the cement and aggregates, grout that has been mixed longer than 1.5 hours should not be placed. Because of its high slump, ready mix grout shall be continuously agitated after mixing until placement. In no case shall grout be used that has been mixed so long that the initial set of the concrete shall occur sooner than 15 minutes after placement.
  1. Truck Mixing: Trucks must be equipped with water gauges and revolution counters. Defer addition of water to latest possible revolution counters. Defer addition of water to latest possible time. When temperatures or other conditions cause a deviation in slump or setting characteristics, provide approved measures to maintain normal conditions.
- D. Slump: Water may be introduced at the plant to produce a maximum slump of 6". Additional water may be added at the jobsite immediately prior to placement to produce a maximum slump of 11".

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Coordination: Check forms, reinforcing steel and supports, expansion and contraction joints, and placement of built-in and embedded items. Verify drawing dimensions with actual field conditions. Inspect related work and adjacent surfaces. Report all conditions which prevent proper execution of this work.
  1. Do not place concrete until foregoing related work has been completed and inspected.
- B. Built-in and Embedded Items: Allow sufficient time for the various trades between erecting of forms and placing of concrete, to permit the proper installation of their work. Do not place concrete until embedded items have been coordinated and installed.
  1. Coordination: Refer to Formwork, also examine the drawings and specifications for work of other trades, especially for Mechanical and Electrical Work.

2. Conduits: Do not allow conduits or pipes to be placed in the concrete.
  3. Conduits: Do not allow conduits or pipes placed in the concrete slab on grade to be spaced closer than three diameters on center or so spaced as to change the location of the reinforcement from that shown on the drawings.
  4. Precautions: Embedding of aluminum inserts or conduit in the concrete will not be permitted.
  5. Anchorage and Supports: Refer to Concrete Accessories and Miscellaneous Metals Sections for items to be embedded in the concrete. Refer to Formwork for installation.
- C. Surface to Receive Concrete: Clean, well thawed, damp surfaces, free from standing water. Before placing concrete, remove all debris, water and ice from the places to be occupied by the concrete. Wood forms shall be thoroughly wetted (except in freezing weather) or oiled and the reinforcement cleaned of ice or other coatings. Do not place concrete on soft mud or dry porous earth (see Spec Section 31 2000).
- D. Screed Levels: Set edge forms or bulkheads and wet intermediate screed strips for slabs to obtain the required elevations and contours in the finished slab surface. Provide and secure units sufficiently strong to support the types of screeds required.
1. Alignment: Align the concrete surface to the elevation of the screed strips by the use of strike-off templates or accepted compacted type screeds.

### 3.2 CONVEYING AND PLACING

- A. Reference Standard: In accordance with requirements of Building Code Requirements for Reinforced Concrete, ACI 318, Chapter 5, Concrete Quality, Mixing and Placing, Section 5.9, Conveying, and Section 5.10, Depositing, and as modified herein.
- B. Wood Runways: Provide for wheeled equipment for transporting concrete. Do not displace the resteel or vapor barrier.
- C. Conveying: Rapidly handle from mixer to forms and deposit as nearly as possible in its final position to avoid segregation due to rehandling or flowing. Do not permit concrete during passage from mixer to final positioning to come in contact with aluminum surfaces.
- D. Placement: Place concrete of required thickness, compact, level and screed to proper levels to receive finishes specified. Do not deposit partially hardened or retempered concrete. Do not place concrete contaminated by foreign matter.
1. Bearing Walls and Columns: Brace and allow to cure twelve hours before placing concrete superimposed thereon, in accordance with ACI 301, section 5.3.2.4.
  2. Slab Reinforcement: Welded wire fabric reinforcing shall be placed at the proper height by installing support steel as specified in specification 03 2000.
  3. Slabs: Do not pour faster than can be properly leveled and compacted. Place at point of final repose, directly ahead of the screed bar, vibrating mass just ahead of the screed.

### 3.3 CONSOLIDATION: ACI 301, Section 5.3.2.5

- A. Compacting: Thoroughly tamp and spade fresh concrete to insure flow into all parts of forms and around reinforcement. Use caution when using vibrators and hand spades to prevent any injury to working face of forms, any movement of the reinforcement, or injury to the epoxy coating on the reinforcement.

- B. Concrete shall be placed in such a manner as to insure that alignment of column sleeves, embedded plates, and inserts remain unchanged. Special provisions shall be made to insure proper vibration of concrete around tendon bearing plates and inserts.

### 3.4 LEVELING AND SCREEDING

- A. All top surfaces of poured concrete shall be worked smooth and level. Do not sprinkle dry cement or mixture of cement and sand directly on the surface of the concrete to absorb moisture or to stiffen mix. Surfaces shall be brought to a finish level, free from defects, blemishes, ripples, trowel marks and other irregularities, including footprints and other depressions which may be cause for rejection.
- B. Screeds: Of such type and construction, and so spaced and located as to produce surface tolerances specified.
- C. Unformed Surfaces: Bring to proper levels and slopes, using screeds, and strike-off with a straightedge. Screed twice, the first to strike a full, rough level and move the concrete mass ahead. Follow this with necessary filling of low areas and another screeding to final level. Remove any puddles of "soup," excess water, or laitance. Pull screeds and screed supports and fill all depressions.
  - 1. Floating: Float to a true and uniform surface with no coarse aggregate visible.
- D. Levels and Lines: Establish and check levels and lines by instrument, and from time to time during pours. Finally check lines and levels, again by instrument, after straight edging and screeding. Correct any settlement and/or other irregularities greater than the allowable tolerances.
  - 1. Floor slabs on grade shall be finished to the following requirements:
    - a. The F-numbers which shall apply to the whole floor shall be a flatness  $F_f = 40$  30 or higher, and a levelness  $F_l = 60$  25 or higher.
    - b. The minimum local F-numbers which shall apply to the floor area bound by construction and/or control joints shall be a flatness  $F_f = 27$  22 or higher, and a levelness  $F_l = 40$  19 or higher.
    - c. The maximum 24 " curvature (value "q" as defined in ASTM E1155) shall not exceed 0.150 inch at any construction joint exposed to wheel traffic. The 24" curvature shall be measured with a Dipstick floor profiler or other instrument acceptable to the Owner. Measure at right angles to the joint, and make at least one measurement for each 20 feet of joint length. Measure within 72 hours of placing the second slab at the joint.
  - 2. The minimum local F-numbers for elevated concrete slab floor areas bound by a structural bay shall be a flatness  $F_f = 22$  or higher, and a levelness not to exceed 3/8 inch within any structural bay.
  - 3. Exterior concrete stairs shall have the treads and landings sloped approximately 1/8" per 12" to assure that no water rests on a riser or the landings.

### 3.5 UNFORMED CONCRETE SURFACE FINISHES

- A. Reference Standard: All concrete finishes shall be specified designating in ACI 301 Section 5.3.4.2, except as modified herein.
- B. Troweled Finish: After concrete is sufficiently hardened to prevent drawing moisture and fines to

the surface, finish trowel until matrix no longer accumulates on the trowel. Do not use cement, sand, or a mixture thereof to absorb excess moisture and do not add water to facilitate troweling. Perform second troweling until there is a distinct ringing sound under the trowel, and smooth, hard finished surface is obtained. Use liquid curing membrane except where indicated. (See Products)

- C. Interior floor slabs shall have a smooth trowel finish.
- D. Exterior floor slabs shall have a broom or belt finish.

### 3.6 SURFACING CURING

- A. Application: Apply liquid-type combination curing compound as soon as new concrete is hard enough to support applicator's weight and as soon after final troweling as possible, in such a manner as to prevent marring or damaging troweled surface. Apply in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and with the initial application done under the direct supervision of the manufacturer's representative.
- B. During period of dry winds, low humidity, high temperatures, and other conditions causing rapid drying, protect fresh concrete with an evaporation retardant (mono-molecular film) or fine fog spray of water applied immediately after screeding and bull floating. Maintain protection until final finishing and curing compounds are applied.

### 3.7 SURFACE SEALING

- A. Liquid Hardener Application: Apply to concrete surfaces that are clean, set and dry; not less than 60 days old. Surface must be free of any dust, dirt, and other foreign matter. Apply hardener in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommendation for standard duty finished floor. Apply by spray or flush onto surface and distribute minimum of 2 applications in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.8 FORMED CONCRETE SURFACES

- A. All formed concrete finishes shall be as specified in ACI 301, Section 5.3.3.4, except as modified herein.
- B. Cork Floated Finish where exposed to view, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. As Cast Formed Finish where not exposed to view, patch as required, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.9 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Repair method, products and procedures shall be submitted for approval prior to commencement of work.
- B. Patching Defective Areas:
  - 1. Repair and patch defective areas with repair mortar such as Tamms Speedcrete – Redline immediately after removal of forms, when acceptable to Architect.
  - 2. Cut out honeycomb, rock pockets, voids over 1/4" in any dimension, and holes left by tie rods and bolts, down to solid concrete but in no case to a depth of less than 1". Make edges of

- cuts perpendicular to the concrete surface. Thoroughly clean, dampen with water to a saturated-surface-dry condition and install repair mortar in strict accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.
- C. For exposed-to-view surfaces, blend white Portland cement and standard Portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match color surrounding. Provide test areas at inconspicuous location to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike-off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
  - D. Repair of Formed Surfaces: Remove and replace concrete having defective surfaces if defects cannot be repaired to satisfaction of Architect. Surface defects, as such, include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycomb, rock pockets; fins and other projections on surface; and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning. Flush out form tie holes, fill with dry pack mortar, or precast cement cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
  - E. Repair concealed formed surfaces, where possible that contain defects that affect the durability of concrete. If defects cannot be repaired, remove and replace concrete.
  - F. Repair of Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as monolithic slabs, for smoothness and verify surface plane to tolerances specified for each surface and finish. Correct low and high areas as herein specified. Test unformed surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope, in addition to smoothness, using a template having required slope.
  - G. Repair finished unformed surfaces that contain defects which affect durability of concrete. Surface defects, as such, include crazing, cracks in excess of 0.03" wide or which penetrate to reinforcement or completely through non-reinforced sections regardless of width, spalling, pop-outs, honeycomb, rock pockets, and other objectionable conditions.
  - H. Correct high areas in unformed surfaces by grinding, after concrete has cured at least 14 days.
  - I. Correct low areas in unformed surfaces during, or immediately after completion of surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with fresh concrete. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete. Proprietary patching compounds may be used when acceptable to Architect.
  - J. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes not exceeding 1" diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas to sound concrete with clean, square cuts and expose reinforcing steel with at least 3/4" clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete to a saturated-surface-dry condition. Mix patching concrete of same materials to provide concrete of same type or class as original concrete. Place, compact and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in the same manner as adjacent concrete.
  - K. Repair isolated random cracks and single holes not over 1" in diameter by dry-pack method. Groove top of cracks and cut-out holes to sound concrete and clean of dust, dirt and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces to a saturated-surface-dry condition. Mix dry-pack, consisting of one part Portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 mesh sieve, using only enough water as required for handling and placing. Place dry-pack when concrete surface is still saturated. Compact dry-pack mixture in place and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for not less than 72 hours.

3.10 NONCONFORMING STRENGTH: If strength of laboratory control cylinders at 7 or 28 days for any portion of the work falls below required strengths, the Structural Engineer has the right to order a change in proportions for the remaining work, and/or may order additional reshoring and moist-curing of the sections in question. In addition, at his discretion, the Structural Engineer has the right to require tests in accordance with ASTM C-42 (cored cylinders) or order load tests on portions of buildings so affected. Perform all test changes as noted above and/or other required corrective measures as directed by the Structural Engineer at no expense to the Owner, regardless of test results. The structural Engineer is the sole interpreter of additional tests and his judgement is final.

### 3.11 RESPONSIBILITY

- A. The Owner shall employ and pay for services of an independent Testing Laboratory, and an Inspection Agency, acceptable to the Structural Engineer to perform the specified tests and inspection. (ACI 301, Section 1.6).
- B. Approvals: The design mix and/or acceptance of the test reports do not in any way relieve the Contractor of his responsibility to insure that the strength, slump and quality of the in-place concrete meets the requirements of the Contract Documents.
- C. Rejection: The Owner's representative will have the right to reject concrete which does not meet strength and other requirements of the Contract Documents.
- D. Mixing Design: If the strength of any test cylinder or grout sample fails to meet the ultimate compressive strength, the Owner's representative shall have the right to require a change in proportions to ensure adequate strengths in the remainder of the project.
- E. Additional Testing: Owner's representative shall have the right to require testing of the concrete by coring, loading or other means, or removal of that portion of the construction covered by those tests, all costs of which to be borne by the Contractor.

3.12 CONTRACTOR'S DUTIES: Comply with ACI 301, Section 1.6.3 including but not limited to the following:

- A. Batch Plant Samples: If desired by Contractor, or so requested because of known or indicated problems.
- B. Storage: Provide suitable storage facilities at the job site for test cylinders.
- C. Additional Costs: Pay all costs for coring, drilling, additional testing, remedies and corrections of work which does not meet strength and other requirements of the Contract Documents and/or if failure to perform required duties. Comply with ACI 301, Section 1.6.5.
- D. Other Test Cylinders: For other than compressive strength, such as to determine when forms may be stripped, shall be paid for by the Contractor requesting same.

### 3.13 TESTING AND INSPECTION

- A. Field and laboratory testing of poured in place concrete and masonry grout shall comply with the

testing requirements of Section 01 4000, Quality Control. Perform all specified inspections and tests in accordance with ACI 301, Section 1.6; and IBC 2012, Chapter 17, Sections 1701 thru 1706; and ACI 311 "Recommended Practice for Concrete Inspection". Testing Agency shall meet the requirements of ASTM E 329:

- B. Slump Tests: Consistency shall be determined at the project site by means of slump test in accordance with C-143. Results of slump test shall appear on the test reports. Slump tests shall be made at the same time as test cylinders are made and when so directed by the Structural Engineer.
- C. Compression Tests: Each test consists of 4 concrete test cylinders or 4 grout samples broken under compression. Two cylinders/samples shall be broken 7 days after making; and two cylinders/samples shall be broken at 28 days. For slabs and beams, the 2 secondary cylinders shall be broken when requested by the Contractor to determine concrete strengths for the post-tensioned stressing operation. Strength results of all cylinders/samples broken at 7 days shall achieve a minimum of 65% of the ultimate design strength, 28 days - 100%.
  - 1. Concrete Test Cylinders: 6" diameter x 12" (or 4" diameter x 8" if maximum aggregate size is less than 1") made at the point of deposit, molded, transported cured and tested in accordance with ASTM C-31. One set of compressive test cylinders shall be made for each 100 yards poured. Make not less than one set of cylinders for each day's pour and each class of concrete.
  - 2. Masonry Grout Samples: 3-1/2" square x 7" made at the point of deposit, molded, transported cured and tested in accordance with ASTM C1019-84 - "Standard Method of Sampling and Testing Grout". One set of grout cubes shall be made for each 30 yards poured. Make not less than one set of cubes for each day's pour.
- D. Density Test: When required, density test shall be performed in accordance with ASTM C-138.
- E. Air Content: When required, air content test shall be performed per ASTM C-173 (volumetric method for normal weight or light weight concrete) or ASTM C-231 (pressure method for normal weight concrete).
- F. Laboratory Test Reports: Submit to the Structural Engineer immediately upon completion of each test. Test reports shall contain the following information:
  - 1. Exact mix, including quantities of admixtures, etc.
  - 2. Date of pour.
  - 3. Exact location of pour in building.
  - 4. Slump (at truck or on deck specified).
  - 5. Percentage of air-entrained.
  - 6. 7-day test results for first two cylinders tested.
  - 7. 28-day test results shall be reported with both 7 and 28 day results indicated on the same report.
  - 8. Temperature at time of pour.
- G. Testing Laboratory Duties
  - 1. Furnish all materials for making concrete test cylinders and grout cubes.
  - 2. At test intervals, immediately transport concrete test cylinders, masonry grout samples and grout cubes to the Test Laboratory.

3. Provide verbal results of concrete test cylinders when required by the contractor.
4. Perform concrete density test when required by the Structural Engineer.
5. Provide test reports of all laboratory testing in a timely fashion to the Structural Engineer and Contractor.

#### H. Inspection Agency Duties

1. Comply with inspection requirements of Section 01 4000, Quality Control Services. Inspect concrete operations and completed work for conformance with Contract Documents and as indicated in ACI 301, Section 1.7.
2. Assign qualified personnel to be on site at all times when operations are scheduled. The Contractor shall note that no concrete operations shall be permitted in their absence.
3. Perform slump tests for all concrete, and masonry grout, and air content tests as specified above. Forward results of these tests to Testing Laboratory for incorporation into laboratory test reports.
4. Make concrete test cylinders and masonry grout cubes in molds provided by Testing Laboratory and masonry grout samples using 3 blocks to form a 4" x 4" x 8" sample.
5. Site inspection of poured in placed concrete shall include, but is not limited to the following:
  - a. Insure all concrete and masonry reinforcement is properly inspected per specifications 03 2000, 03 2300, and Division 4 – Masonry
  - b. Masonry grouting operation.
  - c. Concrete demolition and preparation of existing concrete surface.
  - d. Slab curing procedures.
  - e. Concrete surface preparation for membrane installation.
  - f. Application of concrete hardener and sealer.
6. Submit daily reports outlining conformance and exceptions of concrete operation to contract documents.

### 3.17 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY

- A. Submit copies of all reports indicating conformance and exceptions to contract documents in a timely fashion to General Contractor for distribution to design consultants, owner, subcontractors and other interested parties.
- B. Final Report: The Inspection Agency shall prepare a written report that summarizes the work inspected during the course of the project, and certifies that the work meets the requirements of the contract documents, specifications, and all governing agencies.

END OF SECTION 03 3000

SECTION 033510 - POLISHED CONCRETE FINISHING PART 1

GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: This Section specifies polished concrete.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 030130 Maintenance of Cast-in-Place Concrete.
  - 2. Section 033000 Cast-in-Place Concrete.
  - 3. Section 079116 Joint Fillers.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. American Concrete Institute (ACI):
  - 1. ACI 302.1R Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction.
- B. ASTM International:
  - 1. ASTM C309 Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete.
  - 2. ASTM C171 Standard Specification for Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete.
  - 3. ASTM C779 Standard Test Method for Abrasion Resistance of Horizontal Concrete Surfaces.
- C. Reunion Internationale des Laboratoires D'Essais et de Recherches sur les Materiaux et les Constructions (RILEM):
  - 1. Rilem Test Method 11.4 Standard Measurement of Reduction of Moisture Penetration Through Horizontal Concrete Surfaces.
- D. National Floor Safety Institute (NFSI):
  - 1. NFSI Test Method 101-A Standard for Evaluating High-Traction Flooring Materials, Coatings, and Finishes.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Performance Requirements: Provide polished flooring that has been selected, manufactured and installed to achieve the following:
  - 1. Abrasion Resistance: ASTM C779, Method A, high resistance, no more than 0.008 inch (0.20 mm) wear in 30 minutes.
  - 2. Reflectivity: Increase of 35% as determined by standard gloss meter.

3. Waterproof Properties: Rilem Test Method 11.4, 70% or greater reduction in absorption.
4. High Traction Rating: NFSI 101-A, non-slip properties.

B. Design Requirements:

1. Hardened Concrete Properties:
  - a. Minimum Concrete Compressive Strength: 3500 psi (24 MPa).
  - b. Normal Weight Concrete: No lightweight aggregate.
  - c. Non-air entrained.
2. Placement Properties:
  - a. Natural concrete slump of 4 1/2 inches - 5 inches (114 - 127 mm). Admixtures may be used.
  - b. Flatness Requirements:
    - 1) Overall FF 40.
    - 2) Local FF 20.
3. Hard-Steel Troweled (3 passes) Concrete: No burn marks. Finish to ACI 302.1R, Class 5 floor.
  - a. Class 6 floors, special colored mineral aggregate hardener with repeated hard steel trowel finish.
4. Curing Options:
  - a. Membrane forming curing compounds (ASTM C309, Type 1, Class B, all resin, dissipating cure).
    - 1) Acrylic curing and sealing compounds not recommended.
  - b. Sheet membrane (ASTM C171); polyethylene film not recommended.
  - c. Damp Curing: Seven (7) day cure.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit listed action submittals in accordance with Contract Conditions and Section 013300 Submittal Procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate information on shop drawings as follows:
  1. Typical layout including dimensions and floor grinding schedule.
  2. Plan view of floor and joint pattern layout.
  3. Areas to receive colored surface treatment.
  4. Hardener, sealer, densifier in notes.
- C. Product Data: Submit product data, including manufacturer's SPEC-DATA product sheet, for specified products.

1. Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS).
2. Preparation and concrete grinding procedures.
3. Colored Concrete Surface, Dye Selection Guides.

#### 1.5 INFORMATION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Quality Assurance:

1. Test Reports: Certified test reports showing compliance with specified performance characteristics and physical properties as cited in 1.03 Performance Requirements.
2. Certificates:
  - a. Product certificates signed by manufacturer certifying materials comply with specified performance characteristics and criteria and physical requirements.
  - b. Letter of certification from the National Floor Safety Institute confirming the system has been tested and passed phase Two Level of certification when tested by Method 101-A.
  - c. Current contractor's certificate signed by manufacturer declaring contractor as an approved installer of polishing system.
3. Manufacturer's Instructions: Manufacturer's installation instructions.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

##### A. Warranty: Submit warranty documents specified.

##### B. Operation and Maintenance Data: Submit operation and maintenance data for installed products in accordance with Section 017800 Closeout Submittals.

1. Include:
  - a. Manufacturer's instructions on maintenance renewal of applied treatments.
  - b. Protocols and product specifications for joint filing, crack repair and/or surface repair.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

##### A. Qualifications:

1. Installer experienced in performing work of this section who has specialized in installation of work similar to that required for this project.
2. Installer trained and holding current certification for installation.
3. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer capable of providing field service representation during construction and approving application method.

##### B. Regulatory Requirements.

1. NFSI Test Method 101-A Phase Two Level High Traction Material.

C. Mock-Ups:

1. Construct mock-ups in accordance with Section 01 45 00 - Quality Control.
2. Mock-Up Size: 100 ft<sup>2</sup> (9.3 m<sup>2</sup>) sample panel at jobsite at location as directed under conditions similar to those which will exist during actual placement.
3. Mock-up will be used to judge workmanship, concrete substrate preparation, operation of equipment, material application, color selection and shine.
4. Allow 24 hours for inspection of mock-up before proceeding with work.
5. When accepted, mock-up will demonstrate minimum standard of quality required for this work. [Approved mock-up may remain as part of finished work.

D. Preinstallation Meetings: Conduct a preinstallation meeting to verify project requirements, manufacturer's installation instructions and manufacturer's warranty requirements. Comply with Section 013119 Project Meetings. Review the following:

1. Environmental requirements.
2. Scheduling and phasing of work.
3. Coordinating with other work and personnel.
4. Protection of adjacent surfaces.
5. Surface preparation.
6. Repair of defects and defective work prior to installation.
7. Cleaning.
8. Installation of polished floor finishes.
9. Application of liquid hardener, densifier.
10. Protection of finished surfaces after installation.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING

A. General: Comply with 016100 - Common Product Requirements.

B. Ordering: Comply with manufacturer's ordering instructions and lead time requirements to avoid construction delays.

C. Delivery:

1. Deliver materials in manufacturer's original packaging with identification labels and seals intact.

D. Storage and Protection:

1. Store materials protected from exposure to harmful weather conditions and at temperature conditions recommended by manufacturer.
2. Protect concrete slab.
  - a. Protect from petroleum stains during construction.
  - b. Diaper hydraulic power equipment.
  - c. Restrict vehicular parking.
  - d. Restrict use of pipe cutting machinery.
  - e. Restrict placement of reinforcing steel on slab.
  - f. Restrict use of acids or acidic detergents on slab.

1.9 PROJECT AMBIENT CONDITIONS

- A. Installation Location: Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations.

1.10 SEQUENCING

- A. Sequence With Other Work: Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for sequencing construction operations.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Project Warranty: Refer to Contract Conditions for project warranty provisions.
- B. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit, for Owner's acceptance, manufacturer's standard warranty document executed by authorized company official. Manufacturer's warranty is in addition to, and does not limit, other rights Owner may have under Contract Documents.
- C. Warranty: Commencing on date of acceptance by Owner.

1.12 MAINTENANCE

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions to maintain installed product.

1.13 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. General Contractor to provide maintenance materials in accordance with Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Ensure manufacturer has minimum five (5) years experience in manufacturing components similar to or exceeding requirements of project.

2.2 Polished Concrete Finishing Products

- A. Proprietary Products/Systems:
  - 1. Hardener, Sealer, Densifier: Proprietary, water based, odorless liquid, VOC compliant, environmentally safe chemical hardening solution leaving no surface film.
  - 2. Joint Filler: Semi-rigid, 2-component, self-leveling, 100% solids, rapid curing, polyurea control joint and crack filler with Shore A 80 or higher hardness.

3. Oil Repellent Sealer: Ready to use, silane, siloxane and fluoropolymers blended water based solution sealer, quick drying, low-odor, oil and water repellent, VOC compliant and compatible with chemically hardened floors.
4. Concrete Dyes: Fast-drying dye, packaged in premeasured units ready for mixing with VOC exempt solvent; formulated for application to polished cementitious surfaces.
5. Cleaning Solution: Proprietary, mild, highly concentrated liquid concrete cleaner and conditioner containing wetting and emulsifying agents; biodegradable, environmentally safe and certified High Traction by National Floor Safety Institute (NFSI).
6. Finish: Standard.

### 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Ensure concrete finishing components and materials are from single manufacturer.

### 2.4 PRODUCT SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions: In accordance with Section 012513 - Product Substitution Procedures. PART 3

## EXECUTION

### 3.1 MANUFACTURERS INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Compliance: Comply with manufacturer's written data, including product technical bulletins, product catalog installation instructions, product carton installation instructions and, SPEC- DATA sheets.

### 3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Site Verification of Conditions:
  1. Verify that concrete substrate conditions, which have been previously installed under other sections or contracts, are acceptable for product installation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions prior to installation of concrete finishing materials.
- B. Verify Concrete Slab Performance Requirements:
  1. Verify concrete is cured to 28 day 3500 psi (24 MPa) strength.
  2. Verify concrete surfaces received a hard steel-trowel finish (3 passes) during placement.

### 3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Ensure surfaces are clean and free of dirt and other foreign matter harmful to performance of concrete finishing materials.

- B. Examine surface to determine soundness of concrete for polishing.
- C. General Contractor to remove surface contamination.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION

#### A. Floor Surface Polishing and Treatment:

1. Provide polished concrete floor treatment in entirety of slab indicated by drawings. Provide consistent finish in all contiguous areas.
2. Apply floor finish prior to installation of fixtures and accessories.
3. Diamond polish concrete floor surfaces with power disc machine recommended by floor finish manufacturer. Sequence with coarse to fine grit using dry method.
  - a. Comply with manufacturer's recommended polishing grits for each sequence to achieve desired finish level. Level of sheen shall match that of approved mock-up.
  - b. Expose aggregate in concrete surface only as determined by approved mock-up.
  - c. All concrete surfaces shall be as uniform in appearance as possible.
4. Dyed and Polished Concrete (option):
  - a. Locate demarcation line between dyed surfaces and other finishes.
  - b. Polish concrete to final finish level.
  - c. Apply diluted dyes to polished concrete surface.
  - d. Allow dye to dry.
  - e. Remove residue with dry buffer; reapply as necessary for desired result.
5. Apply FGS Hardener Plus, Hardener, Densifier As Follows:
  - a. First coat at  $250 \text{ ft}^2/\text{gal}$  ( $6.25 \text{ m}^2/\text{L}$ ).
  - b. Second coat at  $350 \text{ ft}^2/\text{gal}$  ( $8.75 \text{ m}^2/\text{L}$ ).
  - c. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for drying time between successive coats.
6. Remove defects and repolish defective areas.
7. Finish edges of floor finish adjoining other materials in a clean and sharp manner.

### 3.5 ADJUSTMENTS

- A. Polish to higher gloss those areas not meeting specified gloss levels per mock-up.
- B. Fill joints flush to surface.

### 3.6 FINAL CLEANING

- A. Do cleanup in accordance with Section 017400 - Cleaning and Waste Management.
- B. Mechanically scrub treated floors for seven (7) days with soft to medium pads with approved cleaning solution.

- C. Upon completion, General Contractor must remove surplus and excess materials, rubbish, tools and equipment.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed product from damage during construction in accordance with Section 017600 Protecting Installed Construction.

END OF SECTION 033510

SECTION 033600 - SPECIAL CONCRETE FLOOR FINISHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. The General Conditions, any Supplementary General Conditions and Division 1, General Requirements, are hereby made a part of this Section as fully as if repeated herein.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

1. Water-based concrete dye floor color.
2. Applying Sealer and Hardener, and polishing concrete to specified finish level.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Section 033000 Cast-In-Place Concrete

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. American Society for Testing and Materials:

1. ASTM - C779, Standard Test Method for Abrasion Resistance of Horizontal Concrete Surfaces
2. ASTM C805, Impact Strength
3. ASTM G23-81, Ultraviolet Light & Water Spray
4. ASTM 1028, Co-Efficient of Friction

- B. American Concrete Institute

1. ACI 302. 1R-89, Guide for Concrete Floor and Slab Construction

- C. Other Test: Reflectivity

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:

1. Submit special concrete finishes manufacturer's specifications, test data and other data required for each type of manufactured material and product indicated.
2. Submit special concrete finishes describing products to be provided, giving manufacturer's name, product name, and product line number for the specified material proposed to be provided under this section.
3. Submit special concrete finishes manufacturer's recommended installation procedures; which when approved by the Architect, will become the basis for accepting or rejecting actual installation procedures used on the work.
4. Submit special concrete finishes technical data sheet giving descriptive data, curing time, and application requirements.
  - a. Provide material analysis and generic type.
5. Submit special concrete finishes manufacturer's Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) and other safety requirements.
6. Follow all special concrete finishes published manufacturer's installation instructions.

- B. Test Reports: Provide certified test reports, prepared by an independent testing laboratory, confirming compliance with specified performance criteria.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

##### A. Installer Qualifications

1. Use an experienced installer and adequate number of skilled workmen who are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary craft.
2. The special concrete finish manufacturer for each specified material and process shall certify applicator.
3. Applicator shall be familiar with the specified requirements and the methods needed for proper performance of work of this section.

- B. Manufacturer's Certification: Provide letter of certification from concrete finish manufacturer or specialized applicator stating that installer is certified applicator of special concrete finishes, and is familiar with proper procedures and installation requirements required by the manufacturer.

##### C. Mock-ups

1. Apply mock-ups of each finish color (up to eighteen [18] colors) brought up to 800 grit, and of each finish color (up to eighteen [18] colors) brought up to 1500 grit. Mockups will be used to demonstrate typical joints, surface finish, color variation, and standard of workmanship, and to select final grit level.
  - a. Build mock-ups approximately fifty (50) square feet in the location indicated or if not indicated, as directed by the Architect or Owner Representative.
  - b. Notify Architect or Owner Representative seven (7) days in advance of dates and times when mock-ups will be constructed.
  - c. Obtain from the Architect or Owner Representative approval of mock-ups before starting construction.
  - d. If the Architect or Owner Representative determines that mock-ups do not meet requirements, demolish and remove them from the site and cast others until mock-ups are approved.
  - e. Maintain mock-ups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed work.
  - f. Approved mock-ups may become part of the completed work if undisturbed at time of substantial completion.

##### D. Protection

1. No satisfactory chemical or cleaning procedure is available to remove petroleum stains from the concrete surface. Prevention is therefore essential.
  - a. All hydraulic powered equipment must be diapered to avoid staining of the concrete.
  - b. No trade will park vehicles on the inside slab. If necessary to complete their scope of work, drop clothes will be placed under vehicles at all times.
  - c. No pipe cutting machine will be used on the inside floor slab.
  - d. Steel will not be placed on interior slab to avoid rust staining.
  - e. Protect finished product per 3.4A of this specification section.

##### E. Pre-Installation Conference:

1. Conduct conference at project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination".

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer labels indicating brand name and directions for storage, mixing with other components, and application.
- B. Store materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent deterioration from moisture or other detrimental effects.
- C. Dispense special concrete finish material from factory numbered and sealed containers. Maintain record of container numbers.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental limitations:
  - 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature and moisture content, ambient temperature and humidity, ventilation, and other conditions affecting topping performance.
    - a. Concrete must be cured a minimum of forty-five (45) days or as directed by the manufacturer before application of Retro-Plate can begin.
    - b. Application of Retro-Plate shall take place ten (10) days prior to installation of equipment and substantial completion, thus providing a complete, uninhibited concrete slab for application.
  - B. Close areas to traffic during floor application and after application, for time period recommended in writing by manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: The design for each commercial appliance is based on the product named. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either the named product or a comparable product by one of the other manufacturers specified.
  - 2. Translucent Concrete Dye with edge tint.
    - a. Basis-of-Design Product: Those by Americpolish, Springdale, Arkansas, or comparable product by one of the following:
      - 1) Elite Concrete Systems, Inc.
      - 2) L. M. Scofield
      - 3) L & M Construction Chemical, Inc.
  - 3. Hardening/Sealing Agent
    - a. Basis-of-Design Product: Retro-Plate 99, manufactured by Advanced Floor Products, Inc., P.O. Box 50533, Provo, Utah 84605, 801-812-3420, or comparable product by one of the following:
      - 1) HTC America

b. Performance Criteria:

- 1) Abrasion Resistance: ASTM C779 – Up to 400% increase in abrasion resistance.
- 2) Impact Strength: ASTM C805 – 21% increase impact strength.
- 3) Ultra Violet Light and Water Spray: ASTM G23-81 – No adverse effect to ultra violet and water spray.
- 4) Co-efficient of Friction: ASTM 1028 – all levels of finish (up to 800 grit) exceed OSHA and ADA recommendations.
- 5) Reflectivity: 30% increase in reflectivity.

B. RELATED MATERIALS

1. Neutralizing Agent: Tri-sodium Phosphate
2. Water: Potable

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SURFACE CONDITIONS

- A. Examine substrate, with installer present, for conditions affecting performance of finish. Correct conditions detrimental to timely and proper work. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.
- B. Verify that base slab meet finish and surface profile requirements in Division 3 Section “Cast-In-Place Concrete,” and Project Conditions above.
- C. Prior to application, verify that floor surfaces are free of construction latents.

3.2 APPLICATION

- A. Start floor finish applications in presence of manufacturer’s technical representative.
- B. Tape all color transitions. No scoring of concrete permitted.
- C. Apply concrete floor finish in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions.
- D. Dyed Concrete Finish.
  1. Bring concrete substrate up to grit level selected by Architect and Owner after viewing mockups.
  2. Apply dye where indicated, in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions.
  3. Cure surface in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions.
  4. Neutralize concrete floor with neutralizing agent, and flush with water.
- E. Sealing, Hardening, and Polishing of Concrete Surface.
  1. Concrete must be in place a minimum of forty-five (45) days or as directed by the manufacturer before application can begin.
  2. Application is to take place at least ten (10) days prior to furniture or equipment installation.
  3. Only a certified applicator shall apply Retro-Plate 99. Applicable procedures must be followed as recommended by the product manufacturer and as required to match approved test sample.
  4. Apply special concrete sealer finish in accordance with sealer manufacturer’s instructions.
  5. Polish to required sheen level.

3.3 WORKMANSHIP AND CLEANING

- A. The premises shall be kept clean and free of debris at all times.
- B. Remove spatter from adjoining surfaces, as necessary.
- C. Repair damages to surface caused by cleaning operations.
- D. Remove debris from jobsite
  - 1. Dispose of materials in separate, closed containers in accordance with local regulations.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finished work until all building construction is complete.
  - 1. Cover entire surface of finished product with masonite or plywood. Tape all protection board joints solid.

END OF SECTION 033600

SECTION 042200 - CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL (As indicated on structural drawings or as noted below.)

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Concrete masonry units.
2. Decorative concrete masonry units.
3. Pre-faced concrete masonry units.
4. Mortar and grout.
5. Steel reinforcing bars.
6. Masonry joint reinforcement.
7. Ties and anchors.
8. Embedded flashing.
9. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.
10. Masonry-cell insulation.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 05 Section "Structural Steel Framing" for installing anchor sections of adjustable masonry anchors for connecting to structural-steel frame.
2. Division 07 Section "Water Repellents" for water repellents applied to concrete unit masonry.
3. Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for exposed sheet metal flashing and for furnishing manufactured reglets installed in masonry joints.
4. Division 32 Section "Unit Paving" for exterior concrete unit masonry paving.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).
- B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths at twenty-eight (28) days.
  1. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) according to Tables 1 and 2 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
  2. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry by testing masonry prisms according to ASTM C 1314.

1.5 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform preconstruction testing indicated below. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.

1. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit required, according to ASTM C 140 for compressive strength.
2. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix required, according to ASTM C 109/C 109M for compressive strength, ASTM C 1506 for water retention, and ASTM C 91 for air content.
3. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix required, according to ASTM C 780 for compressive strength.
4. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix required, according to ASTM C 1019.
5. Prism Test: For each type of construction required, according to ASTM C 1314.

#### 1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
  1. Masonry Units: Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
  2. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement." Show elevations of reinforced walls.
  3. Fabricated Flashing: Detail corner units, end-dam units, and other special applications.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection:
  1. Decorative CMUs, in the form of small-scale units.
  2. Pre-faced CMUs.
  3. Colored mortar.
  4. Weep holes/vents.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of the following:
  1. Exposed CMUs.
  2. Pre-faced CMUs.
  3. Pigmented and colored-aggregate mortar. Make Samples using same sand and mortar ingredients to be used on Project.
  4. Accessories embedded in masonry.

#### 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. List of Materials Used in Constructing Mockups: List generic product names together with manufacturers, manufacturers' product names, model numbers, lot numbers, batch numbers, source of supply, and other information as required to identify materials used. Include mix proportions for mortar and grout and source of aggregates.
  1. Submittal is for information only. Neither receipt of list nor approval of mockup constitutes approval of deviations from the Contract Documents unless such deviations are specifically brought to the attention of Architect and approved in writing.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:
  1. Masonry units.
    - a. Include material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.

- b. For masonry units, include data and calculations establishing average net-area compressive strength of units.
  - 2. Cementitious materials. Include brand, type, and name of manufacturer.
  - 3. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  - 4. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
  - 5. Reinforcing bars.
  - 6. Joint reinforcement.
  - 7. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
- D. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
- 1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test according to ASTM C 109/C 109M for compressive strength, ASTM C 1506 for water retention, and ASTM C 91 for air content.
  - 2. Include test reports, according to ASTM C 1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.
- E. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined according to Tables 1 and 2 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- F. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1093 for testing indicated.
- B. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.
- C. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.
- D. Masonry Standard: Comply with ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- E. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
  - 2. Build mockups for each type of exposed unit masonry construction in sizes approximately 72 inches (1800 mm) long by 72 inches (1800 mm) high by full thickness, including face and backup wythes and accessories.
    - a. Include a sealant-filled joint at least 16 inches (400 mm) long in each exterior wall mockup.
    - b. Include lower corner of window opening at upper corner of exterior wall mockup. Make opening approximately 12 inches (300 mm) wide by 16 inches (400 mm) high.

- c. Include through-wall flashing installed for a 24-inch (600-mm) length in corner of exterior wall mockup approximately 16 inches (400 mm) down from top of mockup, with a 12-inch (300-mm) length of flashing left exposed to view (omit masonry above half of flashing).
  3. Protect accepted mockups from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
  4. Approval of mockups is for color, texture, and blending of masonry units; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints; and aesthetic qualities of workmanship.
    - a. Approval of mockups is also for other material and construction qualities specifically approved by Architect in writing.
    - b. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless such deviations are specifically approved by Architect in writing.
  5. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for use with dispensing silos. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
- E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

#### 1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
  1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm) down both sides of walls and hold cover securely in place.
- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least three (3) days after building masonry walls or columns.
- C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.

1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
  2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
  3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
  4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F (4 deg C) and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven (7) days after completing cleaning.
- E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (As indicated on structural drawings or as noted below.)

2.1 MASONRY UNITS, GENERAL

- A. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated in the standard. Do not use units where such defects will be exposed in the completed Work.
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide units that comply with requirements for fire-resistance ratings indicated as determined by testing according to ASTM E 119, by equivalent masonry thickness, or by other means, as acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.2 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
  2. Provide square-edged units for outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Integral Water Repellent: Provide units made with integral water repellent for exposed units.
1. Integral Water Repellent: Liquid polymeric, integral water-repellent admixture that does not reduce flexural bond strength. Units made with integral water repellent, when tested according to ASTM E 514 as a wall assembly made with mortar containing integral water-repellent manufacturer's mortar additive, with test period extended to 24 hours, shall show no visible water or leaks on the back of test specimen.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) ACM Chemistries, Inc.; RainBloc.
      - 2) BASF Aktiengesellschaft; Rheapel Plus.

3) Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Dry-Block.

C. CMUs: ASTM C 90.

1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2150 psi (14.8 MPa).
2. Density Classification: Lightweight.
3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less than nominal dimensions.
4. Exposed Faces: Provide color and texture matching the range represented by Architect's sample.

D. Decorative CMUs: ASTM C 90.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with all project requirements all exposed CMU is to match existing adjacent construction.
2. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2150 psi (14.8 MPa).
3. Density Classification: Lightweight.
4. Size (Width): Match existing construction.
5. Pattern and Texture:
  - a. Standard pattern, split-face finish. Match existing construction.
6. Colors: Match existing construction.

2.3 CONCRETE AND MASONRY LINTELS

A. General: Provide one of the following:

- B. Concrete Lintels: ASTM C 1623, matching CMUs in color, texture, and density classification; and with reinforcing bars indicated. Provide lintels with net-area compressive strength not less than CMUs.
- C. Concrete Lintels: Precast or formed-in-place concrete lintels complying with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete," and with reinforcing bars indicated.
- D. Masonry Lintels: Prefabricated or built-in-place masonry lintels made from bond beam CMUs with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout. Cure precast lintels before handling and installing. Temporarily support built-in-place lintels until cured.

2.4 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Regional Materials: Aggregate for mortar and grout, cement, and lime shall be extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 500 miles (800 km) of Project site.
- B. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
- C. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- D. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
- E. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Capital Materials Corporation; Flamingo Color Masonry Cement.
  - b. Cemex S.A.B. de C.V.
  - c. Essroc, Italcementi Group.
  - d. Holcim (US) Inc.
  - e. Lafarge North America Inc.
  - f. Lehigh Cement Company.
  - g. National Cement Company, Inc.; Coosa Masonry Cement.
- F. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Lafarge North America Inc.
- G. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes and complying with ASTM C 979. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Davis Colors; True Tone Mortar Colors.
    - b. Lanxess Corporation; Bayferrox Iron Oxide Pigments.
    - c. Solomon Colors, Inc.; SGS Mortar Colors.
- H. Colored Cement Product: Packaged blend made from portland cement and hydrated lime masonry cement or mortar cement and mortar pigments, all complying with specified requirements, and containing no other ingredients.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Colored Portland Cement-Lime Mix:
      - 1) Capital Materials Corporation; Riverton Portland Cement Lime Custom Color.
      - 2) Holcim (US) Inc.; Rainbow Mortamix Custom Color Cement/Lime.
      - 3) Lafarge North America Inc.; Eaglebond Portland & Lime.
      - 4) Lehigh Cement Company; Lehigh Custom Color Portland/Lime Cement.
    - b. Colored Masonry Cement:
      - 1) Capital Materials Corporation; Flamingo Color Masonry Cement.
      - 2) Cemex S.A.B. de C.V.; Richcolor Masonry Cement.
      - 3) Essroc, Italcementi Group; Brixment-in-Color.
      - 4) Holcim (US) Inc.; Rainbow Mortamix Custom Color Masonry Cement.
      - 5) Lafarge North America Inc.; U.S. Cement Custom Color Masonry Cement.
      - 6) Lehigh Cement Company; Lehigh Custom Color Masonry Cement.
      - 7) National Cement Company, Inc.; Coosa Masonry Cement.
  2. Formulate blend as required to produce color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from manufacturer's standard colors.
  3. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
  4. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement or mortar cement by weight.

- I. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.
  - 1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
  - 2. For joints less than 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve.
  - 3. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
  - 4. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
  
- J. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.
  
- K. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Accelguard 80.
    - b. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Morset.
    - c. Sonneborn Products, BASF Aktiengesellschaft; Trimix-NCA.
  
- L. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with CMUs, containing integral water repellent by same manufacturer.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ACM Chemistries, Inc.; RainBloc for Mortar.
    - b. BASF Aktiengesellschaft; Rheopel Mortar Admixture.
    - c. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Dry-Block Mortar Admixture.
  
- M. Water: Potable.

## 2.5 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M or ASTM A 996/A 996M, Grade 60 (Grade 420).
  
- B. Masonry Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A 951/A 951M.
  - 1. Interior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon steel.
  - 2. Exterior Walls: Stainless steel.
  - 3. Wire Size for Side Rods: 0.148-inch (3.77-mm) diameter.
  - 4. Wire Size for Cross Rods: 0.148-inch (3.77-mm) diameter.
  - 5. Wire Size for Veneer Ties: 0.148-inch (3.77-mm) diameter.
  - 6. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches (407 mm) o.c.
  - 7. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet (3 m), with prefabricated corner and tee units.
  
- C. Masonry Joint Reinforcement for Single-Wythe Masonry: Either ladder or truss type with single pair of side rods.

## 2.6 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated.
1. Mill-Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M; with ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 coating.
  2. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82/A 82M; with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B-2 coating.
  3. Stainless-Steel Wire: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Type 304.
  4. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel, G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
  5. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel, with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B coating.
  6. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
  7. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  8. Stainless-Steel Bars: ASTM A 276 or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- B. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Structural Steel Framing: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
1. Anchor Section for Welding to Steel Frame: Crimped 1/4-inch- (6.35-mm-) diameter, stainless-steel wire. Mill-galvanized wire may be used at interior walls unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Tie Section: Triangular-shaped wire tie, sized to extend within 1 inch (25 mm) of masonry face, made from 0.25-inch- diameter, stainless-steel wire. Mill-galvanized wire may be used at interior walls, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Concrete: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
1. Connector Section: Dovetail tabs for inserting into dovetail slots in concrete and attached to tie section; formed from 0.062-inch- (1.59-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet.
    - a. 0.064-inch- thick, galvanized sheet may be used at interior walls unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Tie Section: Triangular-shaped wire tie, sized to extend within 1 inch (25 mm) of masonry face, made from 0.25-inch- (6.35-mm-) diameter, stainless-steel wire. Mill-galvanized wire may be used at interior walls unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Corrugated Metal Ties: Metal strips not less than 7/8 inch (22 mm) wide with corrugations having a wavelength of 0.3 to 0.5 inch (7.6 to 12.7 mm) and an amplitude of 0.06 to 0.10 inch (1.5 to 2.5 mm) made from 0.062-inch- (1.59-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet with dovetail tabs for inserting into dovetail slots in concrete and sized to extend to within 1 inch (25 mm) of masonry face.
    - a. 0.064-inch- (1.63-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet may be used at interior walls unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Partition Top anchors: 0.105-inch- (2.66-mm-) thick metal plate with 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) diameter metal rod 6 inches (152 mm) long welded to plate and with closed-end plastic tube fitted over rod that allows rod to move in and out of tube. Fabricate from stainless steel.
- E. Rigid Anchors: Fabricate from steel bars 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide by 1/4 inch (6.35 mm) thick by 24 inches (610 mm) long, with ends turned up 2 inches (51 mm) or with cross pins unless otherwise indicated.

1. Corrosion Protection: Hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M or Epoxy coating 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS ANCHORS

- A. Unit Type Inserts in Concrete: Cast-iron or malleable-iron wedge-type inserts.
- B. Dovetail Slots in Concrete: Furnish dovetail slots with filler strips, of slot size indicated, fabricated from 0.034-inch (0.86-mm), galvanized steel sheet.
- C. Anchor Bolts: Headed steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers; hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C; of dimensions indicated.
- D. Postinstalled Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.
  1. Load Capacity: Capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  2. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5 unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).

## 2.8 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual; Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" and as follows:
  1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
  2. Copper: ASTM B 370, Temper H00, cold-rolled copper sheet, 16-oz./sq. ft. (4.9-kg/sq. m) weight or 0.0216 inch (0.55 mm) thick or ASTM B 370, Temper H01, high-yield copper sheet, 12-oz./sq. ft. (3.7-kg/sq. m) weight or 0.0162 inch (0.41 mm) thick.
  3. Fabricate continuous flashings in sections 96 inches (2400 mm) long minimum, but not exceeding 12 feet (3.7 m). Provide splice plates at joints of formed, smooth metal flashing.
  4. Fabricate through-wall metal flashing embedded in masonry from stainless steel or copper, with ribs at 3-inch (76-mm) intervals along length of flashing to provide an integral mortar bond.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Cheney Flashing Company.
      - 2) Keystone Flashing Company, Inc.; Keystone 3-Way Interlocking Thruwall Flashing.
      - 3) Sandell Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Mechanically Keyed Flashing.
  5. Fabricate through-wall flashing with snaplock receiver on exterior face where indicated to receive counterflashing.
  6. Fabricate through-wall flashing with drip edge unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate by extending flashing 1/2 inch (13 mm) out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees and hemmed.
  7. Fabricate through-wall flashing with sealant stop unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate by bending metal back on itself 3/4 inch (19 mm) at exterior face of wall and down into joint 1/4 inch (6 mm) to form a stop for retaining sealant backer rod.

8. Fabricate metal drip edges and sealant stops for ribbed metal flashing from plain metal flashing of same metal as ribbed flashing and extending at least 3 inches (76 mm) into wall with hemmed inner edge to receive ribbed flashing and form a hooked seam. Form hem on upper surface of metal so that completed seam will shed water.
9. Metal Drip Edge: Fabricate from stainless steel. Extend at least 3 inches (76 mm) into wall and 1/2 inch (13 mm) out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees and hemmed.
10. Metal Sealant Stop: Fabricate from stainless steel. Extend at least 3 inches (76 mm) into wall and out to exterior face of wall. At exterior face of wall, bend metal back on itself for 3/4 inch (19 mm) and down into joint 1/4 inch (6 mm) to form a stop for retaining sealant backer rod.
11. Metal Expansion-Joint Strips: Fabricate from stainless steel or copper to shapes indicated.

B. Flexible Flashing: Use one of the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Copper-Laminated Flashing: 5-oz./sq. ft. (1.5-kg/sq. m) copper sheet bonded between two (2) layers of glass-fiber cloth. Use only where flashing is fully concealed in masonry.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Advanced Building Products Inc.; Copper Fabric Flashing or Copper Sealtite 2000.
    - 2) Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; Copper Fabric Thru-Wall Flashing.
    - 3) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; H & B C-Fab Flashing.
    - 4) Phoenix Building Products; Type FCC-Fabric Covered Copper.
    - 5) Sandell Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Copper Fabric Flashing.
    - 6) York Manufacturing, Inc.; Multi-Flash 500.
2. Asphalt-Coated Copper Flashing: 5-oz./sq. ft. copper sheet coated with flexible asphalt. Use only where flashing is fully concealed in masonry.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Advanced Building Products Inc.; Cop-R-Cote.
    - 2) Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; Copper Coated Thru-Wall Flashing.
    - 3) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; H & B C-Coat Flashing.
    - 4) Phoenix Building Products; Type ACC-Asphalt Bituminous Coated.
    - 5) Sandell Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Coated Copper Flashing.
3. Rubberized-Asphalt Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a pliable, adhesive rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.030 inch (0.76 mm).
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Advanced Building Products Inc.; Peel-N-Seal.
    - 2) Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing; CCW-705-TWF Thru-Wall Flashing.
    - 3) Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; Dur-O-Barrier Thru-Wall Flashing.
    - 4) Fiberweb, Clark Hammerbeam Corp.; Aquaflash 500.
    - 5) Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Perm-A-Barrier Wall Flashing.
    - 6) Heckmann Building Products Inc.; No. 82 Rubberized-Asphalt Thru-Wall Flashing.

- 7) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; Textroflash.
  - 8) W. R. Meadows, Inc.; Air-Shield Thru-Wall Flashing.
  - 9) Polyguard Products, Inc.
  - 10) Sandell Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Sando-Seal.
  - 11) Williams Products, Inc.; Everlastic MF-40.
- b. Accessories: Provide preformed corners, end dams, other special shapes, and seaming materials produced by flashing manufacturer.
4. Elastomeric Thermoplastic Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a polyester-reinforced ethylene interpolymer alloy.
- a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 1) DuPont; Thru-Wall Flashing.
  - 2) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; Flex-Flash.
  - 3) Hyload, Inc.; Hyload Cloaked Flashing System.
  - 4) Mortar Net USA, Ltd.; Total Flash.
- b. Monolithic Sheet: Elastomeric thermoplastic flashing, 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick.
- c. Self-Adhesive Sheet: Elastomeric thermoplastic flashing, 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) thick, with a 0.015-inch- (0.38-mm-) thick coating of adhesive.
- d. Self-Adhesive Sheet with Drip Edge: Elastomeric thermoplastic flashing, 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) thick, with a 0.015-inch- (0.38-mm-) thick coating of rubberized-asphalt adhesive. Where flashing extends to face of masonry, rubberized-asphalt coating is held back approximately 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) from edge.
- 1) Color: Tan/buff.
- e. Accessories: Provide preformed corners, end dams, other special shapes, and seaming materials produced by flashing manufacturer.
5. EPDM Flashing: Sheet flashing product made from ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer, complying with ASTM D 4637, 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick.
- a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 1) Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing; Pre-Kleened EPDM Thru-Wall Flashing.
  - 2) Firestone Specialty Products; FlashGuard.
  - 3) Heckmann Building Products Inc.; No. 81 EPDM Thru-Wall Flashing.
  - 4) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; Epra-Max EPDM Thru-Wall Flashing.
  - 5) Sandell Manufacturing Co., Inc.; EPDM Flashing.
- C. Application: Unless otherwise indicated, use the following:
1. Where flashing is indicated to receive counterflashing, use metal flashing.
  2. Where flashing is indicated to be turned down at or beyond the wall face, use metal flashing.
  3. Where flashing is partly exposed and is indicated to terminate at the wall face, use metal flashing with a drip edge or flexible flashing with a metal drip edge.
  4. Where flashing is fully concealed, use metal flashing or flexible flashing.
- D. Single-Wythe CMU Flashing System: System of CMU cell flashing pans and interlocking CMU web covers made from high-density polyethylene incorporating chemical stabilizers that prevent UV

degradation. Cell flashing pans have integral weep spouts that are designed to be built into mortar bed joints and weep collected moisture to the exterior of CMU walls and that extend into the cell to prevent clogging with mortar.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Mortar Net USA, Ltd.; Blok-Flash.

E. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings:

1. Solder for Stainless Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn60, with acid flux of type recommended by stainless-steel sheet manufacturer.

2. Solder for Copper: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn50, 50 percent tin and 50 percent lead.

3. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, chemically curing sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.

F. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene urethane or PVC.

B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805 or PVC, complying with ASTM D 2287, Type PVC-65406 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.

C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated, organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).

D. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells and hold reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.148-inch (3.77-mm) steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units designed for number of bars indicated.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; D/A 810, D/A 812 or D/A 817.

b. Heckmann Building Products Inc.; No. 376 Rebar Positioner.

c. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; #RB or #RB-Twin Rebar Positioner.

d. Wire-Bond; O-Ring or Double O-Ring Rebar Positioner.

## 2.10 MASONRY-CELL INSULATION

A. Loose-Granular Fill Insulation: Perlite complying with ASTM C 549, Type II (surface treated for water repellency and limited moisture absorption) or Type IV (surface treated for water repellency and to limit dust generation).

B. Molded-Polystyrene Insulation Units: Rigid, cellular thermal insulation formed by the expansion of polystyrene-resin beads or granules in a closed mold to comply with ASTM C 578, Type I. Provide specially shaped units designed for installing in cores of masonry units.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Concrete Block Insulating Systems; Korfil.
  - b. Shelter Enterprises Inc.; Omni Core.

## 2.11 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
  2. For exterior masonry, use masonry cement mortar.
  3. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Property Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated or needed to provide required compressive strength of masonry.
  1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type S.
  2. For reinforced masonry, use Type S.
  3. For exterior, above-grade, load-bearing and non-load-bearing walls and parapet walls; for interior load-bearing walls; for interior non-load-bearing partitions; and for other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.
  4. For interior non-load-bearing partitions, Type O may be used instead of Type N.
- D. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.
  1. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
  2. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement by weight.
  3. Mix to match Architect's sample.
  4. Application: Use pigmented mortar for exposed mortar joints with the following units:
    - a. Decorative CMUs.
    - b. Pre-faced CMUs.
    - c. Concrete facing brick.
    - d. Cast stone trim units.
- E. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.
  1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with Table 1.15.1 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
  2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C 476, paragraph 4.2.2 for specified 28-day compressive strength indicated, but not less than 2000 psi (14 MPa).
  3. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches (203 to 279 mm) as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (As indicated on structural drawings or as noted below.)

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of work.
  - 2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
  - 3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.
- B. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match the construction immediately adjacent to opening.
- C. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.

3.3 TOLERANCES

- A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:
  - 1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch (12 mm) or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  - 2. For location of elements in plan do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch (12 mm).
  - 3. For location of elements in elevation do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm) in a story height or 1/2 inch (12 mm) total.
- B. Lines and Levels:
  - 1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
  - 2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
  - 3. For vertical lines and surfaces do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m), 3/8 inch in 20 feet (9 mm in 6 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
  - 4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
  - 5. For lines and surfaces do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m), 3/8 inch in 20 feet (9 mm in 6 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.

6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.

C. Joints:

1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm), with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch (12 mm).
2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch (3 mm).
3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch (9 mm) or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).

3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in bond pattern indicated on Drawings; do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch (100-mm) horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond or bonded by lapping not less than 2 inches (50 mm). Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch (100-mm) horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- D. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by racking back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar before laying fresh masonry.
- E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- F. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below and rod mortar or grout into core.
- H. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24 inches (600 mm) under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Build non-load-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.
  2. Fasten partition top anchors to structure above and build into top of partition. Grout cells of CMUs solidly around plastic tubes of anchors and push tubes down into grout to provide 1/2-inch (13-mm) clearance between end of anchor rod and end of tube. Space anchors 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Wedge non-load-bearing partitions against structure above with small pieces of tile, slate, or metal. Fill joint with mortar after dead-load deflection of structure above approaches final position.

4. At fire-rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Division 07 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems."

### 3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay hollow CMUs as follows:
  1. With face shells fully bedded in mortar and with head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
  2. With webs fully bedded in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
  3. With webs fully bedded in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
  4. With entire units, including areas under cells, fully bedded in mortar at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
- B. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- C. Set cast-stone trim units in full bed of mortar with full vertical joints. Fill dowel, anchor, and similar holes.
  1. Clean soiled surfaces with fiber brush and soap powder and rinse thoroughly with clear water.
  2. Allow cleaned surfaces to dry before setting.
  3. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar.
- D. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint) unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.6 MASONRY-CELL INSULATION

- A. Pour granular insulation into cavities to fill void spaces. Maintain inspection ports to show presence of insulation at extremities of each pour area. Close the ports after filling has been confirmed. Limit the fall of insulation to one story high, but not more than 20 feet (6 m).
- B. Install molded-polystyrene insulation units into masonry unit cells before laying units.

### 3.7 MASONRY JOINT REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch (16 mm) on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch (13 mm) elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
  1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches (406 mm) o.c.
  2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches (203 mm) o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.
  3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches (203 mm) above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches (305 mm) beyond openings in addition to continuous reinforcement.
- B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.
- D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.

- E. Cut and bend reinforcing units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at corners, returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.

### 3.8 ANCHORING MASONRY TO STRUCTURAL STEEL AND CONCRETE

- A. Anchor masonry to structural steel and concrete where masonry abuts or faces structural steel or concrete to comply with the following:
  - 1. Provide an open space not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide between masonry and structural steel or concrete unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar and other rigid materials.
  - 2. Anchor masonry with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
  - 3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. vertically and 36 inches (915 mm) o.c. horizontally.

### 3.9 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. General: Install control and expansion joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
- B. Form control joints in concrete masonry using one of the following methods:
  - 1. Fit bond-breaker strips into hollow contour in ends of CMUs on one side of control joint. Fill resultant core with grout and rake out joints in exposed faces for application of sealant.
  - 2. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.
  - 3. Install interlocking units designed for control joints. Install bond-breaker strips at joint. Keep head joints free and clear of mortar or rake out joint for application of sealant.
  - 4. Install temporary foam-plastic filler in head joints and remove filler when unit masonry is complete for application of sealant.

### 3.10 LINTELS

- A. Provide masonry lintels where shown and where openings of more than 12 inches (305 mm) for brick-size units and 24 inches (610 mm) for block-size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels.
- B. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches (200 mm) at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.11 FLASHING

- A. General: Install embedded flashing in masonry at lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated.
- B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
  - 2. At lintels, extend flashing a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches (150 mm) at ends and turn up not less than 2 inches (50 mm) to form end dams.
  - 3. Interlock end joints of ribbed sheet metal flashing by overlapping ribs not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) or as recommended by flashing manufacturer, and seal lap with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.

4. Install metal drip edges and sealant stops with ribbed sheet metal flashing by interlocking hemmed edges to form hooked seam. Seal seam with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
  5. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch (13 mm) back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
  6. Install metal flashing termination beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch (13 mm) back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal flashing termination.
  7. Cut flexible flashing off flush with face of wall after masonry wall construction is completed.
- C. Install single-wythe CMU flashing system in bed joints of CMU walls where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install CMU cell pans with upturned edges located below face shells and webs of CMUs above and with weep spouts aligned with face of wall. Install CMU web covers so that they cover upturned edges of CMU cell pans at CMU webs and extend from face shell to face shell.
- D. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where they are shown to be built into masonry.

### 3.12 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY INSTALLATION

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
  2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
1. Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
  2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 12.67 ft. (3.86 m).

### 3.13 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage special inspectors to perform tests and inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas, as needed to perform tests and inspections. Retesting of materials that fail to meet specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
- B. Inspections: Level 1 special inspections according to the "International Building Code."
1. Begin masonry construction only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared mortar.
  2. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and of grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
  3. Place grout only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared grout.
- C. Testing Prior to Construction: One (1) set of tests.

- D. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each 5000 sq. ft. (464 sq. m) of wall area or portion thereof.
- E. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, according to ASTM C 140 for compressive strength.
- F. Mortar Aggregate Ratio Test (Proportion Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 780.
- G. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 780. Test mortar for mortar air content and compressive strength.
- H. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 1019.
- I. Prism Test: For each type of construction provided, according to ASTM C 1314 at seven (7) days and at twenty-eight (28) days.

#### 3.14 PARGING

- A. Parge exterior faces of below-grade masonry walls, where indicated, in 2 uniform coats to a total thickness of 3/4 inch (19 mm). Dampen wall before applying first coat and scarify first coat to ensure full bond to subsequent coat.
- B. Use a steel-trowel finish to produce a smooth, flat, dense surface with a maximum surface variation of 1/8 inch per foot (3 mm per 300 mm). Form a wash at top of parging and a cove at bottom.
- C. Damp-cure parging for at least 24 hours and protect parging until cured.

#### 3.15 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
  - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
  - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
  - 3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
  - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
  - 5. Clean concrete masonry by cleaning method indicated in NCMA TEK 8-2A applicable to type of stain on exposed surfaces.

3.16 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.
- B. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
  - 1. Crush masonry waste to less than 4 inches (100 mm) in each dimension.
  - 2. Mix masonry waste with at least two parts of specified fill material for each part of masonry waste. Fill material is specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
  - 3. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches (450 mm) of finished grade.
- C. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 042200

SECTION 042200

ACOUSTICAL CONCRETE MASONRY UNIT (DIFFUSORBLOX®)

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1. SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Acoustical Concrete Masonry Unit, Model DiffusorBlox®
- B. Coordination with all trades having elements that attach to, penetrate through or are concealed behind/above the acoustical CMU of this section.

1.2. PRODUCTS INSTALLED BUT NOT SUPPLIED UNDER THIS SECTION

- A. Rebar
- B. Grout
- C. Retention Clips

1.3. RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 040500 – Masonry Materials
- B. Section 049900 – Maintenance of Masonry

1.4. DEFINITIONS

- A. The acoustical concrete masonry units will be to construct exterior and interior walls or partitions, as shown on the plans and/or indicated in the Schedule of Finishes, to provide the specified degree of sound absorption, sound diffusion and sound isolation.
- B. DiffusorBlox® offers four types of performance depending on the surface finish and whether there are resonator slots.
  - 1. Slotted Block
    - 1.1 Unfinished, pigmented or stained block will be primarily absorptive in the mid and high frequencies due to porosity of the aggregate. Thus, minimal sound diffusion will be provided in this condition. The low frequency absorption will result from the high particle velocity flows between adjacent resonating wells and the Helmholtz resonator slots. Unsealed, slotted block will absorb uniformly from 125 to 4000Hz.
    - 1.2 Slotted block that is fully sealed (painted) will provide mid-high frequency sound diffusion due to the quadratic residue diffusion pattern of the face of the block pairs. The low frequency absorption will result from the high particle velocity flows between adjacent resonating wells and the Helmholtz resonator slots.
  - 2. Non-Slotted Block
    - 2.1 Unfinished, pigmented or stained block will be primarily absorptive in the mid and high frequencies due to porosity of the aggregate. Thus, minimal sound diffusion will be provided in this condition. The absence of the resonator slots will result in moderate sound absorption characteristics below 250Hz.
    - 2.2 Non-slotted block that is fully sealed (painted) will be primarily sound diffusive in the mid and high frequencies due to the quadratic residue diffusion pattern of the face of the block pairs. The absence of the resonator slots will result in moderate sound absorption characteristics below 250Hz.

1.5. ALTERNATES

- A. Prior Approval: Proposed substitutions for products in this section may be submitted to the architect and acoustical consultant no later than ten (10) working days prior to the bid due date. Substitutions shall only be considered if submitted with complete information including acoustic data and a sample

not smaller than one (1) complete acoustical CMU showing product design, composition and finish. Acceptance of substituted products is contingent on the architect’s and acoustical consultant’s approval and the substitution’s compliance with all specified criteria. The architect shall approve substitution request via addendum.

- B. Unapproved Substitutions. Substitutions not approved via addendum shall not be submitted to the architect or acoustical consultant.

1.6. REFERENCES

- A. Local Building Code – Current Edition
- B. International Organization for Standardization
  - 1. ISO 354 Measurement of Sound Absorption in a Reverberation Room
  - 2. ISO 10534 - Determination of sound absorption coefficient and impedance in impedance tubes - Part 1: Method using standing wave ratio.
  - 3. ISO 17497-1 Sound-scattering properties of surfaces- Part 1: Measurement of the random-incidence scattering coefficient in a reverberation room.
- C. AES-4id-2001: AES Information Document for Room Acoustics & Sound Reinforcement Systems – Characterization & Measurement of Surface Scattering Uniformity.
- D. American Society for Testing & Materials (ASTM)
  - 1. ASTM E 1050-98 - Standard Test Method for Impedance and Absorption of Acoustical Materials Using a Tube, Two Microphones, and a Digital Frequency Analysis System
  - 2. ASTM C 423 - Sound Absorption & Sound Absorption Coefficients by the Reverberation Room Method
  - 3. ASTM E 84: Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
- E. Published technical papers
  - 1. T.J. Cox, B-I.Dalenback, P. D’Antonio, J.J. Embrechts, J.Y. Jeon, E. Mommertz and M. Vorlaender, “A tutorial on scattering and diffusion coefficients for room acoustic surfaces”, Acta Acustica uW Acustica, 92, 1-15 (2006)
  - 2. AES-4id-2001, “AES Information document for room acoustics and sound reinforcement systems- Characterization and measurement of surface scattering uniformity”, J. Audio Engineering Soc., 49(3), 149-165 (2001)
  - 3. E. Mommertz, Appl. Acoust., 60(2), 201-204 (2000)

1.7. SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Design Requirements: The acoustical concrete masonry unit will work on the one dimensional reflection phase grating principle, using an array of wells of equal width separated by dividers. The depths of the wells will be based on the prime 7 quadratic residue theory sequence. A full sequence is achieved by alternating two types of block designated as Type A and Type B. Sound diffusion in the horizontal plane will be provided by wells in the vertical position.
- B. Performance Requirements: Third-octave band acoustical performance requirements from 100 Hz to 4000 Hz for random incidence sound absorption shall be measured according to ASTM C423 or ISO 354. The random incidence coefficients shall be what are indicated in the table below:

	<b>125Hz</b>	<b>250Hz</b>	<b>500Hz</b>	<b>1000Hz</b>	<b>2000Hz</b>	<b>4000Hz</b>	<b>NRC</b>
Raw	0.98	0.90	0.93	0.77	0.80	0.77	0.85
Painted	0.76	0.51	0.57	0.34	0.24	0.26	0.40

- C. Transmission Loss (TL) and Sound Transmission Class (STC) for the product will be measured by an independent, accredited NVLAP facility according to the test methods as defined by ASTM E 90 and ASTM E 413. TL and STC values for the product will be as follows:

	<b>125Hz</b>	<b>250Hz</b>	<b>500Hz</b>	<b>1000Hz</b>	<b>2000Hz</b>	<b>4000Hz</b>	<b>STC</b>
--	--------------	--------------	--------------	---------------	---------------	---------------	------------

Painted	44	45	52	57	61	64	55
---------	----	----	----	----	----	----	----

- D. Diffusion Coefficients for the product will be measured in accordance with the recommendations of the Audio Engineering Society Working Group SC-04-02 boundary measurement technique. The directional diffusion coefficient is given by the standard deviation of the 1/3-octave polar response, for a given angle of incidence, and normalized by the response of a flat panel of similar size. The average incidence diffusion coefficients determined at 5° intervals between ± 85° are listed below at octave-band centers. The mean and standard deviation ( $\sigma$ ) of the 1/3-octave-band coefficients are also tabulated.

125Hz	250Hz	500Hz	1000Hz	2000Hz	4000Hz	MEAN	$\sigma$
0.63	0.69	0.74	0.71	0.70	0.74	0.70	0.07

1.8. SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturers’ technical data including basic system description, options and component sizes. Identify all applicable features and options. Cross out any inapplicable features or options.
- B. Shop Drawings: The contractor shall produce and submit shop drawings of products and suspension or mounting systems overlaid on base drawings (interior elevations or reflected ceiling plans) supplied electronically by the architect. Show overall layout with dimensions and references to details as necessary for joints, ends and intersections with other materials or building components. Submit schedule of all quantities and finishes. Field-verify site conditions with dimensions shown on shop drawings.
- C. Certifications: Manufacturers’ certifications that products comply with specified requirements, including laboratory reports showing compliance with specified tests and standards.

1.9. QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications: Manufacturer and installation contractor shall have a minimum of three years experience with similar systems.
- B. Single Source: All products under this section shall be supplied by a single manufacturer to ensure consistency in product size and finish.
- C. Masonry Standards: Compliance with the requirements stipulated by ASTM C-90-06a.
- D. Flame Spread / Smoke Developed Characteristics: Product components tested by independent, accredited NVLAP facility according to ASTM E 84 and NFPA 255.
  - 1. Composite Flame Spread Rating: 25 (maximum)
  - 2. Smoke Developed: 450 (maximum)
- E. Pre-Installation Meeting: Installing contractor shall organize and conduct pre-installation meetings with all other trades to coordinate substrate conditions, conditioning of the space (temperature & humidity), and elements attaching to, penetrating through or concealed above/behind work in this section.

1.10. DELIVERY STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Shipping, Handling and Unloading: Deliver CMU to the project site on the original, unmodified pallet. Do not unpack or handle products until the project environmental requirements have been met and the products are ready to be installed.
- B. Storage and Protection: Store all CMU in a clean, dry, fully-enclosed storage facility. Protect products from damage that may be caused by exposure to water, chemicals, direct sunlight or infestation.
- C. Acceptance at Site: Ensure that all project environmental requirements have been met prior to unpacking or installing wood panels and all associated wood trim products. Full or partial installation constitutes complete product acceptance.

- D. Waste Management and Disposal: Dispose of all packaging materials and debris in a safe and environmentally responsible manner according to the instructions set forth by the General Contractor, local ordinances or codes and the Environmental Protection Agency.

#### 1.11. PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Project Environmental Requirements: Prior to unpacking or installing CMU, ensure that the installation area is fully enclosed, clean and protected.
- B. Product Handling: Handle CMU carefully so as to avoid chipping and breakage.

#### 1.12. WARRANTY

- A. Submit to Owner or Owner's Representative a written and dated warranty against defects in materials or manufacturing for a period of one (1) year from the date of delivery.
- B. Components used in the system but not provided by the manufacturer are excluded from the manufacturer's warranty. Damage caused by exposure to moisture or rapid or extreme changes to temperature or humidity are excluded from the manufacturer's warranty. Damage caused by improper storage, handling, or installation is excluded from the warranty.

#### 1.13. OWNER'S INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Installing contractor shall provide to the building owner or to the owner's representative a copy of the manufacturer's maintenance manual supplied with the panels.

#### 1.14. MAINTENANCE

- A. Extra Materials: If provided per the project requirements, extra materials shall remain in the manufacturer's original, unopened packaging and shall be given to the building owner or owner's representative upon substantial completion of work.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 MANUFACTURER

- A. RPG Acoustical Systems LLC, 99 South St, Passaic, NJ 07055 (telephone), 973-916-1166, <http://www.rpgacoustic.com>.

#### 2.02 MATERIALS

- A. Specify model dB12S for the slotted 12" structural block, dB12NS for the non-slotted 12" structural block, dB8S for the 8" veneer slotted block and dB8NS for the 8" veneer non-slotted block.
- B. The acoustical concrete masonry block will conform to the following:
  - a. For hollow load-bearing units, ASTM C-90-06a for Grade N, Type I or Type II units, with the exceptions noted herein.
  - b. For hollow non-load-bearing units, ASTM C-129 for Grade N, Type I or Type II units, with the exceptions noted herein.
  - c. DiffusorBlox constituent materials will conform to the following ASTM specifications:
    - i. Portland Cement - ASTM C-150
    - ii. Blended Cements - ASTM C-595
    - iii. Pozzolans - ASTM C-618

- iv. Aggregate - ASTM C-33
- v. Light weight aggregate – ASTM C-331

- C. Other concrete unit constituents such as air-entraining agents, pigments, water repellents, silica, etc. may be used provided their suitability for use in concrete has been established either by inclusion in ASTM Standards or through test and experience records substantiating that such particular mixtures and their proportions are not detrimental to the durability and/or performance of DiffusorBlox units.

### 2.03 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. The overall dimensions will be 7-5/8”(H) X 15-5/8”(W) X 11-5/8”(D) for the load bearing version and 7-5/8”(H) X 15-5/8”(W) X 7-5/8”(D) for the non-load bearing version.
- B. Insulation inserts will be semi-rigid fiberglass, Class A fire rated, each individually shaped to conform to the concrete block cores. Fiberglass inserts will be installed on site.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 INSTALLERS

- A. DiffusorBlox® will be kept dry and installed by the Masonry Contractor using mechanics skilled in the laying of specialty masonry block.
- B. Installing contractor shall have a minimum of five (5) years successful experience installing CMU systems in similar applications using similar methods.

### 3.02 EXAMINATION

- A. Site Verification of Conditions: Examine installation area for compliance with all manufacturers' project environmental requirements and ensure uninstalled products have been stored, handled and acclimatized properly prior to commencing installation. Inspect all substrates for completion and quality of work to ensure that surfaces are level, plumb, clean, dry and completely cured from water or solvent evaporation. Do not commence installation if the structural capacity of the substrate is questionable or inadequate.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades: Coordinate with all other trades to ensure that wet work including concrete, terrazzo, plastering, painting, etc. in the installation area is complete, cured and dry prior to installation. Coordinate with all other trades to verify that components associated with mechanical, electrical, lighting, data, telecommunication, audio, video, fire suppression and other building systems are taken into consideration.

### 3.03 PREPARATION

- A. Protection: Protect all floor, wall and ceiling finishes against possible damage prior to commencing installation and during installation.

### 3.04 INSTALLATION

- A. DiffusorBlox® will be installed in a stack bond with the open ends of the acoustical cavity facing downward. Each course will be seated in a full bed of mortar on the flat top of the course below. The dividers of the A and B blocks will be carefully aligned vertically so they lie in a straight line. The undulating face of the A and B block, with slots if specified, will face the area where sound absorption and diffusion is desired as indicated on the plans. Lines will be straight and true and the workmanship will otherwise conform to all the requirements of the General Specifications for masonry work. All joints will be trimmed flush and brushed.

3.05 CONSTRUCTION

- A. Interface with Other Work: Support all light fixtures, HVAC air inlet/outlet devices, speakers, signage, sprinkler heads/piping, etc. independently.

3.06 PROTECTION

- A. Upon completion of work, protect installed system from damage or soiling until project substantial completion and owner occupancy.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 047200 - CAST STONE MASONRY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cast stone wall caps.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include dimensions and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for cast stone units. Include dimensions, details of reinforcement and anchorages if any, and indication of finished faces.

C. Samples:

1. For each color and texture of cast stone required.
2. For colored mortar.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.

B. Material Test Reports: For each mix required to produce cast stone, based on testing according to ASTM C 1364, including test for resistance to freezing and thawing.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer of cast stone units similar to those indicated for this Project, that has sufficient production capacity to manufacture required units, and is a plant certified by the Cast Stone Institute the Architectural Precast Association or the Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute for Group A, Category AT.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CAST STONE UNITS

A. Provide cast stone units complying with ASTM C 1364 using either the vibrant dry tamp or wet-cast method.

1. Provide units that are resistant to freezing and thawing as determined by laboratory testing according to ASTM C 666/C 666M, Procedure A, as modified by ASTM C 1364.
2. Slope exposed horizontal surfaces 1:12 to drain unless otherwise indicated.
3. Provide raised fillets at backs of sills and at ends indicated to be built into jambs.
4. Provide drips on projecting elements unless otherwise indicated.

B. Cure units as follows:

1. Cure units in enclosed moist curing room at 95 to 100 percent relative humidity and temperature of 100 deg F (38 deg C) for 12 hours or 70 deg F (21 deg C) for 16 hours.

2. Keep units damp and continue curing to comply with one of the following:
  - a. No fewer than five days at mean daily temperature of 70 deg F (21 deg C) or above.
  - b. No fewer than six days at mean daily temperature of 60 deg F (16 deg C) or above.
  - c. No fewer than seven days at mean daily temperature of 50 deg F (10 deg C) or above.
  - d. No fewer than eight days at mean daily temperature of 45 deg F (7 deg C) or above.

C. Acid etch units after curing to remove cement film from surfaces to be exposed to view.

D. Colors and Textures: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchors: Type and size indicated, fabricated from Type 304 stainless steel complying with ASTM A 240/A 240M, ASTM A 276, or ASTM A 666.
- B. Dowels: 1/2-inch- (12-mm-) diameter, round bars, fabricated from Type 304 stainless steel complying with ASTM A 240/A 240M, ASTM A 276, or ASTM A 666.
- C. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner complying with requirements in Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry", and expressly approved for intended use by cast stone manufacturer and cleaner manufacturer.

## 2.3 MORTAR

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for mortar materials and mixes.
  1. For setting mortar, use Type S.
  2. For pointing mortar, use Type N.
  3. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.

## 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Engage a qualified independent testing agency to sample and test cast stone units according to ASTM C 1364.
  1. Include one test for resistance to freezing and thawing.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SETTING CAST STONE IN MORTAR

- A. Install cast stone units to comply with requirements in Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry."
- B. Set units in full bed of mortar with full head joints unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Fill dowel holes and anchor slots with mortar.
  2. Fill collar joints solid as units are set.
  3. Build concealed flashing into mortar joints as units are set.
  4. Keep head joints in coping and other units with exposed horizontal surfaces open to receive sealant.
  5. Keep joints at shelf angles open to receive sealant.

- C. Rake out joints for pointing with mortar to depths of not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm). Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides. Scrub faces of units to remove excess mortar as joints are raked.
- D. Point mortar joints by placing and compacting mortar in layers not greater than 3/8 inch (10 mm). Compact each layer thoroughly and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
- E. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Provide sealant joints at copings and other horizontal surfaces, at expansion, control, and pressure-relieving joints, and at locations indicated.
  - 1. Keep joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.
  - 2. Prepare and apply sealant of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

### 3.2 SETTING ANCHORED CAST STONE WITH SEALANT-FILLED JOINTS

- A. Set units accurately in locations indicated with edges and faces aligned.
  - 1. Install anchors, supports, fasteners, and other attachments to secure units in place.
  - 2. Shim and adjust anchors, supports, and accessories.
- B. Fill anchor holes with sealant.
  - 1. Where dowel holes occur at pressure-relieving joints, provide compressible material at ends of dowels.
- C. Set cast stone supported on clip or continuous angles on resilient setting shims. Hold shims back from face of cast stone a distance at least equal to width of joint.
- D. Keep joints free of mortar and other rigid materials. Remove temporary shims and spacers from joints after anchors and supports are secured in place and cast stone units are anchored.
- E. Prepare and apply sealant of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

### 3.3 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Variation from Plumb: Do not exceed 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
- B. Variation from Level: Do not exceed 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
- C. Variation in Joint Width: Do not vary joint thickness more than 1/8 inch in 36 inches (3 mm in 900 mm) or one-fourth of nominal joint width, whichever is less.
- D. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Surfaces (Lipping): Do not vary from flush alignment with adjacent units or adjacent surfaces indicated to be flush with units by more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm), except where variation is due to warpage of units within tolerances specified.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace stained and otherwise damaged units and units not matching approved Samples. Cast stone may be repaired if methods and results are approved by Architect.
- B. Replace units in a manner that results in cast stone matching approved Samples, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean cast stone as work progresses.
  - 1. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
  - 2. Remove excess sealant immediately, including spills, smears, and spatter.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed cast stone to comply with requirements in Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry."

END OF SECTION 047200

## SECTION 05 1200 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this section.

#### 1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Structural Metals.

#### 1.3 RELATED WORK

- A. Remaining metal work covered by Division 5.
- B. The anchor bolts and leveling plates for the project are furnished and installed under other contracts. Coordinate all details of structural metal fabrication and erection with the work of other contractors.
- C. Concrete construction for the project is included in other subcontracts. Coordinate all details of structural metal fabrication and erection with the work of other Contractors.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator/Erector's Qualifications: Must have facilities and personnel sufficient to fabricate and erect structural metal framing as indicated on drawings; must have minimum of 5 years experience and be able, upon request, to show framing of similar size materials and scope of work of this contract; must be approved by the Structural Engineer.
- B. Material: Provide only structural steel certified as conforming with specified requirements and fabricated especially to the requirements of this contract.
- C. Tolerances: Unless otherwise noted on drawings or specified, provide structural steel work in accordance with the following minimum tolerances:
  - 1. Fabrication Tolerances: In accordance with requirements of AISC Specifications.
  - 2. Erection Tolerances: Maximum deviation from plumb level and alignment shall not exceed AISC Specifications.
- D. Inspection: All tests and inspections required for shop and field quality control shall be performed by an inspection agency.
- E. Welders: Certified and qualified in accordance with requirements of the American Welding Society, for the particular materials and methods being used. The welder's certification papers shall be available on the first trip by the inspector.
- F. Welding Materials and Methods: For fabrication and erection shall be in accordance with the requirements of the American Welding Society.

G. Codes and Standards: Comply with provisions of following, except as otherwise indicated:

1. AISC "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges".
2. AISC "Specifications for the Design, Fabrications, and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings" includes "Commentary" and Supplements thereto as issued.
3. AISC "Specifications for Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel.
4. AISC "Specifications for Structural Joints using ASTM A-325 or A-490 Bolts" approved by the Research Council on Riveted and Bolted Structural Joints of the Engineering Foundation.
5. American Welding Society (AWS) D1.1 "Structural Welding Code - Steel".
6. ASTM A-6 "General Requirements for Delivery of Rolled Steel Plates, Shapes, Sheet Piling and Bars for Structural Use".

## 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM).
- B. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC): "Manual of Steel Construction" 14<sup>th</sup> Edition.
- C. Steel Structures Paint Council (SSPC): "Steel Structures Paint Manual, Volume 1 and Volume 2, Systems and Specifications, by Steel Structures Painting Council.

## 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Submit prior to commencing any fabrication of structural metal; show dimensions, connections with adjoining materials and construction, finishes, welds, bolts, and fasteners, anchoring all fabrication or erection accessories required; show field welds, cuts, holes and fasteners; verify all dimensions and correlate with adjoining construction and materials; indicate size, type and grade of all members.
  1. Prior to the commencement of steel erection, the erector shall carefully inspect all anchor bolts and leveling plates installed under other subcontracts and shall notify the general contractor of defects. If the anchor bolt, leveling plate and base plate placement are acceptable to him he shall notify the general contractor of the same and proceed with erection of the structural steel.
  2. The approval of the shop drawings is limited to design intent only. No responsibility for a detailed check of member length, size, spacing, or similar detail information is assumed by the Structural Engineer by virtue of such approval.
- B. Shop drawings shall not be a reproduction of the contract drawings. Corrections or revisions to the shop drawings required to coordinate them with the contract documents and other shop drawings shall be made at no additional cost. **Please note that the Contract Documents in CADD format will not be made available to the contractor for their use in the preparation of the shop drawings, unless a release is signed, and a fee is paid for each cadd file requested.**
- C. All steel connection design shall be completed by a design professional hired by the contractor, and satisfy the load requirements specified in the contract documents. Prior to submission of steel shop drawings, the steel fabricator shall submit sample calculations (prepared by a registered

structural engineer) for all typical beam to beam and beam to column connections, which are proposed to be used on this project. After these typical calculations and connections are accepted, the fabricator shall prepare and submit the shop drawings for this project. Only these typical sample calculations are required to be sealed by a registered structural engineer. The material necessary for the fabrication of all connections shall be the responsibility of the contractor.

- D. Submit for review, before installation, information on the studs (shear connectors) and equipment as follows:
  - 1. The name of the manufacturer.
  - 2. A detailed description of the stud, or shield and welding equipment.
  - 3. A certification from the manufacturer that the stud is qualified as specified in AWS D1.1.
  - 4. A copy of the qualification test report as certified by his testing agency.
- E. Mill test reports - see paragraph 3.4.A.

## 1.7 PRODUCT HANDLING AND STORAGE

- A. Deliver to the project site materials to be installed by other contractors in time to be installed before the start of work by trade affected. Specifically, anchor bolts and other anchorage devices, which are embedded in cast-in-place concrete or masonry construction. Provide setting drawings, templates, and directions for the installation of the anchor bolts and other devices.
- B. Store all steel in such manner as to prevent distortion to the members and injury to the paint, and supported free from the ground and kept clean. Where shop coat becomes damaged during handling, touch up paint. In the event that the shop coat of paint is damaged or rusted due to storage, repaint steel prior to erection with same paint used as shop coat.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. All structural steel including wide flange shapes, tubes, pipes, angles, bars, plates, channels, bolts, studs, etc shall be from stock of domestic origin, and shall meet all of the requirements of the "Maryland Buy American Steel Act".
- B. Plates, Angles, Channels, Bars, and rolled S, M, and HP shapes: ASTM A-36.
- C. Rolled Wide Flange Shapes: ASTM A-992, Grade 50.
- D. Rolled S, M, HP, and Channel Shapes: ASTM A-572, Grade 50; or ASTM A-588, Grade 50.
- E. Cold-Formed Steel Tubing: ASTM A-500, Grade B.
- F. Hot-Formed Steel Tubing: ASTM A-501.
- G. Steel Pipe: ASTM A-53, Type E or S, Grade B.
- H. Anchor Bolts:

1. ASTM F-1554 (hooked, headed, and threaded & nitted anchor rods including weldability supplement S1 conforming to grades 36, 55, and 105).

I. Bolts & Nuts:

1. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A-325 and A-490 bolts, with ASTM A-563 nuts and ASTM F-436 washers.

J. Electrodes for Welding: Comply with AWS Code.

1. Covered mild steel electrodes complying with AWS Code and ASTM A-233, Series E70. Use E70 Series, Grade SAW-1 for welding ASTM A-36 steel. Use E70 Low Hydrogen Series, Grade SAW-2 for welding ASTM A-992, Grade 50 steel.
2. All electrodes having low hydrogen type coverings shall be dried for at least 2 hours between 450 degrees F. and 500 degrees F. before they are used. Electrodes may be stored immediately after drying in storage ovens held at a temperature of at least 250 degrees F. Electrodes that are not used within 4 hours after removal from a drying or storage oven shall be redried before use. Electrodes which have been wet shall not be used.

K. Headed Stud Type Shear Connectors: Cold finished carbon steel complying with ASTM A-108, Grade 1015 or 1020, Type B, with dimensions complying with AISC Specifications.

1. Shear studs: Conform to AWS "Structural Welding Code" D1.1 and as shown on contract drawings and as herein specified.
2. Shear connectors: 3/4" round studs welded through galvanized steel deck to steel beams.
3. Field applied shear connectors (3/4" diameter studs) shall completely develop the horizontal shear capacity of all beam and girders. The number of 3/4" diameter studs shown on the drawings assumes a horizontal shear capacity of 15,800 or 19,600 pounds per stud for normal weight concrete and 13,300 or 16,400 pounds per stud for lightweight concrete topping slabs (per LRFD). If the arrangement of the 3/4" studs or the geometry of the available deck voids are such that the full horizontal shear capacity of the 3/4" stud cannot be developed, additional 3/4" diameter studs shall be provided.
4. Substantiate horizontal shear capacity of 3/4" diameter studs in metal deck void with light weight structural concrete with full scale push off tests conducted by a recognized University of Commercial Testing Laboratory at no increase in contract price.
5. Welders and welding procedure: In accordance with manufacturer's instruction. Coordinate with placing of steel deck.

L. Structural Steel Primer Paint: Use one of the following:

1. Steel Located Interior of Exterior Building Walls not receiving fireproofing:
  - a. Description
    - 1) Short oil alkyd or modified alkyd
    - 2) Surface Preparation: SSPC SP-3 or SSPC SP-2.
  - b. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
    - 1) Carboline Company, St. Louis, MO: Carbocoat 115, at 1.5 to 2.0 mils dry film thickness.

- 2) InsuIX, Montvale, NJ: Corotech V130 Series Quick Dry Alkyd Metal Primer, at 1.9 to 2.1 mils dry film thickness.
  - 3) International Protective Coatings, Houston, TX: Interprime 140, at 1.4 to 1.8 mils dry film thickness.
  - 4) PPG Paints, Pittsburgh, PA: MetalCase 85 7-852 Series Alkyd Rust Inhibitive Metal Primer, at 2.1 to 2.5 mils dry film thickness.
  - 5) Tnemec Company, North Kansas City, MO: Series 88HS Azeron HS Primer, at 2.0 to 3.5 mils dry film thickness.
2. Steel Located within Exterior Building Walls or in Exterior Enclosures Outside of Exterior Walls not receiving fireproofing.
- a. Description:
    - 1) Polyamide epoxy, cycloaliphatic amine epoxy, or aromatic polyurethane zinc filled.
    - 2) Surface Preparation: SSPC SP-3 or SSPC SP-2.
  - b. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products:
    - 1) Carboline Company, St. Louis, MO: Carboguard 890, at 6 to 8 mils dry film thickness.
    - 2) E.I. DuPont deNemours and Company, Wilmington, DE: Corlar® 2.1 PR-P™ Productive Epoxy Primer, at 3 to 5 mils dry film thickness.
    - 3) InsulIX, Montvale, NJ: Corotech V160 Series Epoxy Mastic Coating, at 4.6 to 7.2 mils dry film thickness.
    - 4) International Protective Coatings, Houston, TX: Inerplus 880, at 3 to 5 mils dry film thickness.
    - 5) PPG Paints, Pittsburgh, PA: Pitt-Guard 97-145 Series Polyamide Epoxy Mastic Coating, at 4 to 7 mils dry film thickness.
    - 6) Tnemec Company, North Kansas City, MO: Series 394 PerimePrime, at 2.5 to 3.5 mils dry film thickness.

M. Structural Steel Protective Coating: All structural steel exposed to the weather or embedded in exterior masonry walls shall be hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A123-84.

N. Non-Shrink Grout: CRD C-588, factory pre-mixed grout. Products are subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following Type D, Non-metallic grouts:

1. "Masterflow 713"; Master Builders
2. "SonogROUT"; Sonneborn - Contact.
3. "Euco-NS"; Euclid Chemical Company.
4. "Five Star Grout"; U.S. Grout Company
5. "Duragrout"; L & M Construction Chemical Company

O. Diamond Steel Plate by Lucas or approved equal.

## 2.2 FABRICATION

A. General: Fabricate items of structural steel in accordance with AISC Specifications and as indicated on the final shop drawings. Properly mark and matchmark all materials for field assembly. Fabricate for delivery sequence which will expedite erection and minimize field handling. Provide camber in structural members where indicated.

- B. Temporary Field Connections: Temporary erection connections shall consist of at least one clip angle and two 3/4" diameter bolts, remote from or compatible with the field welded connections. The Contractor shall be responsible for the design, function and use of all temporary erection connections. Remove temporary connections if they interfere with architectural finishes.
- C. Permanent Field Connections: High-strength bolts, for use in permanent slip-critical or bearing type connections with threads in shear planes, shall conform to ASTM A-325.
1. Shear web connections: "Double angle connections" as described in Table 10-1, 10-2, & 10-3 of AISC Steel Construction Manual, 14<sup>th</sup> Edition, with shop welds and permanent field high strength bolts. However, in no case shall the shear web connections be designed for less than the beam reactions shown in paragraphs 2.2.C.5 below, or as shown on the contract documents.
  2. Single angle connections may be used in the webs of beams, provided that the connection is designed for the eccentric load, except as otherwise noted on the drawings.
  3. Connections: Made with at least 3/4" diameter high strength bolts in slip-critical, pre-tension, or snug-tightened connections with threads in shear planes. All high-strength bolts shall be installed in accordance with Section 8.1 for snug-tightened connections, and section 8.2 for pre-tensioned and slip-critical connections of the AISC Specifications for Structural Joints Using ASTM A-325 or A-490 bolts, as approved by the Research Council on Structural Connections dated 06/30/2004. At all slip-critical connections, faying surfaces shall meet the requirements of section 3.2.2. All pre-tensioned bolts shall be twist-off type tension control bolt assemblies.
  4. Unless otherwise specified in the contract documents, all beam and column connections shall be as follows:
    - a. Beam to Beam Connections: Snug-tightened joints.
    - b. Beam to Column Connections: Snug-tightened joints.
    - c. Connections Subjected to Stress Reversal Conditions (Braced Frames, Moment Frames, etc.):
      - 1) Bolts In Standard Holes: Pre-tensioned joints.
      - 2) Bolts In Oversized or Slotted Holes: Slip-critical joints.
  5. All shear connections shall develop the end reaction (Ultimate LRFD Load)  $\phi bWc/2L$ , where " $\phi bWc$ " is the uniform load constant in kip-foot, and where "L" is the span in feet, as shown in the tables "Uniform Load Constants for Beams" (laterally supported) for given shape and steel specified, AISC Manual of Steel Construction 14th Edition, unless otherwise specified.
  6. The shear connection capacity for composite steel beams shall be determined by multiplying the beam reaction computed per the method described in Paragraph 2.2.C.5 above by 1.75 for all interior beams and 1.25 for exterior spandrel beams.
  7. All seated beam connections shall be designed so that the stiffener is clear of the finished ceiling and column encasement. The width of the stiffened seat shall not exceed 9". Beam web stiffeners shall be added as necessary to satisfy web yielding and web crippling code requirements.

## 2.3 SHOP PAINTING

- A. General: Shop paint all structural steel work, except members or portions of members to be embedded in concrete, mortar, or sprayed on fireproofing. Paint embedded steel on exposed portions and initial 2" of embedded areas only.
1. Do not paint contact surfaces which are to be welded or high strength bolted.

2. Apply a minimum of 2 coats of paint to surfaces, which are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.
- B. Surface Preparation: After inspection and before shipping, clean steel work to be painted. Remove loose rust, loose mill scale and spatter, slag or flux deposits. Comply with Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC) as follows:
1. SP-1 "Solvent Cleaning" for removing oil, grease and similar contaminates.
  2. SP-2 "Hand Tool Cleaning" for general cleaning.
  3. SP-3 "Power Tool Cleaning" for general cleaning.
  4. SP-6 "Commercial Blast Cleaning" for all steel beams, columns and lintels exposed to the weather or embedded in exterior walls.
- C. Application:
1. Immediately after surface preparation, apply structural steel primer paint in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and at a rate to provide the uniform minimum dry film thickness indicated. Use painting methods which will result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and all exposed surfaces.
  2. Provide a one-coat shop applied paint system complying with Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC)-Paint System Guide No. 7.00.
  3. Immediately after surface preparation, apply the hot-dip galvanizing in accordance with ASTM A123-84 at the coating weight required by Table 1 to provide a uniform mil dry film thickness of 3.4 mils. Use galvanized methods which will result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges and all exposed surfaces.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Erector must examine the areas and conditions under which structural steel work is to be installed including all anchor bolts and leveling plates installed under other contracts, and notify the Owner in writing of conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to the Erector.

### 3.2 ERECTION

- A. General: Comply with the AISC Specifications and Code of Standard Practice, and as herein specified. Maintain work in a safe and stable condition during erection.
1. Structural steel with finished topcoat paint and galvanized steel shall be handled using nylon slings and wood dunnage to minimize damage.
- B. Anchor Bolts: Furnish anchor bolts and other connectors required for securing structural steel to foundations and other in-place work.
- C. Furnish templates and other devices as necessary for presetting bolts and other anchors to accurate locations.

1. Refer to Division 3 sections for anchor bolts installation in concrete.

D. Setting Leveling Plates:

1. Clean concrete bearing surfaces and roughen to improve bond. Clean the bottom surface of leveling plates.
2. Set loose leveling plates for structural members on wedges, or other adjusting devices.
3. Tighten anchor bolts after the plates have been positioned and leveled to proper elevation. Do not remove wedges or shims, but if protruding, cut off flush with the edge of the base plate prior to packing with grout.
4. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and bases or plates to ensure that no voids remain. Finish exposed surfaces, protect installed materials, and allow to cure.

E. Temporary Shoring and Bracing: Provide, as required, with connections of sufficient strength to bear imposed loads. Remove temporary members and connections when permanent members are in place and final connections are made. Provide temporary guy lines to achieve proper alignment of the structures as erections proceeds.

1. Provide temporary planking and working platforms as necessary to effectively complete the work.

F. Field Assembly: Set structural members to the lines and elevations indicated. Align and adjust the various members forming a part of a complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces which will be in permanent contact before assembly. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.

1. Splice members only where indicated.
2. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or by the use of drift pins, except in secondary bracing members. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.
3. Do not use gas cutting torches in the field for correcting fabrication errors in the structural framing. Cutting will be permitted only on secondary members which are not under stress as acceptable to the Structural Engineer. Finish gas-cut sections equal to a sheared appearance when permitted.

G. Contractor shall be responsible for the preparation of the surfaces to which studs are to be attached. Field weld studs (shear connectors) through thickness of galvanized steel floor deck. The stud manufacturer shall have a representative present at the start of work to ensure the proper use of studs and welding equipment. Remove arc shield after stud welding is complete.

H. Touch-Up Painting:

1. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of the shop paint, and paint all exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting. Apply by brush or spray to provide the minimum dry film thickness as previously specified.
2. Steel which is abraded and rusty shall have primer and topcoat reapplied. Steel which is only abraded shall have topcoat reapplied.
3. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of the hot-dip galvanized coating, and coat all exposed areas per ASTM A780-80. Apply coating to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 3.4 mils as previously specified.

- I. Building Plumbness: The Contractor shall hire a registered surveyor to verify that the exterior perimeter structural steel columns have been installed within the tolerances specified by the AISC Commentary to the Code of Standard Practice for Buildings and Bridges - Section 7.13.1.1. A report shall be submitted to the architect for approval prior to final acceptance of the work.

### 3.3 SHOP AND FIELD WELDING

- A. Welding: Where structural joints are made by welding, the details of all joints, the technique of welding employed, the appearance and quality of welds made and the methods used in correcting defective work shall conform to requirements of the AISC Specification for the Design, Fabrication and Erection of Structural Steel for Buildings and the Structural Welding Code D1.1 of the American Welding Society. In addition welds shall be made only by operators who have been previously qualified by tests as prescribed in the Standard Qualification Procedure of the American Welding Society, to perform the type of work required. The Contractor shall pay all costs for the qualification of welders. All welding equipment shall be direct current reverse polarity type.

### 3.4 INSPECTION AND TESTING

- A. All inspections and tests shall meet the requirements of IBC 2012, Chapter 17, Sections 1701 thru 1706.
- B. Mill Inspection: The Contractor shall furnish Morabito Consultants, Inc. and the inspection agency a copy of the certified mill test reports of the chemical analysis and physical tests for each member and each beam number.
- C. Shop Inspection: The Owner shall employ an inspection agency approved by the Structural Engineer to inspect the steel in the shop. This inspection shall include the joining of parts, punching, bolting, welding painting, etc. The inspection agency shall submit to the Structural Engineer, prior to the delivery of the steel to the job site, certified reports showing the results of these inspections. The shop inspection shall include the type and manufacturer of the paint used.
- D. Field Inspection: The Owner shall employ an inspection agency approved by the Structural Engineer to inspect the erected steel in the field. This inspection shall include alignment, position of member, bolting, welding, painting, etc. The inspection agency shall also submit to the Structural Engineer, prior to the Contractor's request for payment for the erected steel, certified reports showing results of these inspections.
- E. Costs: The cost of all the tests and inspections are to be borne by the Owner.
- F. Shop Inspection shall include, but is not limited to:
  - 1. Examination of mill certificates in reference to material being fabricated.
  - 2. All welding procedures including certification of welders and electrode identification.
  - 3. All shop connections.
  - 4. Shop preparation for butt welds.
  - 5. Location of all clips, seats, holes and other accessories.
  - 6. Type and quality of shop paint and painting.

G. Field Inspection shall include, but is not to be limited to:

1. See that all steel is properly stored and protected.
2. Vertical and horizontal alignment of all beams and columns before and after welding.
3. Temporary guying of building.
4. All joints, prior to welding, for required clearances and preparation.
5. Type of material and equipment used to make connections.
6. Preheat requirements due to type of steel and weather conditions.
7. All welded and bolted field connections.
8. Check field touch-up painting prior to covering by architectural materials.
9. Inspection shall mark all connections when they are finally approved.
10. Welding of steel floor deck.
11. Welding of shear connectors (studs).
12. Welding and/or screwing of steel roof deck.
13. Perform visual inspection of all welds.
14. Perform tests of welds as follows:
  - a) Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E-709 and E-45; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration not acceptable.
    - Locations: Partial penetration welds
  - b) Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E-164.
    - Locations: Full penetration welds
  - c) Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E-165 and E-433
    - Locations: Partial penetration welds
  - d) Radiographic Testing: ASTM E-142, E-94, and E-592; minimum quality level "2-2T"
    - Locations: Full penetration welds

H. Non-Destructive Testing: In addition to the visual inspection as indicated above, ultrasonic testing of all groove welds shall be required. The testing shall be done using "Branson" ultrasonic testing equipment, or other approved non-destructive testing systems. If faulty welds are discovered by this testing, costs of any additional tests shall be borne by the Contractor.

I. Reports: Mill certificates shall be reviewed and approved by the Inspection Agency and Structural Engineer prior to fabrication.

1. Certified shop inspection reports indicating that the steel as fabricated meets all the requirements of the Contract Documents shall be submitted to the Structural Engineer prior to shipment.
2. Certified field reports, indicating that the steel as erected meets all of the requirements of the Contract Documents, shall be submitted to the Structural Engineer prior to starting of other work preventing access for any possible repairs.

J. Notification: It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to see that the inspection agency is supplied with a complete set of Contract Drawings and Specifications and approved shop drawings before the work is started. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to notify the inspection agency before the start of fabrication and before the start of erection of steel, a sufficient time before such work is started in order that the inspector may properly schedule the required inspections. If material is shipped prior to shop inspection, any additional costs of inspection and repair shall be borne by Contractor.

### 3.5 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY

- A. Acceptance of the shop and field inspection done by the testing agency pertaining to the structural steel does not relieve the Contractor of his responsibility to insure that the project has the proper sizes, strength, fabrication and erection procedures and any other requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. If the installed structural steel is not erected in accordance with the contract documents and approved shop drawings, the contractor shall hire a professional engineer registered in the state of the project to prepare corrective calculations and details which shall be submitted to the engineer for approval prior to completing any corrections in the field. All costs incurred by the contractor to complete this corrective design and field repairs shall be paid by the contractor.
- C. Submit copies of all reports indicating conformance and exceptions to contract documents in a timely fashion to General Contractor for distribution to design consultants, owner, subcontractors and other interested parties.
- D. Final Report: The Inspection Agency shall prepare a written report that summarizes the work inspected during the course of the project, and certifies that the work meets the requirements of the contract documents, specifications, and all governing agencies.

END OF SECTION 05 1200

## SECTION 051213 - ARCHITECTURALLY EXPOSED STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes architecturally exposed structural-steel framing.
  - 1. Requirements in Division 05 Section "Structural Steel Framing" also apply to AESS framing.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for independent testing agency procedures and administrative requirements.
  - 2. Division 05 Section "Structural Steel Framing" for additional requirements applicable to AESS.
  - 3. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel lintels and shelf angles not attached to structural-steel frame miscellaneous steel fabrications and other metal items not defined as structural steel.
  - 4. Division 09 painting Sections and Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings" for surface preparation and priming requirements.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel: Structural steel designated as "architecturally exposed structural steel" or "AESS" in the Contract Documents.
- B. Category 1 AESS: AESS that is within 96 inches (2400 mm) vertically and 36 inches (900 mm) horizontally of a walking surface and is visible to a person standing on that walking surface or is designated as "Category 1 architecturally exposed structural steel" or "AESS-1" in the Contract Documents.
- C. Category 2 AESS: AESS that is within 20 feet (6 m) vertically and horizontally of a walking surface and is visible to a person standing on that walking surface or is designated as "Category 2 architecturally exposed structural steel" or "AESS-2" in the Contract Documents.
- D. Category 3 AESS: AESS that is not defined as Category 1 or Category 2 or that is designated as "Category 3 architecturally exposed structural steel" or "AESS-3" in the Contract Documents.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of AESS components. Shop Drawings for structural steel may be used for AESS provided items of AESS are specifically identified and requirements below are met for AESS.
  - 1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
  - 2. Include embedment drawings.
  - 3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain. Indicate grinding, finish, and profile of welds.
  - 4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical high-strength bolted connections. Indicate orientation of bolt heads.

5. Indicate exposed surfaces and edges and surface preparation being used.
6. Indicate special tolerances and erection requirements.

B. Samples: Submit samples of AESS to set quality standards for exposed welds for Category 1 AESS.

1. Two steel plates, 3/8 by 8 by 4 inches (9.5 by 200 by 100 mm), with long edges joined by a groove weld and with weld ground smooth.
2. Steel plate, 3/8 by 8 by 8 inches (9.5 by 200 by 200 mm), with one end of a short length of rectangular steel tube, 4 by 6 by 3/8 inches (100 by 150 by 9.5 mm), welded to plate with a continuous fillet weld and with weld ground smooth and blended.
3. Round steel tube or pipe, minimum 8 inches (200 mm) in diameter, with end of another round steel tube or pipe, approximately 4 inches (100 mm) in diameter, welded to its side at a 45-degree angle with a continuous fillet weld and with weld ground smooth and blended.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and fabricator.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category ACSE and CSE.
- B. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category STD.
- C. Shop-Painting Applicators: Qualified according to AISC's Sophisticated Paint Endorsement or SSPC-QP 3, "Standard Procedure for Evaluating Qualifications of Shop Painting Applicators."
- D. Mockups: Build mockups of AESS to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
1. Build mockup of typical portion of AESS as shown on Drawings.
  2. Coordinate finish painting requirements with Division 09 painting Sections.
  3. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Use special care in handling to prevent twisting, warping, nicking, and other damage. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.
1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Where AESS is indicated to fit against other construction, verify actual dimensions by field measurements before fabrication.

## 1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

- A. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, round-head assemblies, consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.
  - 1. Finish: Mechanically deposited zinc coating.
- B. Corrosion-Resisting (Weathering Steel), Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 3, round-head assemblies, consisting of steel structural bolts with splined ends, heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts, and hardened carbon-steel washers.

### 2.2 PRIMER

- A. Primer: Comply with Division 09 painting Sections and Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings."

### 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Shop fabricate and assemble AESS to the maximum extent possible. Locate field joints at concealed locations if possible. Detail assemblies to minimize handling and to expedite erection.
- B. In addition to special care used to handle and fabricate AESS, comply with the following:
  - 1. Fabricate with exposed surfaces smooth, square, and free of surface blemishes including pitting, rust, scale, and roughness.
  - 2. Grind sheared, punched, and flame-cut edges of Category 1 AESS to remove burrs and provide smooth surfaces and edges.
  - 3. Fabricate Category 1 AESS with exposed surfaces free of mill marks, including rolled trade names and stamped or raised identification.
  - 4. Fabricate Category 1 and Category 2 AESS with exposed surfaces free of seams to maximum extent possible.
  - 5. Remove blemishes by filling or grinding or by welding and grinding, before cleaning, treating, and shop priming.
  - 6. Fabricate with piece marks fully hidden in the completed structure or made with media that permits full removal after erection.
  - 7. Fabricate Category 1 AESS to the tolerances specified in AISC 303 for steel that is designated AESS.
  - 8. Fabricate Category 2 and Category 3 AESS to the tolerances specified in AISC 303 for steel that is not designated AESS.
  - 9. Seal-weld open ends of hollow structural sections with 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) closure plates for Category 1 AESS.
- C. Curved Members: Fabricate indicated members to curved shape by rolling to final shape in fabrication shop.

1. Distortion of webs, stems, outstanding flanges, and legs of angles shall not be visible from a distance of 20 feet (6 m) under any lighting conditions.
  2. Tolerances for walls of hollow steel sections after rolling shall be approximately 1/2 inch (13 mm).
- D. Coping, Blocking, and Joint Gaps: Maintain uniform gaps of 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) with a tolerance of 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) for Category 1 AESS.
- E. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
- F. Cleaning Corrosion-Resisting Structural Steel: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
- G. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel framing members.
1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
  2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
  3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

#### 2.4 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.8/D1.8M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work, and comply with the following:
1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding specified tolerances.
  2. Use weld sizes, fabrication sequence, and equipment for AESS that limit distortions to allowable tolerances.
  3. Provide continuous, sealed welds at angle to gusset-plate connections and similar locations where Category 1 AESS is exposed to weather.
  4. Provide continuous welds of uniform size and profile where Category 1 AESS is welded.
  5. Grind butt and groove welds flush to adjacent surfaces within tolerance of plus 1/16 inch, minus 0 inch (plus 1.5 mm, minus 0 mm) for Category 1 and Category 2 AESS.
  6. Make butt and groove welds flush to adjacent surfaces within tolerance of plus 1/16 inch, minus 0 inch (plus 1.5 mm, minus 0 mm) for Category 1 and Category 2 AESS. Do not grind unless required for clearances or for fitting other components, or unless directed to correct unacceptable work.
  7. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs; back-gouge and grind steel smooth for Category 1 and Category 2 AESS.
  8. At locations where welding on the far side of an exposed connection of Category 1 and Category 2 AESS occurs, grind distortions and marking of the steel to a smooth profile aligned with adjacent material.
  9. Make fillet welds for Category 1 and Category 2 AESS oversize and grind to uniform profile with smooth face and transition.
  10. Make fillet welds for Category 1 and Category 2 AESS of uniform size and profile with exposed face smooth and slightly concave. Do not grind unless directed to correct unacceptable work.

## 2.5 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
1. Do not quench or apply post-galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
  2. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in the finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
  3. Galvanize lintels and shelf angles attached to structural-steel frame and located in exterior walls.

## 2.6 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches (50 mm).
  2. Surfaces to be field welded.
  3. Surfaces to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
  4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
  5. Galvanized surfaces.
- B. Surface Preparation for Nongalvanized Steel: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
  2. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
  3. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-Off Blast Cleaning."
  4. SSPC-SP 14/NACE No. 8, "Industrial Blast Cleaning."
  5. SSPC-SP 11, "Power Tool Cleaning to Bare Metal."
  6. SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  7. SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2, "Near-White Blast Cleaning."
  8. SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning."
  9. SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
- C. Preparing Galvanized Steel for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean steel of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with etching cleaner.
- D. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.038 mm). Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
  2. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify, with steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.

1. Prepare a certified survey of bearing surfaces, anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations.
- B. Examine AESS for twists, kinks, warping, gouges, and other imperfections before erecting.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep AESS secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.
  1. If possible, locate welded tabs for attaching temporary bracing and safety cabling where they will be concealed from view in the completed Work.
  2. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

### 3.3 ERECTION

- A. Set AESS accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.
  1. Erect Category 1 AESS to the tolerances specified in AISC 303 for steel that is designated AESS.
  2. Erect Category 2 and Category 3 AESS to the tolerances specified in AISC 303 for steel that is not designated AESS.
- B. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by Architect. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

### 3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
  1. Orient bolt heads in same direction for each connection and to maximum extent possible in same direction for similar connections.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with requirements in "Weld Connections" Paragraph in "Shop Connections" Article.
  1. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs; back-gouge and grind steel smooth for Category 1 and Category 2 AESS.
  2. Remove erection bolts in Category 1 and Category 2 AESS, fill holes, and grind smooth.
  3. Fill weld access holes in Category 1 and Category 2 AESS and grind smooth.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect AESS as specified in Division 05 Section "Structural Steel Framing." The testing agency will not be responsible for enforcing requirements relating to aesthetic effect.
- B. Architect will observe AESS in place to determine acceptability relating to aesthetic effect.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove welded tabs that were used for attaching temporary bracing and safety cabling and that are exposed to view in the completed Work. Grind steel smooth.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
- C. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.
- D. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 051213

## SECTION 05 2100 - STEEL JOISTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this section.

#### 1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Short spans and long span joists.
- B. Bridging, anchorages, headers and framing required to make a complete and rigid job.
- C. Wall anchors at the ends of each line of bridging.
- D. Shop painting, cleaning and touch-up of paint at field welds and at other points where shop coat is damaged.

#### 1.3 RELATED WORK

- A. All other sections of Division 5, Metals.

#### 1.4 DESIGN CRITERIA

- A. Building structure designed based on SJI joist sizes selected and shown on the drawings.
- B. Allowable Deflection: Design and fabricate for a maximum deflection of  $L/360$  of the clear span including the required uniform live load, for all areas having suspended ceilings below.
- C. Top Chords: Design for combined bending and direct stresses for live and dead loads. Top chord extensions shall extend back into joist to fully develop bending and shear stresses.
  - 1. In addition, steel joists furnished shall be designed to support the special loading requirements and fixed-end wind moments indicated on the drawings.
- D. Wind Uplift: All bar joists and joist girders shall be designed to resist a net wind uplift of 57 psf for a 12'-0" x 12'-0" area at all exterior building corners, 35 psf for a 12'-0" width around the entire building perimeter, and 15 psf for all other roof areas. Locate bridging near the first bottom chord panel point and design all joist members to satisfy this additional loading condition.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Joists: Fabricated in compliance with the references, specifically the requirements of span and loading as indicated by joist designation on the drawings.
- B. Manufacturers Qualifications: Member Steel Joist Institute.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify welding processes and welders in accordance with the AWS - "Standard Qualification Procedure."

## 1.6 REFERENCES

- A. Steel Joist Institute (SJI):
  - Standard Specifications and Load Tables - Open Web Steel Joists
  - Short Span Steel Joists - K Series
  - Long Span Steel Joists - LH Series
- B. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC): "Manual of Steel Construction", 14<sup>th</sup> Edition.
- C. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI): Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members
- D. Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC): Steel Structures Painting Manual, Volume 1 and Volume 2, Systems and Specifications, by Steel Structures Painting Council.
- E. American Welding Society (AWS): D1.1 Structural Welding Code Standard Qualification Procedures

## 1.7 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Show layout of joist units, special connections, jointing and accessories. Include the mark, number, type, location and spacing of joists and bridging. **Please note that the Contract Documents in CAD format will not be made available to the contractor for their use in the preparation of the shop drawings, unless a release is signed, and a fee is paid for each CAD file requested.**
- B. Design Computation: Provide design computation for all steel joist and joist girders with special loads beyond those required by the standard joist tables. Computations shall be submitted under the seal and signature of registered professional Structural Engineer in the State of Maryland.
  - 1. See drawings for location of steel joists and joist girders with special loading requirements and fixed-end wind moments.
- C. Certification: That joists comply with "AISC-SJI. Specifications".
- D. Product Data: Specifications and installation instructions for each type of joist and its accessories.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE HANDLING

- A. Product Handling: As recommended in "AISC-SJI. Specifications". Handling and storage: Prevent deformation of members and excessive stresses.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Steel: Comply with "AISC-SJI. Specifications:
- B. Threaded Fasteners:

1. ASTM A-325 or A-490 heavy hexagon structural bolts with nuts and hardened washers.

C. Prime Paint: AISC-SJI. Specifications, Type I Grey oxide; Type II Asphaltic not permitted.

1. Manufacturers:

- Tnemec Company – Series 88HS Azeroon HS Primer
- Or approved equal

## 2.2 SHORT SPAN STEEL JOISTS (K SERIES)

- A. Design and fabricate in accordance with "AISC SJI. Standard Specifications and Load Tables for Short Span Steel Joists, K-Series."
- B. Bearing Ends: Extend a minimum distance of 2-1/2 inches on steel supports, and a minimum of 4 inches on masonry and concrete supports.
- C. All strut joists on column centerlines and at tilt-up concrete exterior walls shall be designed to resist an additional wind fixed end moment of 15 kip-feet / 20 kip-feet respectively.

## 2.3 LONG SPAN STEEL JOIST (LH SERIES)

- A. Design and fabricate in accordance with "AISC SJI. Standard Specifications and Load Tables for Long Span Steel Joist, LH-Series."
- B. Bearing Ends: Extend a minimum distance of 4 inches on steel supports, and a minimum of 6 inches on masonry and concrete supports.
- C. All strut joists on column centerlines and at tilt-up concrete exterior walls shall be designed to resist an additional wind fixed end moment of 20 kip-feet / 25 kip-feet respectively.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate in accordance with "AISC-SJI. Specifications."
  1. Camber: Fabricate joists with camber as noted or indicated on drawings.
- B. Extended Ends: Provide top chord extended ends on joists; design to support uniform loads indicated in "SJI. Specifications and Load Tables."
  1. Design as cantilever beams with reactions carried back to not less than the first panel point of the joists.
  2. Cantilevered extended ends shall be designed for a maximum live load deflection of the cantilevered length divided by 240 ( $L_c/240$ ).
- C. Ceiling Extension: Provide ceiling extensions in areas having ceilings attached directly to joist bottom chord.
  1. Provide either an extended bottom chord element or a separate unit, to suit manufacturer's standards.
  2. Sufficient strength to support the ceiling construction within deflection limit indicated.

3. Extend ends to within 1" of the finished wall surface, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. End Anchorage and Bearing Plates: Provide end anchorages to secure joists to adjacent construction, comply with "AISC-SJI. Specifications" except as indicated.
1. Include beveled end bearings for installations where slope exceeds 1/4 inch (6.35 mm) in 12 inches (304.8 mm).
- E. Header Units: Provide header units to support tail joists at openings in floor or roof system.
- F. Bridging and Sag Rods: Provide bridging, sag rods and anchors for ends of lines, terminate at walls or beams.
- G. Shop Painting: Shop paint all steel joists and joist girders except members or portion of members to be embedded in concrete or sprayed on fireproofing. Paint embedded steel on exposed portions and initial 2 inches of embedded areas only.
1. Remove loose scale, heavy rust, and other foreign materials from joists and accessories before application of shop paint in accordance with SSPC SP-2 "Hand Tool Cleaning" and SP-3 "Power Tool Cleaning."
  2. Remove oil, grease and similar contaminants in accordance with SSPC SP-1 "Solvent Cleaning."
  3. Apply one shop coat of rust inhibitive prime paint to steel joists and accessories, by spray, dipping, or other method.
  4. Provide continuous minimum dry film thickness of not less than 1.0 mils.
  5. Another coat shall be applied, at the time of erection, if the original protection has deteriorated in any manner.
  6. Install finish paint to all surfaces of joist prior to erection per spec section 051200, paragraph 2.1.L.2 and 2.3.C.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Erector must examine the areas and conditions under which steel joists are to be installed and provide notification in writing of conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in an acceptable manner.

### 3.2 ERECTION

- A. Placing Joists: Place and secure steel joist in accordance with "AISC-SJI. Specifications" and as herein specified. Place joists on supporting work, adjust and align in accurate locations and spacing before permanently fastening.
1. Provide temporary bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure lateral stability during construction.
  2. Do not place construction loads upon joists, until joists and bridging are securely in place.
  3. Maximum spacing of joists is shown in plans on the structural drawings. Joists shall be spaced less than maximum distance shown in plans where it is necessary to avoid pipes, openings, parallel partitions, etc.

4. Set joists accurately, in proper locations. Alignment of each joist in place shall not deviate more than 3/8" in 10 feet from a straight line.
5. Bearing surfaces of the joists shall be in the same plane with full bearing on supports and anchored as indicated. For joist ends bearing on masonry, provide solid level bearing of 8" minimum depth filled with concrete.
6. Strut joists at columns shall have top chords bolted to structural members and the bottom chords shall be extended. The top chords shall be welded to structural members after field adjustments. See structural details.

B. Attachment:

1. Welding: Field weld joists to supporting steel frame work in accordance with AISC-SJI. Specifications for the type of joists used. Coordinate welding sequence and procedure with the placing of joists.
2. Anchors: Furnish anchor bolts and other devices to be built into concrete and masonry construction. Furnish templates for accurate location of anchors to other work. Hook anchors not permitted.

C. Bridging:

1. Install bridging immediately after joists are erected. Brace end joists laterally by anchors or ties at each line of bridging.
2. Type as noted or detailed on structural drawings. Bridge both bottom and top chords. Weld all bridging.
  - a) Install parallel bridging for short span joist and promptly after placing joist.
  - b) Where 4 or 5 rows of bridging are required, a row nearest the midspan of the joist shall be diagonal bridging with bolted connections at chords and intersections.
3. Interruption of bridging: (e.g. ducts, suspended HVAC units, recessed light fixtures, etc.) Provide bridging at each end of such items that will overlap line of standard bridging.
4. Joists to be exposed in finished areas: Erect bridging in line with all sections straight, neatly installed and coordinated with building features.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Distribute all construction loads so that carrying capacity of each joist is not exceeded.
- B. Joists shall not be moved or cut, after permanently set, except under written direction of the Architect.

### 3.4 DEFECTIVE WORK

- A. Joists with bent chords or web members, poor welds or other defects, will be rejected and must be replaced with material meeting these specifications.

### 3.5 TOUCH-UP PAINTING

- A. After joist installation, paint all field bolt heads and nuts, and welded areas, abraded or rusty surfaces on joists and steel supporting members per spec section 051200, paragraph 3.2.H. Wire brush surfaces and clean with solvent before painting. Use the same type of paint as used for shop painting.

### 3.6 INSPECTION AND TESTING

- A. All inspections and test shall meet the requirements of IBC 2012, Chapter 17, Sections 1701 thru 1706.
- B. General: Joists welded in place are subject to inspection and testing. Expense of removing and replacing any portion of the steel joists for testing purposes will be borne by the Owner if welds are found to be satisfactory. Remove and replace any work found to be defective and provide new acceptable work.
  - 1. The Owner shall employ and pay for an inspection agency approved by the Architect to inspect the joist.
  - 2. Documents: Provide the inspection agency with a complete set of Contract Documents and approved shop drawings before the work is started.
  - 3. Notification: The Contractor shall notify the inspection agency before the start of erection of steel joists in order that the inspector may properly schedule the required inspections.
- C. Mill Test Reports:
  - 1. Furnish the inspection agency a copy of the certified mill test reports of chemical analysis and physical test for each heat number of structural steel.
  - 2. Furnish an affidavit (six copies) from steel manufacturer, stating that steel furnished for the project complies with the specifications.
- D. Shop Inspection includes:
  - 1. General inspection of the joist fabrication, including welding and required camber.
  - 2. Shop inspection shall be made in the field prior to erection of joist.
  - 3. Mill Certificates shall be reviewed and approved by the inspection agency prior to fabrication.
- E. Field Inspection includes:
  - 1. Setting of bearing plates when required.
  - 2. Field welding of joists to supports.
  - 3. Bridging installation and materials.
  - 4. Anchorage requirements called for on the drawings.
  - 5. Alignment of adjacent joists.
  - 6. Field touch-up of paint and painting of field welds prior to placement of deck.
- F. Written Certification:
  - 1. Upon completion of the installation of all steel joists, the inspection agency shall submit written certification that the joists as manufactured meet all the requirements of the Contract Documents.

### 3.7 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY

- A. Acceptance of the shop and field inspection done by the testing agency pertaining to the structural steel, does not relieve the Contractor of his responsibility to insure that the project has the proper

sizes, strength, fabrication and erection procedures and any other requirements of the Contract Documents.

- B. Submit copies of all reports indicating conformance and exceptions to contract documents in a timely fashion to General Contractor for distribution to design consultants, owner, subcontractors and other interested parties.
- C. Final Report: The Inspection Agency shall prepare a written report that summarizes the work inspected during the course of the project, and certifies that the work meets the requirements of the contract documents, specifications, and all governing agencies.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 053113 - STEEL FLOOR DECKING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this section.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Metal Floor Decking for floor construction.

1.3 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 051200 – Structural Steel Framing
- B. Section 052100 – Steel Joist Framing
- C. Section 054000 – Cold-Formed Metal Framing

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Erector/Installer's Qualifications: Experienced in the installation and/or erection of metal decking and accessories; approved for the installation of the decking by the manufacturer of the decking.
- B. Qualification of welding:
  - 1. Qualify welding processes and welding operators in accordance with AWS "Standard Qualification Procedure."
- C. Deck Types and Acceptance Manufacturers:
  - 1. United Steel Deck and Vulcraft for composite metal deck as below listed. Other manufacturers will be acceptable providing they meet specification requirements.
  - 2. For 3" composite metal floor deck:
    - a. USD - Section -3" Lok-Floor - 20 Gauge
    - b. VULCRAFT - Section VLI - 20 Gauge
  - 3. Composite metal floor deck shall have solid level bearing at steel supports.

1.5 REFERENCES

- A. Steel Deck Institute (SDI):
  - 1. "Steel Roof Deck Design Manual."
- B. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI):
  - 1. AISI-02 - "Specifications for Design of Light Gauge Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."
- C. American Welding Society:
  - 1. (AWS) D1.3 - "Structural Welding Code-Sheet Steel"

D. ASTM – American Society for Testing & Inspection

1. A-653 - “Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc Iron Alloy-Coated Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.
2. A-780 – “Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings”
3. A-924 – “Specification for General Requirements for Sheet Steel, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process”

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturer's Data, Metal Floor Decking:

1. For information only, submit two (2) copies of manufacturer's specifications and installation instructions for each product specified. Include manufacturer's certification as may be required to show compliance with these specifications. Indicate by transmittal form that a copy of each instruction has been distributed to the installer.

B. Shop Drawings: Show complete erection layouts, connection details, welds, and anchorages. Indicate framing and support locations, dimensions and marking of decking sections to correspond with installation sequence and procedure; show connections with adjoining construction and materials, types of welds and locations of all holes and/or openings in decking.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. The galvanized composite steel floor deck units and all miscellaneous angles and plates shall be formed from steel sheets conforming to ASTM A-653, Structural Quality, Grade 33.
- B. The steel shall have received, before being formed, a metal protective coating of zinc conforming to ASTM A-924, designation G60 and to Federal Specifications QQ-S-775C, Type 1, Class e.
- C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High zinc-dust content paint for repair of damaged galvanized surfaces complying with ASTM A780-80.
- D. Shear Connectors: Headed stud type, ASTM A-108, Grade 1015 or 1020, cold finished carbon steel; with dimensions complying with AISC Specifications.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Properties of Sections: Compute the properties of metal floor deck sections on the basis of the effective design width as limited by the provisions of the AISI Specifications, Section 2.3.1 and 2.3.5. Provide not less than the deck section properties shown, including section modulus and moment of inertia per foot of width.
- B. Design Criteria:
  1. Allowable Deflection: Design and fabricate deck for maximum deflection of 1/360 of the clear span under the total uniform super-imposed and live load.
  2. Reports of test conducted as set forth by AISI Specifications may be submitted in lieu of calculations of strength, safe load carrying capacity, deflection or other properties.

3. Composite floor unit (combined steel and concrete sections) shall be capable of supporting concentrated loadings plus 50% impact factor. Where more than 1' width of composite section is required to carry this loading, the lateral distribution characteristics must be demonstrated by full scale simple span load tests, or by rational analysis associated with subject tests.
4. The ability of the composite floor system to carry repetitive impact loadings shall be demonstrated by tests on sections incorporating the mechanical interlock feature to be used in the construction.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

### A. Composite steel floor deck units:

1. Form deck units in lengths to span three (3) or more support spacings, with flush ends and interlocking side laps.
2. Floor units shall be formed with integral locking lugs to provide a mechanical lock between concrete and steel.
3. Fabricate open-beam metal floor deck units of steel sheets with a fluted section having interlocking side laps; of the depth and width shown.
4. Fabricate metal cover plates for end-abutting floor deck units of not less than same thickness as decking. Form to match contour of deck units and approximately 6" wide.
5. Layout deck units to maintain a minimum of three (3) continuous spans in all areas.

### B. Metal closure strips:

1. Fabricate metal closure strips for openings between floor decking and other construction, of sheet steel of the quality as the deck units. Form to the configuration required to provide tight fitting closures at open ends of cells or flutes and sides of the floor decking. Fabricate 16 gauge screed angles as shown on the drawings.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions under which metal decking is to be installed and provide written notification of conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to the installer.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install deck units and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and final shop drawings, and as specified herein. Place deck units on supporting steel framework and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and 2" minimum bearing on supporting members before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side lap interlocks. Place deck units flat and square and provide solid level bearing at steel supports and secured to adjacent framing without warp or excessive deflection. Coordinate and cooperate with structural steel erector in locating decking bundles to prevent overloading of structural members.
  1. Do not use floor deck units for storage or working platforms until permanently secured in position.
- B. Fastening deck units: Fasten composite deck units to steel supporting members by not less than 3/4" diameter fusion welds, spaced not more than 12" o.c. at supports. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, the appearance and quality of welds, and the methods used in correcting welding work. Button punch interlocking side laps of adjacent deck units between supports, at intervals not exceeding 30" o.c.
- C. Cutting and fitting: Cut and neatly fit deck units and accessories around other work projecting through or adjacent to the decking, as shown on the drawings.

- D. Reinforcement at openings: Provide additional metal reinforcement and closure pieces as required for strength, continuity of decking and support of other work shown. Reinforce decking around openings 6" to 12" in size by means of flat galvanized steel sheet placed over opening on top of decking and fusion welded to surface of deck. Provide 18 gauge steel sheet of same quality as deck units at least 12" wider and longer than opening. Space welds at each corner at not more than 12" o.c. along each side.
- E. Install 6" minimum wide sheet steel cover plates, of same thickness as decking where deck changes direction. Puddle weld 12" on center maximum.
- F. Shear connections: Weld shear connectors to supports through decking units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Do not weld shear connectors through two layers (lapped ends) of decking units. Weld only on clean, dry deck surfaces.
- G. Hanger slots or clips: Provide UL approved punched hanger slots between flutes of lower element where deck units are to receive hangers for support of ceiling construction, air ducts, diffusers, or lighting fixtures. Hanger clips designed to clip over male side joints of deck units may be used instead of hanger slots. Locate slots or clips at not more than 24" o.c. in both directions, not over 9" from walls at ends, and not more than 12" from walls at sides, unless otherwise shown. Provide manufacturer's standard hanger attachment devices. Location: at suspended ceilings.
- H. Closure strips: Provide metal closure strips at all open uncovered ends and edges of decking, and in the voids between decking and other construction. Weld into position to provide a complete decking installation. Weld screed angles to spandrel beams for complete perimeter forming.
- I. Touch-up painting: After decking installation, wire brush, clean and paint scarred areas, welds and rust spots on the top and bottom surfaces of decking units and supporting steel members. Touch-up galvanized surfaces with the same type of shop paint used on adjacent surfaces per ASTM A780-80. Touch-up painted surfaces with the same type of shop paint used on adjacent surfaces. In areas where shop-painted surfaces are to be exposed, apply touch-up paint to blend into the adjacent surfaces.

### 3.3 INSPECTION

- A. The Owner shall employ an inspection agency approved by the engineer to inspect the field welding of the metal floor decking to the supporting structure. The cost of all the tests and inspections are to be borne by the Owner.
- B. See Spec Section 051200 for further requirements.

END OF SECTION 053113

## SECTION 05 3114 – STEEL FLOOR CENTERING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this section.

#### 1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Metal Centering for floor construction.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Erector/Installer's Qualifications: Experienced in the installation and/or erection of metal centering and accessories; approved for the installation of the centering by the manufacturer of the centering.
- B. Qualification of welding:
  1. Qualify welding processes and welding operators in accordance with AWS "Standard Qualification Procedure."
- C. Product Compatibility: Products indicated as part of a specific assembly shall be certified by each manufacturer to be compatible with the other products proposed for use by the contractor in that assembly.
- D. Referenced Standards: The following publications of the issues listed below, but referred to hereinafter by basic designation only, form a part of this specification.

#### 1.4 REFERENCES

- A. Steel Deck Institute (SDI).
- B. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI): "Specifications for Design of Light Gauge Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members"
- C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM).
  - A446-75 - Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized by the Hot-Dip Process, Structural (Physical) Quality.
  - A525-75 - Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) by the Hot-Dip Process, General Requirements.
- D. American Welding Society (AWS): Code for Welding in Building Construction.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer's Data, Metal Floor Decking:
  1. For information only, submit two copies of manufacturer's specifications and installation instructions for each product specified. Include manufacturer's certification as may be required

to show compliance with these specifications. Indicate by transmittal form that a copy of each instruction has been distributed to the installer.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show complete erection layouts, connection details, welds, and anchorages. Indicate framing and support locations, dimensions and marking of decking sections to correspond with installation sequence and procedure; show connections with adjoining construction and materials, types of welds and locations of all hole and/or openings in centering.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. The metal centering floor deck units and all flashings shall be formed from steel sheets conforming to ASTM A-446, Grade A for galvanized sheets.
- B. The steel shall have received, before being formed, a metal protective coating of zinc conforming to ASTM A-525 T wiped coating, Designation G60, and to Federal Specifications QQ-S-775C, Type 1, Class E.
- C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High zinc-dust content paint for repair of damaged galvanized surfaces complying with ASTM A780-80.
- D. Wing Washers as manufactured by the United Steel Deck or approved equal.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Properties of Sections: Compute the properties of metal floor deck sections on the basis of the effective design width as limited by the provisions of the AISI Specifications, Section 2.3.1 and 2.3.5. Provide not less than the deck section properties shown, including section modulus and moment of inertia per foot of width.
- B. Design Criteria:
  - 1. Allowable Deflection: Design and fabricate deck for maximum deflection of  $1/360$  of the clear span under the total uniform super-imposed and live load.
  - 2. Reports of test conducted as set forth by AISI Specifications may be submitted in lieu of calculations of strength, safe load carrying capacity, deflection or other properties.
  - 3. Composite floor unit (combined steel and concrete sections) shall be capable of supporting concentrated loadings plus 50% impact factor. Where more than 1' width of composite section is required to carry this loading, the lateral distribution characteristics must be demonstrated by full scale simple span load tests, or by rational analysis associated with subject tests.

### 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Metal centering floor deck units:
  - 1. Form centering units in lengths to span 3 or more support spacings, with nested side laps and end laps.
  - 2. Centering shall be 9/16 inch x 28 gauge galvanized slabform type "0:6C28" as manufactured by Vulcraft Steel Deck or approved equal.

B. Metal closure strips:

1. Fabricate metal closure strips for openings between floor centering and other construction, of sheet steel of the quality as the deck units. Form to the configuration required to provide tight fitting closures at open ends of cells or flutes and sides of the floor centering. Fabricate 16 gauge screed angles as shown on the drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions under which metal centering is to be installed and provide written notification of conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to the installer.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install centering and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and final shop drawings, and as specified herein. Place centering on supporting steel framework and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and 2" minimum bearing on supporting members before being permanently fastened. Place deck units flat and square and provide solid level bearing at steel supports and secured to adjacent framing without warp or excessive deflection. Coordinate and cooperate with structural steel erector in locating decking bundles to prevent overloading of structural members.

1. Do not use centering for storage or working platforms until permanently secured in position.

B. Fastening deck units:

1. Fasten deck units to steel supporting members by not less than 5/8" diameter fusion welds, spaced not more than 12" o.c. at supports. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, the appearance and quality of welds, and the methods used in correcting welding work. Use welding washers. Weld side laps of adjacent deck units between supports, at intervals not exceeding 24" o.c.

- C. Cutting and fitting: Cut and neatly fit deck units and accessories around other work projecting through or adjacent to the decking, as shown on the drawings.

- D. Reinforcement at openings: Provide additional metal reinforcement and closure pieces as required for strength, continuity of decking and support of other work shown. Reinforce decking around openings 6" to 12" in size by means of flat galvanized steel sheet placed over opening on top of centering and fusion welded to surface of deck. Provide 18 gauge steel sheet of same quality as deck units at least 12" wider and longer than opening. Space welds at each corner at not more than 12" o.c. along each side.

- E. Closure strips: Provide metal closure strips at all open uncovered ends and edges of decking, and in the voids between decking and other construction. Weld into position to provide a complete decking installation. Weld screed angles to spandrel beams for complete perimeter forming.

- F. Touch-up painting: After decking installation, wire brush, clean and paint scarred areas, welds and rust spots on the top and bottom surfaces of decking units and supporting steel members. Touch-up galvanized surfaces with the same type of shop paint used on adjacent surfaces per ASTM A780-80. Touch-up painted surfaces with the same type of shop paint used on adjacent surfaces. In areas where shop-painted surfaces are to be exposed, apply touch-up paint to blend into the adjacent surfaces.

### 3.3 INSPECTION

- A. All inspections and test shall meet the requirements of IBC 2012, Chapter 17, Sections 1701 thru 1706.
- B. The Owner shall employ an inspection agency approved by the engineer to inspect the field welding of the metal to the supporting structure. The cost of all the tests and inspections are to be borne by the Owner.
- C. Acceptance of the shop and field inspection done by the testing agency pertaining to the structural steel, does not relieve the Contractor of his responsibility to insure that the project has the proper sizes, strength, fabrication and erection procedures and any other requirements of the Contract Documents.

### 3.4 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY

- A. Submit copies of all reports indicating conformance and exceptions to contract documents in a timely fashion to General Contractor for distribution to design consultants, owner, subcontractors and other interested parties.
- B. Final Report: The Inspection Agency shall prepare a written report that summarizes the work inspected during the course of the project, and certifies that the work meets the requirements of the contract documents, specifications, and all governing agencies.

END OF SECTION 05 3114

## SECTION 05 3123 – STEEL ROOF DECKING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this section.

#### 1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Metal Decking for roof construction.

#### 1.3 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 05 1200            Structural Steel Framing
- B. Section 05 2100           Steel Joist Framing
- C. Section 05 4000           Cold-Formed Metal Framing

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Erector/Installer's Qualifications: Experienced in the installation and/or erection of metal decking and accessories; approved for the installation of the decking by the manufacturer of the decking.
- B. Product compatibility: Products indicated as part of a specific assembly shall be certified by each manufacturer to be compatible with the other products proposed for use by the Contractor in that assembly. Specific areas requiring certified compatibility are composite action, and built-up roof assemblies.
- C. Wind Uplift: All roof deck shall be designed and anchored to resist a net wind uplift of 65 psf for a 12'-0" x 12'-0" area at all exterior building corners, 43 psf for a 12'-0" width around the entire building perimeter, and 23 psf for all other roof areas.

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. Steel Deck Institute (SDI):
  - "Steel Roof Deck Design Manual."
- B. American Iron and Steel Institute (AISI):
  - AISI-02 - "Specifications for Design of Light Gauge Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."
- C. American Welding Society:
  - (AWS) D1.3 - "Structural Welding Code-Sheet Steel"
- D. ASTM – American Society for Testing & Inspection
  - A-611 - "Standard Specification for Structural Steel (SS), Sheet, Carbon, Cold Rolled" for Uncoated and Painted Steel.
  - A-653 - "Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc Iron Alloy-Coated Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.

- A-780 – “Standard Practice for Repair of Damaged and Uncoated Areas of Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings”
- A-924 – “Specification for General Requirements for Sheet Steel, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process”

## 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Show complete erection layouts, connection details, welds, and anchorages. Indicate framing and support locations, dimensions and marking of decking sections to correspond with installation sequence and procedure; show connections with adjoining construction and materials, types of welds and locations of all holes and/or openings in decking.
- B. Submit technical data on chromate primer and acrylic top coat along with color samples for approval.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Steel for galvanized metal deck units: ASTM A-653, Structural Quality, Grade 33.
- B. Steel for painted metal deck units: ASTM A-611, Grade C.
- C. Sheet metal accessories: ASTM A-653, commercial quality, galvanized.
- D. Galvanizing: ASTM A-924, Designation G90.
- E. Galvanizing repair paint: High zinc-dust content paint for repair of damaged galvanized surfaces complying with ASTM A-780.
- F. Paint: Shop applied, baked on, rust-inhibitive white paint, comprising of a 2 coat system of chromate primer and acrylic top coat, for application to metal surfaces which have been chemically cleaned and phosphate chemical treated.

### 2.2 FABRICATION

- A. General: Form deck units in lengths to span three or more supports, with flush, telescoped or nested side laps, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Roof deck units: Provide deck configurations complying with SDI "Basic Design Specifications," of the gauge, depth and width shown.
  - 1. Roof deck shall be 1-1/2" x 22 gauge type "B" deck by Vulcraft or approved equal.
  - 2. Acoustical roof deck shall be 1 1/2" x 16/16 gauge BCAS acoustical galvanized metal deck by United Steel Deck or approved equal.
- C. Metal cover plates: Fabricate metal cover plates for end-abutting deck units of not less than 18 gauge sheet steel. Form to match contour of deck units and approximately 6" wide.

- D. Metal closure strips: Fabricate metal closure strips, for openings between decking and other construction, of not less than 18 gauge sheet steel. Form to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of flute and sides of decking.
- E. Roof sump pans: Fabricate from single piece of 14 gauge galvanized sheet steel with level bottoms and sloping sides to direct water flow to drain, unless otherwise shown. Provide sump pans of adequate size to receive roof drains and with bearing flanges not less than 3" wide. Recess pans not less than 1 1/2" below roof deck surface, unless otherwise shown or required by deck configuration. Holes for drains will be cut in the field.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Examine the areas and conditions under which metal decking is to be installed and provide written notification of conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work. Do not proceed with the work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to the installer.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install deck units and accessories in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and final shop drawings, and as specified herein. Place deck units on supporting steel framework and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting members before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side lap interlocks. Place deck units flat and square, secured to adjacent framing without warp or excessive deflection. Coordinate and cooperate with structural steel erector in locating decking bundles to prevent overloading of structural members.
- B. Fastening deck units:
  - 1. Fasten 1 1/2" roof deck units to steel supporting members by not less than 5/8" diameter fusion welds, spaced not more than 6" o.c. for a 12'-0" width around the entire building perimeter, and 12" o.c. for all other roof areas, with additional welds as required for diaphragm strength as shown in the contract documents. Fasten 3" roof deck units to steel supporting members by not less than 3/4" diameter fusion welds, spaced not more than 8" o.c. for a 16'-0" width around the entire building perimeter, and 16" o.c. for all other roof areas, with additional welds as required for diaphragm strength as shown in the contract documents. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, the appearance and quality of welds, and the methods used in correcting welding work.
  - 2. Fasten roof deck units to light gauge framing with No. 12 tek screws @ 6" o.c. for a 12'-0" width around the entire building perimeter, and 12" o.c. for all other roof areas.
  - 3. Lock side laps of adjacent deck units between supports, at intervals not exceeding 24" o.c., with additional screws as required for diaphragm strength as shown in the contract documents.
- C. Cutting and fitting: Cut and neatly fit deck units and accessories around other work projecting through or adjacent to the decking, as shown on the drawings.
- D. Reinforcement at openings: Provide additional metal reinforcement and closure pieces as required for strength, continuity of decking and support of other work shown. Reinforce decking

around openings less than 72 square inches in size by means of flat galvanized steel sheet placed over opening on top of decking and fusion welded to surface of deck. Provide 14 gauge steel sheet of same quality as deck units at least 12" wider and longer than opening. Space welds at each corner and not more than 12" o.c. along each side. Openings greater than 72 square inches shall be supported by steel angle frames as shown on the structural drawings.

- E. Install 6" minimum wide sheet steel cover plates, of same thickness as decking, where deck changes direction. Puddle weld 12" on center maximum.
- F. Hanger slots or clips: Provide approved punched hanger slots between flutes of lower element where deck units are to receive hangers for support of ceiling construction, air ducts, diffusers, or lighting fixtures. Hanger clips designed to clip over male side joints of deck units may be used instead of hanger slots. Locate slots or clips at not more than 24" o.c. in both directions, not over 9" from walls at ends, and not more than 12" from walls at sides, unless otherwise shown. Provide manufacturer's standard hanger attachment devices. Location: at suspended ceilings.
- G. Roof sump pans: Place over openings provided in roof decking and weld to top decking surface. Space welds not more than 12" o.c. with at least one weld at each corner. Cut opening in roof sump bottom to accommodate drain size indicated.
- H. Closure strips: Provide metal closure strips at all open uncovered ends and edges of roof decking, and in the voids between decking and other construction. Weld into position to provide a complete decking installation.
- I. Touch-up painting: After decking installation, wire brush, clean and paint scarred areas, welds and rust spots on the top and bottom surfaces of decking units and supporting steel members. Touch-up galvanized surfaces with galvanizing repair paint applied in accordance with ASTM A-780. Touch-up painted surfaces with the same type of shop paint used on adjacent surfaces. In areas where shop-painted surfaces are to be exposed, apply touch-up paint to blend into the adjacent surfaces.

### 3.3 INSPECTION

- A. All inspections and tests shall meet the requirements of IBC 2015, Chapter 17, Sections 1701 thru 1706.
- B. The Owner shall employ an inspection agency approved by the engineer to inspect the field welding of the metal roof decking to the supporting structure. The cost of all the tests and inspections are to be borne by the Owner.
- C. See spec section 05 1200 for further requirements.

### 3.4 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY

- A. Submit copies of all reports indicating conformance and exceptions to contract documents in a timely fashion to General Contractor for distribution to design consultants, owner, subcontractors and other interested parties.
- B. Final Report: The Inspection Agency shall prepare a written report that summarizes the work inspected during the course of the project, and certifies that the work meets the requirements of

the contract documents, specifications, and all governing agencies.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 05 4000 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this section.

#### 1.2 SCOPE

- A. The Contractor shall furnish all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary for and reasonably incidental to the furnishing and installation of all light gauge metal framing as shown on the drawings and/or called for in these Specifications.

#### 1.3 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Load-bearing steel stud system at exterior masonry walls.
- B. Load-bearing steel joists in lintel assemblies, floor framing, trusses, and rafters used as sloped roof framing.
- C. Prefabricated Columns.
- D. Interior walls, ceilings, bulkheads and soffits.
- E. Unistrut framing for support of ceiling and MEP systems.

#### 1.4 RELATED WORK

- A. Section 04 0523           Masonry Accessories, Veneer Wall Ties.
- B. Section 04 2000        Unit Masonry, Veneer Masonry.
- C. Division 5             Structural Metals.
- D. Division 6             Wood.
- E. Section 09 2900        Gypsum Board, Gypsum Sheathing and Gypsum Board.
- F. Section 09 2216        Non-Structural Metal Framing

#### 1.5 REFERENCES

- A. Work shall meet the requirements of the following standards:
  - 1. American Iron and Steel Institute - A.I.S.I.
    - AISI S100 – 07/SI-10 -Design of Cold Formed Steel Structural Members, with Supplement 1, dated 2010
    - AISI S110-07- Design of Cold Formed Steel Structural Systems – Special

- Bolted Moment Frames, with Supplement 1, dated 2009
    - S200-07 – Standard for Cold-formed Steel framing – General Provisions
    - S210-07 – Standard for Cold-formed Steel Framing-Floor and Roof System Design.
    - S211-07 – Standard for Cold-formed Steel framing Wall Stud Design
    - S212-07 – Standard for Cold-formed Steel Framing Header Design
    - AISI S213-07/SI-10 – Standard for Cold-formed Steel Framing Lateral Design, with Supplement dated 2010
    - S214-07 – Standard for Cold-formed Steel Framing-Truss Design, with Supplement 2, dated 2008
  - 2. American Welding Society (A.W.S.)
    - D.1.1 - Structural Welding Code
    - D.1.3 - Specifications for Welding Sheet in Structures
  - 3. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM).
    - A 653 - Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process, Structural (Physical) Quality
    - A 924 - General Requirements for the Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process
    - A 780 - Practice for the Repair of Damaged Hot-Dip Galvanized Coatings
    - A 766 - Electrodeposited Coatings of Cadmium
    - C 955 - Load-Bearing (Transverse and Axial) Steel Studs. Runners (Track), and Bracing or Bridging for Screw Application of Gypsum Board and Metal Plaster Bases
    - C 1007 - Installation of Load Bearing (Transverse and Axial) Steel Studs and Related Accessories
  - 4. Brick Institute of America (BIA) Technical Notes
    - 28B - Brick Veneer Panel and Curtain Walls
  - 5. Federal Specifications:
    - FF-P-395 - Pin, Drive, Guided and Pin Drive, Power Actuated Fasteners for Power Actuated and Hand Actuated Fastening Tools
    - FF-S-325 - Shield, Expansion; Nail, Expansion; and Nail, Drive Screw (Devices, Anchoring Masonry)
  - 6. American Society of Civil Engineers
    - ASCE 7-10 - Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures
- B. The most stringent requirements shall govern in conflicts between specified codes and standards. All components and cladding shall be designed utilizing exposure "C".

## 1.6 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

- A. Employ and pay for services of a Structural Engineer to provide engineering data required for submittals and to certify manufacturer's submitted products will meet design requirements.
- B. Design system to meet performance requirements and regulatory requirements.

## 1.7 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Framing: Wall, floor, roof, and MEP support system assemblies shall meet the structural criteria indicated in the contract documents.

- B. All roof framing shall be designed for the following minimum superimposed live and dead loads beyond the self weight of the structure. All framing shall utilize 16 gage studs, tracks and plates minimum and shall be designed so that the maximum live load deflection is less than the span in inches divided by 360 ( $L/360$ ) or a maximum of 0.75" – whichever is less.
- **Roof Framing:**
    - Live Load = 30
    - Drifting Snow per IBC 2015, and ASCE 7-10
    - Dead Load = 15
    - Dead Load of all mechanical equipment shown on the contract drawings
    - Wind Load = 120 mph per IBC 2015, and ASCE 7-10
- C. All roof trusses shall be designed for the following minimum superimposed live and dead loads beyond the self-weight of the structure. All truss top & bottom chords shall utilize 16 gage studs, tracks and plates minimum. All roof trusses shall be designed so that the maximum live load deflection is less than the span in inches divided by 360 ( $L/360$ ) or a maximum of 1" – whichever is less.
- **Top Chord:**
    - Live Load = 30 psf + snow drift
    - Drifting Snow per IBC 2015, and ASCE 7-10
    - Dead Load = 15 psf
    - Dead Load of all mechanical equipment shown on the contract drawings
    - Wind Load = 140 mph per IBC 2015, and ASCE 7-10
  - **Bottom Chord:**
    - Live Load = 0 (typical)
    - Dead Load = 10 psf
    - Dead Load of all mechanical equipment shown on the contract drawings
- D. Configuration of all truss chords, webs, and bracing shall be approved by the architect. If the proposed bracing is not acceptable to the architect, the truss shall be designed to eliminate the bracing (at no additional cost to the Owner). Connections between truss chords, diagonals and bridging shall be trimmed neat and shall not extend beyond the width of any member.
- E. Truss bracing for chord and web members shall meet the following requirements.
1. Additional truss bracing beyond that shown on the drawings shall be provided as necessary in order to assure adequate bracing of truss members.
  2. Bracing between trusses chords and webs must be perpendicular to the member being braced.
  3. All bracing shall be continuous between a minimum of 4 trusses.
  4. Bracing forces at the end of all bracing lines shall be transferred to the top and bottom roof diaphragms by cross bridging.
  5. If inadequate truss bracing exists in the plane of the top and bottom chord of the trusses, the contractor shall design and install all required bracing to assure the truss lateral forces are adequately transferred to the building's main force resisting system.
  6. If bracing cannot be installed as required above, the truss chord and web members shall be strengthened to eliminate the need for supplemental bracing.
- F. All interior wall studs shall be designed to support 5 psf lateral load. All bulkhead and ceiling framing shall be designed to support minimum 10 psf live load in addition to the self weight of the structure and all MEP systems.

- G. Steel Studs: Steel studs shall be of a configuration and gage to provide sufficient stiffness, as controlled by the maximum allowable deflection, under full live load, dead load and wind load of L/600 when secured to masonry veneer and L/360 in all other areas.
- H. Exterior walls shall be considered for transverse and axial loading with/without diaphragm action of the sheathing.
- I. Spacing of exterior wall studs shall never be less than 16" o.c. to accommodate wall insulation. Provide multiple studs as required to satisfy all design requirements.
- J. Contractor shall coordinate spacing of studs, locations of wall openings and locations of diagonal bracing with MEP drawings.
- K. Connections (member to member and member to structure) shall be thoroughly examined and designed.
- L. Wall bridging shall be designed to provide resistance to minor axis bending and rotation of all wall studs including multiple jamb studs. Please note the walls may not be sheathed and may require additional rows of wall bridging.
- M. Provide additional joists, rafters, wall studs, tracks, unistrut, bracing, connections, etc. beyond that which is presently shown on the contract documents as necessary to assure the roof, MEP systems support, and exterior wall system, etc. are complete and sufficient to meet all of the requirements of the local building code and ASCE 7-10.

## 1.8 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Catalog cuts showing materials and each component's dimensions and sectional properties.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate member sizes and spacings. Illustrate materials, shop coatings, steel thicknesses, details of fabrication, details of attachment to adjoining work, size, location, spacing of fasteners for attaching framing to itself, details of attachment to the structure, accessories and their installation, and critical installation procedures. Drawings may include plans, elevations, sections, and details, and must be signed and sealed by a Maryland Professional Engineer.
  - 1. Shop and field assembly details including cutting and connections; Type and location of welding, bolting and fastening devices.
  - 2. If prefabricated framing is utilized, include individual panel drawings for each condition including configuration, dimensions, materials, attachments and panel location.
  - 3. Provide reinforcement details for holes cut through structural studs for each product.
- C. Certification: Statement from framing manufacturer certifying that materials conform to requirements of Contract Documents.
- D. Calculations: Engineering calculations, signed and sealed by a Maryland Professional Engineer, shall be prepared verifying the assembly's ability to meet or exceed design requirements as required by local codes and authorities.

## 1.9 QUALIFICATIONS

- A. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacture of products specified in this Section with minimum 3 years documented experience.
- B. Installer: Welders shall be certified under provisions of AWS for structural welding and specific qualifications for sheet steel.
- C. Design Engineer: Registered Structural Engineer and licensed in the State of Project location, and experienced in the structural design of lightgauge framing systems.

#### 1.10 SHOP DRAWINGS

- A. The Contractor shall submit the following for review:
  - 1. Shop drawings, together with complete erection drawings, indicating all fasteners and weld types, sizes and locations.
  - 2. Calculations sealed by a Structural Engineer registered in the state of the project for building components and connections required by the contract drawings and for all connections of the cold formed metal framing components to each other and to the building frame.
- B. Only shop drawings bearing the stamp of review of the Structural Engineers and Architects shall be used by the contractor for fabrication and erection.
- C. Shop and Erection Drawings shall not be reprints of the Contract Drawings. They shall, in the opinion of the Architect, be complete in all details and they shall locate, size, and mark all members. Details shall clearly indicate a manner of making all typical and special connections, amount of bearing, and shall accurately indicated the member's location relative to walls, spandrel sections, openings or other construction features. Erection drawings shall include a Field Weld Schedule, and sections and details covering all field welds required for the finished structure.
- D. Figured and field dimensions only shall be used; scaling drawings not permitted. The Contractor shall verify all dimensions and be responsible for coordinating same. Any conflict shall be referred to the Architect for decision prior to proceeding with fabrication of the work affected.
- E. The review of the Shop drawings is limited to design intent only. No responsibility for a detailed check of information is assumed by the Architect by virtue of such approval.

#### 1.11 INSPECTION AND QUALITY CONTROL

- A. All inspections and tests shall meet the requirements of IBC 2012, Chapter 17, Sections 1701 thru 1706.
- B. Contractor shall provide effective full time quality control over all fabrication and erection activities.
- C. As directed by Architect, owner's testing agency may inspect the maintenance of a quality control program including spot checking weldments and welding procedures in accordance with A.W.S. standards.
- D. Inspection by owner's testing agency is not intended to be comprehensive or complete. Full responsibility for quality control shall remain with the Contractor.

- E. The owner shall employ an inspection agency approved by the engineer to inspect and test the shop and field welding and screw connections of the lightgauge system components to themselves and to the metal supporting structure. See paragraph 3.7.

#### 1.12 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to applicable provisions of the Building Code listed in section 01 4100.

#### 1.13 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Protect metal framing units from rusting and damage.
- B. Deliver in manufacturer's unopened containers or bundles, color identified with metal thickness and grade of steel.
- C. Store off ground in a dry ventilated space or protect with suitable waterproof coverings.
- D. Handle and lift components and prefabricated panels in a manner to prevent, damage, distortion, and undue stress.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Lightgauge metal framing
  - 1. Marino\Ware
  - 2. ClarkeDietrich Building Systems
  - 3. Or approved equal
- B. Unistrut framing
  - 1. Unistrut
  - 2. Kindorf
  - 3. B-Line

#### 2.2 COLD-FORMED STEEL STUDS, FLOOR AND CEILING RUNNERS, JOISTS, LINTEL ASSEMBLIES, RAFTERS AND TRUSSES

- A. Product Standard: ASTM C 955; "C" shaped load bearing framing members.
- B. All galvanized studs 12, 14, and 16 gauge and all joists shall be formed from steel that corresponds to the minimum requirements of ASTM A653, SQ, Grade 50, Class 1 with a minimum yield of 50,000 psi.
- C. All galvanized studs less than or equal to 18 gauge; all galvanized track, bridging, end closures and accessories shall be formed from steel that corresponds to the requirements of ASTM A653, CQ, Grade 33, with a minimum yield of 33,000 psi.
- D. All galvanized studs, joists, track, bridging and accessories shall be formed from steel having a G-60 galvanized coating meeting the requirements of ASTM A653.

- E. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High zinc-dust content paint for repair of damaged galvanized surfaces complying with ASTM A780-80.
- F. All unistrut framing shall be formed from galvanized steel conforming to ASTM A653, grade 33, G90.

## 2.3 PROPERTIES

- A. The physical and structural properties listed by MARINO /WARE shall be considered the minimum permitted for all lightgauge metal framing members. Specifically, the following minimum properties, calculated in accordance with the latest A.I.S.I. Specification shall be provided: Ix(in.4), Area (in.2), rx(in.), Fy(KSI), Resisting Moment (in.-lb). Follow ASTM A446-72, latest edition.
- B. All structural studs shall be configured such that the maximum web punching shall be one (1) inch diameter holes at 30 inches on center. All structural joists, lintel assemblies, rafters and trusses shall have no pre-punched holes.
- C. The physical and structural properties listed by Unistrut shall be considered the minimum permitted for all Unistrut framing members. Specifically, the following minimum properties, calculated in accordance with the latest A.I.S.I. Specification shall be provided: Ix(in.4), Area (in.2), rx(in.), Fy(KSI), Resisting Moment (in.-lb).

## 2.4 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. The Architect must approve any substitutions in writing ten (10) days prior to bid date.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Provide standard steel runners (tracks), slip tracks, slide blocks, blocking, lintels, clip angles, shoes, reinforcements, and accessories.
- B. Accessories shall be as recommended by framing manufacturer for applications indicated and as required to provide complete and substantial framing system.
- C. Unistrut fittings shall be punch press made from hot rolled, pickled and oiled steel plates, strip or coil conforming to ASTM A36, A575, A576, or A635.
- D. Acoustical Wall Isolation Clips: Manufacturer's acoustical clips, capable of isolating acoustical vibrations displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.; UniBrace-L and PSDB-S-75/125.
    - b. PAC International; RSIC-DC04 series.
  - 2. Acoustical wall isolation clip models shall be as required by wall details and framing offsets.

## 2.6 FASTENERS

- A. Fasteners shall be of sufficient size to ensure strength of connection. Minimum edge distance shall be 1/2" for all screws and pins and 1" for all bolts.
- B. Steel Drill Screws: Screws shall have rust inhibitive coating (cadmium or zinc plating, ASTM B 766) suitable for the installation in which they are being used.
- C. Power Actuated Drive Pins: In accordance with FF-P-395.
- D. Expansion Bolts: In accordance with FF-S-325, except lead, fiber, and plastic shields are not permitted.
- E. Unistrut nuts shall be of rectangular case hardened steel manufactured with toothed grooves to prevent any movement of the bolt and nut within the framing member.
- F. Unistrut bolts and screws shall meet or exceed the requirements of ASTM A307.

## 2.7 FINISH TOUCH-UP

- A. Zinc Rich Paint: In accordance with ASTM A 780.
- B. Prime Paint: Similar to that used by framing manufacturer.

## 2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Framing components may be prefabricated into panels for erection. Fabricate panels plumb, square, true to line and braced against racking.
- B. With each type of metal framing required, provide standard steel runners (tracks), blocking, lintels, clip angles, shoes, reinforcements, fasteners, and accessories recommended by the manufacturer and as shown on drawings for applications indicated and required to provide a complete and substantial metal framing system.
- C. Cut all framing components squarely or at an angle to fit squarely against abutting members. Hold members firmly in position until properly fastened. Wire tying of framing components in structural applications is not permitted. Torch cutting of load bearing studs is not permitted. Slicing of load bearing members is not permitted.
- D. Perform shop and field welding in accordance with AWS D1.1, AWS D1.3, and AISI Manual Section 4.2.
- E. Provide insulation equal to that specified elsewhere in all double jamb studs and double header members which will not be accessible to the insulation contractor. After fabrication and installation.

## 2.9 GYPSUM SHEATHING

- A. Gypsum Sheathing Board with Water-Resistant Core: Gypsum board designed as an exterior substrate for a weather barrier, consisting of noncombustible water-resistant core (essentially gypsum) surfaced with glass mats on face and back, partially or completely embedded in core,

and with unsurfaced and square and vee edges. Comply with ASTM C1177, and requirements indicated below:

1. Type: Regular or Dens Glass Gold by Georgia Pacific or approved equal.
2. Edge and End Configuration: Square on vertical face/angle on horizontal face.
3. Thickness: 1/2 inch
4. Size: 4 feet by 8 feet.

B. Air infiltration barrier

1. Tyveck™ house wrap.
2. Asphalt saturated organic felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type 1 (No. 15 asphalt felt) unperforated.

C. Glass-Fiber Sheathing Tape for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: Self-adhering glass-fiber tape, minimum 2 inches wide, 10 by 10 or 10 by 20 threads per inch, for use with silicone emulsion sealant to seal joints in glass-mat gypsum sheathing board. Sheathing Tape shall be the type recommended by sheathing and tape manufacturers, with a history of successful in-service use.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
  - a. Perma-Tite Tape--PGM 207A; PermaGlas-Mesh, Inc.
  - b. Quik-Tape; Quik-Tape, Inc.

D. Silicone Emulsion Sealant for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: Product complying with ASTM C 834, compatible with sheathing tape and gypsum sheathing, recommended by sheathing and tape manufacturers for use with glass-fiber sheathing tape and for covering exposed fasteners.

1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Elmer's Siliconized Acrylic"

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 VERIFICATION OF CONDITIONS

- A. Inspection: Prior to installation, inspect work of all other trades. Verify that all such work is complete and accurate to the point where this installation may properly commence in strict accordance with the contract documents and approved framing shop drawings.

#### 3.2 DISCREPANCIES

- A. Immediately notify Architect of all discrepancies.
- B. Do not proceed with installation in areas of discrepancies until such discrepancy has been fully resolved.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION - STUD SYSTEM

A. General:

1. Erect framing and panels plumb, level and square in strict accordance with the approved shop drawings and ASTM C 1007.
2. Temporary bracing shall be provided until erection is completed.

- B. Runner Tracks: Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately to layout at base and tops of studs. Securely anchor abutting pieces of track to a common structural element of butt-welded or spliced together. Secure tracks to supporting structure as recommended by stud manufacturer for type of construction involved, except do not exceed 16" on center spacing for nail or power-driven fasteners, nor 12" on center for other types of attachment. Provide fasteners at corners and ends of tracks.
1. Maximum penetration into the concrete structure shall be 3/4", or structure shall be x-rayed in order to avoid hitting any post-tensioning tendons.
- C. Stud Placement: Secure Placement: Secure studs to top and bottom runner tracks by fastening at both inside and outside flanges by welding.
1. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for non-plumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements. Where stud system is attached to the building frame, shim between frame and stud as required.
  2. Where stud system abuts structural columns or walls, including masonry walls, anchor ends of stiffeners to supporting structure.
  3. Provide double studs at panel intersections, corner, doors, windows, control joints, etc.
- D. Reinforced Framing:
1. Install supplementary framing, blocking and bracing in metal framing system wherever walls or partitions are indicated to support fixtures, equipment, services, casework, heavy trim, and furnishings, and similar work requiring attachment to the wall or partition. Where type of supplementary support is not otherwise indicated, comply with stud manufacturer's recommendation and industry standards in each case, considering weight or loading resulting from item supported.
  2. Frame wall openings larger than 2'-0" square with double stud at each jamb of frame except where more than 2 are either shown on the contract drawings or indicated in manufacturer's instructions. Install runner tracks and jack studs above and below wall openings. Anchor tracks to jamb studs with stud shoe or by welding; space jack studs same as full-height studs of wall. Connect jamb studs together by straps or welds not more than 4'-0" o.c. vertically on both faces of studs.
  3. Frame both sides of expansion and control joints with separate studs; do not bridge the joint with components of stud system.
  4. Install horizontal stiffeners in stud system, space at not more than 4'-0" o.c. vertically. Horizontal bracing shall consist of 1-1/2" wide by 16 gauge galvanized u-bracing attached to studs with 1" x 1" x 16 gauge clip angle and (4) - 10 gage Tek Screws.
  5. Solid bridging is to be placed at each end of wall, adjacent to wall openings, and at other locations in the stud system as required by the contract documents. Solid bridging shall consist of full depth. 16 gauge galvanized track attached to studs with 1" x 1" x 16 gauge clip angles and (4) - 10 gage Tek Screws.
- E. Holes that are field cut into steel framing members shall be within the limitations of the product and its design. Provide reinforcement where holes are cut through load bearing members in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for the product.
- F. Align axially loaded members vertically to allow for full transfer of loads. Vertical alignment shall be maintained at floor / wall intersections unless alternate provisions for transfer are made.

- G. Install acoustical wall isolation clips plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened. Clips and studs shall not be acoustically short circuited by fasteners, framing, accessories, or other work.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION - JOISTS, LINTEL ASSEMBLIES, RAFTERS AND TRUSSES

- A. Install level and plumb, complete with bracing and reinforcing as indicated on drawings. Provide not less than 1-1/2" end bearing and 3-1/2" bearing at intermediate supports. Provide full bearing surface shims as required for leveling.
- B. Reinforce ends with end clip, steel hangers, steel angle clips, steel stud section, or as otherwise recommended by joist manufacturer.
- C. Where required, reinforce joists at interior supports with single short length of joist section located directly over interior support, snap on shoe, 30% side piece lapped reinforcement, or other method recommended by joist manufacturer.
- D. Secure joists to interior support systems to prevent lateral movement of bottom flange.
- E. Locate joists directly over bearing studs or provide a load distribution member to transfer loads.
- F. Provide web stiffeners at reaction points, and at points concentrated loads.
- G. Install joists with web area perpendicular to bearing surface.
- H. Provide bridging, either steel strap or solid, as shown on the Design calculations.
- I. Provide additional joists under parallel partitions where partition length exceeds 1/2 of joist span.
- J. Provide additional framing around floor/roof openings which are larger than joist spacing.
- K. Provide end blocking at all bearing walls where joists ends are not otherwise restrained from rotation.
- L. Build joist ends solidly into masonry construction prior to placing load on joist.
- M. Install bridging and reinforcement similar to stud installation.
- N. Limitations for field cut holes shall be per paragraph 2.3.B above.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION - UNISTRUT

- A. Installation shall be accomplished by a fully trained manufacturer authorized installer.
- B. Set Strut System components into final position true to lines, level and plumb, in accordance with approved shop drawings.
- C. Anchor material firmly in place. Tighten all connections to their recommended torques.

### 3.6 TOLERANCES

- A. Vertical alignment (plumbness) of studs shall be within 1/960 (1/8 inch in 10 ft.) of the span.
- B. Horizontal alignment (levelness) of walls shall be within 1/960 (1/8 inch in 10 ft.) of their respective lengths.
- C. Spacing of the studs shall be more than 1/8 inch from the designed spacing, provided that the cumulative error does not exceed the requirements of the finishing material.
- D. Squareness of the prefabricated panels shall be not more than 1/8 inch out of square within the length of that panel.

### 3.7 GYPSUM SHEATHING

- A. General: Install gypsum sheathing to comply with GA-253 and manufacturer's written instructions except as modified below.
- B. Cut boards at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of the work; fit tightly against abutting construction, except provide a 3/8-inch setback where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
- C. Coordinate sheathing installation with flashing and joint sealant installation so these materials are installed in the sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed exterior wall assembly.
- D. Apply fasteners so screw heads bear tightly against face of sheathing boards but do not cut into facing.
- E. Do not bridge building expansion joints with sheathing; cut and space edges to match spacing of structural support elements.
- F. Vertical Installation: Install 48-inch- wide gypsum sheathing boards vertically with vertical edges centered over flanges of steel studs. Abut ends and edges of each board with those of adjacent boards. Screw-attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each steel stud at approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of boards.
- G. Shear Walls:
  - 1. All exterior walls and some designated interior walls of this building are herein designated as shear walls.
  - 2. Gypsum sheathing on both faces of all shear walls shall be attached at all edges with 10 gage screws at 4" on center and at all interior studs with 10 gage screws at 8" on center.
  - 3. Provide blocking in all shear walls at unsupported edges of gypsum sheathing.
- H. All exterior walls shall have sheathing butt joints sealed with an approved urethane sealant.
- I. Air-Infiltration Barrier Application: Cover sheathing with air-infiltration barrier as follows:
  - 1. Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing board joints, and apply and trowel silicone emulsion sealant to embed sealant in entire face of tape. Apply sealant to exposed fasteners with a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.

2. Apply asphalt-saturated organic felt horizontally with 2-inch overlap and 6-inch end lap; fasten to sheathing with corrosion-resistant staples

### 3.8 INSPECTION

- A. Comply with inspection requirements of Section 01 4000, Quality Control Services.
- B. Inspect fabrication and installation for compliance with ASTM C 1007.
- C. Review Contractor's quality control program.
- D. Inspect shop and field welding of cold-formed metal framing components to each other and to structural metal framing, including compliance with AWS standards.
- E. These inspections shall include wall and truss plumbness, bridging & bracing, roof deck & drywall attachment, and other system components.

### 3.9 ADJUSTMENTS

- A. Finish Touch-Up: After installation, wire brush and clean scarred areas, welds, rust spots and other steel bared by fabrication and erection procedures.
- B. Touch-up surfaces using zinc rich paint on galvanized steel and paint equal to that used by the manufacturer on painted steel members.
- C. In areas where shop-painted surfaces are to be exposed, apply touch-up paint to blend into adjacent surfaces.

### 3.10 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED WORK

- A. Do not apply loads until bridging, bracing, strapping, and web reinforcement are securely in place.
- B. Do not overload the floor system during construction. Prevent concentrated floor or roof loads, such as stacking of heavy building materials, unless adequate additional means for carrying these loads are provided.
- C. If diaphragm rated components are used in lieu of bridging, then do not apply loading until their installation. If components on one side only, then the other flanges should be bridged with suitable bridging. Bridging may be removed or left in place when diaphragm rated components are installed.

### 3.11 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY

- A. Submit copies of all reports indicating conformance and exceptions to contract documents in a timely fashion to General Contractor for distribution to design consultants, owner, subcontractors and other interested parties.
- B. Final Report: The Inspection Agency shall prepare a written report that summarizes the work inspected during the course of the project, and certifies that the work meets the requirements of the contract documents, specifications, and all governing agencies.

END OF SECTION 05 4000

SECTION 055000 - METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel framing and supports for overhead doors and grilles.
2. Steel framing and supports for countertops.
3. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
4. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
5. Steel framing and supports (outriggers) for window-washing equipment including mounting brackets and anchorages.
6. Mounting brackets and anchorages for window-washing equipment.
7. Prefabricated building columns.
8. Shelf angles.
9. Metal ladders.
10. Ladder safety cages.
11. Alternating tread devices.
12. Metal ships' ladders and pipe crossovers.
13. Metal floor plate and supports.
14. Structural-steel door frames.
15. Miscellaneous steel trim including steel angle corner guards steel edgings and loading-dock edge angles.
16. Metal bollards.
17. Pipe Downspout guards.
18. Abrasive metal nosings treads and thresholds.
19. Cast-iron wheel guards.
20. Metal downspout boots.
21. Loose bearing and leveling plates for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.

B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section:

1. Loose steel lintels.
2. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
3. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.

C. Related Sections:

1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, wedge-type inserts, and other items cast into concrete.
2. Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for installing loose lintels, anchor bolts, and other items built into unit masonry.
3. Division 05 Section "Structural Steel Framing."
4. Division 05 Section "Pipe and Tube Railings."
5. Division 05 Section "Decorative Metal Railings."

6. Division 06 Sections for metal framing anchors and timber connectors.
7. Division 32 Section "Plants" for tree grates.

### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design ladders and alternating tread devices, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance of Alternating Tread Devices: Alternating tread devices shall withstand the effects of loads and stresses within limits and under conditions specified in ICC's International Building Code.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
  1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  1. Nonslip aggregates and nonslip-aggregate surface finishes.
  2. Prefabricated building columns.
  3. Metal nosings and treads.
  4. Paint products.
  5. Grout.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for metal fabrications.
  1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type and finish of extruded nosing and tread.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
- B. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
  - 3. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages and steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

2.2 FERROUS METALS

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, and Plate: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- C. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304.
- D. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or D.
- E. Rolled-Stainless-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 793.
- F. Abrasive-Surface Floor Plate: Steel plate with abrasive granules rolled into surface or with abrasive material metallurgically bonded to steel.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. IKG Industries, a division of Harsco Corporation; Mebac.
  - b. SlipNOT Metal Safety Flooring, a W. S. Molnar company; SlipNOT.
- G. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500, cold-formed steel tubing.
- H. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Slotted Channel Framing: Cold-formed metal box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4.
- 1. Size of Channels: As indicated.
  - 2. Material: Galvanized steel, ASTM A 653/A 653M, commercial steel, Type B structural steel, Grade 33 (Grade 230), with G90 (Z275) coating; nominal thickness.
  - 3. Material: Cold-rolled steel, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, commercial steel, Type B structural steel, Grade 33 (Grade 230); hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- J. Cast Iron: Either gray iron, ASTM A 48/A 48M, or malleable iron, ASTM A 47/A 47M, unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.3 NONFERROUS METALS

- A. Aluminum Plate and Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 6061-T6.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T6.
- C. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, Alloy 6061-T6.
- D. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 443.0-F.
- E. Bronze Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Bars: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C28000 (muntz metal, 60 percent copper).
- F. Bronze Extrusions: ASTM B 455, Alloy UNS No. C38500 (extruded architectural bronze).
- G. Bronze Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C83600 (leaded red brass) or No. C84400 (leaded semired brass).
- H. Nickel Silver Extrusions: ASTM B 151/B 151M, Alloy UNS No. C74500.
- I. Nickel Silver Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C97600 (20 percent leaded nickel bronze).

### 2.4 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
- 1. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum.
  - 2. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening stainless steel.
  - 3. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening nickel silver.
  - 4. Provide bronze fasteners for fastening bronze.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 325, Type 3 (ASTM A 325M, Type 3); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563, Grade C3 (ASTM A 563M, Class 8S3); and, where indicated, flat washers.

- D. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M); with hex nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M); and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy Group 1 (A1).
  - E. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
    - 1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
  - F. Eyebolts: ASTM A 489.
  - G. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.3 (ASME B18.6.7M).
  - H. Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.1 (ASME B18.2.3.8M).
  - I. Wood Screws: Flat head, ASME B18.6.1.
  - J. Plain Washers: Round, ASME B18.22.1 (ASME B18.22M).
  - K. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, ASME B18.21.1 (ASME B18.21.2M).
  - L. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
  - M. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded type or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F 2329.
  - N. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.
    - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
    - 2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).
  - O. Slotted-Channel Inserts: Cold-formed, hot-dip galvanized-steel box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4, 1-5/8 by 7/8 inches (41 by 22 mm) by length indicated with anchor straps or studs not less than 3 inches (75 mm) long at not more than 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. Provide with temporary filler and tee-head bolts, complete with washers and nuts, all zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5, as needed for fastening to inserts.
- 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
  - B. Low-Emitting Materials: Paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
  - C. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 09 painting Sections and Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings."

- D. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
  - 1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
- E. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements.
- F. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- G. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- H. Nonshrink, Metallic Grout: Factory-packaged, ferrous-aggregate grout complying with ASTM C 1107, specifically recommended by manufacturer for heavy-duty loading applications.
- I. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- J. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa).

## 2.6 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.

- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
  - 1. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches (3.2 by 38 mm), with a minimum 6-inch (150-mm) embedment and 2-inch (50-mm) hook, not less than 8 inches (200 mm) from ends and corners of units and 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
  - 1. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.
  - 2. Furnish inserts for units installed after concrete is placed.
- C. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.
- D. Prime miscellaneous framing and supports with primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings" where indicated.

## 2.8 SHELF ANGLES

- A. Fabricate shelf angles from steel angles of sizes indicated and for attachment to concrete framing. Provide horizontally slotted holes to receive 3/4-inch (19-mm) bolts, spaced not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from ends and 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide mitered and welded units at corners.
  - 2. Provide open joints in shelf angles at expansion and control joints. Make open joint approximately 2 inches (50 mm) larger than expansion or control joint.
- B. For cavity walls, provide vertical channel brackets to support angles from backup masonry and concrete.
- C. Galvanize shelf angles located in exterior walls.
- D. Prime shelf angles located in exterior walls with primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings."
- E. Furnish wedge-type concrete inserts, complete with fasteners, to attach shelf angles to cast-in-place concrete.

## 2.9 METAL LADDERS

- A. General:
  - 1. Comply with ANSI A14.3 unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. For elevator pit ladders, comply with ASME A17.1.

B. Steel Ladders:

1. Space siderails 18 inches (457 mm) apart unless otherwise indicated.
2. Space siderails of elevator pit ladders 12 inches (300 mm) apart.
3. Siderails: Continuous, 1/2-by-2-1/2-inch (12.7-by-64-mm) steel flat bars, with eased edges.
4. Rungs: 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) diameter or 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) square steel bars.
5. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.
6. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung, either by coating rung with aluminum-oxide granules set in epoxy-resin adhesive or by using a type of manufactured rung filled with aluminum-oxide grout.
7. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung by coating with abrasive material metallically bonded to rung.
  - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) IKG Industries, a division of Harsco Corporation; Mebac.
    - 2) SlipNOT Metal Safety Flooring, a W. S. Molnar company; SlipNOT.
8. Provide platforms as indicated fabricated from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating, supported by steel angles. Limit openings in gratings to no more than 3/4 inch (19 mm) in least dimension.
9. Support each ladder at top and bottom and not more than 60 inches (1500 mm) o.c. with welded or bolted steel brackets.
10. Galvanize exterior ladders, including brackets and fasteners.

2.10 LADDER SAFETY CAGES

A. General:

1. Fabricate ladder safety cages to comply with ANSI A14.3. Assemble by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners.
2. Provide primary hoops at tops and bottoms of cages and spaced not more than 20 feet (6 m) o.c. Provide secondary intermediate hoops spaced not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. between primary hoops.
3. Fasten assembled safety cage to ladder rails and adjacent construction by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

B. Steel Ladder Safety Cages:

1. Primary Hoops: 1/4-by-4-inch (6.4-by-100-mm) flat bar hoops.
2. Secondary Intermediate Hoops: 1/4-by-2-inch (6.4-by-50-mm) flat bar hoops.
3. Vertical Bars: 3/16-by-1-1/2-inch (4.8-by-38-mm) flat bars secured to each hoop.
4. Galvanize ladder safety cages, including brackets and fasteners.

2.11 ALTERNATING TREAD DEVICES

A. Alternating Tread Devices: Fabricate alternating tread devices to comply with ICC's International Building Code. Fabricate of open-type construction with channel or plate stringers and pipe and tube railings unless otherwise indicated. Provide brackets and fittings for installation.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Lapeyre Stair Inc.
    - b. Schmidt Structural Products; a subsidiary of Penco Products, Inc.
  3. Fabricate from galvanized steel or stainless steel and assemble by welding or with stainless-steel fasteners.
  4. Comply with applicable railing requirements in Division 05 Section "Pipe and Tube Railings."
- B. Galvanize exterior steel alternating tread devices, including treads, railings, brackets, and fasteners.

#### 2.12 METAL SHIPS' LADDERS AND PIPE CROSSOVERS

- A. Provide metal ships' ladders and pipe crossovers where indicated. Fabricate of open-type construction with channel or plate stringers and pipe and tube railings unless otherwise indicated. Provide brackets and fittings for installation.
1. Fabricate ships' ladders and pipe crossovers, including railings from steel or stainless steel.
  2. Fabricate treads and platforms from welded or pressure-locked steel bar grating or pressure-locked stainless-steel bar grating. Limit openings in gratings to no more than 3/4 inch (19 mm) in least dimension.
  3. Fabricate treads and platforms from rolled-steel floor plate, rolled-stainless-steel floor plate or abrasive-surface floor plate.
  4. Comply with applicable railing requirements in Division 05 Section "Pipe and Tube Railings."
- B. Galvanize exterior steel ships' ladders and pipe crossovers, including treads, railings, brackets, and fasteners.

#### 2.13 METAL FLOOR PLATE

- A. Fabricate from rolled-stainless-steel floor plate of thickness indicated below:
1. Thickness: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) As indicated.
- B. Provide grating sections where indicated fabricated from pressure-locked stainless steel bar grating.
- C. Provide stainless-steel angle supports as indicated.
- D. Include stainless-steel angle stiffeners, and fixed and removable sections as indicated.
- E. Provide flush stainless-steel bar drop handles for lifting removable sections, one at each end of each section.

#### 2.14 STRUCTURAL-STEEL DOOR FRAMES

- A. Fabricate structural-steel door frames from steel shapes, plates, and bars of size and to dimensions indicated, fully welded together, with 5/8-by-1-1/2-inch (16-by-38-mm) steel channel stops, unless otherwise indicated. Plug-weld built-up members and continuously weld exposed joints. Secure removable stops to frame with countersunk machine screws, uniformly spaced at not more than 10 inches (250 mm) o.c. Reinforce frames and drill and tap as necessary to accept finish hardware.
1. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for securing door frames into adjoining concrete or masonry.

- B. Extend bottom of frames to floor elevation indicated with steel angle clips welded to frames for anchoring frame to floor with expansion shields and bolts.
- C. Galvanize exterior steel frames.
- D. Prime exterior steel frames with primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings."

#### 2.15 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.
- B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
  - 1. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction.
- C. Galvanize exterior miscellaneous steel trim.
- D. Prime exterior miscellaneous steel trim with primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings."

#### 2.16 METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fabricate metal bollards from steel shapes, as indicated.
  - 1. Cap bollards with 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-) thick steel plate.
  - 2. Where bollards are indicated to receive controls for door operators, provide necessary cutouts for controls and holes for wire.
  - 3. Where bollards are indicated to receive light fixtures, provide necessary cutouts for fixtures and holes for wire.
- B. Fabricate bollards with 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) thick steel baseplates for bolting to concrete slab. Drill baseplates at all four corners for 3/4-inch (19-mm) anchor bolts.
  - 1. Where bollards are to be anchored to sloping concrete slabs, angle baseplates for plumb alignment of bollards.
- C. Fabricate sleeves for bollard anchorage from steel pipe or tubing with 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-) thick steel plate welded to bottom of sleeve. Make sleeves not less than 8 inches (200 mm) deep and 3/4 inch (19 mm) larger than OD of bollard.
- D. Fabricate internal sleeves for removable bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe or 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) wall-thickness steel tubing with an OD approximately 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) less than ID of bollards. Match drill sleeve and bollard for 3/4 inch (19 mm) steel machine bolt.
- E. Prime bollards with primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings."

#### 2.17 PIPE DOWNSPOUT GUARDS

- A. Fabricate pipe downspout guards from 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) thick by 12-inch- (300-mm-) wide steel plate, bent to fit flat against the wall or column at both ends and to fit around pipe with 2-inch (50-mm) clearance between pipe and pipe guard. Drill each end for two 3/4-inch (19-mm) anchor bolts.

- B. Galvanize pipe downspout guards.
- C. Prime pipe downspout guards with primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings."

#### 2.18 ABRASIVE METAL NOSINGS TREADS AND THRESHOLDS

- A. Extruded Units: Aluminum, with abrasive filler consisting of aluminum oxide, silicon carbide, or a combination of both, in an epoxy-resin binder. Fabricate units in lengths necessary to accurately fit openings or conditions.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. ACL Industries, Inc.
    - b. American Safety Tread Co., Inc.
    - c. Amstep Products.
    - d. Armstrong Products, Inc.
    - e. Balco Inc.
    - f. Granite State Casting Co.
    - g. Wooster Products Inc.
  - 2. Provide ribbed units, with abrasive filler strips projecting 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) above aluminum extrusion.
  - 3. Provide solid-abrasive-type units without ribs.
  - 4. Nosings: Square-back units, 3 inches (75 mm) wide, for casting into concrete steps.
  - 5. Nosings: Beveled-back units, 3 inches (75 mm) wide with 1-3/8-inch (35-mm) lip, for surface mounting on existing stairs.
  - 6. Nosings: Two-piece units, 3 inches (75 mm) wide, with subchannel for casting into concrete steps.
  - 7. Treads: Beveled-back units, full depth of tread with 1-3/8-inch (35-mm) lip, for application over existing stairs.
- B. Provide anchors for embedding units in concrete, either integral or applied to units, as standard with manufacturer.
- C. Drill for mechanical anchors and countersink. Locate holes not more than 4 inches (100 mm) from ends and not more than 12 inches (300 mm) o.c., evenly spaced between ends, unless otherwise indicated. Provide closer spacing if recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Provide two rows of holes for units more than 5 inches (125 mm) wide, with two holes aligned at ends and intermediate holes staggered.
- D. Apply bituminous paint to concealed surfaces of cast-metal units.
- E. Apply clear lacquer to concealed surfaces of extruded units.

#### 2.19 CAST-IRON WHEEL GUARDS

- A. Provide wheel guards made from cast iron, 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick, hollow-core construction, of size and shape indicated. Provide holes for countersunk anchor bolts and grouting.
- B. Prime cast iron wheel guards with primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings."

2.20 METAL DOWNSPOUT BOOTS

- A. Provide downspout boots made from cast aluminum in heights indicated with inlets of size and shape to suit downspouts. Provide units with flanges and holes for countersunk anchor bolts.
- B. Prime cast iron downspout boots with primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings."

2.21 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.
- B. Galvanize plates.
- C. Prime plates with primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings."

2.22 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

- A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
- B. Size loose lintels to provide bearing length at each side of openings equal to 1/12 of clear span but not less than 8 inches (200 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Galvanize loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.
- D. Prime loose steel lintels located in exterior walls with primer specified in Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings."

2.23 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES

- A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

2.24 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
- C. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

2.25 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.
  - 1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.

- B. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Shop prime with primers specified in Division 09 painting Sections unless primers specified in Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings" are indicated.
- C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with requirements indicated below:
  - 1. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - 2. Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - 3. Items Indicated to Receive Primers Specified in Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - 4. Other Items: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- D. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
  - 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- F. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with the following:
  - 1. Cast Aluminum: Heavy coat of bituminous paint.
  - 2. Extruded Aluminum: Two coats of clear lacquer.

### 3.2 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.
- B. Anchor supports for operable partitions securely to and rigidly brace from building structure.
- C. Support steel girders on solid grouted masonry, concrete, or steel pipe columns. Secure girders with anchor bolts embedded in grouted masonry or concrete or with bolts through top plates of pipe columns.
  - 1. Where grout space under bearing plates is indicated for girders supported on concrete or masonry, install as specified in "Installing Bearing and Leveling Plates" Article.
- D. Install pipe columns on concrete footings with grouted baseplates. Position and grout column baseplates as specified in "Installing Bearing and Leveling Plates" Article.
  - 1. Grout baseplates of columns supporting steel girders after girders are installed and leveled.

### 3.3 INSTALLING PREFABRICATED BUILDING COLUMNS

- A. Install prefabricated building columns to comply with AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings" and with requirements applicable to listing and labeling for fire-resistance rating indicated.

### 3.4 INSTALLING METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fill metal-capped bollards solidly with concrete and allow concrete to cure seven days before installing.
  - 1. Do not fill removable bollards with concrete.
- B. Anchor bollards to existing construction with expansion anchors, anchor bolts or through bolts. Provide four 3/4-inch (19-mm) bolts at each bollard unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Embed anchor bolts at least 4 inches (100 mm) in concrete.
- C. Anchor bollards in concrete with pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete. Fill annular space around bollard solidly with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout; mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions. Slope grout up approximately 1/8 inch (3 mm) toward bollard.
- D. Anchor bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align bollards in holes 3 inches (75 mm) above bottom of excavation. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace bollards in position until concrete has cured.
- E. Anchor internal sleeves for removable bollards in concrete by inserting into pipe sleeves preset into concrete. Fill annular space around internal sleeves solidly with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout; mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions. Slope grout up approximately 1/8 inch (3 mm) toward internal sleeve.
- F. Anchor internal sleeves for removable bollards in place with concrete footings. Center and align sleeves in holes 3 inches (75 mm) above bottom of excavation. Place concrete and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Support and brace sleeves in position until concrete has cured.
- G. Place removable bollards over internal sleeves and secure with 3/4-inch (19-mm) machine bolts and nuts. After tightening nuts, drill holes in bolts for inserting padlocks. Owner will furnish padlocks.
- H. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface to shed water.

1. Do not fill removable bollards with concrete.

### 3.5 INSTALLING PIPE GUARDS

- A. Provide pipe guards at exposed vertical pipes in parking garage where not protected by curbs or other barriers. Install by bolting to wall or column with expansion anchors. Provide four 3/4-inch (19-mm) bolts at each pipe guard. Mount pipe guards with top edge 26 inches (660 mm) above driving surface.

### 3.6 INSTALLING NOSINGS, TREADS, AND THRESHOLDS

- A. Center nosings on tread widths unless otherwise indicated.
- B. For nosings embedded in concrete steps or curbs, align nosings flush with riser faces and level with tread surfaces.
- C. Seal thresholds exposed to exterior with elastomeric sealant complying with Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" to provide a watertight installation.

### 3.7 INSTALLING CAST-IRON WHEEL GUARDS

- A. Anchor wheel guards to concrete or masonry construction to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Fill cores solidly with concrete.

### 3.8 INSTALLING BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.
- B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with grout.
  1. Use nonshrink grout, either metallic or nonmetallic, in concealed locations where not exposed to moisture; use nonshrink, nonmetallic grout in exposed locations unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

### 3.9 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.
- B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 055000

SECTION 055213 - PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel pipe and tube railings (interior – non-public spaces).
2. Aluminum pipe and tube railings (exterior).
3. Stainless-steel pipe and tube railings (interior – public spaces or exterior – to match existing).

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 06 Section "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking for anchoring railings.
2. Division 09 Section "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for metal backing for anchoring railings.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design railings, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

- B. General: In engineering railings to withstand structural loads indicated, determine allowable design working stresses of railing materials based on the following:

1. Steel: 72 percent of minimum yield strength.
2. Aluminum: The lesser of minimum yield strength divided by 1.65 or minimum ultimate tensile strength divided by 1.95.
3. Stainless Steel: 60 percent of minimum yield strength.

- C. Structural Performance: Railings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:

1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:

- a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. (0.73 kN/m) applied in any direction.
- b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf (0.89 kN) applied in any direction.
- c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

2. Infill of Guards:

- a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf (0.22 kN) applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft. (0.093 sq. m).
- b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

- E. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Manufacturer's product lines of mechanically connected railings.
  - 2. Railing brackets.
  - 3. Grout, anchoring cement, and paint products.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For products involving selection of color, texture, or design, including mechanical finishes on stainless steel.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required.
  - 1. Sections of each distinctly different linear railing member, including handrails, top rails, posts, and balusters.
  - 2. Fittings and brackets.
  - 3. Assembled Sample of railing system, made from full-size components, including top rail, post, handrail, and infill. Sample need not be full height.
    - a. Show method of finishing or connecting members at intersections.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For installed products indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer testing agency.
- B. Mill Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of stainless-steel products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.
- E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, according to ASTM E 894 and ASTM E 935.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
3. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

#### 1.8 COORDINATION AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- C. Schedule installation so wall attachments are made only to completed walls. Do not support railings temporarily by any means that do not satisfy structural performance requirements.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Steel Pipe and Tube Railings:
    - a. Pisor Industries, Inc.
    - b. Wagner, R & B, Inc.; a division of the Wagner Companies.
  2. Aluminum Pipe and Tube Railings:
    - a. ATR Technologies, Inc.
    - b. Blum, Julius & Co., Inc.
    - c. Braun, J. G., Company; a division of the Wagner Companies.
    - d. CraneVeyor Corp.
    - e. Hollaender Manufacturing Company.
    - f. Kee Industrial Products, Inc.
    - g. Moultrie Manufacturing Company.
    - h. Pisor Industries, Inc.
    - i. Sterling Dula Architectural Products, Inc.; Div. of Kane Manufacturing.
    - j. Superior Aluminum Products, Inc.
    - k. Thompson Fabricating, LLC.
    - l. Tri Tech, Inc.
    - m. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
    - n. Tuttle Railing Systems; Div. of Tuttle Aluminum & Bronze, Inc.
    - o. Wagner, R & B, Inc.; a division of the Wagner Companies.
  3. Stainless-Steel Pipe and Tube Railings:
    - a. Blum, Julius & Co., Inc.

- b. Paragon Aquatics; Division of Pentair, Inc.
- c. Pisor Industries, Inc.
- d. Stainless Fabricators, Inc.
- e. Sterling Dula Architectural Products, Inc.; Div. of Kane Manufacturing.
- f. Tri Tech, Inc.
- g. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
- h. Tuttle Railing Systems; Div. of Tuttle Aluminum & Bronze, Inc.
- i. Wagner, R & B, Inc.; a division of the Wagner Companies.

## 2.2 METALS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.
- B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.3 STEEL

- A. Tubing: ASTM A 500 (cold formed) or ASTM A 513.
- B. Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.
  - 1. Provide galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.
- C. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

## 2.4 ALUMINUM

- A. Aluminum, General: Provide alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with not less than the strength and durability properties of alloy and temper designated below for each aluminum form required.
- B. Extruded Bars and Tubing: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5/T52.
- C. Extruded Structural Pipe and Round Tubing: ASTM B 429/B 429M, Alloy 6063-T6.
  - 1. Provide Standard Weight (Schedule 40) pipe, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Drawn Seamless Tubing: ASTM B 210 (ASTM B 210M), Alloy 6063-T832.
- E. Plate and Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 6061-T6.
- F. Die and Hand Forgings: ASTM B 247 (ASTM B 247M), Alloy 6061-T6.
- G. Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy A356.0-T6.

## 2.5 STAINLESS STEEL

- A. Tubing:
  - 1. Interior: ASTM A 554, Grade MT 304
  - 2. Exterior: ASTM A 554, Grade MT 316L.

B. Pipe:

1. Interior: ASTM A 312/A 312M, Grade TP 304
2. Exterior: ASTM A 312/A 312M, Grade TP 316L.

C. Castings:

1. Interior: ASTM A 743/A 743M, Grade CF 8 or CF 8M
2. Exterior: ASTM A 743, Grade CF 20.

D. Plate and Sheet:

1. Interior: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304
2. Exterior: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A 666, Type 316L.

2.6 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide the following:

1. Ungalvanized-Steel Railings: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5 for zinc coating.
2. Hot-Dip Galvanized Railings: Type 304 stainless-steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel fasteners complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329 for zinc coating.
3. Aluminum Railings: Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners.
4. Stainless-Steel Railings: Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners.

B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads.

C. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:

1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless exposed fasteners are unavoidable or are the standard fastening method for railings indicated.
3. Provide tamper-resistant flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

D. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.

1. For aluminum and stainless-steel railings, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be welded and as required for color match, strength, and compatibility in fabricated items.
- B. Low-Emitting Materials: Paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.
- D. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- E. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 09 painting Sections and Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings."
- F. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
  1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
- G. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.
- H. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel Division 09 painting Sections and Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings."
- I. Intermediate Coats and Topcoats: Provide products that comply with Division 09 painting Sections and Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings."
- J. Epoxy Intermediate Coat: Complying with MPI #77 and compatible with primer and topcoat.
- K. Polyurethane Topcoat: Complying with MPI #72 and compatible with undercoat.
- L. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- M. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- N. Anchoring Cement: Factory-packaged, nonshrink, nonstaining, hydraulic-controlled expansion cement formulation for mixing with water at Project site to create pourable anchoring, patching, and grouting compound.
  1. Water-Resistant Product: At exterior locations and where indicated provide formulation that is resistant to erosion from water exposure without needing protection by a sealer or waterproof coating and that is recommended by manufacturer for exterior use.

## 2.8 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.
- B. Assemble railings in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.

- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- E. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- G. Connections: Fabricate railings with either welded or nonwelded connections unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
- I. Welded Connections for Aluminum Pipe: Fabricate railings to interconnect members with concealed internal welds that eliminate surface grinding, using manufacturer's standard system of sleeve and socket fittings.
- J. Nonwelded Connections: Connect members with concealed mechanical fasteners and fittings. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, rigid, hairline joints.
  - 1. Fabricate splice joints for field connection using an epoxy structural adhesive if this is manufacturer's standard splicing method.
- K. Form changes in direction as follows:
  - 1. As detailed.
- L. Bend members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required; maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
- M. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
- N. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch (6 mm) or less.
- O. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers, or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.

- P. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.
- Q. For railing posts set in concrete, provide stainless-steel sleeves not less than 6 inches (150 mm) long with inside dimensions not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) greater than outside dimensions of post, with metal plate forming bottom closure.
- R. For removable railing posts, fabricate slip-fit sockets from stainless-steel tube or pipe whose ID is sized for a close fit with posts; limit movement of post without lateral load, measured at top, to not more than one-fortieth of post height. Provide socket covers designed and fabricated to resist being dislodged.
  - 1. Provide chain with eye, snap hook, and staple across gaps formed by removable railing sections at locations indicated. Fabricate from same metal as railings.
- S. Toe Boards: Where indicated, provide toe boards at railings around openings and at edge of open-sided floors and platforms. Fabricate to dimensions and details indicated.

## 2.9 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Provide exposed fasteners with finish matching appearance, including color and texture, of railings.

## 2.10 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Galvanized Railings:
  - 1. Hot-dip galvanize exterior steel, including hardware, after fabrication.
  - 2. Hot-dip galvanize indicated steel railings, including hardware, after fabrication.
  - 3. Comply with ASTM A 123/A 123M for hot-dip galvanized railings.
  - 4. Comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for hot-dip galvanized hardware.
  - 5. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
  - 6. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in the finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
- B. For galvanized railings, provide hot-dip galvanized fittings, brackets, fasteners, sleeves, and other ferrous components.
- C. Preparing Galvanized Railings for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with etching cleaner.
- D. For nongalvanized steel railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves, except galvanize anchors to be embedded in exterior concrete or masonry.

- E. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with requirements indicated below:
  - 1. Exterior Railings: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - 2. Railings Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - 3. Railings Indicated to Receive Primers Specified in Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
  - 4. Other Railings: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
  
- F. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.
  - 1. Shop prime uncoated railings with primers specified in Division 09 painting Sections unless primers specified in Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings" are indicated.
  - 2. Do not apply primer to galvanized surfaces.
  
- G. Shop-Painted Finish: Comply with Division 09 Section "Exterior Painting" and Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings."
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  
- H. High-Performance Coating: Apply epoxy intermediate and polyurethane topcoats to prime-coated surfaces. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions and with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Apply at spreading rates recommended by coating manufacturer.
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.11 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. High-Performance Organic Finish: Four-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 50 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - 1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

## 2.12 STAINLESS-STEEL FINISHES

- A. Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
- B. Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform, directionally textured, polished finish to match existing, free of cross scratches. Run grain with long dimension of each piece.
- C. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine plaster and gypsum board assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements have been clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements and mark locations if not already done.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
- B. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
  - 1. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that have been coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
  - 2. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet (2 mm in 1 m).
  - 3. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet (5 mm in 3 m).
- C. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will be in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
- D. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.
- E. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

### 3.3 RAILING CONNECTIONS

- A. Nonwelded Connections: Use mechanical or adhesive joints for permanently connecting railing components. Seal recessed holes of exposed locking screws using plastic cement filler colored to match finish of railings.
- B. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.
- C. Expansion Joints: Install expansion joints at locations indicated but not farther apart than required to accommodate thermal movement. Provide slip-joint internal sleeve extending 2 inches (50 mm) beyond joint on either side, fasten internal sleeve securely to one side, and locate joint within 6 inches (150 mm) of post.

### 3.4 ANCHORING POSTS

- A. Use metal sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Form or core-drill holes not less than 5 inches (125 mm) deep and 3/4 inch (20 mm) larger than OD of post for installing posts in concrete. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout or anchoring cement, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.

- C. Cover anchorage joint with flange of same metal as post, welded to post after placing anchoring material or attached to post with set screws.
- D. Anchor posts to metal surfaces with oval flanges, angle type, or floor type as required by conditions, connected to posts and to metal supporting members as follows:
  - 1. For aluminum pipe railings, attach posts using fittings designed and engineered for this purpose.
  - 2. For stainless-steel pipe railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to supporting surfaces.
  - 3. For steel pipe railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to metal supporting surfaces.
- E. Install removable railing sections, where indicated, in slip-fit metal sockets cast in concrete.

### 3.5 ATTACHING RAILINGS

- A. Anchor railing ends at walls with round flanges anchored to wall construction and welded to railing ends or connected to railing ends using nonwelded connections.
- B. Anchor railing ends to metal surfaces with flanges bolted to metal surfaces and welded to railing ends or connected to railing ends using nonwelded connections.
- C. Attach railings to wall with wall brackets, except where end flanges are used. Provide brackets with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
  - 1. Use type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt.
  - 2. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
- D. Secure wall brackets and railing end flanges to building construction as follows:
  - 1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
  - 2. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.
  - 3. For wood stud partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into studs or wood backing between studs. Coordinate with carpentry work to locate backing members.
  - 4. For steel-framed partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into fire-retardant-treated wood backing between studs. Coordinate with stud installation to locate backing members.
  - 5. For steel-framed partitions, use self-tapping screws fastened to steel framing or to concealed steel reinforcements.
  - 6. For steel-framed partitions, use toggle bolts installed through flanges of steel framing or through concealed steel reinforcements.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Clean aluminum and stainless steel by washing thoroughly with clean water and soap and rinsing with clean water.
- B. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.
- C. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 09 painting Sections and Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings."

- D. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 055213

SECTION 055813 - COLUMN COVERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes snap-together metal column covers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including finishing materials.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for column covers.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For products involving selection of color, texture, or design, including mechanical finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on 6-inch- (150-mm-) square Samples of metal of same thickness and material indicated for the Work.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator and powder-coating applicator.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: Include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing column covers similar to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- B. Powder-Coating Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in successfully applying powder coatings of type indicated to metals of types indicated and that employs competent control personnel to conduct continuing, effective quality-control program to ensure compliance with requirements.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Build mockups of typical column covers.

2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver column covers wrapped in protective coverings and strapped together in suitable packs or in heavy-duty cartons. Remove protective coverings before they stain or bond to finished surfaces.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SNAP-TOGETHER COLUMN COVERS

- A. Form column covers to shapes indicated from metal of type and minimum thickness indicated below. Return vertical edges and bend to form hook that engages continuous mounting clips.
  1. Steel Sheet: Uncoated, cold-rolled, ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, commercial steel, exposed, **0.060 inch (1.52 mm)** thick.
    - a. Finish: Powder coat.
  2. Column covers may be fabricated from prefinished metal sheet in lieu of finishing after fabrication provided unfinished edges are concealed from view.
  3. Increase metal thickness or reinforce with concealed stiffeners, backing materials, or both, as needed to provide flat surfaces where indicated.
  4. Support joints with concealed stiffeners as needed to hold exposed faces of adjoining sheets in flush alignment.
  5. Form returns at vertical joints to provide hairline V-joints.
  6. Form returns at vertical joints to provide 1/2-inch- (12-mm-) wide reveal at joints. Provide snap-in metal filler strips at reveals that leave reveals 1/2 inch (12 mm) deep flush.
  7. Form returns at vertical joints to accommodate backer rod and sealant.
  8. Fabricate column covers with hairline horizontal V-joints produced by forming returns on mating ends of column cover sections. Locate horizontal joints as indicated.
  9. Fabricate column covers without horizontal joints.
  10. Fabricate column covers with horizontal butt joints, tightly fitted and backed with a sleeve for field splicing with adhesive.
  11. Fabricate column covers with 1/2-inch- (12-mm-) wide reveals at horizontal joints produced by forming returns on mating ends of column cover sections. Provide snap-in metal filler strips at reveals matching reveals at vertical joints. Locate horizontal joints as indicated.
  12. Fabricate base ceiling ring to match column covers.
  13. Fabricate with calk stop/stiffener ring.
  14. Apply manufacturer's recommended sound-deadening insulation mastic to backs of column covers.

#### 2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners: Fabricated from same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal unless otherwise indicated. Do not use metals that are incompatible with materials joined.
  1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting column covers and for attaching them to other work unless otherwise indicated.

2. Provide Phillips tamper-resistant square or hex socket flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

B. Sound-Deadening Materials:

1. Insulation: Unfaced, mineral-fiber blanket insulation complying with ASTM C 665, Type I, and passing ASTM E 136 test.
2. Mastic: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.

C. Backing Materials: Provided or recommended by column cover manufacturer.

2.3 PAINTS AND COATINGS

- A. Shop Primers: Comply with Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Universal Shop Primer for Ferrous Metal: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
- C. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.

2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Coordinate dimensions and attachment methods of column covers with those of adjoining construction to produce integrated assemblies with closely fitting joints and with edges and surfaces aligned unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Form metal to profiles indicated, in maximum lengths to minimize joints. Produce flat, flush surfaces without cracking or grain separation at bends.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Complete mechanical finishes of flat sheet metal surfaces before fabrication where possible. After fabrication, finish all joints, bends, abrasions, and other surface blemishes to match sheet finish.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Apply organic and anodic finishes to formed metal after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
  1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.7 STEEL SHEET FINISHES

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to remove dirt, oil, grease, or other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or with SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
- B. Pretreatment: Immediately after cleaning, apply a conversion coating of type suited to organic coating applied over it.
- C. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Where field painting after installation is indicated, apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of items unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
- D. Powder-Coat Finish: After cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard thermosetting polyester or acrylic urethane powder coating with cured-film thickness not less than 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Prepare, treat, and coat metal to comply with resin manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of column covers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate and place column covers plumb and in alignment with adjacent construction. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required to install column covers.
  - 1. Do not cut or abrade finishes that cannot be completely restored in the field. Return items with such finishes to the shop for required alterations, followed by complete refinishing, or provide new units as required.
- B. Use concealed anchorages where possible.
- C. Form tight joints with exposed connections accurately fitted together. Provide reveals and openings for sealants and joint fillers as indicated.
- D. Corrosion Protection: Apply bituminous paint or other permanent separation materials on concealed surfaces where metals would otherwise be in direct contact with substrate materials that are incompatible or could result in corrosion or deterioration of either material or finish.
- E. Apply joint treatment at joints of spackled-seam metal column covers. Comply with requirements in Section 092900 "Gypsum Board."

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean abraded areas of shop paint and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.
- B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of shop paint are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- C. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit or provide new units.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes from damage during construction period. Remove temporary protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 055813

SECTION 061053 - MISCELLANEOUS ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  2. Wood blocking, cants, and nailers.
  3. Wood furring and grounds.
  4. Wood sleepers.
  5. Utility shelving.
  6. Plywood backing panels.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
1. Preservative-treated wood.
  2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
  3. Power-driven fasteners.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with the ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with the ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with the ground.
1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of nineteen percent (19%). Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- D. Application: Treat all miscellaneous carpentry unless otherwise indicated.

1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
4. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches (460 mm) above the ground in crawl spaces or unexcavated areas.
5. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

### 2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame spread index of twenty-five (25) or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional twenty (20) minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet (3.2 m) beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
1. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
  2. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of twenty eight percent (28%) or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at ninety-two percent (92%) relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
  3. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber shall be tested according ASTM D 5664, and design value adjustment factors shall be calculated according to ASTM D 6841.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of nineteen percent (19%).
- C. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Application: Treat all miscellaneous carpentry unless otherwise indicated.
1. Framing for raised platforms.
  2. Concealed blocking.
  3. Roof framing and blocking.
  4. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, and similar members in connection with roofing.
  5. Plywood backing panels.

### 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
1. Blocking.
  2. Nailers.
  3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  4. Cants.
  5. Furring.
  6. Grounds.
  7. Utility shelving.
- B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Standard, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species.

- C. For utility shelving, provide lumber with nineteen percent (19%) maximum moisture content of eastern white pine, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine; Standard or No. 3 Common grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
- D. For concealed boards, provide lumber with nineteen percent (19%) maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
  - 1. Mixed southern pine, No. 3 grade; SPIB.
  - 2. Eastern softwoods, No. 3 Common grade; NELMA.
  - 3. Northern species, No. 3 Common grade; NLGA.
  - 4. Western woods, Standard or No. 3 Common grade; WCLIB or WWPA.

## 2.5 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

- A. Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exterior, AC Exterior, C-C Plugged Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 3/4-inch (19-mm) nominal thickness.

## 2.6 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
  - 1. Where carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- B. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- C. Screws for Fastening to Metal Framing: ASTM C 1002 or ASTM C 954, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Flexible Flashing: Self-adhesive butyl rubber or rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch (0.6 mm).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Set carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit.
- B. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- C. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels. Install fire-retardant treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.

- E. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Comply with AWP A M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
- G. Securely attach carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
  - 2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
  - 3. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.

### 3.2 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061053

## SECTION 061600 - SHEATHING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Wall sheathing.
2. Roof sheathing.
3. Sheathing joint and penetration treatment.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 06 Section "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.
2. Division 07 Section "Weather Barriers" for water-resistive barrier applied over wall sheathing.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant-treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For assemblies with fire-resistance ratings, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory."

#### 2.2 WALL SHEATHING

- A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 1177/1177M.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation; GlasRoc.
    - b. G-P Gypsum Corporation; Dens-Glass Gold.
    - c. National Gypsum Company; Gold Bond e(2)XP.
    - d. Temple-Inland Inc.; GreenGlass
    - e. United States Gypsum Co.; Securock.
  2. Type and Thickness: Regular, 1/2 inch (13 mm) or Type X, 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) thick as required.
- B. Cellulose Fiber-Reinforced Gypsum Sheathing: ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, gypsum sheathing.
1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Fiberock Sheathing with Aqua-Tough" by United States Gypsum Co.
  2. Type and Thickness: Regular, 1/2 inch (13 mm) or Type X, 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) thick as required.
- C. Cementitious Backer Units: ASTM C 1325, Type A.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. C-Cure; C-Cure Board 990.
    - b. Custom Building Products; Wonderboard.
    - c. FinPan, Inc.; Util-A-Crete Concrete Backer Board.
    - d. USG Corporation; DUROCK Cement Board.
  2. Thickness: As indicated.
- 2.3 FASTENERS
- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
1. For roof and wall sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M or of Type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- D. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B 117.
1. For steel framing less than 0.0329 inch (0.835 mm) thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 1002.
  2. For steel framing from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C 954.

## 2.4 SHEATHING JOINT-AND-PENETRATION TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. Sealant for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: Silicone emulsion sealant complying with ASTM C 834, compatible with sheathing tape and sheathing and recommended by tape and sheathing manufacturers for use with glass-fiber sheathing tape and for covering exposed fasteners.
  - 1. Sheathing Tape: Self-adhering glass-fiber tape, minimum 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 10 by 10 or 10 by 20 threads/inch (390 by 390 or 390 by 780 threads/m), of type recommended by sheathing and tape manufacturers for use with silicone emulsion sealant in sealing joints in glass-mat gypsum sheathing and with a history of successful in-service use.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
  - 2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's "International Building Code."
  - 3. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's "International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings."
- D. Coordinate wall and roof sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- E. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- F. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

### 3.2 GYPSUM SHEATHING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
  - 2. Install boards with a 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
  - 3. Install boards with a 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) gap where they abut masonry or similar materials that might retain moisture, to prevent wicking.
- B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing, but do not cut into facing.
- C. Horizontal Installation: Install sheathing with V-grooved edge down and tongue edge up. Interlock tongue with groove to bring long edges in contact with edges of adjacent boards without forcing. Abut ends of boards over centers of studs, and stagger end joints of adjacent boards not less than one stud spacing. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each steel stud.

1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) from edges and ends of boards.
- D. Vertical Installation: Install board vertical edges centered over studs. Abut ends and edges of each board with those of adjacent boards. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each stud.
1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch (9.5 mm) from edges and ends of boards.
- E. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Apply elastomeric sealant to joints and fasteners and trowel flat. Apply sufficient amount of sealant to completely cover joints and fasteners after troweling. Seal other penetrations and openings.
  2. Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing joints and apply and trowel silicone emulsion sealant to embed entire face of tape in sealant. Apply sealant to exposed fasteners with a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.
- 3.3 CEMENTITIOUS BACKER UNIT INSTALLATION
- A. Install panels and treat joints according to ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated.

END OF SECTION 061600

SECTION 064023 - INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

1. Interior standing and running trim.
2. Interior frames and jambs.
3. Flush wood paneling.
4. Plastic-laminate cabinets.
5. Plastic-laminate countertops.
6. Solid-surfacing-material countertops.
7. Closet and utility shelving.
8. Shop finishing of interior woodwork.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 06 Section "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing woodwork and concealed within other construction before woodwork installation.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Interior architectural woodwork includes wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing woodwork items unless concealed within other construction before woodwork installation.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated cabinet hardware and accessories.

- B. Product Data: For panel products, high-pressure decorative laminate, solid-surfacing material, cabinet hardware and accessories and finishing materials and processes.

1. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.

- C. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.

1. Show details full size.
2. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
3. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for faucets soap dispensers installed in architectural woodwork.
4. Show veneer leaves with dimensions, grain direction, exposed face, and identification numbers indicating the flitch and sequence within the flitch for each leaf.
5. Apply WI-certified compliance label to first page of Shop Drawings.

D. Samples for Initial Selection:

1. Shop-applied transparent finishes.
2. Shop-applied opaque finishes.
3. Plastic laminates.
4. PVC edge material.
5. Thermoset decorative panels.
6. Solid-surfacing materials.

E. Samples for Verification:

1. Lumber with or for transparent finish, not less than 5 inches (125 mm) wide by 24 inches (600 mm) long, for each species and cut, finished on 1 side and 1 edge.
2. Veneer leaves representative of and selected from flitches to be used for transparent-finished woodwork.
3. Veneer-faced panel products with or for transparent finish, 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), for each species and cut. Include at least one face-veneer seam and finish as specified.
4. Lumber and panel products with shop-applied opaque finish, 50 sq. in. (300 sq. cm) for lumber and 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm) for panels, for each finish system and color, with 1/2 of exposed surface finished.
5. Plastic laminates, 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish, with 1 sample applied to core material.
6. Thermoset decorative-panels, 8 by 10 inches (200 by 250 mm), for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish, with edge banding on 1 edge.
7. Solid-surfacing materials, 6 inches (150 mm) square.
8. Corner pieces as follows:
  - a. Cabinet-front frame joints between stiles and rails, as well as exposed end pieces, 18 inches (450 mm) high by 18 inches (450 mm) wide by 6 inches (150 mm) deep.
  - b. Miter joints for standing trim.
9. Exposed cabinet hardware and accessories, one unit for each type and finish.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance. Shop is a certified participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Certified participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program.
- C. Source Limitations: Engage a qualified woodworking firm to assume undivided responsibility for production of interior architectural woodwork with sequence-matched wood veneers and wood doors with face veneers that are sequence matched with woodwork and transparent-finished wood doors that are required to be of same species as woodwork.
- D. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" for grades of interior architectural woodwork indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
  1. Provide AWI Quality Certification Program labels indicating that woodwork, including installation, complies with requirements of grades specified.
- E. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not deliver woodwork until painting and similar operations that could damage woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If woodwork must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Project Conditions" Article.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install woodwork until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install woodwork until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F (16 and 32 deg C) and relative humidity between twenty five (25) and fifty-five (55) percent during the remainder of the construction period.
- C. Field Measurements: Where woodwork is indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
  1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support woodwork by field measurements before being enclosed, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
  2. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating woodwork without field measurements. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

#### 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that interior architectural woodwork can be supported and installed as indicated.
- B. Hardware Coordination: Distribute copies of approved hardware schedule specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware (Scheduled by Describing Products)" to fabricator of architectural woodwork; coordinate Shop Drawings and fabrication with hardware requirements.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 WOODWORK FABRICATORS

- A. Available Fabricators: Subject to compliance with requirements, fabricators offering interior architectural woodwork that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Fabricators: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide interior architectural woodwork by one of the following:

## 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials that comply with requirements of AWI's quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Certified Wood: Interior architectural woodwork shall be produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC STD-01-001, "FSC Principles and Criteria for Forest Stewardship."
- C. Wood Species and Cut for Transparent Finish: White Maple.
- D. Wood Species for Opaque Finish: Any closed-grain hardwood listed in referenced woodworking standards and matching to existing wood species in field.
- E. Wood Products: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Hardboard: AHA A135.4.
  - 2. Medium-Density Fiberboard: ANSI A208.2, Grade MD, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
  - 3. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
  - 4. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1, Medium Density Overlay.
  - 5. Veneer-Faced Panel Products (Hardwood Plywood): HPVA HP-1, made with adhesive containing no urea formaldehyde.
- F. Thermoset Decorative Panels: Particleboard or medium-density fiberboard finished with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper complying with LMA SAT-1.
  - 1. Provide PVC or polyester edge banding complying with LMA EDG-1 on components with exposed or semiexposed edges.
- G. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated or, if not indicated, as required by woodwork quality standard.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering high-pressure decorative laminates that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 2. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide high-pressure decorative laminates by one of the following:
    - a. Abet Laminati, Inc.
    - b. Arborite; Division of ITW Canada, Inc.
    - c. Formica Corporation.
    - d. Lamin-Art, Inc.
    - e. Nevamar Company, LLC; Decorative Products Div.
    - f. Panolam Industries International Incorporated.
    - g. Westinghouse Electric Corp.; Specialty Products Div.
    - h. Wilsonart International; Div. of Premark International, Inc.
- H. Solid-Surfacing Material: Homogeneous solid sheets of filled plastic resin complying with ISSFA-2.
  - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ABA Industries.

- b. Avonite, Inc.
  - c. E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Company.
  - d. Formica Corporation.
  - e. LG Chemical, Ltd.
  - f. Meganite Inc.; a division of the Pyrochem Group.
  - g. Nevamar Company, LLC; Decorative Products Div.
  - h. Samsung; Cheil Industries Inc.
  - i. Swan Corporation (The).
  - j. Transolid, Inc.
  - k. Wilsonart International; Div. of Premark International, Inc.
3. Type: Standard type, unless Special Purpose type is indicated.
  4. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

### 2.3 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets, except for items specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware (Scheduled by Describing Products)."
- B. Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type): BHMA A156.9, B01602, 100 degrees of opening.
- C. Back-Mounted Pulls: BHMA A156.9, B02011.
- D. Wire Pulls: Back mounted, solid metal, 4 inches (100 mm) long, 5/16 inch (8 mm) in diameter.
- E. Catches: Magnetic catches.
- F. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: BHMA A156.9, B04071; with shelf rests, B04081.
- G. Shelf Rests: BHMA A156.9, B04013; metal, two-pin type with shelf hold-down clip.
- H. Drawer Slides: BHMA A156.9, B05091.
  1. Standard Duty (Grade 1, Grade 2, and Grade 3): Side mounted and extending under bottom edge of drawer; type; with polymer rollers.
  2. Box Drawer Slides: Grade 1; for drawers not more than 6 inches (150 mm) high and 24 inches (600 mm) wide.
  3. Trash Bin Slides: Grade 1HD-100; for trash bins not more than 20 inches (500 mm) high and 16 inches (400 mm) wide.
- I. Aluminum Slides for Sliding Glass Doors: BHMA A156.9, B07063.
- J. Door Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07121.
- K. Drawer Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07041.
- L. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.
  1. Satin Stainless Steel: BHMA 630.
- M. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in BHMA A156.9.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
- B. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Fire-retardant-treated softwood lumber, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Interior Woodwork Grade: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Premium-grade interior woodwork complying with referenced quality standard.
- B. Wood Moisture Content: Comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for wood moisture content in relation to ambient relative humidity during fabrication and in installation areas.
- C. Sand fire-retardant-treated wood lightly to remove raised grain on exposed surfaces before fabrication.
- D. Fabricate woodwork to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:
  - 1. Corners of Cabinets and Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members 3/4 Inch (19 mm) Thick or Less: 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).
  - 2. Edges of Rails and Similar Members More Than 3/4 Inch (19 mm) Thick: 1/8 inch (3 mm).
  - 3. Corners of Cabinets and Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members and Rails: 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).
- E. Complete fabrication, including assembly, finishing, and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
  - 1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times woodwork fabrication will be complete.
  - 2. Trial fit assemblies at fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements indicated on Shop Drawings before disassembling for shipment.
- F. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.
  - 1. Seal edges of openings in countertops with a coat of varnish.

2.6 INTERIOR STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- A. Grade: Premium.
- B. Wood Species and Cut: Select white maple plait sawn, sliced maple cathedral grain.
  - 1. Provide split species on trim that faces areas with different wood species, matching each face of woodwork to species and cut of finish wood surfaces in areas finished.
- C. For trim items wider than available lumber, use veneered construction. Do not glue for width.

- D. For rails wider or thicker than available lumber, use veneered construction. Do not glue for width or thickness.
- E. Backout or groove backs of flat trim members and kerf backs of other wide, flat members, except for members with ends exposed in finished work.
- F. Assemble casings in plant except where limitations of access to place of installation require field assembly.
- G. Assemble moldings in plant to maximum extent possible. Miter corners in plant and prepare for field assembly with bolted fittings designed to pull connections together.

#### 2.7 INTERIOR FRAMES AND JAMBS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- A. Grade: Premium.
- B. Wood Species and Cut: Select white maple plain sawn.
- C. For frames or jambs wider than available lumber, use veneered construction. Do not glue for width.
- D. Fire-Rated Interior Frames and Jambs: Products fabricated from fire-retardant particleboard or fire-retardant medium-density fiberboard with veneered, exposed surfaces and listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252.
  - 1. Fire Rating: 20 minutes.

#### 2.8 INTERIOR FRAMES AND JAMBS FOR OPAQUE FINISH

- A. Grade: Premium.
- B. Wood Species: Any closed-grain hardwood.

#### 2.9 FLUSH WOOD PANELING AND WAINSCOTS

- A. Grade: Premium.
- B. Wood Species and Cut: Select white maple plain sawn.
  - 1. Lumber Trim and Edges: At fabricator's option, trim and edges indicated as solid wood (except moldings) may be either lumber or veneered construction compatible with grain and color of veneered panels.
- C. Matching of Adjacent Veneer Leaves: Book match.
- D. Veneer Matching within Panel Face: Center-balance match.
- E. Panel-Matching Method: No matching between panels is required. Select and arrange panels for similarity of grain pattern and color between adjacent panels.
- F. Fire-Retardant-Treated Paneling: Provide panels consisting of wood veneer and fire-retardant particleboard or fire-retardant medium-density fiberboard. Panels shall have flame-spread index of 75 or less and smoke-developed index of 450 or less per ASTM E 84.

2.10 PLASTIC-LAMINATE CABINETS

- A. Grade: Premium.
- B. AWI Type of Cabinet Construction: As indicated.
- C. Laminate Cladding for Exposed Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Horizontal Surfaces Other Than Tops: Grade HGS.
  - 2. Postformed Surfaces: Grade HGP.
  - 3. Vertical Surfaces: Grade VGS.
  - 4. Edges: Grade HGS PVC tape, 0.018-inch (0.460-mm) minimum thickness, matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish.
- D. Concealed Backs of Panels with Exposed Plastic Laminate Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate, Grade BKL.
- E. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. As indicated by laminate manufacturer's designations.
  - 2. Match Architect's sample.
  - 3. As selected by Architect from laminate manufacturer's standard range in the following categories:
    - a. Solid colors, matte finish.
    - b. Solid colors with core same color as surface, matte finish.
- F. Provide dust panels of 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers, unless located directly under tops.

2.11 SOLID-SURFACING-MATERIAL COUNTERTOPS

- A. Grade: Premium.
- B. Solid-Surfacing-Material Thickness: 3/4 inch (19 mm).
- C. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors of solid-surfacing material complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
- D. Fabricate tops in one piece, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid-surfacing-material manufacturer's written recommendations for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
  - 1. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges of materials and configuration indicated.
  - 2. Fabricate tops with loose backsplashes for field application.
- E. Install integral sink bowls in countertops in shop.
- F. Drill holes in countertops for plumbing fittings and soap dispensers in shop.

2.12 CLOSET AND UTILITY SHELVING

- A. Grade: Premium.

- B. Shelf Material: 3/4-inch (19-mm) solid lumber.
- C. Cleats: 3/4-inch (19-mm) solid lumber.
- D. Wood Species: Any closed-grain hardwood.

#### 2.13 SHOP FINISHING

- A. Grade: Provide finishes of same grades as items to be finished.
- B. General: Finish architectural woodwork at fabrication shop as specified in this Section. Defer only final touchup, cleaning, and polishing until after installation.
- C. General: Shop finish transparent-finished interior architectural woodwork at fabrication shop as specified in this Section. Refer to Division 09 painting Sections for finishing opaque-finished architectural woodwork.
- D. General: Drawings indicate items that are required to be shop finished. Finish such items at fabrication shop as specified in this Section. Refer to Division 09 painting Sections for finishing architectural woodwork not indicated to be shop finished.
- E. Finishing Materials: Products shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- F. Shop Priming: Shop apply the prime coat including backpriming, if any, for transparent-finished items specified to be field finished. Refer to Division 09 painting Sections for material and application requirements.
- G. Preparation for Finishing: Comply with referenced quality standard for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing architectural woodwork, as applicable to each unit of work.
  - 1. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of woodwork. Apply two coats to back of paneling and to end-grain surfaces. Concealed surfaces of plastic-laminate-clad woodwork do not require backpriming when surfaced with plastic laminate, backing paper, or thermoset decorative panels.
- H. Transparent Finish:
  - 1. Grade: Premium.
  - 2. AWI Finish System: Synthetic penetrating oil.
  - 3. AWI Finish System: Nitrocellulose lacquer.
  - 4. AWI Finish System: Catalyzed lacquer.
  - 5. AWI Finish System: Acrylic lacquer.
  - 6. AWI Finish System: Conversion varnish.
  - 7. AWI Finish System: Catalyzed vinyl.
  - 8. AWI Finish System: Catalyzed polyurethane.
  - 9. AWI Finish System: Two-component polyester.
  - 10. WI Finish System 1a.: Nitrocellulose lacquer.
  - 11. WI Finish System 1b.: Acrylic lacquer.
  - 12. WI Finish System 1c.: Varnish.
  - 13. WI Finish System 1d.: Polyurethane.
  - 14. WI Finish System 2: Water-reducible acrylic lacquer.
  - 15. WI Finish System 3a.: Catalyzed lacquer.

16. WI Finish System 3b.: Catalyzed vinyl lacquer.
17. WI Finish System 4: Conversion varnish.
18. WI Finish System 5: Catalyzed polyurethane.
19. WI Finish System 6: Penetrating oil.
20. Staining: Match approved sample for color.
21. Wash Coat for Stained Finish: Apply wash-coat sealer to woodwork made from closed-grain wood before staining and finishing.
22. Open Finish for Open-Grain Woods: Do not apply filler to open-grain woods.
23. Filled Finish for Open-Grain Woods: After staining (if any), apply paste wood filler to open-grain woods and wipe off excess. Tint filler to match stained wood.
  - a. Apply wash-coat sealer after staining and before filling.
24. Sheen: Semigloss, 46-60 gloss units measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D 523.

I. Opaque Finish:

1. Grade: Premium.
2. AWI Finish System: Nitrocellulose lacquer.
3. AWI Finish System: Catalyzed lacquer.
4. AWI Finish System: Acrylic lacquer.
5. AWI Finish System: Conversion varnish.
6. AWI Finish System: Catalyzed vinyl.
7. AWI Finish System: Catalyzed polyurethane.
8. AWI Finish System: Two-component polyester.
9. WI Finish System 1a.: Nitrocellulose lacquer.
10. WI Finish System 1b.: Acrylic lacquer.
11. WI Finish System 2: Water-reducible acrylic lacquer.
12. WI Finish System 3a.: Catalyzed lacquer.
13. WI Finish System 3b.: Catalyzed vinyl lacquer.
14. WI Finish System 4: Conversion varnish.
15. WI Finish System 5: Catalyzed polyurethane.
16. WI Finish System 7a.: Synthetic enamel.
17. WI Finish System 7b.: Opaque pigmented lacquer.
18. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
19. Sheen: Semigloss, 46-60 gloss units measured on 60-degree gloss meter per ASTM D 523.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition woodwork to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.
- B. Before installing architectural woodwork, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and backpriming.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Grade: Install woodwork to comply with requirements for the same grade specified in Part 2 for fabrication of type of woodwork involved.
- B. Assemble woodwork and complete fabrication at Project site to comply with requirements for fabrication in Part 2, to extent that it was not completed in the shop.

- C. Install woodwork level, plumb, true, and straight. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb (including tops) to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm).
- D. Scribe and cut woodwork to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
- E. Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood: Handle, store, and install fire-retardant-treated wood to comply with chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions, including those for adhesives used to install woodwork.
- F. Anchor woodwork to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing as required for complete installation. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork and matching final finish if transparent finish is indicated.
- G. Standing and Running Trim: Install with minimum number of joints possible, using full-length pieces (from maximum length of lumber available) to greatest extent possible. Do not use pieces less than 96 inches (2400 mm) long, except where shorter single-length pieces are necessary. Scarf running joints and stagger in adjacent and related members.
  - 1. Fill gaps, if any, between top of base and wall with plastic wood filler, sand smooth, and finish same as wood base if finished.
  - 2. Install wall railings on indicated metal brackets securely fastened to wall framing.
  - 3. Install standing and running trim with no more variation from a straight line than 1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2400 mm).
- H. Paneling: Anchor paneling to supporting substrate with concealed panel-hanger clips. Do not use face fastening, unless covered by trim.
  - 1. Install flush paneling with no more than 1/16 inch in 96-inch (1.5 mm in 2400-mm) vertical cup or bow and 1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm) horizontal variation from a true plane.
- I. Cabinets: Install without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings properly and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
  - 1. Install cabinets with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm) sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
  - 2. Maintain veneer sequence matching of cabinets with transparent finish.
  - 3. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, at ends and not more than 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for 1-inch (25-mm) penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips.
- J. Countertops: Anchor securely by screwing through corner blocks of base cabinets or other supports into underside of countertop.
  - 1. Align adjacent solid-surfacing-material countertops and form seams to comply with manufacturer's written recommendations using adhesive in color to match countertop. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
  - 2. Install countertops with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch (3 mm in 2400-mm) sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
  - 3. Secure backsplashes to tops with concealed metal brackets at 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. and to walls with adhesive.
  - 4. Calk space between backsplash and wall with sealant specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

- K. Touch up finishing work specified in this Section after installation of woodwork. Fill nail holes with matching filler where exposed.
- L. Refer to Division 09 Sections for final finishing of installed architectural woodwork not indicated to be shop finished.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective woodwork, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.
- C. Clean woodwork on exposed and semiexposed surfaces. Touch up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION 064023

SECTION 071113 - BITUMINOUS DAMPPROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cold-applied, cut-back-asphalt dampproofing.
2. Cold-applied, emulsified-asphalt dampproofing.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for bituminous vapor retarders.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with application only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit dampproofing to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Ventilation: Provide adequate ventilation during application of dampproofing in enclosed spaces. Maintain ventilation until dampproofing has cured.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary dampproofing materials and primers from single source from single manufacturer. Provide protection course molded-sheet drainage panels and auxiliary materials recommended in writing by manufacturer of primary materials.
- B. VOC Content: Products shall comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction unless otherwise required.

2.2 COLD-APPLIED, CUT-BACK-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. APOC, Inc.; a division of Gardner-Gibson.
  2. BASF Construction Chemicals - Building Systems; Sonneborn Brand Products.
  3. Brewer Company (The).
  4. ChemMasters, Inc.
  5. Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company.
  6. Henry Company.

7. Karnak Corporation.
8. Koppers Inc.
9. Malarkey Roofing Products.
10. Meadows, W. R., Inc.

- B. Trowel Coats: ASTM D 4586, Type I, Class 1, fibered.
- C. Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D 4479, Type I, fibered or non-fibered.

### 2.3 COLD-APPLIED, EMULSIFIED-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. APOC, Inc.; a division of Gardner-Gibson.
  2. BASF Construction Chemicals - Building Systems; Sonneborn Brand Products.
  3. Brewer Company (The).
  4. ChemMasters, Inc.
  5. Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company.
  6. Gardner-Gibson, Inc.
  7. Henry Company.
  8. Karnak Corporation.
  9. Koppers Inc.
  10. Malarkey Roofing Products.
  11. Meadows, W. R., Inc.
- B. Trowel Coats: ASTM D 1227, Type II, Class 1.
- C. Fibered Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D 1227, Type II, Class 1.
- D. Brush and Spray Coats: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class 1.

### 2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Furnish auxiliary materials recommended in writing by dampproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with bituminous dampproofing.
- B. Cut-Back-Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.
- C. Emulsified-Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 1227, Type III, Class 1, except diluted with water as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
1. Primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Asphalt-Coated Glass Fabric: ASTM D 1668, Type I.
- E. Patching Compound: Epoxy or latex-modified repair mortar or asbestos-free fibered mastic of type recommended in writing by dampproofing manufacturer.
- F. Protection Course: ASTM D 6506, 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) thick, semirigid sheets of fiberglass or mineral-reinforced-asphaltic core, pressure laminated between two asphalt-saturated fibrous liners.

- G. Protection Course: Fan folded, with a core of extruded-polystyrene board insulation faced on one side or both sides with plastic film, nominal thickness 1/4 inch (6 mm), with a compressive strength of not less than 8 psi (55 kPa) per ASTM D 1621, and maximum water absorption by volume of 0.6 percent per ASTM C 272.
- H. Protection Course: Extruded-polystyrene board insulation, unfaced, ASTM C 578, Type X, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick.
- I. Protection Course: Smooth-surfaced roll roofing complying with ASTM D 6380, Class S, Type III.

## 2.5 MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE PANELS

- A. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Comply with Division 33 Section "Subdrainage."
- B. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced, Molded-Sheet Drainage Panel: Composite subsurface drainage panel consisting of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core; with a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 70 (0.21-mm) sieve laminated to one side of the core; and with a vertical flow rate of 9 to 15 gpm per ft. (112 to 188 L/min. per m).
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. American Hydrotech, Inc.
    - b. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
    - c. Grace, W. R., & Co. - Conn.
    - d. Protecto Wrap Company.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for surface smoothness, surface moisture, and other conditions affecting performance of bituminous dampproofing work.
  - 1. Test for surface moisture according to ASTM D 4263.
- B. Proceed with application only after substrate construction and penetrating work have been completed and unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Mask or otherwise protect adjoining exposed surfaces from being stained, spotted, or coated with dampproofing. Prevent dampproofing materials from entering and clogging weep holes and drains.
- B. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to the dampproofing work; fill voids, seal joints, and remove bond breakers if any, as recommended in writing by prime material manufacturer.
- C. Apply patching compound to patch and fill tie holes, honeycombs, reveals, and other imperfections; cover with asphalt-coated glass fabric.

### 3.3 APPLICATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for dampproofing application, cure time between coats, and drying time before backfilling unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

1. Apply dampproofing to provide continuous plane of protection.
  2. Apply additional coats if recommended in writing by manufacturer or to achieve a smooth surface and uninterrupted coverage.
- B. Where dampproofing footings and foundation walls, apply from finished-grade line to top of footing; extend over top of footing and down a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) over outside face of footing.
1. Extend dampproofing 12 inches (300 mm) onto intersecting walls and footings, but do not extend onto surfaces exposed to view when Project is completed.
  2. Install flashings and corner protection stripping at internal and external corners, changes in plane, construction joints, cracks, and where shown as "reinforced," by embedding an 8-inch- (200-mm-) wide strip of asphalt-coated glass fabric in a heavy coat of dampproofing. Dampproofing coat for embedding fabric is in addition to other coats required.
- C. Where dampproofing exterior face of inner wythe of exterior masonry cavity walls, lap dampproofing at least 1/4 inch (6 mm) onto flashing, masonry reinforcement, veneer ties, and other items that penetrate inner wythe.
1. Extend dampproofing over outer face of structural members and concrete slabs that interrupt inner wythe.
  2. Lap dampproofing at least 1/4 inch (6 mm) onto shelf angles supporting veneer.
- D. Where dampproofing interior face of above-grade, exterior concrete and masonry single-wythe masonry walls, continue dampproofing through intersecting walls by keeping vertical mortar joints at intersection temporarily open or by dampproofing wall before constructing intersecting walls.

#### 3.4 COLD-APPLIED, CUT-BACK-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Concrete Foundations: Apply two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m) for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m) for second coat or one trowel coat at not less than 4 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.6 L/sq. m).
- B. Unparged Masonry Foundation Walls: Apply primer and two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m) for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m) for second coat or primer and one trowel coat at not less than 4 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.6 L/sq. m).
- C. Unexposed Face of Concrete Retaining Walls: Apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m).
- D. Unexposed Face of Masonry Retaining Walls: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m).
- E. Concrete Backup for Brick Veneer Assemblies: Apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).
- F. Masonry Backup for Brick Veneer Assemblies: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).
- G. Exterior Face of Inner Wythe of Cavity Walls: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).

### 3.5 COLD-APPLIED, EMULSIFIED-ASPHALT DAMPPROOFING

- A. Concrete Foundations: Apply two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.5 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.6 L/sq. m) for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m) for second coat one fibered brush or spray coat at not less than 3 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.2 L/sq. m) or one trowel coat at not less than 4 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.6 L/sq. m).
- B. Unparged Masonry Foundation Walls: Apply primer and two brush or spray coats at not less than 1.5 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.6 L/sq. m) for first coat and 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m) for second coat primer and one fibered brush or spray coat at not less than 3 gal./100 sq. ft. (1.2 L/sq. m) or primer and one trowel coat at not less than 5 gal./100 sq. ft. (2 L/sq. m).
- C. Unexposed Face of Concrete Retaining Walls: Apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m).
- D. Unexposed Face of Masonry Retaining Walls: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1.25 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.5 L/sq. m).
- E. Concrete Backup for Brick Veneer Assemblies: Apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).
- F. Masonry Backup for Brick Veneer Assemblies: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).
- G. Exterior Face of Inner Wythe of Cavity Walls: Apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).
- H. Interior Face of Exterior Concrete Walls: Where above grade and indicated to be furred and finished, apply one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).
- I. Interior Face of Single-Wythe Exterior Masonry Walls: Where above grade and indicated to be furred and finished, apply primer and one brush or spray coat at not less than 1 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.4 L/sq. m).

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF PROTECTION COURSE

- A. Where indicated, install protection course over completed-and-cured dampproofing. Comply with dampproofing-material and protection-course manufacturers' written instructions for attaching protection course.
  - 1. Support protection course over cured coating with spot application of adhesive type recommended in writing by protection-board manufacturer.
  - 2. Install protection course within 24 hours of installation of dampproofing (while coating is tacky) to ensure adhesion.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE PANELS

- A. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels, with geotextile facing away from wall substrate, according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesives or other methods that do not penetrate dampproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.
  - 1. Install protection course before installing drainage panels.

3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended in writing by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 071113

SECTION 071800 - TRAFFIC COATINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes traffic coatings for the following applications:
  - 1. Pedestrian traffic at exterior concrete decks and stairs.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 07 Section "Water Repellents" for penetrating and film-forming water repellents applied on traffic-bearing surfaces.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including installation instructions.
- B. Shop Drawings: For traffic coatings.
  - 1. Include details for treating substrate joints and cracks, flashings, deck penetrations, and other termination conditions.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish, prepared on rigid backing.
  - 1. Provide stepped Samples on backing to illustrate buildup of traffic coatings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of traffic coating.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For traffic coatings to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Build mockup for each traffic coating and substrate to receive traffic coatings.
  - 2. Size: 200 sq. ft. (18.5 sq. m) of each substrate to demonstrate surface preparation, joint and crack treatment, thickness, texture, color, and standard of workmanship.
  - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Apply traffic coatings within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended in writing by manufacturer. Do not apply traffic coatings to damp or wet substrates, when temperatures are below 40 deg F (5 deg C), when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent, or when temperatures are less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above dew point.
  - 1. Do not apply traffic coatings in snow, rain, fog, or mist, or when such weather conditions are imminent during the application and curing period. Apply only when frost-free conditions occur throughout the depth of substrate.
- B. Do not install traffic coating until items that penetrate membrane have been installed.
- C. Pavement-Marking Paint: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) for oil-based materials 50 deg F (10 deg C) for water-based materials, and not exceeding 95 deg F (35 deg C).

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace traffic coating that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Adhesive or cohesive failures.
    - b. Abrasion or tearing failures.
    - c. Surface crazing or spalling.
    - d. Intrusion of water, oils, gasoline, grease, salt, deicer chemicals, or acids into deck substrate.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility: Provide primers; base-, intermediate-, and topcoat; and accessory materials that are compatible with one another and with substrate under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Source Limitations:

1. Obtain traffic coatings from single source from single manufacturer.
2. Obtain primary traffic-coating materials, including primers, from traffic-coating manufacturer. Obtain accessory materials including aggregates, sheet flashings, joint sealants, and substrate repair materials of types and from sources recommended in writing by primary material manufacturer.

## 2.2 TRAFFIC COATING

- A. Traffic Coating: Manufacturer's standard, traffic-bearing, seamless, high-solids-content, cold liquid-applied, elastomeric, waterproofing membrane system with integral wearing surface for pedestrian traffic and equipment-room floor; according to ASTM C 957.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Advanced Polymer Technology Corporation.
    - b. AVM Industries, Inc.
    - c. BASF Construction Chemicals, LLC - Building Systems.
    - d. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.
    - e. Crossfield Products Corp.
    - f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); an RPM company.
    - g. Gaco Western LLC.
    - h. Key Resin Company.
    - i. LymTal International Inc.
    - j. Neogard; Division of Jones-Blair.
    - k. Pacific Polymers International, Inc.
    - l. ParexLahabra, Inc.
    - m. Pecora Corporation.
    - n. POLY-CARB, Inc.
    - o. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
    - p. Tremco Incorporated; an RPM company.
    - q. Urethane Polymers International, Inc.
- B. Primer: Liquid primer recommended for substrate and conditions by traffic-coating manufacturer.
1. Material: Epoxy.
- C. Preparatory and Base Coats: Epoxy.
1. Thicknesses: Minimum dry or wet film thickness as recommended in writing by manufacturer for substrate and service conditions indicated.
- D. Intermediate Coat: Epoxy.
1. Thicknesses: Minimum dry or wet film thickness as recommended in writing by manufacturer for substrate and service conditions indicated, measured excluding aggregate.
  2. Aggregate Content: As recommended in writing by traffic-coating manufacturer for substrate and service conditions indicated.
- E. Topcoat: Epoxy.
1. Thicknesses: Minimum dry or wet film thickness as recommended in writing by manufacturer for substrate and service conditions indicated, measured excluding aggregate.
  2. Aggregate Content: As recommended in writing by traffic-coating manufacturer for substrate and service conditions indicated and as required to achieve slip-resistant finish.

3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

- F. Aggregate: Manufacturer's standard aggregate for each use indicated of particle sizes, shape, and minimum hardness recommended in writing by traffic-coating manufacturer.
- G. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide traffic-coating materials with the fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical products per test method below for deck type and slopes indicated by an independent testing and inspecting agency that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## 2.3 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Joint Sealants: As specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants." ASTM C 920.
- B. Sheet Flashing: Nonstaining sheet material recommended in writing by traffic-coating manufacturer.
  - 1. Thickness: Minimum 60 mils (1.5 mm).
- C. Adhesive: Contact adhesive recommended in writing by traffic-coating manufacturer.
- D. Reinforcing Strip: Fiberglass mesh recommended in writing by traffic-coating manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for surface smoothness, surface moisture, and other conditions affecting performance of traffic-coating work.
- B. Verify that substrates are visibly dry and free of moisture.
  - 1. Test for moisture according to ASTM D 4263.
  - 2. Test for moisture content by method recommended in writing by traffic-coating manufacturer.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of traffic-coating work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after substrate construction and penetrating work have been completed and unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Begin coating application only after minimum concrete-curing and -drying period recommended in writing by traffic-coating manufacturer has passed and after substrates are dry.
  - 2. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Before applying traffic coatings, clean and prepare substrates according to ASTM C 1127 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce clean, dust-free, dry substrate for traffic-coating application. Remove projections, fill voids, and seal joints if any, as recommended in writing by traffic-coating manufacturer.
- B. Schedule preparation work so dust and other contaminants from process do not fall on wet, newly coated surfaces.

- C. Mask adjoining surfaces not receiving traffic coatings to prevent overspray, spillage, leaking, and migration of coatings. Prevent traffic-coating materials from entering deck substrate penetrations and clogging weep holes and drains.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Mechanically abrade surface to a uniform profile acceptable to manufacturer, according to ASTM D 4259. Do not acid etch.
  - 1. Remove grease, oil, paints, and other penetrating contaminants from concrete.
  - 2. Remove concrete fins, ridges, and other projections.
  - 3. Remove laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, concrete hardeners, form-release agents, and other incompatible materials that might affect coating adhesion.
  - 4. Remove remaining loose material to provide a sound surface, and clean surfaces according to ASTM D 4258.

### 3.3 TERMINATIONS AND PENETRATIONS

- A. Prepare vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and penetrations through traffic coatings and at expansion joints, drains, and sleeves according to ASTM C 1127 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide sealant cants at penetrations and at reinforced and nonreinforced, deck-to-wall butt joints.
- C. Terminate edges of deck-to-deck expansion joints with preparatory base-coat strip.
- D. Install sheet flashings at deck-to-wall expansion and dynamic joints, and bond to deck and wall substrates according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.4 JOINT AND CRACK TREATMENT

- A. Prepare, treat, rout, and fill joints and cracks in substrates according to ASTM C 1127 and manufacturer's written recommendations. Before coating surfaces, remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks according to ASTM D 4258.
  - 1. Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for joint-sealant installation.
- B. Apply reinforcing strip in traffic-coating system where recommended in writing by traffic-coating manufacturer.

### 3.5 TRAFFIC-COATING APPLICATION

- A. Apply traffic coating according to ASTM C 1127 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply number of coats of specified compositions for each type of traffic coating at locations as indicated on Drawings.
- C. Start traffic-coating application in presence of manufacturer's technical representative.
- D. Verify that wet film thickness of each coat complies with requirements every 100 sq. ft. (9 sq. m).
- E. Uniformly broadcast aggregate on coats specified to receive aggregate. Embed aggregate according to manufacturer's written instructions. After coat dries, sweep away excess aggregate.
- F. Apply traffic coatings to prepared wall terminations and vertical surfaces to height indicated; omit aggregate on vertical surfaces.
- G. Cure traffic coatings. Prevent contamination and damage during application and curing stages.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform the following field tests and inspections:

1. Materials Testing:

- a. Samples of material delivered to Project site shall be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Owner and Contractor.
- b. Testing agency shall perform tests for characteristics specified, using applicable referenced testing procedures.
- c. Testing agency shall verify thickness of coatings during traffic-coating application for each 600 sq. ft. (56 sq. m) of installed traffic coating or part thereof.

2. Electronic Leak-Detection Testing:

- a. Testing agency shall test each deck area for leaks using an electronic leak-detection method that locates discontinuities in the traffic-coating membrane.
- b. Testing agency shall perform tests on abutting or overlapping smaller areas as necessary to cover entire test area.
- c. Testing agency shall create a conductive electronic field over the area of traffic coating to be tested and electronically determine locations of discontinuities or leaks, if any, in the traffic coating.
- d. Testing agency shall provide survey report indicating locations of discontinuities, if any.

3. If test results show traffic coating does not comply with requirements, remove and replace or repair the membrane as recommended in writing by traffic-coating manufacturer and make further repairs after retesting until traffic-coating installation passes.

B. Final Traffic-Coating Inspection: Arrange for traffic-coating manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect membrane installation on completion.

1. Notify Architect or Owner forty-eight (48) hours in advance of date and time of inspection.

C. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.7 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

A. Protect traffic coatings from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.

B. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 071800

SECTION 071900 - WATER REPELLENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes penetrating water-repellent treatments for the following vertical and horizontal surfaces:
  - 1. Cast-in-place concrete.
  - 2. Precast concrete.
  - 3. Concrete unit masonry.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 04 Section "Concrete Unit Masonry" for integral water-repellent admixture for unit masonry assemblies.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Water repellents shall meet performance requirements indicated without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation.
  - 1. Water Repellents: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by preconstruction testing on manufacturer's standard substrate assemblies representing those indicated for this Project.
- B. Water Absorption: Minimum 90 percent reduction of water absorption after 24 hours in comparison of treated and untreated specimens.
  - 1. Cast-in Place Concrete: ASTM C 642.
  - 2. Precast Concrete: ASTM C 642.
  - 3. Cast Stone: ASTM C 1195.
  - 4. Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C 140.
  - 5. Clay Brick: ASTM C 67.
  - 6. Natural Stone: ASTM C 97.
  - 7. Portland Cement Plaster (Stucco): ASTM D 6532.
- C. Water-Vapor Transmission: Comply with one or both of the following:
  - 1. Maximum 10 percent reduction in rate of vapor transmission in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, according to ASTM E 96/E 96M.
  - 2. Minimum 80 percent water-vapor transmission in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, according to ASTM D 1653.
- D. Water Penetration and Leakage through Masonry: Minimum 90 percent reduction in leakage rate in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, according to ASTM E 514.
- E. Durability: Maximum 5 percent loss of water-repellent properties after 2500 hours of weathering according to ASTM G 154 in comparison to water-repellent-treated specimens before weathering.

F. Chloride-Ion Intrusion in Concrete: NCHRP Report 244, Series II tests.

1. Reduction of Water Absorption: 80 percent.
2. Reduction in Chloride Content: 80 percent.

#### 1.4 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Testing: Installed water repellents shall comply with performance requirements indicated, as evidenced by reports of tests performed on manufacturer's standard substrate assemblies by a qualified testing agency.

1. Select sizes and configurations of assemblies to adequately demonstrate capability of water repellents to comply with performance requirements.
2. In addition to verifying performance requirements, use test applications to verify manufacturer's written instructions for application procedure and optimum rates of product application to substrate assemblies.
3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times when assemblies will be tested.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1. Include manufacturer's printed statement of VOC content.
2. Include manufacturer's standard colors.
3. Include manufacturer's recommended number of coats for each type of substrate and spreading rate for each separate coat.
4. Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified in Part 2 that specifies water repellents approved by MPI, with the proposed product highlighted.

B. Samples: For each type and color of water repellent and substrate indicated, 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm) in size, with specified water-repellent treatment applied to half of each Sample.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Applicator testing agency.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of water repellent, from manufacturer.
- C. Preconstruction Testing Reports: For water-repellent-treated substrates.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Applicator Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. MPI Standards: Comply with MPI standards indicated and provide water repellents listed in its "MPI Approved Products List."
- C. Mockups: Apply water repellent to each type of substrate required.
  1. Locate each test application as directed by Architect.
  2. Size: 25 sq. ft. (2.3 sq. m).

3. Final approval by Architect of color and water-repellent application will be from test applications.

D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Limitations: Proceed with application only when the following existing and forecasted weather and substrate conditions permit water repellents to be applied according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements:

1. Concrete surfaces and mortar have cured for not less than 28 days.
2. Building has been closed in for not less than 30 days before treating wall assemblies.
3. Ambient temperature is above 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below 100 deg F (37.8 deg C) and will remain so for 24 hours.
4. Substrate is not frozen and substrate-surface temperature is above 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below 100 deg F (37.8 deg C).
5. Rain or snow is not predicted within 24 hours.
6. Not less than seven days have passed since surfaces were last wet.
7. Windy conditions do not exist that might cause water repellent to be blown onto vegetation or surfaces not intended to be treated.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer and Applicator agree(s) to repair or replace materials that fail to maintain water repellency specified in "Performance Requirements" Article within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five (5) years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PENETRATING WATER REPELLENTS

A. Silane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, containing twenty percent (20%) or more solids of alkyltrialkoxysilanes; with alcohol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with 400 g/L or less of VOCs.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Advanced Chemical Technologies, Inc.
  - b. BASF Construction Chemicals, LLC.
  - c. Chemical Products Industries, Inc.; SW-244-100 VOC.
  - d. Dayton Superior Corporation; Weather Worker J-29-WB.
  - e. Degussa Corp.
  - f. Fox Industries, Inc.
  - g. Kelly-Moore Paint Company Inc.; Kel-Seal 77.
  - h. LymTal International, Inc.
  - i. Nox-Crete Products Group.
  - j. Pecora Corporation.
  - k. Price Research, Ltd.
  - l. PROSOCO, Inc.
  - m. Specco Industries, Inc.; Waterstopper S-40 Silane.
  - n. Tamms Industries, Inc., Euclid Chemical Company (The); Baracade Silane 100.

- o. Textured Coatings of America, Inc.
- p. Tnemec Inc.
- q. Vexcon Chemicals Inc.
- r. Wacker Chemical Corporation.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements and conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that surfaces are clean and dry according to water-repellent manufacturer's requirements. Check moisture content in three representative locations by method recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Inspect for previously applied treatments that may inhibit penetration or performance of water repellents.
  - 3. Verify that there is no efflorescence or other removable residues that would be trapped beneath the application of water repellent.
  - 4. Verify that required repairs are complete, cured, and dry before applying water repellent.
- B. Test pH level according to water-repellent manufacturer's written instructions to ensure chemical bond to silica-containing or siliceous minerals.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Cleaning: Before application of water repellent, clean substrate of substances that could impair penetration or performance of product according to water-repellent manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
  - 1. Cast-in-Place Concrete Precast Concrete Cast Stone and Concrete Unit Masonry: Remove oil, curing compounds, laitance, and other substances that inhibit penetration or performance of water repellents according to ASTM E 1857.
- B. Protect adjoining work, including mortar and sealant bond surfaces, from spillage or blow-over of water repellent. Cover adjoining and nearby surfaces of aluminum and glass if there is the possibility of water repellent being deposited on surfaces. Cover live vegetation.
- C. Coordination with Mortar Joints: Do not apply water repellent until pointing mortar for joints adjacent to surfaces receiving water-repellent treatment has been installed and cured.
- D. Coordination with Sealant Joints: Do not apply water repellent until sealants for joints adjacent to surfaces receiving water-repellent treatment have been installed and cured.
  - 1. Water-repellent work may precede sealant application only if sealant adhesion and compatibility have been tested and verified using substrate, water repellent, and sealant materials identical to those required.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect the substrate before application of water repellent and to instruct Applicator on the product and application method to be used.
- B. Apply a heavy-saturation coating of water repellent, on surfaces indicated for treatment, using 15 psi- (103 kPa-) pressure spray with a fan-type spray nozzle roller or brush to the point of saturation. Apply coating in dual passes of uniform, overlapping strokes. Remove excess material; do not allow material to puddle beyond saturation. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for application procedure unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Precast Concrete and Cast Stone: At Contractor's option, first application of water repellent on units may be completed before installing them. Mask mortar and sealant bond surfaces to prevent water repellent from migrating onto joint surfaces.
- C. Apply a second saturation coating, repeating first application. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for limitations on drying time between coats and after rainstorm wetting of surfaces between coats. Consult manufacturer's technical representative if written instructions are not applicable to Project conditions.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Water-Repellent Material: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure at any time and as often as Owner deems necessary during the period when water repellent is being applied:
  - 1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample water-repellent material being used. Samples of material delivered to Project site will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
  - 2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance of water-repellent material with product requirements.
  - 3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying water repellents if test results show material being used does not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying material from Project site, pay for testing, and correct deficiency of surfaces treated with rejected materials, as approved by Architect.
- B. Coverage Test: In the presence of Architect, hose down a dry, repellent-treated surface to verify complete and uniform product application. A change in surface color will indicate incomplete application.
  - 1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times when surfaces will be tested.
  - 2. Reapply water repellent until coverage test indicates complete coverage.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Immediately clean water repellent from adjoining surfaces and surfaces soiled or damaged by water-repellent application as work progresses. Correct damage to work of other trades caused by water-repellent application, as approved by Architect.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written cleaning instructions.

END OF SECTION 071900

## SECTION 072100 - THERMAL INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Foam-plastic board insulation.
2. Glass-fiber blanket insulation.
3. Spray polyurethane foam insulation.
4. Radiant barriers.
5. Vapor retarders.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for insulation installed in cavity walls and masonry cells.
2. Division 07 Section "Water-Drainage Exterior Insulation and Finish System (EIFS)" for insulation specified as part of these systems.
3. Division 07 Section(s) "Styrene-Butadiene-Styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing" for insulation specified as part of roofing construction.
4. Division 07 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" for insulation installed as part of a perimeter fire-resistive joint system.
5. Division 09 Section(s) "Gypsum Board Shaft Wall Assemblies" for installation in wood- and metal-framed assemblies of insulation specified by referencing this Section.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each product.
- B. Research/Evaluation Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:

1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site before installation time.
3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD INSULATION

- A. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, of type and minimum compressive strength indicated below, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. DiversiFoam Products.
    - b. Dow Chemical Company (The).
    - c. Owens Corning.
    - d. Pactiv Building Products.
  2. Type X, 15 psi (104 kPa).

### 2.2 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. CertainTeed Corporation.
  2. Guardian Building Products, Inc.
  3. Johns Manville.
  4. Knauf Insulation.
  5. Owens Corning.
- B. Unfaced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
- C. Polypropylene-Scrim-Kraft-Faced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type II (non-reflective faced), Class A (faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier).
- D. Reinforced-Foil-Faced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type III (reflective faced), Class A (faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil scrim, foil-scrim kraft, or foil-scrim polyethylene.
- E. Foil-Faced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type III (reflective faced), Class B (faced surface with a flame-propagation resistance of 0.12 W/sq. cm); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil scrim, foil-scrim kraft, or foil-scrim polyethylene.
- F. Eave Ventilation Troughs: Preformed, rigid fiberboard or plastic sheets designed and sized to fit between roof framing members and to provide cross ventilation between insulated attic spaces and vented eaves.

## 2.3 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: ASTM D 4397, 6 mils (0.15 mm) or 10 mils (0.25 mm) thick, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).
- B. Reinforced-Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: Two (2) outer layers of polyethylene film laminated to an inner reinforcing layer consisting of either nylon cord or polyester scrim and weighing not less than 25 lb/1000 sq. ft. (12 kg/100 sq. m), with maximum permeance rating of 0.0507 perm (2.9 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Raven Industries Inc.; DURA-SKRIM 6WW.
    - b. Reef Industries, Inc.; Griffolyn T-65.
- C. Fire-Retardant, Reinforced-Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: Two (2) outer layers of polyethylene film laminated to an inner reinforcing layer consisting of either nonwoven grid of nylon cord or polyester scrim and weighing not less than 22 lb/1000 sq. ft. (10 kg/100 sq. m), with maximum permeance rating of 0.1317 perm (7.56 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) and with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of not more than 5 and 60, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Raven Industries Inc.; DURA-SKRIM 2FR.
    - b. Reef Industries, Inc.; Griffolyn T-55 FR.
- D. Foil-Polyester-Film Vapor Retarders: Two (2) layers of 0.5-mil- (0.013-mm-) thick polyester film laminated to an inner layer of 1-mil- (0.025-mm-) thick aluminum foil, with maximum water-vapor transmission rate in flat condition of 0.0 g/h x sq. m and with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5, per ASTM E 84.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Alumiseal Corporation; Zero Perm Vapor Barrier.
- E. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
- F. Vapor-Retarder Fasteners: Pancake-head, self-tapping steel drill screws; with fender washers.
- G. Single-Component Nonsag Urethane Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type I, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT related to exposure, and Use O related to vapor-barrier-related substrates.
- H. Adhesive for Vapor Retarders: Product recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer and has demonstrated capability to bond vapor retarders securely to substrates indicated.

## 2.4 INSULATION FASTENERS

- A. Adhesively Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of specified thickness securely in position indicated with self-locking washer in place.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. AGM Industries, Inc.; Series T TACTOO Insul-Hangers.
    - b. Gemco; Spindle Type.
  2. Plate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.762 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
  3. Spindle: Copper-coated, low-carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
- B. Adhesively Attached, Angle-Shaped, Spindle-Type Anchors: Angle welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of specified thickness securely in position indicated with self-locking washer in place.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Gemco; 90-Degree Insulation Hangers.
  2. Angle: Formed from 0.030-inch- (0.762-mm-) thick, perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet with each leg 2 inches (50 mm) square.
  3. Spindle: Copper-coated, low-carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch (2.67 mm) in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
- C. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge for increased stiffness, sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) square or in diameter.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. AGM Industries, Inc.
    - b. Gemco
  2. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in the following locations:
    - a. Crawl spaces.
    - b. Ceiling plenums.
    - c. Attic spaces.
    - d. Where indicated.
- D. Insulation Standoff: Spacer fabricated from galvanized mild-steel sheet for fitting over spindle of insulation anchor to maintain air space of 1 inch (25 mm) between face of insulation and substrate to which anchor is attached.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Gemco; Clutch Clip.
- E. Anchor Adhesive: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation anchors securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, fasteners, and substrates.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. AGM Industries, Inc.; TACTOO Adhesive.
  - b. Gemco; Tuff Bond Hanger Adhesive.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation or vapor retarders, including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders, or that interfere with insulation attachment.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF BELOW-GRADE INSULATION

- A. On vertical surfaces, set insulation units using manufacturer's recommended adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) below exterior grade line.
- B. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.
  1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of 24 inches (610 mm) in from exterior walls.

#### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF CAVITY-WALL INSULATION

- A. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Install pads of adhesive spaced approximately 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. both ways on inside face, and as recommended by manufacturer. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions. Press units firmly against inside substrates.
  1. Supplement adhesive attachment of insulation by securing boards with two-piece wall ties designed for this purpose and specified in Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry."

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION FOR FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.
- B. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Seal joints between units by applying adhesive, mastic, or sealant to edges of each unit to form a tight seal as units are shoved into place. Fill voids in completed installation with adhesive, mastic, or sealant as recommended by insulation manufacturer.
- C. Glass-Fiber or Mineral-Wool Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
  - 1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
  - 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
  - 3. Maintain 3-inch (76-mm) clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
  - 4. Install eave ventilation troughs between roof framing members in insulated attic spaces at vented eaves.
  - 5. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches (2438 mm), support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
  - 6. For wood-framed construction, install blankets according to ASTM C 1320 and as follows:
    - a. With faced blankets having stapling flanges, secure insulation by inset, stapling flanges to sides of framing members.
    - b. With faced blankets having stapling flanges, lap blanket flange over flange of adjacent blanket to maintain continuity of vapor retarder once finish material is installed over it.
  - 7. Vapor-Retarder-Faced Blankets: Tape joints and ruptures in vapor-retarder facings, and seal each continuous area of insulation to ensure airtight installation.
    - a. Exterior Walls: Set units with facing placed toward as indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Interior Walls: Set units with facing placed as indicated on Drawings.
- D. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:
  - 1. Spray Polyurethane Insulation: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION IN CEILINGS FOR SOUND ATTENUATION

- A. Where glass-fiber blankets are indicated for sound attenuation above ceilings, install blanket insulation over entire ceiling area in thicknesses indicated. Extend insulation 48 inches (1219 mm) up either side of partitions.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF RADIANT BARRIERS

- A. Install interior radiation control coating system according to ASTM C 1321.
- B. Install sheet radiant barriers according to ASTM C 1158.

### 3.8 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION FOR CONCRETE SUBSTRATES

- A. Install board insulation on concrete substrates by adhesively attached, spindle-type insulation anchors as follows:
  - 1. Fasten insulation anchors to concrete substrates with insulation anchor adhesive according to anchor manufacturer's written instructions. Space anchors according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions for insulation type, thickness, and application indicated.
  - 2. Apply insulation standoffs to each spindle to create cavity width indicated between concrete substrate and insulation.
  - 3. After adhesive has dried, install board insulation by pressing insulation into position over spindles and securing it tightly in place with insulation-retaining washers, taking care not to compress insulation below indicated thickness.
  - 4. Where insulation will not be covered by other building materials, apply capped washers to tips of spindles.

### 3.9 INSTALLATION OF CURTAIN-WALL INSULATION

- A. Install board insulation in curtain-wall construction where indicated on Drawings according to curtain-wall manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Hold insulation in place by securing metal clips and straps or integral pockets within window frames, spaced at intervals recommended in writing by insulation manufacturer to hold insulation securely in place without touching spandrel glass. Maintain cavity width of dimension indicated between insulation and glass.
  - 2. Install insulation where it contacts perimeter fire-containment system to prevent insulation from bowing under pressure from perimeter fire-containment system.

### 3.10 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Place vapor retarders on side of construction indicated on Drawings. Extend vapor retarders to extremities of areas to protect from vapor transmission. Secure vapor retarders in place with adhesives or other anchorage system as indicated. Extend vapor retarders to cover miscellaneous voids in insulated substrates, including those filled with loose-fiber insulation.
- B. Seal vertical joints in vapor retarders over framing by lapping no fewer than two (2) studs.
  - 1. Fasten vapor retarders to wood framing at top, end, and bottom edges; at perimeter of wall openings; and at lap joints. Space fasteners 16 inches (406 mm) o.c.
  - 2. Before installing vapor retarders, apply urethane sealant to flanges of metal framing including runner tracks, metal studs, and framing around door and window openings. Seal overlapping joints in vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape according to vapor-retarder manufacturer's written instructions. Seal butt joints with vapor-retarder tape. Locate all joints over framing members or other solid substrates.
  - 3. Firmly attach vapor retarders to metal framing and solid substrates with vapor-retarder fasteners as recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.
- C. Seal joints caused by pipes, conduits, electrical boxes, and similar items penetrating vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape to create an airtight seal between penetrating objects and vapor retarders.
- D. Repair tears or punctures in vapor retarders immediately before concealment by other work. Cover with vapor-retarder tape or another layer of vapor retarders.

3.11 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation and vapor retarders from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 072100

SECTION 072419 - WATER-DRAINAGE EXTERIOR INSULATION AND FINISH SYSTEM (EIFS)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes water-drainage exterior insulation and finish system (EIFS) applied over water-resistive coating over sheathing.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 06 Section "Sheathing" for sheathing and weather-resistant sheathing paper.
  - 2. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in EIFS with elastomeric joint sealants.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Class PB EIFS: A non-load-bearing, exterior wall cladding system that consists of an insulation board attached adhesively, mechanically, or both to the substrate; an integrally reinforced base coat; and a textured protective finish coat.
- B. Water-Drainage EIFS: EIFS with a means that allows water entering into an EIFS assembly to drain to the exterior.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. EIFS Performance: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Bond Integrity: Free from bond failure within EIFS components or between system and supporting wall construction, resulting from exposure to fire, wind loads, weather, or other in-service conditions.
  - 2. Weathertightness: Resistant to water penetration from exterior into water-drainage EIFS and assemblies behind it or through them into interior of building that results in deterioration of thermal-insulating effectiveness or other degradation of EIFS and assemblies behind it, including substrates, supporting wall construction, and interior finish, and including a means that allows water entering into an EIFS assembly to drain to the exterior.
- B. Class PB EIFS: Provide EIFS having physical properties and structural performance that comply with the following:
  - 1. Abrasion Resistance: Sample consisting of 1-inch- (25.4-mm-) thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) thick gypsum board; cured for a minimum of 28 days; and showing no cracking, checking, or loss of film integrity after exposure to 528 quarts (500 L) of sand when tested per ASTM D 968, Method A.
  - 2. Absorption-Freeze Resistance: No visible deleterious effects and negligible weight loss after sixty (60) cycles per EIMA 101.01.
  - 3. Accelerated Weathering: Five (5) samples per ICC-ES AC235 showing no cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, delamination, or other characteristics that might affect performance as a wall cladding after testing for 2,000 hours when viewed under five (5) times magnification per ASTM G 153 or ASTM G 154 and ASTM G 155.

4. Freeze-Thaw: No surface changes, cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, or delamination, or indications of delamination between components when viewed under 5 times magnification after ten (10) cycles per ICC-ES AC235.
5. Mildew Resistance of Finish Coat: Sample applied to 2-by-2-inch (50.8-by-50.8-mm) clean glass substrate, cured for twenty-eight (28) days, and showing no growth when tested per ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274.
6. Salt-Spray Resistance: No deleterious affects when tested according to ICC-ES AC235.
7. Tensile Adhesion: No failure in the EIFS, adhesive, base coat, or finish coat when tested per ICC-ES AC235.
8. Water Penetration: Sample consisting of 1-inch- (25.4-mm-) thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) thick gypsum board, cured for twenty-eight (28) days, and showing no water penetration into the plane of the base coat to expanded polystyrene board interface of the test specimen after fifteen (15) minutes at 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (299 Pa) of air pressure difference or twenty percent (20%) of positive design wind pressure, whichever is greater, across the specimen during a test period when tested per EIMA 101.02.
9. Water Resistance: Three (2) samples, each consisting of 1-inch- (25.4-mm-) thick EIFS mounted on 1/2-inch- (12.7-mm-) thick gypsum board; cured for twenty-eight (28) days; and showing no cracking, checking, crazing, erosion, rusting, blistering, peeling, or delamination after testing for fourteen (14) days per ASTM D 2247.
10. Impact Resistance: Sample consisting of 1-inch- (25.4-mm-) thick EIFS when constructed, conditioned, and tested per EIMA 101.86; and meeting or exceeding the following:
  - a. Medium Impact Resistance: 50 to 89 inch-lb (5.7 to 10.1 J).
11. Drainage: According to ICC-ES AC24 and ICC-ES AC235.
12. Structural Performance Testing: EIFS assembly and components shall comply with ICC-ES AC235 when tested per ASTM E 330.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and component of EIFS indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For EIFS. Include plans, elevations, sections, details of components, details of penetration and termination, flashing details, joint locations and configurations, fastening and anchorage details including mechanical fasteners, and connections and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of finish-coat color and texture indicated.
  1. Include similar Samples of joint sealants and exposed accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: 24-inch- (600-mm-) square panels for each type of finish-coat color and texture indicated, prepared using same tools and techniques intended for actual work including custom trim, each profile, an aesthetic reveal, a typical control joint filled with sealant of color selected.
  1. Include sealants and exposed accessory Samples to verify color selected.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing agency.
- B. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that EIFS and joint sealants comply with requirements.
- C. Material or Product Certificates: For cementitious materials and aggregates and for each insulation and joint sealant, from manufacturer.

- D. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each water-/weather-resistive barrier, insulation, reinforcing mesh, joint sealant, and coating.
  - E. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: For joint sealants from sealant manufacturer indicating the following:
    - 1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
    - 2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
  - F. Field quality-control reports and special inspection reports.
  - G. Evaluation Reports: For exterior cement-board sheathing fasteners water-resistive coating adhesive membrane flashing and EIFS (including insulation), from applicable model code organization.
- 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Maintenance Data: For EIFS to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: An installer who is certified in writing by EIFS manufacturer as qualified to install manufacturer's system using trained workers.
  - B. Source Limitations: Obtain EIFS from single source from single EIFS manufacturer and from sources approved by EIFS manufacturer as compatible with system components.
  - C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide EIFS and system components with the following fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical EIFS and system components per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
    - 1. Fire-Resistance Characteristics: Provide materials and construction tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119.
    - 2. Full-Scale Multistory Fire Test: Tested mockup, representative of completed multistory wall assembly of which EIFS is a part, complies with UBC Standard 26-4 for test method and required fire-test-response characteristics of exterior non-load-bearing wall panel assemblies containing foam-plastic insulation.
    - 3. Full-Scale Diversified Fire Test: Tested mockup, representative of completed multistory wall assembly of which EIFS is a part, showing no significant contribution to vertical or horizontal flame spread per ASTM E 108 modified for testing vertical walls.
    - 4. Intermediate-Scale Multistory Fire Test: Tested mockup, representative of completed multistory wall assembly of which EIFS is a part, complies with NFPA 285 for test method and required fire-test-response characteristics of exterior non-load-bearing wall panel assemblies containing foam-plastic insulation.
    - 5. Radiant Heat Exposure: No ignition of EIFS when tested according to NFPA 268.
    - 6. Potential Heat: Acceptable level when tested according to NFPA 259.
    - 7. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Provide insulation board, adhesives, base coats, and finish coats with flame-spread index of 25 or less and smoke-developed index of 450 or less, per ASTM E 84.
  - D. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.

1. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in original, unopened packages with manufacturers' labels intact and clearly identifying products.

B. Store materials inside and under cover; keep them dry and protected from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, aging, corrosion, damaging temperatures, construction traffic, and other causes.

1. Stack insulation board flat and off the ground.
2. Protect plastic insulation against ignition at all times. Do not deliver plastic insulating materials to Project site before installation time.
3. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

#### 1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Maintain ambient temperatures above 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) for a minimum of twenty-four (24) hours before, during, and after adhesives or coatings are applied. Do not apply EIFS adhesives or coatings during rainfall. Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions and ambient outdoor air, humidity, and substrate temperatures permit EIFS to be applied, dried, and cured according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

#### 1.11 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate installation of EIFS with related Work specified in other Sections to ensure that wall assemblies, including sheathing, weather-resistant sheathing paper, flashing, trim, joint sealants, windows, and doors, are protected against damage from the effects of weather, age, corrosion, moisture, and other causes. Do not allow water to penetrate behind flashing and drainage plane that is behind water-drainage EIFS.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Acrocrete, Inc.
2. Corev America, Inc.
3. Dryvit Systems, Inc.
4. El Rey Stucco Company, Inc.; a brand of ParexLahabra, Inc.
5. Finestone; Degussa Wall Systems, Inc.
6. Master Wall, Inc.
7. Omega Products International, Inc.
8. Parex, Inc.; a brand of ParexLahabra, Inc.
9. Pleko LLC.
10. Senergy; Degussa Wall Systems, Inc.
11. SonoWall; Degussa Wall Systems, Inc.
12. Sto Corp.

13. Stuc-O-Flex International, Inc.
14. TEC; an H. B. Fuller company.
15. Total Wall Inc.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Compatibility: Provide water-resistive coating, adhesive, fasteners, board insulation, reinforcing meshes, base- and finish-coat systems, sealants, and accessories that are compatible with one another and with substrates and approved for use by EIFS manufacturer for Project.
- B. Exterior Cement Board: Not less than 7/16-inch- (11-mm-) thick, fiber cement board complying with ASTM C 1186, Type A, for exterior applications.
  1. Fasteners: Wafer-head or flat-head steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 954, with an organic-polymer coating or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 500 hours per ASTM B 117.
    - a. Size and Length: As recommended by sheathing manufacturer for type and thickness of sheathing board to be attached.
- C. Water-Resistive Coatings: EIFS manufacturer's standard formulation and accessories for use as water/weather-resistive barriers, compatible with substrate, and complying with physical and performance criteria of ICC-ES AC209 and ICC-ES AC212.
  1. Sheathing Joint Compound and Tape: Type recommended by EIFS manufacturer for sealing joints between and penetrations through sheathing.
- D. Primer/Sealer: EIFS manufacturer's standard substrate conditioner designed to seal substrates from moisture penetration and to improve the bond between substrate of type indicated and adhesive used for application of insulation.
- E. Flexible-Membrane Flashing: Cold-applied, fully self-adhering, self-healing, rubberized-asphalt and polyethylene-film composite sheet or tape and primer; EIFS manufacturer's standard or product recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer.
- F. Drainage Mat: EIFS manufacturer's standard or product recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer with manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant mechanical fasteners suitable for intended substrate.
- G. Spacers: furring strips; EIFS manufacturer's standard or product recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer with manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant mechanical fasteners suitable for intended substrate.
- H. Insulation Adhesive: EIFS manufacturer's standard formulation designed for indicated use; compatible with substrate; and complying with the following:
  1. Job-mixed formulation of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I, and polymer-based adhesive specified for base coat.
  2. Factory-blended dry formulation of portland cement, dry polymer admixture, and fillers specified for base coat.
  3. Factory-mixed non-cementitious formulation designed for adhesive attachment of insulation to substrates of type indicated, as recommended by EIFS manufacturer.
- I. Molded, Rigid Cellular Polystyrene Board Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 578, Type I; EIFS manufacturer's requirements; and EIMA's "EIMA Guideline Specification for Expanded Polystyrene

(EPS) Insulation Board" for most stringent requirements for material performance and qualities of insulation, including dimensions and permissible variations, and the following:

1. Aging: Before cutting and shipping, age insulation in block form by air drying for not less than six weeks or by another method approved by EIMA that produces equivalent results.
  2. Flame-Spread and Smoke-Developed Indexes: 25 and 450 or less, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
  3. Dimensions: Provide insulation boards not more than 24 by 48 inches (610 by 1219 mm) and in thickness indicated but not more than 4 inches (102 mm) thick or less than thickness allowed by ASTM C 1397.
  4. Channeled Board Insulation: EIFS manufacturer's standard factory-fabricated profile with linear, vertical drainage channels, slots, or waves on the back side of board.
  5. Board Insulation Closure Blocks: EIFS manufacturer's standard density, size, and configuration.
  6. Foam Shapes: Provide with profiles and dimensions indicated on Drawings.
- J. Reinforcing Mesh: Balanced, alkali-resistant, open-weave, glass-fiber mesh treated for compatibility with other EIFS materials, made from continuous multi-end strands with retained mesh tensile strength of not less than 120 lbf/in. (21 dN/cm) per EIMA 105.01; complying with ASTM D 578 and the following:
1. Standard-Impact Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 4.0 oz./sq. yd. Retain second option in first subparagraph below for HUD-insured projects.
  2. Intermediate-Impact Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 10 oz./sq. yd.
  3. High-Impact Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 15 oz./sq. yd.
  4. Heavy-Duty Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 20 oz./sq. yd.
  5. Strip Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 3.75 oz./sq. yd.
  6. Detail Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 4.0 oz./sq. yd..
  7. Corner Reinforcing Mesh: Not less than 7.2 oz./sq. yd..
- K. Base-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard mixture complying with one of the following requirements:
1. Job-mixed formulation of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I, white or natural color; and manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive designed for use with portland cement.
  2. Job-combined formulation of manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive and manufacturer's standard dry mix containing portland cement.
  3. Factory-blended dry formulation of portland cement, dry polymer admixture, and inert fillers to which only water is added at Project site.
  4. Factory-mixed non-cementitious formulation of polymer-emulsion adhesive and inert fillers that is ready to use without adding other materials.
- L. Waterproof Adhesive/Base-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard waterproof formulation and complying with one of the following:
1. Job-mixed formulation of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I, white or natural color; and manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive designed for use with portland cement.
  2. Job-combined formulation of manufacturer's standard polymer-emulsion adhesive and manufacturer's standard dry mix containing portland cement.
- M. Primer: EIFS manufacturer's standard factory-mixed, elastomeric-polymer primer for preparing base-coat surface for application of finish coat.
- N. Finish-Coat Materials: EIFS manufacturer's standard acrylic-based coating with enhanced mildew resistance complying with the following:

1. Factory-mixed formulation of polymer-emulsion binder, colorfast mineral pigments, sound stone particles, and fillers.
2. Sealer: Manufacturer's waterproof, clear acrylic-based sealer for protecting finish coat.
3. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

O. Water: Potable.

P. Mechanical Fasteners: EIFS manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant fasteners consisting of thermal cap, standard washer and shaft attachments, and fastener indicated below; selected for properties of pullout, tensile, and shear strength required to resist design loads of application indicated; capable of pulling fastener head below surface of insulation board; and of the following description:

1. For attachment to steel studs from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) in thickness, provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 954.
2. For attachment to light-gage steel framing members not less than 0.0179 inch (0.45 mm) in thickness, provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 1002.
3. For attachment to wood framing members and plywood sheathing, provide steel drill screws complying with ASTM C 1002, Type W.
4. For attachment to masonry and concrete substrates, provide sheathing dowel in form of a plastic wing-tipped fastener with thermal cap, sized to fit insulation thickness indicated and to penetrate substrate to depth required to secure anchorage.
5. For attachment, provide manufacturer's standard fasteners suitable for substrate.

Q. Trim Accessories: Type as designated or required to suit conditions indicated and to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions; manufactured from UV-stabilized PVC; and complying with ASTM D 1784, manufacturer's standard Cell Class for use intended, and ASTM C 1063.

1. Casing Bead: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg.
2. Drip Screed/Track: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation with face leg extended to form a drip, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg.
3. Weep Screed/Track: Prefabricated, one-piece type for attachment behind insulation with perforated face leg extended to form a drip and weep holes in track bottom, of depth required to suit thickness of coating and insulation, with face leg perforated for bonding to coating and back leg; designed to drain incidental moisture that gets into wall construction to the exterior at terminations of EIFS with drainage.
4. Expansion Joint: Prefabricated, one-piece V profile; designed to relieve stress of movement.
5. Window Sill Flashing: Prefabricated type for both flashing and sloping sill over framing beneath windows; with end and back dams; designed to direct water to exterior.
6. Parapet Cap Flashing: Type for both flashing and covering parapet top with design complying with ASTM C 1397.

### 2.3 ELASTOMERIC SEALANTS

A. Elastomeric Sealant Products: Provide EIFS manufacturer's listed and recommended chemically curing, elastomeric sealant that is compatible with joint fillers, joint substrates, and other related materials, and complies with requirements for products and testing indicated in ASTM C 1481 and with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for products corresponding to description indicated below:

1. Multicomponent, nonsag urethane sealant.
2. Single-component, nonsag, neutral-curing silicone sealant.
3. Sealants used inside the weatherproofing system shall have a VOC content of g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

4. Sealants used inside the weatherproofing system shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. Preformed Foam Sealant Products: Provide sealant compatible with adjacent materials and complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

C. Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

## 2.4 MIXING

A. General: Comply with EIFS manufacturer's requirements for combining and mixing materials. Do not introduce admixtures, water, or other materials except as recommended by EIFS manufacturer. Mix materials in clean containers. Use materials within time period specified by EIFS manufacturer or discard.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of EIFS.

B. Examine roof edges, wall framing, flashings, openings, substrates, and junctures at other construction for suitable conditions where EIFS will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

1. Begin coating application only after surfaces are dry.
2. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Protect contiguous work from moisture deterioration and soiling caused by application of EIFS. Provide temporary covering and other protection needed to prevent spattering of exterior finish coats on other work.

B. Protect EIFS, substrates, and wall construction behind them from inclement weather during installation. Prevent penetration of moisture behind drainage plane of EIFS and deterioration of substrates.

C. Prepare and clean substrates to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to obtain optimum bond between substrate and adhesive for insulation.

### 3.3 EXTERIOR CEMENT-BOARD INSTALLATION

A. Exterior Cement Board: Install on metal framing to comply with cement-board manufacturer's written instructions and evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Install board with steel drill screws spaced no more than 8 inches (203 mm) o.c. along framing with perimeter fasteners at least 3/8 inch (9.6 mm) but less than 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) from edges of boards.

### 3.4 EIFS INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions for installation of EIFS as applicable to each type of substrate indicated.

### 3.5 SUBSTRATE PROTECTION APPLICATION

- A. Primer/Sealer: Apply over gypsum sheathing substrates to protect substrates from degradation and where required by EIFS manufacturer for improving adhesion of insulation to substrate.
- B. Water-Resistive Coatings: Apply over substrates to protect substrates from degradation and to provide water-/weather-resistive barrier.
  - 1. Tape and seal joints, exposed edges, terminations, and inside and outside corners of sheathing unless otherwise indicated by EIFS manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Waterproof Adhesive/Base Coat: Apply over sloped surfaces window, sills, parapets, and where indicated on Drawings to protect substrates from degradation.
- D. Flexible-Membrane Flashing: Install over weather-resistive barrier, applied and lapped to shed water; seal at openings, penetrations, terminations, and where indicated by EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to protect wall assembly from degradation. Prime substrates, if required, and install flashing to comply with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions and details.

### 3.6 TRIM INSTALLATION

- A. Trim: Apply trim accessories at perimeter of EIFS, at expansion joints, at window sills, and elsewhere as indicated, according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Coordinate with installation of insulation.
  - 1. Weep Screed/Track: Use at bottom termination edges, at window and door heads, and at floor line expansion joints of water-drainage EIFS unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Window Sill Flashing: Use at windows unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Expansion Joint: Use where indicated on Drawings.
  - 4. Casing Bead: Use at other locations.
  - 5. Parapet Cap Flashing: Use where indicated on Drawings.

### 3.7 DRAINAGE MAT INSTALLATION

- A. Drainage Mat: Apply wrinkle free, continuously, with edges overlapped and mechanically secured with fasteners over water-/weather-resistive barrier according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.8 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Board Insulation: Adhesively and mechanically attach insulation to substrate in compliance with ASTM C 1397, EIFS manufacturer's written instructions, and the following:
  - 1. Apply adhesive to insulation by notched-trowel method in a manner that results in coating the entire surface of sheathing with adhesive once insulation is adhered to sheathing unless EIFS manufacturer's written instructions specify using primer/sealer with ribbon-and-dab method. Apply adhesive to a thickness of not less than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for factory mixed and not less than 3/8 inch (9.6 mm) for field mixed, measured from surface of insulation before placement.
  - 2. Apply adhesive to insulation by notched-trowel method in a manner that results in coating the entire surface of drainage mat with adhesive once insulation is adhered to drainage mat.

3. Apply adhesive to ridges on back of insulation by notched-trowel method in a manner that results in full adhesive contact over the entire surface of ridges, leaving channels free of adhesive once insulation is adhered to substrate.
4. Press and slide insulation into place. Apply pressure over the entire surface of insulation to accomplish uniform contact, high initial grab, and overall level surface.
5. Allow adhered insulation to remain undisturbed for period recommended by EIFS manufacturer, but not less than 24 hours, before installing mechanical fasteners, beginning rasping and sanding insulation, or applying base coat and reinforcing mesh.
6. Mechanically attach insulation to substrate by method complying with EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Install top surface of fastener heads flush with plane of insulation. Install fasteners into or through substrates with the following minimum penetration:
  - a. Steel Framing: 5/16 inch (8 mm).
  - b. Wood Framing: 1 inch (25 mm).
  - c. Concrete and Masonry: 1 inch (25 mm).
7. Apply insulation over drainage mat and dry substrates in courses with long edges of boards oriented horizontally.
8. Begin first course of insulation from a level base line and work upward.
9. Begin first course of insulation from screed/track and work upward. Work from perimeter casing beads toward interior of panels if possible.
10. Stagger vertical joints of insulation boards in successive courses to produce running bond pattern. Locate joints so no piece of insulation is less than 12 inches (300 mm) wide or 6 inches (150 mm) high. Offset joints not less than 6 inches (150 mm) from corners of window and door openings and not less than 4 inches (100 mm) from aesthetic reveals.
  - a. Adhesive Attachment: Offset joints of insulation not less than 6 inches (150 mm) from horizontal and 4 inches (100 mm) from vertical joints in sheathing.
  - b. Mechanical Attachment: Offset joints of insulation from horizontal joints in sheathing.
11. Place insulation with adhesive strips and channels, slots, or waves aligned in the vertical position for drainage. Align drainage channels, slots, or waves with channels, slots, or waves in insulation boards above and below.
12. Interlock ends at internal and external corners.
13. Abut insulation tightly at joints within and between each course to produce flush, continuously even surfaces without gaps or raised edges between boards. If gaps greater than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) occur, fill with insulation cut to fit gaps exactly; insert insulation without using adhesive or other material.
14. Cut insulation to fit openings, corners, and projections precisely and to produce edges and shapes complying with details indicated.
15. Rasp or sand flush entire surface of insulation to remove irregularities projecting more than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) from surface of insulation and to remove yellowed areas due to sun exposure; do not create depressions deeper than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
16. Cut aesthetic reveals in outside face of insulation with high-speed router and bit configured to produce grooves, rabbets, and other features that comply with profiles and locations indicated. Do not reduce insulation thickness at aesthetic reveals to less than 3/4 inch (19 mm).
17. Install foam shapes and attach to structure.
18. Interrupt insulation for expansion joints where indicated.
19. Install insulation closure blocks using ribbon-and-dab method to create air zones where indicated.
20. Form joints for sealant application by leaving gaps between adjoining insulation edges and between insulation edges and dissimilar adjoining surfaces. Make gaps wide enough to produce joint widths indicated after encapsulating joint substrates with base coat and reinforcing mesh.
21. Form joints for sealant application with back-to-back casing beads for joints within EIFS and with perimeter casing beads at dissimilar adjoining surfaces. Make gaps between casing beads and between perimeter casing beads and adjoining surfaces of width indicated.

22. After installing insulation and before applying field-applied reinforcing mesh, fully wrap board edges. Cover edges of board and extend encapsulating mesh not less than 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) over front and back face unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
23. Treat exposed edges of insulation as follows:
  - a. Except for edges forming substrates of sealant joints, encapsulate with base coat, reinforcing mesh, and finish coat.
  - b. Encapsulate edges forming substrates of sealant joints within EIFS or between EIFS and other work with base coat and reinforcing mesh.
  - c. At edges trimmed by accessories, extend base coat, reinforcing mesh, and finish coat over face leg of accessories.
24. Coordinate installation of flashing and insulation to produce wall assembly that does not allow water to penetrate behind flashing and water-/weather-resistive barrier.

B. Expansion Joints: Install at locations indicated, where required by EIFS manufacturer, and as follows:

1. At expansion joints in substrates behind EIFS.
2. Where EIFS adjoin dissimilar substrates, materials, and construction, including other EIFS.
3. At floor lines in multilevel wood-framed construction.
4. Where wall height or building shape changes.
5. Where EIFS manufacturer requires joints in long continuous elevations.

### 3.9 BASE-COAT INSTALLATION

- A. Base Coat: Apply to exposed surfaces of insulation and foam shapes in minimum thickness recommended in writing by EIFS manufacturer, but not less than 1/16-inch (1.6-mm) dry-coat thickness.
- B. Reinforcing Mesh: Embed type indicated below in wet base coat to produce wrinkle-free installation with mesh continuous at corners and overlapped not less than 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) or otherwise treated at joints to comply with ASTM C 1397 and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions. Do not lap reinforcing mesh within 8 inches (204 mm) of corners. Completely embed mesh, applying additional base-coat material if necessary, so reinforcing-mesh color and pattern are not visible.
  1. Standard-impact reinforcing mesh unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Intermediate-impact reinforcing mesh where indicated.
  3. High-impact reinforcing mesh where indicated.
  4. Heavy-duty reinforcing mesh where indicated.
- C. Double-Layer Reinforcing Mesh Application: Where indicated, apply second base coat and second layer of intermediate-impact reinforcing mesh, overlapped not less than 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) or otherwise treated at joints to comply with ASTM C 1397 and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions in same manner as first application. Do not apply until first base coat has cured.
- D. Additional Reinforcing Mesh: Apply strip reinforcing mesh around openings extending 4 inches (100 mm) beyond perimeter. Apply additional 9-by-12-inch (230-by-300-mm) strip reinforcing mesh diagonally at corners of openings (re-entrant corners). Apply 8-inch- (200-mm-) wide strip reinforcing mesh at both inside and outside corners unless base layer of mesh is lapped not less than 4 inches (100 mm) on each side of corners.
  1. At aesthetic reveals, apply strip reinforcing mesh not less than 8 inches (200 mm) wide.
  2. Embed strip reinforcing mesh in base coat before applying first layer of reinforcing mesh.
- E. Foam Shapes: Fully embed reinforcing mesh in base coat.

- F. Double Base-Coat Application: Where indicated, apply second base coat in same manner and thickness as first application except without reinforcing mesh. Do not apply until first base coat has cured.

### 3.10 FINISH-COAT INSTALLATION

- A. Primer: Apply over dry base coat according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Finish Coat: Apply over dry primed base coat, maintaining a wet edge at all times for uniform appearance, in thickness required by EIFS manufacturer to produce a uniform finish of color and texture matching approved sample and free of cold joints, shadow lines, and texture variations.
  - 1. Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
  - 2. Embed aggregate in finish coat according to EIFS manufacturer's written instructions to produce a uniform applied-aggregate finish of color and texture matching approved sample.
- C. Sealer Coat: Apply over dry finish coat, in number of coats and thickness required by EIFS manufacturer.

### 3.11 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Prepare joints and apply sealants, of type and at locations indicated, to comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" and in ASTM C 1481.
  - 1. Apply joint sealants after base coat has cured but before applying finish coat.
  - 2. Clean surfaces to receive sealants to comply with indicated requirements and EIFS manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Apply primer recommended in writing by sealant manufacturer for surfaces to be sealed.
  - 4. Install sealant backing to control depth and configuration of sealant joint and to prevent sealant from adhering to back of joint.
  - 5. Apply masking tape to protect areas adjacent to sealant joints. Remove tape immediately after tooling joints, without disturbing joint seal.
  - 6. Recess sealant sufficiently from surface of EIFS so an additional sealant application, including cylindrical sealant backing, can be installed without protruding beyond EIFS surface.

### 3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
  - 1. According to ICC-ES AC24 and ICC-ES AC235.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. EIFS Tests and Inspections: For the following:
  - 1. According to ICC-ES AC24 and ICC-ES AC235.
- D. Remove and replace EIFS where test results indicate that EIFS do not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.13 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary covering and protection of other work. Promptly remove coating materials from window and door frames and other surfaces outside areas indicated to receive EIFS coatings.

END OF SECTION 072419

SECTION 072500 - WEATHER BARRIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Building wrap.
  - 2. Flexible flashing.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Evaluation Reports: For water-resistive barrier and flexible flashing, from ICC-ES.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER

- A. Building Paper: ASTM D 226, Type 1 (No. 15 asphalt-saturated organic felt), unperforated.
- B. Building Paper: Water-vapor-permeable, asphalt-saturated kraft building paper.
  - 1. Water vapor transmission not less than 35 g/sq. m x 24 hr per ASTM D 779.
  - 2. Water resistance not less than 1 hour per ASTM F 1249.
- C. Building Wrap: ASTM E 1677, Type I air barrier; with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, when tested according to ASTM E 84; UV stabilized; and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Styrofoam Weathermate Plus Brand Housewrap.
    - b. DuPont (E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Company); Tyvek.
    - c. Ludlow Coated Products;.
    - d. Pactiv, Inc.; GreenGuard.
    - e. Raven Industries Inc.; Fortress Pro Weather Protective Barrier.
    - f. Reemay, Inc.; Typar HouseWrap.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Per ASTM E 96/E 96M, Desiccant Method (Procedure A).
- D. Building-Wrap Tape: Pressure-sensitive plastic tape recommended by building-wrap manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in building wrap.

## 2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Flexible Flashing: Self-adhesive butyl rubber or rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than 0.025 inch (0.6 mm).
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. DuPont (E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Company); DuPont Flashing Tape.
    - b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Vycor Butyl Self Adhered Flashing.
    - c. Protecto Wrap Company; BT-25 XL.
    - d. Raven Industries Inc.; Fortress Flashshield.
    - e. Advanced Building Products Inc.; Wind-o-wrap.
    - f. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing; CCW-705-TWF Thru-Wall Flashing.
    - g. Fiberweb, Clark Hammerbeam Corp.; Aquaflash 500.
    - h. Fortifiber Building Systems Group;.
    - i. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.;.
    - j. MFM Building Products Corp.; Window Wrap.
    - k. Polyguard Products, Inc.;.
    - l. Sandell Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Presto-Seal.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 WATER-RESISTIVE BARRIER INSTALLATION

- A. Cover sheathing with water-resistive barrier as follows:
1. Cut back barrier 1/2 inch (13 mm) on each side of the break in supporting members at expansion-or control-joint locations.
  2. Apply barrier to cover vertical flashing with a minimum 4-inch (100-mm) overlap unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Building Paper: Apply horizontally with a 2-inch (50-mm) overlap and a 6-inch (150-mm) end lap; fasten to sheathing with galvanized staples or roofing nails.
- C. Building Wrap: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Seal seams, edges, fasteners, and penetrations with tape.
  2. Extend into jambs of openings and seal corners with tape.

### 3.2 FLEXIBLE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Apply flexible flashing where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Lap seams and junctures with other materials at least 4 inches (100 mm) except that at flashing flanges of other construction, laps need not exceed flange width.
  2. Lap flashing over water-resistive barrier at bottom and sides of openings.
  3. Lap water-resistive barrier over flashing at heads of openings.

END OF SECTION 072500

## SECTION 074113 - METAL ROOF PANELS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Standing-seam metal roof panels.
- 2. Metal soffit panels.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Division 05 Section "Steel Decking" for steel roof deck supporting metal roof panels.
- 2. Division 05 Section "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for cold-formed metal framing supporting metal roof panels.
- 3. Division 06 Section "Sheathing" for sheathing and weather-resistant sheathing paper.
- 4. Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Roofing" for custom-fabricated and on-site, roll-formed sheet metal roofing.
- 5. Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for field-formed fasciae, copings, flashings, roof drainage systems, and other sheet metal work not part of metal roof panel assemblies.
- 6. Division 07 Section "Roof Specialties" for manufactured fasciae, copings, roof drainage systems, and other roof specialties not part of metal roof panel assemblies.
- 7. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for field-applied sealants not otherwise specified in this Section.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Metal Roof Panel Assembly: Metal roof panels, attachment system components, miscellaneous metal framing, thermal insulation, and accessories necessary for a complete weathertight roofing system.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Metal roof panels shall comply with performance requirements without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Delegated Design: Design metal roof panel assembly, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Air Infiltration: Air leakage through assembly of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.3 L/s per sq. m) of roof area when tested according to ASTM E 1680 at the following test-pressure difference:
  - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: Negative 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa).
  - 2. Test-Pressure Difference: Positive and negative 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa).
  - 3. Positive Preload Test-Pressure Difference: Greater than or equal to 15.0 lbf/sq. ft. (720 Pa) and the greater of 75 percent of building live load or 50 percent of building design positive wind-pressure difference.
  - 4. Negative Preload Test-Pressure Difference: Fifty percent (50%) of design wind-uplift-pressure difference.

- D. Water Penetration: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 1646 at the following test-pressure difference:
1. Test-Pressure Difference: 2.86 lbf/sq. ft. (137 Pa).
  2. Test-Pressure Difference: Twenty percent (20%) of positive design wind pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa) and not more than 12.0 lbf/sq. ft. (575 Pa).
  3. Positive Preload Test-Pressure Difference: Greater than or equal to 15.0 lbf/sq. ft. (720 Pa) and the greater of seventy-five (75%) percent of building live load or fifty percent (50%) of building design positive wind-pressure difference.
  4. Negative Preload Test-Pressure Difference: Fifty percent (50%) of design wind-uplift-pressure difference.
- E. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 2140.
- F. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift-resistance class indicated.
1. Uplift Rating: UL 90.
- G. FMG Listing: Provide metal roof panels and component materials that comply with requirements in FMG 4471 as part of a panel roofing system and that are listed in FMG's "Approval Guide" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FMG markings.
1. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-105.
  2. Hail Resistance: SH.
- H. Structural Performance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592:
1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on the following minimum design wind pressures:
    - a. Uniform pressure of 30 lbf/sq. ft. (1436 Pa), acting inward or outward.
    - b. Uniform pressure as indicated on Drawings.
  2. Snow Loads: 30 lbf/sq. ft. (1436 Pa).
  3. Deflection Limits: Metal roof panel assemblies shall withstand wind and snow loads with vertical deflections no greater than 1/180 of the span.
- I. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
- J. Thermal Performance: Provide insulated metal roof panel assemblies with thermal-resistance value (R-value) indicated when tested according to ASTM C 518.
- 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of roof panel and accessory.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of metal roof panels; details of edge conditions, side-seam and endlap joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details. Distinguish between factory- and field-assembled work.
  - 1. Accessories: Include details of the following items, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches (1:10):
    - a. Flashing and trim.
    - b. Gutters.
    - c. Downspouts.
    - d. Roof curbs.
    - e. Snow guards.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal roof panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
  - 1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
  - 1. Metal Roof and Soffit Panels: 12 inches (300 mm) long by actual panel width. Include fasteners, clips, battens, closures, and other metal roof panel accessories.
  - 2. Trim and Closures: 12 inches (300 mm) long. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.
  - 3. Accessories: 12-inch- (300-mm-) long Samples for each type of accessory.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For metal roof panel assembly indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Snow Retention System Calculations: Include calculation of number and location of snow guards based on snow load, roof slope, panel length and finish, and seam type and spacing.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans, drawn to scale, on which the following are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Roof panels and attachments.
  - 2. Purlins and rafters.
  - 3. Roof-mounted items including roof hatches, equipment supports, pipe supports and penetrations, lighting fixtures, snow guards, and items mounted on roof curbs.
- B. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by manufacturer certifying that roof panels comply with energy performance requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
  - 1. Submit evidence of meeting performance requirements.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer, professional engineer and testing agency.
- D. Material Certificates: For thermal insulation and vapor retarders, from manufacturer.
- E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each product.

- F. Field quality-control reports.
- G. Warranties: Samples of special warranties.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For metal roof panels to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of metal roof panels from single source from single manufacturer.
- D. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Provide metal roof panels having insulation core material with the following surface-burning characteristics as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: Twenty-five (25) or less.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: Four hundred fifty (450) or less.
- E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide metal roof panels identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.
  - 2. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E 136.
- F. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Build mockup of typical roof eave, including fascia, and soffit as shown on Drawings; approximately four panels wide Insert size by full eave width, including insulation, underlayment, attachments, and accessories.
  - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 3. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, metal roof panel Installer, metal roof panel manufacturer's representative, deck purlin and rafter Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal roof panels including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
  - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 3. Review methods and procedures related to metal roof panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 4. Examine deck substrate purlin and rafter conditions for compliance with requirements, including flatness and attachment to structural members.

5. Review structural loading limitations of deck purlins and rafters during and after roofing.
6. Review flashings, special roof details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect metal roof panels.
7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and testing and inspecting if applicable.
8. Review temporary protection requirements for metal roof panel assembly during and after installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after metal roof panel installation.
10. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, sheets, metal roof panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal roof panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal roof panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal roof panels on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal roof panels to ensure dryness. Do not store metal roof panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Protect strippable protective covering on metal roof panels from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of metal roof panel installation.
- E. Protect foam-plastic insulation as follows:
  1. Do not expose to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
  2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic insulation materials to Project site before installation time.
  3. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

#### 1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit metal roof panel work to be performed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of construction contiguous with metal roof panels by field measurements before fabrication.

#### 1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate metal roof panels with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, and construction of decks, purlins and rafters, parapets, walls, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

## 1.12 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace metal roof panel assemblies that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
    - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
  2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal roof panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  2. Finish Warranty Period: Twenty (20) years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special Weathertightness Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace metal roof panel assemblies that fail to remain weathertight, including leaks, within specified warranty period.
1. Weathertight Warranty Period: Ten (10) years from date of Substantial Completion.
- D. Special Weathertightness Warranty for Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace standing-seam metal roof panel assemblies that fail to remain weathertight, including leaks, within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Twenty (20) years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PANEL MATERIALS

- A. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Restricted flatness steel sheet metallic coated by the hot-dip process and prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
1. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation, Grade 40 (Class AZM150 coating designation, Grade 275); structural quality.
  2. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
  3. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
    - a. 3-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than seventy percent (70%) PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

4. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

B. Panel Sealants:

1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, one hundred percent (100%) solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide and 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick.
2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane, polysulfide, or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal roof panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal roof panel manufacturer.
3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C 1311.

2.2 FIELD-INSTALLED THERMAL INSULATION

- A. Refer to Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation."
- B. Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: ASTM D 4397, 6 mils (0.15 mm) thick, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).
- C. Unfaced, Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 591, Type II, compressive strength of 35 psi (240 kPa), with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, based on tests performed.
- D. Faced, Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1 or 2 felt or glass-fiber mat, Grade 3, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, based on tests performed on unfaced core.
- E. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, Type IV, 1.60-lb/cu. ft. (26-kg/cu. m) minimum density unless otherwise indicated; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively.
- F. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578,, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively.

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: 30 to 40 mils (0.76 to 1.0 mm) thick minimum, consisting of slip-resisting, polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
  1. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at 240 deg F (116 deg C); ASTM D 1970.
  2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C); ASTM D 1970.
  3. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc., Div. of Carlisle Companies Inc.; CCW WIP 300HT.
    - b. Grace Construction Products; a unit of Grace, W. R. & Co.; Ultra.
    - c. Henry Company; Blueskin PE200 HT.
    - d. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC; MetShield.
    - e. Owens Corning; WeatherLock Metal High Temperature Underlayment.

- B. Felts: ASTM D 226, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felts.
- C. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's recommended slip sheet, of type required for application.

#### 2.4 SUBSTRATE BOARDS

- A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M.
  - 1. Type and Thickness: As indicated on plans.
  - 2. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Dens-Dek by Georgia-Pacific Corporation.
- B. Perlite Board: ASTM C 728, 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- C. Substrate-Board Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FMG 4470, designed for fastening substrate board to substrate.

#### 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FRAMING

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Framing, General: ASTM C 645, cold-formed metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180) hot-dip galvanized or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels:
  - 1. Nominal Thickness: As required to meet performance requirements.
  - 2. Depth: As required to meet performance requirements.
- C. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: Minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide flange.
  - 1. Nominal Thickness: As required to meet performance requirements.
  - 2. Depth: As required to meet performance requirements.
  - 3. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge type of steel sheet with nominal thickness of 0.040 inch (1.02 mm).
  - 4. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- (1.57-mm-) diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- (1.22-mm-) diameter wire.
- D. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches (32 mm), wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch (22 mm), and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.
  - 1. Nominal Thickness: As required to meet performance requirements.
- E. Fasteners for Miscellaneous Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten miscellaneous metal framing members to substrates.

#### 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws, bolts, nuts, self-locking rivets and bolts, end-welded studs, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal roof panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM, PVC, or neoprene sealing washers.
- B. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 15-mil (0.4-mm) dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.

## 2.7 STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

- A. General: Provide factory-formed metal roof panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting raised side edges of adjacent panels with joint type indicated and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips in side laps. Include clips, cleats, pressure plates, and accessories required for weathertight installation.
1. Steel Panel Systems: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with ASTM E 1514.
  2. Aluminum Panel Systems: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with ASTM E 1637.
  3. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) nominal thickness.
    - a. Exterior Finish: 3-coat fluoropolymer.
    - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
  4. Batten: Same material, finish, and color as roof panels.
  5. Clips: Floating to accommodate thermal movement.
    - a. Material: 0.064-inch- (1.63-mm-) nominal thickness, aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
    - b. Material: 0.062-inch- (1.59-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet.
- B. Vertical-Rib, Seamed-Joint, Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Formed with vertical ribs at panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced flat pan between ribs; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under one side of panels and engaging opposite edge of adjacent panels, and mechanically seaming panels together.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. AEP-Span.
    - b. Architectural Building Components.
    - c. Architectural Metal Systems.
    - d. Architectural Roofing and Siding, Inc.
    - e. ATAS International, Inc.
    - f. Berridge Manufacturing Company.
    - g. Butler Manufacturing; a BlueScope Steel company.
    - h. CENTRIA Architectural Systems.
    - i. Copper Sales, Inc.
    - j. Dimensional Metals, Inc.
    - k. Englert, Inc.
    - l. Fabral.
    - m. Flexospan Steel Buildings, Inc.
    - n. Integris Metals.
    - o. MBCI; a division of NCI Building Systems, L. P.
    - p. McElroy Metal, Inc.
    - q. Merchant & Evans.
    - r. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC.
    - s. Metal Sales Manufacturing Corporation.
    - t. Metecno-Morin; Division of Metecno Inc.
    - u. Petersen Aluminum Corporation.

- v. SteeloX Systems, L.L.C.
  - w. Ultra Seam Incorporated.
  - x. United Steel Deck Inc.; Subsidiary of Bouras Industries Inc.
3. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) nominal thickness.
- a. Exterior Finish: 3-coat fluoropolymer.
  - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
4. Batten: Same material, finish, and color as roof panels.
5. Clips: Floating to accommodate thermal movement.
- a. Material: 0.064-inch- (1.63-mm-) nominal thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
  - b. Material: 0.062-inch- (1.59-mm-) thick, stainless-steel sheet.
6. Joint Type: As standard with manufacturer.
7. Panel Coverage: 16 inches (406 mm).
8. Panel Height: 2.0 inches (51 mm).

## 2.8 METAL SOFFIT PANELS

- A. General: Provide factory-formed metal soffit panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners and factory-applied sealant in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
- B. Flush-Profile Metal Soffit Panels: Solid Perforated panels formed with vertical panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced flat pan between panel edges; with flush joint between panels.
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. AEP-Span.
    - b. Architectural Building Components.
    - c. ATAS International, Inc.
    - d. Berridge Manufacturing Company.
    - e. CENTRIA Architectural Systems.
    - f. Copper Sales, Inc.
    - g. Dimensional Metals, Inc.
    - h. Englert, Inc.
    - i. Fabral.
    - j. IMETCO.
    - k. MBCI; a division of NCI Building Systems, L. P.
    - l. McElroy Metal, Inc.
    - m. Merchant & Evans.
    - n. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC.
    - o. Metal Sales Manufacturing Corporation.
    - p. Petersen Aluminum Corporation.
    - q. Ultra Seam Incorporated.
  - 3. Material: Same material, finish, and color as metal roof panels.

4. Material: Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.028-inch (0.71-mm) nominal thickness.
  - a. Exterior Finish: 3-coat fluoropolymer.
  - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
5. Sealant: Factory applied within interlocking joint.

## 2.9 ACCESSORIES

- A. Roof Panel Accessories: Provide components approved by roof panel manufacturer and as required for a complete metal roof panel assembly including trim, copings, fasciae, corner units, ridge closures, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal roof panels unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and ridges, fabricated of same metal as metal roof panels.
  2. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal roof panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
  3. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Formed from same material as roof panels, prepainted with coil coating, minimum 0.018 inch (0.45 mm) thick. Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal roof panels.
- C. Gutters: Formed from same material as roof panels. Match profile of gable trim, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other special pieces as required. Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long sections, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Furnish gutter supports spaced a maximum of 36 inches (900 mm) o.c., fabricated from same metal as gutters. Provide wire ball strainers of compatible metal at outlets. Finish gutters to match metal roof panels roof fascia and rake trim.
- D. Downspouts: Formed from same material as roof panels. Fabricate in 10-foot- (3-m-) long sections, complete with formed elbows and offsets, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual". Finish downspouts to match gutters.
- E. Roof Curbs: Fabricated from same material as roof panels, minimum 0.048 inch (1.2 mm) thick; with bottom of skirt profiled to match roof panel profiles, and welded top box and integral full-length cricket. Fabricate curb subframing of minimum 0.0598-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick, angle-, C-, or Z-shaped steel sheet. Fabricate curb and subframing to withstand indicated loads, of size and height indicated. Finish roof curbs to match metal roof panels.
  1. Insulate roof curb with 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, rigid insulation.

## 2.10 SNOW GUARDS

- A. Snow Guards: Prefabricated, noncorrosive units designed to be installed without penetrating metal roof panels, and complete with predrilled holes, clamps, or hooks for anchoring.

## 2.11 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate and finish metal roof panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes and as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- C. Fabricate metal roof panel side laps with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a tight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, in a manner that will seal weathertight and minimize noise from movements within panel assembly.
- D. Sheet Metal Accessories: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to the design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
  - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - 2. End Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
  - 3. End Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
  - 4. Sealed Joints: Form non-expansion, but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards.
  - 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
  - 6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of size and metal thickness recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or by metal roof panel manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

## 2.12 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal roof panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine primary and secondary roof framing to verify that rafters, purlins, angles, channels, and other structural panel support members and anchorages have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.

- C. Examine solid roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.
- D. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal roof panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal roof panels before metal roof panel installation.
- E. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- F. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of interfering with insulation attachment.
- B. Substrate Board: Install substrate boards over roof deck on entire roof surface. Attach with substrate-board fasteners.
  - 1. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
  - 2. Comply with UL requirements for fire-rated construction.
- C. Miscellaneous Framing: Install subpurlins, eave angles, furring, and other miscellaneous roof panel support members and anchorage according to metal roof panel manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Soffit Framing: Wire tie or clip furring channels to supports, as required to comply with requirements for assemblies indicated.

### 3.3 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Apply primer if required by manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation. Apply at locations indicated below, wrinkle free, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with end laps of not less than 6 inches (150 mm) staggered 24 inches (600 mm) between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches (90 mm). Extend underlayment into gutter trough. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within fourteen (14) days.
  - 1. Roof perimeter for a distance up from eaves of 24 inches (600 mm) beyond interior wall line.
  - 2. Valleys, from lowest point to highest point, for a distance on each side of 18 inches (460 mm). Overlap ends of sheets not less than 6 inches (150 mm).
  - 3. Rake edges for a distance of 18 inches (460 mm).
  - 4. Hips and ridges for a distance on each side of 12 inches (300 mm).
  - 5. Roof to wall intersections for a distance from wall of 18 inches (460 mm).
  - 6. Around dormers, chimneys, skylights, and other penetrating elements for a distance from element of 18 inches (460 mm).
- B. Apply slip sheet over underlayment before installing metal roof panels.
- C. Install flashings to cover underlayment to comply with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

### 3.4 THERMAL INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Polyethylene Vapor Retarder: Extend vapor retarder to extremities of areas to be protected from vapor transmission. Repair tears or punctures immediately before concealment by other work.
- B. Board Insulation: Extend insulation in thickness indicated to cover entire roof. Comply with installation requirements in Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation."
  - 1. Erect insulation and hold in place with Z-shaped furring members spaced 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. Securely attach narrow flanges of furring members to roof deck with screws spaced 24 inches (600 mm) o.c.

### 3.5 METAL ROOF PANEL INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Provide metal roof panels of full length from eave to ridge unless otherwise indicated or restricted by shipping limitations.
- B. Thermal Movement. Rigidly fasten metal roof panels to structure at one and only one location for each panel. Allow remainder of panel to move freely for thermal expansion and contraction. Pre-drill panels for fasteners.
  - 1. Point of Fixity: Fasten each panel along a single line of fixing located per manufacturer instructions.
  - 2. Avoid attaching accessories through roof panels in a manner that will inhibit thermal movement.
- C. Install metal roof panels as follows:
  - 1. Commence metal roof panel installation and install minimum of 300 sq. ft. (27.8 sq. m.) in presence of factory-authorized representative.
  - 2. Field cutting of metal panels by torch is not permitted.
  - 3. Install panels perpendicular to purlins.
  - 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
  - 5. Provide metal closures at rake edges rake walls and each side of ridge and hip caps.
  - 6. Flash and seal metal roof panels with weather closures at eaves, rakes, and perimeter of all openings.
  - 7. Install ridge and hip caps as metal roof panel work proceeds.
  - 8. End Splices: Locate panel end splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel end splices to avoid a four-panel splice condition.
  - 9. Install metal flashing to allow moisture to run over and off metal roof panels.
- D. Fasteners:
  - 1. Steel Roof Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior and galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
  - 2. Aluminum Roof Panels: Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior and aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
- E. Anchor Clips: Anchor metal roof panels and other components of the Work securely in place, using manufacturer's approved fasteners according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- F. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating, by applying rubberized-asphalt underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.

1. Coat back side of roof panels with bituminous coating where roof panels will contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.

G. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weatherproof performance of metal roof panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.

1. Seal metal roof panel end laps with double beads of tape or sealant, full width of panel. Seal side joints where recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

### 3.6 METAL ROOF PANEL INSTALLATION

A. Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each standing-seam joint at location, spacing, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer.

1. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.
2. Install pressure plates at locations indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
3. Snap Joint: Nest standing seams and fasten together by interlocking and completely engaging factory-applied sealant.
4. Seamed Joint: Crimp standing seams with manufacturer-approved, motorized seamer tool so clip, metal roof panel, and factory-applied sealant are completely engaged.

### 3.7 METAL SOFFIT PANEL INSTALLATION

A. In addition to complying with requirements in "Metal Roof Panel Installation, General" Article, install metal soffit panels to comply with requirements in this article.

B. Metal Soffit Panels: Provide metal soffit panels full width of soffits. Install panels perpendicular to support framing.

1. Flash and seal panels with weather closures where metal soffit panels meet walls and at perimeter of all openings.

C. Metal Fascia Panels: Align bottom of panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Flash and seal panels with weather closures where fasciae meet soffits, along lower panel edges, and at perimeter of all openings.

### 3.8 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

A. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.

1. Install components required for a complete metal roof panel assembly including trim, copings, ridge closures, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.

B. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.

1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install

sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.

2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (600 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).
- C. Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered or lapped and sealed joints. Attach gutters to eave with gutter hangers spaced not more than 36 inches (914 mm) o.c. using manufacturer's standard fasteners. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion.
- D. Downspouts: Join sections with telescoping joints. Provide fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely 1 inch (25 mm) away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches (1500 mm) o.c. in between.
  1. Provide elbows at base of downspouts to direct water away from building.
  2. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.
- E. Roof Curbs: Install curbs at locations indicated on Drawings. Install flashing around bases where they meet metal roof panels.
- F. Pipe Flashing: Form flashing around pipe penetration and metal roof panels. Fasten and seal to metal roof panels as recommended by manufacturer.

### 3.9 SNOW GUARD INSTALLATION

- A. Stop-Type Snow Guards: Attach snow guards to metal roof panels with adhesive, sealant, or adhesive tape, as recommended by manufacturer. Do not use fasteners that will penetrate metal roof panels.
  1. Provide rows of snow guards, per Manufacturer instructions, spaced evenly apart, beginning 16" from gutter.

### 3.10 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal roof panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

### 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect metal roof panel installation, including accessories. Report results in writing.
- B. Remove and replace applications of metal roof panels where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Additional inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

### 3.12 CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal roof panels are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal

roof panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.

- B. Replace metal roof panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074113

## SECTION 074213 - METAL WALL PANELS

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

- 1. Metal wall panels with concealed fasteners at walls.
- 2. Soffit panels as indicated.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

- 1. Division 5 Section "Structural Steel" for structural-steel framing.
- 2. Division 5 Section "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for metal studs, bracing, anchorage, and framing accessories.
- 3. Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking.
- 4. Division 7 Section "Flashing and Sheet Metal" for metal flashing and trim not part of this Work.
- 5. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for field-applied sealants.
- 6. Division 8 Section "Louvers and Vents" for integral louvers.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide manufactured wall panel assemblies complying with performance requirements indicated and capable of withstanding structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure or infiltration of water into the building interior.
- B. Air Infiltration: Provide manufactured wall panel assemblies with permanent resistance to air leakage through assembly of not more than 0.09 cfm/sq. ft. (0.45 L/s/sq. m) of fixed wall area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at a static-air-pressure difference of 4.0 lbf/sq. ft. (192 Pa).
- C. Water Penetration: Provide manufactured wall panel assemblies with no water penetration as defined in the test method when tested according to ASTM E 331 at a minimum differential pressure of 20 percent of inward acting, wind-load design pressure of not less than 6.24 lb/sq. ft. (300 Pa) and not more than 12.0 lb/sq. ft. (575 Pa).
- D. Structural Performance: Provide manufactured wall panel assemblies capable of withstanding design wind loads indicated under in-service conditions with deflection no greater than the following, based on testing manufacturer's standard units according to ASTM E 330 by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
  - 1. Maximum Deflection: 1/180 of the span.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's product specifications, standard details, certified product test results, and general recommendations, as applicable to materials and finishes for each component and for total panel assemblies.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layouts of panels, details of corner conditions, joints, panel profiles, supports, anchorages, trim, flashings, closures, and special details. Distinguish between factory- and field-assembled work.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts or chips showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available for wall panels with factory-applied finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: Provide sample panels 12 inches (300 mm) long by actual panel width, in the profile, style, color, and texture indicated. Include clips, caps, battens, fasteners, closures, and other exposed panel accessories.
- E. Qualification Data: For firms and persons specified in the "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, names and addresses of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- F. Product Test Reports: Indicate compliance of manufactured wall panel assemblies and materials with performance and other requirements based on comprehensive testing of current products.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer who has completed metal wall panel projects similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where fire-resistance-rated wall panel assemblies are indicated, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by an independent testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: As indicated by design designations in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or in the listing of another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Mockups: Before installing wall panels, construct mockups for each form of construction and finish required to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and qualities of materials and execution. Build mockups to comply with the following requirements, using exposed and concealed materials indicated for the completed Work.
  - 1. Locate mockups in the location and of the size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
  - 2. Notify Architect seven (7) days in advance of the dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
  - 3. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
  - 4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before proceeding with construction of wall panels.
  - 5. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
    - a. Approved mockups in an undisturbed condition at the time of Substantial Completion may become part of the completed Work.

### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver panels and other components so they will not be damaged or deformed. Package panels for protection against damage during transportation or handling.
- B. Handling: Exercise care in unloading, storing, and erecting wall panels to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack materials on platforms or pallets, covered with tarpaulins or other suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store panels to ensure dryness. Do not store panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify location of structural members and openings in substrates by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: Special warranties specified in this Article shall not deprive the Owner of other rights the Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by the Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
- B. Special Finish Warranty: Submit a written warranty, signed by manufacturer, covering failure of the factory-applied exterior finish on metal wall panels within the specified warranty period and agreeing to repair finish or replace wall panels that show evidence of finish deterioration. Deterioration of finish includes, but is not limited to, color fade, chalking, cracking, peeling, and loss of film integrity.
- C. Finish Warranty Period: Twenty (20) years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements. Provide metal wall panels, 3 inches thick (designated as Insulated Metal Panel IMP-2), and metal wall panels, 2 inches thick (designated as Insulated Metal Panel IMP-1), by manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work to include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Steel Wall Panels:
    - a. Tremco, Inc.
    - b. The Garland Company.
    - c. Moring Corporation, a Kingspan Group Company.
    - d. Centria Architectural Systems.

### 2.2 METALS AND FINISHES

- A. Exposed Finish for Exterior Panels: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations relative to applying and designating finishes. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. 2-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - a. Color : Custom color.
    - b. Gloss: 20-35 typical.

### 2.3 WALL PANEL ASSEMBLIES

- A. Exterior Wall Panels: Fabricate panel face sheets to the profile or configuration indicated; and of the material, finish, and thickness indicated. Design joints between panels to form weathertight seals. Panel configuration equivalent to products noted:
  - 1. Provide corner trim panels.
  - 2. Soffit Panels: .032" aluminum, alloy 3015-H14, flush panel, 11" o.c. with manufacturer's J channel trim.

## 2.4 BLANKET WALL INSULATION

A. Mineral-Fiber-Blanket Insulation: Thermal insulation combining glass or slag/rock-wool fibers with thermosetting resins to comply with ASTM C 665 and as follows:

1. Type III: Faced one side with reflective vapor-retarder membrane.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Fasteners: Self-tapping screws, bolts, nuts, self-locking rivets and bolts, end-welded studs, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads.

1. Use stainless-steel fasteners for exterior applications and galvanized steel fasteners for interior applications.

B. Accessories: Unless otherwise specified, provide components required for a complete wall panel assembly including trim, copings, fasciae, soffits, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, seam covers, flashings, louvers, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match materials and finishes of panels.

1. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, self-extinguishing, expanded, cellular, rubber or cross-linked, polyolefin-foam flexible closure strips. Cut or premold to match configuration of panels. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
2. Sealing Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealing tape with release paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape.
3. Joint Sealant: One-part elastomeric polyurethane, polysulfide, or silicone-rubber sealant as recommended by panel manufacturer.
4. Outside Corners: Shop assembled and mitered.

C. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 15-mil (0.4-mm) dry film thickness per coat, unless otherwise indicated. Provide inert-type noncorrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.

## 2.6 FABRICATION

A. General: Fabricate and finish panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.

B. Sound Control: Where sound-absorption requirement is indicated, fabricate interior liner panels with 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) diameter holes uniformly spaced approximately 1000 holes per square foot (10 750 holes per square meter). Cover insulation with polyethylene film and provide inserts of wire mesh to form acoustical spacer grid.

C. Apply bituminous coating or other permanent separation materials on concealed panel surfaces where panels would otherwise be in direct contact with substrate materials that are noncompatible or could result in corrosion or deterioration of either materials or finishes.

D. Fabricate panel joints with captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a tight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, in a manner that will minimize noise from movements within panel assembly.

## 2.7 SECONDARY FRAMING

A. Panel Supports and Anchorage: Provide girts, furring channels, angles, plates, bracing, and other secondary framing members.

1. Girts: C- or Z-shaped sections fabricated from 0.0598-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick, shop-painted, roll-formed steel.
2. Flange and Sag Bracing: 1-5/8-by-1-5/8-inch (41-by-41-mm) angles, fabricated from 0.0598-inch- (1.5-mm-) thick, shop-painted, roll-formed steel.
3. Base or Sill Angles: Fabricate from 0.079-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick, cold-formed, galvanized steel sections.

4. Secondary structural members, except columns and beams, shall be manufacturer's standard sections fabricated from 0.079-inch- (2.0-mm-) thick, cold-formed galvanized steel.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements indicated for conditions affecting performance of metal panel walls.
  1. Panel Supports and Anchorage: Examine wall framing to verify that girts, angles, and other secondary structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed to meet requirements of panel manufacturer.
  2. Do not proceed with wall panel installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate metal wall panels with rain drainage work; flashing; trim; and construction of soffits, roofing, parapets, walls, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- B. Promptly remove protective film, if any, from exposed surfaces of metal panels. Strip with care to avoid damage to finish.
- C. Secondary Structural Supports: Install girts, angles, and other secondary structural panel support members and anchorage according to the Light Gage Structural Institute's "Guide Specifications," Section 07410, "Manufactured Roof and Wall Panels."

#### 3.3 PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with panel manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installation, as applicable to project conditions and supporting substrates. Anchor panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
  1. Field cutting exterior panels by torch is not permitted.
  2. Install panels with concealed fasteners.
  3. Install panels with exposed exterior and interior fasteners, prefinished to match panel finishes. Provide waterproof washers at all exposed fasteners.
  4. Locate and space exposed fasteners in true vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled, uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of neoprene washer.
  5. Install felt paper on substrate as required by manufacturer.
- B. Accessories: Install components required for a complete wall panel assembly including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, seam covers, flashings, louvers, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
- C. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weatherproof performance of wall panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, types recommended by panel manufacturer.
  1. Install weatherseal to prevent air and moisture penetration. Flash and seal panels at ends and intersections with other materials with rubber, neoprene, or other closures to exclude weather.
  2. Seal panel end laps with a bead of tape or sealant, full width of panel. Seal side joints where recommended by panel manufacturer.
  3. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements of Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

- D. Wall Panels: Apply elastomeric sealant continuously between metal base channel (sill angle) and concrete, and elsewhere as necessary for waterproofing. Handle and apply sealant and back-up according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Align bottom of wall panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
  - 2. Install screw fasteners with power tools having controlled torque adjusted to compress neoprene washer tightly without damage to washer, screw threads, or panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.
  - 3. Provide weatherproof escutcheons for pipe and conduit penetrating exterior walls.
- E. Separate dissimilar metals by painting each metal surface in area of contact with a bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturers of dissimilar metals.
- F. Coat back side of metal panels with bituminous coating where it will contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
- G. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on level, plumb, and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

#### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

- A. Damaged Units: Replace panels and other components of the Work that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Cleaning: Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as soon as each panel is installed. On completion of panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by panel manufacturer and maintain in a clean condition during construction.

END OF SECTION 074213

SECTION 075216 - STYRENE-BUTADIENE-STYRENE (SBS) MODIFIED BITUMINOUS  
MEMBRANE ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Styrene-butadiene-styrene (SBS) modified bituminous membrane roofing.
2. Hybrid roofing system that combines built-up ply sheets with SBS-modified bituminous membrane roofing.
3. Vapor retarder.
4. Roof insulation.

- B. Section includes the installation of insulation strips in ribs of acoustical roof deck. Insulation strips are furnished under Division 05 Section "Steel Decking."

C. Related Sections:

1. Division 06 Section "Sheathing" for sheathing and weather-resistant sheathing paper.
2. Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation" for insulation beneath the roof deck.
3. Division 07 Section "Manufactured Roof Expansion Joints" for proprietary manufactured roof expansion-joint assemblies.
4. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.
5. Division 22 Section "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for roof drains.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology: See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to roofing work in this Section.
- B. Hot Roofing Asphalt: Roofing asphalt heated to its equiviscous temperature, the temperature at which its viscosity is 125 centipoise for mop-applied roofing asphalt and 75 centipoise for mechanical spreader-applied roofing asphalt, within a range of plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C), measured at the mop cart or mechanical spreader immediately before application.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Installed membrane roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Membrane roofing and base flashings shall remain watertight.
- B. Material Compatibility: Provide roofing materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by membrane roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

- C. Roofing System Design: Provide membrane roofing system that is identical to systems that have been successfully tested by a qualified testing and inspecting agency to resist uplift pressure calculated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- D. FM Approvals Listing: Provide membrane roofing, base flashings, and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 and FM Approvals 4470 as part of a membrane roofing system, and that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Approvals markings.
  - 1. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-120.
  - 2. Hail Resistance Rating: SH.
- E. Energy Performance: Provide roofing system that is listed on DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
  - 2. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
  - 3. Crickets, saddles, and tapered edge strips, including slopes.
  - 4. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
  - 1. Sheet roofing materials, including base sheet, base-ply sheet, roofing membrane sheet, flashing backer sheet, membrane cap sheet and flashing sheet, of color specified.
  - 2. Roof insulation.
  - 3. 3 lb (1.5 kg) of aggregate surfacing material in gradation and color indicated.
  - 4. Walkway pads or rolls.
  - 5. Six insulation fasteners of each type, length, and finish.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer, manufacturer and testing agency.
- B. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
  - 1. Submit evidence of complying with performance requirements.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for components of membrane roofing system.
- D. Research/Evaluation Reports: For components of membrane roofing system, from the ICC-ES.
- E. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

#### 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **Manufacturer Qualifications:** A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed for membrane roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
- B. **Installer Qualifications:** A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by membrane roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
- C. **Source Limitations:** Obtain components including roof insulation and fasteners for membrane roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.
- D. **Exterior Fire-Test Exposure:** ASTM E 108, Class A; for application and roof slopes indicated, as determined by testing identical membrane roofing materials by a qualified testing agency. Materials shall be identified with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- E. **Fire-Resistance Ratings:** Where indicated, provide fire-resistance-rated roof assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- F. **Preliminary Roofing Conference:** Before starting roof deck construction, conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
  - 2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 4. Review deck substrate requirements for conditions and finishes, including flatness and fastening.
  - 5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
  - 6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect roofing system.
  - 7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
  - 8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
  - 9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.
- G. **Preinstallation Roofing Conference:** Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
  - 2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
  - 5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
  - 6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect roofing system.
  - 7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.

8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
  1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

#### 1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

#### 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard or customized form, without monetary limitation, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of membrane roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Special warranty includes membrane roofing, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate board, roofing accessories, and other components of membrane roofing system.
  2. Warranty Period: Fifteen (15) years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Project Warranty: Submit roofing Installer's warranty, on warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Installer, covering the Work of this Section, including all components of membrane roofing system such as membrane roofing, base flashing, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate boards, vapor retarders, and walkway products, for the following warranty period:
  1. Warranty Period: Two (2) years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SBS-MODIFIED ASPHALT-SHEET MATERIALS

- A. SBS-Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Bitec, Inc.
- b. CertainTeed Corp.
- c. Consolidated Fiber Glass Products Co.
- d. Danoza Caribbean Inc.
- e. Ecology Commercial and Industrial Roofing Systems.
- f. Firestone Building Products.
- g. GAF Materials Corporation.
- h. Garland Company, Inc. (The).
- i. Henry Company.
- j. Hickman, W. P. Systems, Inc.
- k. Honeywell International Inc.
- l. IKO.
- m. Johns Manville.
- n. Koppers Inc.
- o. Malarkey Roofing Company.
- p. MBTechnology.
- q. Polyglass USA, Inc.
- r. Siplast, Inc.
- s. Soprema.
- t. TAMKO Building Products, Inc.
- u. Tremco Incorporated.
- v. U.S. Intec; a division of BMCA.

B. Roofing Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 6162, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers); smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.

C. Granule-Surface Roofing Membrane Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6162, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers); granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:

- 1. Granule Color: White.

## 2.2 BASE-SHEET MATERIALS

A. Sheathing Paper: Red-rosin type, minimum 3 lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16 kg/sq. m).

B. Base Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type II, SBS-modified, asphalt-impregnated and -coated sheet, with glass-fiber-reinforcing mat, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

- 1. Weight: 25 lb/100 sq. ft. (1.2 kg/sq. m), minimum.

## 2.3 BASE-PLY SHEET MATERIALS

A. Glass-Fiber Base-Ply Sheet: ASTM D 2178,, asphalt-impregnated, glass-fiber felt.

## 2.4 BASE FLASHING SHEET MATERIALS

A. Backer Sheet: ASTM D 4601, Type I or Type II, asphalt-impregnated and -coated, glass-fiber sheet, dusted with fine mineral surfacing on both sides.

B. Backer Sheet: ASTM D 6162, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers); smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.

- C. Granule-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6162, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers); granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
  - 1. Granule Color: White.
- D. Glass-Fiber Fabric: Woven glass-fiber cloth, treated with asphalt, complying with ASTM D 1668, Type I.

## 2.5 AUXILIARY ROOFING MEMBRANE MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with roofing membrane.
  - 1. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
    - a. Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
    - b. Gypsum Board and Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.
    - c. Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
    - d. Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
    - e. Contact Adhesive: 80 g/L.
    - f. Other Adhesives: 250 g/L.
    - g. Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
    - h. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
    - i. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
  - 3. Adhesives and sealants that are not on the exterior side of weather barrier shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41.
- C. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 312, Type III or IV as recommended by roofing system manufacturer for application.
- D. Roofing Asphalt: ASTM D 6152, SEBS modified.
- E. Cold-Applied Adhesive: Roofing system manufacturer's standard asphalt-based, one- or two-part, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive specially formulated for compatibility and use with roofing membrane and base flashings.
- F. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required by roofing system manufacturer for application.
- G. Mastic Sealant: Polyisobutylene, plain or modified bitumen; nonhardening, nonmigrating, nonskinning, and nondrying.
- H. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roofing membrane components to substrate; tested by manufacturer for required pullout strength, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

- I. Metal Flashing Sheet: As specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- J. Roofing Granules: Ceramic-coated roofing granules, No. 11 screen size with 100 percent passing No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve and 98 percent of mass retained on No. 40 (0.425-mm) sieve, color to match roofing membrane.
- K. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide those recommended by roofing system manufacturer.

## 2.6 SUBSTRATE BOARDS

- A. Substrate Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate (size indicated on drawings), factory primed.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Georgia-Pacific Corporation; Dens Deck, Dens Deck Prime or Dens Deck DuraGuard.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate board to roof deck.

## 2.7 VAPOR RETARDER

- A. Polyethylene Film: ASTM D 4397, 6 mils (0.15 mm) thick, minimum, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm (7.5 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).
  - 1. Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
  - 2. Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard lap adhesive, FM Approvals approved for vapor-retarder application.
- B. Laminated Sheet: Kraft paper, two layers, laminated with asphalt and edge reinforced with woven fiberglass yarn, with maximum permeance rating of 0.50 perm (29 ng/Pa x s x sq. m) and with manufacturer's standard adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM D 1970, minimum of 40-mil- (1.0-mm-) thick, polyethylene film laminated to layer of rubberized asphalt adhesive; maximum permeance rating of 0.1 perm (6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); cold applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.
- D. Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder: 30- to 40-mil- (0.76- to 1.0-mm-) thick, polyethylene film laminated to layer of butyl rubber adhesive; maximum permeance rating of 0.1 perm (6 ng/Pa x s x sq. m); cold applied, with slip-resisting surface and release paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.
- E. Glass-Fiber Felt: ASTM D 2178, Type IV, asphalt impregnated.

## 2.8 ROOF INSULATION

- A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated and that produce FM Approvals-approved roof insulation.
- B. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

## 2.9 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Furnish roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with membrane roofing.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates meeting corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- C. Modified Asphaltic Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended modified asphaltic, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
- D. Bead-Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended bead-applied, low-rise, one-component or multicomponent urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
- E. Full-Spread Applied Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer.
- F. Insulation Cant Strips: ASTM C 728, perlite insulation board.
- G. Tapered Edge Strips: ASTM C 728, perlite insulation board.
- H. Cover Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, 5/8 inch (16 mm) thick, factory primed.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Georgia-Pacific Corporation; Dens Deck Dens, Deck Prime or Dens Deck DuraGuard.
- I. Substrate Joint Tape: 6- or 8-inch- (150- or 200-mm-) wide, coated, glass-fiber joint tape.

## 2.10 WALKWAYS

- A. Walkway Pads: Reinforced asphaltic composition pads with slip-resisting mineral-granule surface, manufactured as a traffic pad for foot traffic and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer, 1/2 inch (13 mm) thick, minimum.
- B. Walkway Cap Sheet Strips: ASTM D 6162, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with a combination of polyester fabric and glass fibers); granular surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
  - 1. Granule Color: White.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with the following requirements and other conditions affecting performance of roofing system:

1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place and curbs are set and braced and that roof drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
  2. Verify that cants, blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
  3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Division 05 Section "Steel Decking."
  4. Verify that minimum concrete drying period recommended by roofing system manufacturer has passed.
  5. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
    - a. Test for moisture by pouring 1 pint (0.5 L) of hot roofing asphalt on deck at start of each day's work and at start of each roof area or plane. Do not proceed with roofing work if test sample foams or can be easily and cleanly stripped after cooling.
  6. Verify that concrete-curing compounds that will impair adhesion of roofing components to roof deck have been removed.
  7. Verify that deck is securely fastened with no projecting fasteners and with no adjacent units in excess of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) out of plane relative to adjoining deck.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
- C. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at a rate of 3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m) and allow primer to dry.
- D. Install insulation strips in ribs of acoustical roof decks according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 SUBSTRATE BOARD INSTALLATION

- A. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
  1. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck according to recommendations in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and FM Global Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
  2. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to membrane roofing system manufacturers' written instructions.

### 3.4 VAPOR-RETARDER INSTALLATION

- A. Polyethylene Film: Loosely lay polyethylene-film vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively.
  1. Continuously seal side and end laps with tape or adhesive.

- B. **Laminate Sheet:** Install laminate-sheet vapor retarder in a single layer over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively. Bond vapor retarder to substrate as follows:
  - 1. Apply adhesive at rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with adhesive.
  - 2. Apply ribbons of hot roofing asphalt at spacing, temperature, and rate recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer. Seal laps with hot roofing asphalt.
- C. **Self-Adhering Sheet Vapor Retarder:** Prime substrate if required by manufacturer. Install self-adhering sheet vapor retarder over area to receive vapor retarder, side and end lapping each sheet a minimum of 3-1/2 inches (90 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively. Seal laps by rolling.
- D. **Built-up Vapor Retarder:** Install two glass-fiber felt plies lapping each felt 19 inches (483 mm) over preceding felt. Embed each felt in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt. Glaze-coat completed surface with hot roofing asphalt. Apply hot roofing asphalt within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
- E. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into membrane roofing system.

### 3.5 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with roofing system manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- B. Install one lapped base-sheet course and mechanically fasten to substrate according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. **Nailer Strips:** Mechanically fasten 4-inch nominal- (89-mm actual-) width wood nailer strips of same thickness as insulation perpendicular to sloped roof deck at the following spacing:
  - 1. 16 feet apart for roof slopes steeper than 1 inch per 12 inches (1:12) but less than 3 inches per 12 inches (3:12).
  - 2. 48 inches apart for roof slopes steeper than 3 inches per 12 inches (3:12).
- D. **Insulation Cant Strips:** Install and secure preformed 45-degree insulation cant strips at junctures of roofing membrane system with vertical surfaces or angle changes more than 45 degrees.
- E. Install tapered insulation under area of roofing to conform to slopes indicated.
- F. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch (6 mm) with insulation.
  - 1. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch (6 mm) of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
- G. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 2.7 inches (68 mm) or more, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction.
  - 1. Where installing composite and noncomposite insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
- H. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.

- I. Install tapered edge strips at perimeter edges of roof that do not terminate at vertical surfaces.
  - J. Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and adhere to substrate as follows:
    - 1. Prime surface of concrete deck with asphalt primer at rate of 3/4 gal./100 sq. ft. (0.3 L/sq. m) and allow primer to dry.
    - 2. Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
    - 3. Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
    - 4. Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
  - K. Mechanically Fastened Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
    - 1. Fasten insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
    - 2. Fasten insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
  - L. Mechanically Fastened and Adhered Insulation: Install first layer of insulation to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
    - 1. Fasten first layer of insulation according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
    - 2. Fasten first layer of insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
    - 3. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied within plus or minus 25 deg F (14 deg C) of equiviscous temperature.
    - 4. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
    - 5. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
  - M. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction from joints of insulation below. Loosely butt cover boards together and fasten to roof deck. Tape joints if required by roofing system manufacturer.
    - 1. Fasten cover boards according to requirements in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification.
    - 2. Fasten cover boards to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
    - 3. Apply hot roofing asphalt to underside, and immediately bond cover board to substrate.
- 3.6 ROOFING MEMBRANE INSTALLATION, GENERAL
- A. Install roofing membrane system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."
    - 1. Install roofing system according to roof assembly identification matrix and roof assembly layout illustrations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" and to requirements in this Section.

- B. Install roofing membrane system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing" and as follows:
  - 1. Deck Type: I (insulated).
  - 2. Adhering Method: T (torched) or L (cold-applied adhesive).
  - 3. Base Sheet: One (1).
  - 4. Number of Glass-Fiber Base-Ply Sheets: Two (2).
  - 5. Number of SBS-Modified Asphalt Sheets: Two (2).
  - 6. Surfacing Type: M (mineral-granule-surfaced cap sheet).
- C. Start installation of roofing membrane in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
- D. Where roof slope exceeds 1/2 inch per 12 inches (1:24), install roofing membrane sheets parallel with slope.
  - 1. Backnail roofing membrane sheets to nailer strips or substrate according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Cooperate with testing agencies engaged or required to perform services for installing roofing system.
- F. Coordinate installation of roofing system so insulation and other components of the roofing membrane system not permanently exposed are not subjected to precipitation or left uncovered at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast.
  - 1. At end of each day's work, provide tie-offs to cover exposed roofing membrane sheets and insulation with a course of coated felt set in roofing cement or hot roofing asphalt, with joints and edges sealed.
  - 2. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system.
  - 3. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
- G. Asphalt Heating: Do not raise roofing asphalt temperature above equiviscous temperature range more than one hour before time of application. Do not exceed roofing asphalt manufacturer's recommended temperature limits during roofing asphalt heating. Do not heat roofing asphalt within 25 deg F (14 deg C) of flash point. Discard roofing asphalt maintained at a temperature exceeding finished blowing temperature for more than four hours.
- H. Asphalt Heating: Heat and apply SEBS-modified roofing asphalt according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- I. Substrate-Joint Penetrations: Prevent roofing asphalt and adhesives from penetrating substrate joints, entering building, or damaging roofing system components or adjacent building construction.

### 3.7 BASE-SHEET INSTALLATION

- A. Loosely lay one course of sheathing paper, lapping edges and ends a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) and 6 inches (150 mm), respectively.
- B. Install lapped base-sheet course, extending sheet over and terminating beyond cants. Attach base sheet as follows:
  - 1. Mechanically fasten to substrate.
  - 2. Spot- or strip-mop to substrate with hot roofing asphalt.

3. Adhere to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt or uniform coating of cold-applied adhesive.

### 3.8 BASE-PLY SHEET INSTALLATION

- A. Install glass-fiber base-ply sheets according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions starting at low point of roofing system. Align glass-fiber base-ply sheets without stretching. Extend sheets over and terminate beyond cants.
  1. Shingle side laps of glass-fiber base-ply sheets uniformly to ensure that required number of glass-fiber base-ply sheets covers substrate at any point. Shingle in direction to shed water.
  2. Embed each glass-fiber base-ply sheet in a continuous void-free mopping of hot roofing asphalt to form a uniform membrane without glass-fiber base-ply sheets touching.

### 3.9 SBS-MODIFIED BITUMINOUS MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

- A. Install modified bituminous roofing membrane sheet and cap sheet according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions, starting at low point of roofing system. Extend roofing membrane sheets over and terminate beyond cants, installing as follows:
  1. Adhere to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied at not less than 425 deg F (218 deg C).
  2. Adhere to substrate in cold-applied adhesive.
  3. Torch apply to substrate.
  4. Unroll roofing membrane sheets and allow them to relax for minimum time period required by manufacturer.
- B. Laps: Accurately align roofing membrane sheets, without stretching, and maintain uniform side and end laps. Stagger end laps. Completely bond and seal laps, leaving no voids.
  1. Repair tears and voids in laps and lapped seams not completely sealed.
  2. Apply roofing granules to cover exuded bead at laps while bead is hot.
- C. Install roofing membrane sheets so side and end laps shed water.

### 3.10 FLASHING AND STRIPPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install base flashing over cant strips and other sloped and vertical surfaces, at roof edges, and at penetrations through roof; secure to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, and as follows:
  1. Prime substrates with asphalt primer if required by roofing system manufacturer.
  2. Backer Sheet Application: Mechanically fasten backer sheet to walls or parapets. Adhere backer sheet over roofing membrane at cants in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt or cold-applied adhesive.
  3. Backer Sheet Application: Adhere backer sheet to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt or cold-applied adhesive at rate required by roofing system manufacturer.
  4. Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt applied at not less than 425 deg F (218 deg C). Apply hot roofing asphalt to back of flashing sheet if recommended by roofing system manufacturer.
  5. Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in cold-applied adhesive at rate required by roofing system manufacturer.
  6. Flashing Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in asphalt roofing cement at rate required by roofing system manufacturer.
  7. Flashing Sheet Application: Torch apply flashing sheet to substrate.

- B. Extend base flashing up walls or parapets a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above roofing membrane and 4 inches (100 mm) onto field of roofing membrane.
- C. Mechanically fasten top of base flashing securely at terminations and perimeter of roofing.
  - 1. Seal top termination of base flashing with a strip of glass-fiber fabric set in asphalt roofing cement.
- D. Install roofing membrane cap-sheet stripping where metal flanges and edgings are set on membrane roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Roof Drains: Set 30-by-30-inch- square metal flashing in bed of asphalt roofing cement on completed roofing membrane. Cover metal flashing with roofing membrane cap-sheet stripping and extend a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) beyond edge of metal flashing onto field of roofing membrane. Clamp roofing membrane, metal flashing, and stripping into roof-drain clamping ring.
  - 1. Install stripping according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.11 WALKWAY INSTALLATION

- A. Walkway Pads: Install walkway pads using units of size indicated or, if not indicated, of manufacturer's standard size according to walkway pad manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Set walkway pads in cold-applied adhesive.
  - 2. Set walkway pads in additional pour coat of hot roofing asphalt after aggregate surfacing of modified bituminous roofing membrane.
- B. Walkway Cap Sheet Strips: Install walkway cap sheet strips over roofing membrane using same application method as used for roofing membrane cap sheet. Install walkway cap sheet strips before flood coat and aggregate surface is applied.

### 3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and to prepare test reports.
- B. Test Cuts: Test specimens will be removed to evaluate problems observed during quality-assurance inspections of roofing membrane as follows:
  - 1. Approximate quantities of components within roofing membrane will be determined according to ASTM D 3617.
  - 2. Test specimens will be examined for interply voids according to ASTM D 3617 and to comply with criteria established in Appendix 3 in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."
  - 3. Repair areas where test cuts were made according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
  - 1. Notify Architect and Owner forty-eight (48) hours in advance of date and time of inspection.
- D. Roofing system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

1. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.

### 3.13 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction will not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.
- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

### 3.14 ROOFING INSTALLER'S WARRANTY

- A. WHEREAS <Insert name> of <Insert address>, herein called the "Roofing Installer," has performed roofing and associated work ("work") on the following project:
  1. Owner: <Insert name of Owner>.
  2. Address: <Insert address>.
  3. Building Name/Type: <Insert information>.
  4. Address: <Insert address>.
  5. Area of Work: <Insert information>.
  6. Acceptance Date: <Insert date>.
  7. Warranty Period: <Insert time>.
  8. Expiration Date: <Insert date>.
- B. AND WHEREAS Roofing Installer has contracted (either directly with Owner or indirectly as a subcontractor) to warrant said work against leaks and faulty or defective materials and workmanship for designated Warranty Period,
- C. NOW THEREFORE Roofing Installer hereby warrants, subject to terms and conditions herein set forth, that during Warranty Period he will, at his own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to or replacements of said work as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and as are necessary to maintain said work in a watertight condition.
- D. This Warranty is made subject to the following terms and conditions:
  1. Specifically excluded from this Warranty are damages to work and other parts of the building, and to building contents, caused by:
    - a. lightning;
    - b. peak gust wind speed exceeding 120 mph (m/s);
    - c. fire;
    - d. failure of roofing system substrate, including cracking, settlement, excessive deflection, deterioration, and decomposition;
    - e. faulty construction of parapet walls, copings, chimneys, skylights, vents, equipment supports, and other edge conditions and penetrations of the work;
    - f. vapor condensation on bottom of roofing; and
    - g. activity on roofing by others, including construction contractors, maintenance personnel, other persons, and animals, whether authorized or unauthorized by Owner.

2. When work has been damaged by any of foregoing causes, Warranty shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by Roofing Installer and until cost and expense thereof have been paid by Owner or by another responsible party so designated.
3. Roofing Installer is responsible for damage to work covered by this Warranty but is not liable for consequential damages to building or building contents resulting from leaks or faults or defects of work.
4. During Warranty Period, if Owner allows alteration of work by anyone other than Roofing Installer, including cutting, patching, and maintenance in connection with penetrations, attachment of other work, and positioning of anything on roof, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said alterations, but only to the extent said alterations affect work covered by this Warranty. If Owner engages Roofing Installer to perform said alterations, Warranty shall not become null and void unless Roofing Installer, before starting said work, shall have notified Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim, that said alterations would likely damage or deteriorate work, thereby reasonably justifying a limitation or termination of this Warranty.
5. During Warranty Period, if original use of roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a promenade, work deck, spray-cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use or service more severe than originally specified, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said change, but only to the extent said change affects work covered by this Warranty.
6. Owner shall promptly notify Roofing Installer of observed, known, or suspected leaks, defects, or deterioration and shall afford reasonable opportunity for Roofing Installer to inspect work and to examine evidence of such leaks, defects, or deterioration.
7. This Warranty is recognized to be the only warranty of Roofing Installer on said work and shall not operate to restrict or cut off Owner from other remedies and resources lawfully available to Owner in cases of roofing failure. Specifically, this Warranty shall not operate to relieve Roofing Installer of responsibility for performance of original work according to requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether Contract was a contract directly with Owner or a subcontract with Owner's General Contractor.

E. IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this <Insert day> day of <Insert month>, <Insert year>.

1. Authorized Signature: <Insert signature>.
2. Name: <Insert name>.
3. Title: <Insert title>.

END OF SECTION 075216

SECTION 076100 - SHEET METAL ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Flat-seam metal roofing, custom fabricated.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show installation layout of sheet metal roofing, including plans, elevations, expansion joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work.
  - 1. Include details for forming, joining, and securing sheet metal roofing, including pattern of seams, termination points, fixed points, expansion joints, roof penetrations, edge conditions, special conditions, connections to adjoining work, and details of accessory items.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each finish specified.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans drawn to scale with coordinated details for penetrations and roof-mounted items.
- B. Portable Roll-Forming Equipment Certificate: Issued by UL for equipment manufacturer's portable roll-forming equipment capable of producing panels that comply with UL requirements.
- C. Product test reports.
- D. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Roll-Formed Sheet Metal Roofing Fabricator Qualifications: Fabricator authorized by portable roll-forming equipment manufacturer to fabricate and install sheet metal roofing units required for this Project, and who maintains current UL certification of its portable roll-forming equipment.
- B. UL-Certified, Portable Roll-Forming Equipment: UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment capable of producing roofing panels for sheet metal roofing assemblies that comply with UL 580 for Class 90 wind-uplift resistance. Maintain UL certification of portable roll-forming equipment for duration of sheet metal roofing work.
- C. Sheet Metal Roofing Standard: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" unless more stringent requirements are specified or shown on Drawings.
- D. Copper Roofing Standard: Comply with CDA's "Copper in Architecture Handbook." Conform to dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

- E. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Build mockup of typical roof area and eave, including fascia, and soffit as shown on Drawings; approximately 48 inches (1200 mm) 12 feet (3.5 m) square by full thickness, including attachments, underlayment, and accessories.
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Warranty form in which Installer agrees to repair or replace components of sheet metal roofing that fail in materials or workmanship within Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal roofing that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within twenty (20) years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ROOFING SHEET METALS

- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Restricted flatness steel sheet, metallic coated by the hot-dip process and prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
  - 1. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation, Grade 40 (Class AZM150 coating designation, Grade 275); structural quality.
  - 2. Thickness: Nominal 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Surface: Smooth, flat.
  - 4. Factory Prime Coating: Where painting after installation is indicated, pretreat with white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat; minimum dry film thickness of 0.2 mil (0.005 mm).
  - 5. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
    - a. Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat.
  - 6. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
- C. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper as required to suit forming operations and performance required.
  - 1. Thickness: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Batten Caps: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.
  - 2. Surface: Smooth, flat.
  - 3. Factory Prime Coating: Where painting after installation is indicated, pretreat with white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat; minimum dry film thickness of 0.2 mil (0.005 mm).

4. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
  - a. Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat.
5. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

## 2.2 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Polyethylene Sheet: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick polyethylene sheet complying with ASTM D 4397.
- B. Felts: ASTM D 226, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felts.
- C. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils (0.76 to 1.0 mm) thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
  1. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970; stable after testing at 240 deg F (116 deg C).
  2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C).
- D. Slip Sheet: Building paper, 3-lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16-kg/sq. m) minimum, rosin sized.

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for a complete roofing system and as recommended by primary sheet metal or portable roll-forming equipment manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Snap-On Seams: Provide snap-on seams integrated with panel-edge profile as recommended by portable roll-forming equipment manufacturer to produce sheet metal roofing assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift resistance classification specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- C. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular-threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads.
  1. General:
    - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal roofing using plastic caps or factory-applied coating.
    - b. Fasteners for Flashing and Trim: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
    - c. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
  2. Fasteners for Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, ASTM F 2329, or Series 300 stainless steel.
  3. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
- D. Solder:
  1. For Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn50, 50 percent tin and 50 percent lead or Grade Sn60, 60 percent tin and 40 percent lead.
  2. For Stainless Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn60, with an acid flux of type recommended by stainless-steel sheet manufacturer.

- E. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide and 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick.
- F. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polymer sealant as recommended by portable roll-forming equipment manufacturer for installation indicated; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal roofing and remain watertight.
- G. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
- H. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Sheet Metal Accessories: Provide components required for a complete sheet metal roofing assembly including trim, copings, fasciae, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, metal closures, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of sheet metal roofing unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide accessories as recommended by portable roll-forming equipment manufacturer to produce sheet metal roofing assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift resistance classification specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
  - 2. Cleats: For mechanically seaming into joints and formed from the following materials:
    - a. Metallic-Coated Steel Aluminum Roofing: 0.025-inch- (0.64-mm-) thick stainless steel.
  - 3. Clips: Minimum 0.062-inch- (1.59-mm-) thick, stainless-steel panel clips designed to withstand negative-load requirements.
  - 4. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, flexible-closure strips; cut or premolded to match sheet metal roofing profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
  - 5. Flashing and Trim: Formed from same material and finish as sheet metal roofing, minimum thickness matching the sheet metal roofing.
- B. Roof Curbs: Fabricated from same material and finish as sheet metal roofing, minimum thickness matching the sheet metal roofing; with bottom of skirt profiled to match roof panel profiles; with weatherproof top box and integral full-length cricket. Fabricate curb subframing of nominal 0.062-inch- (1.59-mm-) thick, angle-, C-, or Z-shaped galvanized steel or stainless-steel sheet. Fabricate curb and subframing to withstand indicated loads of size and height indicated. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.
  - 1. Insulate curbs with 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, rigid insulation.
  - 2. Install wood nailers at tops of curbs.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal roofing to comply with details shown and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to the design, dimensions (panel width and seam height), geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of installation indicated. Fabricate sheet metal roofing and accessories at the shop to greatest extent possible.
  - 1. Flat-Seam Roofing: Form flat-seam panels from metal sheets 20 by 28 inches (510 by 710 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) notched and folded edges.

- B. General: Fabricate roll-formed sheet metal roofing panels with UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment capable of producing roofing panels for sheet metal roofing assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift resistance classification specified in "Quality Assurance" Article. Fabricate roll-formed sheet metal according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with details shown.
- C. Form exposed sheet metal work to fit substrates without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line and levels indicated; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - 1. Form and fabricate sheets, seams, strips, cleats, valleys, ridges, edge treatments, integral flashings, and other components of metal roofing to profiles, patterns, and drainage arrangements shown on Drawings and as required for leakproof construction.
- D. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating, by applying self-adhering sheet underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by fabricator of sheet metal roofing or manufacturers of the metals in contact.
- E. Sheet Metal Accessories: Custom fabricate flashings and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION AND PREPARATION

- A. Examine solid roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that tops of fasteners are flush with surface.

#### 3.2 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Polyethylene Sheet: Install polyethylene sheet on roof sheathing under sheet metal roofing. Use adhesive for anchorage. Apply at locations indicated on Drawings, in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped and taped joints of not less than 2 inches (50 mm).
- B. Felt Underlayment: Install felt underlayment on roof sheathing under sheet metal roofing. Use adhesive for temporary anchorage. Apply at locations indicated on Drawings, in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches (50 mm).
- C. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install self-adhering sheet underlayment, wrinkle free, on roof sheathing under sheet metal roofing. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer rather than nails for installing underlayment at low temperatures. Apply over entire roof, in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches (150 mm) staggered 24 inches (600 mm) between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches (90 mm). Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within fourteen (14) days.
- D. Apply slip sheet before installing sheet metal roofing.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Anchor sheet metal roofing and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Install fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for a complete roofing system and as recommended by fabricator for sheet metal roofing.

1. Field cutting of sheet metal roofing by torch is not permitted.
  2. Provide metal closures at peaks rake edges rake walls eaves and each side of ridge and hip caps.
  3. Flash and seal sheet metal roofing with closure strips at eaves, rakes, and perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws.
  4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Predrill panels for fasteners.
  5. Install ridge and hip caps as sheet metal roofing work proceeds.
  6. Locate roofing splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger roofing splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
  7. Install sealant tape where indicated.
  8. Lap metal flashing over sheet metal roofing to allow moisture to run over and off the material.
- B. Thermal Movement. Rigidly fasten metal roof panels to structure at only one location for each panel. Allow remainder of panel to move freely for thermal expansion and contraction.
1. Point of Fixity: Fasten each panel along a single line of fixing located at center of panel length.
  2. Avoid attaching accessories through roof panels in a manner that will inhibit thermal movement.
- C. Fasteners: Use fasteners of sizes that will penetrate metal decking not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- D. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating, by applying self-adhering sheet underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by SMACNA.
1. Coat back side of uncoated aluminum sheet metal roofing with bituminous coating where roofing will contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.

#### 3.4 CUSTOM-FABRICATED SHEET METAL ROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate and install work with lines and corners of exposed units true and accurate. Form exposed faces flat and free of buckles, excessive waves, and avoidable tool marks, considering temper and reflectivity of metal. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and sealant. Fold back sheet metal to form a hem on concealed side of exposed edges unless otherwise indicated.
1. Install cleats to hold sheet metal panels in position. Attach each cleat with two fasteners to prevent rotation.
  2. Fasten cleats not more than 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. Bend tabs over fastener head.
  3. Provide expansion-type cleats and clips for roof panels that exceed 30 feet (9.1 m) in length.
- B. Seal joints as shown and as required for watertight construction. For roofing with 3:12 slopes or less, use cleats at transverse seams. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- C. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter. Pre-tin edges of sheets to be soldered to a width of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), except reduce pre-tinning where pre-tinned surface would show in completed Work.
1. Do not solder metallic-coated steel and aluminum sheet.
  2. Do not use torches for soldering. Heat surfaces to receive solder and flow solder into joint. Fill joint completely. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.

3. Stainless-Steel Roofing: Tin edges of uncoated sheets, using solder for stainless steel and acid flux. Promptly remove acid flux residue from metal after tinning and soldering. Comply with solder manufacturer's recommended methods for cleaning and neutralization.
4. Copper Roofing: Tin edges of uncoated copper sheets, using solder for copper.

D. Rivets: Rivet joints in uncoated aluminum where indicated and where necessary for strength.

E. Flat-Seam Roofing: Attach flat-seam metal panels to substrate with cleats, starting at eave and working upward toward ridge. After panels are in place, mallet seams and solder.

1. Attach roofing panels with cleats spaced not more than 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. Lock and solder panels to base flashing.
2. Attach edge flashing to face of roof edge with continuous cleat fastened to roof substrate at 12 inches (305 mm) o.c. Lock panels to edge flashing and solder or apply sealant.

### 3.5 ON-SITE, ROLL-FORMED SHEET METAL ROOFING INSTALLATION

A. General: Install on-site, roll-formed sheet metal roofing fabricated from UL-certified equipment to comply with equipment manufacturer's written instructions for UL wind-uplift resistance class indicated. Provide sheet metal roofing of full length from eave to ridge unless otherwise restricted by on-site or shipping limitations.

B. Seal joints as shown and as required for watertight construction. For roofing with 3:12 slopes or less, use cleats at transverse seams.

1. Where sealant-filled joints are used, embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch (25 mm) into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is moderate, between 40 and 70 deg F (4 and 21 deg C), set joint members for 50 percent movement either way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F (4 deg C).
2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

### 3.6 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

A. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.

1. Install components required for a complete sheet metal roofing assembly including trim, copings, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, metal closures, closure strips, and similar items.
2. Install accessories integral to sheet metal roofing that are specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" to comply with that Section's requirements.

B. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.

### 3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.

B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder and sealants.

- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal roofing is installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.

END OF SECTION 076100

SECTION 076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Manufactured Products:

- a. Manufactured through-wall flashing and counterflashing.
- b. Manufactured reglets and counterflashing.

2. Formed Products:

- a. Formed roof drainage sheet metal fabrications.
- b. Formed low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
- c. Formed wall sheet metal fabrications.
- d. Formed equipment support flashing.

B. Related Sections:

- 1. Division 06 Section "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
- 2. Division 07 Section "Styrene-Butadiene-Styrene SBS Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing" for installing sheet metal flashing and trim integral with membrane roofing.
- 3. Division 07 Section "Metal Roof Panels" for sheet metal flashing and trim integral with metal roof panels.
- 4. Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for set-on-type curbs, equipment supports, roof hatches, vents, and other manufactured roof accessory units.
- 5. Division 07 Section "Expansion Control" for manufactured sheet metal expansion-joint covers.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies as indicated shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.

- B. Fabricate and install roof edge flashing and copings capable of resisting the following forces according to recommendations in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49:

- 1. Wind Zone 3: For velocity pressures of 46 to 104 lbf/sq. ft. (2.20 to 4.98 kPa): 208-lbf/sq. ft. (9.96-kPa) perimeter uplift force, 312-lbf/sq. ft. (14.94-kPa) corner uplift force, and 104-lbf/sq. ft. (4.98-kPa) outward force.

- C. Thermal Movements: Provide sheet metal flashing and trim that allows for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.

- 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each manufactured product and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of sheet metal flashing and trim, including plans, elevations, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work. Include the following:
  - 1. Identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
  - 2. Details for forming sheet metal flashing and trim, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
  - 3. Details for joining, supporting, and securing sheet metal flashing and trim, including layout of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
  - 4. Details of termination points and assemblies, including fixed points.
  - 5. Details of expansion joints and expansion-joint covers, including showing direction of expansion and contraction.
  - 6. Details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, and counterflashings as applicable.
  - 7. Details of special conditions.
  - 8. Details of connections to adjoining work.
  - 9. Detail formed flashing and trim at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches (1:10).
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sheet metal flashing, trim, and accessory indicated with factory-applied color finishes involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
  - 1. Sheet Metal Flashing: 12 inches (300 mm) long by actual width of unit, including finished seam and in required profile. Include fasteners, cleats, clips, closures, and other attachments.
  - 2. Trim, Metal Closures, Expansion Joints, Joint Intersections, and Miscellaneous Fabrications: 12 inches (300 mm) long and in required profile. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.
  - 3. Accessories and Miscellaneous Materials: Full-size Sample.
  - 4. Anodized Aluminum Samples: Samples to show full range to be expected for each color required.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified fabricator.
- B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing, trim, and accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim Standard: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" unless more stringent requirements are specified or shown on Drawings.

- C. Copper Sheet Metal Standard: Comply with CDA's "Copper in Architecture Handbook." Conform to dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- D. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Build mockup of typical roof eave, including built-in gutter, fascia, fascia trim, apron flashing, approximately 10 feet (3.0 m) long, including supporting construction cleats, seams, attachments, underlayment, and accessories.
  - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 3. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects sheet metal flashing and trim including installers of roofing materials, roof accessories, unit skylights, and roof-mounted equipment.
  - 2. Review methods and procedures related to sheet metal flashing and trim.
  - 3. Examine substrate conditions for compliance with requirements, including flatness and attachment to structural members.
  - 4. Review special roof details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that will affect sheet metal flashing.
  - 5. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to the extent necessary for the period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Finish Warranty Period: Twenty (20) years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SHEET METALS

- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper as required to suit forming operations and performance required.
  - 1. Surface: Smooth, flat.
  - 2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finishes:
    - a. Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat and clear coats. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - 3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
    - 4. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304, dead soft, fully annealed.
  - 1. Finish: 2D (dull, cold rolled).
  - 2. Surface: Smooth, flat.

### 2.2 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Polyethylene Sheet: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick polyethylene sheet complying with ASTM D 4397.
- B. Felt: ASTM D 226, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.
- C. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils (0.76 to 1.0 mm) thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
  - 1. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970; stable after testing at 240 deg F (116 deg C).
  - 2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C).
  - 3. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.; CCW WIP 300HT.
    - b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co.; Ultra.
    - c. Henry Company; Blueskin PE200 HT.
    - d. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC; MetShield.
    - e. Owens Corning; WeatherLock Metal High Temperature Underlayment.
- D. Slip Sheet: Building paper, 3-lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16-kq/sq. m) minimum, rosin sized.

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.
  - 1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
    - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating.
    - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
    - c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
  - 2. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
  - 3. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
- C. Solder:
  - 1. For Stainless Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn60, with an acid flux of type recommended by stainless-steel sheet manufacturer.
- D. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide and 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick.
- E. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polymer sealant; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- F. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
- G. Epoxy Seam Sealer: Two-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.
- H. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- I. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

## 2.4 MANUFACTURED SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

- A. Through-Wall Ribbed Sheet Metal Flashing: Manufacture through-wall sheet metal flashing for embedment in masonry with ribs at 3-inch (75-mm) intervals along length of flashing to provide an integral mortar bond. Manufacture through-wall flashing with snaplock receiver on exterior face to receive counterflashing or interlocking counterflashing on exterior face, of same metal as reglet.
  - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1) Cheney Flashing Company; Cheney Flashing (Dovetail).
  - 2) Cheney Flashing Company; Cheney Flashing (Sawtooth).
  - 3) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; STF Sawtooth Flashing.
  - 4) Keystone Flashing Company, Inc.; Keystone Three-Way Interlocking Thruwall Flashing.
  - 5) Sandell Manufacturing Company, Inc.; Pre-Formed Metal Flashing.
- B. Reglets: Units of type, material, and profile indicated, formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, and compatible with flashing indicated with factory-mitered and -welded corners and junctions or with interlocking counterflashing on exterior face, of same metal as reglet.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Cheney Flashing Company.
    - b. Fry Reglet Corporation.
    - c. Heckmann Building Products Inc.
    - d. Hickman, W. P. Company.
    - e. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; STF Sawtooth Flashing.
    - f. Keystone Flashing Company, Inc.
    - g. National Sheet Metal Systems, Inc.
    - h. Sandell Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  3. Material: Stainless steel, 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick or Aluminum, 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
  4. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.
  5. Stucco Type: Provide with upturned fastening flange and extension leg of length to match thickness of applied finish materials.
  6. Concrete Type: Provide temporary closure tape to keep reglet free of concrete materials, special fasteners for attaching reglet to concrete forms, and guides to ensure alignment of reglet section ends.
  7. Masonry Type: Provide with offset top flange for embedment in masonry mortar joint.
  8. Accessories:
    - a. Flexible-Flashing Retainer: Provide resilient plastic or rubber accessory to secure flexible flashing in reglet where clearance does not permit use of standard metal counterflashing or where Drawings show reglet without metal counterflashing.
    - b. Counterflashing Wind-Restraint Clips: Provide clips to be installed before counterflashing to prevent wind uplift of counterflashing lower edge.
  9. Finish: With manufacturer's standard color coating.

## 2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item indicated. Fabricate items at the shop to greatest extent possible.
1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
  2. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.

3. Form sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
- C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to tolerances specified in MCA's "Guide Specification for Residential Metal Roofing."
- D. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant.
- E. Expansion Provisions: Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
- F. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- G. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and by FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.
- H. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
- I. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
- J. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
- K. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

## 2.6 ROOF DRAINAGE SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Hanging Gutters: Fabricate to cross section indicated, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other accessories as required. Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long sections. Furnish flat-stock gutter spacers and gutter brackets fabricated from same metal as gutters, of size recommended by SMACNA but not less than twice the gutter thickness. Fabricate expansion joints, expansion-joint covers, gutter bead reinforcing bars, and gutter accessories from same metal as gutters.
1. Gutter Style: SMACNA designation F.
  2. Expansion Joints: Lap type.
  3. Accessories: Continuous removable leaf screen with sheet metal frame and hardware cloth screen, Wire ball downspout strainer, Valley baffles.
  4. Gutters with Girth up to 15 Inches (380 mm): Fabricate from the following materials:
    - a. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
- B. Downspouts: Fabricate rectangular downspouts complete with mitered elbows. Furnish with metal hangers, from same material as downspouts, and anchors.

1. Fabricated Hanger Style: SMACNA figure designation to be selected by Architect.
2. Manufactured Hanger Style: SMACNA figure designation to be selected by Architect.
3. Hanger Style: To be selected by Architect.
4. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - a. Aluminum: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.

C. Parapet Scuppers: Fabricate scuppers of dimensions required with closure flange trim to exterior, 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide wall flanges to interior, and base extending 4 inches (100 mm) beyond cant or tapered strip into field of roof. Fasten gravel guard angles to base of scupper. Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.

D. Conductor Heads: Fabricate conductor heads with flanged back and stiffened top edge and of dimensions and shape indicated complete with outlet tubes, exterior flange trim, and built-in overflows. Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.

E. Splash Pans: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Aluminum: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.

## 2.7 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Roof-Edge Flashing (Gravel Stop) and Fascia Cap: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long, but not exceeding 10-foot- (3-m-) long, sections. Furnish with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, joint cover plates.

1. Joint Style: Lap, 4 inches (100 mm) wide.
2. Fabricate with scuppers spaced 10 feet (3 m) apart, of dimensions required with 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide flanges and base extending 4 inches (100 mm) beyond cant or tapered strip into field of roof. Fasten gravel guard angles to base of scupper.
3. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - a. Aluminum: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.

B. Copings: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long, but not exceeding 10-foot- (3-m-) long, sections. Fabricate joint plates of same thickness as copings. Furnish with continuous cleats to support edge of external leg and drill elongated holes for fasteners on interior leg. Miter corners, seal, and solder or weld watertight.

1. Coping Profile: SMACNA figure designation.
2. Joint Style: Butt, with 12-inch- (300-mm-) wide, concealed backup plate.
3. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - a. Aluminum: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.

C. Roof and Roof to Wall Transition, Roof to Roof Edge Flashing (Gravel Stop) Transition, Roof to Roof Edge Flashing (Gravel Stop) and Fascia Cap Transition Expansion-Joint Cover: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Aluminum: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.

D. Base Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Aluminum: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.

E. Counterflashing: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.

F. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.

G. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.

H. Roof-Drain Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.

## 2.8 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Through-Wall Flashing: Fabricate continuous flashings in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long, but not exceeding 12-foot- (3.6-m-) long, sections, under copings, at shelf angles, and where indicated. Fabricate discontinuous lintel, sill, and similar flashings to extend 6 inches (150 mm) beyond each side of wall openings. Form with 2-inch- (50-mm-) high, end dams where flashing is discontinuous. Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.

B. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Fabricate head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches (100 mm) beyond wall openings. Form head and sill flashing with 2-inch- (50-mm-) high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.

2. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.

C. Wall Expansion-Joint Cover: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Aluminum: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick.

2. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Equipment Support Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch (0.48 mm) thick.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.

2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- B. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install underlayment as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Polyethylene Sheet: Install polyethylene sheet with adhesive for anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal flashing and trim. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped and taped joints of not less than 2 inches (50 mm).
- C. Felt Underlayment: Install felt underlayment with adhesive for temporary anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal flashing and trim. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches (50 mm).
- D. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install self-adhering sheet underlayment, wrinkle free. Apply primer if required by underlayment manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer rather than nails for installing underlayment at low temperatures. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches (150 mm) staggered 24 inches (600 mm) between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches (90 mm). Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within fourteen (14) days.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
  1. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line and levels indicated. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and sealant.
  2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.
  3. Space cleats not more than 12 inches (300 mm) apart. Anchor each cleat with two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
  4. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks.
  5. Install sealant tape where indicated.
  6. Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
  7. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by SMACNA.
  1. Coat back side of stainless-steel sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim will contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  2. Underlayment: Where installing metal flashing directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip sheet or install a course of polyethylene sheet.

- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (600 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently watertight, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
- D. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that will penetrate metal decking not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- E. Seal joints as shown and as required for watertight construction.
  - 1. Where sealant-filled joints are used, embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch (25 mm) into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is moderate, between 40 and 70 deg F (4 and 21 deg C), set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F (4 deg C).
  - 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- F. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter. Pre-tin edges of sheets to be soldered to a width of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), except reduce pre-tinning where pre-tinned surface would show in completed Work.
  - 1. Do not solder metallic-coated steel and aluminum sheet.
  - 2. Pre-tinning is not required for zinc-tin alloy-coated stainless steel.
  - 3. Do not use torches for soldering. Heat surfaces to receive solder and flow solder into joint. Fill joint completely. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.
  - 4. Stainless-Steel Soldering: Tin edges of uncoated sheets using solder recommended for stainless steel and acid flux. Promptly remove acid flux residue from metal after tinning and soldering. Comply with solder manufacturer's recommended methods for cleaning and neutralization.
- G. Rivets: Rivet joints in uncoated aluminum zinc where indicated and where necessary for strength.

### 3.4 ROOF DRAINAGE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal roof drainage items to produce complete roof drainage system according to SMACNA recommendations and as indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof drainage system.
- B. Hanging Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered joints or with lapped joints sealed with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion. Attach gutters at eave or fascia to firmly anchored gutter brackets, straps, twisted straps spaced not more than 36 inches (900 mm) apart. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Slope to downspouts.
  - 1. Fasten gutter spacers to front and back of gutter.
  - 2. Loosely lock straps to front gutter bead and anchor to roof deck.
  - 3. Anchor and loosely lock back edge of gutter to continuous cleat, eave or apron flashing.
  - 4. Anchor back of gutter that extends onto roof deck with cleats spaced not more than 24 inches (600 mm) apart.
  - 5. Anchor gutter with spikes and ferrules spaced not more than 24 inches (600 mm) apart.
  - 6. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated, but not exceeding, 50 feet (15.24 m) apart. Install expansion-joint caps.
  - 7. Install continuous gutter screens on gutters with noncorrosive fasteners, hinged to swing open for cleaning gutters.

- C. Built-in Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered or lapped joints sealed with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion. Slope to downspouts. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant.
  - 1. Install felt underlayment layer in built-in gutter trough and extend to drip edge at eaves and under felt underlayment on roof sheathing. Lap sides a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) over underlying course. Lap ends a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm). Stagger end laps between succeeding courses at least 72 inches (1830 mm). Fasten with roofing nails. Install slip sheet over felt underlayment.
  - 2. Anchor and loosely lock back edge of gutter to continuous cleat, eave or apron flashing.
  - 3. Anchor back of gutter that extends onto roof deck with cleats spaced not more than 24 inches (600 mm) apart.
  - 4. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated, but not exceeding, 50 feet (15.24 m) apart. Install expansion-joint caps.
- D. Downspouts: Join sections with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) telescoping joints.
  - 1. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls. Locate hangers at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches (1500 mm) o.c. in between.
  - 2. Provide elbows at base of downspout to direct water away from building.
  - 3. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.
- E. Splash Pans: Install where downspouts discharge on low-slope roofs. Set in asphalt roofing cement or elastomeric sealant compatible with roofing membrane.
- F. Parapet Scuppers: Install scuppers where indicated through parapet. Continuously support scupper, set to correct elevation, and seal flanges to interior wall face, over cants or tapered edge strips, and under roofing membrane.
  - 1. Anchor scupper closure trim flange to exterior wall and seal with elastomeric sealant to scupper.
  - 2. Loosely lock front edge of scupper with conductor head.
  - 3. seal with elastomeric sealant exterior wall scupper flanges into back of conductor head.
- G. Conductor Heads: Anchor securely to wall with elevation of conductor head rim 1 inch (25 mm) below scupper or gutter discharge.
- H. Expansion-Joint Covers: Install expansion-joint covers at locations and of configuration indicated. Lap joints a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) in direction of water flow.

### 3.5 ROOF FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, set units true to line, and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- B. Roof Edge Flashing: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and as indicated. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at staggered 3-inch (75-mm) centers.
- C. Roof Edge Flashing: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for specified wind zone and as indicated. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at 16-inch (400-mm) centers.
- D. Copings: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and as indicated.

1. Interlock exterior bottom edge of coping with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at 16-inch (400-mm) centers.
  2. Anchor interior leg of coping with washers and screw fasteners through slotted holes at 24-inch (600-mm) centers.
- E. Copings: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for specified wind zone and as indicated.
1. Interlock exterior bottom edge of coping with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at 16-inch (400-mm) centers.
  2. Anchor interior leg of coping with screw fasteners and washers at 20-inch (500-mm) centers.
- F. Pipe or Post Counterflashing: Install counterflashing umbrella with close-fitting collar with top edge flared for elastomeric sealant, extending a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) over base flashing. Install stainless-steel draw band and tighten.
- G. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing. Extend counterflashing 4 inches (100 mm) over base flashing. Lap counterflashing joints a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) and bed with sealant. Secure in a waterproof manner by means of snap-in installation and sealant or lead wedges and sealant, interlocking folded seam or blind rivets and sealant or anchor and washer at 36-inch (900-mm) centers.
- H. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with elastomeric or butyl sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.

### 3.6 WALL FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture according to SMACNA recommendations and as indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
- B. Through-Wall Flashing: Installation of through-wall flashing is specified in Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry."
- C. Reglets: Installation of reglets is specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" and Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry."
- D. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Install continuous head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches (100 mm) beyond wall openings.

### 3.7 MISCELLANEOUS FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Overhead-Piping Safety Pans: Suspend pans independent from structure above as indicated on Drawings. Pipe and install drain line to plumbing waste or drainage system.
- B. Equipment Support Flashing: Coordinate installation of equipment support flashing with installation of roofing and equipment. Weld or seal flashing with elastomeric sealant to equipment support member.

### 3.8 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

- B. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerances specified in MCA's "Guide Specification for Residential Metal Roofing."

### 3.9 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.
- D. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- E. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 076200

SECTION 077100 - ROOF SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Copings.
  - 2. Roof-edge flashings.
  - 3. Roof-edge drainage systems.
  - 4. Reglets and counterflashings.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. FM Approvals' Listing: Manufacture and install copings roof-edge flashings that are listed in FM Approvals' "RoofNav" and approved for windstorm classification, Class 1-105. Identify materials with FM Approvals' markings.
- B. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install copings roof-edge flashings tested according to SPRI ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressures:
  - 1. Design Pressure: As indicated on Structural Drawings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof specialties. Include plans, elevations, expansion-joint locations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product test reports.
- B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace roof specialties that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within twenty (20) years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 EXPOSED METALS

- A. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper to suit forming operations and performance required.
  - 1. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
  - 2. Mill Finish: As manufactured.
  - 3. Exposed Coil-Coated Finishes: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - a. Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. System consisting of primer, fluoropolymer color coat, and clear fluoropolymer topcoat, with both color coat and clear topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- C. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation.
  - 1. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
  - 2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finishes: Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - a. Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer, fluoropolymer color coat, and clear fluoropolymer topcoat, with both color coat and clear topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.

### 2.2 CONCEALED METALS

- A. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and structural performance indicated, mill finished.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and structural performance indicated, mill finished.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- D. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation.

### 2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Felt: ASTM D 226, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.
- B. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils (0.76 to 1.0 mm) thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
  - 1. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970; stable after testing at 240 deg F (116 deg C).
  - 2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C).
- C. Polyethylene Sheet: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick polyethylene sheet complying with ASTM D 4397.

- D. Slip Sheet: Building paper, 3-lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16-kg/sq. m) minimum, rosin sized.

#### 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.
- B. Fasteners: Manufacturer's recommended fasteners, suitable for application and designed to meet performance requirements. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Exposed Penetrating Fasteners: Gasketed screws with hex washer heads matching color of sheet metal.
  - 2. Fasteners for Copper Sheet: Copper, hardware bronze, or passivated Series 300 stainless steel.
  - 3. Fasteners for Aluminum: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
  - 4. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
  - 5. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.
- C. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polymer sealant of type, grade, class, and use classifications required by roofing-specialty manufacturer for each application.
- D. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
- E. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- F. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.
- G. Solder for Copper: ASTM B 32, lead-free solder.

#### 2.5 COPINGS

- A. Copings: Manufactured coping system consisting of formed-metal coping cap in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet (3.6 m), concealed anchorage; corner units, end cap units, and concealed splice plates with same finish as coping caps.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Architectural Products Company.
    - b. ATAS International, Inc.
    - c. Castle Metal Products.
    - d. Cheney Flashing Company.
    - e. Hickman Company, W. P.
    - f. Johns Manville.
    - g. Merchant & Evans, Inc.
    - h. Metal-Era, Inc.
    - i. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC.
    - j. MM Systems Corporation.
    - k. National Sheet Metal Systems, Inc.
    - l. Perimeter Systems; a division of Southern Aluminum Finishing Company, Inc.
    - m. Petersen Aluminum Corporation.

3. Coping-Cap Material: Formed aluminum, thickness as required to meet performance requirements.
  - a. Finish: Three-coat fluoropolymer.
  - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
4. Corners: Factory mitered and continuously welded.
5. Coping-Cap Attachment Method: Face leg hooked to continuous cleat with back leg fastener exposed, fabricated from coping-cap material.
6. Face Leg Cleats: Concealed, continuous stainless steel.

## 2.6 ROOF-EDGE FLASHINGS

- A. Canted Roof-Edge Fascia and Gravel Stop: Manufactured, two-piece, roof-edge fascia consisting of compression-clamped metal fascia cover in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet (3.6 m) and a continuous formed galvanized-steel sheet cant, 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) thick, minimum, with extended vertical leg terminating in a drip-edge cleat. Provide matching corner units.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Architectural Products Company.
    - b. ATAS International, Inc.
    - c. Castle Metal Products.
    - d. Cheney Flashing Company.
    - e. Hickman Company, W. P.
    - f. Johns Manville.
    - g. Merchant & Evans, Inc.
    - h. Metal-Era, Inc.
    - i. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC.
    - j. MM Systems Corporation.
    - k. National Sheet Metal Systems, Inc.
    - l. Petersen Aluminum Corporation.
  3. Fascia Cover: Fabricated from the following exposed metal:
    - a. Formed Aluminum: Thickness as required to meet performance requirements.
    - b. Zinc-Coated Steel: Nominal thickness as required to meet performance requirements.
  4. Corners: Factory mitered and continuously welded.
  5. Splice Plates: Concealed, of same material, finish, and shape as fascia cover.
  6. Fascia Accessories: Fascia extenders with continuous hold-down cleats; Wall cap Soffit trim Overflow scuppers; Overflow scuppers with perforated screens; Spillout scuppers; Downspout scuppers with integral conductor head and downspout adapters; Downspout scuppers with integral conductor head and downspout adapters and perforated screens.
- B. Roof-Edge Fascia: Manufactured, two-piece, roof-edge fascia consisting of snap-on metal fascia cover in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet (3.6 m) and a continuous formed- or extruded-aluminum anchor bar with integral drip-edge cleat to engage fascia cover. Provide matching corner units.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Hickman Company, W. P.
    - b. Johns Manville.
    - c. Metal-Era, Inc.
    - d. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC.
    - e. National Sheet Metal Systems, Inc.
    - f. Perimeter Systems; a division of Southern Aluminum Finishing Company, Inc.
  3. Fascia Cover: Fabricated from the following exposed metal:
    - a. Formed Aluminum: Thickness as required to meet performance requirements.
    - b. Zinc-Coated Steel: Nominal thickness as required to meet performance requirements.
  4. Corners: Factory mitered and continuously welded.
  5. Splice Plates: Concealed, of same material, finish, and shape as fascia cover.
  6. Fascia Accessories: Fascia extenders with continuous hold-down cleats; Wall cap; Soffit trim; Overflow scuppers; Overflow scuppers with perforated screens; Spillout scuppers; Downspout scuppers with integral conductor head and downspout adapters; Downspout scuppers with integral conductor head and downspout adapters and perforated screens.
- C. One-Piece Gravel Stops: Manufactured, one-piece, metal gravel stop in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet (3.6 m), with a horizontal flange and vertical leg, drain-through fascia terminating in a drip edge, and concealed splice plates of same material, finish, and shape as gravel stop. Provide matching corner units.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Architectural Products Company.
    - b. Berger Building Products, Inc.
    - c. Castle Metal Products.
    - d. Cheney Flashing Company.
    - e. Hickman Company, W. P.
    - f. Metal-Era, Inc.
    - g. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC.
    - h. MM Systems Corporation.
    - i. National Sheet Metal Systems, Inc.
    - j. Perimeter Systems; a division of Southern Aluminum Finishing Company, Inc.
    - k. Petersen Aluminum Corporation.
  3. Fabricate from the following exposed metal:
    - a. Formed Aluminum: Thickness as required to meet performance requirements.
  4. Corners: Factory mitered and continuously welded.
  5. Accessories: Fascia extenders with continuous hold-down cleats; Wall cap; Soffit trim.
- D. Aluminum Finish: Three-coat fluoropolymer.
1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

## 2.7 ROOF-EDGE DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Andreas Renner KG.
  2. Architectural Products Company.
  3. ATAS International, Inc.
  4. Berger Building Products, Inc.
  5. Castle Metal Products.
  6. Cheney Flashing Company.
  7. CopperCraft by FABRAL; a Euramax company.
  8. Hickman Company, W. P.
  9. Klauer Manufacturing Company.
  10. Merchant & Evans, Inc.
  11. Metal-Era, Inc.
  12. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC.
  13. MM Systems Corporation.
  14. National Sheet Metal Systems, Inc.
  15. Perimeter Systems; a division of Southern Aluminum Finishing Company, Inc.
- C. Gutters: Manufactured in uniform section lengths not exceeding 12 feet (3.6 m), with matching corner units, ends, outlet tubes, and other accessories. Elevate back edge at least 1 inch (25 mm) above front edge. Furnish flat-stock gutter straps, gutter brackets, expansion joints, and expansion-joint covers fabricated from same metal as gutters.
1. Fabricate from the following exposed metal:
    - a. Formed Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
  2. Gutter Profile: As indicated according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
  3. Applied Fascia Cover (Concealed Gutter): Exposed, formed aluminum, 0.040 inch (1.02 mm) thick, with factory-mitered corners, ends, and concealed splice joints.
  4. Corners: Factory mitered and continuously welded.
  5. Gutter Supports: Gutter brackets; Straps; Spikes and ferrules; Manufacturer's standard supports as selected by Architect with finish matching the gutters.
  6. Gutter Accessories: Continuous snap-in plastic leaf guard; Wire ball downspout strainer; Flat ends.
- D. Downspouts: Plain rectangular complete with mitered elbows, manufactured from the following exposed metal. Furnish with metal hangers, from same material as downspouts, and anchors.
1. Formed Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
- E. Parapet Scuppers: Manufactured with closure flange trim to exterior, 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide wall flanges to interior, and base extending 4 inches (100 mm) beyond cant or tapered strip into field of roof. Fasten gravel guard angles to base of scuppers.
1. Fabricate from the following exposed metal:
    - a. Formed Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.

- F. Conductor Heads: Manufactured conductor heads, each with flanged back and stiffened top edge and of dimensions and shape indicated, complete with outlet tube that nests into upper end of downspout, exterior flange trim and built-in overflow.
  - 1. Fabricate from the following exposed metal:
    - a. Formed Aluminum: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
- G. Aluminum Finish: Three-coat fluoropolymer.
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

## 2.8 REGLETS AND COUNTERFLASHINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Castle Metal Products.
  - 2. Cheney Flashing Company.
  - 3. Fry Reglet Corporation.
  - 4. Heckmann Building Products Inc.
  - 5. Hickman Company, W. P.
  - 6. Keystone Flashing Company, Inc.
  - 7. Metal-Era, Inc.
  - 8. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC.
  - 9. MM Systems Corporation.
  - 10. National Sheet Metal Systems, Inc.
- C. Reglets: Manufactured units formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, from the following exposed metal:
  - 1. Formed Aluminum: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.
  - 2. Corners: Factory mitered and continuously welded.
  - 3. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide reglets with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.
  - 4. Stucco Type, Embedded: Provide reglets with upturned fastening flange and extension leg of length to match thickness of applied finish materials.
  - 5. Concrete Type, Embedded: Provide temporary closure tape to keep reglet free of concrete materials, special fasteners for attaching reglet to concrete forms, and guides to ensure alignment of reglet section ends.
  - 6. Masonry Type, Embedded: Provide reglets with offset top flange for embedment in masonry mortar joint.
  - 7. Multiuse Type, Embedded: For multiuse embedment in cast-in-place concrete masonry mortar joints.
- D. Counterflashings: Manufactured units of heights to overlap top edges of base flashings by 4 inches (100 mm) and in lengths not exceeding 12 feet (3.6 m) designed to snap into reglets or through-wall-flashing receiver and compress against base flashings with joints lapped, from the following exposed metal:
  - 1. Formed Aluminum: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.

- E. Accessories:
  - 1. Flexible-Flashing Retainer: Provide resilient plastic or rubber accessory to secure flexible flashing in reglet where clearance does not permit use of standard metal counterflashing or where reglet is provided separate from metal counterflashing.
  - 2. Counterflashing Wind-Restraint Clips: Provide clips to be installed before counterflashing to prevent wind uplift of counterflashing lower edge.
- F. Aluminum Finish: Three-coat fluoropolymer.
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Install roof specialties according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor roof specialties securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete roof-specialty systems.
  - 1. Install roof specialties level, plumb, true to line and elevation; with limited oil-canning and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
  - 2. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder and sealant.
  - 3. Install roof specialties to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before manufacture.
  - 4. Torch cutting of roof specialties is not permitted.
  - 5. Install underlayment with adhesive for temporary anchorage. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches (50 mm). Roll laps of self-adhering sheet underlayment with roller; cover within fourteen (14) days.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum roof specialties with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  - 2. Underlayment: Where installing metal flashing directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip sheet self-adhering, high-temperature sheet underlayment or polyethylene sheet.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Allow for thermal expansion of exposed roof specialties.
  - 1. Space movement joints at a maximum of 12 feet (3.6 m) with no joints within 18 inches (450 mm) of corners or intersections unless otherwise shown on Drawings.
  - 2. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F (4 and 21 deg C), set joint members for fifty percent (50%) movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
- D. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that will penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- E. Seal joints with sealant as required by roofing-specialty manufacturer.

- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction. Place sealant to be completely concealed in joint. Do not install sealants at temperatures below 40 deg F (4 deg C).
- G. Soldered Joints: Clean surfaces to be soldered, removing oils and foreign matter. Pre-tin edges of sheets to be soldered to a width of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) except reduce pre-tinning where pre-tinned surface would show in completed Work. Tin edges of uncoated copper sheets using solder for copper. Do not use torches for soldering. Heat surfaces to receive solder and flow solder into joint. Fill joint completely. Completely remove flux and spatter from exposed surfaces.

### 3.2 COPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleats, anchor plates, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
- B. Anchor copings to meet performance requirements.
  - 1. Interlock face and back leg drip edges of snap-on coping cap into cleated anchor plates anchored to substrate at manufacturer's required spacing that meets performance requirements.
  - 2. Interlock face leg drip edge into continuous cleat anchored to substrate at manufacturer's required spacing that meets performance requirements. Anchor back leg of coping with screw fasteners and elastomeric washers at manufacturer's required spacing that meets performance requirements.

### 3.3 ROOF-EDGE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleats, cants, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
- B. Anchor roof edgings with manufacturer's required devices, fasteners, and fastener spacing to meet performance requirements.

### 3.4 ROOF-EDGE DRAINAGE-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install components to produce a complete roof-edge drainage system according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Gutters: Join and seal gutter lengths. Allow for thermal expansion. Attach gutters to firmly anchored gutter supports spaced not more than 12 inches (305 mm) apart. Attach ends with rivets and solder to make watertight. Slope to downspouts.
  - 1. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated but not exceeding 50 feet (15.2 m) apart. Install expansion joint caps.
  - 2. Install continuous leaf guards on gutters with noncorrosive fasteners, removable for cleaning gutters.
- C. Downspouts: Join sections with manufacturer's standard telescoping joints. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls and 1 inch (25 mm) away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches (1500 mm) o.c.
- D. Parapet Scuppers: Install scuppers where indicated through parapet. Continuously support scupper, set to correct elevation, and seal flanges to interior wall face, over cants or tapered edge strips, and under roofing membrane.
- E. Conductor Heads: Anchor securely to wall with elevation of conductor top edge 1 inch (25 mm) below scupper or gutter discharge.

3.5 REGLET AND COUNTERFLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Embedded Reglets: See Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" and Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for installation of reglets.
- B. Surface-Mounted Reglets: Install reglets to receive flashings where flashing without embedded reglets is indicated on Drawings. Install at height so that inserted counterflashings overlap 4 inches (100 mm) over top edge of base flashings.
- C. Counterflashings: Insert counterflashings into reglets or other indicated receivers; ensure that counterflashings overlap 4 inches (100 mm) over top edge of base flashings. Lap counterflashing joints a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) and bed with sealant. Fit counterflashings tightly to base flashings.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder and sealants.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as roof specialties are installed.

END OF SECTION 077100

## SECTION 077129 - MANUFACTURED ROOF EXPANSION JOINTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes bellows-type and aluminum roof expansion joints.

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof expansion joints.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color specified.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each fire-barrier provided as part of a roof-expansion-joint assembly, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Sample Warranties: For special warranty.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Installer of roofing membrane.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace roof expansion joints and components that leak, deteriorate beyond normal weathering, or otherwise fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide fire-barrier assemblies with fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical products, per test method indicated, by UL or another testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Fire-barrier products shall bear classification marking of qualified testing agency.

#### 2.2 BELLOWS-TYPE ROOF EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain bellows-type roof expansion joints approved by roofing manufacturer and that are part of roofing membrane warranty.

- B. Flanged Bellows Roof Expansion Joint: Manufactured, continuous, waterproof, joint-cover assembly, consisting of exposed membrane bellows, laminated to flexible, closed-cell support foam, and secured along each edge to a metal flange for nailing to substrate. Provide factory-fabricated units for corner and joint intersections and horizontal and vertical transitions including those to other building expansion joints
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Architectural Art Manufacturing Inc.; a division of Pittcon Architectural Metals, LLC.
    - b. Balco, Inc.
    - c. Building Materials Corporation of America; GAF Materials Corporation.
    - d. C/S Group.
    - e. InPro Corporation.
    - f. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - g. MM Systems Corporation.
    - h. Watson Bowman Acme Corp.
  3. Bellows: EPDM Neoprene or PVC flexible membrane.
  4. Flanges: Galvanized steel.
  5. Cover Membrane: Flexible membrane, factory laminated to bellows and covering entire joint assembly and curbs.
  6. Secondary Seal: Continuous, waterproof membrane within joint and attached to substrate on sides of joint below the primary bellows assembly.
    - a. Thermal Insulation: Fill space above secondary seal with manufacturer's standard, factory-installed glass-fiber insulation; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
  7. Fire Barrier: Manufacturer's standard fire-resistive joint system with ratings determined per ASTM E 1966 or UL 2079 to resist spread of fire and to accommodate building thermal and seismic movements without impairing its ability to resist the passage of fire and hot gases.
    - a. Fire-Resistance Rating: in fire-resistance rating of the roof assembly.

### 2.3 ALUMINUM ROOF EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. Aluminum Roof Expansion Joint: Manufactured, continuous, waterproof, joint-cover assembly; consisting of a formed or extruded metal cover secured to extruded aluminum frames, with water-resistant gasketing between cover and frames, and with provision for securing assembly to substrate and sealing assembly to roofing membrane or flashing. Provide factory-fabricated units for corner and joint intersections and horizontal and vertical transitions including those to other building expansion joints
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Architectural Art Manufacturing Inc.; a division of Pittcon Architectural Metals, LLC.
    - b. Balco, Inc.
    - c. C/S Group.
    - d. InPro Corporation.
    - e. MM Systems Corporation.

- f. Nystrom Building Products.
  - g. Watson Bowman Acme Corp.
3. Frame Members: Extruded aluminum configured as indicated; with exposed finish matching cover.
  4. Cover: Formed or extruded aluminum or Stainless steel.
    - a. Aluminum Finish: High-performance organic.
    - b. Aluminum Finish Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
    - c. Stainless Steel Finish: 2B.
  5. Secondary Seal: Continuous, waterproof membrane within joint and attached to substrate on sides of joint below the cover.
    - a. Thermal Insulation: Fill space above secondary seal with mineral-fiber blanket insulation; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
  6. Fire Barrier: Manufacturer's standard fire-resistive joint system with ratings determined per ASTM E 1966 or UL 2079 to resist spread of fire and accommodate building thermal and seismic movements without impairing its ability to resist the passage of fire and hot gases.
    - a. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than fire-resistance rating of the roof assembly.

#### 2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, hot-dip zinc-coating designation G90 (Z275).
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- C. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M) for sheet and plate, ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M) for extrusions; alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper to suit forming operations and performance required.
  1. Apply manufacturer's standard protective coating on aluminum surfaces to be placed in contact with cementitious or preservative-treated wood materials.
  2. Mill Finish: As manufactured.
  3. Class II, Clear Anodic Finish: Architectural Class II, clear coating 0.010 mm or thicker, complying with AAMA 611.
  4. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker, complying with AAMA 611.
  5. High-Performance Organic Finish: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
- D. EPDM Membrane: ASTM D 4637, Type standard with manufacturer for application.
- E. Neoprene Membrane: Neoprene sheet recommended by EPDM manufacturer for resistance to hydrocarbons, non-aromatic solvents, grease, and oil; and as standard with roof-expansion-joint manufacturer for application.
- F. PVC Membrane: ASTM D 4434, Type standard with manufacturer for application.

- G. Adhesives: As recommended by roof-expansion-joint manufacturer.
- H. Adhesives: As recommended by roof-expansion-joint manufacturer.
- I. Fasteners: Manufacturer's recommended fasteners, suitable for application and designed to withstand design loads.
  - 1. Exposed Fasteners: Gasketed. Use screws with hex washer heads matching color of material being fastened.
- J. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: ASTM C 665.
- K. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling and installing roof expansion joints.
  - 1. Anchor roof expansion joints securely in place, with provisions for required movement.
  - 2. Install roof expansion joints true to line and elevation; with limited oil-canning and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
  - 3. Provide for linear thermal expansion of roof expansion joint materials.
  - 4. Provide uniform profile of roof expansion joint throughout its length; do not stretch or squeeze membranes.
  - 5. Provide uniform, neat seams.
  - 6. Install roof expansion joints to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance.
  - 7. Torch cutting of roof expansion joints is not permitted.
- B. Directional Changes and Other Expansion-Control Joint Systems: Install factory-fabricated units at directional changes and at transitions between roof expansion joints and exterior expansion-control joint systems specified in Division 07 Section "Expansion Control" to provide continuous, uninterrupted, and watertight joints.
- C. Splices: Splice roof expansion joints with materials provided by roof-expansion-joint manufacturer for this purpose.
  - 1. Install waterproof splices and prefabricated end dams to prevent leakage of secondary-seal membrane.
- D. Fire Barrier: Install fire barrier where indicated to provide continuous, uninterrupted fire resistance throughout length of roof expansion joint, including transitions and end joints.
- E. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 077129

## SECTION 077200 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Roof curbs.
2. Equipment supports.
3. Roof hatches.
4. Pipe supports.
5. Roof walkways.
6. Preformed flashing sleeves.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for metal vertical ladders, ships' ladders, and stairs for access to roof hatches.
2. Division 07 steep-slope roofing Sections for ridge vents.
3. Division 07 low-slope roofing Sections for roofing accessories.
4. Division 07 Section "Metal Roof Panels" for ridge vents and snow guards for metal roof panels.
5. Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for shop- and field-formed metal flashing, roof-drainage systems, roof expansion-joint covers, and miscellaneous sheet metal trim and accessories.
6. Division 07 Section "Roof Specialties" for manufactured fasciae, copings, gravel stops, gutters and downspouts, and counterflashing.
7. Division 07 Section "Manufactured Roof Expansion Joints" for manufactured roof expansion-joint covers.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roof accessories. Include plans, elevations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Indicate dimensions, loadings, and special conditions. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, prepared on Samples of size to adequately show color.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans, drawn to scale, and coordinating penetrations and roof-mounted items. Show the following:
1. Size and location of roof accessories specified in this Section.
  2. Method of attaching roof accessories to roof or building structure.
  3. Other roof-mounted items including mechanical and electrical equipment, ductwork, piping, and conduit.
  4. Required clearances.
- B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roof accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace roof accessories that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  2. Finish Warranty Period: Twenty (20) years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 METAL MATERIALS

- A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation and mill phosphatized for field painting where indicated.
1. Mill-Phosphatized Finish: Manufacturer's standard for field painting.
  2. Factory Prime Coating: Where field painting is indicated, apply pretreatment and white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 0.2 mil (0.005 mm).
  3. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

- a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
  4. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm) for topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).
  5. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester-backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat, with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).
- B. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, AZ50 (AZM150) coated.
1. Factory Prime Coating: Where field painting is indicated, apply pretreatment and white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 0.2 mil (0.005 mm).
  2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
  3. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm) for topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).
  4. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester-backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat, with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).
- C. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), manufacturer's standard alloy for finish required, with temper to suit forming operations and performance required.
1. Mill Finish: As manufactured.
  2. Factory Prime Coating: Where field painting is indicated, apply pretreatment and white or light-colored, factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 0.2 mil (0.005 mm).
  3. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
    - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 620. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
  4. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
  5. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester-backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat, with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).
- D. Aluminum Extrusions and Tubes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), manufacturer's standard alloy and temper for type of use, finished to match assembly where used, otherwise mill finished.

- E. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 370, manufacturer's standard temper.
- F. Stainless-Steel Sheet and Shapes: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- G. Steel Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Steel Tube: ASTM A 500, round tube.
- I. Galvanized-Steel Tube: ASTM A 500, round tube, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- J. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, galvanized.

## 2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.
- B. Acrylic Glazing: ASTM D 4802, thermoformable, monolithic sheet, manufacturer's standard, Type UVA (formulated with UV absorber), Finish 1 (smooth or polished).
- C. Polycarbonate Glazing: Thermoformable, monolithic polycarbonate sheets manufactured by extrusion process, burglar-resistance rated according to UL 972 with an average impact strength of 12 to 16 ft-lbf/in. (640 to 854 J/m) of width when tested according to ASTM D 256, Method A (Izod).
- D. Cellulosic-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 1, thickness as indicated.
- E. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 726, thickness as indicated.
- F. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, thickness as indicated.
- G. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for aboveground use, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, containing no arsenic or chromium, and complying with AWWA C2; not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
- H. Security Grilles: 3/4-inch (19-mm) diameter, ASTM A 1011/A 1011M steel bars spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c. in one direction and 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. in the other; factory finished as follows:
  - 1. Surface Preparation: Remove mill scale and rust, if any, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
  - 2. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Apply shop primer specified below immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.
  - 3. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's or fabricator's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer; selected for resistance to normal atmospheric corrosion, for compatibility with substrate and field-applied finish paint system indicated, and for capability to provide a sound foundation for field-applied topcoats under prolonged exposure.
- I. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- J. Underlayment:
  - 1. Felt: ASTM D 226, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.
  - 2. Polyethylene Sheet: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick polyethylene sheet complying with ASTM D 4397.
  - 3. Slip Sheet: Building paper, 3-lb/100 sq. ft. (0.16-kg/sq. m) minimum, rosin sized.

- K. Fasteners: Roof accessory manufacturer's recommended fasteners suitable for application and metals being fastened. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide nonremovable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.
  - 2. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
  - 3. Fasteners for Copper Sheet: Copper, hardware bronze, or passivated Series 300 stainless steel.
  - 4. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
- L. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, PVC, or silicone or a flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.
- M. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polymer sealant as recommended by roof accessory manufacturer for installation indicated; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints and remain watertight.
- N. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for expansion joints with limited movement.
- O. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

### 2.3 ROOF CURBS

- A. Roof Curbs: Internally reinforced roof-curb units with integral spring-type vibration isolators and capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction indicated on Drawings; with welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, stepped integral metal cant raised the thickness of roof insulation, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. AES Industries, Inc.
    - b. Curbs Plus, Inc.
    - c. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products.
    - d. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
    - e. LM Curbs.
    - f. Metallic Products Corp.
    - g. Milcor Inc.; Commercial Products Group of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
    - h. Pate Company (The).
    - i. Roof Products, Inc.
    - j. Safe Air of Illinois.
    - k. Thybar Corporation.
    - l. Vent Products Co., Inc.
- B. Size: Coordinate dimensions with roughing-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.
- C. Loads: Per drawings.

- D. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.079 inch (2.01 mm) thick.
  - 1. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
  - 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
- E. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.090 inch (2.28 mm) thick.
  - 1. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
  - 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
- F. Material: Stainless-steel sheet, 0.078 inch (1.98 mm) thick.
  - 1. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- G. Construction:
  - 1. Insulation: Factory insulated with 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) thick cellulosic glass-fiber board insulation.
  - 2. Liner: Same material as curb, of manufacturer's standard thickness and finish.
  - 3. Factory-installed wood nailer at top of curb, continuous around curb perimeter.
  - 4. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
  - 5. Fabricate curbs to minimum height of 12 inches (300 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
  - 6. Top Surface: Level around perimeter with roof slope accommodated by sloping the deck-mounting flange.
  - 7. Sloping Roofs: Where roof slope exceeds 1:48, fabricate curb with perimeter curb height tapered to accommodate roof slope so that top surface of perimeter curb is level. Equip unit with water diverter or cricket on side that obstructs water flow.
  - 8. Security Grille: Provide where indicated.

## 2.4 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Equipment Supports: Internally reinforced metal equipment supports capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction indicated on Drawings; with welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, stepped integral metal cant raised the thickness of roof insulation, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. AES Industries, Inc.
    - b. Curbs Plus, Inc.
    - c. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products.
    - d. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
    - e. LM Curbs.
    - f. Milcor Inc.; Commercial Products Group of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
    - g. Pate Company (The).
    - h. Roof Products, Inc.
    - i. Thybar Corporation.
    - j. Vent Products Co., Inc.

- B. Size: Coordinate dimensions with roughing-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.
- C. Loads: Per drawings.
- D. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.079 inch (2.01 mm) thick.
  - 1. Finish: Mill phosphatized, Factory prime coating, Two-coat fluoropolymer, Baked enamel or powder coat.
  - 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range
- E. Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.090 inch (2.28 mm) thick.
  - 1. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
  - 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
- F. Material: Stainless-steel sheet, 0.078 inch (1.98 mm) thick.
  - 1. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- G. Construction:
  - 1. Insulation: Factory insulated with 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) thick cellulosic glass-fiber board insulation.
  - 2. Liner: Same material as equipment support, of manufacturer's standard thickness and finish.
  - 3. Factory-installed continuous wood nailers 5-1/2 inches (140 mm) wide at tops of equipment supports.
  - 4. Metal Counterflashing: Manufacturer's standard, removable, fabricated of same metal and finish as equipment support.
  - 5. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
  - 6. Fabricate equipment supports to minimum height of 12 inches (300 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
  - 7. Sloping Roofs: Where roof slope exceeds 1:48, fabricate each support with height to accommodate roof slope so that tops of supports are level with each other. Equip supports with water diverters or crickets on sides that obstruct water flow.
  - 8. Security Grille: Provide where indicated.

## 2.5 ROOF HATCH

- A. Roof Hatches: Metal roof-hatch units with lids and insulated double-walled curbs, welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, continuous lid-to-curb counterflashing and weathertight perimeter gasketing, stepped integral metal cant raised the thickness of roof insulation, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. AES Industries, Inc.
    - b. Babcock-Davis.
    - c. Bilco Company (The).
    - d. Bristolite Skylights.

- e. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products.
  - f. Dur-Red Products.
  - g. Hi Pro International, Inc.
  - h. J. L. Industries, Inc.
  - i. Metallic Products Corp.
  - j. Milcor Inc.; Commercial Products Group of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
  - k. Naturalite Skylight Systems; Vistawall Group (The).
  - l. Nystrom.
  - m. O'Keeffe's Inc.
  - n. Pate Company (The).
  - o. Precision Ladders, LLC.
- B. Type and Size: Per drawings.
- C. Loads: Per drawings.
- D. Hatch Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) or Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 0.079 inch (2.01 mm) thick.
- 1. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer or Baked enamel or powder coat.
  - 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
- E. Hatch Material: Aluminum sheet, 0.090 inch (2.28 mm) thick.
- 1. Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
  - 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
- F. Hatch Material: Stainless-steel sheet, 0.078 inch (1.98 mm) thick.
- 1. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- G. Construction:
- 1. Insulation: Cellulosic-fiber, Glass-fiber or Polyisocyanurate board.
  - 2. Hatch Lid: Opaque, insulated, and double walled, with manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as outer metal lid.
  - 3. Hatch Lid: Glazed, insulated, and double walled, with manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as outer metal lid.
  - 4. Curb Liner: Manufacturer's standard, of same material and finish as metal curb.
  - 5. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
  - 6. Fabricate curbs to minimum height of 12 inches (300 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
  - 7. Sloping Roofs: Where slope or roof deck exceeds 1:48, fabricate curb with perimeter curb height that is tapered to accommodate roof slope so that top surfaces of perimeter curb are level. Equip hatch with water diverter or cricket on side that obstructs water flow.
- H. Hardware: Galvanized or Stainless-steel spring latch with turn handles, butt- or pintle-type hinge system, and padlock hasps inside and outside.
- 1. Provide two-point latch on lids larger than 84 inches (2130 mm).
  - 2. Provide remote-control operation.
- I. Safety Railing System: Roof-hatch manufacturer's standard system including rails, clamps, fasteners, safety barrier at railing opening, and accessories required for a complete installation; attached to roof hatch and complying with 29 CFR 1910.23 requirements and authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Height: 42 inches (1060 mm) above finished roof deck.
2. Posts and Rails: Galvanized-steel pipe, 1-1/4 inches (31 mm) in diameter or galvanized-steel tube, 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) in diameter.
3. Flat Bar: Galvanized steel, 2 inches (50 mm) high by 3/8 inch (9 mm) thick.
4. Maximum Opening Size: System constructed to prevent passage of a sphere 21 inches (533 mm) in diameter.
5. Chain Passway Barrier: Galvanized proof coil chain with quick link on fixed end.
6. Self-Latching Gate: Fabricated of same materials and rail spacing as safety railing system. Provide manufacturer's standard hinges and self-latching mechanism.
7. Post and Rail Tops and Ends: Weather resistant, closed or plugged with prefabricated end fittings.
8. Provide weep holes or another means to drain entrapped water in hollow sections of handrail and railing members.
9. Fabricate joints exposed to weather to be watertight.
10. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard, finished to match railing system.
11. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

J. Ladder-Assist Post: Roof-hatch manufacturer's standard device for attachment to roof-access ladder.

1. Operation: Post locks in place on full extension; release mechanism returns post to closed position.
2. Height: 42 inches (1060 mm) above finished roof deck.
3. Material: Stainless steel.
4. Post: 1-5/8-inch- (41-mm-) diameter pipe.
5. Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked enamel or powder coat.

a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

## 2.6 PIPE SUPPORTS

A. Pipe Supports: Adjustable-height, extruded-aluminum tube, filled with urethane insulation; 2 inches (50 mm) in diameter; with aluminum baseplate, EPDM base seal, manufacturer's recommended hardware for mounting to structure or structural roof deck as indicated, and extruded-aluminum carrier assemblies; suitable for quantity of pipe runs and sizes.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Thaler Metal USA Inc.

3. Pipe Support Height: As indicated on Drawings.
4. Roller Assembly: With stainless-steel roller, sized for supported pipes.
5. Pipe Support Flashing: Manufacturer's standard insulated sleeve flashing with integral base flange; aluminum sheet, 0.063 inch (1.60 mm) thick or copper sheet, 16 oz. (0.55 mm) thick.
6. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

B. Terrace Lighting Supports: Epoxy-coated, hollow steel pipe support, filled with urethane insulation; with epoxy-coated steel baseplate, EPDM base seal, manufacturer's recommended hardware for mounting to structure or structural roof deck as indicated, and threaded stainless-steel cap.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Thaler Metal USA Inc.
  3. Height: 18 inches (457 mm).
  4. Lighting Pole Mounting: Stainless-steel lighting pole adapter.
  5. Pipe Support Flashing: Manufacturer's standard insulated sleeve flashing with integral base flange; aluminum sheet, 0.063 inch (1.60 mm) thick or copper sheet, 16 oz. (0.55 mm) thick.
  6. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- C. Light-Duty Pipe Supports: Extruded-aluminum base assembly and Type 304 stainless-steel roller assembly for pipe sizes indicated, including manufacturer's recommended load-distributing baseplate.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Thaler Metal USA Inc.
  3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- D. Duct Supports: Extruded-aluminum, urethane-insulated supports, 2 inches (50 mm) in diameter; with manufacturer's recommended hardware for mounting to structure or structural roof deck.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Thaler Metal USA Inc.
  3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

## 2.7 ROOF WALKWAYS

- A. Roof Walkway: Metal planking formed from multiple C-shaped channels with upper surface punched in serrated diamond or rectangular shapes to produce raised slip-resistant surface and drainage holes. Provide support framing, brackets, connectors, nosings, and other accessories and components needed for complete installation. Include step units or stairs of similar construction for changes in elevation. Equip with safety railings that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, where height of walkway or stairs requires them.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. GS Metals Corp.
    - b. Miro Industries, Inc.
    - c. PHP Systems/Design.
    - d. Unistrut Corporation.
  3. Plank Width: As indicated.

4. Walkway Width: As indicated.
5. Channel Depth: As indicated.
6. Metal Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet or stainless-steel sheet.
7. Support Stands: Manufacturer's standard, with protective pads compatible with roofing material.
8. Support Pads: Continuous isolation pads, attach roof-walkway supports to pads so that supports are separated from roof membrane surface and walkway support loads are distributed evenly.
9. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

## 2.8 PREFORMED FLASHING SLEEVES

- A. Exhaust Vent Flashing: Double-walled metal flashing sleeve or boot, insulation filled, with integral deck flange, 12 inches (300 mm) high, with removable metal hood and slotted or perforated metal collar.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products.
    - b. Thaler Metal USA Inc.
  3. Metal: Aluminum sheet, 0.063 inch (1.60 mm) thick or Copper sheet, 16 oz. (0.55 mm) thick.
  4. Diameter: As indicated.
  5. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- B. Vent Stack Flashing: Metal flashing sleeve, uninsulated, with integral deck flange.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Custom Solution Roof and Metal Products.
    - b. Milcor Inc.; Commercial Products Group of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
    - c. Thaler Metal USA Inc.
  3. Metal: Aluminum sheet, 0.063 inch (1.60 mm) thick or Copper sheet, 16 oz. (0.55 mm) thick.
  4. Height: As indicated on drawings.
  5. Diameter: As indicated.
  6. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

## 2.9 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install roof accessories level, plumb, true to line and elevation, and without warping, jogs in alignment, excessive oil canning, buckling, or tool marks.
  - 2. Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.
  - 3. Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.
  - 4. Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum or stainless-steel roof accessories with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  - 2. Underlayment: Where installing roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip sheet, or install a course of polyethylene sheet.
  - 3. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof accessories for waterproof performance.
- C. Roof Curb Installation: Install each roof curb so top surface is level.
- D. Equipment Support Installation: Install equipment supports so top surfaces are level with each other.
- E. Roof-Hatch Installation:
  - 1. Install roof hatch so top surface of hatch curb is level.
  - 2. Verify that roof hatch operates properly. Clean, lubricate, and adjust operating mechanism and hardware.
  - 3. Attach safety railing system to roof-hatch curb.
  - 4. Attach ladder-assist post according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Pipe Support Installation: Install pipe supports so top surfaces are in contact with and provide equally distributed support along length of supported item.
- G. Security Grilles: Weld bar intersections and, using tamper-resistant bolts, attach the ends of bars to structural frame or primary curb walls.

H. Roof Walkway Installation:

1. Verify that locations of access and servicing points for roof-mounted equipment are served by locations of roof walkways.
2. Remove ballast from top surface of low-slope roofing at locations of contact with roof-walkway supports.
3. Install roof walkway support pads prior to placement of roof walkway support stands onto low-slope roofing.
4. Redistribute removed ballast after installation of support pads.

I. Preformed Flashing-Sleeve Installation: Secure flashing sleeve to roof membrane according to flashing-sleeve manufacturer's written instructions.

J. Seal joints with elastomeric or butyl sealant as required by roof accessory manufacturer.

3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING

A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780.

B. Touch up factory-primed surfaces with compatible primer ready for field painting according to Division 09 painting Sections.

C. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Clean off excess sealants.

E. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 077200

SECTION 078100 - APPLIED FIREPROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes sprayed fire-resistive materials (SFRM).
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 07 Section "Intumescent Mastic Fireproofing" for mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coatings.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review products, design ratings, restrained and unrestrained conditions, densities, thicknesses, bond strengths, and other performance requirements.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Framing plans, schedules, or both, indicating the following:
  - 1. Extent of fireproofing for each construction and fire-resistance rating.
  - 2. Applicable fire-resistance design designations of a qualified testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Minimum fireproofing thicknesses needed to achieve required fire-resistance rating of each structural component and assembly.
  - 4. Treatment of fireproofing after application.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, in manufacturer's standard dimensions, but not less than 4 inches (102 mm) square in size.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing agency.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of fireproofing.
- C. Evaluation Reports: For fireproofing, from ICC-ES.
- D. Preconstruction Test Reports: For fireproofing.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual certified, licensed, or otherwise qualified by fireproofing manufacturer as experienced and with sufficient trained staff to install manufacturer's products according to specified requirements.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects to set quality standards for materials and execution and for preconstruction testing.
  - 1. Build mockup of each type of fireproofing and different substrate as shown on Drawings.
  - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on field mockups of fireproofing.
  - 1. Provide test specimens and assemblies representative of proposed materials and construction.
- B. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Test for compliance with requirements for specified performance and test methods.
  - 1. Bond Strength: Test for cohesive and adhesive strength according to ASTM E 736. Provide bond strength indicated in referenced fire-resistance design, but not less than minimum specified in Part 2.
  - 2. Density: Test for density according to ASTM E 605. Provide density indicated in referenced fire-resistance design, but not less than minimum specified in Part 2.
  - 3. Verify that manufacturer, through its own laboratory testing or field experience, attests that primers or coatings are compatible with fireproofing.
  - 4. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
  - 5. For materials failing tests, obtain applied-fireproofing manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including the use of specially formulated bonding agents or primers.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply fireproofing when ambient or substrate temperature is 44 deg F (7 deg C) or lower unless temporary protection and heat are provided to maintain temperature at or above this level for 24 hours before, during, and for 24 hours after product application.
- B. Ventilation: Ventilate building spaces during and after application of fireproofing, providing complete air exchanges according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use natural means or, if they are inadequate, forced-air circulation until fireproofing dries thoroughly.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Assemblies: Provide fireproofing, including auxiliary materials, according to requirements of each fire-resistance design and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain fireproofing from single source.

- C. Fire-Resistance Design: Indicated on Drawings, tested according to ASTM E 119 or UL 263 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Steel members are to be considered unrestrained unless specifically noted otherwise.
- D. VOC Content: Products shall comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Asbestos: Provide products containing no detectable asbestos.

## 2.2 SPRAYED FIRE-RESISTIVE MATERIALS

- A. SFRM: Manufacturer's standard, factory-mixed, lightweight, dry formulation, complying with indicated fire-resistance design, and mixed with water at Project site to form a slurry or mortar before conveyance and application or conveyed in a dry state and mixed with atomized water at place of application.
  - 1. Basis of Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Carbolite Company, subsidiary of RPM International, Fireproofing Products Div.; Pyrolite 15 or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Substitution requests shall be made during bidding period, and shall include proposed product's UL Design designation and a schedule of each fire proofing system required for the Work.
  - 2. Bond Strength: Minimum 150-lbf/sq. ft. (7.18-kPa) cohesive and adhesive strength based on field testing according to ASTM E 736.
  - 3. Density: Not less than 15 lb/cu. ft. (240 kg/cu. m) and as specified in the approved fire-resistance design, according to ASTM E 605.
  - 4. Thickness: As required for fire-resistance design indicated, measured according to requirements of fire-resistance design or ASTM E 605, whichever is thicker, but not less than 0.375 inch (9 mm).
  - 5. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E 136.
  - 6. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
    - a. Flame-Spread Index: 10 or less.
    - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 10 or less.
  - 7. Compressive Strength: Minimum 10 lbf/sq. in. (68.9 kPa) according to ASTM E 761.
  - 8. Corrosion Resistance: No evidence of corrosion according to ASTM E 937.
  - 9. Deflection: No cracking, spalling, or delamination according to ASTM E 759.
  - 10. Effect of Impact on Bonding: No cracking, spalling, or delamination according to ASTM E 760.
  - 11. Air Erosion: Maximum weight loss of 0.025 g/sq. ft. (0.270 g/sq. m) in 24 hours according to ASTM E 859.
  - 12. Fungal Resistance: Treat products with manufacturer's standard antimicrobial formulation to result in no growth on specimens per ASTM G 21 or rating of 10 according to ASTM D 3274 when tested according to ASTM D 3273.
  - 13. Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard finishes. Apply separate topcoat after finishing.
    - a. Color of Topcoat: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

## 2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that are compatible with fireproofing and substrates and are approved by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use in fire-resistance designs indicated.

- B. Substrate Primers: Primers approved by fireproofing manufacturer and complying with one or both of the following requirements:
  - 1. Primer and substrate are identical to those tested in required fire-resistance design by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Primer's bond strength in required fire-resistance design complies with specified bond strength for fireproofing and with requirements in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or in the listings of another qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on a series of bond tests according to ASTM E 736.
- C. Bonding Agent: Product approved by fireproofing manufacturer and complying with requirements in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or in the listings of another qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Topcoat: Suitable for application over applied fireproofing; of type recommended in writing by fireproofing manufacturer for each fire-resistance design.
  - 1. Water-Based Permeable Topcoat: Factory-mixed formulation for brush, roller, or spray application over applied SFRM.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrates and other conditions affecting performance of the Work and according to each fire-resistance design. Verify compliance with the following:
  - 1. Substrates are free of dirt, oil, grease, release agents, rolling compounds, mill scale, loose scale, incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, or other foreign substances capable of impairing bond of fireproofing with substrates under conditions of normal use or fire exposure.
  - 2. Objects penetrating fireproofing, including clips, hangers, support sleeves, and similar items, are securely attached to substrates.
  - 3. Substrates receiving fireproofing are not obstructed by ducts, piping, equipment, or other suspended construction that will interfere with fireproofing application.
- B. Verify that concrete work on steel deck has been completed before beginning fireproofing work.
- C. Verify that roof construction, installation of roof-top HVAC equipment, and other related work is complete before beginning fireproofing work.
- D. Conduct tests according to fireproofing manufacturer's written recommendations to verify that substrates are free of substances capable of interfering with bond.
- E. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- F. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Cover other work subject to damage from fallout or overspray of fireproofing materials during application.
- B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of fireproofing.

- C. Prime substrates where included in fire-resistance design and where recommended in writing by fireproofing manufacturer unless compatible shop primer has been applied and is in satisfactory condition to receive fireproofing.
- D. For applications visible on completion of Project, repair substrates to remove surface imperfections that could affect uniformity of texture and thickness in finished surface of fireproofing. Remove minor projections and fill voids that would telegraph through fire-resistive products after application.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Construct fireproofing assemblies that are identical to fire-resistance design indicated and products as specified, tested, and substantiated by test reports; for thickness, primers, sealers, topcoats, finishing, and other materials and procedures affecting fireproofing work.
- B. Comply with fireproofing manufacturer's written instructions for mixing materials, application procedures, and types of equipment used to mix, convey, and apply fireproofing; as applicable to particular conditions of installation and as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
- C. Coordinate application of fireproofing with other construction to minimize need to cut or remove fireproofing.
  - 1. Do not begin applying fireproofing until clips, hangers, supports, sleeves, and other items penetrating fireproofing are in place.
  - 2. Defer installing ducts, piping, and other items that would interfere with applying fireproofing until application of fireproofing is completed.
- D. Metal Decks:
  - 1. Do not apply fireproofing to underside of metal deck substrates until concrete topping, if any, has been completed.
  - 2. Do not apply fireproofing to underside of metal roof deck until roofing has been completed; prohibit roof traffic during application and drying of fireproofing.
- E. Install auxiliary materials as required, as detailed, and according to fire-resistance design and fireproofing manufacturer's written recommendations for conditions of exposure and intended use. For auxiliary materials, use attachment and anchorage devices of type recommended in writing by fireproofing manufacturer.
- F. Spray apply fireproofing to maximum extent possible. Following the spraying operation in each area, complete the coverage by trowel application or other placement method recommended in writing by fireproofing manufacturer.
- G. Extend fireproofing in full thickness over entire area of each substrate to be protected.
- H. Install body of fireproofing in a single course unless otherwise recommended in writing by fireproofing manufacturer.
- I. Where sealers are used, apply products that are tinted to differentiate them from fireproofing over which they are applied.
- J. Provide a uniform finish complying with description indicated for each type of fireproofing material and matching finish approved for required mockups.
- K. Cure fireproofing according to fireproofing manufacturer's written recommendations.

- L. Do not install enclosing or concealing construction until after fireproofing has been applied, inspected, and tested and corrections have been made to deficient applications.
- M. Finishes: Where indicated, apply fireproofing to produce the following finishes:
  - 1. Manufacturer's Standard Finishes: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions for each finish selected.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
  - 1. Test and inspect as required by the IBC, 1704.10.
- B. Perform the tests and inspections of completed Work in successive stages. Do not proceed with application of fireproofing for the next area until test results for previously completed applications of fireproofing show compliance with requirements. Tested values must equal or exceed values as specified and as indicated and required for approved fire-resistance design.
- C. Fireproofing will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  - 1. Remove and replace fireproofing that does not pass tests and inspections, and retest.
  - 2. Apply additional fireproofing, per manufacturer's written instructions, where test results indicate insufficient thickness, and retest.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 CLEANING, PROTECTING, AND REPAIRING

- A. Cleaning: Immediately after completing spraying operations in each containable area of Project, remove material overspray and fallout from surfaces of other construction and clean exposed surfaces to remove evidence of soiling.
- B. Protect fireproofing, according to advice of manufacturer and Installer, from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes, so fireproofing will be without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. As installation of other construction proceeds, inspect fireproofing and repair damaged areas and fireproofing removed due to work of other trades.
- D. Repair fireproofing damaged by other work before concealing it with other construction.
- E. Repair fireproofing by reapplying it using same method as original installation or using manufacturer's recommended trowel-applied product.

END OF SECTION 078100

SECTION 078123 - INTUMESCENT MASTIC FIREPROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coatings (MIFRC).
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 07 Section "Applied Fireproofing" for sprayed fire-resistive materials (SFRM).

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review products, design ratings, restrained and unrestrained conditions, thicknesses, and other performance requirements.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Structural framing plans indicating the following:
  - 1. Extent of fireproofing for each construction and fire-resistance rating.
  - 2. Applicable fire-resistance design designations of a qualified testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Minimum fireproofing thicknesses needed to achieve required fire-resistance rating of each structural component and assembly.
  - 4. Treatment of fireproofing after application.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, in manufacturer's standard dimensions, but not less than 4 inches (102 mm) square.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing agency.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of fireproofing.
- C. Evaluation Reports: For fireproofing, from ICC-ES.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual certified, licensed, or otherwise qualified by fireproofing manufacturer as experienced and with sufficient trained staff to install manufacturer's products according to specified requirements.

- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Build mockup of each type of fireproofing and different substrate and each required finish Insert description as shown on Drawings.
  - 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply fireproofing when ambient or substrate temperature is 50 deg F (10 deg C) or lower unless temporary protection and heat are provided to maintain temperature at or above this level for 24 hours before, during, and for 24 hours after product application.
- B. Ventilation: Ventilate building spaces during and after application of fireproofing, providing complete air exchanges according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use natural means or, if they are inadequate, forced-air circulation until fireproofing dries thoroughly.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Assemblies: Provide fireproofing, including auxiliary materials, according to requirements of each fire-resistance design and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain fireproofing from single source.
- C. Fire-Resistance Design: Indicated on Drawings, tested according to ASTM E 119 or UL 263 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Steel members are to be considered unrestrained unless specifically noted otherwise.
- D. VOC Content: Products shall comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Low-Emitting Materials: Fireproofing used within the weatherproofing system shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- F. Asbestos: Provide products containing no detectable asbestos.

#### 2.2 MASTIC AND INTUMESCENT FIRE-RESISTIVE COATINGS

- A. MIFRC: Manufacturer's standard, factory-mixed formulation or factory-mixed, multicomponent system consisting of intumescent base coat and topcoat, and complying with indicated fire-resistance design.
  - 1. Basis of Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Carboline Company, subsidiary of RPM International, Fireproofing Products Div.; Nullifire S606.
    - a. Substitution requests shall be made during bidding period, and shall include proposed product's UL Design designation and a schedule of each fire proofing system required for the Work.

2. Application: Designated for "interior general purpose" and "conditioned interior space purpose" use by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Thickness: As required for fire-resistance design indicated, measured according to requirements of fire-resistance design.
4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
5. Hardness: Not less than 65, Type D durometer, according to ASTM D 2240.
6. Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard finishes.
  - a. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

### 2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that are compatible with fireproofing and substrates and are approved by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use in fire-resistance designs indicated.
- B. Substrate Primers: Primers approved by fireproofing manufacturer and complying with required fire-resistance design by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Topcoat: Suitable for application over applied fireproofing; of type recommended in writing by fireproofing manufacturer for each fire-resistance design.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrates and other conditions affecting performance of the Work and according to each fire-resistance design. Verify compliance with the following:
  1. Substrates are free of dirt, oil, grease, release agents, rolling compounds, mill scale, loose scale, incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, or other foreign substances capable of impairing bond of fireproofing with substrates under conditions of normal use or fire exposure.
  2. Objects penetrating fireproofing, including clips, hangers, support sleeves, and similar items, are securely attached to substrates.
  3. Substrates receiving fireproofing are not obstructed by ducts, piping, equipment, or other suspended construction that will interfere with fireproofing application.
- B. Conduct tests according to fireproofing manufacturer's written recommendations to verify that substrates are free of substances capable of interfering with bond.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Cover other work subject to damage from fallout or overspray of fireproofing materials during application.
- B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of fireproofing.
- C. Prime substrates where included in fire-resistance design and where recommended in writing by fireproofing manufacturer unless compatible shop primer has been applied and is in satisfactory condition to receive fireproofing.
- D. For applications visible on completion of Project, repair substrates to remove surface imperfections that could affect uniformity of texture and thickness in finished surface of fireproofing. Remove minor projections and fill voids that would telegraph through fire-resistive products after application.
  - 1. Applications concealed within walls or above ceilings may have aesthetic defects that do not reduce system performance.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Construct fireproofing assemblies that are identical to fire-resistance design indicated and products as specified, tested, and substantiated by test reports; for thickness, primers, topcoats, finishing, and other materials and procedures affecting fireproofing work.
- B. Comply with fireproofing manufacturer's written instructions for mixing materials, application procedures, and types of equipment used to mix, convey, and apply fireproofing; as applicable to particular conditions of installation and as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
- C. Coordinate application of fireproofing with other construction to minimize need to cut or remove fireproofing.
  - 1. Do not begin applying fireproofing until clips, hangers, supports, sleeves, and other items penetrating fireproofing are in place.
  - 2. Defer installing ducts, piping, and other items that would interfere with applying fireproofing until application of fireproofing is completed.
- D. Install auxiliary materials as required, as detailed, and according to fire-resistance design and fireproofing manufacturer's written recommendations for conditions of exposure and intended use. For auxiliary materials, use attachment and anchorage devices of type recommended in writing by fireproofing manufacturer.
- E. Spray apply fireproofing to maximum extent possible. Following the spraying operation in each area, complete the coverage by trowel application or other placement method recommended in writing by fireproofing manufacturer.
- F. Extend fireproofing in full thickness over entire area of each substrate to be protected.
- G. Install body of fireproofing in a single course unless otherwise recommended in writing by fireproofing manufacturer.
- H. Provide a uniform finish complying with description indicated for each type of fireproofing material and matching finish approved for required mockups.
- I. Cure fireproofing according to fireproofing manufacturer's written recommendations.

- J. Do not install enclosing or concealing construction until after fireproofing has been applied, inspected, and tested and corrections have been made to deficient applications.
- K. Finishes: Where indicated, apply fireproofing to produce the following finishes:
  - 1. Manufacturer's Standard Finishes: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions for each finish selected.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
  - 1. Test and inspect as required by the IBC, 1704.11.
- B. Perform the tests and inspections of completed Work in successive stages. Do not proceed with application of fireproofing for the next area until test results for previously completed applications of fireproofing show compliance with requirements. Tested values must equal or exceed values as specified and as indicated and required for approved fire-resistance design.
- C. Fireproofing will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
  - 1. Remove and replace fireproofing that does not pass tests and inspections, and retest.
  - 2. Apply additional fireproofing, per manufacturer's written instructions, where test results indicate insufficient thickness, and retest.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 CLEANING, PROTECTING, AND REPAIRING

- A. Cleaning: Immediately after completing spraying operations in each containable area of Project, remove material overspray and fallout from surfaces of other construction and clean exposed surfaces to remove evidence of soiling.
- B. Protect fireproofing, according to advice of manufacturer and Installer, from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes, so fireproofing will be without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. As installation of other construction proceeds, inspect fireproofing and repair damaged areas and fireproofing removed due to work of other trades.
- D. Repair fireproofing damaged by other work before concealing it with other construction.
- E. Repair fireproofing by reapplying it using same method as original installation or using manufacturer's recommended trowel-applied product.

END OF SECTION 078123

SECTION 078413 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.
2. Penetrations in horizontal assemblies.
3. Penetrations in smoke barriers.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 07 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" for joints in or between fire-resistance-rated construction, at exterior curtain-wall/floor intersections, and in smoke barriers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Product Schedule: For each penetration firestopping system. Include location and design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
  1. Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular penetration firestopping condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetration firestopping manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating penetration firestopping has been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written recommendations.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for penetration firestopping.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Global according to FM Global 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with its "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."
- B. Installer Qualifications: A firm experienced in installing penetration firestopping similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful performance. Qualifications include having the necessary experience, staff, and training to install manufacturer's products per specified requirements. Manufacturer's willingness to sell its

penetration firestopping products to Contractor or to Installer engaged by Contractor does not in itself confer qualification on buyer.

- C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Penetration firestopping shall comply with the following requirements:
1. Penetration firestopping tests are performed by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. Penetration firestopping is identical to those tested per testing standard referenced in "Penetration Firestopping" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
    - a. Penetration firestopping products bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
    - b. Classification markings on penetration firestopping correspond to designations listed by the following:
      - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."
      - 2) Intertek ETL SEMKO in its "Directory of Listed Building Products."
      - 3) FM Global in its "Building Materials Approval Guide."
- D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install penetration firestopping when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by penetration firestopping manufacturers or when substrates are wet because of rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Install and cure penetration firestopping per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilations or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that penetration firestopping is installed according to specified requirements.
- B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate penetration firestopping.
- C. Notify Owner's testing agency at least seven days in advance of penetration firestopping installations; confirm dates and times on day preceding each series of installations.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc.
  2. Grace Construction Products.
  3. Hilti, Inc.
  4. Johns Manville.
  5. Nelson Firestop Products.

6. NUCO Inc.
7. Passive Fire Protection Partners.
8. RectorSeal Corporation.
9. Specified Technologies Inc.
10. 3M Fire Protection Products.
11. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Fire Protection Systems Group.
12. USG Corporation.

## 2.2 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

- A. Provide penetration firestopping that is produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.
- B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg (2.49 Pa).
  1. Fire-resistance-rated walls include fire walls, fire-barrier walls, smoke-barrier walls and fire partitions.
  2. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
- C. Penetrations in Horizontal Assemblies: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg (2.49 Pa).
  1. Horizontal assemblies include floors, floor/ceiling assemblies, and ceiling membranes of roof/ceiling assemblies.
  2. F-Rating: At least 1 hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
  3. T-Rating: At least 1 hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated except for floor penetrations within the cavity of a wall.
- D. Penetrations in Smoke Barriers: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per UL 1479.
  1. L-Rating: Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/sq. ft. (0.025 cu. m/s per sq. m) of penetration opening at 0.30-inch wg (74.7 Pa) at both ambient and elevated temperatures.
- E. W-Rating: Provide penetration firestopping showing no evidence of water leakage when tested according to UL 1479.
- F. Exposed Penetration Firestopping: Provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.
- G. VOC Content: Penetration firestopping sealants and sealant primers shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
  1. Sealants: 250 g/L.
  2. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
  3. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
- H. Low-Emitting Materials: Penetration firestopping sealants and sealant primers shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

- I. Accessories: Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for firestopping indicated.
  1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials, including the following:
    - a. Slag-wool-fiber or rock-wool-fiber insulation.
    - b. Sealants used in combination with other forming/damming/backing materials to prevent leakage of fill materials in liquid state.
    - c. Fire-rated form board.
    - d. Fillers for sealants.
  2. Temporary forming materials.
  3. Substrate primers.
  4. Collars.
  5. Steel sleeves.

### 2.3 FILL MATERIALS

- A. Cast-in-Place Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled devices for use in cast-in-place concrete floors and consisting of an outer metallic sleeve lined with an intumescent strip, a radial extended flange attached to one end of the sleeve for fastening to concrete formwork, and a neoprene gasket.
- B. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that do not re-emulsify after cure during exposure to moisture.
- C. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.
- D. Intumescent Composite Sheets: Rigid panels consisting of aluminum-foil-faced elastomeric sheet bonded to galvanized-steel sheet.
- E. Intumescent Putties: Nonhardening dielectric, water-resistant putties containing no solvents, inorganic fibers, or silicone compounds.
- F. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component intumescent elastomeric sheets with aluminum foil on one side.
- G. Mortars: Prepackaged dry mixes consisting of a blend of inorganic binders, hydraulic cement, fillers, and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a nonshrinking, homogeneous mortar.
- H. Pillows/Bags: Reusable heat-expanding pillows/bags consisting of glass-fiber cloth cases filled with a combination of mineral-fiber, water-insoluble expansion agents, and fire-retardant additives. Where exposed, cover openings with steel-reinforcing wire mesh to protect pillows/bags from being easily removed.
- I. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.
- J. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below:

1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces, and nonsag formulation for openings in vertical and sloped surfaces, unless indicated firestopping limits use of nonsag grade for both opening conditions.

#### 2.4 MIXING

- A. For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with penetration firestopping manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Clean out openings immediately before installing penetration firestopping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and with the following requirements:
  1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of penetration firestopping.
  2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with penetration firestopping. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
  3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent penetration firestopping from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of the Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove stains. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing firestopping's seal with substrates.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install penetration firestopping to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.
- B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
  1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of firestopping.

- C. Install fill materials for firestopping by proven techniques to produce the following results:
  - 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
  - 2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
  - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify penetration firestopping with preprinted metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches (150 mm) of firestopping edge so labels will be visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestopping. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
  - 1. The words "Warning - Penetration Firestopping - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
  - 2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
  - 3. Designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
  - 4. Date of installation.
  - 5. Manufacturer's name.
  - 6. Installer's name.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping to comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing penetration firestopping with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by penetration firestopping manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that penetration firestopping is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, immediately cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated penetration firestopping and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

### 3.7 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SCHEDULE

- A. Where UL-classified systems are indicated, they refer to system numbers in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under product Category XHEZ.
- B. Where Intertek ETL SEMKO-listed systems are indicated, they refer to design numbers in Intertek ETL SEMKO's "Directory of Listed Building Products" under "Firestop Systems."

- C. Where FM Global-approved systems are indicated, they refer to design numbers listed in FM Global's "Building Materials Approval Guide" under "Wall and Floor Penetration Fire Stops."

END OF SECTION 078413

## SECTION 078446 - FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Joints in or between fire-resistance-rated constructions.
  - 2. Joints at exterior curtain-wall/floor intersections.
  - 3. Joints in smoke barriers.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Product Schedule: For each fire-resistive joint system. Include location and design designation of qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing agency's illustration for a particular fire-resistive joint system condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating fire-resistive joint systems have been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Product test reports.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Global according to FM Global 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with UL's "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Fire-resistive joint systems shall comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Fire-resistive joint system tests are performed by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS

- A. Where required, provide fire-resistive joint systems that are produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of assemblies in or between which fire-resistive joint systems are installed. Fire-resistive joint systems shall accommodate building movements without impairing their ability to resist the passage of fire and hot gases.

- B. Joints in or between Fire-Resistance-Rated Construction: Ratings determined per ASTM E 1966 or UL 2079:
1. Fire-Resistance Rating: Equal to or exceeding the fire-resistance rating of construction they will join.
  2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc.
    - b. CEMCO.
    - c. Fire Trak Corp.
    - d. Grace Construction Products.
    - e. Hilti, Inc.
    - f. Johns Manville.
    - g. Nelson Firestop Products.
    - h. NUCO Inc.
    - i. Passive Fire Protection Partners.
    - j. RectorSeal Corporation.
    - k. Specified Technologies Inc.
    - l. 3M Fire Protection Products.
    - m. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Fire Protection Systems Group.
    - n. USG Corporation.
- C. Joints at Exterior Curtain-Wall/Floor Intersections: Rating determined by ASTM E 119 based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg (2.49 Pa) or ASTM E 2307.
1. Fire-Resistance Rating: Equal to or exceeding the fire-resistance rating of the floor assembly.
  2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc.
    - b. Grace Construction Products.
    - c. Hilti, Inc.
    - d. Johns Manville.
    - e. Nelson Firestop Products.
    - f. NUCO Inc.
    - g. Passive Fire Protection Partners.
    - h. RectorSeal Corporation.
    - i. Specified Technologies Inc.
    - j. 3M Fire Protection Products.
    - k. Thermafiber, Inc.
    - l. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Fire Protection Systems Group.
    - m. USG Corporation.
- D. Joints in Smoke Barriers: Ratings determined per UL 2079.
1. L-Rating: Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/ft (0.00775 cu. m/s x m) of joint at 0.30 inch wg (74.7 Pa) at both ambient and elevated temperatures.
  2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc.
    - b. Grace Construction Products.
    - c. Hilti, Inc.
    - d. Johns Manville.
    - e. Nelson Firestop Products.

- f. NUCO Inc.
  - g. Passive Fire Protection Partners.
  - h. RectorSeal Corporation.
  - i. Specified Technologies Inc.
  - j. 3M Fire Protection Products.
  - k. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Fire Protection Systems Group.
  - l. USG Corporation.
- E. Exposed Fire-Resistive Joint Systems: Provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.
- F. VOC Content: Fire-resistive joint system sealants shall comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
- 1. Architectural Sealants: 250 g/L.
  - 2. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
  - 3. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
- G. Low-Emitting Materials: Fire-resistive joint system sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- H. Accessories: Provide components of fire-resistive joint systems, including primers and forming materials, that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only components specified by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing agency for systems indicated.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configurations, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Install fire-resistive joint systems to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.
- C. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
- 1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of fire-resistive joint system.
- D. Install fill materials for fire-resistive joint systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
- 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by joints and forming materials as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
  - 2. Apply fill materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by joints.
  - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify fire-resistive joint systems with preprinted metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches (150 mm) of joint edge so labels will be visible to anyone seeking to remove or penetrate joint system. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:
1. The words "Warning - Fire-Resistive Joint System - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
  2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
  3. Designation of applicable testing agency.
  4. Date of installation.
  5. Manufacturer's name.
  6. Installer's name.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspecting Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or fire-resistive joint systems are damaged or removed due to testing, repair or replace fire-resistive joint systems so they comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing fire-resistive joint systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

END OF SECTION 078446

## SECTION 079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Silicone joint sealants.
2. Urethane joint sealants.
3. Polysulfide joint sealants.
4. Latex joint sealants.
5. Solvent-release-curing joint sealants.
6. Preformed joint sealants.
7. Acoustical joint sealants.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for masonry control and expansion joint fillers and gaskets.
2. Division 07 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" for sealing joints in fire-resistance-rated construction.
3. Division 07 Section "Expansion Control" for building expansion joints.
4. Division 08 Section "Glazing" for glazing sealants.
5. Division 09 Section "Acoustical Panel Ceilings" for sealing edge moldings at perimeters with acoustical sealant.
6. Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in pavements, walkways, and curbing.

#### 1.3 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.

1. Use ASTM C 1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
2. Submit not fewer than eight (8) pieces of each kind of material, including joint substrates, shims, joint-sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
3. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
4. For materials failing tests, obtain joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including use of specially formulated primers.
5. Testing will not be required if joint-sealant manufacturers submit joint preparation data that are based on previous testing, not older than twenty-four (24) months, of sealant products for adhesion to, and compatibility with, joint substrates and other materials matching those submitted.

- B. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates as follows:

1. Locate test joints where indicated on Project or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
2. Conduct field tests for each application indicated below:

- a. Each kind of sealant and joint substrate indicated.
3. Notify Architect seven (7) days in advance of dates and times when test joints will be erected.
4. Arrange for tests to take place with joint-sealant manufacturer's technical representative present.
  - a. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
    - 1) For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
5. Report whether sealant failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. For sealants that fail adhesively, retest until satisfactory adhesion is obtained.
6. Evaluation of Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing, in absence of other indications of noncompliance with requirements, will be considered satisfactory. Do not use sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each kind and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide joints formed between two 6-inch- (150-mm-) long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- D. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
  1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
  2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
  3. Joint-sealant formulation.
  4. Joint-sealant color.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and testing agency.
- B. Product Certificates: For each kind of joint sealant and accessory, from manufacturer.
- C. Sealant, Waterproofing, and Restoration Institute (SWRI) Validation Certificate: For each sealant specified to be validated by SWRI's Sealant Validation Program.
- D. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that sealants comply with requirements.
- E. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
  1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.

2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

F. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Test Reports: Indicate which sealants and joint preparation methods resulted in optimum adhesion to joint substrates based on testing specified in "Preconstruction Testing" Article.

G. Field-Adhesion Test Reports: For each sealant application tested.

H. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain each kind of joint sealant from single source from single manufacturer.

C. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.

1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
2. Test according to SWRI's Sealant Validation Program for compliance with requirements specified by reference to ASTM C 920 for adhesion and cohesion under cyclic movement, adhesion-in-peel, and indentation hardness.

D. Mockups: Install sealant in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive joint sealants specified in this Section. Use materials and installation methods specified in this Section.

E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:

1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F (5 deg C).
2. When joint substrates are wet.
3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Installer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Two (2) years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which joint-sealant manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Two (2) years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
1. Movement of the structure caused by structural settlement or errors attributable to design or construction resulting in stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
  2. Disintegration of joint substrates from natural causes exceeding design specifications.
  3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
  4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. VOC Content of Interior Sealants: Per authority having jurisdiction.
1. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
  2. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
- C. Liquid-Applied Joint Sealants: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied joint sealant specified, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses related to exposure and joint substrates.
1. Suitability for Immersion in Liquids. Where sealants are indicated for Use I for joints that will be continuously immersed in liquids, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1247. Liquid used for testing sealants is deionized water, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stain-Test-Response Characteristics: Where sealants are specified to be nonstaining to porous substrates, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1248 and have not stained porous joint substrates indicated for Project.
- E. Suitability for Contact with Food: Where sealants are indicated for joints that will come in repeated contact with food, provide products that comply with 21 CFR 177.2600.
- F. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

### 2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Single-Component, Nonsag, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, for Use NT.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation.
    - b. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones; SilPruf LM SCS2700.
    - c. May National Associates, Inc.
    - d. Pecora Corporation.

- e. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division; SikaSil-C990.
  - f. Tremco Incorporated.
- B. Single-Component, Nonsag, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, for Use NT.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Building Systems; Omniseal 50.
    - b. Dow Corning Corporation.
    - c. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones.
    - d. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex Sil 295.
    - e. Pecora Corporation.
    - f. Polymeric Systems, Inc.; PSI-641.
    - g. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division; SikaSil-C995.
    - h. Tremco Incorporated.
- C. Single-Component, Nonsag, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 799.
    - b. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones.
    - c. May National Associates, Inc.
    - d. Polymeric Systems, Inc.; PSI-631.
    - e. Schnee-Morehead, Inc.; SM5731 Poly-Glaze Plus.
    - f. Tremco Incorporated.
- D. Single-Component, Nonsag, Acid-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Bostik, Inc.; Chem-Calk 1200.
    - b. Dow Corning Corporation; 999-A.
    - c. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones.
    - d. May National Associates, Inc.
    - e. Pecora Corporation; 860.
    - f. Polymeric Systems, Inc.; PSI-601.
    - g. Schnee-Morehead, Inc.; SM5732 Polyglaze.
    - h. Tremco Incorporated.
- E. Single-Component, Nonsag, Traffic-Grade, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, for Use T.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation.
    - b. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex Sil 728 NS.
    - c. Pecora Corporation.

- d. Tremco Incorporated; Spectrem 800.
- F. Single-Component, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 100/50, for Use T.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation.
    - b. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex.
    - c. Pecora Corporation;.
    - d. Tremco Incorporated; Spectrem 900 SL.
- G. Multicomponent, Nonsag, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 50, for Use NT.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Tremco Incorporated; Spectrem 4TS.
- H. Multicomponent, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 100/50, for Use T.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; FC Parking Structure Sealant.
    - b. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex Sil 728 RCS.
- I. Mildew-Resistant, Single-Component, Nonsag, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; 898.
- J. Mildew-Resistant, Single-Component, Acid-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following::
    - a. BASF Building Systems; Omniplus.
    - b. Dow Corning Corporation; 786 Mildew Resistant.
    - c. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones; Sanitary SCS1700.
    - d. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex Sil 100 WF.
    - e. Tremco Incorporated; Tremsil 200 Sanitary.
- 2.3 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS
- A. Single-Component, Nonsag, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, for Use NT.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division; Sikaflex - 15LM.
  - b. Tremco Incorporated; Vulkem 921, Dymonic FC.
  
- B. Single-Component, Nonsag, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, for Use NT.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Pacific Polymers International, Inc.; Elasto-Thane 230 LM Type II.
    - b. Polymeric Systems, Inc.; PSI-901.
  
- C. Single-Component, Nonsag, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Building Systems.
    - b. Bostik, Inc.; Chem-Calk.
    - c. May National Associates, Inc.
    - d. Pacific Polymers International, Inc.; Elasto-Thane 230 Type II.
    - e. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol I-XL.
    - f. Polymeric Systems, Inc.; Flexiprene 1000.
    - g. Schnee-Morehead, Inc.
    - h. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division; Sikaflex - 1a.
    - i. Tremco Incorporated.
  
- D. Single-Component, Nonsag, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920. Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use T.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Building Systems.
    - b. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex PUR 40 FC.
    - c. Pacific Polymers International, Inc.; Elasto-Thane 230 Type II.
    - d. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division; Sikaflex - 1a.
    - e. Tremco Incorporated; Vulkem 116.
  
- E. Single-Component, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, for Use T.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Building Systems; Sonolastic SL 1.
    - b. Bostik, Inc.; Chem-Calk 950.
    - c. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex PUR 35 SL.
    - d. Pecora Corporation; Urexpan NR-201.
    - e. Polymeric Systems, Inc.; Flexiprene 952.
    - f. Schnee-Morehead, Inc.; Permathane SM7101.

- g. Sika Corporation. Construction Products Division; Sikaflex - 1CSL.
  - h. Tremco Incorporated; Vulkem 45.
- F. Multicomponent, Nonsag, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 50, for Use NT.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol II.
    - b. Polymeric Systems, Inc.; PSI-270.
    - c. Tremco Incorporated.
- G. Multicomponent, Nonsag, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Building Systems; Sonolastic NP 2.
    - b. Bostik, Inc.; Chem-Calk 500.
    - c. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex PUR 2 NS.
    - d. Pacific Polymers International, Inc.
    - e. Pecora Corporation; Dynatred.
    - f. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division.
    - g. Tremco Incorporated; Vulkem 227.
- H. Multicomponent, Nonsag, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 50, for Use T.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Polymeric Systems, Inc.; PSI-270.
    - b. Tremco Incorporated; Dymeric 240 FC.
- I. Multicomponent, Nonsag, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use T.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Building Systems; Sonolastic NP 2.
    - b. LymTal International, Inc.; Iso-Flex 885 SG.
    - c. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex PUR 2 NS.
    - d. Pacific Polymers International, Inc.
    - e. Pecora Corporation; Dynatred.
    - f. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division.
    - g. Tremco Incorporated; Vulkem 227.
- J. Immersible, Single-Component, Nonsag, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Uses T and I.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. BASF Building Systems; Sonolastic NP1.
  - b. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division; Sikaflex - 1a.
  - c. Tremco Incorporated; Vulkem 116.
- K. Immersible, Single-Component, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, for Uses T and I.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division; Sikaflex - 1CSL.
    - b. Tremco Incorporated; Vulkem 45.
- L. Immersible Multicomponent, Nonsag, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, for Uses T and I.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Building Systems; Sonolastic NP 2.
    - b. LymTal International, Inc.; Iso-Flex 885 SG.
    - c. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex PUR 2 NS.
    - d. Pecora Corporation; Dynatred.
    - e. Tremco Incorporated; Vulkem 227.
- M. Immersible Multicomponent, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920. Type M, Grade P, Class 25, for Use T and I.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. LymTal International, Inc.; Iso-Flex 880 GB.
    - b. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex PUR 2 SL.
    - c. Tremco Incorporated; Vulkem 245.

#### 2.4 POLYSULFIDE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Single-Component, Nonsag, Polysulfide Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Pacific Polymers International, Inc.; Elastoseal 230 Type I.
    - b. W. R. Meadows, Inc.; Deck-O-Seal One Step.
- B. Multicomponent, Nonsag, Polysulfide Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Building Systems; Sonolastic Polysulfide Sealant.
    - b. Pacific Polymers International, Inc.; Elasto-Seal 227 Type II.
    - c. Pecora Corporation; Synthacalk GC-2+.

- d. W. R. Meadows, Inc.; Deck-O-Seal Gun Grade.
- C. Multicomponent, Nonsag, Traffic-Grade, Polysulfide Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use T.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Building Systems; Sonolastic Polysulfide Sealant.
    - b. Pecora Corporation; Synthacalk GC-2+.
- D. Multicomponent, Pourable, Traffic-Grade, Polysulfide Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, for Use T.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Pacific Polymers International, Inc.; Elastoseal 227 Type I.
    - b. W. R. Meadows, Inc.
- E. Immersible, Multicomponent Nonsag, Traffic-Grade, Polysulfide Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use T and Use I.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Pecora Corporation; Synthacalk GC-2+.

## 2.5 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Latex Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Building Systems; Sonolac.
    - b. Bostik, Inc.; Chem-Calk 600.
    - c. May National Associates, Inc.
    - d. Pecora Corporation; AC-20+.
    - e. Schnee-Morehead, Inc.; SM 8200.
    - f. Tremco Incorporated; Tremflex 834.

## 2.6 SOLVENT-RELEASE-CURING JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acrylic-Based Joint Sealant: ASTM C 1311.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Schnee-Morehead, Inc.; Acryl-R Acrylic Sealant.
    - b. Tremco Incorporated; Mono 555.
- B. Butyl-Rubber-Based Joint Sealant: ASTM C 1311.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Bostik, Inc.; Chem-Calk 300.
  - b. Pecora Corporation; BC-158.
  - c. Tremco Incorporated; Tremco Butyl Sealant.

## 2.7 PREFORMED JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Preformed Silicone Joint Sealants: Manufacturer's standard sealant consisting of precured low-modulus silicone extrusion, in sizes to fit joint widths indicated, combined with a neutral-curing silicone sealant for bonding extrusions to substrates.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 123 Silicone Seal.
    - b. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones; UltraSpan US1100.
    - c. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex Silbridge 300.
    - d. Pecora Corporation; Sil-Span.
    - e. Sealex, Inc.; ImmerSeal.
- B. Preformed Foam Joint Sealant: Manufacturer's standard preformed, precompressed, open-cell foam sealant manufactured from urethane foam with minimum density of 10 lb/cu. ft. (160 kg/cu. m) and impregnated with a nondrying, water-repellent agent. Factory produce in precompressed sizes in roll or stick form to fit joint widths indicated; coated on one side with a pressure-sensitive adhesive and covered with protective wrapping.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dayton Superior Specialty Chemicals; Polytite Standard.
    - b. EMSEAL Joint Systems, Ltd.; Emseal 25V.
    - c. Sandell Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Polyseal.
    - d. Schul International, Inc.
    - e. Willseal USA, LLC.

## 2.8 ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acoustical Joint Sealant: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Pecora Corporation.
    - b. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.

## 2.9 JOINT SEALANT BACKING

- A. General: Provide sealant backings of material that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.

- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

## 2.10 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
  - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Concrete.
    - b. Masonry.
    - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
    - d. Exterior insulation and finish systems.
  - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
  - 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:

- a. Metal.
  - b. Glass.
  - c. Porcelain enamel.
  - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
  2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
  3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
  3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Provide flush joint profile where indicated per Figure 8B in ASTM C 1193.
  5. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at locations indicated per Figure 8C in ASTM C 1193.

- a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.

G. Installation of Preformed Silicone-Sealant System: Comply with the following requirements:

1. Apply masking tape to each side of joint, outside of area to be covered by sealant system.
2. Apply silicone sealant to each side of joint to produce a bead of size complying with preformed silicone-sealant system manufacturer's written instructions and covering a bonding area of not less than 3/8 inch (10 mm). Hold edge of sealant bead 1/4 inch (6 mm) inside masking tape.
3. Within 10 minutes of sealant application, press silicone extrusion into sealant to wet extrusion and substrate. Use a roller to apply consistent pressure and ensure uniform contact between sealant and both extrusion and substrate.
4. Complete installation of sealant system in horizontal joints before installing in vertical joints. Lap vertical joints over horizontal joints. At ends of joints, cut silicone extrusion with a razor knife.

H. Installation of Preformed Foam Sealants: Install each length of sealant immediately after removing protective wrapping. Do not pull or stretch material. Produce seal continuity at ends, turns, and intersections of joints. For applications at low ambient temperatures, apply heat to sealant in compliance with sealant manufacturer's written instructions.

I. Acoustical Sealant Installation: At sound-rated assemblies and elsewhere as indicated, seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919 and with manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:

1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
  - a. Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 feet (300 m) of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
  - b. Perform 1 test for each 1000 feet (300 m) of joint length thereafter or 1 test per each floor per elevation.
2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
  - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
3. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
  - a. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
  - b. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
  - c. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion passes sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
4. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant fill, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.

5. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.

- B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

### 3.7 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.

1. Joint Locations:

- a. Control and expansion joints in brick pavers.
- b. Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
- c. Joints between plant-precast architectural concrete paving units.
- d. Joints in stone paving units, including steps.
- e. Tile control and expansion joints.
- f. Joints between different materials listed above.
- g. Other joints as indicated.

2. Silicone Joint Sealant: Single component, nonsag, traffic grade, neutral curing Single component, pourable, traffic grade, neutral curing Multicomponent, pourable, traffic grade, neutral curing.
3. Urethane Joint Sealant.
4. Polysulfide Joint Sealant.
5. Preformed Joint Sealant: Preformed foam sealant.
6. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range of colors.

- B. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces subject to water immersion.

1. Joint Locations:

- a. Joints in pedestrian plazas.
- b. Other joints as indicated.

2. Urethane Joint Sealant.
3. Polysulfide Joint Sealant: Immersible, multicomponent, nonsag, traffic grade.
4. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range of colors.

- C. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
    - b. Joints between plant-precast architectural concrete units.
    - c. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
    - d. Joints in dimension stone cladding.
    - e. Joints in glass unit masonry assemblies.
    - f. Joints in exterior insulation and finish systems.
    - g. Joints between metal panels.
    - h. Joints between different materials listed above.
    - i. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors, windows and louvers.
    - j. Control and expansion joints in ceilings and other overhead surfaces.
    - k. Other joints as indicated.
  2. Silicone Joint Sealant.
  3. Urethane Joint Sealant.
  4. Polysulfide Joint Sealant.
  5. Preformed Joint Sealant.
  6. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range of colors.
- D. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.
1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
    - b. Control and expansion joints in stone flooring.
    - c. Control and expansion joints in brick flooring.
    - d. Control and expansion joints in tile flooring.
    - e. Other joints as indicated.
  2. Silicone Joint Sealant.
  3. Urethane Joint Sealant.
  4. Polysulfide Joint Sealant.
  5. Preformed Joint Sealant: Preformed foam.
  6. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range of colors.
- E. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces JS-#.
1. Joint Locations:
    - a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
    - b. Perimeter joints of exterior openings where indicated.
    - c. Tile control and expansion joints.
    - d. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of interior unit masonry, concrete walls and partitions.
    - e. Joints on underside of plant-precast structural concrete beams and planks.
    - f. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors, windows and elevator entrances.
    - g. Other joints as indicated.
  2. Joint Sealant: Latex, Acrylic based, Butyl rubber based.
  3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range of colors.

- F. Joint-Sealant Application: Mildew-resistant interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
  - 1. Joint Sealant Location:
    - a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
    - b. Tile control and expansion joints where indicated.
    - c. Other joints as indicated.
  - 2. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range of colors.
- G. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior acoustical joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.
  - 1. Joint Location:
    - a. Acoustical joints where indicated.
    - b. Other joints as indicated.
  - 2. Joint Sealant: Acoustical.
  - 3. Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

END OF SECTION 079200

SECTION 079500 - EXPANSION CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior expansion control systems.
2. Exterior wall expansion control systems.
3. Parking and open-air structure expansion control systems.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 07 Section "Manufactured Roof Expansion Joints" for factory-fabricated roof expansion control.
2. Division 07 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" for liquid-applied joint sealants in fire-resistive building joints.
3. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for liquid-applied joint sealants and for elastomeric sealants without metal frames.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For each expansion control system specified. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, splices, blockout requirement, attachments to other work, and line diagrams showing entire route of each expansion control system. Where expansion control systems change planes, provide isometric or clearly detailed drawing depicting how components interconnect.

- B. Samples: For each exposed expansion control system and for each color and texture specified, full width by 6 inches (150 mm) long in size.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of expansion control system indicated.

1. Include manufacturer's color charts showing the standard range of colors and finishes available for each exposed metal and elastomeric seal material.

- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of expansion control system indicated, full width by 6 inches (150 mm) long in size.

- E. Product Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of the supplier. Include the following information in tabular form:

1. Manufacturer and model number for each expansion control system.
2. Expansion control system location cross-referenced to Drawings.
3. Nominal joint width.
4. Movement capability.
5. Classification as thermal or seismic.
6. Materials, colors, and finishes.
7. Product options.

8. Fire-resistance ratings.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each fire barrier provided as part of an expansion control system, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. General: Provide expansion control systems of design, basic profile, materials, and operation indicated. Provide units with capability to accommodate variations in adjacent surfaces.
  1. Furnish units in longest practicable lengths to minimize field splicing. Install with hairline mitered corners where expansion control systems change direction or abut other materials.
  2. Include factory-fabricated closure materials and transition pieces, T-joints, corners, curbs, cross-connections, and other accessories as required to provide continuous expansion control systems.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate installation of exterior wall and soffit expansion control systems with roof expansion control systems to ensure that wall transitions are watertight. Roof expansion joint assemblies are specified in Division 07 Sections.

#### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide expansion control systems with fire barriers identical to those of systems tested for fire resistance per UL 2079 or ASTM E 1966 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Hose Stream Test: Wall-to-wall and wall-to-ceiling systems shall be subjected to hose stream testing.
- B. Seismic Performance: Expansion control systems shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  1. The term "withstand" means "the system will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the system will be fully operational after the seismic event."

#### 2.3 INTERIOR EXPANSION CONTROL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated or a comparable product by one of the following:
  1. Architectural Art Mfg., Inc.; Division of Pittcon Industries.
  2. Balco, Inc.
  3. Construction Specialties, Inc.
  4. JointMaster/InPro Corporation.
  5. Michael Rizza Company, LLC.
  6. MM Systems Corporation.
  7. Nystrom, Inc.

8. Watson Bowman Acme Corp.; a BASF Construction Chemicals business.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain expansion control systems from single source from single manufacturer.
- D. Floor-to-Floor:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Indicated on Drawings.
  2. Design Criteria:
    - a. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Minimum Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
    - c. Maximum Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
    - d. Movement Capability: As indicated on Drawings.
    - e. Type of Movement: As indicated on Drawings.
    - f. Load Capacity: As indicated on Drawings.
    - g. Fire-Resistance Rating: Provide expansion control system and fire-barrier assembly with a rating not less than that of adjacent construction.
  3. Type: Cover plate.
    - a. Cover-Plate Design: Recessed to accept field-applied finish materials.
      - 1) Cover-Plate Recess Depth: As required to accommodate adjacent flooring.
    - b. Metal: Aluminum.
      - 1) Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
    - c. Metal: Stainless steel.
      - 1) Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
    - d. Seal Material: Manufacturer's standard.
      - 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
- E. Floor-to-Wall:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Indicated on Drawings.
  2. Design Criteria:
    - a. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Minimum Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
    - c. Maximum Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
    - d. Movement Capability: As indicated on Drawings.
    - e. Type of Movement: As indicated on Drawings.
    - f. Fire-Resistance Rating: Provide expansion control system and fire-barrier assembly with a rating not less than that of adjacent construction.
  3. Type: Cover plate.
    - a. Cover-Plate Design: Recessed to accept field-applied finish materials.
      - 1) Cover-Plate Recess Depth: As required to accommodate adjacent flooring.

- b. Metal: Aluminum.
  - 1) Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- c. Metal: Stainless steel.
  - 1) Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- d. Seal Material: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

F. Wall-to-Wall:

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Indicated on Drawings.
- 2. Design Criteria:
  - a. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - b. Minimum Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - c. Maximum Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - d. Movement Capability: As indicated on Drawings.
  - e. Type of Movement: As indicated on Drawings.
  - f. Fire-Resistance Rating: Provide expansion control system and fire-barrier assembly with a rating not less than that of adjacent construction.
- 3. Type: Cover plate.
  - a. Metal: Aluminum.
    - 1) Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
  - b. Metal: Stainless steel.
    - 1) Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
  - c. Seal Material: Manufacturer's standard.
    - 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

G. Wall Corner:

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Indicated on Drawings.
- 2. Design Criteria:
  - a. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - b. Minimum Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - c. Maximum Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - d. Movement Capability: As indicated on Drawings Insert percentage.
  - e. Type of Movement: As indicated on Drawings.
  - f. Fire-Resistance Rating: Provide expansion control system and fire-barrier assembly with a rating not less than that of adjacent construction.
- 3. Type: Cover plate.
  - a. Metal: Aluminum.

- 1) Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- b. Metal: Stainless steel.
  - 1) Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- c. Seal Material: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

H. Wall-to-Ceiling:

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Indicated on Drawings.
- 2. Design Criteria:
  - a. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - b. Minimum Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - c. Maximum Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - d. Movement Capability: As indicated on Drawings.
  - e. Type of Movement: As indicated on Drawings.
  - f. Fire-Resistance Rating: Provide expansion control system and fire-barrier assembly with a rating not less than that of adjacent construction.
- 3. Type: Cover plate.
  - a. Metal: Aluminum.
    - 1) Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
  - b. Metal: Stainless steel.
    - 1) Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
  - c. Seal Material: Manufacturer's standard.
    - 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

I. Ceiling-to-Ceiling:

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Indicated on Drawings.
- 2. Design Criteria:
  - a. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - b. Minimum Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - c. Maximum Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - d. Movement Capability: As indicated on Drawings.
  - e. Type of Movement: As indicated on Drawings.
  - f. Fire-Resistance Rating: Provide expansion control system and fire-barrier assembly with a rating not less than that of adjacent construction.
- 3. Type: Cover plate.
  - a. Metal: Aluminum.
    - 1) Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

- b. Metal: Stainless steel.
  - 1) Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- c. Seal Material: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

#### 2.4 EXTERIOR WALL EXPANSION CONTROL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Architectural Art Mfg., Inc.; Division of Pittcon Industries.
  - 2. Balco, Inc.
  - 3. Chase Construction Products; Division of Chase Corporation.
  - 4. Construction Specialties, Inc.
  - 5. D. S. Brown Company (The).
  - 6. EMSEAL Corporation.
  - 7. Erie Metal Specialties, Inc.
  - 8. JointMaster/InPro Corporation.
  - 9. LymTal International, Inc.
  - 10. Michael Rizza Company, LLC.
  - 11. MM Systems Corporation.
  - 12. Nystrom, Inc.
  - 13. RJ Watson, Inc.
  - 14. Schul International Company, Inc.
  - 15. Tremco Incorporated.
  - 16. Watson Bowman Acme Corp.; a BASF Construction Chemicals business.
  - 17. Williams Products, Inc.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain expansion control systems from single source from single manufacturer.
- D. Wall-to-Wall:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Design Criteria:
    - a. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Minimum Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
    - c. Maximum Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
    - d. Movement Capability: As indicated on Drawings.
    - e. Type of Movement: As indicated on Drawings.
    - f. Fire-Resistance Rating: Provide expansion control system and fire-barrier assembly with a rating not less than that of adjacent construction.
  - 3. Type: Cover plate.
    - a. Metal: Aluminum.
      - 1) Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

- b. Metal: Stainless steel.
    - 1) Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 4. Type: Flat seal.
    - a. Metal: Aluminum, Stainless steel.
    - b. Seal Material: Manufacturer's standard.
      - 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
    - c. Pantograph Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard pantographic wind-load support mechanism with stainless-steel fasteners.
  - 5. Type: Preformed cellular foam.
    - a. Foam Material: Manufacturer's standard.
      - 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
- E. Wall Corner:
- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Design Criteria:
    - a. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Minimum Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
    - c. Maximum Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
    - d. Movement Capability: As indicated on Drawings.
    - e. Type of Movement: As indicated on Drawings.
    - f. Fire-Resistance Rating: Provide expansion control system and fire-barrier assembly with a rating not less than that of adjacent construction.
  - 3. Type: Cover plate.
    - a. Metal: Aluminum.
      - 1) Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
    - b. Metal: Stainless steel.
      - 1) Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 4. Type: Flat seal.
    - a. Metal: Aluminum, Stainless steel.
    - b. Seal Material: Manufacturer's standard.
      - 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
    - c. Pantograph Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard pantographic wind-load support mechanism with stainless-steel fasteners.
  - 5. Type: Preformed cellular foam.

- a. Foam Material: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

F. Wall-to-Soffit:

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Indicated on Drawings.
- 2. Design Criteria:
  - a. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - b. Minimum Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - c. Maximum Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - d. Movement Capability: As indicated on Drawings.
  - e. Type of Movement: As indicated on Drawings.
  - f. Fire-Resistance Rating: Provide expansion control system and fire-barrier assembly with a rating not less than that of adjacent construction.
- 3. Type: Cover plate.
  - a. Metal: Aluminum.
    - 1) Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
  - b. Metal: Stainless steel.
    - 1) Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- 4. Type: Flat seal.
  - a. Metal: Aluminum, Stainless steel.
  - b. Seal Material: Manufacturer's standard.
    - 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
- 5. Type: Preformed cellular foam.
  - a. Foam Material: Manufacturer's standard.
    - 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

G. Soffit-to-Soffit:

- 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Indicated on Drawings.
- 2. Design Criteria:
  - a. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - b. Minimum Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - c. Maximum Joint Width: As indicated on Drawings.
  - d. Movement Capability: As indicated on Drawings.
  - e. Type of Movement: As indicated on Drawings.
  - f. Fire-Resistance Rating: Provide expansion control system and fire-barrier assembly with a rating not less than that of adjacent construction.
- 3. Type: Cover plate.

- a. Metal: Aluminum.
  - 1) Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- b. Metal: Stainless steel.
  - 1) Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
- 4. Type: Flat seal.
  - a. Metal: Aluminum, Stainless steel.
  - b. Seal Material: Manufacturer's standard.
    - 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
- 5. Type: Preformed cellular foam.
  - a. Foam Material: Manufacturer's standard.
    - 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

## 2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Mill finish.
- B. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, or thicker.
- C. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, or thicker.
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from standard range of industry colors and color densities.

## 2.7 STAINLESS-STEEL FINISHES

- A. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
- B. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
  - 1. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
  - 2. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
  - 3. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.
- C. Bright, Cold-Rolled, Unpolished Finish: No. 2B.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces where expansion control systems will be installed for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
  - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to expansion control system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Coordinate and furnish anchorages, setting drawings, and instructions for installing expansion control systems. Provide fasteners of metal, type, and size to suit type of construction indicated and to provide for secure attachment of expansion control systems.
- C. Cast-In Frames: Coordinate and furnish frames to be cast into concrete.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for storing, handling, and installing expansion control systems and materials unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- B. Metal Frames: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required to install expansion control systems.
  - 1. Install in true alignment and proper relationship to joints and adjoining finished surfaces measured from established lines and levels.
  - 2. Adjust for differences between actual structural gap and nominal design gap due to ambient temperature at time of installation. Notify Architect where discrepancies occur that will affect proper expansion control system installation and performance.
  - 3. Cut and fit ends to accommodate thermal expansion and contraction of metal without buckling of frames.
  - 4. Repair or grout blockout as required for continuous frame support using nonmetallic, shrinkage-resistant grout.
  - 5. Install frames in continuous contact with adjacent surfaces.
    - a. Shimming is not permitted.
  - 6. Locate anchors at interval recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm) from each end and not more than 24 inches (600 mm) o.c.
- C. Seals in Metal Frames: Install elastomeric seals and membranes in frames to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install with minimum number of end joints.
  - 1. Provide in continuous lengths for straight sections.
  - 2. Seal transitions according to manufacturer's written instructions. Vulcanize or heat-weld field-spliced joints as recommended by manufacturer.
  - 3. Installation: Mechanically lock seals into frames or adhere to frames with adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Compression Seals: Apply adhesive or lubricant adhesive as recommended by manufacturer to both frame interfaces sides of slabs before installing compression seals.
- E. Foam Seals: Install with adhesive recommended by manufacturer.

- F. Epoxy-Bonded Seals: Pressurize seal for time period and to pressure recommended by manufacturer. Do not overpressurize.
- G. Terminate exposed ends of expansion control systems with field- or factory-fabricated termination devices.
- H. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Coordinate installation of expansion control system materials and associated work so complete assemblies comply with assembly performance requirements.
  - 1. Fire Barriers: Install fire barriers to provide continuous, uninterrupted fire resistance throughout length of joint, including transitions and field splices.
- I. Moisture Barrier: Provide at all exterior joints and where indicated on Drawings. Provide drainage fittings at a maximum of 50 feet (15.2 m) or where indicated on Drawings.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Do not remove protective covering until finish work in adjacent areas is complete. When protective covering is removed, clean exposed metal surfaces to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Protect the installation from damage by work of other Sections. Where necessary due to heavy construction traffic, remove and properly store cover plates or seals and install temporary protection over expansion control systems. Reinstall cover plates or seals prior to Substantial Completion of the Work.

END OF SECTION 079500

SECTION 081113 – HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART I – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. SECTION INCLUDES

1. Work under this section comprises of furnishing hollow metal doors and frames, including transom frames, sidelight and window frames with provision for glazed, paneled or louvered openings, fire labeled and non-labeled, as scheduled.

B. RELATED DOCUMENTS

1. Related documents, drawings and general provisions of contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 specification sections apply to this section.

C. RELATED SECTIONS

1. 017823 – Operations and Maintenance Data
2. 061053 – Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry
3. 064023 – Interior Architectural Woodwork
4. 081416 – Flush Wood Doors
5. 087100 – Door Hardware
6. 088000 – Glazing
7. 089000 – Louvers and Vents
8. 099113 – Exterior Painting
9. 099123 – Interior Painting

1.02 REFERENCES

A. STANDARDS

1. NFPA 80 – Fire Doors and Windows
2. ANSI/SDI-100 – Recommended Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames
3. ASTM-F 476 – Standard Test Methods for Security of Swinging Doors Assemblies
4. SDI-105 – Recommended Erection Instructions for Steel Frames
5. SDI-107 – Hardware on Steel Doors (reinforcement application)
6. ANSI-A250.4 – Steel Doors and Frames Physical Endurance
7. UL10C – Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

B. CODES

1. NFPA-101 – Life Safety Code
2. IBC 2003 – International Building Code
3. ANSI-A117.1 – Accessible and Usable Building and Facilities
4. ADA – Americans with Disabilities Act

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

1. Submit copies of the hollow metal door and frame shop drawings in accordance with Division 1, General Requirements.

B. PRODUCT DATA

1. Submit shop drawings showing fabrication and installation of standard steel doors and frames. Include details of each frame type, elevations of door and frame types, conditions at openings, details of construction, location and installation requirements of door and frame hardware reinforcements, and details of joints and connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.

C. LEED SUBMITTALS

1. Credits MR 4.1 and MR 4.2: Use materials with recycled content such that the sum of the post-consumer recycled content plus one-half of the pre-consumer content constitutes at least 20% total based on cost of the total values of the material in the project.

D. SHOP DRAWINGS

1. Provide a schedule of doors and frames using same reference numbers for details and door openings as those on the contract documents. Shop drawings should include the following information:
  - a. Material thickness and/or gauge.
  - b. Door core material.
  - c. Mortises and reinforcements.
  - d. Anchorage types.
  - e. Locations of exposed fasteners.
  - f. Glazed, louvered and paneled openings.
  - g. Mounting locations of standard hardware.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. SUBSTITUTIONS

1. All substitution requests must be submitted within the procedures and time frame as outlined in Division 1, General Requirements. Approval of products is at the discretion of the architect and his consultant.

B. MANUFACTURER QUALIFICATIONS

1. Manufacturer shall be a member in good standing of the Steel Door Institute (SDI).

C. FIRE RATED DOOR ASSEMBLIES

1. All labeled fire door assemblies to be of a type that have been classified and listed in accordance with the latest edition of NFPA80 and test in compliance with NFPA-252, and UL10C. A physical label is to be affixed to the fire door at an authorized facility; embossed labels are acceptable on standard 3 sided door frames.
2. For openings required to be fire rated exceeding limitations of labeled assemblies, submit manufacturer's certification that each door and frame assembly has been constructed to conform to design, materials and construction equivalent to requirements for labeled construction.
3. Project requires door assemblies and components that are compliant with positive pressure and S-label requirements. Specifications must be cross-referenced and coordinated with hardware and other door manufacturers to ensure that total opening engineering is compatible with UL10C Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
  - a. Certification(s) of compliance shall be made available upon request by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. The supplier shall deliver all materials to the project site; direct factory shipments are not allowed unless agreed upon beforehand. Supplier shall coordinate delivery times and schedules with the contractor.
- B. Deliver doors cardboard wrapped or crated to provide protection during transit and jobsite storage. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to any factory-finished doors. Mark all doors and frames with opening numbers as shown on the contract documents and shop drawings.
- C. Inspect doors and frames upon delivery for damage. Minor damages may be repaired provided refinished items are equal in all respects to new work and acceptable to the architect. Otherwise, remove and replace damaged goods as directed.
- D. Store doors and frames at the building site in a dry and secure place.
  - 1. Place units on minimum 4” high wood blocking.
  - 2. Avoid use of non-vented plastic or canvas shelters that could create a humidity chamber.
  - 3. If cardboard wrapper on door becomes wet, remove carton immediately.
  - 4. Provide 1/4” spaces between stacked doors to promote air circulation.

#### 1.06 WARRANTY

- A. All doors and frames shall be warranted in writing by the manufacturer against defects in materials and workmanship for a period of one (1) year commencing on the date of final completion and acceptance.

### PART II - PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide standard hollow metal doors and frames by one of the following:
  - 1. Ceco Corporation
  - 2. Curries Company
  - 3. Steelcraft Company

#### 2.02 MATERIALS

- A. All doors and frames shall be manufactured of commercial quality cold rolled steel per ASTM-A366 and A568 general requirements; galvanized to A60 or G60 or galvanealed to A40 minimum coating weight standard per ASTM-A924. Internal reinforcing may be manufactured of hot rolled pickled and oiled steel per ASTM-A569.
- B. Supports and anchors shall be fabricated of not less than 18-gauge sheet steel, galvanized where galvanized frames are used.
- C. Where items are to be built into exterior walls, inserts, bolts and fasteners shall be hot dipped galvanized in compliance with ASTM-A153, Class C or D as applicable.
- D. Rust inhibitive enamel or paint primer shall be used, baked on, and suitable as a base for specified finish paints complying with ANSI A224.1, “Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Prime Painted Steel Surfaces on Steel Doors and Frames.”
- E. Provide all hollow metal doors and frames receiving electrified hardware with molex wiring harness and concealed plug connectors on one end to accommodate up to twelve wires. Coordinate molex connectors on end of the wiring harness to plug directly into the electrified hardware and the electric hinge.

- F. Where specified supply embossed steel doors with wood grain appearance. Wood grain shall follow the pattern of a stile and rail wood door with both vertical and horizontal grain patterns. Doors with vision lites are required to have wood grain window kits.

## 2.03 DOORS

- A. Provide 1 3/4" thick doors of materials and ANSI/SDI-100 grades and models specified below, or as indicated on drawings or schedules:

- 1. Interior Doors: Level 2, Model 2 – Seamless

- a. Interior doors shall be minimum 18-gauge steel with both lock and hinge rail edge of door intermittently welded, filled and ground smooth the full height of door.

- 1) Ceco: Regent-18-SEM
- 2) Curries: 707N-18
- 3) Steelcraft: LF18

- 2. Exterior Doors: Level 3, Model 2 – Seamless

- a. Exterior doors shall be minimum 16-gauge galvanized or galvanealed steel with both lock and hinge rail edge of door intermittently welded, filled and ground smooth the full height of door. Exterior doors shall be insulated with a solid slab of expanded polystyrene or polyurethane foam permanently bonded to the inside of each face skin. The top of all doors shall be closed flush by the addition of a 16-gauge screwed-in top cap and sealed to prevent water infiltration. The bottom channel shall include weep-holes.

- 1) Ceco: Legion-16-SEM
- 2) Curries: 707N-16
- 3) Steelcraft: LF16-Polystyrene

- B. All doors shall be reinforced for hardware as shown below where necessary to preclude the use of thru-bolts.

- 1. Exit Devices: 14-gauge
- 2. Door Closers: 12-gauge

- C. All doors shall be beveled 1/8" in 2" and shall have top and bottom channels of not less than 16-gauge, flush or inverted, welded to the face sheets. Doors shall have a full height 14-gauge hinge rail reinforcement channel, or individual 10 gauge hinge reinforcements.

- D. All doors to conform to ANSI-A250.4 Level "A" criteria and shall be tested to 1,000,000 operating cycles and 23 twist tests. Certification of Level "A" doors is to be submitted with approval drawings by supplier upon request. Do not bid or supply any type or gauge of door not having been tested and passed these criteria.

## 2.04 FRAMES

- A. Provide hollow metal frames for doors, transoms, sidelights, borrowed lights, and other openings, of types and styles as shown on the drawings and schedules. Conceal fastenings unless otherwise indicated.

- 1. Interior Frames: Level 2, 16-gauge
- 2. Exterior Frames: Level 2, 16-gauge, galvanized or galvanealed
- 3. Security Grade Frames: 14-gauge

- a. Ceco: SU Series

- b. Curries: M Series
  - c. Steelcraft: F Series
- B. Fabricate frames with mitered and faces only welded corners, re-prime at the welded areas. All welds to be flush with neatly mitered or butted material cuts.
- C. All frames shall have minimum 7 gauge hinge reinforcements, 14-gauge lock strike reinforcing, and 12-gauge closer reinforcing.
- D. Provide temporary shipping bars to be removed before setting frames.
- E. Except on weatherstripped frames, drill stops to receive three (3) silencers on strike jambs of single frames and two (2) silencers on heads of double frames.
- F. Provide minimum 0.0179" thick steel plaster guards or mortar boxes at back of hardware cutouts where mortar or other materials might obstruct hardware operation and to close off interior of openings.

## 2.05 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate steel door and frame units to be rigid, neat in appearance, and free from defects, warp, or buckle. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. Clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment, to assure proper assembly at Project site. Comply with ANSI/SDI 100 requirements.
- 1. Clearances shall be no more than 1/8" at jambs and heads except between non fire rated pairs of doors which may be no more than 1/4." Not more than 3/4" at the bottom of the doors.
- B. Fabricate exposed faces of doors and panels, including stiles and rails of non-flush units, from only cold-rolled steel sheet.
- C. Tolerances shall comply with SDI-117 "Manufacturing Tolerances Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
- D. Fabricate concealed stiffeners, reinforcement, edge channels, louvers, and moldings from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, provide exposed fasteners with countersunk flat or oval heads for exposed screws and bolts.
- F. At exterior locations and elsewhere as shown or scheduled, assemblies fabricated as thermal-insulating door and frame assemblies and tested according to ASTM C 236 or ASTM C 976 on fully operable door assemblies.
- 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide thermal-rated assemblies with a minimum U-value rating of 0.41 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
- G. Prepare doors and frames to receive mortised and concealed hardware according to final door hardware schedule and templates provided by hardware supplier. Comply with applicable requirements of SDI-107 and ANSI-A115 Series specifications for door and frame preparation for hardware.
- H. Reinforce doors and frames to receive surface-applied hardware. Drilling and tapping for surface-applied hardware may be done at Project site. Provide internal reinforcements for all doors to receive door closers and exit devices.

- I. Locate hardware as indicated on Shop Drawings or, if not indicated, according to the Door and Hardware Institute's (DHI) "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
- J. Provide glazing stops with minimum 0.0359-inch- thick steel or 0.040-inch- thick aluminum.
- K. Provide non-removable stops on outside of exterior doors and on secure side of interior doors for glass, louvers, and other panels in doors.
- L. Provide screw-applied, removable, glazing beads on inside of glass and other panels in doors

### PART III - EXECUTION

#### 3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install steel doors, frames, and accessories according to shop drawings, manufacturer's data, and as specified.
- B. Comply with provisions of SDI-105, "Recommended Erection Instructions for Steel Door Frames," unless otherwise indicated. Set frames accurately in position, plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is completed, remove temporary braces and spreaders, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
  - 1. Except for frames located in existing concrete, masonry, or gypsum board assembly construction, place frames before constructing enclosing walls and ceilings.
  - 2. In masonry construction, install at least three (3) wall anchors per jamb adjacent to hinge location on hinge jamb and at corresponding heights on strike jamb. Acceptable anchors include masonry wire anchors and masonry T-shaped anchors.
  - 3. At existing concrete or masonry construction, install at least three (3) completed opening anchors per jamb adjacent to hinge location on hinge jamb and at corresponding heights on strike jamb. Set frames and secure to adjacent construction with bolts and masonry anchorage devices.
  - 4. In metal-stud partitions, install at least three (3) wall anchors per jamb at hinge and strike levels. In steel-stud partitions, attach wall anchors to studs with screws.
  - 5. Install fire-rated frames according to NFPA 80.
- C. Fit hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified in ANSI/SDI 100. Install fire rated doors with clearances specified in NFPA 80.

#### 3.02 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Immediately after erection, sand smooth any rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying primer
- B. Immediately before final inspection, remove protective wrappings from doors and frames.

END OF SECTION 081113

SECTION 081416 – FLUSH WOOD DOORS

PART I – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. SECTION INCLUDES

1. Work under this section comprises of furnishing solid core doors (wood veneer faces and hardboard/MDF) light frames, factory fitting and machining and factory finishing for fire labeled and non labeled wood doors.

B. RELATED DOCUMENTS

1. Related documents, drawings and general provisions of contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 specification sections apply to this section.

C. RELATED SECTIONS

1. 064023 – Interior Architectural Woodwork
2. 081113 – Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
3. 084113– Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts
4. 087100 – Door Hardware
5. 088000 – Glazing
6. 099113 – Exterior Painting
7. 099123 – Interior Painting

1.02 REFERENCES

A. STANDARDS

1. NFPA-80 – Fire Doors and Windows
2. NFPA-105 – Recommend Practice for Installation of Smoke Controlled Door Assemblies
3. WDMA I.S. 1A – Wood Door Manufacturer’s Association, Flush Wood Door Performance Standards
4. UL10C – Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

B. CODES

1. NFPA-101 – Life Safety Code
2. IBC 2003 – International Building Code
3. ANSI-A117.1 – Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities.
4. ADA – Americans with Disabilities Act

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

1. Submit copies of the hollow metal door and frame shop drawings in accordance with Division 1, General Requirements.

B. PRODUCT DATA

1. Submit shop drawings showing fabrication and installation of wood doors. Include details of door elevations, details of construction, location and installation requirements of door hardware.

C. LEED SUBMITTALS

1. Credits MR 4.1 and MR 4.2: Interior wood flush doors to contain a minimum of 70% recycled & recovered content, as certified by SCS (Scientific Certification Systems). Include evidence that door manufacturer is certified with SCS by providing certificates and labeling each crate of doors delivered to the jobsite.
2. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.4: For adhesives and composite wood products, indicating that product contains no urea formaldehyde.

D. SHOP DRAWINGS

1. Provide a schedule of doors and frames using same reference numbers for details and door openings as those on the contract documents. Shop drawings should include the following information:
  - a. Door core material.
  - b. Mortises and reinforcements.
  - c. Glazed and louvered openings and material.
  - d. Mounting locations of standard hardware.
  - e. Elevation drawings.

E. SAMPLES

1. Upon request submit the following samples:
  - a. Corner sections of doors approximately 8” x 10” with door faces and edgings representing the typical range of color and grain for each species of veneer and solid lumber required.
  - b. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately 8” x 10” inches, for each material and finish. For each wood species and transparent finish, provide set of three samples showing typical range of color and grain to be expected in the finished work.
  - c. Frames for light openings, 6” long, for each material, type, and finish required.
  - d. Louver blade and frame sections, 6 inches long, for each material and finish specified.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. SUBSTITUTIONS

1. All substitution requests must be submitted within the procedures and time frame as outlined in Division 1, General Requirements. Approval of products is at the discretion of the architect and his consultant.

B. MANUFACTURER QUALIFICATIONS

1. Manufacturer shall be a member in good standing of the Wood Door Manufacturer’s Association (WDMA).
2. Wherever possible obtain wood doors from a single manufacturer to ensure uniformity in quality of appearance and construction. All material supplied for this project to conform to WDMA I.S. 1A-97 for premium grade wood doors.

### C. FIRE RATED DOORS

1. Project requires door assemblies and components that are compliant with positive pressure and S-label requirements. Specifications must be cross-referenced and coordinated with hardware and other door manufacturers to ensure that total opening engineering is compatible with UL10C Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies, and UBC 7-2, Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
  - a. Certification(s) of compliance shall be made available upon request by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
  - b. For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
2. A physical label to be permanently affixed to the fire door at an authorized facility. Furthermore, all 45, 60, and 90 minute label fire doors are to have manufacturer's standard laminated stiles for improved screw holding and split resistance capability.
  - a. At stairwell enclosures and where otherwise indicated, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 250 deg F above ambient after thirty (30) minutes of standard fire-test exposure

#### 1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect doors during transit, storage, and handling to prevent damage, soiling, and deterioration. Doors are to be shipped from manufacturer in individual polybags, and shall be inspected immediately upon arrival at jobsite for any damage or defects.
- B. Identify each door with individual opening numbers that correlate with designation system used on shop drawings and contract drawings for door, frames and hardware. Use only temporary, removable, or concealed markings.
- C. Do not deliver or install doors until building is enclosed and weather tight, wet-work is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and relative humidity at occupancy level in storage and installation areas.

#### 1.06 WARRANTY

- A. Warranties shall be in addition to, and not a limitation of other rights the owner may have under the contract documents.
- B. Submit written warranty on manufacturer's standard form signed by the manufacturer agreeing to replace or repair defective doors which have:
  1. Delamination in any degree.
  2. Warp or twist of 1/4" or more in any 3' x 6" x 7' plane of door face.
  3. Telegraphing of stile, rail or core through face to cause surface variation in excess of 1/100" in any 3" spans.
- C. Contractor shall replace or refinish doors where contractor's work contributed to rejection or voiding of manufacturer's warranty.
- D. Solid core interior doors shall be warranted for the life of their installation.

## PART II - PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide wood doors by one of the manufacturers as listed.

### 2.02 FIRE RATED DOORS

1. All fire rated doors shall be supplied to meet UL10C positive pressure standards for category “B” doors. All required intumescent seals shall be supplied as specified in section 087100 – Door Hardware.

### 2.03 DOORS

#### A. FACES FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

1. Doors shall have premium grade A faces with manufacturer’s standard five (5) ply construction; minimum 1/8” thick with stiles and rails bonded to the core.
2. Faces shall be minimum 1/50” at 12% moisture content thick after finish sanding.
  - a. Veneer Cut: Plain Sliced
  - b. Face Assembly: Cathedral Vertical Grain (to match existing)
  - c. Veneer Species: Select Maple
3. Exposed vertical edges shall be of the same species as the face material.
4. Doors shall have minimum 1” stiles on the hinge stile and 13/16” minimum on the lock stile; both stiles faces shall match the door veneer. Top and bottom rails shall be a minimum 13/16”; rails shall be mill option hardwood or structural composite lumber (SCL).

#### B. NON RATED AND 20 MINUTE DOORS

1. Supply engineered core complying with WDMA I.S. 1A, bonded to door faces, stiles and rails using a Type I adhesive. Components are to be assembled to meet or exceed 20 minute fire door specifications for UL10c fire test requirements. Door shall meet or exceed WDMA I.S. 1A Extra Heavy Duty performance standards.
  - a. Algoma: FGFW
  - b. Eggers: SCL5 / SCL5-20
  - c. Graham: GPD EC5 / GPD EC5-20
  - d. Marshfield: DCL-1 / DCL-20
  - e. VT Industries: 5508

#### C. FIRE RATED DOORS OVER 20 MINUTES

1. Supply fire resistive composite mineral core construction to provide the fire rating indicated, boned to door faces, stiles and rails using a Type I adhesive. Components are to be assembled to meet or exceed fire door specifications for UL10C fire test requirements.
  - a. Algoma: FD
  - b. Eggers: FGP
  - c. Graham: GPD FD5
  - d. Marshfield: DFM
  - e. VT Industries: 5545/5511

2. For mineral-core doors, provide composite blocking with improved screw holding capability approved for use in doors of fire ratings indicated as necessary to eliminate need for through-bolting hardware and as follows:
  - a. Provide 5” top-rail blocking.
  - b. Provide 4 1/2” x 10” lock blocks.
  - c. Provide 5” mid-rail blocking, at doors indicated to have exit devices.
3. At hinge stiles, provide manufacturer's standard laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance and with outer stile matching face veneer.

#### 2.04 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. Finish all doors to receive a transparent finish at the factory as indicated below; field finish doors indicated to receive an opaque finish in accordance with Division 9, Finishes.
  1. Grade: Premium
  2. Finish: WDMA TR-6 catalyzed polyurethane.
  3. Stain: Clear-coat only.
  4. Effect: Semi-filled finish, produced by applying an additional finish coat to partially fill the wood pores.
- B. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises. Stains and fillers may be omitted on top and bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
- C. Finish doors using three (3) coats of water-clear 100% solids, modified acrylic urethane, cured immediately with ultra-violet light.
- D. Factory seal transparent finish doors on all six (6) sides using manufacturer’s standard meeting these applications.

#### 2.05 LIGHT FRAMES

- A. Provide wood beads for light openings in doors up to and including 20-minute rating; at 20-minute rated doors provide wood beads and metal glazing clips approved for such use.
  1. Wood Species: Same species as door faces.
  2. Profile: Flush rectangular beads.
- B. For fire-rated doors over 20-minute rated provide manufacturer's standard metal light frame formed of 0.048 inch thick cold-rolled steel sheet with baked-enamel or powder-coated finish approved for use in doors of fire rating indicated.

#### 2.06 LOUVERS

- A. Provide manufacturer’s standard solid wood louvers unless otherwise indicated; species shall be the same as door faces.
- B. Provide metal louvers with vision-proof inverted V or inverted Y blades constructed of galvanized 0.040 inch thick steel factory primed for paint finish with baked-enamel or power-coated finish.
- C. Provide metal louvers for fire-rated doors with fusible link and closing device listed and labeled for use in doors with fire-protection rating of-1 1/2 hours or less. Subject to compliance with rating requirements, louver construction and material shall be the same as non-rated versions.

## 2.07 FABRICATION

- A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated, with the following uniform clearances and bevels, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting. Comply with requirements of NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
- B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, DHI A115-W series standards, and hardware templates.
  - 1. Coordinate measurements of hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
  - 2. Premachine metal astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.
- C. Cut and trim openings through doors to comply with applicable requirements of referenced standards for kind(s) of door(s) required.
  - 1. Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.

## PART III - EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine installed door frames before hanging doors.
  - 1. Verify that frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with plumb jambs and level heads.
  - 2. Reject doors with defects.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. For hardware installation, see Division 8 Section "Door Hardware."
- B. Install wood doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions, referenced quality standard and as indicated.
  - 1. Install fire-rated doors in corresponding fire-rated frames according to NFPA 80.
- C. Align factory fitted doors in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.

### 3.03 ADJUSTING AND PROTECTING

- A. Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
- B. Refinish or replace doors damaged during installation.
- C. Protect doors as recommended by door manufacturer to ensure that wood doors are without damage or deterioration at the time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 08 14 16

SECTION 082200 - FIBERGLASS (FRP) DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fiberglass reinforced plastic (FRP) Doors
- B. Fiberglass reinforced plastic (FRP) Frames
- C. Fire-rated fiberglass reinforced plastic (FRP) Doors
- D. Fire-rated fiberglass reinforced plastic (FRP) Frames

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Applicable provisions of Division 1 shall govern all work under this section.
- B. Division 4 Section "Concrete Unit Masonry" for installing anchors and grouting frames in masonry construction.
- D. Division 8 Section "Glazing" for glass in doors and frames.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General: Provide fiberglass reinforced door and frame units made of components of standard construction furnished by one manufacturer as coordinated assemblies.
- B. Manufacturer: Company specializing in the manufacture of fiberglass doors and frames with a minimum of five years documented experience.
- C. Construction: Verify that FRP doors and frames are manufactured utilizing pultruded fiberglass components for flexibility, durability, superior strength and chemical resistance. Press-molded doors and frames will not be accepted. Resin rich door edges and gelcoat are prone to chipping and cracking (brittle).
- D. Resins: Resins shall comply with USDA and FDA standards for incidental food contact.
- E. Flame Spread Rating: Flame retardant structural shapes meet the minimum flame spread rating less than or equal to 25 when tested according to ASTM E84.
- F. Fire-rated doors and frames to conform to NFPA 252 (2008), CAN4 S104 (1985), UL10C (2001), and UL9 (2005).
- G. Impact Strength: FRP doors and panels 10.32 foot-pounds per inch of notch, ASTM D-256.
- H. Tensile Strength:
  - 1. FRP doors and panels 12,000 psi, ASTM D-638.
  - 2. FRP frames 30,000 psi, ASTM D-638.
- I. Flexural Strength: FRP doors, panels, and frames 25,000 psi, ASTM D-790.

- J. Compressive Strength:
  - 1. FRP doors and panels 18,000 psi, ASTM D-695.
  - 2. FRP frames 30,000 psi, ASTM D-695.
- K. Water Absorption: FRP doors, panels, and frames .27 %, ASTM D-570.
- L. Hardware Reinforcements: FRP doors and frames fabricated with a minimum screw holding strength of 1,000 lbs. Tested with a #12 x 1-1/4" hinge screw.
- M. Paint Adhesion: Coating for FRP doors, panels, and frames to conform to AAMA 624-07 for color uniformity, film adhesion, specular gloss, direct impact, abrasion resistance, and chemical resistance.
- N. Warranty: Warranty fiberglass doors and frames for life of the initial installation against failure due to corrosion. Additionally, warranty fiberglass doors and frames for a period of 10 years against failure due to materials and workmanship, from date of substantial completion.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of door and frame indicated, include door designation, type, level and model, material description, core description, construction details, and finishes.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver doors and frames cardboard-wrapped or crated to provide protection during transit and job storage. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to finish of factory-finished doors and frames.
- B. Inspect doors and frames on delivery for damage, and notify shipper and supplier if damage exists. Minor damages may be repaired provided refinished items match new work and are acceptable to the Architect. Remove and replace damaged items that cannot be repaired as directed.
- C. Store doors and frames at building site under cover. Avoid using non-vented plastic or canvas covers that could create a humidity chamber.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - 1. Special-Lite, Inc.; SL-19 and SL-22 Flush Woodgrain Doors with acrylic modified polyester (AMP) face sheets, to match existing.
  - 2. Substitutions: None.

#### 2.2 DOORS

- A. Interior Doors: Provide doors with manufacturer's standard solid foam core, stiffeners, blocking, trim for cutouts, and all other accessories required for proper, finished installation. Prepare door for hardware in the factory, and install hardware in factory to the greatest extent possible.

- B. Interior Fire-Rated Doors: Provide doors as indicated above, and provide all additional materials and accessories required for fire rating indicated.

## 2.3 FRAMES

- A. Provide manufacturer's standard aluminum framing system suitable for door panel, to match existing FRP door framing.
  - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, fabricate stops to receive three silencers on strike jambs of single-door frames and two silencers on heads of double-door frames.
- C. Plaster Guards: Provide plaster guards or mortar boxes at back of hardware cutouts where mortar or other materials might obstruct hardware operation.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate fiberglass door and frame units to be rigid, neat in appearance, and free from defects including warp and buckle. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. Clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment, to assure proper assembly at Project site.
- B. Core Construction: Manufacturer's standard core construction that complies with the following:
  - 1. E-S (standard) series to have expanded polystyrene foam core.
  - 2. E-P (premier) series to have full height vertical fiberglass stiffeners, 6 inches on center. Voids to be filled with expanded polystyrene foam.
  - 3. E-C (custom) series to have expanded polystyrene foam, polyurethane foam or vertical fiberglass stiffeners, where indicated.
  - 4. E-F (fire) series to have fire-rated mineral core.
  - 5. Hollow/honeycomb core will not be accepted.
- C. Stiles and Rails: Fabricate doors utilizing heavy duty pultruded fiberglass tubular members.
- D. Door Faces: Laminated composite faces shall be urethane fused to the stile and rail assembly, including the vertical stiffeners and core material, utilizing a two-part 100 percent reactive urethane adhesive, and then cured under pressure until completely bonded.
- E. Clearances: Not more than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) at jambs and heads, except not more than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) between pairs of doors. Not more than 3/4 inch (19 mm) at bottom, with standard being 5/8 inch (15.9 mm) at bottom.
- F. Door Edges: Lock stile to be factory beveled 1/8" in 2" for rub-free operation. Square lock-edge will not be accepted.
- G. Tolerances: Maximum diagonal distortion - 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) measured with straight edge, corner-to-corner.
- H. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate all hardware reinforcements utilizing premium high density polyethylene (HDPE) and fiberglass blocking. Any form of wood or metal reinforcements will not be accepted.
- I. Exposed Fasteners: Unless otherwise indicated, provide stainless steel, countersunk flat or oval heads for exposed screws and bolts.

- J. Thermal-Rated (insulating) Assemblies: At exterior locations and elsewhere shown or scheduled, provide doors fabricated as thermal-insulating door and frame assemblies, with an "R" value of 11-12.
- K. Hardware Preparations: Prepare doors and frames to receive mortised and concealed hardware according to final door hardware schedule and templates provided by hardware supplier. Doors and frames must be factory pre-drilled for all mortised hardware preps. Pilot and through-bolt holes for all surface mounted hardware to be drilled at the project site during installation.
- L. Frame Construction: Fabricate frames to size and shape shown on drawings.
  - 1. Fabricate frames with mitered resin-welded corners and seamless face joints.
  - 2. Provide set-up and resin welded frames with temporary spreader bars.
  - 3. Provide 4 or 6 inch terminated/hospital stops - where indicated.
- M. Hardware Locations: Locate hardware as indicated on shop drawings or if not indicated, according to manufacturer's standard locations.
- N. Glazing/Louver Stops: Manufacturer's standard two-piece PVC retainers.
  - 1. Provide non-removable stops on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors for glass, louver, and other panels in doors.
  - 2. Provide screw-applied, removable, glazing stops on inside of glass, louvers, and other panels in doors.
  - 3. Loose, eight piece trim kits will not be accepted. Additionally, retainers held in place by two-sided tape are not acceptable.
  - 4. Glass to be supplied and installed under section 08800, unless stated otherwise.
- O. Astragals: Fabricate astragals for pairs of doors utilizing fiberglass materials in either flat or "T" configuration - where indicated.

## 2.5 FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Pre-clean and shop prime each door and frame ready for finish painting, performed at the jobsite under Section 09900.
  - 1. Where indicated, furnish fiberglass doors and frames factory pre-finished.
    - a. Finish: Manufacturers standard chemical resistant two-part polyurethane topcoat.
    - b. Sheen: Satin or semi-gloss - as indicated.
- B. Door Faces: Face skins shall be smooth. Due to the unit's extra-long life expectancy, minor repairs on facings must be easily blended in the event of damage. Slightly textured gelcoat facings will not be accepted.
- C. Finish on fiberglass frames must match that of the fiberglass doors to which they are installed. Gelcoated doors and polyurethane coated frames together as a unit will not be accepted.

## 2.6 HARDWARE

- A. Hardware: All hardware shall be furnished under section 08710, unless stated otherwise.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fiberglass doors, frames, and accessories according to Shop Drawings, manufacturer's data, and as specified.
- B. Placing Frames: Set frames accurately in position, plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is completed, remove temporary braces and spreaders, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
  - 1. Except for frames located in existing walls or partitions, place frames before construction of enclosing walls and ceilings.
  - 2. In masonry construction, provide at least three wall anchors per jamb; install adjacent to hinge locations on hinge jamb and at corresponding heights on strike jamb. Acceptable anchors include masonry wire anchors and masonry T-shaped anchors.
  - 3. In existing concrete or masonry construction, provide at least three completed opening anchors per jamb; install adjacent to hinge location on hinge jamb and at corresponding heights on strike jamb. Set frames and secure to adjacent construction with stainless steel expansion bolts and masonry anchorage devices.
  - 4. For openings 90 inches (2286 mm) or more in height, install an additional anchor at hinge and strike jambs.
- C. Factory Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.
- D. Door Installation: Fit fiberglass doors accurately in frames. Shim as necessary.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protection Removal: Immediately before final inspection, remove protective wrappings from doors and frames.
- B. Cleaning: Clean fiberglass door and frame assemblies in accordance with manufacturer's recommended procedure.

END OF SECTION 082200

## SECTION 083113 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Access doors and frames for walls and ceilings.
- 2. Floor access doors and frames.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for roof hatches.
- 2. Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames" for access doors and frames.
- 3. Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories" for heating and air-conditioning duct access doors.

#### 1.3 ALLOWANCES

- A. Access doors and frames are part of an access door and frame allowance.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, fire ratings, materials, individual components and profiles, and finishes.

- B. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- 2. Detail fabrication and installation of access doors and frames for each type of substrate.

- C. Samples: For each door face material, at least 3 by 5 inches (75 by 125 mm) in size, in specified finish.

- D. Product Schedule: Provide complete access door and frame schedule, including types, locations, sizes, latching or locking provisions, and other data pertinent to installation.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Access Doors and Frames: Units complying with NFPA 80 that are identical to access door and frame assemblies tested for fire-test-response characteristics according to the following test method and that are listed and labeled by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:

- 1. NFPA 252 or UL 10B for fire-rated access door assemblies installed vertically.
- 2. NFPA 288 for fire-rated access door assemblies installed horizontally.

2.2 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES FOR WALLS AND CEILINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Access Panel Solutions.
  - 2. Acudor Products, Inc.
  - 3. Alfab, Inc.
  - 4. Babcock-Davis.
  - 5. Cendrex Inc.
  - 6. Elmdor/Stoneman Manufacturing Co.; Div. of Acorn Engineering Co.
  - 7. Jensen Industries; Div. of Broan-Nutone, LLC.
  - 8. J. L. Industries, Inc.; Div. of Activar Construction Products Group.
  - 9. Karp Associates, Inc.
  - 10. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
  - 11. Maxam Metal Products Limited.
  - 12. Metropolitan Door Industries Corp.
  - 13. MIFAB, Inc.
  - 14. Milcor Inc.
  - 15. Nystrom, Inc.
  - 16. Williams Bros. Corporation of America (The).
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of access door and frame from single source from single manufacturer.
- D. Flush Access Doors with Concealed Flanges:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Assembly Description: Fabricate door to fit flush to frame. Provide frame with gypsum board beads for concealed flange installation.
  - 3. Locations: Wall and ceiling.
  - 4. Door Size: .
  - 5. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.060 inch (1.52 mm), 16 gage.
    - a. Finish: Factory prime.
  - 6. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.064 inch (1.63 mm), 16 gage.
    - a. Finish: Factory prime.
  - 7. Stainless-Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.062 inch (1.59 mm), 16 gage.
    - a. Finish: No. 4.
  - 8. Frame Material: Same material and thickness as door.
  - 9. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 10. Hardware: Lock.
- E. Fire-Rated, Flush Access Doors with Concealed Flanges:
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Indicated on Drawings.

2. Assembly Description: Fabricate door to fit flush to frame, with a core of mineral-fiber insulation enclosed in sheet metal. Provide self-latching door with automatic closer and interior latch release. Provide frame with gypsum board beads for concealed flange installation.
3. Locations: Wall and ceiling.
4. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that of adjacent construction.
5. Temperature-Rise Rating: 450 deg F (250 deg C) at the end of 30 minutes or per authority having jurisdiction.
6. Uncoated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.036 inch (0.91 mm), 20 gage.
  - a. Finish: Factory prime.
7. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.040 inch (1.02 mm), 20 gage.
  - a. Finish: Factory prime.
8. Stainless-Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.038 inch (0.95 mm), 20 gage.
  - a. Finish: No. 2b.
9. Frame Material: Same material, thickness, and finish as door.
10. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard.
11. Hardware: Lock.

F. Hardware:

1. Latch: indicated in schedule.
2. Lock: As indicated in schedule.
  - a. Lock Preparation: Prepare door panel to accept cylinder specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware."

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- B. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or D.
- C. Steel Sheet: Uncoated or electrolytic zinc coated, ASTM A 879/A 879M, with cold-rolled steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), exposed.
- D. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60 (Z180) or A60 (ZF180) metallic coating.
- E. Rolled-Stainless-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 793, manufacturer's standard finish.
- F. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bars: ASTM A 666, Type 304 or Type 316. Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines or blend into finish.
- G. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T6.
- H. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, Alloy 6061-T6.

- I. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with not less than strength and durability properties of Alloy 5005-H15; with minimum sheet thickness according to ANSI H35.2 (ANSI H35.2M).
- J. Frame Anchors: Same type as door face.
- K. Inserts, Bolts, and Anchor Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.
- B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
- C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access doors to types of supports indicated.
  - 1. For concealed flanges with drywall bead, provide edge trim for gypsum board and gypsum base securely attached to perimeter of frames.
  - 2. For concealed flanges with plaster bead for full-bed plaster applications, provide zinc-coated expanded metal lath and exposed casing bead welded to perimeter of frames.
  - 3. Provide mounting holes in frames for attachment of units to metal or wood framing.
  - 4. Provide mounting holes in frame for attachment of masonry anchors.
- D. Recessed Access Doors: Form face of panel to provide recess for application of applied finish. Reinforce panel as required to prevent buckling.
  - 1. For recessed doors with plaster infill, provide self-furring expanded metal lath attached to door panel.
- E. Latching Mechanisms: Furnish number required to hold doors in flush, smooth plane when closed.
  - 1. For cylinder locks, furnish two keys per lock and key all locks alike.
  - 2. For recessed panel doors, provide access sleeves for each locking device. Furnish plastic grommets and install in holes cut through finish.
- F. Extruded Aluminum: After fabrication, apply manufacturer's standard protective coating on aluminum that will come in contact with concrete.

## 2.5 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Steel and Metallic-Coated-Steel Finishes:

1. Factory Prime: Apply manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.
2. Factory Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry-film thickness of 1 mil (0.025 mm) for topcoat.

E. Stainless-Steel Finishes:

1. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
2. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
  - a. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
  - b. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
  - c. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.
3. Bright, Cold-Rolled, Unpolished Finish: No. 2B.

F. Aluminum Finishes:

1. Mill finish.
2. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.
- B. Install doors flush with adjacent finish surfaces or recessed to receive finish material.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust doors and hardware, after installation, for proper operation.
- B. Remove and replace doors and frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise damaged.

END OF SECTION 083113

SECTION 083300 - VERTICAL ACTING FIRE & SMOKE RATED DOORS WITH INTEGRAL EGRESS DOORS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide all materials, labor, equipment and services necessary to furnish, deliver and install all work under this section as shown on the contract documents, specified herein, and as specified by the job conditions.

1.2 DESCRIPTION

- A. Related work specified elsewhere:

1. Metal Fabrication.	Section 055000
2. Rough Carpentry.	Section 061000
3. Access Panels & Doors:	Section 083100
4. Painting:	Section 099100
5. Electrical:	Division 26

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Procedures: Furnish submittals in accordance with the general requirements specified.
- B. Shop Drawing: Furnish shop drawings for architect's approval. Include elevations, sections, and details indicating dimensions, materials, finishes, conditions for anchorage and support of each door.
- C. Certifications:
  - 1. Submit manufacturer's Underwriters Laboratories (UL), Warnock Hersey (WH) or Factory Mutual Research (FM) laboratory test report verifying product compliance in accordance with the required fire and smoke ratings.
  - 2. Submit manufacturer's Code Compliance Research Report published by an independent third-party testing agency that is certified by the International Accreditation Service confirming compliance of the fire door assembly in accordance with the International Building Code.
- D. Product Literature: Submit manufacturer's technical literature describing the product to be used under this section.
- E. Maintenance and Operating Manuals: Furnish complete manuals describing the materials, devices and procedures to be followed in operating and maintaining all doors under this section. Include manufacturer's brochures and parts lists describing the actual materials used in the product.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire & Smoke Rated Assemblies: Provide all doors with fire and smoke resistance rating required to comply with governing regulations which are inspected, tested, listed and labeled by UL, WH or FM and complying with NFPA 80 for class of opening. Provide units tested in accordance with the requirements of UL 10B, UL 1784, NFPA 252, ASTM E-152. Provide testing laboratory label permanently fastened to each fire and smoke door assembly.
- B. Regulatory Requirements:
  - 1. Comply with applicable requirements of the laws, codes, ordinances and regulations of federal, state and municipal authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Listed under a certified Code Compliance Research Report in accordance with the applicable sections of the International Building Code.
- C. Testing: Provide documentation from a certified testing agency that the fire door's self-closing governor mechanism and fire door operator have been tested for a minimum of 50,000 cycles and 500 self closing trip tests.

- D. Manufacturer Requirements: Door manufacturer shall have been in the business of and have experience in manufacturing the type of product covered under this specification section as well as giving credible service for a minimum of five (5) years. Provide list of at least ten (10) completed projects which include the products covered under this section.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. General: Deliver and store materials in manufacturer's original packaging, labeled to show name, brand and type. Store materials in a protected dry location off the ground in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Door Warranty: Provide Two (2) Year Warranty signed by the manufacturer and installer agreeing to repair or replace work which has failed as a result of defects in materials or workmanship. Upon notification within the warranty period, such defects shall be repaired at no cost to the owner.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 VERTICAL ACTING FIRE & SMOKE RATED DOORS WITH INTEGRAL EGRESS DOORS

- A. Manufacturer: Vertical acting fire and smoke rated doors with integral egress doors shall be the Safescape model T5000-PC as manufactured by McKeon Door Company.

#### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Curtain: Shall be assembled of interlocking galvanized steel slats, cold rolled. Slats shall have endlocks locking each end of alternate slats to act as a wearing surface, and maintain slat alignment. Curtain shall be 20 gauge minimum or gauge required by UL, WH or FM which ever is greater.
  - 1. Slats: Shall be of a cross section not less than 3" wide by 7/8" deep.
- B. Swinging Egress Doors: Incorporated within the curtain shall be swinging type steel doors in quantities as indicated in the contract drawings designed and built as an integral part of the fire door's assembly.
  - 1. Door Frames: Shall be an all-steel unit type ASTM A366 hot rolled steel, 14 gauge with the same labeled fire resistance rating as specified for door.
  - 2. Door Assemblies: Complete with doors, hinges, and locking channel mechanisms. 20 gauge stretcher leveled, electro galvanized and bonderized steel faces.
  - 3. Hardware:
    - a. Fire Exit Devices: Flush mounted integral type fire exit devices on one face and with pull handles on opposite face of the swinging doors.
    - b. Closers: Shall be concealed type.
- C. Guides: Each guide assembly shall be fabricated of a minimum 4" x 4" steel support angle or tube, a 2" x 3" inner guide angle and a 3" x 3" outer guide angle. Support tubes shall be constructed with a slip joint at the top to provide for thermal expansion and guide angles shall be provided with slotted holes to allow for thermal expansion.
  - 1. Provide internal, fully concealed UL Classified smoke seals located within each guide assembly. Externally mounted smoke seals shall not be acceptable.
- D. Mounting Brackets: Fabricated of hot rolled 3/16" steel plate minimum, brackets shall be provided to house ends of the counterbalance barrel assembly.

- E. Hood: Shall be provided to entirely enclose curtain and counterbalance barrel assembly. Hood shall be fabricated 22 gauge galvanized steel and designed to match brackets. Top and bottom shall be bent and reinforced for stiffness.
1. Provide UL Classified lintel smoke seals.
- F. Counterbalance Assembly: Door shall be counterbalanced by means of adjustable steel helical torsion springs attached to shaft enclosed in pipe with required mounting blocks or rings for attachment of curtain. Grease sealed bearings or self-lubricating graphite bearings shall be attached to the spring barrel which shall be fabricated of hot formed structural quality carbon steel seamless pipe.
- G. Electric Motor Operator: Fire door shall be provided with a compact power unit designed and built by the door manufacturer. Operator shall be equipped with an adjustable screw-type limit switch to break the circuit at termination of travel. High efficiency planetary gearing running in an oil bath, shall be furnished together with a centrifugal governor, magnetic operated brake and a fail-safe magnetic release device, completely housed to protect against damage, dust and moisture. An efficient overload protection device, which will break the power circuit and protect against damage to the motor windings shall be integral with the unit. Operator is to be housed in a NEMA type 1 enclosure.
1. Motor: Shall be intermediate duty, thermally protected, ball bearing type with a class A or better insulation. Horsepower of motor is to be 1/2hp minimum or of manufacturer's recommended size, which ever is greater.
  2. Starter: Shall be size "0" magnetic reversing starter, across the line type with mechanical and electrical interlocks, with 10 amp continuous rating and 24 volt control circuit.
  3. Reducer: Planetary gear type, 80% efficiency minimum.
  4. Brake: Magnetically activated, integral within the operator's housing.
  5. Control Station: Provide flush mount key switch control station marked open, close and stop.
- H. Self-Closing Mechanism: The fire door is to be designed with a centrifugal governor as an integral part of the operator's construction. The automatic release mechanism shall be activated by a fusible link, smoke detector or fire alarm. When activated the door is released and begins to close due to gravitational force. The speed of the door is governed by a centrifugal governor, designed to match the normal operating speed of the door, at a rate of not greater than 9" per second or less than 6" per second.
- I. Magnetic Release with 10 Second Time Delay: A fail-safe magnetic release device shall be built into the operator as an integral part of the release mechanism. When power is interrupted to the release mechanism by the smoke detector or fire alarm, the door shall begin to self-close. In the event of power failure the time delay shall prevent the fire door from closing for a period of 10 seconds. Once the 10 seconds have lapsed, the fire door shall self-close. Once power has been restored to the release mechanism the automatic reset time delay as well as the fire door shall automatically reset themselves.
- J. Obstruction Sensing Device: Provide photo electric sensing device to prevent the fire door from operating if an obstruction is located in the fire door's traveling path. In the event that the sensing device determines that there is an obstruction in the fire door's traveling path during the normal operation, the fire door shall remain in its current position. In the event the sensing device determines that an obstruction is located in the fire door's traveling path during the self-closing operation, the fire door shall begin to close and come to rest on the obstruction. Once the obstruction has been removed the fire door shall continue to the fully closed position.
- K. Easy Trip Test Feature: The fire door shall be designed so that it may be trip tested simply by cutting power to the operator. By turning the power switch off, the fire door shall self-close. Once the fire door has satisfactorily closed, it shall be reset simply by turning the power back on. No ladders or tools shall be needed to reset the fire door or the time delay unit.
- L. Finish: After completion of fabrication, clean all metal surfaces to remove dirt and chemically treat to provide for powder coat adhesion. Provide powder coat finish of color as selected by architect from manufacturer's standard RAL powder coat selection chart.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces and field conditions to which this work is to be performed and notify architect if conditions of surfaces exist which are detrimental to proper installation and timely completion of work.
- B. Verify all dimensions taken at job site affecting the work. Notify the architect in any instance where dimensions vary.
- C. Coordinate and schedule work under this section with work of other sections so as not to delay job progress.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Perform installation using only factory approved and certified representatives of the door manufacturer.
- B. Install door assemblies at locations shown in perfect alignment and elevation, plumb, level, straight and true.
- C. Adjust door installation to provide uniform clearances and smooth non-binding operation.
- D. Install wiring in accordance with applicable local codes and the National Electrical Code Standard. Materials shall be UL listed.
- E. Test door closing sequence when activated by the building's fire alarm system. Reset door after successful test.

3.3 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

- A. Protect installed work using adequate and suitable means during and after installation until accepted by owner.
- B. Remove, repair or replace materials which have been damaged in any way.
- C. Clean surfaces of grime and dirt using acceptable and recommended means and methods.

END OF SECTION 083300

## SECTION 083323 - OVERHEAD COILING DOORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Service doors.
- 2. Insulated service doors.
- 3. Fire-rated service doors.
- 4. Fire-rated, insulated service doors.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Division 26 Sections for electrical service and connections for powered operators and accessories.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design overhead coiling doors, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

- B. Structural Performance, Exterior Doors: Exterior overhead coiling doors shall withstand the wind loads, the effects of gravity loads, and loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to SEI/ASCE 7.

- 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.

- a. Basic Wind Speed: 120 mph.

- 2. Deflection Limits: Design overhead coiling doors to withstand design wind load without evidencing permanent deformation or disengagement of door components.

- C. Operability under Wind Load: Design overhead coiling doors to remain operable under design wind load, acting inward and outward.

- D. Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistance Performance: Provide impact-protective overhead coiling doors that pass missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests when tested according to ASTM E 1886 and ASTM E 1996.

- 1. Large Missile Test: For overhead coiling doors located within 30 feet (9.144 m) of grade.
- 2. Small Missile Test: For overhead coiling doors located more than 30 feet (9.144 m) above grade.

- E. Seismic Performance: Overhead coiling doors shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.

- 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the emergency-egress-door component will be fully operational after the seismic event."

- F. Operation Cycles: Provide overhead coiling door components and operators capable of operating for not less than number of cycles indicated for each door. One operation cycle is complete when a door is opened from the closed position to the fully open position and returned to the closed position.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of overhead coiling door and accessory. Include the following:
  - 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, profiles for slats, and finishes.
  - 2. Rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.
  - 3. For fire-rated doors, description of fire-release system including testing and resetting instructions.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each installation and for special components not dimensioned or detailed in manufacturer's product data. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 2. Show locations of replaceable fusible links.
  - 3. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's finish charts showing standard range of colors and textures available for units with factory-applied finishes.
  - 1. Include similar Samples of accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
  - 1. Curtain Slats: 12 inches (305 mm) long.
  - 2. Bottom Bar: 6 inches (150 mm) long.
  - 3. Guides: 6 inches (150 mm) long.
  - 4. Brackets: 6 inches (150 mm) square.
  - 5. Hood: 6 inches (150 mm) square.
  - 6. Laminate-Clad Counter Panel Product: 6 inches (150 mm) square; for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish; laminated to core.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For overhead coiling doors indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of seismic restraints.
  - 2. Summary of forces and loads on walls and jambs.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For overhead coiling doors, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
- C. Oversize Construction Certification: For door assemblies required to be fire-rated and that exceed size limitations of labeled assemblies.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For overhead coiling doors to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for both installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain overhead coiling doors from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 1. Obtain operators and controls from overhead coiling door manufacturer.
- C. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at as close to neutral pressure as possible according to NFPA 252.
  - 1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
  - 2. Temperature-Rise Limit: Where indicated and at vertical exit enclosures and exit passageways, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F (250 deg C) above ambient after thirty (30) minutes of standard fire-test exposure.
  - 3. Smoke Control: Where indicated and in corridors and smoke barriers, provide doors that are listed and labeled with the letter "S" on the fire-rating label by a qualified testing agency for smoke- and draft-control based on testing according to UL 1784; with maximum air-leakage rate of 3.0 cfm/sq. ft. (0.01524 cu. m/s x sq. m) of door opening at 0.10 inch wg (24.9 Pa) for both ambient and elevated temperature tests.
- D. Sound-Control Doors: Assemblies that have been fabricated and tested to control the passage of sound and have minimum certified STC rating according to ASTM E 413.
- E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- F. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 DOOR CURTAIN MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION

- A. Door Curtains: Fabricate overhead coiling-door curtain of interlocking metal slats, designed to withstand wind loading indicated, in a continuous length for width of door without splices. Unless otherwise indicated, provide slats of thickness and mechanical properties recommended by door manufacturer for performance, size, and type of door indicated, and as follows:
  - 1. Steel Door Curtain Slats: Zinc-coated (galvanized), cold-rolled structural steel sheet; complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G90 (Z275) zinc coating; nominal sheet thickness (coated) of 0.028 inch (0.71 mm) and as required to meet requirements.
  - 2. Stainless-Steel Door Curtain Slats: ASTM A 666, Type 304; sheet thickness of 0.025 inch (0.64 mm) and as required to meet requirements.

3. Aluminum Door Curtain Slats: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M) sheet or ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M) extrusions, alloy and temper standard with manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated; thickness of 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) and as required to meet requirements.
  4. Vision-Panel Glazing: Manufacturer's standard clear glazing, fabricated from transparent acrylic sheet or fire-protection rated glass as required for type of door; set in glazing channel secured to curtain slats.
  5. Insulation: Fill slats for insulated doors with manufacturer's standard thermal insulation complying with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, according to ASTM E 84. Enclose insulation completely within slat faces.
  6. Metal Interior Curtain-Slat Facing: Match metal of exterior curtain-slat face.
  7. Plastic Interior Curtain-Slat Facing: Extruded PVC plastic with maximum flame-spread index of per index authority having jurisdiction and smoke-developed index of 450, according to ASTM E 84.
  8. Gasket Seal: Provide insulated slats with manufacturer's standard interior-to-exterior thermal break or with continuous gaskets between slats.
- B. Endlocks and Windlocks for Service Doors: Malleable-iron casings galvanized after fabrication, secured to curtain slats with galvanized rivets or high-strength nylon. Provide locks on not less than alternate curtain slats for curtain alignment and resistance against lateral movement.
- C. Endlocks for Counter Doors: Manufacturer's standard locks on not less than alternate curtain slats for curtain alignment and resistance against lateral movement.
- D. Bottom Bar for Service Doors: Consisting of two angles, each not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 by 1/8 inch (38 by 38 by 3 mm) thick; fabricated from manufacturer's standard hot-dip galvanized steel, stainless steel, or aluminum extrusions to match curtain slats and finish.
- E. Bottom Bar for Counter Doors: Manufacturer's standard continuous channel or tubular shape, fabricated from manufacturer's standard hot-dip galvanized steel, stainless steel, or aluminum extrusions to match curtain slats and finish.
- F. Astragal for Interior Doors: Equip each door bottom bar with a replaceable, adjustable, continuous, compressible gasket of flexible vinyl, rubber, or neoprene as a cushion bumper.
- G. Curtain Jamb Guides: Manufacturer's standard angles or channels and angles of same material and finish as curtain slats unless otherwise indicated, with sufficient depth and strength to retain curtain, to allow curtain to operate smoothly, and to withstand loading. Slot bolt holes for guide adjustment. Provide removable stops on guides to prevent overtravel of curtain, and a continuous bar for holding windlocks.
1. Removable Posts and Jamb Guides for Counter Doors: Manufacturer's standard.
- H. Pass Door(s): Door and frame assembly constructed integrally with the coiling-door assembly and bearing the same fire rating. Complying with egress and accessibility requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Door Frame and Integral Jamb Guide: Fabricate of angles or channels and angles of same material and finish as curtain slats unless otherwise indicated, with sufficient depth and strength to retain curtain, to allow curtain to operate smoothly, and to withstand loading.
  2. Hinged Frame: Hinged pass door and frame that swings out of the way, as a unit, to allow use of the full coiling-door opening width. One jamb of the pass-door frame is hinged and the other jamb includes a guide for the lower, narrower part of the coiling-door curtain.
  3. Rigid Frame: Rigid pass door and frame that are built into the rigid, lower part of the door curtain and that raise with the curtain.
  4. Locking Hardware:

- a. As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
  - b. Lock Cylinders: Provide cylinders standard with manufacturer and keyed to building keying system.
  - c. Keys: Two for each cylinder.
5. Thresholds: Equip pass doors with integral thresholds that comply with egress and accessibility requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

## 2.2 HOOD

- A. General: Form sheet metal hood to entirely enclose coiled curtain and operating mechanism at opening head. Contour to fit end brackets to which hood is attached. Roll and reinforce top and bottom edges for stiffness. Form closed ends for surface-mounted hoods and fascia for any portion of between-jamb mounting that projects beyond wall face. Equip hood with intermediate support brackets as required to prevent sagging.
1. Galvanized Steel: Nominal 0.028-inch- (0.71-mm-) thick, hot-dip galvanized steel sheet with G90 (Z275) zinc coating, complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  2. Stainless Steel: 0.025-inch- (0.64-mm-) thick stainless-steel sheet, Type 304, complying with ASTM A 666.
  3. Aluminum: 0.040-inch- (1.02-mm-) thick aluminum sheet complying with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), of alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.
  4. Include automatic drop baffle on fire-rated doors to guard against passage of smoke or flame.
  5. Exterior-Mounted Doors: Fabricate hood to act as weather protection and with a perimeter sealant-joint-bead profile for applying joint sealant.

## 2.3 LOCKING DEVICES

- A. Slide Bolt: Fabricate with side-locking bolts to engage through slots in tracks for locking by padlock, located on both left and right jamb sides, operable from coil side.
- B. Locking Device Assembly: Fabricate with cylinder lock, spring-loaded dead bolt, operating handle, cam plate, and adjustable locking bars to engage through slots in tracks.
1. Lock Cylinders: Provide cylinders standard with manufacturer and keyed to building keying system.
  2. Keys: Provide Two (2) for each cylinder.
- C. Chain Lock Keeper: Suitable for padlock.
- D. Safety Interlock Switch: Equip power-operated doors with safety interlock switch to disengage power supply when door is locked.

## 2.4 CURTAIN ACCESSORIES

- A. Smoke Seals: Equip each fire-rated door with smoke-seal perimeter gaskets for smoke and draft control as required for door listing and labeling by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Weatherseals: Equip each exterior door with weather-stripping gaskets fitted to entire perimeter of door for a weathertight installation, unless otherwise indicated.
1. At door head, use 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) thick, replaceable, continuous sheet secured to inside of hood.

2. At door jambs, use replaceable, adjustable, continuous, flexible, 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) thick seals of flexible vinyl, rubber, or neoprene.
- C. Push/Pull Handles: Equip each push-up-operated or emergency-operated door with lifting handles on each side of door, finished to match door.
1. Provide pull-down straps or pole hooks for doors more than 84 inches (2130 mm) high.
- D. Automatic-Closing Device for Fire-Rated Doors: Equip each fire-rated door with an automatic-closing device that is inoperative during normal door operations and that has a governor unit complying with NFPA 80 and an easily tested and reset release mechanism designed to be activated by the following:
1. Replaceable fusible links with temperature rise and melting point of 165 deg F (74 deg C) interconnected and mounted on both sides of door opening.
  2. Manufacturer's standard UL-labeled smoke detector and door-holder-release devices.
  3. Manufacturer's standard UL-labeled heat detector and door-holder-release devices.
  4. Building fire-detection and -alarm systems and manufacturer's standard door-holder-release devices.

## 2.5 COUNTERBALANCING MECHANISM

- A. General: Counterbalance doors by means of manufacturer's standard mechanism with an adjustable-tension, steel helical torsion spring mounted around a steel shaft and contained in a spring barrel connected to top of curtain with barrel rings. Use grease-sealed bearings or self-lubricating graphite bearings for rotating members.
- B. Counterbalance Barrel: Fabricate spring barrel of manufacturer's standard hot-formed, structural-quality, welded or seamless carbon-steel pipe, of sufficient diameter and wall thickness to support rolled-up curtain without distortion of slats and to limit barrel deflection to not more than 0.03 in./ft. (2.5 mm/m) of span under full load.
- C. Spring Balance: One or more oil-tempered, heat-treated steel helical torsion springs. Size springs to counterbalance weight of curtain, with uniform adjustment accessible from outside barrel. Secure ends of springs to barrel and shaft with cast-steel barrel plugs.
- D. Torsion Rod for Counterbalance Shaft: Fabricate of manufacturer's standard cold-rolled steel, sized to hold fixed spring ends and carry torsional load.
- E. Brackets: Manufacturer's standard mounting brackets of either cast iron or cold-rolled steel plate.

## 2.6 MANUAL DOOR OPERATORS

- A. Equip door with manufacturer's recommended manual door operator unless another type of door operator is indicated.
- B. Push-up Door Operation: Design counterbalance mechanism so required lift or pull for door operation does not exceed 25 lbf (111 N).
- C. Chain-Hoist Operator: Consisting of endless steel hand chain, chain-pocket wheel and guard, and gear-reduction unit with a maximum 25 lbf (111 N) force for door operation. Provide alloy-steel hand chain with chain holder secured to operator guide.
- D. Crank Operator: Consisting of crank and crank gearbox, steel crank drive shaft, and gear-reduction unit, of type indicated. Size gears to require not more than 25 lbf (111 N) force to turn crank. Fabricate

gearbox to be oil tight and to completely enclose operating mechanism. Provide manufacturer's standard crank-locking device.

## 2.7 ELECTRIC DOOR OPERATORS

- A. General: Electric door operator assembly of size and capacity recommended and provided by door manufacturer for door and operation-cycles requirement specified, with electric motor and factory-prewired motor controls, starter, gear-reduction unit, solenoid-operated brake, clutch, remote-control stations, control devices, integral gearing for locking door, and accessories required for proper operation.
1. Comply with NFPA 70.
  2. Provide control equipment complying with NEMA ICS 1, NEMA ICS 2, and NEMA ICS 6, with NFPA 70 Class 2 control circuit, maximum 24 V, ac or dc.
- B. Usage Classification: Electric operator and components capable of operating for not less than number of cycles per hour indicated for each door.
- C. Door Operator Location(s): Operator location indicated for each door.
1. Top-of-Hood Mounted: Operator is mounted to the right or left door head plate with the operator on top of the door-hood assembly and connected to the door drive shaft with drive chain and sprockets. Headroom is required for this type of mounting.
  2. Front-of-Hood Mounted: Operator is mounted to the right or left door head plate with the operator on coil side of the door-hood assembly and connected to the door drive shaft with drive chain and sprockets. Front clearance is required for this type of mounting.
  3. Wall Mounted: Operator is mounted to the inside front wall on the left or right side of door and connected to door drive shaft with drive chain and sprockets. Side room is required for this type of mounting. Wall mounted operator can also be mounted above or below shaft; if above shaft, headroom is required.
  4. Bench Mounted: Operator is mounted to the right or left door head plate and connected to the door drive shaft with drive chain and sprockets. Side room is required for this type of mounting.
  5. Through-Wall Mounted: Operator is mounted on other side of wall from coil side of door.
- D. Electric Motors: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Division 11 Section "Common Motor Requirements for Equipment" unless otherwise indicated.
1. Motor Type and Controller: Reversible motor and controller (disconnect switch) for motor exposure indicated.
  2. Motor Size: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough to start, accelerate, and operate door in either direction from any position, at a speed not less than 8 in./sec. (203 mm/s) and not more than 12 in./sec. (305 mm/s), without exceeding nameplate ratings or service factor.
  3. Operating Controls, Controllers (Disconnect Switches), Wiring Devices, and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Coordinate wiring requirements and electrical characteristics of motors and other electrical devices with building electrical system and each location where installed.
- E. Limit Switches: Equip each motorized door with adjustable switches interlocked with motor controls and set to automatically stop door at fully opened and fully closed positions.
- F. Obstruction Detection Device: Equip motorized door with indicated external automatic safety sensor capable of protecting full width of door opening. For non-fire-rated doors, activation of device immediately stops and reverses downward door travel. For fire-rated doors, activation delays closing.

1. Photoelectric Sensor: Manufacturer's standard system designed to detect an obstruction in door opening without contact between door and obstruction.
    - a. Self-Monitoring Type: Designed to interface with door operator control circuit to detect damage to or disconnection of sensing device. When self-monitoring feature is activated, door closes only with sustained pressure on close button.
  2. Sensor Edge: Automatic safety sensor edge, located within astragal or weather stripping mounted to bottom bar. Contact with sensor activates device. Connect to control circuit using manufacturer's standard take-up reel or self-coiling cable.
    - a. Self-Monitoring Type: Four-wire configured device designed to interface with door operator control circuit to detect damage to or disconnection of sensor edge.
  - G. Remote-Control Station: Momentary-contact, three-button control station with push-button controls labeled "Open," "Close," and "Stop."
    1. Interior units, full-guarded, surface-mounted, heavy-duty type, with general-purpose NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure.
    2. Exterior units, full-guarded, standard-duty, surface-mounted, weatherproof type, NEMA ICS 6, Type 4 enclosure, key operated.
  - H. Emergency Manual Operation: Equip each electrically powered door with capability for emergency manual operation. Design manual mechanism so required force for door operation does not exceed 25 lbf (111 N).
  - I. Emergency Operation Disconnect Device: Equip operator with hand-operated disconnect mechanism for automatically engaging manual operator and releasing brake for emergency manual operation while disconnecting motor without affecting timing of limit switch. Mount mechanism so it is accessible from floor level. Include interlock device to automatically prevent motor from operating when emergency operator is engaged.
  - J. Motor Removal: Design operator so motor may be removed without disturbing limit-switch adjustment and without affecting emergency manual operation.
  - K. Audible and Visual Signals: Audible alarm and visual indicator lights in compliance with regulatory requirements for accessibility.
  - L. Radio-Control System: Consisting of the following:
    1. Three-channel universal coaxial receiver to open, close, and stop door; two per operator.
    2. Multifunction remote control.
    3. Remote-antenna mounting kit.
- 2.8 DOOR ASSEMBLY
- A. Insulated Service Door: Overhead coiling door formed with curtain of interlocking metal slats.
    1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
      - a. ACME Rolling Doors.
      - b. Alpine Overhead Doors, Inc.

- c. AlumaTek, Inc.
- d. C.H.I. Overhead Doors.
- e. City-Gates.
- f. Cookson Company.
- g. Cornell Iron Works, Inc.
- h. Dynamic Closures Corp.
- i. Lawrence Roll-Up Doors, Inc.
- j. Mahon Door Corporation.
- k. McKeon Rolling Steel Door Company, Inc.
- l. Metro Door.
- m. Overhead Door Corporation.
- n. QMI Security Solutions.
- o. Raynor.
- p. Southwestern Steel Rolling Door Co.
- q. Wayne-Dalton Corp.
- r. Windsor Door.

B. Operation Cycles:

- 1. Include tamperproof cycle counter.

C. STC Rating: 26.

D. Minimum R-Value – R-4.75 at Exterior Door Openings.

2.9 FIRE-RATED DOOR ASSEMBLY

A. Fire-Rated Insulated Service Door: Overhead fire-rated coiling door formed with curtain of interlocking metal slats.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

- a. ACME Rolling Doors.
- b. Alpine Overhead Doors, Inc.
- c. AlumaTek, Inc.
- d. C.H.I. Overhead Doors.
- e. City-Gates.
- f. Cookson Company.
- g. Cornell Iron Works, Inc.
- h. Lawrence Roll-Up Doors, Inc.
- i. Mahon Door Corporation.
- j. McKeon Rolling Steel Door Company, Inc.
- k. Overhead Door Corporation.
- l. Raynor.
- m. Southwestern Steel Rolling Door Co.
- n. Wayne-Dalton Corp.
- o. Windsor Door.

B. Operation Cycles:

- 1. Include tamperproof cycle counter.

- C. Fire Rating: per drawings with temperature-rise limit and with smoke control.
- D. Minimum R-Value – R-4.75 at Exterior Door Openings.
- E. STC Rating: 27.
- F. Door Curtain Material:
  - 1. Interior: Galvanized steel
  - 2. Exterior: Stainless steel.
- G. Door Curtain Slats: Flat profile slats.
  - 1. Insulated-Slat Interior Facing: Metal.
- H. Curtain Jamb Guides: Galvanized steel or Stainless steel with exposed finish matching curtain slats.
- I. Hood: Match curtain material and finish.
  - 1. Shape: As shown on Drawings Insert shape.
  - 2. Mounting: As shown on Drawings.
- J. Integral Frame, Hood, and Fascia for Counter Door: Stainless steel.
  - 1. Mounting: As shown on Drawings.
- K. Locking Devices: Equip door with locking device assembly and chain lock keeper.
- L. Electric Door Operator:
  - 1. Usage Classification: Heavy duty, 60 to 90 cycles per hour.
  - 2. Operator Location: As shown on Drawings.
  - 3. Motor Exposure: Exterior, wet, and humid.
  - 4. Emergency Manual Operation: Crank type.
  - 5. Obstruction Detection Device: Automatic photoelectric sensor ; self-monitoring type.
    - a. Sensor Edge Bulb Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
  - 6. Remote-Control Station: Where required by Owner/Tenant.
  - 7. Other Equipment: Audible and visual signals and Radio-control system.
- M. Door Finish:
  - 1. Interior Doors:
    - a. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coated Finish: Color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.
  - 2. Exterior Doors:
    - a. Stainless-Steel Finish: No. 2B (bright, cold rolled).
  - 3. Interior Curtain-Slat Facing: Match finish of exterior curtain-slat face.

## 2.10 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.11 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611.

## 2.12 STEEL AND GALVANIZED-STEEL FINISHES

- A. Factory Prime Finish: Manufacturer's standard primer, compatible with field-applied finish. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, pretreatment, application, and minimum dry film thickness.
- B. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, pretreatment, application, and minimum dry film thickness.

## 2.13 STAINLESS-STEEL FINISHES

- A. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
- B. Bright, Cold-Rolled, Unpolished Finish: No. 2B.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrate construction and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine locations of electrical connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install overhead coiling doors and operating equipment complete with necessary hardware, anchors, inserts, hangers, and equipment supports; according to manufacturer's written instructions and as specified.
- B. Install overhead coiling doors, hoods, and operators at the mounting locations indicated for each door.
- C. Accessibility: Install overhead coiling doors, switches, and controls along accessible routes in compliance with regulatory requirements for accessibility.
- D. Fire-Rated Doors: Install according to NFPA 80.
- E. Smoke-Control Doors: Install according to NFPA 80 and NFPA 105.

3.3 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
  - 1. Perform installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  - 3. Test door closing when activated by detector or alarm-connected fire-release system. Reset door-closing mechanism after successful test.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust hardware and moving parts to function smoothly so that doors operate easily, free of warp, twist, or distortion.
- B. Lubricate bearings and sliding parts as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Adjust seals to provide weathertight fit around entire perimeter.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain overhead coiling doors.

END OF SECTION 083323

SECTION 084113 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior storefront framing.
2. Storefront framing for window walls.
3. Storefront framing for punched openings.
4. Exterior manual-swing entrance doors and door-frame units.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 08 Section "Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls" for curtain-wall systems that mechanically retain glazing on four sides.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ADA/ABA Accessibility Guidelines: U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disability Act (ADA) and Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities."

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Aluminum-framed systems shall withstand the effects of the following performance requirements without exceeding performance criteria or failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction:

1. Movements of supporting structure indicated on Drawings including, but not limited to, story drift and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
2. Dimensional tolerances of building frame and other adjacent construction.
3. Failure includes the following:
  - a. Deflection exceeding specified limits.
  - b. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
  - c. Framing members transferring stresses, including those caused by thermal and structural movements to glazing.
  - d. Glazing-to-glazing contact.
  - e. Noise or vibration created by wind and by thermal and structural movements.
  - f. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
  - g. Sealant failure.
  - h. Failure of operating units.

- B. Delegated Design: Design aluminum-framed systems, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

C. Structural Loads:

1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings..
    - a. Basic Wind Speed: 120 mph.
  2. Seismic Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
  3. Blast Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Deflection of Framing Members:
1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to edge of glass in a direction perpendicular to glass plane shall not exceed  $L/175$  of the glass edge length for each individual glazing lite or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch (19 mm), whichever is less.
  2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to amount not exceeding that which reduces glazing bite to less than 75 percent of design dimension and that which reduces edge clearance between framing members and glazing or other fixed components directly below them to less than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) and clearance between members and operable units directly below them to less than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).
- E. Structural-Test Performance: Provide aluminum-framed systems tested according to ASTM E 330 as follows:
1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, systems do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
  2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, systems, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, and permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
  3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not fewer than 10 seconds.
- F. Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistance Performance: Provide aluminum-framed systems that pass missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests when tested according to ASTM E 1886 and testing information in ASTM E 1996 or AAMA 506.
1. Large-Missile Impact: For aluminum-framed systems located within 30 feet (9.1 m) of grade.
  2. Small-Missile Impact: For aluminum-framed systems located more than 30 feet (9.1 m) above grade.
- G. Story Drift: Provide aluminum-framed systems that accommodate design displacement of adjacent stories indicated.
1. Design Displacement: As indicated on Drawings.
  2. Test Performance: Meet criteria for passing, based on building occupancy type, when tested according to AAMA 501.4 at design displacement and 1.5 times design displacement.
- H. Air Infiltration: Provide aluminum-framed systems with maximum air leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas of 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. (0.03 L/s per sq. m) of fixed wall area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. (75 Pa).
- I. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Provide aluminum-framed systems that do not evidence water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to ASTM E 331 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).
- J. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: Provide aluminum-framed systems that do not evidence water leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to AAMA 501.1 under

dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).

1. Maximum Water Leakage: No uncontrolled water penetrating aluminum-framed systems or water appearing on systems' normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water leakage does not include water controlled by flashing and gutters that is drained to exterior and water that cannot damage adjacent materials or finishes.
- K. Thermal Movements: Provide aluminum-framed systems that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
  2. Test Performance: No buckling; stress on glass; sealant failure; excess stress on framing, anchors, and fasteners; or reduction of performance when tested according to AAMA 501.5.
    - a. High Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: That which produces an exterior metal-surface temperature of 180 deg F (82 deg C).
    - b. Low Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C).
  3. Interior Ambient-Air Temperature: 75 deg F (24 deg C).
- L. Condensation Resistance: Provide aluminum-framed systems with fixed glazing and framing areas having condensation-resistance factor (CRF) of not less than 53 when tested according to AAMA 1503.
- M. Thermal Conductance: Provide aluminum-framed systems with fixed glazing and framing areas having an average U-factor of not more than 0.57 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (3.23 W/sq. m x K) when tested according to AAMA 1503.
- N. Sound Transmission: Provide aluminum-framed systems with fixed glazing and framing areas having the following sound-transmission characteristics:
1. Sound Transmission Class (STC): Minimum 35 STC when tested for laboratory sound transmission loss according to ASTM E 90 and determined by ASTM E 413.
  2. Outdoor-Indoor Transmission Class (OITC): Minimum 34 OITC when tested for laboratory sound transmission loss according to ASTM E 90 and determined by ASTM E 1332.
- O. Structural Sealant: Capable of withstanding tensile and shear stresses imposed by aluminum-framed systems without failing adhesively or cohesively. When tested for preconstruction adhesion and compatibility, cohesive failure of sealant shall occur before adhesive failure.
1. Adhesive failure occurs when sealant pulls away from substrate cleanly, leaving no sealant material behind.
  2. Cohesive failure occurs when sealant breaks or tears within itself but does not separate from each substrate because sealant-to-substrate bond strength exceeds sealant's internal strength.
- P. Structural-Sealant Joints: Designed to produce tensile or shear stress of less than 20 psi (138 kPa).
- 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for aluminum-framed systems.

- B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Include details of provisions for system expansion and contraction and for drainage of moisture in the system to the exterior.
  - 2. For entrance doors, include hardware schedule and indicate operating hardware types, functions, quantities, and locations.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- E. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed systems, made from 12-inch (300-mm) lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:
  - 1. Joinery, including concealed welds.
  - 2. Anchorage.
  - 3. Expansion provisions.
  - 4. Glazing.
  - 5. Flashing and drainage.
- F. Other Action Submittals:
  - 1. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of entrance door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate final entrance door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of entrance door hardware.
- G. Delegated-Design Submittal: For aluminum-framed systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of aluminum-framed systems.
  - 2. Include design calculations.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and testing agency.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For aluminum-framed systems, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Preconstruction Test Reports: For sealant.
- E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for aluminum-framed systems, indicating compliance with performance requirements.
- F. Source quality-control reports.
- G. Quality-Control Program for Structural-Sealant-Glazed System: Include reports.

H. Field quality-control reports.

I. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed systems to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 699 for testing indicated.

C. Engineering Responsibility: Prepare data for aluminum-framed systems, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in systems similar to those indicated for this Project.

D. Quality-Control Program for Structural-Sealant-Glazed System: Develop quality control program specifically for Project. Document quality-control procedures and verify results for aluminum-framed systems. Comply with ASTM C 1401 recommendations including, but not limited to, system material-qualification procedures, preconstruction sealant-testing program, procedures for system fabrication and installation, and intervals of reviews and checks.

E. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for systems' aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.

1. Do not revise intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If revisions are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

F. Preconstruction Sealant Testing: For structural-sealant-glazed systems, perform sealant manufacturer's standard tests for compatibility with and adhesion of each material that will come in contact with sealants and each condition required by aluminum-framed systems.

1. Test a minimum five samples each of metal, glazing, and other material.

2. Prepare samples using techniques and primers required for installed systems.

3. For materials that fail tests, determine corrective measures necessary to prepare each material to ensure compatibility with and adhesion of sealants including, but not limited to, specially formulated primers. After performing these corrective measures on the minimum number of samples required for each material, retest materials.

G. Accessible Entrances: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

H. Source Limitations for Aluminum-Framed Systems: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.

I. Structural-Sealant Glazing: Comply with ASTM C 1401, "Guide for Structural Sealant Glazing" for design and installation of structural-sealant-glazed systems.

- J. Structural-Sealant Joints: Design reviewed and approved by structural-sealant manufacturer.
- K. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
- L. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
  - 2. Field testing shall be performed on mockups according to requirements in "Field Quality Control" Article.
  - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 4. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- M. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of structural supports for aluminum-framed systems by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed systems that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
    - b. Noise or vibration caused by thermal movements.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
    - d. Adhesive or cohesive sealant failures.
    - e. Water leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas.
    - f. Failure of operating components.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Ten (10) years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components on which finishes do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Warranty does not include normal weathering.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Twenty (20) years from date of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.11 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Entrance Door Hardware:
  - 1. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of entrance door hardware.
  - 2. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide six months' full maintenance by skilled employees of entrance door hardware Installer. Include quarterly

preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper entrance door hardware operation at rated speed and capacity. Provide parts and supplies the same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original equipment.

B. Structural-Sealant-Glazed Systems:

1. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of structural-sealant-glazed system Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement to ensure long-term performance and durability of structural-sealant-glazed system as required for proper entrance door hardware operation at rated speed and capacity. Provide parts and supplies the same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original system.
2. Continuing Maintenance Proposal: From Installer to Owner, in the form of a standard yearly (or other period) maintenance agreement, starting on date initial maintenance service is concluded. State services, obligations, conditions, and terms for agreement period and for future renewal options.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  1. Arcadia, Inc.
  2. Arch Aluminum & Glass Co., Inc.
  3. CMI Architectural
  4. Commercial Architectural Products, Inc.
  5. EFCO Corporation.
  6. Kawneer North America; an Alcoa company.
  7. Leed Himmel Industries, Inc.
  8. Pittco Architectural Metals, Inc.
  9. TRACO.
  10. Tubelite.
  11. United States Aluminum.
  12. Vistawall Architectural Products; The Vistawall Group; a Bluescope Steel company.
  13. YKK AP America Inc.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
  1. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M).
  2. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M).
  3. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429.
  4. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
  5. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: AWS A5.10/A5.10M.
- B. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer, complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select

surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.

1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

## 2.3 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's standard extruded-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
  1. Construction: Thermally broken.
  2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
  3. Glazing Plane: As indicated.
- B. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- C. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
  1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
  2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
  3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, finished to match framing system , fabricated from stainless steel.
- D. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts, complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- E. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.
- F. Framing System Gaskets and Sealants: Manufacturer's standard, recommended by manufacturer for joint type.

## 2.4 GLAZING SYSTEMS

- A. Glazing: As specified in Division 08 Section "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard compression types; replaceable, molded or extruded, of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal.
- C. Spacers and Setting Blocks: Manufacturer's standard elastomeric type.
- D. Bond-Breaker Tape: Manufacturer's standard TFE-fluorocarbon or polyethylene material to which sealants will not develop adhesion.
- E. Glazing Sealants: For structural-sealant-glazed systems, as recommended by manufacturer for joint type, and as follows:
  1. Structural Sealant: ASTM C 1184, single-component neutral-curing silicone formulation that is compatible with system components with which it comes in contact, specifically formulated and

tested for use as structural sealant and approved by a structural-sealant manufacturer for use in aluminum-framed systems indicated.

- a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range of colors.
2. Weatherseal Sealant: ASTM C 920 for Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses NT, G, A, and O; single-component neutral-curing formulation that is compatible with structural sealant and other system components with which it comes in contact; recommended by structural-sealant, weatherseal-sealant, and aluminum-framed-system manufacturers for this use.
  - a. Color: Matching structural sealant.

## 2.5 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS

- A. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing operation.
  1. Door Construction: 2- to 2-1/4-inch (50.8- to 57.2-mm) overall thickness, with minimum 0.125-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deeply penetrated and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.
    - a. Thermal Construction: High-performance plastic connectors separate aluminum members exposed to the exterior from members exposed to the interior.
  2. Door Design: As indicated.
    - a. Accessible Doors: Smooth surfaced for width of door in area within 10 inches (255 mm) above floor or ground plane.
  3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Beveled, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
    - a. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of door.
- B. Entrance Door Hardware: As specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware."

## 2.6 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE

- A. General: Provide entrance door hardware and entrance door hardware sets indicated in door and frame schedule for each entrance door to comply with requirements in this Section.
  1. Entrance Door Hardware Sets: Provide quantity, item, size, finish or color indicated, and products equivalent in function and comparable in quality to named products and complying with BHMA standard referenced.
  2. Sequence of Operation: Provide electrified door hardware function, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems indicated.
  3. Opening-Force Requirements:
    - a. Egress Doors: Not more than 15 lbf (67 N) to release the latch and not more than 30 lbf (133 N) to set the door in motion and not more than 15 lbf (67 N) to open the door to its minimum required width.
    - b. Accessible Interior Doors: Not more than 5 lbf (22.2 N) to fully open door.
- B. Designations: Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of entrance door hardware are indicated in "Entrance Door Hardware Sets" Article. Products are identified by using entrance door hardware designations as follows:

1. Named Manufacturers' Products: Manufacturer and product designation are listed for each door hardware type required for the purpose of establishing minimum requirements. Manufacturers' names are abbreviated in "Entrance Door Hardware Sets" Article.
  2. References to BHMA Standards: Provide products complying with these standards and requirements for description, quality, and function.
- C. Opening-Force Requirements:
1. Delayed-Egress Locks: Lock releases within 15 seconds after applying a force of not more than 15 lbf (67 N) for not more than 3 seconds.
  2. Latches and Exit Devices: Not more than 15 lbf (67 N) required to release latch.
- D. Pivot Hinges: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1.
1. Offset-Pivot Hinges: Provide top, bottom, and intermediate offset pivots at each door leaf.
- E. Butt Hinges: BHMA A156.1, Grade 1, radius corner.
1. Nonremovable Pins: Provide set screw in hinge barrel that, when tightened into a groove in hinge pin, prevents removal of pin while entrance door is closed.
  2. Exterior Hinges: Stainless steel, with stainless-steel pin.
  3. Quantities:
    - a. For doors up to 87 inches (2210 mm) high, provide 3 hinges per leaf.
    - b. For doors more than 87 and up to 120 inches (2210 and up to 3048 mm) high, provide 4 hinges per leaf.
- F. Continuous-Gear Hinges: Manufacturer's standard with stainless-steel bearings between knuckles, fabricated to full height of door and frame.
- G. Mortise Auxiliary Locks: BHMA A156.5, Grade 1.
- H. Manual Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.
- I. Automatic and Self-Latching Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.3, Grade 1.
- J. Panic Exit Devices: BHMA A156.3, Grade 1, listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305.
- K. Cylinders: As specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware." BHMA A156.5, Grade 1.
1. Keying: Master key system. Permanently inscribe each key with a visual key control number and include notation to be furnished by Owner.
- L. Strikes: Provide strike with black-plastic dust box for each latch or lock bolt; fabricated for aluminum framing.
- M. Operating Trim: BHMA A156.6.
- N. Removable Mullions: BHMA A156.3, extruded aluminum.
1. When used with panic exit devices, provide removable mullions listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305. Use only mullions that have been tested with exit devices to be used.

- O. Closers: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1, with accessories required for a complete installation, sized as required by door size, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use; adjustable to meet field conditions and requirements for opening force.
- P. Concealed Overhead Holders: BHMA A156.8, Grade 1.
- Q. Surface-Mounted Holders: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.
- R. Door Stops: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1, floor or wall mounted, as appropriate for door location indicated, with integral rubber bumper.
- S. Weather Stripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable components.
  - 1. Compression Type: Made of ASTM D 2000, molded neoprene, or ASTM D 2287, molded PVC.
  - 2. Sliding Type: AAMA 701, made of wool, polypropylene, or nylon woven pile with nylon-fabric or aluminum-strip backing.
- T. Weather Sweeps: Manufacturer's standard exterior-door bottom sweep with concealed fasteners on mounting strip.
- U. Silencers: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.
- V. Thresholds: BHMA A156.21, raised thresholds beveled with a slope of not more than 1:2, with maximum height of 1/2 inch (13 mm).
- W. Finger Guards: Manufacturer's standard collapsible neoprene or PVC gasket anchored to frame hinge-jamb at center-pivoted doors.

## 2.7 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Joint Sealants: For installation at perimeter of aluminum-framed systems, as specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- B. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied, asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos; formulated for 30-mil (0.762-mm) thickness per coat.

## 2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Framing Members, General: Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
  - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
  - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
  - 3. Means to drain water passing joints, condensation within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.
  - 4. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
  - 5. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
  - 6. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from interior.

7. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- E. Structural-Sealant-Glazed Framing Members: Include accommodations for using temporary support device to retain glazing in place while structural sealant cures.
- F. Storefront Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using Manufacturers recommended system for project location.
- G. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.
  1. At exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
  2. At interior doors, provide silencers at stops to prevent metal-to-metal contact. Install three silencers on strike jamb of single-door frames and two silencers on head of frames for pairs of doors.
- H. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
  1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.
  2. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.
- I. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.
- J. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

## 2.9 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. High-Performance Organic Finish: 4-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 50 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

## 2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate structural-sealant-glazed systems.
- B. Structural-Sealant-Glazed Systems: Perform quality-control procedures complying with ASTM C 1401 recommendations, including, but not limited to, system material-qualification procedures, sealant testing, and system fabrication reviews and checks.
- C. Structural-sealant-glazed system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General:

- 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- 2. Do not install damaged components.
- 3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
- 4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
- 5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration.
- 6. Seal joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal Protection:

- 1. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or applying sealant or tape, or by installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
- 2. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

C. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.

D. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed as specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.

E. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades, and without warp or rack.

F. Install glazing as specified in Division 08 Section "Glazing."

1. Structural-Sealant Glazing:

- a. Prepare surfaces that will contact structural sealant according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to ensure compatibility and adhesion. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.
- b. Install weatherseal sealant according to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" and according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to produce weatherproof joints. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.

G. Entrance Doors: Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.

- 1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weathertight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.
- 2. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

- H. Install perimeter joint sealants as specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.

### 3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Install aluminum-framed systems to comply with the following maximum erection tolerances:
  - 1. Location and Plane: Limit variation from true location and plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3 mm in 3.7 m); 1/4 inch (6 mm) over total length.
  - 2. Alignment:
    - a. Where surfaces abut in line, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).
    - b. Where surfaces meet at corners, limit offset from true alignment to 1/32 inch (0.8 mm).
- B. Diagonal Measurements: Limit difference between diagonal measurements to 1/8 inch (3 mm).

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of representative areas to determine compliance of installed systems with specified requirements shall take place as follows and in successive phases as indicated on Drawings. Do not proceed with installation of the next area until test results for previously completed areas show compliance with requirements.
  - 1. Structural-Sealant Compatibility and Adhesion: Structural sealant shall be tested according to recommendations in ASTM C 1401.
    - a. Destructive Test Method A, "Hand Pull Tab (Destructive)," in ASTM C 1401, Appendix X2, shall be used.
      - 1) A minimum of six (6) areas on each building face shall be tested.
      - 2) Repair installation areas damaged by testing.
  - 2. Structural-Sealant Glazing Inspection: After installation of aluminum-framed systems is complete, structural-sealant glazing shall be inspected and evaluated according to recommendations in ASTM C 1401.
  - 3. Air Infiltration: Areas shall be tested for air leakage of 1.5 times the rate specified for laboratory testing under "Performance Requirements" Article.
  - 4. Water Penetration: Areas shall be tested according to ASTM E 1105 at a minimum uniform and cyclic static-air-pressure difference of 0.67 times the static-air-pressure difference specified for laboratory testing under "Performance Requirements" Article, but not less than 4.18 lbf/sq. ft. (200 Pa), and shall not evidence water penetration.
  - 5. Water Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, a minimum area of 75 feet (23 m) by 1 story of aluminum-framed systems designated by Architect shall be tested according to AAMA 501.2 and shall not evidence water penetration.
- C. Repair or remove work if test results and inspections indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- E. Aluminum-framed assemblies will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust operating entrance door hardware to function smoothly as recommended by manufacturer.

1. For entrance doors accessible to people with disabilities, adjust closers to provide a 3-second closer sweep period for doors to move from a 70-degree open position to 3 inches (75 mm) from the latch, measured to the leading door edge.

3.6 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE SETS – See schedule by hardware consultant.

END OF SECTION 084113

SECTION 084413 - GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes conventionally glazed aluminum curtain walls.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for installation of joint sealants installed with glazed aluminum curtain walls and for sealants to the extent not specified in this Section.
  - 2. Division 10 Section "Exterior Sun Control Devices" for sun shades attached to glazed aluminum curtain wall.

1.3 ALLOWANCES

- A. Provide preconstruction and field quality-control testing as part of testing and inspecting allowance.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by preconstruction testing of manufacturer's standard glazed aluminum curtain walls representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
  - 1. Glazed aluminum curtain walls shall withstand movements of supporting structure indicated on Drawings including, but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
  - 2. Failure also includes the following:
    - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
    - b. Glass breakage.
    - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
    - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
    - e. Failure of operating units.
- B. Delegated Design: Design glazed aluminum curtain walls, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Structural Loads:
  - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Basic Wind Speed: 120 mph.
- D. Structural-Test Performance: Test according to ASTM E 330 as follows:
  - 1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.

2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, and permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
  3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds.
- E. Deflection of Framing Members: At design wind pressure, as follows:
1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to 1/175 of clear span for spans up to 13 feet 6 inches (4.1 m) and to 1/240 of clear span plus 1/4 inch (6.35 mm) for spans greater than 13 feet 6 inches (4.1 m) or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch (19 mm), whichever is less.
  2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to amount not exceeding that which reduces glazing bite to less than 75 percent of design dimension and that which reduces edge clearance between framing members and glazing or other fixed components to less than 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
    - a. Operable Units: Provide a minimum 1/16-inch (1.6-mm) clearance between framing members and operable units.
  3. Cantilever Deflection: Where framing members overhang an anchor point, limit deflection to two times the length of cantilevered member, divided by 175.
- F. Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistance Performance: Pass missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests when tested according to ASTM E 1886 and testing information in ASTM E 1996.
1. Large-Missile Test: For glazed openings located within 30 feet (9.1 m) of grade.
  2. Small-Missile Test: For glazed openings located more than 30 feet (9.1 m) above grade.
- G. Seismic Performance: Glazed aluminum curtain walls shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
- H. Story Drift: Accommodate design displacement of adjacent stories indicated.
1. Design Displacement: Insert design displacement.
  2. Test Performance: Meeting criteria for passing based on building occupancy type when tested according to AAMA 501.4 at design displacement and 1.5 times the design displacement.
- I. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to ASTM E 331 at a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 15 lbf/sq. ft. (720 Pa).
- J. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to AAMA 501.1 at dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 15 lbf/sq. ft. (720 Pa).
1. Maximum Water Leakage: According to AAMA 501.1 No uncontrolled water penetrating assemblies or water appearing on assemblies' normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water leakage does not include water controlled by flashing and gutters that is drained to exterior.
- K. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures:
1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.
  2. Test Interior Ambient-Air Temperature: 75 deg F (24 deg C).

3. Test Performance: No buckling; stress on glass; sealant failure; excess stress on framing, anchors, and fasteners; or reduction of performance when tested according to AAMA 501.5.
- L. Energy Performance: Glazed aluminum curtain walls shall have certified and labeled energy performance ratings in accordance with NFRC.
1. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor): Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have U-factor of not more than 0.45 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (2.55 W/sq. m x K) as determined according to NFRC 100.
  2. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have a solar heat gain coefficient of no greater than 0.35 as determined according to NFRC 200.
  3. Air Infiltration: Maximum air leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas of 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. of fixed wall area as determined according to ASTM E 283 at a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..
  4. Condensation Resistance: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have an NFRC- certified condensation resistance rating of no less than 45 as determined according to NFRC 500.
- M. Sound Transmission: Provide glazed aluminum curtain walls with fixed glazing and framing areas having the following sound-transmission characteristics:
1. Outdoor-Indoor Transmission Class: Minimum 34 when tested for laboratory sound transmission loss according to ASTM E 90 and determined by ASTM E 1332.

#### 1.5 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Provide glazed aluminum curtain walls that comply with test-performance requirements indicated, as evidenced by reports of test performed manufacturer's standard assemblies by a qualified testing agency.

#### 1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For glazed aluminum curtain walls. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.
1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
  2. Include full-size isometric details of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of glazed aluminum curtain walls, showing the following:
    - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
    - b. Anchorage.
    - c. Expansion provisions.
    - d. Glazing.
    - e. Flashing and drainage.
  3. Include laboratory mockup Shop Drawings, prepared by a qualified preconstruction testing agency, showing details of laboratory mockup.
    - a. Resubmit Shop Drawings with changes made to glazed aluminum curtain walls to successfully complete preconstruction testing.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- E. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of assemblies, made from 12-inch (300-mm) lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:
  - 1. Joinery, including concealed welds.
  - 2. Anchorage.
  - 3. Expansion provisions.
  - 4. Glazing.
  - 5. Flashing and drainage.
- F. Delegated-Design Submittal: For glazed aluminum curtain walls indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and preconstruction testing agency and testing agency.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For glazed aluminum curtain walls, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Energy Performance Certificates: For glazed aluminum curtain walls, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: NFRC-certified energy performance values for each glazed aluminum curtain wall.
- E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified preconstruction testing agency, for glazed aluminum curtain walls, indicating compliance with performance requirements.
- F. Field quality-control reports.
- G. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

#### 1.8 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For glazed aluminum curtain walls to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer capable of fabricating glazed aluminum curtain walls that meet or exceed energy performance requirements indicated and of documenting this performance by certification, labeling, and inclusion in lists.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.

- C. Preconstruction Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ISO/IEC 17025 and accredited by ICC-ES for preconstruction testing indicated.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 699 for testing indicated.
- E. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.
  - 1. Do not revise intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If revisions are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- F. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
- G. Energy Performance Standards: Comply with NFRC for minimum standards of energy performance, materials, components, accessories, and fabrication. Comply with more stringent requirements if indicated.
  - 1. Provide NFRC-certified glazed aluminum curtain walls with an attached label.
- H. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate performance, aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
  - 2. Field testing shall be performed on mockups according to requirements in "Field Quality Control" Article.
  - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 4. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- I. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of structural supports for glazed aluminum curtain walls by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

#### 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Assembly Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer and Installer agrees to repair or replace components of glazed aluminum curtain walls that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
    - b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
    - d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.

- e. Failure of operating components.
- 2. Warranty Period: Ten (10) years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Twenty (20) years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Arcadia, Inc.
  - 2. Arch Aluminum & Glass Co., Inc.
  - 3. Bruce Wall Systems Corporation.
  - 4. CMI Architectural.
  - 5. EFCO Corporation.
  - 6. Glassalum International Corporation.
  - 7. Kawneer North America; an Alcoa company.
  - 8. Pittco Architectural Metals, Inc.
  - 9. Tingwall Inc.
  - 10. TRACO.
  - 11. Tubelite.
  - 12. United States Aluminum.
  - 13. Vistawall Architectural Products; The Vistawall Group; a Bluescope Steel company.
  - 14. Waltek & Company Limited.
  - 15. Wausau Window and Wall Systems.
  - 16. YKK AP America Inc.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
  - 1. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M).
  - 2. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M).
  - 3. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429.
  - 4. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
  - 5. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: AWS A5.10/A5.10M.

- B. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.
  - 1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  - 2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
  - 3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

## 2.3 FRAMING

- A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's standard extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
  - 1. Construction: Thermally broken.
  - 2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
  - 3. Glazing Plane: Front.
- B. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- C. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
  - 1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
  - 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
  - 3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, finished to match framing system.
- D. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch (25.4 mm) that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.
  - 1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M requirements.
- E. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.
- F. Framing Sealants: Manufacturer's standard sealants.

## 2.4 GLAZING

- A. Glazing: Comply with Division 08 Section "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard sealed-corner pressure-glazing system of black, resilient elastomeric glazing gaskets, setting blocks, and shims or spacers.
- C. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer.

## 2.5 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil (0.762-mm) thickness per coat.

## 2.6 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
  - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
  - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
  - 3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
  - 4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
  - 5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from interior.
  - 6. Provisions for safety railings mounted on interior face of mullions or between mullions at interior.
  - 7. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
  - 8. Components curved to indicated radii.
- D. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
  - 1. Internal guttering system or other means to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within glazed aluminum curtain wall to exterior.
  - 2. Pressure-equalized system or double barrier design with primary air and vapor barrier at interior side of glazed aluminum curtain wall and secondary seal weeped and vented to exterior.
- E. Curtain-Wall Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using Manufacturer recommended system for project location.
- F. Factory-Assembled Frame Units:
  - 1. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
  - 2. Seal joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Install glazing to comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing."
- G. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

## 2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. High-Performance Organic Finish: Four-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 50 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - 1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

#### A. General:

1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Do not install damaged components.
3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
6. Weld components in concealed locations to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Protect glazing surfaces from welding.
7. Seal joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.

#### B. Metal Protection:

1. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape or installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
2. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

- C. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within glazed aluminum curtain wall to exterior.

- D. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.

- E. Install operable units level and plumb, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weather-stripping contact and hardware movement to produce proper operation.

- F. Install glazing as specified in Division 08 Section "Glazing."

### 3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Erection Tolerances: Install glazed aluminum curtain walls to comply with the following maximum tolerances:

1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3.2 mm in 3 m); 1/4 inch in 40 feet (6 mm in 12 m).
2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet (3.2 mm in 6 m); 1/4 inch in 40 feet (6 mm in 12 m).
3. Alignment:
  - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
  - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch (12.7 to 25.4 mm) wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
  - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch (25.4 mm) wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch (6 mm).
4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3.2 mm in 3.7 m); 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) over total length.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of representative areas of glazed aluminum curtain walls shall take place as installation proceeds to determine compliance of installed assemblies with specified requirements.
  - 1. Air Infiltration: Areas shall be tested for air leakage of 1.5 times the rate specified for laboratory testing in "Performance Requirements" Article, but not more than 0.50 cfm/sq. ft. (2.25 L/s per sq. m), of fixed wall area when tested according to ASTM E 783 at a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).
    - a. Test Area: One bay wide, but not less than 30 feet (9.1 m), by one story of glazed aluminum curtain wall.
    - b. Perform a minimum of three tests in areas as directed by Architect.
  - 2. Water Penetration: Areas shall be tested according to ASTM E 1105 at a minimum uniform and cyclic static-air-pressure differential of 0.67 times the static-air-pressure differential specified for laboratory testing in "Performance Requirements" Article, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa), and shall not evidence water penetration.
    - a. Test Area: One bay wide, but not less than 30 feet (9.1 m), by one story of glazed aluminum curtain wall.
    - b. Perform a minimum of three tests in areas as directed by Architect.
  - 3. Water Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, areas designated by Architect shall be tested according to AAMA 501.2 and shall not evidence water penetration.
    - a. Test Area: A minimum area of 75 feet (23 m) by one story of glazed aluminum curtain wall.
- C. Glazed aluminum curtain walls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 084413

SECTION 087100 – DOOR HARDWARE

PART I – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. SECTION INCLUDES

1. The work in this section includes furnishing all items of finish hardware as hereinafter specified or obviously necessary for all swinging, sliding, folding and other doors. Except items, which are specifically excluded from this section of the specification or of unique hardware, specified in the same sections as the doors and frames on which they are installed.

B. RELATED DOCUMENTS

1. Related documents, drawings and general provisions of contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 specification sections apply to this section.

C. RELATED SECTIONS

1. 017823 – Operations and Maintenance Data
2. 064023 – Interior Architectural Woodwork
3. 081113 – Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
4. 081416 – Flush Wood Doors
5. 084113 – Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts

1.02 REFERENCES

A. STANDARDS

1. AIA A201 1997 – General Conditions of the Contract
2. ANSI-A250.4 – Steel Doors and Frames Physical Endurance
3. ANSI A156.1 – Butts and Hinges
4. ANSI A156.2 – Bored Locks and Latches
5. ANSI A156.3 – Exit Devices
6. ANSI A156.4 – Door Controls – Door Closers
7. ANSI A156.5 – Auxiliary Locks and Associated Products
8. ANSI A156.6 – Architectural Door Trim
9. ANSI A156.7 – Template Hinge Dimensions
10. ANSI A156.8 – Door Controls – Overhead Holders
11. ANSI A156.13 – Mortise Locks and Latches
12. ANSI A156.15 – Closer Holder Release Devices
13. ANSI A156.16 – Auxiliary Hardware
14. ANSI A156.18 – Material and Finishes
15. ANSI A156.26 – Continuous Hinges
16. UL10C – Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

B. CODES

1. NFPA 101 – Life Safety Code
2. IBC 2003 – International Building Code
3. ANSI A117.1 – Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities
4. ADA – Americans with Disabilities Act

### 1.03 SUBMITTALS

#### A. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

1. Submit copies of finish hardware schedule in accordance with Division 1, General Requirements.

#### B. SCHEDULES AND PRODUCT DATA

1. Schedules to be in vertical format, listing each door opening, and organized into “hardware sets” indicating complete designations of every item required for each door opening to function as intended. Hardware schedule shall be submitted within two (2) weeks from date the purchase order is received by the finish hardware supplier. Furnish four (4) copies of revised schedules after approval for field and file use. Note any special mounting instructions or requirements with the hardware schedule. Schedules to include the following information:
  - a. Location of each hardware set cross-referenced to indications on drawings, both on floor plans and in door and frame schedule.
  - b. Handing and degree of swing of each door.
  - c. Door and frame sizes and materials.
  - d. Keying information.
  - e. Type, style, function, size, and finish of each hardware item.
  - f. Elevation drawings and operational descriptions for all electronic openings.
  - g. Name and manufacturer of each hardware item.
  - h. Fastenings and other pertinent information.
  - i. Explanation of all abbreviations, symbols and codes contained in schedule
  - j. Mounting locations for hardware when varies from standard.
2. Submit catalog cuts and/or product data sheets for all scheduled finish hardware.
3. Submit separate detailed keying schedule for approval indicating clearly how the owner’s final instructions on keying of locks has been fulfilled.

#### C. SAMPLES

1. Upon request, samples of each type of hardware in finish indicated shall be submitted. Samples are to remain undamaged and in working condition through submittal and review process. Items will be returned to the supplier or incorporated into the work within limitations of keying coordination requirements.

#### D. TEMPLATES

1. Furnish a complete list and suitable templates, together with finish hardware schedule to contractor, for distribution to necessary trades supplying materials to be prepped for finish hardware.

#### E. ELECTRONIC HARDWARE SYSTEMS

1. Provide complete wiring diagrams prepared by an authorized factory employee for each opening requiring electronic hardware, except openings where only magnetic hold-open devices are specified. Provide a copy with each hardware schedule submitted after approval.
2. Provide complete operational descriptions of electronic components listed by opening in the hardware submittals. Operational descriptions to detail how each electrical component functions within the opening incorporating all conditions of ingress and egress. Provide a copy with each hardware schedule submitted for approval.

3. Provide elevation drawings of electronic hardware and systems identifying locations of the system components with respect to their placement in the door opening. Provide a copy with each hardware schedule submitted for approval.
  4. Prior to installation of electronic hardware, arrange conference between supplier, installers and related trades to review materials, procedures and coordinating related work.
  5. The electrical products contained within this specification represent a complete engineered system. If alternate electrical products are submitted, it is the responsibility of the distributor to bear the cost of providing a complete and working system including re-engineering of electrical diagrams and system layout, as well as power supplies, power transfers and all required electrical components. Coordinate with electrical engineer and electrician to ensure that line voltage and low voltage wiring is coordinated to provide a complete and working system.
  6. For each item of electrified hardware specified, provide standardized molex plug connectors to accommodate up to twelve (12) wires. Molex plug connectors shall plug directly into through-door wiring harnesses, frame wiring harnesses, electric locking devices and power supplies.
- F. INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS: Manufacturer's product information and applicable sustainability program credits that are available to contribute towards a LEED rated project certification.
- a) Credit MR 4.1 and 4.2: Manufacturer's or fabricator's certificate indicating percentage of post-consumer recycled content by weight and pre-consumer recycled content by weight for each Product specified under this Section.

#### G. OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

1. Upon completion of construction and building turnover, furnish two (2) complete maintenance manuals to the owner. Manuals to include the following items:
  - a. Approved hardware schedule, catalog cuts and keying schedule.
  - b. Hardware installation and adjustment instructions.
  - c. Manufacturer's written warranty information.
  - d. Wiring diagrams, elevation drawings and operational descriptions for all electronic openings.

### 1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

#### A. SUBSTITUTIONS

1. All substitution requests must be submitted before bidding and within the procedures and time frame as outlined in Division 1, General Requirements. Approval of products is at the discretion of the architect and his hardware consultant.

#### B. SUPPLIER QUALIFICATIONS

1. A recognized architectural door hardware supplier who has maintained an office and has been furnishing hardware in the project's vicinity for a period of at least two (2) years.
2. Hardware supplier shall have office and warehouse facilities to accommodate this project.
3. Hardware supplier shall have in his employment at least one (1) Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) who is available at reasonable times during business hours for consultation about the project's hardware and requirements to the owner, architect and contractor.
4. Hardware supplier must be an authorized factory distributor of all products specified herein.

#### 1.05 FIRE-RATED OPENINGS

1. Provide door hardware for fire-rated openings that comply with NFPA 80 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide only items of door hardware that are listed by Underwriter's Laboratories (UL) or Warnock Hersey (WH) for use on types and sizes of doors indicated.
2. Project requires door assemblies and components that are compliant with positive pressure and S-label requirements. Specifications must be cross-referenced and coordinated with door manufacturers to ensure that total opening engineering is compatible with UL10C Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
  - a. Hardware required for fire doors shall be listed with Underwriters Laboratories for ratings specified.
  - b. Certification(s) of compliance shall be made available upon request by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

#### 1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

##### A. MARKING AND PACKAGING

1. Properly package and mark items according to the approved hardware schedule, complete with necessary screws and accessories, instructions and installation templates for spotting mortising tools. Contractor shall check deliveries against accepted list and provide receipt for them, after which he is responsible for storage and care. Any shortage or damaged good shall be made without cost to the owner.
2. Packaging of door hardware is the responsibility of the supplier. As hardware supplier receives material from various manufacturers, sort and repackage in containers clearly marked with appropriate hardware set and door numbers to match the approved hardware schedule. Two or more identical sets may be packed in same container.

##### B. DELIVERY

1. The supplier shall deliver all hardware to the project site; direct factory shipments are not allowed unless agreed upon beforehand. Hardware supplier shall coordinate delivery times and schedules with the contractor. Inventory door hardware jointly with representatives of hardware supplier and hardware installer/contractor until each is satisfied that count is correct.
2. No keys, other than construction master keys and/or temporary keys are to be packed in boxes with the locks.
3. At time of hardware delivery, door openings supplier in conjunction with the contractor shall check in all hardware and set up a hardware storage room.

##### C. STORAGE

1. Provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to the Project, but not yet installed. Control handling and installation of hardware items that are not immediately replaceable so that completion of work will not be delayed by hardware losses both before and after installation.

## 1.07 WARRANTY

- A. All items, except as noted below, shall be warranted in writing by the manufacturer against failure due to defective materials and workmanship for a minimum period of one (1) year commencing on the date of final completion and acceptance. In the event of product failure, promptly repair or replace item with no additional cost to the owner.
1. Mortise locksets: Ten (10) years
  2. Exit Devices: Five (5) years
  3. Door closers: Ten (10) years
  4. Securitron (and approved equals) electrified hardware: Unlimited Lifetime

## PART II – PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Only manufacturers as listed below shall be accepted. Obtain each type of finish hardware (hinges, latch and locksets, exit devices, door closers, etc.) from a single manufacturer.

### 2.02 MATERIALS

#### A. SCREWS AND FASTENERS

1. All required screws shall be supplied as necessary for securing finish hardware in the appropriate manner. Thru-bolts shall be supplied for exit devices and door closers where required by code and the appropriate blocking or reinforcing is not present in the door to preclude their use.

#### B. HANGING DEVICES

##### 1. HINGES

- a. Hinges shall conform to ANSI A156.1 and have the number of knuckles as specified, oil-impregnated bearings as specified with NRP (non-removable pin) feature, at all exterior reverse bevel doors. Unless otherwise scheduled, supply one (1) hinge for every 30" of door height. Hinges shall be a minimum of 4 1/2" high and 4" wide; heavy weight hinges (.180) shall be supplied at all doors where specified.

- 1) Specified Manufacturer: McKinney
- 2) Approved Substitutes: Bommer, Hager, Stanley

##### 2. CONTINUOUS GEARED HINGES

- a. All hinges to be non-handed and completely reversible. Hinge line to be available in concealed flush mount with or without inset, full surface and half surface types as specified in the hardware sets. All hinges to be made of extruded 6060 T6 aluminum alloy with polyacetal thrust bearings, anodized after cutouts are made for bearings. All concealed hinges to be fire-rated for 20, 45 and 90 minutes when incorporated into proper door and frame labeled installations, without necessitating the use of fusible-link pins. All concealed hinges to be available in standard, heavy, and extra heavy duty weights; all full surface and half surface hinges in standard and heavy duty weights as specified in the hardware sets. All hinges to be factory cut for door size.

- 1) Specified Manufacturers: McKinney
- 2) Approved Manufacturers: Bommer, Pemko, Select

C. FLUSH BOLTS AND ACCESSORIES

1. All manual and automatic flush bolts to be furnished as specified.
  - a. Specified Manufacturer: Rockwood
  - b. Approved Substitutes: Quality, McKinney, Trimco

D. CYLINDERS AND KEYING

1. CYLINDERS

- a. All cylinders shall meet the requirements of UL437 including those for pick and drill resistance. Pick resistance shall incorporate two or more independent locking mechanisms including a pin tumbler device with six top pin chambers with mushroom shaped driver pins and a coded sidebar locking mechanism operated independently from the six top pin tumbler device. Drill resistance shall incorporate cylinder housing with fixed in-place case-hardened inserts to protect the pin tumbler shear line, cylinder plugs with case-hardened inserts to protect the pin tumbler shear line and the side bar, mushroom shaped stainless steel driver pins and stainless steel sidepins. All cylinders shall be factory master keyed.

- 1) Specified Manufacturer: Medeco (no substitution to match Owner's existing key system)

2. KEYING

- a. All locks and cylinders shall be construction master-keyed. All locks and cylinders to be master-keyed or grandmaster-keyed as directed by the owner. The factory shall key all locks and cylinders. Permanently inscribe each key with number of lock that identifies cylinder manufacturer's key symbol and notation "DO NOT DUPLICATE". Furnish one extra key blank for each lock and the following key amounts:

- 1) Three (3) change keys per lock
- 2) Five (5) grand master keys
- 3) Five (5) master keys per master level
- 4) Fifteen (15) construction/temporary keys

- b. Submit proposed keying schedule to Architect. As requested, meet with Owner and Architect to review schedule.
- c. Provide construction masterkeying for use during the construction period. Void upon completion of the project as directed by owner. Provide 15 construction masterkeys.
- d. Master keys and all high-security or restricted keyway blanks shall be sealed in tamper-proof packaged boxes when shipped from the factory. The boxes shall be shrink wrapped and imprinted to ensure the integrity of the packaging.

3. KEY CABINET

- a. Provide a key control system including envelopes, labels, and tags with self-locking key clips, receipt forms, 3-way visible card index, temporary markers, permanent markers, and standard metal cabinet. Key control cabinet shall expansion capacity of 150% of the number of locks required for the project.

- 1) Specified Manufacturer: Telkee
- 2) Approved Substitutes: Lund

4. KEY CONTROL SOFTWARE

- a. A comprehensive key management software package shall be supplied. Software package shall include free one year technical support and free upgrades to software as it becomes available. Software shall have customized query, reporting and search capability and shall allow for tracking of all issued keys. Display of key-holder photographs and signatures shall be allowed.
  - 1) Specified Manufacturers: Sargent Key Wizard
  - 2) Approved Manufacturers: Corbin Russwin, Yale

## E. LOCKING DEVICES

### 1. MORTISE LOCKSETS

- a. All locksets shall be ANSI 156.13 Series 1000, Grade 1 Certified. All functions shall be manufactured in a single sized case formed from 12 gauge steel minimum. The lockset shall have a field-adjustable, beveled armored front, with a .125" minimum thickness and shall be reversible without opening the lock body. The lockset shall be 2 3/4" backset with a one-piece 3/4" anti-friction stainless steel latchbolt. The deadbolt shall be a full 1" throw made of stainless steel and have 2 hardened steel roller inserts. All strikes shall be non-handed with a curved lip. To insure proper alignment, all trim, shall be thru-bolted and fully interchangeable between rose and escutcheon designs and shall be the product of one manufacturer.
  - 1) Specified Manufacturer: Sargent 8200 Series
  - 2) Approved Substitutes: Corbin Russwin ML2000 Series, Schlage L9000 Series

### 2. LOCKSET STRIKES

- a. Strikes shall be non-handed and available with curved lip, full lip or ASA type strikes as required. Provide strikes with lip-length required to accommodate jamb and/or trim detail and projection.

## F. EXIT DEVICES

### 1. CONVENTIONAL DEVICES – PUSH RAIL

- a. All exit devices shall be ANSI A156.3, Grade 1 Certified and shall be listed by Underwriters Laboratories and bear the UL label for life safety in full compliance with NFPA 80 and NFPA 101. Mounting rails shall be formed from a solid single piece of stainless steel, brass or bronze no less than 0.072" thick. Push rails shall be constructed of 0.062" thick material. Lever trim shall be available in finishes and designs to match that of the specified locksets.
  - 1) Specified Manufacturer: Sargent 80 Series
  - 2) Approved Substitutes: Corbin Russwin ED4000/ED5000 Series, Von Duprin 98 Series

## G. DOOR CLOSERS

### 1. SURFACE MOUNTED CLOSERS – HEAVY DUTY

- a. All door closers shall be ANSI 156.4, Grade 1 Certified. All closers shall have aluminum alloy bodies, forged steel arms, and separate valves for adjusting backcheck, closing and latching cycles and adjustable spring to provide up to 50% increase in spring power. Closers shall be furnished with parallel arms mounting on all doors opening into corridors or other public spaces and shall be mounted to permit 180 degrees door swing wherever wall conditions permit. Closers shall not be installed on exterior or corridor side of doors; where possible install closers on door for optimum aesthetics.
  - 1) Specified Manufacturer: Sargent 351 Series
  - 2) Approved Substitutes: Norton 7500 Series, LCN 4010 Series

2. HOLD OPEN CLOSERS

a. SINGLE-POINT HOLD OPEN

- 1) Closers to have adjustable hold-open range of 85 to 110 degrees. Mountings for regular and double egress arm applications to be supplied where necessary. When a detector is required, use integral photo-electric type with LED indicator. Voltage to be 24VDC unless otherwise specified.
  - a) Specified Manufacturers: Sargent EHT
  - b) Approved Manufacturers: Norton Powertrack

H. DOOR TRIM AND PROTECTIVE PLATES

1. Kick plates shall be .050 gauges and two (2) inches less full width of door, or as specified. Push plates, pull plates, door pulls and miscellaneous door trim shall be as shown in the hardware schedule.
  - a. Specified Manufacturer: Rockwood
  - b. Approved Substitutes: Quality, McKinney, Trimco

I. DOOR STOPS AND HOLDERS

1. WALL MOUNTED DOOR STOPS

- a. Where a door is indicated on the plans to strike flush against a wall, wall bumpers shall be provided. Provide convex or concave design as indicated.
  - 1) Specified Manufacturers: Rockwood
  - 2) Approved Substitutes: Quality, McKinney, Trimco

2. OVERHEAD STOPS/HOLDERS

- a. Where specified, overhead stops/holders as shown in the hardware sets are to be provided. Track, slide, arm and jamb bracket shall be constructed of extruded bronze and shock absorber spring shall be of heavy tempered steel. Overhead stops shall be of non-handed design.
  - 1) Specified Manufacturers: Rixson 1/2/9/10 Series
  - 2) Approved Substitutes: Sargent 690/1530/590/1540 Series

J. GASKETING AND THRESHOLDS

1. Provide continuous weatherseal on exterior doors and smoke, light, or sound seals on interior doors where indicated or scheduled. Provide intumescent seals as required to meet UL10C Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies. Provide only those units where resilient or flexible seal strip is easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by manufacturer.
2. Provide threshold units not less than 4" wide, formed to accommodate change in floor elevation where indicated, fabricated to accommodate door hardware and to fit door frames. All threshold units shall comply with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).
  - a. Specified Manufacturers: Pemko
  - b. Approved Substitutes: McKinney, Reese, Zero

K. SILENCERS

1. Furnish rubber door silencers all hollow metal frames; two (2) per pair and three (3) per single door frame.

L. ELECTRONIC PRODUCTS AND ACCESSORIES

1. POWER SUPPLIES

- a. Power supplies shall furnish regulated 24VDC and shall be UL class 2 listed. LED's shall monitor zone status (voltage/no voltage) and slide switches shall be provided to connect or disconnect the load from power; 1, 4 or 8 separate output circuit breakers shall be provided to divide the load. Power supplies shall have the internal capability of charging optional 24VDC sealed lead acid batteries in addition to operating the DC load. Power supplies shall be supplied complete requiring only 120VAC to the fused input and shall be supplied in an enclosure. Power supplies shall be provided with emergency release terminals that allow the release of all devices upon activation of the fire alarm system.

- 1) Specified Manufacturer: Securitron BPS
- 2) Approved Substitutes: Folger Adams

2.03 FINISHES

- A. The designations used in schedules and elsewhere to indicate hardware finishes are those listed in ANSI/BHMA A156.18 or traditional U.S. finishes shown by certain manufacturers for their products.
- B. Provide quality of finish, including thickness of plating or coating (if any), composition, hardness, and other qualities complying with manufacturer's standards, but in no case less than specified by referenced standards for the applicable units of hardware.
- C. Where specified hardware shall have an antimicrobial coating which permanently suppresses the growth of bacteria, algae, fungus, mold and mildew applied. The finish shall control the spread and growth of bacteria, mold and mildew and shall be FDA listed for use in medical and food preparation equipment.

PART III – EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Contractor shall ensure that the building is secured and free from weather elements prior to installing interior door hardware. Examine hardware before installation to ensure it is free of defects.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Mount hardware units at heights indicated in the following applicable publications, except as specifically indicated or required to comply with the governing regulations.
  1. "Recommended Locations for Builders Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames" by the Door and Hardware Institute (DHI.)
  2. NWWDA Industry Standard I.S.1.7, "Hardware Locations for Wood Flush Doors."
- B. All hardware shall be applied and installed in accordance with best trade practice by an experienced hardware installer. Care shall be exercised not to mar or damage adjacent work.

- C. Install each hardware item in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions and recommendations. Where cutting and fitting is required to install hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation or application of surface protection with finishing work specified in the Division 9 Sections. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on the substrates involved.
- D. Provide a secure lock up for hardware delivered to the project but not yet installed. Control the handling and installation of hardware items so that the completion of the work will not be delayed by hardware losses before and after installation.

### 3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. The Contractor shall comply with AIA A201 1997 section 3.3.1 which reads as follows: “The Contractor shall be solely responsible for and have control over construction means, methods, techniques, sequences and procedures and for coordinating all portions of the Work under the Contract, unless the contract Documents give other specific instructions concerning these matters.”
- B. Prior to the installation of hardware, manufacturer's representatives for locksets, closers, and exit devices shall arrange and hold a jobsite meeting to instruct the installing contractor's personnel on the proper installation of their respective products. A letter of compliance, indicating when this meeting is held and who is in attendance, shall be sent to the Architect and Owner.
- C. The manufacturer's representative shall do a final inspection prior to building completion to ensure that all hardware was correctly installed and is in proper working order.

### 3.04 ADJUSTING, CLEANING, AND DEMONSTRATING

- A. Adjust and check each operating item of hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate freely and smoothly or as intended for the application made.
- B. Where door hardware is installed more than one month prior to acceptance or occupancy of a space or area, return to the installation during the week prior to acceptance or occupancy and make final check and adjustment of all hardware items in such space or area. Clean operating items as necessary to restore to proper function and finish of hardware and doors. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment.
- C. Instruct owner's personnel in the proper adjustment and maintenance of door hardware and hardware finishes and usage of any electronic devices.

### 3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Contractor shall protect all hardware, as it is stored on construction site in a covered and dry place. Protect exposed hardware installed on doors during the construction phase. Install any and all hardware at the latest possible time frame.

### 3.06 HARDWARE SCHEDULE

- A. The following schedule is furnished for whatever assistance it may afford the Contractor; do not consider it as entirely inclusive. Should any particular door or item be omitted in any scheduled hardware heading, provide door or item with hardware same as required for similar purposes. Hardware supplier is responsible for handing and sizing all products as listed in the hardware heading. Quantities listed are for each pair of doors, or for each single door.
- B. Manufacturer's Abbreviations:

1. MC - Medeco
2. MK – McKinney
3. PE - Pemko
4. RO – Rockwood
5. RF – Rixson
6. SA – Sargent
7. SU – Securitron

**Set: 1.0**

Doors: 145/1, 145/4, 167B/1, 167B/3, 227/1, 227/3

2 Continuous Hinge	MCK-25HD x LAR	CL	MK
1 Removable Mullion	L980S	PC	SA
1 Exit Device (rim, storeroom)	16 8504 862	US32D	SA
1 Exit Device (rim, pull)	16 8510 862	US32D	SA
2 Cylinder	10-0200	US15	MC
1 Cylinder	10-0400	US15	MC
2 Concealed Overhead Stop	1-X36	630	RF
2 Door Closer (surface)	351 OZ	EN	SA
1 Threshold	271A x LAR		PE
2 Door Position Switch	DPS-M		SU
1 Rain Guard	346C x Door Width + 4"		PE
2 Sweep	3452APK x LAR		PE

Notes: Perimeter gasket by door/frame manufacturer.

**Set: 2.0**

Doors: 145/2, 145/3, 145/5, 167B/2, 167B/4, 227/2, 227/4

2 Continuous Hinge	MCK-25HD x LAR	CL	MK
1 Removable Mullion	L980S	PC	SA
2 Exit Device (rim, pull)	16 8510 862	US32D	SA
2 Cylinder	10-0200	US15	MC
2 Concealed Overhead Stop	1-X36	630	RF
2 Door Closer (surface)	351 OZ	EN	SA
2 Door Position Switch	DPS-M		SU
1 Threshold	271A x LAR		PE
1 Rain Guard	346C x Door Width + 4"		PE
2 Sweep	3452APK x LAR		PE

Notes: Perimeter gasket by door/frame manufacturer.

**Set: 3.0**

Doors: 097/1, 099/1, 160B/2, 167B/8

2 Continuous Hinge	MCK-25HD x LAR	CL	MK
2 Manual Flush Bolt	555/557	US26D	RO
1 Mortise Lock (storeroom deadbolt)	8251 LNB	US32D	SA
1 Cylinder	10-0200	US15	MC
2 Door Closer (surface w/stop arm)	351 CPS	EN	SA
2 Kick Plate	K1050 10" x 1" LDW 4BE	US32D	RO
2 Door Position Switch	DPS-M		SU

1 Astragal	357 SP x LAR		PE
1 Threshold	2005AT x LAR MSES25SS		PE
1 Gasketing	303AS (Head & Jambs)		PE
1 Rain Guard	346C x Door Width + 4"		PE

**Set: 4.0**

Doors: 160A/1, S-3R/1

1 Continuous Hinge	MCK-25HD x LAR	CL	MK
1 Mortise Lock (storeroom deadbolt)	8251 LNB	US32D	SA
1 Cylinder	10-0200	US15	MC
1 Door Closer (surface w/stop arm)	351 CPS	EN	SA
1 Kick Plate	K1050 10" x 2 " LDW 4BE	US32D	RO
1 Threshold	2005AT x LAR MSES25SS		PE
1 Door Position Switch	DPS-M		SU
1 Gasketing	303AS (Head & Jambs)		PE
1 Rain Guard	346C x Door Width + 4"		PE

**Set: 5.0**

Doors: 167B/5, 167B/6, 167B/7

6 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3786 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
2 Exit Device (vertical rod, classrm)	12 NB8713 ETB	US32D	SA
2 Cylinder	10-0400	US15	MC
2 Electro-Mechanical Closer	351 EHT-Push	EN	SA
2 Kick Plate	K1050 10" x 1" LDW 4BE	US32D	RO
2 Door Stop	409	US32D	RO
1 Gasketing	S773BL		PE
1 Astragal	S772BL		PE
1 Power Supply	BPS-24-1		SU
1 Power Supply	B-24-5		SU
1 Wiring Diagram	With Point to Point Drawing		XX

Notes: Electromechanical holders hold open doors - signal from fire alarm system releases closers allowing doors to automatically shut.

**Set: 6.0**

Doors: 227/7

6 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3786 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
2 Exit Device (vertical rod, classrm)	12 NB8713 ETB	US32D	SA
2 Cylinder	10-0400	US15	MC
2 Door Closer (surface)	351 P9	EN	SA
2 Kick Plate	K1050 10" x 1" LDW 4BE	US32D	RO
2 Door Stop	409	US32D	RO
1 Gasketing	S773BL		PE
1 Astragal	S772BL		PE

**Set: 7.0**

Doors: 163/1, S-3B/1

3 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3786 5" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Exit Device (rim, passage)	12 8815 ETJ	US32D	SA
1 Door Closer (surface)	351 O	EN	SA
1 Kick Plate	K1050 10" x 2 " LDW 4BE	US32D	RO
1 Door Stop	409	US32D	RO
1 Gasketing	S773BL		PE

**Set: 8.0**

Doors: 211/1, 227/11, 227/12, 227/8

6 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Manual Flush Bolt	555/557	US26D	RO
1 Dust Proof Strike	570	US26D	RO
1 Mortise Lock (storeroom)	8204 LNB	US32D	SA
1 Cylinder	10-0200	US15	MC
1 Concealed Overhead Stop	1-X36	630	RF
2 Kick Plate	K1050 10" x 1" LDW 4BE	US32D	RO
1 Door Stop	409	US32D	RO
2 Silencer	608		RO

**Set: 9.0**

Doors: 172/2

3 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Mortise Lock (storeroom)	8204 LNB	US32D	SA
1 Cylinder	10-0200	US15	MC
1 Door Closer (surface)	351 O	EN	SA
1 Kick Plate	K1050 10" x 2 " LDW 4BE	US32D	RO
1 Door Stop	409	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO

**Set: 10.0**

Doors: 160/2, 160K/1

3 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Mortise Lock (storeroom)	8204 LNB	US32D	SA
1 Cylinder	10-0200	US15	MC
1 Door Closer (surface)	351 P9	EN	SA
1 Kick Plate	K1050 10" x 2 " LDW 4BE	US32D	RO
1 Door Stop	409	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO

**Set: 10.1**

Doors: 222/1

3 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
---------	------------------------	-------	----

1 Mortise Lock (classroom)	82374 LNB	US32D	SA
1 Cylinder	10-0200	US15	MC
1 Door Closer (surface)	351 P9	EN	SA
1 Kick Plate	K1050 10" x 2 " LDW 4BE	US32D	RO
1 Door Stop	409	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO

**Set: 11.0**

Doors: 214A/1

6 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Manual Flush Bolt	555/557	US26D	RO
1 Dust Proof Strike	570	US26D	RO
1 Mortise Lock (office)	8205 LNB	US32D	SA
1 Cylinder	10-0200	US15	MC
2 Kick Plate	K1050 10" x 1" LDW 4BE	US32D	RO
2 Door Stop	409	US32D	RO
2 Silencer	608		RO

**Set: 12.0**

Doors: 160D/1

3 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Mortise Lock (office)	8205 LNB	US32D	SA
1 Cylinder	10-0200	US15	MC
1 Kick Plate	K1050 10" x 2 " LDW 4BE	US32D	RO
1 Door Stop	409	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO

**Set: 13.0**

Doors: 160C/1

3 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Mortise Lock (office)	8205 LNB	US32D	SA
1 Cylinder	10-0200	US15	MC
1 Door Closer (surface)	351 O	EN	SA
1 Kick Plate	K1050 10" x 2 " LDW 4BE	US32D	RO
1 Door Stop	409	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO

**Set: 14.0**

Doors: 160E/1

3 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Mortise Lock (privacy)	49 8265 LNB	US32D	SA
1 Door Closer (surface)	351 O	EN	SA
1 Kick Plate	K1050 10" x 2 " LDW 4BE	US32D	RO
1 Protection Plate	K1050 6" 4BE CSK	US32D	RO
1 Door Stop	409	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO

**Set: 15.0**

Doors: 160C/2, 160C/3, 160C/4

3 Hinge	TA2714 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Mortise Lock (passage)	8215 LNB	US32D	SA
1 Concealed Overhead Stop	1-X36	630	RF
1 Door Stop	409	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO

**Set: 16.0**

Doors: 160F/1

3 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3786 4-1/2" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Deadbolt	4877	US32D	SA
1 Cylinder	10-0200	US15	MC
1 Pull Plate	110x70C	US32D	RO
1 Push Plate	70C	US32D	RO
1 Door Closer (surface)	351 O	EN	SA
1 Kick Plate	K1050 10" x 2 " LDW 4BE	US32D	RO
1 Door Stop	409	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO

**Set: 17.0**

Doors: 211/2

8 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3786 5" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Manual Flush Bolt	555/557	US26D	RO
1 Dust Proof Strike	570	US26D	RO
1 Mortise Lock (storeroom)	8204 LNB	US32D	SA
1 Cylinder	10-0200	US15	MC
2 Kick Plate	K1050 10" x 1" LDW 4BE	US32D	RO
2 Door Stop	409	US32D	RO
2 Silencer	608		RO

**Set: 18.0**

Doors: 227/10

4 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3786 5" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Mortise Lock (storeroom)	8204 LNB	US32D	SA
1 Cylinder	10-0200	US15	MC
1 Door Closer (surface w/stop arm)	351 CPS	EN	SA
1 Kick Plate	K1050 10" x 2 " LDW 4BE	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO

**Set: 19.0**

Doors: 160B/1

3 Hinge (heavy weight)	T4A3786 5" x 4-1/2"	US26D	MK
1 Mortise Lock (storeroom)	8204 LNB	US32D	SA
1 Cylinder	10-0200	US15	MC
1 Kickplate	K1050 36" x 2" LDW 4BE CSK	US32D	RO
1 Door Stop	409	US32D	RO
3 Silencer	608		RO

**Set: 20.0**

Doors: 99A/1, 160/1, 160A/2, 167A/1, 167A/2, 167B/9

1 Cylinder	10-0200	US15	MC
------------	---------	------	----

Notes: Masterkeyed cylinder(s), type and quantity as required - balance of hardware by door/gate manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 087100

## SECTION 088000 - GLAZING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes glazing for the following products and applications, including those specified in other Sections where glazing requirements are specified by reference to this Section:

1. Windows.
2. Doors.
3. Glazed curtain walls.
4. Storefront framing.
5. Glazed entrances.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Division 08 Section "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts."
2. Division 08 Section "Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls."

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.
- C. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Delegated Design: Design glass, including comprehensive engineering analysis according to ASTM E 1300 and ICC's 2003 International Building Code by a qualified professional engineer, using the following design criteria:
  1. Design Wind Pressures: Determine design wind pressures applicable to Project according to ASCE/SEI 7, based on heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Wind Design Data: As indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Basic Wind Speed: 120 mph.
  2. Design Snow Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
  3. Vertical Glazing: For glass surfaces sloped 15 degrees or less from vertical, design glass to resist design wind pressure based on glass type factors for short-duration load.

4. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For glass supported on all four edges, limit center-of-glass deflection at design wind pressure to not more than 1/50 times the short-side length or 1 inch (25 mm), whichever is less.
5. Differential Shading: Design glass to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading within individual glass lites.

C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

#### 1.5 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Test each glazing material type, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member for adhesion to and compatibility with elastomeric glazing sealants.

1. Testing will not be required if data are submitted based on previous testing of current sealant products and glazing materials matching those submitted.
2. Use ASTM C 1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint-preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of glazing sealants to glass, tape sealants, gaskets, and glazing channel substrates.
3. Test no fewer than eight Samples of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
4. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
5. For materials failing tests, submit sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including the use of specially formulated primers.

#### 1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each glass product and glazing material indicated.

B. Glass Samples: For each type of glass product other than clear monolithic vision glass; 12 inches (300 mm) square.

C. Glazing Accessory Samples: For gaskets sealants and colored spacers, in 12-inch (300-mm) lengths. Install sealant Samples between two strips of material representative in color of the adjoining framing system.

D. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For glass indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For installers, manufacturers of insulating-glass units with sputter-coated, low-e coatings, glass testing agency and sealant testing agency.

B. Product Certificates: For glass and glazing products, from manufacturer.

C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for tinted glass, coated glass, insulating glass, glazing sealants and glazing gaskets.

1. For glazing sealants, provide test reports based on testing current sealant formulations within previous 36-month period.

D. Preconstruction adhesion and compatibility test report.

E. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications for Insulating-Glass Units with Sputter-Coated, Low-E Coatings: A qualified insulating-glass manufacturer who is approved and certified by coated-glass manufacturer.

B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.

C. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: A qualified independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.

D. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

E. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain ultraclear float glass, tinted float glass, coated float glass, laminated glass and insulating glass from single source from single manufacturer for each glass type.

F. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each product and installation method.

G. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.

1. GANA Publications: GANA's "Laminated Glazing Reference Manual" and GANA's "Glazing Manual."
2. AAMA Publications: AAMA GDSG-1, "Glass Design for Sloped Glazing," and AAMA TIR-A7, "Sloped Glazing Guidelines."
3. IGMA Publication for Sloped Glazing: IGMA TB-3001, "Guidelines for Sloped Glazing."
4. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."

H. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing labeling is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction or the manufacturer. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.

I. Fire-Protection-Rated Glazing Labeling: Permanently mark fire-protection-rated glazing with certification label of a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, test standard, whether glazing is for use in fire doors or other openings, whether or not glazing passes hose-stream test, whether or not glazing has a temperature rise rating of 450 deg F (250 deg C), and the fire-resistance rating in minutes.

J. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of IGCC.

K. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Install glazing in mockups specified in Division 08 Section "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts" and "Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls" to match glazing systems required for Project, including glazing methods.
2. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

L. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
2. Review temporary protection requirements for glazing during and after installation.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written recommendations for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

#### 1.10 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
  1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C).

#### 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer's standard form in which coated-glass manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.
  1. Warranty Period: Ten (10) years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Laminated Glass: Manufacturer's standard form in which laminated-glass manufacturer agrees to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of laminated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.
  1. Warranty Period: Ten (10) years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Insulating Glass: Manufacturer's standard form in which insulating-glass manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.

1. Warranty Period: Ten (10) years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass lites in thicknesses as needed to comply with requirements indicated.
  1. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: Not less than 6.0 mm.
  2. Thickness of Tinted Glass: Provide same thickness for each tint color indicated throughout Project.
- B. Strength: Where float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, Kind HS heat-treated float glass, or Kind FT heat-treated float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where heat-strengthened glass is indicated, provide Kind HS heat-treated float glass or Kind FT heat-treated float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where fully tempered glass is indicated, provide Kind FT heat-treated float glass.
- C. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Provide exterior glazing that passes enhanced-protection testing requirements in ASTM E 1996 for Wind Zone based on project location when tested according to ASTM E 1886. Test specimens shall be no smaller in width and length than glazing indicated for use on the Project and shall be installed in same manner as glazing indicated for use on the Project.
  1. Large-Missile Test: For glazing located within 30 feet (9.1 m) of grade.
  2. Small-Missile Test: For glazing located more than 30 feet (9.1 m) above grade.
- D. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
  1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites of thickness indicated.
  2. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
  3. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
  4. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 400 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F (W/sq. m x K).
  5. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 400 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program.
  6. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 400.

### 2.2 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Quality-Q3, Class I (clear) unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Ultraclear Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Quality-Q3, Class I, complying with other requirements specified and with visible light transmission not less than 91 percent and solar heat gain coefficient not less than 0.87.
  1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. AFG Industries, Inc.; Krystal Klear.
    - b. Guardian Industries Corp.; Ultrawhite.
    - c. Pilkington North America; Optiwhite.

- d. PPG Industries, Inc.; Starphire.
- C. Heat-Treated Float Glass: ASTM C 1048; Type I; Quality-Q3; Class I (clear) unless otherwise indicated; of kind and condition indicated.
- 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. For uncoated glass, comply with requirements for Condition A.
  - 3. For coated vision glass, comply with requirements for Condition C (other coated glass).
- D. Pyrolytic-Coated, Self-Cleaning, Low-Maintenance Glass: Clear float glass with a coating on first surface having both photocatalytic and hydrophilic properties that act to loosen dirt and to cause water to sheet evenly over the glass instead of beading.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. AFG Industries, Inc.; Spotless Ti.
    - b. Cardinal Glass Industries; LoE2 Plus.
    - c. Pilkington North America; Activ.
    - d. PPG Industries, Inc.; SunClean.
- E. Uncoated Tinted Float Glass: Class 2, complying with other requirements specified.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. PPG Industries.
  - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product:
    - a. PPG Industries – Solarban 70XL.
  - 3. Tint Color: Blue-green.
  - 4. Visible Light Transmittance: 63 percent minimum.

### 2.3 LAMINATED GLASS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- a. PPG Industries.
- B. Laminated Glass: ASTM C 1172, and complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials, and with other requirements specified. Use materials that have a proven record of no tendency to bubble, discolor, or lose physical and mechanical properties after fabrication and installation.
- 1. Construction: Laminate glass with polyvinyl butyral interlayer or cast-in-place and cured-transparent-resin interlayer to comply with interlayer manufacturer's written recommendations.
  - 2. Interlayer Thickness: Provide thickness not less than that indicated and as needed to comply with requirements.
  - 3. Interlayer Color: Clear unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistant Laminated Glass: ASTM C 1172, and complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials, with "Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance" Paragraph in "Glass Products, General" Article, and with other requirements specified. Use materials that have a proven record of no tendency to bubble, discolor, or lose physical and mechanical properties after fabrication and installation.
1. Construction: Laminate glass with one of the following to comply with interlayer manufacturer's written recommendations:
    - a. Polyvinyl butyral interlayer.
    - b. Polyvinyl butyral interlayers reinforced with polyethylene terephthalate film.
    - c. Ionoplast interlayer.
    - d. Cast-in-place and cured-transparent-resin interlayer.
    - e. Cast-in-place and cured-transparent-resin interlayer reinforced with polyethylene terephthalate film.
  2. Interlayer Thickness: Provide thickness not less than that indicated and as needed to comply with requirements.
  3. Interlayer Color: Clear unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Glass: Comply with applicable requirements in "Glass Products" Article as indicated by designations in "Laminated-Glass Types" Article.

#### 2.4 INSULATING GLASS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- a. PPG Industries; Solarban 70XL, or approved equal.
- B. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E 2190, and complying with other requirements specified.
1. Sealing System: Dual seal, with manufacturer's standard primary and secondary.
  2. Spacer: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction.
  3. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or blend of both.
- C. Glass: Comply with applicable requirements in "Glass Products" Article and in "Laminated Glass" Article as indicated by designations in "Insulating-Glass Types" Article and in "Insulating-Laminated-Glass Types" Article.

#### 2.5 GLAZING GASKETS

- A. Dense Compression Gaskets: Molded or extruded gaskets of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal, made from one of the following:
1. Neoprene complying with ASTM C 864.
  2. EPDM complying with ASTM C 864.
  3. Silicone complying with ASTM C 1115.
  4. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber complying with ASTM C 1115.
- B. Soft Compression Gaskets: Extruded or molded, closed-cell, integral-skinned neoprene, EPDM, silicone or thermoplastic polyolefin rubber gaskets complying with ASTM C 509, Type II, black; of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal.

1. Application: Use where soft compression gaskets will be compressed by inserting dense compression gaskets on opposite side of glazing or pressure applied by means of pressure-glazing stops on opposite side of glazing.

- C. Lock-Strip Gaskets: Neoprene extrusions in size and shape indicated, fabricated into frames with molded corner units and zipper lock-strips, complying with ASTM C 542, black.

## 2.6 GLAZING SEALANTS

### A. General:

1. Compatibility: Provide glazing sealants that are compatible with one another and with other materials they will contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
3. Sealants used inside the weatherproofing system, shall have a VOC content of not more than 250 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
4. Sealants used inside the weatherproofing system shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
5. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

- B. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 790.
  - b. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones; SilPruf LM SCS2700.
  - c. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex Sil 290.
  - d. Pecora Corporation; 890.
  - e. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division; SikaSil-C990.
  - f. Tremco Incorporated; Spectrem 1.

- C. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. BASF Building Systems; Omniseal 50.
  - b. Dow Corning Corporation.
  - c. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones;
  - d. May National Associates, Inc.; Bondaflex Sil 295.
  - e. Pecora Corporation;
  - f. Polymeric Systems, Inc.; PSI-641.
  - g. Sika Corporation, Construction Products Division; SikaSil-C995.
  - h. Tremco Incorporated.

- D. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 799.
    - b. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones.
    - c. May National Associates, Inc.
    - d. Polymeric Systems, Inc.; PSI-631.
    - e. Schnee-Morehead, Inc., an ITW company; SM5731 Poly-Glaze Plus.
    - f. Tremco Incorporated.
- E. Glazing Sealant: Acid-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. BASF Building Systems; OmniPlus.
    - b. Bostik, Inc.; Chem-Calk 1200.
    - c. Dow Corning Corporation; 999-A.
    - d. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones.
    - e. May National Associates, Inc.
    - f. Pecora Corporation; 860.
    - g. Polymeric Systems, Inc.; PSI-601.
    - h. Schnee-Morehead, Inc., an ITW company; SM5732 Polyglaze.
    - i. Tremco Incorporated.

## 2.7 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
  2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
  3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.
- B. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
1. AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
  2. AAMA 810.1, Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

## 2.8 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.

- C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).
- F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.
- G. Perimeter Insulation for Fire-Resistive Glazing: Product that is approved by testing agency that listed and labeled fire-resistant glazing product with which it is used for application and fire-protection rating indicated.

## 2.9 INSULATING-GLASS TYPES

- A. Glass Type **IG-1**: Low-e-coated, clear insulating glass.
  - 1. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm).
  - 2. Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 6.0 mm.
  - 3. Outdoor Lite: Solarban 70 XL, tinted.
  - 4. Interspace Content: Argon.
  - 5. Indoor Lite: Clear float glass.
    - a. Provide fully tempered float glass where required by Code.
  - 6. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on third surface.
  - 7. Visible Light Transmittance: 47 percent minimum.
  - 8. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: 0.28 maximum.
  - 9. Summer Daytime U-Factor: 0.26 maximum.
  - 10. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.25 maximum.
  - 11. Outdoor Visible Reflectance: 10 percent maximum.
  - 12. Provide safety glazing labeling on tempered units.

## 2.10 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
- B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.
- C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
  - 1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
  - 2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
  - 3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
  - 4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
- B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that will leave visible marks in the completed work.

### 3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Adjust glazing channel dimensions as required by Project conditions during installation to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.
- C. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.
- D. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- E. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- F. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- G. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches (1270 mm).
  - 1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
  - 2. Provide 1/8-inch (3-mm) minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- H. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- I. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- J. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.
- K. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.

- L. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

#### 3.4 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first and then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs and then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.
- F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
- G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

#### 3.5 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

#### 3.6 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

- A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel

and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.

- B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
- C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

### 3.7 LOCK-STRIP GASKET GLAZING

- A. Comply with ASTM C 716 and gasket manufacturer's written instructions. Provide supplementary wet seal and weep system unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.
- C. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains; remove as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.
- D. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, or abraded or that is damaged from natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.
- E. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces in each area of Project not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 088000

## SECTION 089000 - LOUVERS AND VENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Fixed, extruded-aluminum louvers.
2. Fixed, extruded-aluminum equipment screens.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Division 04 Section "Concrete Unit Masonry" for building wall vents (brick vents) into masonry.
2. Division 08 Section "Hollow Metal Doors and Frames" for louvers in hollow-metal doors.
3. Division 08 Section "Flush Wood Doors" for louvers in flush wood doors.
4. Division 09 Section "Exterior Painting" for field painting louvers.
5. Division 23 Sections for louvers that are a part of mechanical equipment.
6. Division 26 Sections for electrical power connections for motor-operated adjustable louvers.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Louver Terminology: Definitions of terms for metal louvers contained in AMCA 501 apply to this Section unless otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
- B. Horizontal Louver: Louver with horizontal blades; i.e., the axes of the blades are horizontal.
- C. Vertical Louver: Louver with vertical blades; i.e., the axes of the blades are vertical.
- D. Drainable-Blade Louver: Louver with blades having gutters that collect water and drain it to channels in jambs and mullions, which carry it to bottom of unit and away from opening.
- E. Storm-Resistant Louver: Louver that provides specified wind-driven rain performance, as determined by testing according to AMCA 500-L.

#### 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design louvers, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using structural and seismic performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Louvers shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of louver components, noise or metal fatigue caused by louver blade rattle or flutter, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors. Wind pressures shall be considered to act normal to the face of the building.
  1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on pressures as indicated on Drawings.
- C. Seismic Performance: Louvers, including attachments to other construction, shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.

- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes, without buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, or other detrimental effects.
- E. Louver Performance Ratings: Provide louvers complying with requirements specified, as demonstrated by testing manufacturer's stock units identical to those provided, except for length and width according to AMCA 500-L.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
  - 1. For louvers specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.
- B. Shop Drawings: For louvers and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Show frame profiles and blade profiles, angles, and spacing.
  - 1. Show weep paths, gaskets, flashing, sealant, and other means of preventing water intrusion.
  - 2. Show mullion profiles and locations.
  - 3. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring for motorized adjustable louvers.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of metal finish required.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For louvers indicated to comply with structural and seismic performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed according to AMCA 500-L by a qualified testing agency or by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, for each type of louver and showing compliance with performance requirements specified.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain louvers and vents from single source from a single manufacturer where indicated to be of same type, design, or factory-applied color finish.
- B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
  - 2. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
  - 3. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."
- C. SMACNA Standard: Comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" for fabrication, construction details, and installation procedures.
- D. UL and NEMA Compliance: Provide motors and related components for motor-operated louvers that are listed and labeled by UL and comply with applicable NEMA standards.

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5, T-52, or T6.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003 or 5005 with temper as required for forming, or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.
- C. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 319.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) zinc coating, mill phosphatized.
- E. Fasteners: Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
  - 1. Use hex-head or Phillips pan-head or tamper-resistant screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. For fastening aluminum, use aluminum or 300 series stainless-steel fasteners.
  - 3. For fastening galvanized steel, use hot-dip-galvanized steel or 300 series stainless-steel fasteners.
  - 4. For fastening stainless steel, use 300 series stainless-steel fasteners.
  - 5. For color-finished louvers, use fasteners with heads that match color of louvers.
- F. Postinstalled Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors, made from stainless-steel components, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 4 times the loads imposed, for concrete, or 6 times the load imposed, for masonry, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- G. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

### 2.2 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Assemble louvers in factory to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Vertical Assemblies: Where height of louver units exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, fabricate units to permit field-bolted assembly with close-fitting joints in jambs and mullions, reinforced with splice plates.
- C. Maintain equal louver blade spacing, including separation between blades and frames at head and sill, to produce uniform appearance.
- D. Fabricate frames, including integral sills, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.
  - 1. Frame Type: As indicated.
- E. Include supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.
- F. Provide vertical mullions of type and at spacings indicated, but not more than recommended by manufacturer, or 72 inches (1830 mm) o.c., whichever is less.

1. Fully Recessed Mullions: Where indicated, provide mullions fully recessed behind louver blades. Where length of louver exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, fabricate with close-fitting blade splices designed to permit expansion and contraction.
2. Semirecessed Mullions: Where indicated, provide mullions partly recessed behind louver blades so louver blades appear continuous. Where length of louver exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, fabricate with interlocking split mullions and close-fitting blade splices designed to permit expansion and contraction.
3. Exposed Mullions: Where indicated, provide units with exposed mullions of same width and depth as louver frame. Where length of louver exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, provide interlocking split mullions designed to permit expansion and contraction.

G. Provide subsills made of same material as louvers or extended sills for recessed louvers.

H. Join frame members to each other and to fixed louver blades with fillet welds, threaded fasteners, or both, as standard with louver manufacturer unless otherwise indicated or size of louver assembly makes bolted connections between frame members necessary.

### 2.3 FIXED, EXTRUDED-ALUMINUM LOUVERS

A. Horizontal Storm-Resistant Louver:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Air Balance Inc.; a Mestek company.
  - b. Air Flow Company, Inc.
  - c. Airolite Company, LLC (The).
  - d. All-Lite Architectural Products.
  - e. American Warming and Ventilating, Inc.; a Mestek company.
  - f. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - g. Construction Specialties, Inc.
  - h. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - i. Industrial Louvers, Inc.
  - j. NCA Manufacturing, Inc.
  - k. Nystrom Building Products.
  - l. Reliable Products, Inc.
  - m. Ruskin Company; Tomkins PLC.
  - n. United Enertech Corp.
3. Louver Depth: as indicated.
4. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.080 inch (2.03 mm).
5. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.

B. Vertical, Sightproof, Louver:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Insert manufacturer's name; product name or designation or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Air Balance Inc.; a Mestek company.
  - b. Air Flow Company, Inc.
  - c. Airolite Company, LLC (The).

- d. American Warming and Ventilating, Inc.; a Mestek company.
  - e. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - f. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - g. Construction Specialties, Inc.
  - h. Dowco Products Group; Safe-Air of Illinois, Inc.
  - i. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - j. Industrial Louvers, Inc.
  - k. Ruskin Company; Tomkins PLC.
  - l. United Enertech Corp.
3. Louver Depth: 4 inches (100 mm).
  4. Blade Profile: Chevron-shaped blade.
  5. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.080 inch (2.03 mm).
  6. Blade Spacing: 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
  7. Mullion Type: Exposed.

C. Horizontal Blade Equipment Screen:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Greenheck Fan Corporation; EES-401 or comparable product by one of the following:
  - a. Air Balance Inc.; a Mestek company.
  - b. Air Flow Company, Inc.
  - c. Airolite Company, LLC (The).
  - d. American Warming and Ventilating, Inc.; a Mestek company.
  - e. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - f. Cesco Products; a division of Mestek, Inc.
  - g. Construction Specialties, Inc.
  - h. Dowco Products Group; Safe-Air of Illinois, Inc.
  - i. Reliable Products, Inc.
  - j. Ruskin Company; Tomkins PLC.
  - k. United Enertech Corp.
2. Louver Depth: 4 inches (100 mm).
3. Blade Profile: Inverted horizontal.
4. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.080 inch (2.03 mm).
5. Louver Performance Ratings:
  - a. Free Area: Not less than 8.0 sq. ft. (0.74 sq. m) for 48-inch- (1220-mm-) wide by 48-inch- (1220-mm-) high louver.

2.4 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

2.5 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Finish louvers after assembly.
- B. High-Performance Organic Finish: 3-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 50 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorages that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery of such items to Project site.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate and place louvers and vents level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.
- B. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.
- C. Form closely fitted joints with exposed connections accurately located and secured.
- D. Provide perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.
- E. Repair finishes damaged by cutting, welding, soldering, and grinding. Restore finishes so no evidence remains of corrective work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the factory, make required alterations, and refinish entire unit or provide new units.
- F. Protect unpainted galvanized and nonferrous-metal surfaces that will be in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals from corrosion and galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint or by separating surfaces with waterproof gaskets or nonmetallic flashing.
- G. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as louver installation progresses, where weathertight louver joints are required. Comply with Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealants applied during louver installation.

#### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Test operation of adjustable louvers and adjust as needed to produce fully functioning units that comply with requirements.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces of louvers and vents that are not protected by temporary covering, to remove fingerprints and soil during construction period. Do not let soil accumulate during construction period.
- C. Before final inspection, clean exposed surfaces with water and a mild soap or detergent not harmful to finishes. Thoroughly rinse surfaces and dry.
- D. Restore louvers and vents damaged during installation and construction so no evidence remains of corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by Architect, remove damaged units and replace with new units.

1. Touch up minor abrasions in finishes with air-dried coating that matches color and gloss of, and is compatible with, factory-applied finish coating.

END OF SECTION 089000

SECTION 092116.23 - GYPSUM BOARD SHAFT WALL ASSEMBLIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Gypsum board shaft wall assemblies.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each component of gypsum board shaft wall assembly.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Evaluation Reports: For shaft wall assemblies and firestop tracks, from ICC-ES.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or with gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install interior products until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, and irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: Provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies tested according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by a testing and inspecting agency.

## 2.2 GYPSUM BOARD SHAFT WALL ASSEMBLIES

- A. Fire-Resistance Rating: As indicated.
- B. STC Rating: As indicated, 51, minimum.
- C. Studs: Manufacturer's standard profile for repetitive members, corner and end members, and fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
  - 1. Depth: As indicated.
  - 2. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated.
- D. Runner Tracks: Manufacturer's standard J-profile track with manufacturer's standard long-leg length, but at least 2 inches (51 mm) long and matching studs in depth.
  - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: Matching steel studs.
- E. Firestop Tracks: Provide firestop track at head of shaft wall on each floor level.
- F. Elevator Hoistway Entrances: Manufacturer's standard J-profile jamb strut with long-leg length of 3 inches (76 mm), matching studs in depth, and not less than 0.033 inch (0.84 mm) thick.
- G. Room-Side Finish: As indicated.
- H. Shaft-Side Finish: As indicated.
- I. Insulation: Sound attenuation blankets.

## 2.3 PANEL PRODUCTS

- A. Panel Size: Provide in maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.
- B. Gypsum Shaftliner Board, Type X: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M; manufacturer's proprietary fire-resistive liner panels with paper faces.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. American Gypsum; Shaft Liner.
    - b. CertainTeed Corp.; ProRoc Shaftliner.
    - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC, Subsidiary of Georgia Pacific; ToughRock Fireguard Shaftliner.
    - d. Lafarge North America, Inc.; Firecheck Type X Shaftliner.
    - e. National Gypsum Company; Gold Bond Brand Fire-Shield Shaftliner.
    - f. PABCO Gypsum; Pabcore Shaftliner Type X.
    - g. Temple-Inland Inc.; Fire-Rated SilentGuard Gypsum Shaftliner System.
    - h. USG Corporation; Sheetrock Brand Gypsum Liner Panel.
  - 2. Thickness: 1 inch (25.4 mm).
  - 3. Long Edges: Double bevel.
- C. Gypsum Shaftliner Board, Moisture- and Mold-Resistant Type X: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M; manufacturer's proprietary fire-resistive liner panels with moisture- and mold-resistant core and surfaces.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. CertainTeed Corp.; ProRoc Moisture and Mold Resistant Shaftliner.
  - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC, Subsidiary of Georgia Pacific; Dens-Glass Ultra Shaftliner.
  - c. Lafarge North America, Inc.; Firecheck Moldcheck Type X Shaftliner.
  - d. National Gypsum Company; Gold Bond Brand Fire-Shield Shaftliner XP.
  - e. PABCO Gypsum; Pabcore Mold Curb Shaftliner Type X.
  - f. Temple-Inland Inc.; Fire-Rated SilentGuard TS Mold-Resistant Gypsum Shaftliner System.
  - g. USG Corporation; Sheetrock Brand Mold Tough Gypsum Liner Panel.
2. Thickness: 1 inch (25.4 mm).
3. Long Edges: Double bevel.
4. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

D. Gypsum Board: As specified in Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board."

#### 2.4 NON-LOAD-BEARING STEEL FRAMING

A. Steel Framing Members: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated.

1. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180), hot-dip galvanized unless otherwise indicated.

B. Firestop Tracks: Top runner manufactured to allow partition heads to expand and contract with movement of the structure while maintaining continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Fire Trak Corp.; Fire Trak System attached to studs with Fire Trak Posi Klip.
  - b. Grace Construction Products; FlameSafe FlowTrak System.
  - c. Metal-Lite, Inc.; The System.
  - d. Steel Network Inc.

#### 2.5 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with manufacturer's written recommendations.

B. Trim Accessories: Cornerbead, edge trim, and control joints of material and shapes as specified in Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board" that comply with gypsum board shaft wall assembly manufacturer's written recommendations for application indicated.

C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002 unless otherwise indicated.

D. Track Fasteners: Power-driven fasteners of size and material required to withstand loading conditions imposed on shaft wall assemblies without exceeding allowable design stress of track, fasteners, or structural substrates in which anchors are embedded.

1. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to five (5) times design load, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified testing agency.
2. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to ten

(10) times design load, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified testing agency.

- E. Sound Attenuation Blankets: As specified in Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board."
- F. Acoustical Sealant: As specified in Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board."

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to which gypsum board shaft wall assemblies attach or abut, with Installer present, including hollow-metal frames, elevator hoistway door frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing. Examine for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials: Coordinate with gypsum board shaft wall assemblies so both elements of Work remain complete and undamaged. Patch or replace sprayed fire-resistive materials removed or damaged during installation of shaft wall assemblies to comply with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Applied Fireproofing."
- B. After sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, remove only to extent necessary for installation of gypsum board shaft wall assemblies and without reducing the fire-resistive material thickness below that which is required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install gypsum board shaft wall assemblies to comply with requirements of fire-resistance-rated assemblies indicated, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and ASTM C 754 other than stud-spacing requirements.
- B. Do not bridge building expansion joints with shaft wall assemblies; frame both sides of expansion joints with furring and other support.
- C. Install supplementary framing in gypsum board shaft wall assemblies around openings and as required for blocking, bracing, and support of gravity and pullout loads of fixtures, equipment, services, heavy trim, furnishings, wall-mounted door stops, and similar items that cannot be supported directly by shaft wall assembly framing.
  - 1. Elevator Hoistway: At elevator hoistway-entrance door frames, provide jamb struts on each side of door frame.
  - 2. Reinforcing: Where handrails directly attach to gypsum board shaft wall assemblies, provide galvanized steel reinforcing strip with 0.033-inch (0.84-mm) minimum thickness of base metal (uncoated), accurately positioned and secured behind at least one layer of face panel.

- D. Penetrations: At penetrations in shaft wall, maintain fire-resistance rating of shaft wall assembly by installing supplementary steel framing around perimeter of penetration and fire protection behind boxes containing wiring devices, elevator call buttons, elevator floor indicators, and similar items.
- E. Isolate perimeter of gypsum panels from building structure to prevent cracking of panels, while maintaining continuity of fire-rated construction.
- F. Firestop Tracks: Where indicated, install to maintain continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
- G. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C 840 and in specific locations approved by Architect while maintaining fire-resistance rating of gypsum board shaft wall assemblies.
- H. Sound-Rated Shaft Wall Assemblies: Seal gypsum board shaft walls with acoustical sealant at perimeter of each assembly where it abuts other work and at joints and penetrations within each assembly.
- I. Cant Panels: At projections into shaft where indicated, install 1/2- or 5/8-inch- (13- or 16-mm-) thick gypsum board cants covering tops of projections.
  - 1. Slope cant panels at least 75 degrees from horizontal. Set base edge of panels in adhesive and secure top edges to shaft walls at 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. with screws fastened to shaft wall framing.
  - 2. Where steel framing is required to support gypsum board cants, install framing at 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. and extend studs from the projection to shaft wall framing.
- J. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch (3 mm) from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

#### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- B. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, and irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 092116.23

## SECTION 092216 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Non-load-bearing steel framing systems for interior gypsum board assemblies.
  - 2. Suspension systems for interior gypsum ceilings, soffits, and grid systems.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Division 05 Section "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for exterior and interior load-bearing and exterior non-load-bearing wall studs; floor joists; roof rafters and ceiling joists; and roof trusses.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. LEED Submittals:

- 1. Product Data for Credit MR 4: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.

#### 1.4 INFORMATION SUBMITTALS

- A. Evaluation Reports: For dimpled steel studs and runners and firestop tracks, from ICC-ES.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

#### 2.2 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.

1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180), hot-dip galvanized, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645. Use either steel studs and runners or dimpled steel studs and runners.
1. Steel Studs and Runners:
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  2. Dimpled Steel Studs and Runners:
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated, provide one of the following:
1. Single Long-Leg Runner System: ASTM C 645 top runner with 2-inch- (51-mm-) deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs, installed with studs friction fit into top runner and with continuous bridging located within 12 inches (305 mm) of the top of studs to provide lateral bracing.
  2. Double-Runner System: ASTM C 645 top runners, inside runner with 2-inch- (51-mm-) deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs and fastened to studs, and outer runner sized to friction fit inside runner.
  3. Deflection Track: Steel sheet top runner manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
    - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Dietrich Metal Framing; SLP-TRK Slotted Deflection Track.
      - 2) MBA Building Supplies; FlatSteel Deflection Track, Slotted Deflecto Track.
      - 3) Steel Network Inc. (The); VertiClip SLD, VertiTrack VTD Series.
      - 4) Superior Metal Trim; Superior Flex Track System (SFT).
      - 5) Telling Industries; Vertical Slip Track, Vertical Slip Track II.
- D. Firestop Tracks: Top runner manufactured to allow partition heads to expand and contract with movement of the structure while maintaining continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Fire Trak Corp.; Fire Trak System attached to studs with Fire Trak Posi Klip.
    - b. Grace Construction Products; FlameSafe FlowTrak System.
    - c. Metal-Lite, Inc.; The System.
- E. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.
1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.

- F. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: Steel, 0.053-inch (1.34-mm) minimum base-metal thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide flanges.
  - 1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches (38 by 38 mm), 0.068-inch- (1.72-mm-) thick, galvanized steel.
- G. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.
  - 1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
- H. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission.
  - 1. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.
- I. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: 0.053-inch (1.34-mm) uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide flanges.
  - 1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge type of steel sheet with minimum uncoated-steel thickness of 0.033 inch (0.8 mm).
  - 3. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- (1.59-mm-) diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- (1.21-mm-) diameter wire.
- J. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches (31.8 mm), wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch (22 mm), minimum uncoated-metal thickness of 0.018 inch (0.45 mm), and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.

## 2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- (1.59-mm-) diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- (1.21-mm-) diameter wire.
- B. Hanger Attachments to Concrete:
  - 1. Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials with holes or loops for attaching wire hangers and capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to 5 times that imposed by construction as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488 by an independent testing agency.
    - a. Type: Cast-in-place anchor, designed for attachment to concrete forms or Postinstalled, expansion anchor.
  - 2. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials with clips or other devices for attaching hangers of type indicated, and capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by construction as determined by testing according to ASTM E 1190 by an independent testing agency.
- C. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.16 inch (4.12 mm) in diameter.
- D. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet, in size indicated on Drawings.

- E. Carrying Channels: Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-metal thickness of 0.053 inch (1.34 mm) and minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide flanges.
  - 1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  
- F. Furring Channels (Furring Members):
  - 1. Cold-Rolled Channels: 0.053-inch (1.34-mm) uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) wide flanges, 3/4 inch (19 mm) deep.
  - 2. Steel Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Dimpled Steel Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
    - b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 4. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645, 7/8 inch (22 mm) deep.
    - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 5. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) deep members designed to reduce sound transmission.
    - a. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.
  
- G. Grid Suspension System for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C 645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Drywall Grid Systems.
    - b. Chicago Metallic Corporation; Drywall Grid System.
    - c. USG Corporation; Drywall Suspension System.

## 2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.
  - 1. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.
  
- B. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls: Provide one of the following:
  - 1. Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt: ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt), nonperforated.
  - 2. Foam Gasket: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell vinyl foam strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, in width to suit steel stud size.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.
  - 1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.
- B. Coordination with Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials:
  - 1. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach offset anchor plates or ceiling runners (tracks) to surfaces indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials. Where offset anchor plates are required, provide continuous plates fastened to building structure not more than 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
  - 2. After sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, remove them only to extent necessary for installation of non-load-bearing steel framing. Do not reduce thickness of fire-resistive materials below that required for fire-resistance ratings indicated. Protect adjacent fire-resistive materials from damage.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C 754, except comply with framing sizes and spacing indicated.
  - 1. Gypsum Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 841 that apply to framing installation.
  - 2. Portland Cement Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 1063 that apply to framing installation.
  - 3. Gypsum Veneer Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 844 that apply to framing installation.
  - 4. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
- C. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
- D. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

### 3.4 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- B. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
  - 1. Space studs as follows:
    - a. Single-Layer Application: 16 inches (406 mm) o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Multilayer Application: 16 inches (406 mm) o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install tracks (runners) at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings, except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts penetrating partitions above ceiling.
  - 1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
  - 2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install runner track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
    - a. Install two studs at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch (13-mm) clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
    - c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.
  - 3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
  - 4. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated and support closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.
    - a. Firestop Track: Where indicated, install to maintain continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
  - 5. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.
  - 6. Curved Partitions:
    - a. Bend track to uniform curve and locate straight lengths so they are tangent to arcs.
    - b. Begin and end each arc with a stud, and space intermediate studs equally along arcs. On straight lengths of no fewer than two studs at ends of arcs, place studs 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
- D. Direct Furring:
  - 1. Screw to wood framing.
  - 2. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
- E. Z-Furring Members:
  - 1. Erect insulation (specified in Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation") vertically and hold in place with Z-furring members spaced 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.

2. Except at exterior corners, securely attach narrow flanges of furring members to wall with concrete stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
  3. At exterior corners, attach wide flange of furring members to wall with short flange extending beyond corner; on adjacent wall surface, screw-attach short flange of furring channel to web of attached channel. At interior corners, space second member no more than 12 inches (305 mm) from corner and cut insulation to fit.
- F. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch (3 mm) from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

### 3.5 INSTALLING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

- A. Install suspension system components in sizes and spacings indicated on Drawings, but not less than those required by referenced installation standards for assembly types and other assembly components indicated.
- B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
- C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:
1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
    - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
    - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
  3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
  4. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
  5. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
  6. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
  7. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
  8. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- D. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.
- E. Seismic Bracing: Sway-brace suspension systems with hangers used for support.

- F. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.
  
- G. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3 mm in 3.6 m) measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

END OF SECTION 092216

SECTION 092900 - GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Interior gypsum board.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Division 09 Section "Gypsum Board Shaft Wall Assemblies" for metal shaft-wall framing, gypsum shaft liners, and other components of shaft-wall assemblies.
- 2. Division 09 Section "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for non-structural framing and suspension systems that support gypsum panels.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Samples: For the following products:

- 1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in 12-inch- (300-mm-) long length for each trim accessory indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Before beginning gypsum board installation, install mockups of at least 100 sq. ft. (9 sq. m) in surface area to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

- 1. Install mockups for the following:

- a. Each level of gypsum board finish indicated for use in exposed locations.
- b. Each texture finish indicated.

- 2. Apply or install final decoration indicated, including painting and wallcoverings, on exposed surfaces for review of mockups.
- 3. Simulate finished lighting conditions for review of mockups.
- 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, those that are moisture damaged, and those that are mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

### 2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

### 2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. American Gypsum.
  - 2. CertainTeed Corp.
  - 3. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
  - 4. Lafarge North America Inc.
  - 5. National Gypsum Company.
  - 6. PABCO Gypsum.
  - 7. Temple-Inland.
  - 8. USG Corporation.
- B. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
  - 1. Thickness: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- C. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
  - 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm).
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.

- D. Flexible Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. Manufactured to bend to fit radii and to be more flexible than standard regular-type gypsum board of same thickness.
  - 1. Thickness: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm).
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- E. Gypsum Ceiling Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
  - 1. Thickness: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- F. Foil-Backed Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
  - 1. Core: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- G. Abuse-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1629/C 1629M.,
  - 1. Core: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
  - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10.
- H. Moisture- and Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
  - 1. Core: As indicated.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
  - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10.

#### 2.4 SPECIALTY GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Gypsum Board, Type C: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. Manufactured to have increased fire-resistive capability.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. American Gypsum; Firebloc Type C.
    - b. CertainTeed Corp.; ProRoc Type C.
    - c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC; Fireguard C.
    - d. Lafarge North America Inc.; Firecheck Type C.
    - e. National Gypsum Company; Gold Bond Fire-Shield C.
    - f. PABCO Gypsum; Flame Curb Type Super C.
    - g. Temple-Inland; Type TG-C.
    - h. USG Corporation; Firecode C Core.
  - 2. Thickness: As required by fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Long Edges: Tapered.
- B. Glass-Mat Interior Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1658/C 1658M. With fiberglass mat laminated to both sides. Specifically designed for interior use.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC; DensArmour Plus.
  2. Core: As indicated.
  3. Long Edges: Tapered.
  4. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10.
- C. Acoustically Enhanced Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. Multilayer products constructed of two layers of gypsum boards sandwiching a viscoelastic sound-absorbing polymer core.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. National Gypsum Company; Sound Break.
    - b. Quiet Solution, Quiet Rock.
  2. Core: As indicated.
  3. Long Edges: Tapered.
- D. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, with fiberglass mat laminated to both sides and with manufacturer's standard edges.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corp.; GlasRoc Sheathing.
    - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC; Dens-Glass Gold.
    - c. National Gypsum Company; Gold Bond, e(2)XP.
    - d. USG Corporation; Securock Glass Mat Sheathing.
  2. Core: As indicated.

## 2.5 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet, rolled zinc, plastic, or paper-faced galvanized steel sheet.
  2. Shapes:
    - a. Cornerbead.
    - b. Bullnose bead.
    - c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
    - e. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
    - f. Expansion (control) joint.
    - g. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.
- B. Exterior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
1. Material: Hot-dip galvanized steel sheet, plastic, or rolled zinc.
  2. Shapes:
    - a. Cornerbead.
    - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.

- c. Expansion (Control) Joint: One-piece, rolled zinc with V-shaped slot and removable strip covering slot opening.

C. Aluminum Trim: Extruded accessories of profiles and dimensions indicated.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Basis of Design: Fry Reglet Corp.
  - b. Gordon, Inc.
  - c. Pittcon Industries.
- 2. Aluminum: Alloy and temper with not less than the strength and durability properties of ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5.
- 3. Finish: Corrosion-resistant primer compatible with joint compound and finish materials specified.
- 4. Profiles: Provide the following profiles.
  - a. Drywall Control Joint.

2.6 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.

B. Joint Tape:

- 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
- 2. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Paper.
- 3. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
- 4. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.

C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.

- 1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
- 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use setting-type taping or drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
- 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use setting-type, sandable topping or drying-type, all-purpose compound.
- 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use setting-type, sandable topping or drying-type, all-purpose compound.
- 5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use setting-type, sandable topping compound, drying-type, all-purpose compound or high-build interior coating product designed for application by airless sprayer and to be used instead of skim coat to produce Level 5 finish.

D. Joint Compound for Exterior Applications:

- 1. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sandable topping compound.
- 2. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: As recommended by sheathing board manufacturer.

## 2.7 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) thick.
  - 2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
- D. Sound Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
  - 1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
- E. Acoustical Joint Sealant: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
  - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Accumetric LLC; BOSS 824 Acoustical Sound Sealant.
    - b. Grabber Construction Products; Acoustical Sealant GSC.
    - c. Pecora Corporation.
    - d. Specified Technologies, Inc.; Smoke N Sound Acoustical Sealant.
    - e. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.
  - 2. Acoustical joint sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 3. Acoustical joint sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- F. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation."
- G. Vapor Retarder: As specified in Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C 840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
  - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. (0.7 sq. m) in area.
  - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
  - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- (6.4- to 9.5-mm-) wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments, except floors. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- (6.4- to 12.7-mm-) wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- I. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919 and with manufacturer's written recommendations for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.
- J. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

### 3.3 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
  - 1. Wallboard Type: Vertical surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Type X: As indicated on Drawings Where required for fire-resistance-rated assembly.
  - 3. Flexible Type: Apply in double layer at curved assemblies.
  - 4. Ceiling Type: Ceiling surfaces.
  - 5. Foil-Backed Type: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 6. Abuse-Resistant Type: As indicated on Drawings.

7. Moisture- and Mold-Resistant Type: As indicated on Drawings.
8. Type C: Where required for specific fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.
9. Glass-Mat Interior Type: As indicated on Drawings.
10. Acoustically Enhanced Type: As indicated on Drawings.
11. Skim-Coated Type: As indicated on Drawings.

B. Single-Layer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
  - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
  - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
3. On Z-furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

C. Multilayer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying face layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, 16 inches (400 mm) minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
3. On Z-furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers and face layers separately to supports with screws.

D. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

E. Curved Surfaces:

1. Install panels horizontally (perpendicular to supports) and unbroken, to extent possible, across curved surface plus 12-inch- (300-mm-) long straight sections at ends of curves and tangent to them.
2. For double-layer construction, fasten base layer to studs with screws 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. Center gypsum board face layer over joints in base layer, and fasten to studs with screws spaced 12 inches (300 mm) o.c.

### 3.4 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C 840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
  - 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: Use at curved openings.
- D. Aluminum Trim: Install in locations indicated on Drawings.

### 3.5 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:
  - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
  - 2. Level 2: Where indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Level 3: Where indicated on Drawings.
  - 4. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in other Division 09 Sections.
  - 5. Level 5: Where indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in other Division 09 Sections.
- E. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions for use as exposed soffit board.
- F. Glass-Mat Faced Panels: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 092900

SECTION 093000 - TILING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from a single manufacturer for each product:
  - 1. Stone thresholds.
  - 2. Waterproof membrane.
  - 3. Crack isolation membrane.
  - 4. Joint sealants.
  - 5. Cementitious backer units.
  - 6. Metal edge strips.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 1 Specification Sections.
- B. Product data for each type of product specified.
- C. Samples for initial selection purposes in form of manufacturer's color charts consisting of actual tiles or sections of tile showing full range of colors (minimum of 90), textures, and patterns (minimum of 50) available for each type and composition of tile indicated. Include samples of grout and accessories involving color selection. Quarry tile work will require dark custom color grout.
- D. Samples for verification purposes of each item listed below, prepared on samples of size and construction indicated, products involve color and texture variations, in sets showing full range of variations expected.
  - 1. Full size units of each type of trim and accessory for each color required.
  - 2. Slate thresholds in 6-inch lengths.
- E. Master grade certificates for each shipment, type, and composition of tile, signed by tile manufacturer and Installer.
- F. Qualification data for firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include list of completed projects with project names, addresses, names of Architects and Owners, plus other information specified.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Single Source Responsibility for Tile: Obtain each color, grade, finish, type, composition, and variety of tile from a single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties without delaying progress of the Work.

- B. Single Source Responsibility for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality from one manufacturer for each cementitious and admixture component and from one source or producer for each aggregate.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced Installer who has successfully completed tile installations similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for Project.

#### 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Static Coefficient of Friction: For tile installed on walkway surfaces, provide products with the following values as determined by testing identical products per ASTM C 1028:
  - 1. Level Surfaces: Minimum 0.6 COF.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirement of ANSI A137.1 for labeling sealed tile packages.
- B. Prevent damage or contamination to materials by water, freezing, foreign matter, and other causes.
- C. Handle tile with temporary protective coating on exposed surfaces to prevent coated surfaces from contacting backs or edges of other units. If despite these precautions coating does contact bonding surfaces of tile, remove coating from bonding surfaces before setting tile.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions and protect work during and after installation to comply with referenced standards and manufacturer's printed recommendations.
- B. Vent temporary heaters to exterior to prevent damage to tile work from carbon dioxide buildup.
- C. Maintain temperatures at 50 deg F or more in tiled areas during installation and for seven (7) days after completion, unless higher temperatures are required by referenced installation standard or manufacturer's instructions.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Standard for Ceramic Tile: Comply with ANSI A137.1 "American National Standard Specifications for Ceramic Tile" for types, compositions, and grades of tile indicated.
  - 1. Furnish tile complying with "Standard Grade" requirements unless otherwise indicated.
- B. ANSI Standard for Tile Installation Materials: Comply with ANSI standard referenced with products and materials indicated for setting and grouting.
- C. Colors, Textures, and Patterns: Where manufacturer's standard products are indicated for tile, grout, and other products requiring selection of colors, surface textures, patterns, and other appearance characteristics, provide specific products or materials complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Provide selections made by Architect from manufacturer's full range of standard colors, textures, and patterns for products of type indicated.

2. Provide tile trim and accessories that match color and finish of adjoining flat tile.
- D. Mounting: Where factory mounted tile is required, provide back or edge mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer unless another mounting method is indicated.
  1. Where tile is indicated for installation in wet areas, do not use back or edge mounted tile assemblies unless tile manufacturer specifies that this type of mounting is suitable for these kinds of uses and has been successfully used on other projects.

## 2.2 TILE PRODUCTS

- A. Porcelain Floor Tile Type **PFT-1**: Colorbody porcelain tile.
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Crossville; Nest Series Mosaics 6" x 36", or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Daltile.
    - b. American Olean
    - c. Florida Tile.
    - d. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
  2. Face Size: 6 by 8 inches (147 by 897 mm).
  3. Thickness: 13/32 inch (10.5 mm).
  4. Face: Pattern of design indicated, with manufacturer's standard edges.
  5. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.42.
  6. Finish: Unglazed
  7. Tile Color and Pattern: AV355 Peaceful Oak
  8. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  9. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile.
- B. Porcelain Floor Tile Type **PFT-2**: Colorbody porcelain tile.
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Crossville; Nest Series Mosaics 8" x 36", or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Daltile.
    - b. American Olean
    - c. Florida Tile.
    - d. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
  2. Face Size: 8 by 8 inches (197 by 897 mm).
  3. Thickness: 13/32 inch (10.5 mm).
  4. Face: Pattern of design indicated, with manufacturer's standard edges.
  5. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.42.
  6. Finish: Unglazed
  7. Tile Color and Pattern: AV355 Peaceful Oak
  8. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  9. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile.
- C. Porcelain Floor Tile Type **PFT-3**: Through body porcelain tile.
  1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Florida Tile Time/2.0 Series Mosaics (2"x2"), or a comparable product by one of the following:

- a. Daltile.
  - b. American Olean.
  - c. Crossville
  - d. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
2. Face Size: 12 by 12 inches (30 x 60 cm.)
  3. Thickness: 13/32 inch (10.5 mm).
  4. Face: Pattern of design indicated, with manufacturer's standard edges.
  5. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.42.
  6. Finish: Unglazed.
  7. Tile Color: FTIT27B1M12 Grey Natural.
  8. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  9. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:
    - a. Base Coved, module size 6 by 12 inch (15 by 30 cm).
- D. Porcelain Wall Tile Type **PWT-1**: Unglazed porcelain tile.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Florida Tile Series Time/2.0 Random Size Mosaics, or a comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Daltile.
    - b. American Olean
    - c. Crossville.
    - d. Summitville Tiles, Inc.
  2. Face Size: 12 by 24 inches (304.8 by 609.6 mm).
  3. Thickness: 13/32 inch (10.5 mm).
  4. Face: Pattern of design indicated, with manufacturer's standard edges.
  5. Dynamic Coefficient of Friction: Not less than 0.42.
  6. Finish: Combination of polished, Natural and Textured
  7. Tile Color and Pattern: FTIT2126RSP12x24 Dawn
  8. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  9. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:
    - a. Base Coved, module size 6 by 12 inch (15 by 30 cm).

### 2.3 THRESHOLDS

- A. General: Fabricate to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition between adjacent floor finishes.
1. Bevel edges at 1:2 slope, with lower edge of bevel aligned with or up to 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) above adjacent floor surface. Finish bevel to match top surface of threshold. Limit height of threshold to 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) or less above adjacent floor surface.
- B. Marble Thresholds: ASTM C 503, with abrasion resistance of 10 per ASTM C 1353 honed finish.  
Description: Uniform

## 2.4 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Latex Portland Cement Mortar: ANSI A118.4, composition as follows:
  - 1. Prepackaged dry mortar mix composed of portland cement, graded aggregate, and the following dry polymer additive in the form of a re-emulsifiable powder to which only water is added at job site.
    - a. Dry Polymer Additive: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 2. Latex additive (water emulsion) of type described below, serving as replacement for part or all of gauging water, combined at job site with prepackaged dry mortar mix supplied or specified by latex additive manufacturer.
    - a. Latex Type: Manufacturer's standard.

## 2.5 GROUTING MATERIALS

- A. Commercial Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A118.7, color as indicated.

## 2.6 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer for applications indicated.

## 2.7 ELASTOMERIC SEALANTS

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard chemically curing, elastomeric sealants of base polymer indicated that comply with requirements of Division 7 Section "Joint Sealers," including ASTM C 920 as referenced by Type, Grade, Class, and Uses.
- B. Colors: Provide colors of exposed sealants to match colors of grout in tile adjoining sealed joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Multipart Pourable Urethane Sealant for Use T: Type M; Grade P; Class 25; Use T.
  - 1. Provide products by one of the following or approved equal:
    - a. Dupont : StoneTech Heavy Duty Grout Sealer
    - b. Custom Building Products : Aqua Mix Sealer's Choice Gold

## 2.8 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with requirements of referenced standards and manufacturers including those for accurate proportioning of materials, water, or additive content; type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures needed to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and areas where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of installed tile.

1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm, dry, clean, and free from oil or waxy films and curing compounds.

B. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound and remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. ANSI Tile Installation Standard: Comply with parts of ANSI 108 series of tile installation standards included under "American National Standard Specifications for the Installation of Ceramic Tile" that apply to type of setting and grouting materials and methods indicated.

B. TCA Installation Guidelines: TCA "Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation"; comply with TCA installation methods indicated, or if not otherwise indicated, as applicable to installation conditions shown.

C. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form a complete covering without interruptions except as otherwise shown. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.

D. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so that plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.

E. Jointing Pattern: Unless otherwise shown, lay tile in grid pattern. Align joints when adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, and trim are same size. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Adjust to minimize tile cutting. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise shown.

1. For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets so that extent of each sheet is not apparent in finished work.

F. Expansion Joints: Locate expansion joints and other sealant filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw cut joints after installation of tiles.

1. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements of Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."

G. Grout tile to comply with referenced installation standards, using grout materials indicated.

1. Mix and install proprietary components to comply with grout manufacturer's directions.

### 3.3 WALL INSTALLATION METHODS

A. Interior Wall Installation, Tile over existing painted CMU wall:

1. Tile Installation F113: Thin-set mortar; TCA F113.

a. Tile Type: Porcelain.

- b. Thin-Set Mortar: Latex-portland cement mortar. : basis of design (or approved equal) – MAPEI Kerabond/Keralastic System
- c. Grout: Polymer-modified grout.
- d. Mortar Bed: basis of design (or approved equal) -MAPEI, Planicrete AC blended with 3:1 site mix
- e. Mortar Bed Bond Coat (slurry): basis of design (or approved equal) –MAPEI Kerabond/Keralastic System

#### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Cleaning: Upon completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
  - 1. Unglazed tile may be cleaned with acid solutions only when permitted by tile and grout manufacturer's printed instructions, but no sooner than 14 days after installation. Protect metal surfaces, cast iron, and vitreous plumbing fixtures from effects of acid cleaning. Flush surface with clean water before and after cleaning.
- B. Finished Tile Work: Leave finished installation clean and free of cracked, chipped, broken, unbonded, and otherwise defective tile work.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and installer that ensures that tile is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
  - 1. When recommended by tile manufacturer, apply a protective coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear.
  - 2. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least 7 days after grouting is completed.
- D. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral cleaner from tile surfaces.

END OF SECTION 093000

SECTION 095113 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes acoustical panels, planks and exposed suspension systems for ceilings.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 6 inches (150 mm) in size.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Panels: Full-size panels equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.
  - 2. Suspension-System Components: Quantity of each exposed component equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.
  - 3. Hold-Down Clips: Equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

- C. Handle acoustical panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
  - 1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical panel ceiling installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Armstrong.
    - b. USG Interiors, Inc.
    - c. Certain Teed Corporation.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: Comply with ASTM E 1264 for Class A materials.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

### 2.3 ACOUSTICAL PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Source Limitations:
  - 1. Acoustical Ceiling Panel: Obtain each type from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 2. Suspension System: Obtain each type from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling panel and supporting suspension system from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Glass-Fiber-Based Panels: Made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
- D. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264 classifications as designated by types, patterns, acoustical ratings, and light reflectances unless otherwise indicated.

1. Mounting Method for Measuring NRC: Type E-400; plenum mounting in which face of test specimen is 15-3/4 inches (400 mm) away from test surface according to ASTM E 795.

E. Acoustical Panel Colors and Patterns: Match appearance characteristics indicated for each product type.

1. Where appearance characteristics of acoustical panels are indicated by referencing pattern designations in ASTM E 1264 and not manufacturers' proprietary product designations, provide products selected by Architect from each manufacturer's full range that comply with requirements indicated for type, pattern, color, light reflectance, acoustical performance, edge detail, and size.

## 2.4 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS, GENERAL

A. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard direct-hung metal suspension systems of types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with applicable requirements in ASTM C 635/C 635M.

B. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.

C. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires complying with the following requirements:

1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
2. Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.106-inch- (2.69-mm-) diameter wire.

D. Flat Hangers: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.

E. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 7/8 inch (22 mm) wide; formed with 0.04-inch- (1-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation; with bolted connections and 5/16-inch- (8-mm-) diameter bolts.

F. Hold-Down Clips: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's standard hold-down clips spaced 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. on all cross tees.

G. Clean-Room Gasket System: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's standard system, including manufacturer's standard antimicrobial gasket and related adhesives, tapes, seals, and retention clips, designed to seal out foreign material from and maintain positive pressure in clean room.

## 2.5 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
2. CertainTeed Corporation.
3. United States Gypsum Company.

B. Narrow-face, Capped, Double-Web, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet; prepainted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 653/A 653M, not less than G30 (Z90) coating designation; with prefinished 9/16-inch- (24-mm-) wide flanges.

1. Structural Classification: Intermediate-duty system.
2. End Condition of Cross Runners: Override (stepped) or butt-edge type.
3. Face Design: Dimensional.
4. Finish: Painted white.

## 2.6 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
  2. CertainTeed Corporation.
  3. United States Gypsum Company.
- B. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that comply with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension-system runners.
1. Provide manufacturer's standard edge moldings that fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and that match width and configuration of exposed runners unless otherwise indicated.
  2. For lay-in panels with reveal edge details, provide stepped edge molding that forms reveal of same depth and width as that formed between edge of panel and flange at exposed suspension member.
  3. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.
- C. Extruded-Aluminum Edge Moldings and Trim: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's extruded-aluminum edge moldings and trim of profile indicated or referenced by manufacturer's designations, including splice plates, corner pieces, and attachment and other clips, complying with seismic design requirements and the following:
1. Aluminum Alloy: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with not less than the strength and durability properties of aluminum extrusions complying with ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M) for Alloy and Temper 6063-T5.
  2. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with ASTM C 635/C 635M and coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

## 2.7 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

- A. Acoustical Sealant: Manufacturer's standard sealant complying with ASTM C 834 and effective in reducing airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
1. Exposed and Concealed Joints: Nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant.
  2. Concealed Joints: Nondrying, nonhardening, nonskinning, nonstaining, gunnable, synthetic-rubber sealant.

## 2.8 PRODUCTS

1. Acoustical Panel - Type ACT-1.

- a. Type, Form and Finish: ASTM E1264, Type III, Form 2, Pattern CE.
  - b. Size: 24"x24"x 3/4"
  - c. CAC 35, NRC .70.
  - d. Edge Detail: Square.
  - e. Color: White.
2. Acoustical Panel - Type ACT-2
- a. Type, Form and Finish: ASTM E1264, Type XII, Form 2, Pattern E.
  - b. Size: 30"x 30" x 1"
  - c. NRC .95.
  - d. Edge Detail: Square Tegular.
  - e. Color: White.
3. Acoustical Panel - Type ACT-3
- a. Type, Form and Finish: ASTM E1264, Type IV, Form 2, Pattern E.
  - b. Size: 24"x 24" x 3/4".
  - c. CAC 38, NRC .70.
  - d. Edge Detail: Square.
  - e. Color: White.
4. Direct-Hung Suspension Systems, Non-Fire-Resistance Rated:
- a. At Acoustical Panel Types ACT-1 and ACT-3:
    - 1) Type: Wide-face, capped double-web steel, intermediate duty classification, ASTM C 636.
    - 2) Suspension System Accessories: Attachment devices and hangers, ASTM C 636.
    - 3) Color: White.
  - c. At Acoustical Ceiling Plank Type ACT-2:
    - 1) Type: Narrow-face, capped, double-web, steel, hot dip galvanized, dimensional, intermediate duty classification, ASTM C636.
    - 2) Suspension System Accessories: Attachment devices and hangers, ASTM C636.
    - 3) Color: Blizzard White
5. Auxiliary Materials:
- a. Hold-down clips and impact clips.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.
- B. Examine acoustical panels before installation. Reject acoustical panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install acoustical panel ceilings to comply with ASTM C 636/C 636M and seismic design requirements indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions and CISCA's "Ceiling Systems Handbook."
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
  - 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
  - 2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  - 3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
  - 4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling-suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly either to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  - 5. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both the structure to which hangers are attached and the type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
  - 6. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
  - 7. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
  - 8. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
  - 9. Space hangers not more than 48 inches (1200 mm) o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches (200 mm) from ends of each member.
  - 10. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.
- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
  - 1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.

2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. and not more than 3 inches (75 mm) from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet (3.2 mm in 3.6 m). Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
  3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- E. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- F. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension-system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide a neat, precise fit.
1. For square-edged panels, install panels with edges fully hidden from view by flanges of suspension-system runners and moldings.
  2. Paint cut edges of panel remaining exposed after installation; match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.
  3. Install hold-down clips in areas indicated, in areas required by authorities having jurisdiction, and for fire-resistance ratings; space as recommended by panel manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.

#### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension-system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 095113

SECTION 096816 - CARPETING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes carpeting.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 096513 "Resilient Base and Accessories" for resilient wall base and accessories installed with carpet.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review methods and procedures related to carpet installation including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Review delivery, storage, and handling procedures.
    - b. Review ambient conditions and ventilation procedures.
    - c. Review subfloor preparation procedures.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include manufacturer's written data on physical characteristics, durability, and fade resistance.
  - 2. Include manufacturer's written installation recommendations for each type of substrate.
- B. Shop Drawings: For carpet installation, plans showing the following:
  - 1. Columns, doorways, enclosing walls or partitions, built-in cabinets, and locations where cutouts are required in carpet.
  - 2. Carpet type, color, and dye lot.
  - 3. Type of subfloor.
  - 4. Type of installation.
  - 5. Pattern of installation.
  - 6. Pattern type, location, and direction.
  - 7. Pile direction.
  - 8. Type, color, and location of insets and borders.
  - 9. Type, color, and location of edge, transition, and other accessory strips.
  - 10. Transition details to other flooring materials.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of carpet.
  - 1. Include Samples of exposed edge, transition, and other accessory stripping involving color or finish selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each of the following products and for each color and texture required. Label each Sample with manufacturer's name, material description, color, pattern, and designation indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
  - 1. 18"x27" samples of each type of carpeting required.
  - 2. Exposed Edge, Transition, and Other Accessory Stripping: 12-inch- (300-mm-) long Samples.
- E. Product Schedule: For carpet. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For carpet, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For carpet to include in maintenance manuals. Include the following:
  - 1. Methods for maintaining carpet, including cleaning and stain-removal products and procedures and manufacturer's recommended maintenance schedule.
  - 2. Precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to carpet.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Replacement Materials: After completion of work, deliver not less than 5% of full width of carpet of each type, color, and pattern selected exclusive of material required to properly complete installation. Furnish accessory components; furnish one box each of replacement materials from same production run as materials installed. Package replacement materials with protective covering identified with appropriate labels.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is certified by the International Certified Floorcovering Installers Association at the Commercial II certification level.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with CRI's "CRI Carpet Installation Standard."

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with CRI's "CRI Carpet Installation Standard" for temperature, humidity, and ventilation limitations.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install carpet until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at levels planned for building occupants during the remainder of the construction period.
- C. Do not install carpet over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive and concrete slabs have pH range recommended by carpet manufacturer.
- D. Where demountable partitions or other items are indicated for installation on top of carpet, install carpet before installing these items.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Carpet: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of carpet installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of carpet due to unusual traffic, failure of substrate, vandalism, or abuse.
  - 2. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. More than 10 percent edge raveling, snags, and runs.
    - b. Dimensional instability.
    - c. Excess static discharge.
    - d. Loss of tuft-bind strength.
    - e. Loss of face fiber.
    - f. Delamination.
  - 3. Warranty Period: Ten (10) years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CARPET (**CPT-1**)

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide J & J. Flooring Revue II or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Tandus Centiva
  - 2. Mohawk Group (The); Mohawk Carpet, LLC.
  - 3. Shaw Contract Group; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
- B. Color and Pattern:
  - 1. CPT-1: Revue II Modular 7061, Color 2251 Jones.
- C. Fiber Type: EncoreA BCF (with recycled content).
- D. Dye Method: Solution/Yarn Dyed

- E. Pile Characteristic: Patterned-loop pile.
- F. Total Thickness: 0.250 inches (0.635 cm).
- G. Stitches: 12.20 per inch (4.84 per cm).
- H. Gauge: 1/12 (4.72 rows/cm)
- I. Backing System: Nexus Modular.
- J. Size: 24” x 24” (approx. (60.9cm x 60.96cm)).
- K. Applied Treatments:
  - 1. Colorloc Plus
  - 2. Pro Tex Soil Release.
- L. Performance Characteristics:
  - 1. Flooring Radiant Panel: ASTM E-648 – Requirement: Class I (Above .45 w/cm).
  - 2. Pill Test: Passes
  - 3. Smoke Density: Less than 450.0 flaming (ASTM E 662).
  - 4. Dimensional Stability: 0.2 percent or less according to ISO 2551 (Aachen Test).
  - 5. Colorfastness to Crocking: Not less than 5, wet and dry, according to AATCC 165.
  - 6. Colorfastness to Light: Not less than 5 after 40 SFU (AATCC fading units) according to AATCC 16, Option E.
  - 7. Electrostatic Propensity: Less than 3.0 kv according to AATCC 134.

## 2.2 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or recommended by carpet manufacturer.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, nonstaining, pressure-sensitive type to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated, that comply with flammability requirements for installed carpet, and are recommended by carpet manufacturer for releasable installation.
- C. Edge/Transition Strips: Refer to Section 096513 "Resilient Base and Accessories. Provide profile and width shown, of height required to protect exposed edge of carpet, and of maximum lengths to minimize running joints.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting carpet performance.
- B. Examine carpet for type, color, pattern, and potential defects.

- C. Concrete Slabs: Verify that finishes comply with requirements specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" and that surfaces are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits.
  - 1. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 1000 sq. ft. (304.8 sq. m), and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
    - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. (1.36 kg of water/92.9 sq. m) in 24 hours.
    - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
    - c. Perform additional moisture tests recommended in writing by adhesive and carpet manufacturers. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI's "Carpet Installation Standards" and with carpet manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive carpet.
- B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, depressions, and protrusions in substrates. Fill or level cracks, holes and depressions 1/8 inch (3 mm) wide or wider, and protrusions more than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) unless more stringent requirements are required by manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Concrete Substrates: Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, without using solvents. Use mechanical methods recommended in writing by adhesive and carpet manufacturers.
- D. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before installing carpet.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI's "CRI Carpet Installation Standard," Section 15, "Attached Cushion Install" and with carpet manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Installation Method: As recommended in writing by carpet manufacturer.
- C. Maintain dye-lot integrity. Do not mix dye lots in same area.
- D. Maintain pile-direction patterns recommended in writing by carpet manufacturer.
- E. Cut and fit carpet to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by carpet manufacturer.
- F. Extend carpet into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.
- G. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on carpet as marked on subfloor. Use nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.

- H. Install pattern parallel to walls and borders.

#### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet:
  - 1. Remove excess adhesive and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by carpet manufacturer.
  - 2. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet surface.
  - 3. Vacuum carpet using commercial machine with face-beater element.
- B. Protect installed carpet to comply with CRI's "Carpet Installation Standard," Section 20, "Protecting Indoor Installations."
- C. Protect carpet against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by carpet manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 096816

## SECTION 097800 - RESIN INFUSED COMPOSITE WALL PANELS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Resin infused composite wall panels.
  - 2. Setting materials and accessories.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 01: Administrative, procedural, and temporary work requirements.
  - 2. Section 09 2900 - Gypsum Board Gypsum board substrate.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM International (ASTM):
  - 1. D1037 - Standard Test Methods for Evaluating Properties of Wood-Base Fiber and Particle Panel Materials.
  - 2. D2395 - Standard Test Methods for Specific Gravity of Wood and Wood-Based Materials.\
  - 3. D4442 - Standard Test Methods for Direct Moisture Content Measurement of Wood and Wood-Base Materials.
  - 4. E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- B. Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) STD-40-004 - Chain of Custody Standard.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Samples: 3 x 3inch resin infused composite samples in specified color, showing available colors.
- B. Closeout Submittals:
  - 1. Maintenance Data: Include recommended cleaning materials and procedures, and list of materials detrimental to resin infused composite panels.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Minimum ten (10) years of experience in manufacture of resin infused composite materials.
- B. Fabricator and Installer Qualifications: Minimum two (2) years of experience in work of this Section.
- C. Mockup:
  - 1. Construct wall panel mockup, 6 feet wide x full height.
  - 2. Locate where directed.
  - 3. Approved mockup may remain as part of the Work.

#### 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Provide manufacturer's ten (10) year warranty against defects in materials and workmanship.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide TorZo Surfaces.
- B. Substitutions: Under provisions of Division 01.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Resin Infused Composite Panels:
  - 1. Product: Striata Fusion 360
  - 2. Recycled content: 70 pre-consumer recycled wood.
  - 3. Free from added urea formaldehyde.
  - 4. Color: Cocoa.
  - 5. Size: As indicated on drawing elevations.
  - 6. Thickness: 5/8 inch, tested to ASTM D1037.
  - 7. Physical characteristics:
    - a. Density: 68, tested to ASTM D2395.
    - b. Internal bond: 287, tested to ASTM D1037.
    - c. Modulus of rupture: 15,387, tested to ASTM D1037.
    - d. Modulus of elasticity: 2,155,160, tested to ASTM D1037.
    - e. Hardness, Janka ball: 4589, tested to ASTM D1037.
    - f. Screw holding; tested to ASTM D1037:
      - 1) Face: 663.
      - 2) Edge: 478.
    - g. Linear expansion: 0.01, tested to ASTM D1037.
    - h. Moisture content: 3.9, tested to ASTM D4442.
    - i. Fire rating: Class B, tested to ASTM E84.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesives:
  - 1. Type recommended by resin infused composite panel manufacturer.
- B. Filler: Color-matched wood filler or solid surface epoxy.
- C. Finish: Clear polyurethane satin finish

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate panels to sizes and shapes indicated, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and approved Shop Drawings.
- B. Provide holes and cutouts for mounting of wall-mounted equipment and accessories.
- C. Fill voids with filler; finish smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces.
- D. Lightly sand completed fabrications with minimum 220 grit orbital sander.
- E. Wipe off surfaces using mineral spirits and allow to dry.
- F. Apply one coat sealer and two finish coats. Allow each coat to dry completely before applying subsequent coats.
- G. Allowable Tolerances:
  - 1. Maximum variation in size: 1/8 inch.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

2.5 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces to receive panels; remove loose and foreign matter than could interfere with adhesion.

2.6 INSTALLATION

- A. Install panels in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and approved Shop Drawings.
- B. Adhere panels with continuous beads of adhesive.
- C. Install panels plumb. Align adjacent pieces in same plane.
- D. Install with hairline joints.

2.7 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum variation from plumb: 1/4 inch in 10 feet, noncumulative.
- B. Maximum variation in plane between adjacent pieces at joint: Plus or minus 1/16 inch.

2.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean panels in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

END OF SECTION 097800

## SECTION 098000 - ACOUSTICAL METAL WALL PANELS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Scope: Section includes, but is not limited to, architectural metal panel systems including trims, terminations, miscellaneous steel and sub frames, clips, fasteners and other devices for secure anchorage of panels to structural steel frame members or other substrate provided for this purpose.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 09510-Acoustical Ceilings
  - 2. Section 09547-Metal Ceiling
  - 3. Section 09800-Acoustical Treatments

#### 1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Drawings: Submit complete shop drawings indicating quantities, finishes, dimensions and attachment relationships.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data, specifications and installation instructions.
- C. Samples: Submit color and finish samples to determine range of texture and consistency of color and finish expected in the finished work. Standard sample size shall be 3" x 3".

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer shall have a minimum of five (5) years' experience in manufacturing and shall have successfully completed at least twenty (20) projects within the past five (5) years in architectural metals.
- B. Fabricator must own and operate its own manufacturing facilities for all metal components.

#### 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components in clearly marked containers and packages suitable for shipment of specified products so as to prevent finish damage in transit. Provide protective wrapping for protection.
- B. Store components in locations that will avoid damage from job-site traffic, moisture, stacking or other job-site contamination.
- C. Handle components to avoid racking, twisting, denting or scratching of finished surfaces.

#### 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Provide manufacturers' warranty against defects in material and workmanship for a period of one (1) year beginning on the Date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURER

A. Basis of design is:

Fry Integral (A Fry Reglet Company) Corporation  
405 N. 75<sup>th</sup> Ave., Bldg. # 2, Ste. 134  
Phone 800-955-2343  
Fax 623-344-8276  
[www.fryintegral.com](http://www.fryintegral.com) or [sales@fryreglet.com](mailto:sales@fryreglet.com)

Include all secondary framing, anchors, clips and other fasteners to provide a complete and finished wall panel system.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Metal Panels

1. Aluminum sheet and plate: Type 5005-H34 (anodized) or 3003-H14, 5052-H32 alloy complying with ASTM B209.
  - a. Thickness: .032 aluminum

B. Mounting Devices

1. Extruded aluminum, brake formed aluminum or steel. Accessories should include J-trim, Z-furring and self-tapping fasteners which shall be finished to match wall panels.
2. All framing components to be fabricated from extruded 6063 T5 aluminum.

C. Sound Absorption Material

1. Provide fiberglass (2" or other thickness) x (1.5# or other density). The fiberglass shall be wrapped in Class A. (Black Polyvinylchloride) (Black Polyethylene). Acoustic performance shall have a noise reduction coefficient (NRC) of .90 when tested in accordance with ASTM C-423.

2.3 PERFORATIONS

- A. Wall panels shall be available non-perforated. Many of the materials and finishes are available with the following perforation patterns (consult factory for specifics)

R125: 1/8" diameter holes x 21/64" staggered centers

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Standard height of wall panels shall be up to 10' without horizontal joints. Custom lengths can be provided up to 12'.

2.5 FINISHES

- A. General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finished Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations relative to applying and designating finishes. Metal finish shall have a Class "A" rating per ASTM E-84-01.
- B. Factory applied Powder Coat finish.
1. All wall systems shall be chemically cleaned prior to receiving powder coat finish.
  2. All exposed surfaces shall be coated. Finish to be cured and oven based to ensure paint adhesion and uniform surface hardness.
  3. Color to be selected from manufacturer's standard color.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine job-site conditions for conditions that may adversely affect installation of wall panels.
- B. Verify dimensions of wall panels prior to installation to ensure compatibility with job-site conditions.
- C. Visually examine finished surfaces to ensure that blemished or dented surfaces are not present prior to installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install components in accord with manufacturer's installation instructions and approved submittal drawings.
- B. Wall panels shall be erected plumb, level, square, true to line, securely anchored and in proper alignment and relationship to work of other trades.
- C. Wall panels, insulation and trim package to be shipped loose for on-site assembly.
- D. Wall panels to be installed ensuring one cell overlap from side to side.

3.2 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Visually inspect all exposed surfaces for scratches or blemishes. Protection of wall panels from damage by other trades after installation shall be the responsibility of the General Contractor.

END OF SECTION 098000

## SECTION 099113 - EXTERIOR PAINTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates.
  - 1. Concrete.
  - 2. Clay masonry.
  - 3. Concrete masonry units (CMU).
  - 4. Galvanized metal.
  - 5. Aluminum.
  - 6. Stainless-steel.
  - 7. Plastic trim fabrications.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 05 Sections for shop priming of metal substrates with primers specified in this Section.
  - 2. Division 06 Sections for shop priming carpentry with primers specified in this Section.
  - 3. Division 08 Sections for factory priming windows and doors with primers specified in this Section.
  - 4. Division 09 painting Sections for special-use coatings.
  - 5. Division 09 Section "Interior Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Gloss Level 1: Not more than 5 units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- E. Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- F. Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat.

1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches (200 mm) square.
2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
3. Label each coat of each Sample.
4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

D. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:

1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
2. Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
3. VOC content.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. (3.8 L) of each material and color applied.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system specified in Part 3.
  - a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft. (9 sq. m).
  - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
2. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.
  - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.
3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).

1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).

- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Behr Process Corporation.
2. Benjamin Moore & Co.
3. Benjamin Moore & Co. (Canada).
4. Bennette Paint Manufacturing Company, Inc.
5. Betonel Ltd.
6. BLP Mobile Paint Manufacturing.
7. California Paints.
8. Cloverdale Paint.
9. Color Wheel Paints & Coatings.
10. Columbia Paint & Coatings.
11. Conco Paints.
12. Coronado Paint.
13. Davis Paint Company.
14. Del Technical Coatings.
15. Diamond Vogel Paints.
16. Dunn-Edwards Corporation.
17. Durant Performance Coatings.
18. Duron, Inc.
19. Envirocoatings Canada Inc.
20. Euclid Chemical Company.
21. Farrell-Calhoun.
22. Frazee Paint.
23. General Paint.
24. Hallman Lindsay Paints.
25. Hirshfield's, Inc.
26. ICI Paints.
27. ICI Paints (Canada).
28. Insl-x.
29. Kelly-Moore Paints.
30. Kwal Paint.
31. Life Paint Corp.
32. M.A.B. Paints.
33. Microblend Technologies Inc.
34. Miller Paint.
35. Mills Paint.
36. PARA Paints.
37. Parex LaHabra Inc.
38. Parker Paint Mfg. Co. Inc.
39. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.
40. Pratt & Lambert.
41. Rodda Paint Co.
42. Scott Paint.
43. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
44. Sico, Inc.
45. Vista Paint.

46. Zinsser.

- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to products listed in other Part 2 articles for the paint category indicated.

## 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Provide products that comply with MPI standards indicated and that are listed in its "MPI Approved Products List."
- B. Material Compatibility:
  - 1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. VOC Content: Provide materials that comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.3 BLOCK FILLERS

- A. Block Filler, Latex, Interior/Exterior: MPI #4.

## 2.4 PRIMERS/SEALERS

- A. Primer, Alkali Resistant, Water Based: MPI #3.
- B. Primer, Bonding, Water Based: MPI #17.
- C. Primer, Bonding, Solvent Based: MPI #69.

## 2.5 METAL PRIMERS

- A. Primer, Galvanized, Water Based: MPI #134.
- B. Primer, Galvanized: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
- C. Primer, Quick Dry, for Aluminum: MPI #95.

## 2.6 WATER-BASED PAINTS

- A. Latex, Exterior Flat (Gloss Level 1): MPI #10.
- B. Latex, Exterior Semi-Gloss (Gloss Level 5): MPI #11.
- C. Latex, Exterior, Gloss (Gloss Level 6): MPI #119.
- D. Light Industrial Coating, Exterior, Water Based (Gloss Level 3): MPI #161.
- E. Light Industrial Coating, Exterior, Water Based, Semi-Gloss (Gloss Level 5): MPI #163.

- F. Light Industrial Coating, Exterior, Water Based, Gloss (Gloss Level 6): MPI #164.

## 2.7 SOLVENT-BASED PAINTS

- A. Alkyd, Exterior Flat (Gloss Level 1): MPI #8.
- B. Alkyd, Exterior, Semi-Gloss (Gloss Level 5): MPI #94.
- C. Alkyd, Exterior Gloss (Gloss Level 6): MPI #9.
- D. Alkyd, Quick Dry, Semi-Gloss (Gloss Level 5): MPI #81.
- E. Alkyd, Quick Dry, Gloss (Gloss Level 7): MPI #96.

## 2.8 TEXTURED AND HIGH-BUILD COATINGS

- A. Primer for Textured Coating, Latex, Flat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
- B. Intermediate Coat for Textured Coating, Latex, Flat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
- C. Textured Coating, Latex, Flat: MPI #42.
- D. Primer for Latex, Exterior, High Build: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
- E. Intermediate Coat for Latex, Exterior, High Build: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
- F. Latex, Exterior, High Build: MPI #40.

## 2.9 ALUMINUM PAINT

- A. Aluminum Paint: MPI #1.

## 2.10 FLOOR COATINGS

- A. Sealer, Water Based, for Concrete Floors: MPI #99.
- B. Sealer, Solvent Based, for Concrete Floors: MPI #104.
- C. Floor Paint, Latex, Low Gloss (Maximum Gloss Level 3): MPI #60.
- D. Floor Enamel, Alkyd, Gloss (Gloss Level 6): MPI #27.

## 2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:
  1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
  2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
  3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor

will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
  - 1. Concrete: 12 percent.
  - 2. Masonry (Clay and CMU): 12 percent.
  - 3. Wood: 15 percent.
  - 4. Portland Cement Plaster: 12 percent.
  - 5. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer, but not less than the following:
  - 1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."

2. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
  3. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-off Blast Cleaning."
  4. SSPC-SP 11, "Power Tool Cleaning to Bare Metal."
- G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- I. Aluminum Substrates: Remove loose surface oxidation.
- J. Wood Substrates:
1. Scrape and clean knots. Before applying primer, apply coat of knot sealer recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for exterior use in paint system indicated.
  2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
  3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
  4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.
- K. Plastic Trim Fabrication Substrates: Remove dust, dirt, and other foreign material that might impair bond of paints to substrates.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual."
1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
  3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
  4. Paint entire exposed surface of window frames and sashes.
  5. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
  6. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint undercoats same color as topcoat, but tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
1. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
    - a. Equipment, including panelboards and switch gear.

- b. Uninsulated metal piping.
- c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
- d. Pipe hangers and supports.
- e. Metal conduit.
- f. Plastic conduit.
- g. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
  - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
  - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Concrete Substrates, Nontraffic Surfaces:
  - 1. Latex System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - b. Prime Coat: Primer, alkali resistant, water based, MPI #3.
    - c. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - d. Topcoat: Latex, exterior flat (Gloss Level 1), MPI #10.
    - e. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low sheen (Gloss Level 3-4), MPI #15.
    - f. Topcoat: Latex, exterior semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.
    - g. Topcoat: Latex, exterior gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #119.
  - 2. Latex Aggregate/Latex System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Textured coating, latex, flat, MPI #42.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior flat (Gloss Level 1), MPI #10.
    - d. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low sheen (Gloss Level 3-4), MPI #15.
    - e. Topcoat: Latex, exterior semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.
    - f. Topcoat: Latex, exterior gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #119.

3. High-Build Latex System: Dry film thickness not less than 10 mils (0.25 mm).
    - a. Prime Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, high build, MPI #40.
  4. Latex Aggregate System:
    - a. Prime Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
    - c. Topcoat: Textured coating, latex, flat, MPI #42.
- B. Concrete Substrates, Traffic Surfaces:
1. Latex Floor Paint System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Floor paint, latex, low gloss (maximum Gloss Level 3), MPI #60.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Floor paint, latex, low gloss (maximum Gloss Level 3), MPI #60.
    - c. Topcoat: Floor paint, latex, low gloss (maximum Gloss Level 3), MPI #60.
  2. Alkyd Floor Enamel System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Floor enamel, alkyd, gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #27.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Floor enamel, alkyd, gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #27.
    - c. Topcoat: Floor enamel, alkyd, gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #27.
    - d. Additive: Manufacturer's standard additive to increase skid resistance of painted surface.
  3. Water-Based Sealer System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Sealer, water based, for concrete floors, MPI #99.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Sealer, water based, for concrete floors, MPI #99.
    - c. Topcoat: Sealer, water based, for concrete floors, MPI #99.
  4. Solvent-Based System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Sealer, solvent based, for concrete floors, MPI #104.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Sealer, solvent based, for concrete floors, MPI #104.
    - c. Topcoat: Sealer, solvent based, for concrete floors, MPI #104.
- C. Masonry Substrates:
1. Latex System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior flat (Gloss Level 1), MPI #10.
    - d. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low sheen (Gloss Level 3-4), MPI #15.
    - e. Topcoat: Latex, exterior semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.
    - f. Topcoat: Latex, exterior gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #119.
  2. High-Build Latex System: Dry film thickness not less than 10 mils (0.25 mm).
    - a. Prime Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, high build, MPI #40.

3. Latex Aggregate System:
  - a. Prime Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
  - c. Topcoat: Textured coating, latex, flat, MPI #42.
  
- D. CMU Substrates:
  1. Latex System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Block filler, latex, interior/exterior, MPI #4.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior flat (Gloss Level 1), MPI #10.
    - d. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low sheen (Gloss Level 3-4), MPI #15.
    - e. Topcoat: Latex, exterior semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.
    - f. Topcoat: Latex, exterior gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #119.
  
  2. Latex over Alkali-Resistant Primer System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkali resistant, water based, MPI #3.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior flat (Gloss Level 1), MPI #10.
    - d. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low sheen (Gloss Level 3-4), MPI #15.
    - e. Topcoat: Latex, exterior semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.
    - f. Topcoat: Latex, exterior gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #119.
  
  3. High-Build Latex System: Dry film thickness not less than 10 mils (0.25 mm).
    - a. Prime Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
    - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, high build, MPI #40.
  
  4. Latex Aggregate System:
    - a. Prime Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
    - c. Topcoat: Textured coating, latex, flat, MPI #42.
  
- E. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: All exterior ferrous metal to be galvanized.
  1. Latex System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based, MPI #134.
    - b. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized metal, as recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for exterior use on galvanized-metal substrates with topcoat indicated.
    - c. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
    - d. Topcoat: Latex, exterior flat (Gloss Level 1), MPI #10.
    - e. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low sheen (Gloss Level 3-4), MPI #15.
    - f. Topcoat: Latex, exterior semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.
    - g. Topcoat: Latex, exterior gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #119.
  
  2. Water-Based Light Industrial Coating System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based, MPI #134.

- b. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized metal, as recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for exterior use on galvanized-metal substrates with topcoat indicated.
  - c. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, matching topcoat.
  - d. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based (Gloss Level 3), MPI #161.
  - e. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #163.
  - f. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #164.
3. Alkyd System:
- a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized metal, as recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for exterior use on galvanized-metal substrates with topcoat indicated.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, flat (Gloss Level 5), MPI #8.
  - d. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #94.
  - e. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #9.
- F. Aluminum Substrates:
1. Latex System:
- a. Prime Coat: Primer, quick dry, for aluminum, MPI #95.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior flat (Gloss Level 1), MPI #10.
  - d. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low sheen (Gloss Level 3-4), MPI #15.
  - e. Topcoat: Latex, exterior semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.
  - f. Topcoat: Latex, exterior gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #119.
2. Water-Based Light Industrial Coating System:
- a. Prime Coat: Primer, quick dry, for aluminum, MPI #95.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based (Gloss Level 3), MPI #161.
  - d. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #163.
  - e. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #164.
3. Alkyd System:
- a. Prime Coat: Primer, quick dry, for aluminum, MPI #95.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, flat (Gloss Level 5), MPI #8.
  - d. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #94.
  - e. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #9.
- G. Stainless-Steel Substrates:
1. Latex System:
- a. Prime Coat: Primer, bonding, solvent based, MPI #69.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior flat (Gloss Level 1), MPI #10.
  - d. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low sheen (Gloss Level 3-4), MPI #15.
  - e. Topcoat: Latex, exterior semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.
  - f. Topcoat: Latex, exterior gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #119.

2. Water-Based Light Industrial Coating System:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, quick dry, for aluminum, MPI #95.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based (Gloss Level 3), MPI #161.
  - d. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #163.
  - e. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #164.

H. Plastic Trim Fabrication Substrates:

1. Latex System:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, bonding, water based, MPI #17.
  - b. Prime Coat: Primer, bonding, solvent based, MPI #69.
  - c. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
  - d. Topcoat: Latex, exterior flat (Gloss Level 1), MPI #10.
  - e. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low sheen (Gloss Level 3-4), MPI #15.
  - f. Topcoat: Latex, exterior semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.
  - g. Topcoat: Latex, exterior gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #119.
2. Alkyd System:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, bonding, water based, MPI #17.
  - b. Prime Coat: Primer, bonding, solvent based, MPI #69.
  - c. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
  - d. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, flat (Gloss Level 5), MPI #8.
  - e. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #94.
  - f. Topcoat: Alkyd, exterior, gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #9.

I. Portland Cement Plaster Substrates:

1. Latex System:
  - a. Prime Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior flat (Gloss Level 1), MPI #10.
  - d. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low sheen (Gloss Level 3-4), MPI #15.
  - e. Topcoat: Latex, exterior semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.
  - f. Topcoat: Latex, exterior gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #119.
2. Latex over Alkali-Resistant Primer System:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkali resistant, water based, MPI #3.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior flat (Gloss Level 1), MPI #10.
  - d. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low sheen (Gloss Level 3-4), MPI #15.
  - e. Topcoat: Latex, exterior semi-gloss (Gloss Level 5), MPI #11.
  - f. Topcoat: Latex, exterior gloss (Gloss Level 6), MPI #119.
3. High-Build Latex System: Dry film thickness not less than 10 mils (0.25 mm).
  - a. Prime Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.

- c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, high build, MPI #40.

END OF SECTION 099113

## SECTION 099123 - INTERIOR PAINTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following interior substrates:
  - 1. Concrete masonry units (CMU).
  - 2. Steel.
  - 3. Galvanized metal.
  - 4. Gypsum board.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 5 Sections for shop priming of metal substrates with primers specified in this Section.
  - 2. Division 6 Sections for shop priming carpentry with primers specified in this Section.
  - 3. Division 8 Sections for factory priming windows and doors with primers specified in this Section.
  - 4. Division 9 Section "Exterior Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates.
  - 5. Division 9 painting Sections for special-use coatings.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:
  - 1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
  - 2. Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified in Part 2, with the proposed product highlighted.
  - 3. VOC content.
- C. Samples for initial selection: for each type of topcoat product.
- D. Samples for verification: for each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat.
  - 1. Submit samples on rigid backing, 8 inch (200 mm) square.
  - 2. Label each sample for location.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. SSPC (The Society for Protective Coatings)
  - 1. Products: Complying with SSPC Specifications where indicated.
- B. OTC (Ozone Transport Commission)

1. Products: Complying with OTC Regulations regarding lower VOC limits

C. MPI Standards:

1. Products: Complying with MPI standards indicated and listed in "MPI Approved Products List."
2. Preparation and Workmanship: Comply with requirements in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" for products and paint systems indicated.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.

1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
2. Columbia Paint & Coatings.
3. Davis Paint Company.
4. Del Technical Coatings.
5. Duron, Inc.
6. Hallman Lindsay Quality Paints.
7. ICI Paints.
8. M.A.B. Paints.
9. McCormick Paints.
10. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.
11. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
12. Vista Paint.

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility:

1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

- B. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range. See color schedule on drawings.

### 2.3 BLOCK FILLERS

- A. Interior/Exterior Latex Block Filler: MPI #4.
  - 1. VOC Content: E Range of E3.
  - 2. Basis of Design: PrepRite Block Filler (B25W25) by Sherwin-Williams Company.

### 2.4 PRIMERS/SEALERS

- A. Interior Latex Primer/Sealer: MPI #50.
  - 1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
  - 2. Basis of Design: Harmony Interior Latex Primer by Sherwin-Williams Company.
- B. Interior Latex Primer/Sealer for WOOD: MPI #50.
  - 1. VOC Content: E Range of E2.
  - 2. Basis of Design: PrepRite 200 Interior Latex Primer by Sherwin-Williams Company.

### 2.5 METAL PRIMERS

- A. Universal Water Based Primer: SSPC-Paint 24.
  - 1. VOC Content: E Range of E1.
  - 2. Basis of Design: Pro-Cryl (B66-310 Series) by Sherwin-Williams Company.

### 2.6 WATERBORNE COATING

- A. Waterborne Pigmented Emulsion Coating (Semigloss): MPI #163 (Gloss Level 5)
  - 1. VOC Content: E Range of E1
  - 2. Basis of Design: Sher-Cryl (B66-300 Series) by Sherwin-Williams Company.

### 2.7 LATEX PAINTS

- A. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex (Eggshell): MPI #144 (Gloss Level 2).
  - 1. VOC Content: E Range of E3.
  - 2. Basis of Design: Harmony Low Odor Interior Latex Finish by Sherwin-Williams Company.
- B. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex (Semigloss): MPI #147 (Gloss Level 5).
  - 1. VOC Content: E Range of E3.
  - 2. Basis of Design: Harmony Low Odor Interior Latex Finish by Sherwin-Williams Company.

### 2.8 CONCRETE SEALER / REFINISHING SYSTEM

- A. Concrete re-finishing system: Penetrating, non-film forming concrete treatment.
  - 1. Identified as “Color Sealer” on the Finish Schedule.
    - a. VOC Content: 0
    - b. Skid Resistance: NFSI – Standard 101.A – High Traction
    - c. Static of Coefficient Wet: 0.6 – 1.0.
  - 2. Basis of Design: FGS PermaShine System by L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
  - 1. Concrete: 12 percent.
  - 2. Masonry (Clay and CMU): 12 percent.
  - 3. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Begin coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.
  - 1. Beginning coating application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.
- B. Remove plates, machined surfaces, and similar items already in place that are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
  - 2. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Clay Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content of surfaces or alkalinity of mortar joints to be painted exceed that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Concrete Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

- G. Steel Substrates: Remove rust and loose mill scale. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.
- H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- I. Aluminum Substrates: Remove surface oxidation.
- J. Gypsum Board Substrates: Do not begin paint application until finishing compound is dry and sanded smooth.
- K. Existing Concrete Substrates: Prepare existing surfaces with a dry diamond grinding / vacuum process. Assume 800 grit finish – 5 step minimum process by a Concrete Refinishing System Manufacturer approved installer.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  - 3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
- B. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- C. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- D. Painting Mechanical and Electrical Work: Paint items exposed in equipment rooms and occupied spaces including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Mechanical Work:
    - a. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - b. Uninsulated plastic piping.
    - c. Pipe hangers and supports.
    - d. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
    - e. Visible portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets.
    - f. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
    - g. Mechanical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.
  - 2. Electrical Work:
    - a. Switchgear.
    - b. Panelboards.
    - c. Electrical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure at any time and as often as Owner deems necessary during the period when paints are being applied:
  - 1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials being used. Samples of material delivered to Project site will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
  - 2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
  - 3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying-paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. CMU Substrates:
  - 1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex block filler.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex (semigloss).
- B. Steel and Galvanized-Metal Substrates:
  - 1. Waterborne System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Universal Water Based Primer).
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Waterborne Coating.
    - c. Topcoat: Waterborne Coating (semigloss).
- C. Gypsum Board Substrates:
  - 1. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex (eggshell).
- D. Existing Concrete Substrates:

1. Concrete re-finishing system:
  - a. Preparation: Dry diamond grinding process, repeated as necessary to a depth no greater than 1/32”.
  - b. Two-Coat Application: FGS Hardener Plus.

END OF SECTION 099123

## SECTION 099600 - HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes surface preparation and application of high-performance coating systems on the following substrates:
  - 1. Interior Substrates:
    - a. Concrete masonry units (CMU).
    - b. Gypsum board.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 5 Sections for shop priming of metal substrates with primers specified in this Section.
  - 2. Division 9 painting Sections for special-use coatings and general field painting.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Product List: For each product indicated. Cross-reference products to coating system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Master Painters Institute (MPI) Standards:
  - 1. Products: Complying with MPI standards indicated and listed in "MPI Approved Products List."
  - 2. Preparation and Workmanship: Comply with requirements in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" for products and coating systems indicated.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
  - 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
  - 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Apply coatings only when temperature of surfaces to be coated and surrounding air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply coatings in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATINGS, GENERAL

#### A. Material Compatibility:

1. Provide materials for use within each coating system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. Provide products of same manufacturer for each coat in a coating system.

#### B. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range. See color schedule on drawings.

### 2.2 BLOCK FILLERS

#### A. Interior/Exterior Latex Block Filler: MPI#4.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by Sherwin-Williams Company or the equivalent products by one of the following:
  - a. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); PrepRite, Int/Ext Block Filler, B25W25
  - b. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Moorcraft, Super Craft Latex Block Filler, 285-01.
  - c. Columbia Paint & Coatings; High Performance, Int/Ext Acrylic Latex Block Filler, 05-055-PP.
  - d. Coronado Paint; Super Kote 5000, Commercial Latex Block Filler, 946-11.
  - e. General Paint; Block Filler, 70-224.
  - f. ICI Paints; Devoe Coatings, Bloxfil Acrylic Block Filler, 4000.
  - g. Miller Paint; Ext. Block Filler, 6015.
  - h. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Interior/Exterior Latex Block Filler, 6-12.
  - i. Vista Paint; Block Kote, 040.

### 2.3 EPOXY COATINGS

#### A. Epoxy, Cold-Cured, Gloss: MPI #77.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by Sherwin-Williams Company or the equivalent products by one of the following:
  - a. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Pro Industrial High Performance, (Basis-of-Design).
  - b. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Polyamide Epoxy Coating, CM36/CM37.
  - c. Columbia Paint & Coatings; Insl-x, Insl-Tile II, EP-5300.
  - d. Coronado Paint; Polyamide Epoxy Coating, 101 Line.
  - e. ICI Paints; Devoe/Fuller, Guardcote, DP34UXX.
  - f. Miller Paint; PPG Aquapon, Epoxy Cold Cured - Gloss, 95-1.
  - g. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Aquapon, Epoxy Cold Cured Gloss, 95-1.
  - h. Spectra-Tone; Insl-x, Insl-Tile II, EP5300 Series.
  - i. Tower Paint; Epoxy High Gloss Enamel, T8700.

#### B. Water-Based Epoxy (Interior and Exterior): MPI #115.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by Sherwin-Williams Company or the equivalent products by one of the following:
  - a. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Industrial & Marine, Water Based Catalyzed Epoxy, B70W Series (Basis-of-Design).

- b. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Acrylic Epoxy Gloss "A", Hardener "B", M43/M44.
- c. Columbia Paint & Coatings; Dupont, Corlar Waterborne Acrylic Epoxy, 76P.
- d. Coronado Paint; Water-Based Amine Adduct Epoxy, 142 Line.
- e. General Paint, Ameron; Amercoat 335, 96 Line.
- f. ICI Paints; Devoe Coatings, Tru Glaze WB Epoxy Coating, 4418.
- g. Miller Paint; Waterborne Epoxy Gloss, 4300/4440.
- h. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Aquapon, Waterborne Epoxy, 98-1/98-98.
- i. Spectra-Tone; Insl-x Aqua-Tile W.B. Epoxy, ATA 100 Series.
- j. Tower Paint, Sierra, Wall & Trim Enamel, S50.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of work.
  - 1. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
    - a. Masonry (Clay and CMU): 12 percent.
  - 2. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
  - 3. Begin coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.
  - 4. Coating application indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.
- B. Remove plates, machined surfaces, and similar items already in place that are not to be coated. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and coating.
  - 1. After completing coating operations, reinstall items that were removed; use workers skilled in the trades involved.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of coatings, including dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers as required to produce coating systems indicated.
- D. Clay Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not coat surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be coated exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Clean surfaces with pressurized water. Use pressure range of 100 to 600 psi at 6 to 12 inches.
- E. CMU Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not coat surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be coated exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply high-performance coatings according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for coating and substrate indicated.
  - 2. Coat surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, coat surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  - 3. Coat back sides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
- B. If undercoats or other conditions show through final coat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform coating finish, color, and appearance.
- C. Apply coatings to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Produce sharp glass lines and color breaks.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing coating application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered coatings by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from coating operation. Correct damage by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and recoating, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced coated surfaces.

### 3.5 INTERIOR HIGH-PERFORMANCE COATING SCHEDULE

- A. CMU / Glazed CMU Substrates:
  - 1. Water-Based Epoxy Coating System:
    - a. Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex block filler, MPI #4.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.
    - c. Topcoat: Water-based epoxy (interior and exterior), MPI #115.

END OF SECTION 099600

## SECTION 101400 - SIGNAGE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Plaques.
2. Dimensional illuminated characters.
3. Panel signs.
4. Illuminated panel signs.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines: U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines."

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for signs.

1. Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by others, and accessories.
2. Provide message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including tactile characters and Braille, and layout for each sign.
3. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples: For each sign type and for each color and texture required.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, of alloy and temper recommended by sign manufacturer for casting process used and for use and finish indicated.

B. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with at least the strength and durability properties of Alloy 5005-H32.

- C. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with at least the strength and durability properties of Alloy 6063-T5.
- D. Brass Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C85200 (high-copper yellow brass).
- E. Brass, Yellow, Sheet: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C26000.
- F. Bronze Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C86500 (No. 1 manganese bronze).
- G. Bronze Plate: ASTM B 36/B 36M.
- H. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M.
- I. Steel:
  - 1. Steel Sheet: electrolytic zinc-coated, ASTM A 591/A 591M, with steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, commercial steel, exposed.
  - 2. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.
  - 3. Steel Members Fabricated from Plate or Bar Stock: ASTM A 529/A 529M or ASTM A 572/A 572M, 42,000-psi (290-MPa) minimum yield strength.
  - 4. For steel exposed to view on completion, provide materials having flat, smooth surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials whose surfaces exhibit pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
- J. Fiberglass Sheet: Molded, seamless, thermosetting, glass-fiber-reinforced polyester panels with a minimum tensile strength of 15,000 psi (103 MPa) when tested according to ASTM D 638 and with a minimum flexural strength of 30,000 psi (207 MPa) when tested according to ASTM D 790.
- K. Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D 4802, Category A-1 (cell-cast sheet), Type UVA (UV absorbing).
- L. Polycarbonate Sheet: Of thickness indicated, manufactured by extrusion process, coated on both surfaces with abrasion-resistant coating:
  - 1. Impact Resistance: 16 ft-lbf/in. (854 J/m) per ASTM D 256, Method A.
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 9000 lbf/sq. in. (62 MPa) per ASTM D 638.
  - 3. Flexural Modulus of Elasticity: 340,000 lbf/sq. in. (2345 MPa) per ASTM D 790.
  - 4. Heat Deflection: 265 deg F (129 deg C) at 264 lbf/sq. in. (1.82 MPa) per ASTM D 648.
  - 5. Abrasion Resistance: 1.5 percent maximum haze increase for 100 revolutions of a Taber abramer with a load of 500 g per ASTM D 1044.
- M. Applied Vinyl: Die-cut characters from vinyl film of nominal thickness of 3 mils (0.076 mm) with pressure-sensitive adhesive backing, suitable for exterior applications.

## 2.2 PLAQUES

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following.
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. Advance Corporation; Braille-Tac Division.
2. A. R. K. Ramos.
3. Gemini Incorporated.
4. Matthews International Corporation; Bronze Division.
5. Metal Arts; Div. of L&H Mfg. Co.
6. Mills Manufacturing Company.
7. Nelson-Harkins Industries.
8. Southwell Company (The).

D. Cast Plaques: Provide castings free of pits, scale, sand holes, and other defects, as follows:

1. Plaque Material: Bronze.
2. Background Texture: Manufacturer's standard leatherette texture.
3. Border Style: Square, polished.
4. Mounting: Rosettes and fasteners matching plaque finish for substrates encountered.

### 2.3 DIMENSIONAL CHARACTERS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following.

C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:

1. ACE Sign Systems, Inc.
2. Advance Corporation; Braille-Tac Division.
3. A. R. K. Ramos.
4. ASI-Modulex, Inc.
5. Bunting Graphics, Inc.
6. Charleston Industries, Inc.
7. Gemini Incorporated.
8. Grimco, Inc.
9. Innerface Sign Systems, Inc.
10. Metal Arts; Div. of L&H Mfg. Co.
11. Mills Manufacturing Company.
12. Mohawk Sign Systems.
13. Nelson-Harkins Industries.
14. Signature Signs, Incorporated.
15. Southwell Company (The).

D. Cast Characters: Produce characters with smooth flat faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles, free of pits, scale, sand holes, and other defects. Cast lugs into back of characters and tap to receive threaded mounting studs. Alloy and temper recommended by sign manufacturer for casting process used and for use and finish indicated. Comply with the following requirements.

1. Character Material: Aluminum, Brass, Bronze.
2. Thickness: As indicated.
3. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
4. Mounting: Concealed studs, noncorroding for substrates encountered.

E. Aluminum Extrusions: Comply with the following requirements:

1. Finish: Anodized or painted.

2. Thickness: As indicated.
  3. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  4. Mounting: Concealed studs, noncorroding for substrates encountered.
- F. Fabricated Channel Characters: Form exposed faces and sides of characters to produce surfaces free from warp and distortion. Include internal bracing for stability and attachment of mounting accessories. Comply with the following requirements:
1. Illuminated Backlighted Channel Characters: Manufacturer's standard LED lighting including transformers, insulators, and other components. Make provisions for servicing and concealing connections to building electrical system.
  2. Aluminum Sheet: Not less than 0.090 inch (2.29 mm) thick.
    - a. Finish: Anodized or painted.
    - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  3. Bronze Sheet: Not less than 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
  4. Brass Sheet: Not less than 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
  5. Copper Sheet: Not less than 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
  6. Steel Sheet: Painted, not less than 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick for face and 0.031 inch (0.78 mm) thick for returns.
    - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  7. Stainless-Steel Sheet: Not less than 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick for face and 0.031 inch (0.78 mm) thick for returns.
    - a. Finish: No. 4.
  8. Provide manufacturer's hardware for projection mounting of backlighted channel characters at proper distance from wall surface indicated.
  9. Provide translucent acrylic face sheet of thickness indicated. Attach characters to sheet metal back channels. Provide required to illuminate sign faces evenly.
    - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  10. Provide open-front, sheet metal channel characters.
- G. Molded Plastic Characters: Thermoformed or injection molded and as follows:
1. Illuminated Characters: Manufacturer's standard LED lighting including transformers, insulators, and other components. Make provisions for servicing and concealing connections to building electrical system.
  2. Integral Color or Painted Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- H. Cutout Characters: Provide characters with square-cut, smooth, eased edges. Comply with the following requirements:
1. Acrylic: 0.25 inch (6.35 mm) thick.
    - a. Metal face laminated to acrylic base with painted edges.
      - 1) Brass Face: Satin or Polished.
      - 2) Stainless-Steel Face: No. 4 finish.

- b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- 2. Aluminum Sheet: 0.25 inch (6.35 mm) thick.
  - a. Finish: Anodized or Painted.
  - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- 3. Brass Sheet, Yellow: 0.25 inch (6.35 mm) thick.
- 4. Bronze Sheet: 0.25 inch (6.35 mm) thick.
- 5. Vinyl: Pressure sensitive, 3.5 mils (0.09 mm) thick.
  - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- 6. Mounting: Flush with concealed noncorroding studs for substrates encountered.

#### 2.4 PANEL SIGNS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. ACE Sign Systems, Inc.
  - 2. Advance Corporation; Braille-Tac Division.
  - 3. Allen Industries Architectural Signage
  - 4. Allenite Signs; Allen Marking Products, Inc.
  - 5. APCO Graphics, Inc.
  - 6. ASI-Modulex, Inc.
  - 7. Best Sign Systems Inc.
  - 8. Bunting Graphics, Inc.
  - 9. Fossil Industries, Inc.
  - 10. Gemini Incorporated.
  - 11. Grimco, Inc.
  - 12. Innerface Sign Systems, Inc.
  - 13. InPro Corporation
  - 14. Matthews International Corporation; Bronze Division.
  - 15. Mills Manufacturing Company.
  - 16. Mohawk Sign Systems.
  - 17. Nelson-Harkins Industries.
  - 18. Seton Identification Products.
  - 19. Signature Signs, Incorporated.
  - 20. Supersine Company (The)
- D. Interior Panel Signs: Provide smooth sign panel surfaces constructed to remain flat under installed conditions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) measured diagonally from corner to corner, complying with the following requirements:
  - 1. Aluminum Sheet: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.
  - 2. Laminated, Aluminum Faced Sheet: 0.020-inch- (0.51-mm-) thick aluminum sheet laminated to each side of 0.197-inch- (5.0-mm-) thick, corrugated, phenolic or acrylic backing with painted edges.

3. Laminated, Polycarbonate Faced Sheet: 0.060-inch- (1.52-mm-) thick, polycarbonate face sheet laminated to each side of 0.197-inch- (5.0-mm) thick phenolic backing.
  4. Acrylic Sheet: 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
  5. PVC Sheet: 0.060-inch- (1.52-mm-) thick, extruded, high-impact PVC plastic in color to match face color with painted finish.
  6. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: 0.048 inch (1.21 mm) thick.
  7. Phenolic-Backed Photopolymer Sheet: Provide light-sensitive, water-wash photopolymer face layer bonded to a phenolic base layer to produce a composite sheet with overall, face layer, and base-layer thicknesses, respectively, of 0.120, 0.040, and 0.080 inch (3.0, 1.0, and 2.03 mm).
  8. Laminated Sheet: High-pressure engraved stock with contrasting color face laminated to acrylic core as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  9. Laminated, Etched Photopolymer: Raised graphics with Braille 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) above surface with contrasting colors as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range and laminated to acrylic back.
  10. Laminated, Sandblasted Polymer: Raised graphics with Braille 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) above surface with contrasting colors as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range and laminated to acrylic back.
  11. Edge Condition: Square cut.
  12. Corner Condition: Square.
  13. Mounting: Unframed.
    - a. Wall, ceiling, projection mounted with concealed anchors.
    - b. Manufacturer's standard anchors for substrates encountered.
  14. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  15. Tactile Characters: Characters and Grade 2 Braille raised 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) above surface with contrasting colors.
- E. Exterior Panel Signs: Provide smooth sign panel surfaces constructed to remain flat under installed conditions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) measured diagonally from corner to corner, complying with the following requirements:
1. Aluminum Sheet: 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick.
  2. Laminated, Aluminum Faced Sheet: 0.020-inch- (0.51-mm-) thick aluminum sheet laminated to each side of 0.197-inch- (5.0-mm-) thick, corrugated, phenolic or acrylic backing with painted edges.
  3. Acrylic Sheet: 0.060 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
  4. Fiberglass Sheet: 0.090-inch- (2.29-mm-) thick sheet.
  5. Edge Condition: Square cut.
  6. Corner Condition: Square.
  7. Mounting: Unframed.
    - a. Wall, Soffit or Projection mounted.
    - b. Manufacturer's standard noncorroding anchors for substrates encountered.
  8. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- F. Laminated Interior and Exterior Signs: Solid phenolic panel core with graphic image covered with thermosetting resin face layer.
1. Surface Finish: Mat UV resistant, outdoor.
  2. Edge Condition: Square cut.
  3. Corner Condition: Square.
  4. Thickness: 1/8 inch (3 mm).

- G. Brackets: Fabricate brackets and fittings for bracket-mounted signs from extruded aluminum to suit panel sign construction and mounting conditions indicated. Factory paint brackets in color matching background color of panel sign .
- H. Panel Sign Frames:
1. PVC Frames: Extruded, high-impact PVC plastic.
    - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
    - b. Depth: As indicated.
    - c. Profile: Square.
    - d. Corner Condition: Square.
    - e. Mounting: As indicated.
      - 1) Wall, Ceiling or Projection mounted with concealed anchors.
      - 2) Manufacturer's standard noncorroding anchors for substrates encountered.
  2. Extruded-Aluminum Frames: Mitered with concealed anchors and welded.
    - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
    - b. Depth: As indicated.
    - c. Profile: Square.
    - d. Corner Condition: Square.
    - e. Mounting: As indicated.
      - 1) Wall, Ceiling, or Projection mounted with concealed anchors.
      - 2) Manufacturer's standard noncorroding anchors for substrates encountered.
  3. Metal Frames:
    - a. Bronze Plate: Not less than 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
    - b. Brass Plate: Not less than 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
    - c. Steel Sheet: Painted, not less than 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick for face and 0.031 inch (0.78 mm) thick for returns.
      - 1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
    - d. Stainless-Steel Sheet: Not less than 0.050 inch (1.27 mm) thick for face and 0.031 inch (0.78 mm) thick for returns.
    - e. Depth: As indicated.
    - f. Corner Condition: Square.
    - g. Mounting: As indicated.
      - 1) Wall, Ceiling or Projection mounted with concealed anchors.
      - 2) Manufacturer's standard noncorroding anchors for substrates encountered.
- I. Changeable Message Inserts: Fabricate signs to allow insertion of changeable messages in the form of transparent covers with paper inserts printed by Owner.
1. Furnish insert material and software for creating text and symbols for PC-Windows computers for Owner production of paper inserts.
  2. Furnish insert material cut-to-size for changeable message insert.
- J. Tactile and Braille Sign: Manufacturer's standard process for producing text and symbols complying with ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and with ICC/ANSI A117.1. Text shall be accompanied by

Grade 2 Braille. Produce precisely formed characters with square-cut edges free from burrs and cut marks; Braille dots with domed or rounded shape.

1. Panel Material: Opaque acrylic sheet, Photopolymer or Clear acrylic sheet with opaque color coating, subsurface applied.
  2. Raised-Copy Thickness: Not less than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm).
- K. Engraved Copy: Machine engrave letters, numbers, symbols, and other graphic devices into panel sign on face indicated to produce precisely formed copy, incised to uniform depth.
1. Engraved Plastic Laminate: Engrave through exposed face ply of plastic-laminate sheet to expose contrasting core ply.
  2. Engraved Metal: Fill engraved copy with enamel.
  3. Engraved Opaque Acrylic Sheet: Fill engraved copy with enamel.
  4. Face-Engraved Clear Acrylic Sheet: Fill engraved copy with enamel. Apply opaque background color coating to back face of acrylic sheet.
- L. Subsurface Copy: Apply minimum 4-mil- (0.10-mm-) thick vinyl copy to back face of clear acrylic sheet forming panel face to produce precisely formed opaque image. Image shall be free of rough edges.
- M. Subsurface Engraved Acrylic Sheet: Reverse-engrave back face of clear acrylic sheet. Fill resulting copy with enamel. Apply opaque background color coating over enamel-filled copy.
- N. Applied Vinyl: Die-cut characters from vinyl film of nominal thickness of 3 mils (0.076 mm) with pressure-sensitive adhesive backing. Apply copy to exposed face of panel sign, glass, doors or wall surfaces.
1. Panel Material: Opaque acrylic sheet or Clear acrylic sheet with opaque color coating, subsurface applied.
- O. Colored Coatings for Acrylic Sheet: For copy and background and frame colors, provide colored coatings, including inks, dyes, and paints, that are recommended by acrylic manufacturers for optimum adherence to acrylic surface and are UV and water resistant for three five years for application intended.
1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchors and Inserts: Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts for exterior installations and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Use toothed steel or lead expansion-bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors. Furnish inserts, as required, to be set into concrete or masonry work.

## 2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard signs of configurations indicated.
1. Welded Connections: Comply with AWS standards for recommended practices in shop welding. Provide welds behind finished surfaces without distortion or discoloration of exposed side. Clean exposed welded surfaces of welding flux and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
  2. Mill joints to tight, hairline fit. Form joints exposed to weather to exclude water penetration.
  3. Conceal fasteners if possible; otherwise, locate fasteners where they will be inconspicuous.

## 2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: Manufacturer's standard Class 1 clear anodic coating, 0.018 mm or thicker, over a satin (directionally textured) mechanical finish, complying with AAMA 611.
- B. Color Anodic Finish: Manufacturer's standard Class 1 integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color anodic coating, 0.018 mm or thicker, in black applied over a satin (directionally textured) mechanical finish, complying with AAMA 611.
- C. Baked-Enamel Finish: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; Organic Coating: as specified below). Apply baked enamel complying with paint manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and painting.
  - 1. Organic Coating: Thermosetting, modified-acrylic enamel primer/topcoat system complying with AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm), medium gloss.

## 2.8 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Surface Preparation: Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
- B. Factory Priming for Painted Finish: Apply shop primer specified below immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.
  - 1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's or fabricator's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer, selected for resistance to normal atmospheric corrosion, for compatibility with substrate and field-applied finish paint system indicated, and for capability to provide a sound foundation for field-applied topcoats despite prolonged exposure.
- C. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-enamel finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with paint manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils (0.05 mm).

## 2.9 STAINLESS-STEEL FINISHES

- A. Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines or blend into finish. Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform, directionally textured, polished finish indicated, free of cross scratches. Run grain with long dimension of each piece.
- B. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4 finish.
- C. Mirrorlike Reflective, Nondirectional Polish: No. 8 finish.
- D. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.

## 2.10 COPPER-ALLOY FINISHES

- A. Sheet or Plate Finish: Medium satin (directionally textured) finish.
  - 1. Raised Finish: Satin.
  - 2. Recessed Finish: Etched, painted.

- B. Cast-Bronze Character Finishes: Manufacturer's standard satin finish with exposed surfaces free from porosity, burrs, and rough spots; with returns finished with fine-grain air blast.
- C. Cast-Bronze Plaque Finishes: Exposed surfaces free of porosity, burrs, and rough spots; with returns finished with fine-grain air blast.
  - 1. Raised Areas: Hand-tool and buff borders and raised copy to produce manufacturer's standard satin or polished finish.
  - 2. Background Finish: Painted, Dark oxidized or Green patina.
- D. Clear Protective Coating: Coat exposed surfaces of copper alloys with manufacturer's standard, clear organic coating specially designed for coating copper-alloy products.

## 2.11 ACRYLIC SHEET FINISHES

- A. Colored Coatings for Acrylic Sheet: For copy and background and frame colors, provide colored coatings, including inks, dyes, and paints, that are recommended by acrylic manufacturers for optimum adherence to acrylic surface and that are UV and water resistant for five years for application intended.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate signs and accessories where indicated, using mounting methods of types described and complying with manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install signs level, plumb, and at heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
  - 2. Interior Wall Signs: Install signs on walls adjacent to latch side of door where applicable. Where not indicated or possible, such as double doors, install signs on nearest adjacent walls. Locate to allow approach within 3 inches (75 mm) of sign without encountering protruding objects or standing within swing of door.
- B. Wall-Mounted Signs: Comply with sign manufacturer's written instructions except where more stringent requirements apply.
  - 1. Two-Face Tape: Mount signs to smooth, nonporous surfaces. Do not use this method for vinyl-covered or rough surfaces.
  - 2. Hook-and-Loop Tapes: Mount signs to smooth, nonporous surfaces.
  - 3. Magnetic Tape: Mount signs to smooth, nonporous surfaces.
  - 4. Silicone-Adhesive Mounting: Attach signs to irregular, porous, or vinyl-covered surfaces.
  - 5. Shim Plate Mounting: Provide 1/8-inch- (3-mm-) thick, concealed aluminum shim plates with predrilled and countersunk holes, at locations indicated, and where other mounting methods are not practicable. Attach plate with fasteners and anchors suitable for secure attachment to substrate. Attach panel signs to plate using method specified above.
  - 6. Mechanical Fasteners: Use nonremovable mechanical fasteners placed through predrilled holes. Attach signs with fasteners and anchors suitable for secure attachment to substrate as recommended in writing by sign manufacturer.
  - 7. Signs Mounted on Glass: Provide matching opaque plate on opposite side of glass to conceal mounting materials.
- C. Bracket-Mounted Signs: Provide manufacturer's standard brackets, fittings, and hardware for mounting signs that project at right angles from walls and ceilings. Attach brackets and fittings securely to walls

and ceilings with concealed fasteners and anchoring devices to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

- D. Dimensional Characters: Mount characters using standard fastening methods to comply with manufacturer's written instructions for character form, type of mounting, wall construction, and condition of exposure indicated. Provide heavy paper template to establish character spacing and to locate holes for fasteners.
1. Flush Mounting: Mount characters with backs in contact with wall surface.
  2. Projected Mounting: Mount characters at projection distance from wall surface indicated.
- E. Cast-Metal Plaques: Mount plaques using standard fastening methods to comply with manufacturer's written instructions for type of wall surface indicated.
1. Concealed Mounting: Mount plaques by inserting threaded studs into tapped lugs on back of plaque. Set in predrilled holes filled with quick-setting cement.
  2. Face Mounting: Mount plaques using exposed fasteners with rosettes attached through face of plaque into wall surface.

END OF SECTION 101400

## SECTION 102113.19 - PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Solid-plastic toilet compartments configured as toilet enclosures and urinal screens.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 061053 "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for blocking.
  - 2. Section 102800 "Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories" for toilet tissue dispensers, grab bars, purse shelves, and similar accessories mounted on toilet compartments.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for toilet compartments.

- B. LEED Submittals:

- 1. Product data for Credit MR 4: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of pre-consumer and post-consumer recycled content. Include statement indicating cost of each product with recycled content.
  - 2. Product data for Credit MR 5: For products having regional material content, documentation indicating location of manufacture and location of extraction, recovery or harvest of primary raw materials. Include statement indicating cost of each product with regional material content.

- C. Shop Drawings: For toilet compartments.

- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachment details.
  - 2. Show locations of centerlines of toilet fixtures.
  - 3. Show locations of floor drains.
  - 4. Show overhead support or bracing locations.

- D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of toilet compartment material indicated.

- 1. Include Samples of hardware and accessories involving material and color selection.

- E. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Each type of material, color, and finish required for toilet compartments, prepared on 6-inch- (152-mm-) square samples of same thickness and material indicated for Work.
  - 2. Each type of hardware and accessory.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of toilet compartment.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For toilet compartments to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents and source.
  - 1. Door Hinges: One (1) hinge(s) with associated fasteners.
  - 2. Latch and Keeper: One (1) latch(es) and keeper(s) with associated fasteners.
  - 3. Door Bumper: One (1) bumper(s) with associated fasteners.
  - 4. Door Pull: One (1) door pull(s) with associated fasteners.
  - 5. Fasteners: Ten (10) fasteners of each size and type.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of toilet fixtures, walls, columns, ceilings, and other construction contiguous with toilet compartments by field measurements before fabrication.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1 for toilet compartments designated as accessible.

## 2.2 SOLID-PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Bradley Corporation.
  2. General Partitions Mfg. Corp.
  3. Global Partitions; ASI Group.
  4. Scranton Products.
  5. Yemm & Hart Green Materials.
- B. Toilet-Enclosure Style: Overhead braced.
- C. Urinal-Screen Style: Floor anchored.
- D. Door, Panel, Screen, and Pilaster Construction: Solid, high-density polyethylene (HDPE) panel material, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) thick, seamless, with eased edges, and with homogenous color and pattern throughout thickness of material.
1. Integral Hinges: Configure doors and pilasters to receive integral hinges.
  2. Heat-Sink Strip: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum or stainless-steel strip fastened to exposed bottom edges of solid-plastic components to hinder malicious combustion.
  3. Color and Pattern: One (1) color and pattern in each room as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- E. Pilaster Shoes: Manufacturer's standard design; stainless steel.
- F. Urinal-Screen Post: Manufacturer's standard post design of material matching the thickness and construction of pilasters; with shoe matching that on the pilaster.
- G. Brackets (Fittings):
1. Full-Height (Continuous) Type: Manufacturer's standard design; extruded aluminum.

## 2.3 HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Hardware and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard operating hardware and accessories.
1. Material: Clear-anodized aluminum or stainless steel.
    - a. Zamac is not acceptable material. Provide heavy-duty hardware as required.
  2. Hinges: Manufacturer's standard paired, self-closing type that can be adjusted to hold doors open at any angle up to 90 degrees, allowing emergency access by lifting door.
  3. Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's standard surface-mounted latch unit designed for emergency access and with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at compartments designated as accessible.
  4. Coat Hook: Manufacturer's standard combination hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent in-swinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories.
  5. Door Bumper: Manufacturer's standard rubber-tipped bumper at out-swinging doors.
  6. Door Pull: Manufacturer's standard unit at out-swinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units on both sides of doors at compartments designated as accessible.

- B. Overhead Bracing: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum head rail with antigrip profile and in manufacturer's standard finish.
- C. Anchorages and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard exposed fasteners of stainless steel, finished to match the items they are securing, with theft-resistant-type heads. Provide sex-type bolts for through-bolt applications. For concealed anchors, use stainless-steel, hot-dip galvanized-steel, or other rust-resistant, protective-coated steel compatible with related materials.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M).
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.
- D. Stainless-Steel Castings: ASTM A 743/A 743M.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabrication, General: Fabricate toilet compartment components to sizes indicated. Coordinate requirements and provide cutouts for through-partition toilet accessories where required for attachment of toilet accessories.
- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant supports, leveling mechanism, and anchors at pilasters to suit floor conditions. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal supports and leveling mechanism.
- C. Floor-Anchored Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with leveling adjustment nuts at pilasters for structural connection to floor. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal anchorage.
- D. Urinal-Screen Posts: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with leveling adjustment nuts at bottoms of posts. Provide shoes at posts to conceal anchorage.
- E. Door Size and Swings: Unless otherwise indicated, provide 24-inch- (610-mm-) wide, in-swinging doors for standard toilet compartments and 36-inch- (914-mm-) wide, out-swinging doors with a minimum 32-inch- (813-mm-) wide, clear opening for compartments designated as accessible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for fastening, support, alignment, operating clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Confirm location and adequacy of blocking and supports required for installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install units rigid, straight, level, and plumb. Secure units in position with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.
  - 1. Maximum Clearances:
    - a. Pilasters and Panels: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
    - b. Panels and Walls: 1 inch (25 mm).
  - 2. Full-Height (Continuous) Brackets: Secure panels to walls and to pilasters with full-height brackets.
    - a. Locate bracket fasteners so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.
    - b. Align brackets at pilasters with brackets at walls.
- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Secure pilasters to floor and level, plumb, and tighten. Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than 1-3/4 inches (44 mm) into structural floor unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Secure continuous head rail to each pilaster with no fewer than two fasteners. Hang doors to align tops of doors with tops of panels, and adjust so tops of doors are parallel with overhead brace when doors are in closed position.
- C. Floor-Anchored Units: Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than 2 inches (51 mm) into structural floor unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Level, plumb, and tighten pilasters. Hang doors and adjust so tops of doors are level with tops of pilasters when doors are in closed position.
- D. Urinal Screens: Attach with anchoring devices to suit supporting structure. Set units level and plumb, rigid, and secured to resist lateral impact.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Hardware Adjustment: Adjust and lubricate hardware according to hardware manufacturer's written instructions for proper operation. Set hinges on in-swinging doors to hold doors open approximately 30 degrees from closed position when unlatched. Set hinges on out-swinging doors to return doors to fully closed position.

END OF SECTION 102113.19

SECTION 102239 – FOLDING PANEL PARTITIONS - Series Hufcor 641 Omni - Directional Specifications

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 DESCRIPTION

A. General

1. Furnish and install operable partitions and suspension system. Provide all labor, materials, tools, equipment, and services for operable walls in accordance with provisions of contract documents.

1.2 RELATED WORK BY OTHERS

- A. Preparation of opening will be by General Contractor. Any deviation of site conditions contrary to approved shop drawings must be called to the attention of the architect.
- B. All header, blocking, support structures, jambs, track enclosures, surrounding insulation, and sound baffles as required in 1.04 Quality Assurance.
- C. Prepunching of support structure in accordance with approved shop drawings.
- D. Paint or otherwise finishing all trim and other materials adjoining head and jamb of operable partitions.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Complete shop drawings are to be provided prior to fabrication indicating construction and installation details. Shop drawings must be submitted within sixty (60) days after receipt of signed contract.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Preparation of the opening shall conform to the criteria set forth per ASTM E557 Standard Practice for Architectural Application and Installation of Operable Partitions
- B. The partition STC (Sound Transmission Classification) shall be achieved per the standard test methods ASTM E90.
- C. Noise isolation classifications shall be achieved per the standard test methods ASTM E336 and ASTM E413.
- D. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC) ratings shall be per ASTM C423.
- E. Rack testing for ten (10) years. (tensional strength stress test)
- F. The manufacturer shall have a quality system that is registered to the ISO 9001 standards.

1.5 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Proper storage of partitions before installation and continued protection during and after installation will be the responsibility of the General Contractor.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Partition system shall be guaranteed for a period of two (2) years against defects in material and workmanship, excluding abuse.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. Upon compliance with all of the criteria specified in this section, Manufacturers wishing to bid products equal to the product specified must submit to the architect ten (10) days prior to bidding complete data in support of compliance and a list of three past installations of products similar to those listed. The submitting manufacturer guarantees the proposed substituted product complies with the performance items specified and as detailed on the drawings.

### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Product to be top supported Series 641 individual, omni-directional panels as manufactured by Hufcor Inc.
1. Panels shall be nominally 4” [102] thick and to 48” [1219] in width.
  2. Panel faces shall be laminated to appropriate substrate to meet the STC requirement in 2.04 Acoustical Performance.
    - a. Optional substrate material (Not all substrates are available for all STC ratings. Consult your Hufcor Distributor for more information):
      - Steel
      - Non-steel
    - b. Horizontal Splice: Heights over 16’3” [4953] with non-steel faces require a structural splice placed at approximately 12’3” [3734] from the floor.
  3. Frames shall be of 16 gauge [1.42mm] painted steel with integral factory applied aluminum vertical edge and face protection.

Optional: Face finish shall wrap around the vertical panel edges and provide no protective vertical face trim.
  4. Vertical sound seals shall be of tongue and groove configuration, ensure panel-to-panel alignment and prevent sound leaks between panels.
  5. Horizontal top seals shall be retractable, provide 1” [25] nominal operating clearance, and exert upward force when extended. All panels, including pass door panels and lever closure panels must have retractable top and bottom seals.

Optional: Horizontal top seals shall be fixed continuous contact dual 4-finger vinyl.
  6. Horizontal bottom seals shall be retractable, provide up to 2” [51] nominal operating clearance, and exert downward force when fully extended. Optional:
    - a. Horizontal bottom seals shall be retractable, provide 4” [101] nominal operating clearance, and exert 97 lbs. [44 kg] downward force when fully extended.
    - b. Horizontal bottom seals shall be fixed continuous contact 4-finger vinyl.)
  7. Horizontal trim shall be of aluminum.
- B. Weight of the panels shall be 7.8-13.6 lbs./sq. ft. [37.8.2-66.4 kg/sq.m] based on options selected.

C. Suspension system:

1. For panels to 1000 lbs. [455 kg] or 22'2" [6.75m]: Track shall be of clear anodized architectural grade extruded aluminum alloy 6063-T6. Track design shall provide precise alignment at the trolley running surfaces and provide integral support for adjoining ceiling, soffit, or plenum sound barrier. Track shall be connected to the structural support by pairs of minimum 3/8" [10] dia. threaded steel hanger rods. Pairs of rods are directly attached to the track, no single point attachment allowed. L, T, or X intersections shall be factory assembled and welded.
  - a. Each panel shall be supported by two 2-wheeled counter-rotating horizontal carriers. Wheels to be of precision ground steel ball bearings with heat treated and hardened races encased with molded polymer tires.
2. For panels 1000-1500 lbs. [455-680 kg]: Track shall be of clear anodized architectural grade extruded aluminum alloy 6063-T6. Track design shall provide precise alignment at the trolley running surfaces and provide integral support for adjoining ceiling, soffit, or plenum sound barrier. Track shall be connected to the structural support by pairs of minimum 1/2" [13] dia. threaded steel hanger rods. Pairs of rods are directly attached to the track, no single point attachment allowed. L, T, or X intersections shall be factory assembled and welded.
  - a. Each panel shall be supported by two 2-wheeled counter-rotating horizontal carriers. Wheels to be of precision ground steel ball bearings with heat treated and hardened races encased with molded polymer tires, steel banded and reinforced.
3. For panels 1500-3000 lbs. [680-1364 kg]: Track shall be of 1/4" [6] formed black painted steel connected to the structural support by pairs of minimum 1/2" [13] threaded steel hanger rods. Track trim shall be clear anodized aluminum. Carriers to have four steel wheels with precision ground radial bearings. Bearings are inserted into a steel tire. The steel tire rim fully captures the bearing. Carriers may be programmed for self-directing and sorting.
4. Optional tracks may be used providing the height and weight limits are within manufacturers guidelines. See page 6 "Optional Tracks".
5. Plenum closure (by others): Design of plenum closure must permit lifting out of header panels to adjust track height. Plenum closure required for optimum sound control of partition.

D. Finishes

1. Face finish shall be: (select as required):
  - a. Factory applied reinforced vinyl fabric with woven backing, weighing not less than 20 oz. per lineal yard [620 g/m]. Color shall be selected from manufacturer's standard color selectors.
  - b. Standard upgrade fabrics (color shall be selected from manufacturer's standard color selector):
    - (1) Factory applied vertical ribbed carpet (N.R.C. .20)
    - (2) Factory applied stain resistant fabric
  - c. Optional:
    - (1) Customer selected (requires factory approval for manufacturing compatibility)
    - (2) Unfinished for field decoration
    - (3) Wood veneer (factory installed on trimmed models)
    - (4) High pressure laminate (factory installed on trimmed models)

2. Exposed metal trim and seal color shall be (select from Hufcor's Standard Trim selector):
  - a. Lamb's Wool (standard)
  - b. Brown (standard)
  - c. Gray (standard)
  - d. Custom powder coated (optional upgrade for metal trim)
3. Aluminum track shall be clear anodized
  - a. Optional upgrade:
    - (1) Custom anodized
    - (2) Custom powder coated

E. Available Accessories/Options

1. ADA compliant pass door of the same thickness and construction as the basic panels. Pass door panel legs require bottom seals that provide downward force to maintain stability during door operation. Pass door leaf has perimeter trim to protect face finish and to provide visual identification as required by International Building Code. Pass door leaf incorporates a self-adjusting retractable bottom seal providing sound control when door is closed.
  - a. Automatic door closer
  - b. Door lock
  - c. Exit sign (consult your local code)
  - d. Prepped for window
  - e. Peep hole
2. Inset chalk/writing/projection surfaces
3. Inset tackboards (not available with STC 55 or 56)
4. Inset eraser pocket
5. Segmented faces
6. Finished end cover
7. Pocket doors
8. Inset chair rail pan (for field installation of chair rail).
9. Custom design options (consult your local Hufcor Distributor)
10. Field sound test

2.3 OPERATION

- A. Panels shall be manually moved from the storage area, positioned in the opening, and seals set.
- B. Retractable Horizontal Seals
  1. Retractable horizontal seals shall be activated by a removable quick-set operating handle located approximately 42" [1067] from the floor in the panel edge.
  2. Top and bottom retractable seals shall be operated simultaneously.
  3. Seal activation requires approximately a 190 degree turn of the removable handle.  
Optional 4" bottom seals: Seal activation requires a lift/drop motion of the removable handle.
- C. Final partition closure to be by lever closure panel with expanding jamb which compensates for minor wall irregularities and provides a minimum of 250 lbs. [113.4 kg] seal force against the adjacent wall for optimum sound control. The jamb activator shall be located approximately 45" [1143] from the floor in the panel face and be accessed from either side of the panel. The jamb is equipped with a mechanical

rack and pinion gear drive mechanism and shall extend 4”-6” [102-152] by turning the removable operating handle.

D. Stack/Store Panels

1. Retract seals with removable operating handle and move to storage area.

2.4 ACOUSTICAL PERFORMANCE

A. Acoustical performance shall be tested at a laboratory accredited by the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) and in accordance with ASTM E90 Test Standards. Standard panel construction shall have obtained an STC rating of \_\_\_\_ (select as required): 43, 47, 49, 52, 54, 55, 56. (Not all substrates are available in all STC ratings)

1. Complete, unaltered written test report is to be made available upon request.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 A. Installation. The complete installation of the operable wall system shall be by an authorized factory-trained installer and be in strict accordance with the approved shop drawings and manufacturer’s standard printed specifications, instructions, and recommendations.

B. Cleaning

1. All track and panel surfaces shall be wiped clean and free of handprints, grease, and soil.
2. Cartoning and other installation debris shall be removed to onsite waste collection area, provided by others.

C. Training

1. Installer shall demonstrate proper operation and maintenance procedures to owner’s representative.
2. Operating handle and owner’s manuals shall be provided to owner’s representative.

END OF SECTION 102239

SECTION 102800 - TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Private-use bathroom accessories.
  - 2. Warm-air dryers.
  - 3. Underlavatory guards.
  - 4. Custodial accessories.

- B. Owner-Furnished Material.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include the following:
  - 1. Construction details and dimensions.
  - 2. Anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
  - 3. Material and finish descriptions.
  - 4. Features that will be included for Project.
  - 5. Manufacturer's warranty.
- B. Samples: Full size, for each accessory item to verify design, operation, and finish requirements.
  - 1. Approved full-size Samples will be returned and may be used in the Work.
- C. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.
  - 1. Identify locations using room designations indicated.
  - 2. Identify products using designations indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For toilet and bath accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: For products listed together in the same Part 2 articles, obtain products from single source from single manufacturer.

- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Mirror Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace mirrors that develop visible silver spoilage defects and that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Fifteen (15) years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304, 0.031-inch (0.8-mm) minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Brass: ASTM B 19, flat products; ASTM B 16/B 16M, rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; or ASTM B 30, castings.
- C. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036-inch (0.9-mm) minimum nominal thickness.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G60 (Z180) hot-dip zinc coating.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A 153/A 153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- F. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit and tamper-and-theft resistant where exposed, and of galvanized steel where concealed.
- G. Chrome Plating: ASTM B 456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).
- H. Mirrors: ASTM C 1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.
- I. ABS Plastic: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene resin formulation.

#### 2.2 PRIVATE-USE BATHROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Basco, Inc.
2. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
3. Franklin Brass by Liberty Hardware Manufacturing Corporation; a Masco company.
4. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
5. Ginger; a Masco company.
6. Seachrome Corporation.
7. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.

C. Toilet Tissue Dispenser.

1. Description: Single-roll dispenser.
2. Mounting: Surface mounted.
3. Capacity: Designed for 4-1/2- or 5-inch- (114- or 127-mm-) diameter tissue rolls.
4. Material and Finish: Polished chrome-plated brass.

D. Facial Tissue Dispenser.

1. Mounting: Surface mounted.
2. Depth: 4 inches (102 mm).
3. Material and Finish:
  - a. Dispenser Face: Polished chrome-plated brass.
  - b. Cabinet: Steel with corrosion-resistant finish.

2.3 UNDERLAVATORY GUARDS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Plumberex Specialty Products, Inc.
2. Truebro by IPS Corporation.

C. Underlavatory Guard:

1. Description: Insulating pipe covering for supply and drain piping assemblies that prevent direct contact with and burns from piping; allow service access without removing coverings.
2. Material and Finish: Antimicrobial, molded plastic, white.

2.4 CUSTODIAL ACCESSORIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

1. A & J Washroom Accessories, Inc.
2. American Specialties, Inc.
3. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
4. Bradley Corporation.
5. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
6. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.

C. Utility Shelf.

1. Description: With exposed edges turned down not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) and supported by two triangular brackets welded to shelf underside.
2. Size: 16 inches (406 mm) long by 6 inches (152 mm) deep.
3. Material and Finish: Not less than nominal 0.05-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).

D. Mop and Broom Holder.

1. Description: Unit with shelf, hooks, holders, and rod suspended beneath shelf.
2. Length: 36 inches (914 mm).
3. Hooks: Three.
4. Mop/Broom Holders: Four, spring-loaded, rubber hat, cam type.
5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
  - a. Shelf: Not less than nominal 0.05-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick stainless steel.
  - b. Rod: Approximately 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) diameter stainless steel.

E. Paper Towel (Folded) Dispenser:

1. Mounting: Surface mounted.
2. Minimum Capacity: 600 C-fold or 800 multifold towels.
3. Material and Finish: ABS plastic, gray.
4. Lockset: Tumbler type.
5. Refill Indicators: Pierced slots at sides or front.

F. Paper Towel (Roll) Dispenser:

1. Description: Lever-actuated mechanism permits controlled delivery of paper rolls in preset lengths per stroke.
2. Mounting: Surface mounted.
3. Minimum Capacity: 8-inch- (203-mm-) wide, 800-foot- (244-m-) long roll.
4. Material and Finish: ABS plastic, gray.
5. Lockset: Tumbler type.

G. Liquid-Soap Dispenser:

1. Basis-of-Design Product:
2. Description: Designed for dispensing soap in liquid or lotion form.
3. Mounting: Vertically oriented, surface mounted.
4. Lockset: Tumbler type.
5. Refill Indicator: Window type.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six (6) keys to Owner's representative.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf (1112 N), when tested according to ASTM F 446.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

END OF SECTION 102800

SECTION 104413 - FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes fire protection cabinets for fire extinguishers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire protection cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Rated, Fire Protection Cabinets: Listed and labeled to comply with requirements in ASTM E 814 for fire-resistance rating of walls where they are installed.
- B. Coordinate size of fire protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.
- C. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire protection cabinets with wall depths.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated, and as follows:
  - 1. Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M).
  - 2. Extruded Shapes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M).
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- C. Clear Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3.
- D. Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, 3 mm thick, Class 1 (clear).
- E. Break Glass: Clear annealed float glass, ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1, Quality q3, 1.5 mm thick, single strength.
- F. Tempered Break Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, 1.5 mm thick.
- G. Wire Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type II, Class 1, Form 1, Quality q8, Mesh m1 (diamond), 6 mm thick.

H. Transparent Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D 4802, Category A-1 (cell-cast sheet), with Finish 1 (smooth or polished).

I. Acrylic Bubble: One-piece.

## 2.2 FIRE PROTECTION CABINET

A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Fire End & Croker Corporation.
- b. Basis of Design: J. L. Industries, Inc., a division of Activar Construction Products Group; Cosmopolitan 1035.

1) Provide recessed-mounted cabinet in public spaces and semi-recessed or surface-mounted cabinets in non-public areas.

- c. Kidde Residential and Commercial Division, Subsidiary of Kidde plc.
- d. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
- e. Modern Metal Products, Division of Technico Inc.
- f. Moon-American.
- g. Potter Roemer LLC.
- h. Watrous Division, American Specialties, Inc.

B. Cabinet Construction: Rated per authority having jurisdiction.

1. Fire-Rated Cabinets: Construct fire-rated cabinets with double walls fabricated from 0.0428-inch- (1.1-mm-) thick, cold-rolled steel sheet lined with minimum 5/8-inch- (16-mm-) thick, fire-barrier material. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.

C. Cabinet Material: Stainless-steel sheet.

D. Recessed Cabinet: Cabinet box recessed in walls of sufficient depth to suit style of trim indicated.

1. Exposed Flat Trim: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).

E. Semirecessed Cabinet: Cabinet box partially recessed in walls of sufficient depth to suit style of trim indicated; with one-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend). Provide where walls are of insufficient depth for recessed cabinets but are of sufficient depth to accommodate semirecessed cabinet installation.

1. Rolled-Edge Trim: 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) backbend depth.

F. Surface-Mounted Cabinet: Cabinet box fully exposed and mounted directly on wall with no trim. Provide where walls are of insufficient depth for semirecessed cabinet installation.

G. Cabinet Trim Material: Stainless-steel sheet.

H. Door Material: Stainless-steel sheet.

I. Door Style: Center glass panel with frame.

- J. Door Glazing: Tempered float glass (clear).
- K. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
- L. Fire Extinguisher: Provide fire extinguisher, rated 3A-40BC minimum. Basis-of-Design: JL Industries; Cosmic 5e.
- M. Accessories:
  - 1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
  - 2. Break-Glass Strike: Manufacturer's standard metal strike, complete with chain and mounting clip, secured to cabinet.
  - 3. Door Lock: Cylinder lock, keyed alike to other cabinets.
  - 4. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated.
    - a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER."
      - 1) Location: Applied to cabinet glazing.
      - 2) Application Process: Decals or Pressure-sensitive vinyl letters.
      - 3) Lettering Color: Black.
      - 4) Orientation: Vertical.
- N. Finishes:
  - 1. Manufacturer's standard baked-enamel paint for the following:
    - a. Interior of cabinet and door.
  - 2. Stainless Steel: No. 4.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Fire Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub), with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated. Miter and weld joints and grind smooth.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where recessed and semirecessed cabinets will be installed and prepare recesses as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.
- B. Install fire protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Fire Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
- D. Identification: Apply decals and vinyl lettering at locations indicated.

- E. Adjust fire protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- F. Replace fire protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 104413

SECTION 105113 - METAL LOCKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Standard metal lockers.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For metal lockers. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Where metal lockers are indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) and Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities" and ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- B. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver master and control keys to Owner by registered mail or overnight package service.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal lockers that fail in materials or workmanship, excluding finish, within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period for Knocked-Down Metal Lockers: Two (2) years from date of Substantial Completion.
  2. Warranty Period for All-Welded Metal Lockers: Lifetime from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B, suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with A60 (ZF180) zinc-iron, alloy (galvannealed) coating designation.
- C. Expanded Metal: ASTM F 1267, Type II (flattened), Class I, 3/4-inch (19-mm) steel mesh, with at least 70 percent open area.
- D. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- E. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
- F. Steel Tube: ASTM A 500, cold rolled.
- G. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.
- H. Fasteners: Zinc- or nickel-plated steel, slotless-type, exposed bolt heads; with self-locking nuts or lock washers for nuts on moving parts.
- I. Anchors: Material, type, and size required for secure anchorage to each substrate.
  - 1. Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts on inside face of exterior walls, and elsewhere as indicated, for corrosion resistance.
  - 2. Provide toothed-steel or lead expansion sleeves for drilled-in-place anchors.

### 2.2 STANDARD METAL LOCKERS

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Art Metal Products; Lockers.
  - 2. ASI Storage Solutions Inc.; Traditional Collection.
  - 3. DeBourgh Mfg. Co.; Worley Lockers.
  - 4. General Storage Systems Ltd.; Decor Tri-Lok.
  - 5. Hadrian Manufacturing Inc.; Emperor Lockers.
  - 6. List Industries Inc.; Lockers.
  - 7. Lyon Workspace Products, LLC; Standard Lockers.
  - 8. Penco Products, Inc.
  - 9. Republic Storage Systems Company.
  - 10. Shanahan's Manufacturing Limited; Deluxe Series Lockers.
  - 11. Tensco Corp.; Tensco Lockers.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings.
- C. Locker Arrangement: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Material: Metallic-coated steel sheet.

- E. Body and Shelves: Assembled by riveting or bolting body components together. Fabricate from unperforated 0.024-inch (0.61-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet.
- F. Frames: Channel formed; fabricated from 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet; lapped and factory welded at corners; with top and bottom main frames factory welded into vertical main frames. Form continuous, integral door strike full height on vertical main frames.
- G. Doors: One piece; fabricated from 0.060-inch (1.52-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet; formed into channel shape with double bend at vertical edges and with right-angle single bend at horizontal edges.
  - 1. Doors less than 12 inches (305 mm) wide may be fabricated from 0.048-inch (1.21-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet.
  - 2. Doors for box lockers less than 15 inches (381 mm) wide may be fabricated from 0.048-inch (1.21-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet.
  - 3. Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard reinforcing angles, channels, or stiffeners for doors more than 15 inches (381 mm) wide; welded to inner face of doors.
  - 4. Stiffeners: Manufacturer's standard full-height stiffener fabricated from 0.048-inch (1.21-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet; welded to inner face of doors.
  - 5. Sound-Dampening Panels: Manufacturer's standard, designed to stiffen doors and reduce sound levels when doors are closed, of die-formed metal with full perimeter flange and sound-dampening material; welded to inner face of doors.
  - 6. Door Style: Louvered vents at top and bottom.
- H. Hinges: Welded to door and attached to door frame with no fewer than two factory-installed rivets per hinge that are completely concealed and tamper resistant when door is closed; fabricated to swing 180 degrees.
  - 1. Knuckle Hinges: Steel, full loop, five (5) or seven (7) knuckles, tight pin; minimum 2 inches (51 mm) high. Provide no fewer than three (3) hinges for each door more than 42 inches (1067 mm) high.
  - 2. Continuous Hinges: Manufacturer's standard, steel, full height.
- I. Projecting Door Handle and Latch: Finger-lift latch control designed for use with either built-in combination locks or padlocks; positive automatic latching, chromium plated; pry and vandal resistant.
  - 1. Latch Hooks: Equip doors 48 inches (1219 mm) and higher with three latch hooks and doors less than 48 inches (1219 mm) high with two (2) latch hooks; fabricated from 0.105-inch (2.66-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet; welded or riveted to full-height door strikes; with resilient silencer on each latch hook.
  - 2. Latching Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard, rattle-free latching mechanism and moving components isolated to prevent metal-to-metal contact, and incorporating a prelocking device that allows locker door to be locked while door is open and then closed without unlocking or damaging lock or latching mechanism.
- J. Recessed Door Handle and Latch: Stainless-steel cup with integral door pull, recessed so locking device does not protrude beyond face of door; pry and vandal resistant.
  - 1. Multipoint Latching: Finger-lift latch control designed for use with built-in combination locks, built-in key locks, or padlocks; positive automatic latching and prelocking.
    - a. Latch Hooks: Equip doors 48 inches (1219 mm) and higher with three (3) latch hooks and doors less than 48 inches (1219 mm) high with two (2) latch hooks; fabricated from 0.105-inch (2.66-mm) nominal-thickness steel sheet; welded or riveted to full-height door strikes; with resilient silencer on each latch hook.



## 2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate metal lockers square, rigid, and without warp and with metal faces flat and free of dents or distortion. Make exposed metal edges safe to touch and free of sharp edges and burrs.
  - 1. Form body panels, doors, shelves, and accessories from one-piece steel sheet unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Provide fasteners, filler plates, supports, clips, and closures as required for complete installation.
- B. Fabricate each metal locker with an individual door and frame; individual top, bottom, and back; and common intermediate uprights separating compartments. Factory weld frame members of each metal locker together to form a rigid, one-piece assembly.
- C. Knocked-Down Construction: Fabricate metal lockers using nuts, bolts, screws, or rivets for preassembly at plant prior to shipping.
- D. All-Welded Construction: Factory preassemble metal lockers by welding all joints, seams, and connections; with no bolts, nuts, screws, or rivets used in assembly of main locker groups. Factory weld main locker groups into one-piece structures. Grind exposed welds flush.
- E. Accessible Lockers: Fabricate as follows:
  - 1. Locate bottom shelf no lower than 15 inches (381 mm) above the floor.
  - 2. Where hooks, coat rods, or additional shelves are provided, locate no higher than 48 inches (1219 mm) above the floor.
- F. Hooks: Manufacturer's standard ball-pointed type, aluminum or steel; zinc plated.
- G. Coat Rods: Fabricated from 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) diameter steel; nickel plated.
- H. Identification Plates: Manufacturer's standard, etched, embossed, or stamped aluminum plates, with numbers and letters at least 3/8 inch (9 mm) high.
- I. Continuous Base: Formed into channel or zee profile for stiffness, and fabricated in lengths as long as practical to enclose base and base ends of metal lockers; finished to match lockers.
- J. Continuous Sloping Tops: Fabricated in lengths as long as practical, without visible fasteners at splice locations; finished to match lockers.
  - 1. Sloping-top corner fillers, mitered.
- K. Individual Sloping Tops: Fabricated in width to fit one locker frame in lieu of flat locker tops; with integral back; finished to match lockers. Provide wedge-shaped divider panels between lockers.
- L. Recess Trim: Fabricated with minimum 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) face width and in lengths as long as practical; finished to match lockers.
- M. Filler Panels: Fabricated in an unequal leg angle shape; finished to match lockers. Provide slip-joint filler angle formed to receive filler panel.
- N. Boxed End Panels: Fabricated with 1-inch- (25-mm-) wide edge dimension, and designed for concealing fasteners and holes at exposed ends of nonrecessed metal lockers; finished to match lockers.
  - 1. Provide one-piece panels for double-row (back-to-back) locker ends.

- O. Finished End Panels: Designed for concealing unused penetrations and fasteners, except for perimeter fasteners, at exposed ends of nonrecessed metal lockers; finished to match lockers.
  - 1. Provide one-piece panels for double-row (back-to-back) locker ends.
- P. Center Dividers: Full-depth, vertical partitions between bottom and shelf; finished to match lockers.

## 2.4 STEEL SHEET FINISHES

- A. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning, pretreating, and phosphatizing, apply manufacturer's standard thermosetting baked-enamel finish. Comply with paint manufacturer's written instructions for application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.
- B. Powder-Coat Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, electrostatically apply manufacturer's standard, baked-polymer, thermosetting powder finish. Comply with resin manufacturer's written instructions for application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install level, plumb, and true; shim as required, using concealed shims.
  - 1. Anchor locker runs at ends and at intervals recommended by manufacturer, but not more than 36 inches (910 mm) o.c. Using concealed fasteners, install anchors through backup reinforcing plates, channels, or blocking as required to prevent metal distortion.
  - 2. Anchor single rows of metal lockers to walls near top and bottom of lockers.
  - 3. Anchor back-to-back metal lockers to floor.
- B. Knocked-Down Metal Lockers: Assemble with standard fasteners, with no exposed fasteners on door faces or face frames.
- C. All-Welded Metal Lockers: Connect groups together with standard fasteners, with no exposed fasteners on face frames.
- D. Equipment and Accessories: Fit exposed connections of trim, fillers, and closures accurately together to form tight, hairline joints, with concealed fasteners and splice plates.
  - 1. Attach hooks with at least two (2) fasteners.
  - 2. Attach door locks on doors using security-type fasteners.
  - 3. Identification Plates: Identify metal lockers with identification indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Attach plates to each locker door, near top, centered, with at least two (2) aluminum rivets.
  - 4. Attach recess trim to recessed metal lockers with concealed clips.
  - 5. Attach filler panels with concealed fasteners. Locate filler panels where indicated on Drawings.
  - 6. Attach sloping-top units to metal lockers, with closures at exposed ends.
  - 7. Attach boxed end panels with concealed fasteners to conceal exposed ends of nonrecessed metal lockers.
  - 8. Attach finished end panels with fasteners only at perimeter to conceal exposed ends of nonrecessed metal lockers.

- E. Fixed Locker Benches: Provide no fewer than two pedestals for each bench, uniformly spaced not more than 72 inches (1830 mm) apart. Securely fasten tops of pedestals to undersides of bench tops, and anchor bases to floor.
  
- F. Freestanding Locker Benches: Place benches in locations indicated on Drawings.

END OF SECTION 105113

## SECTION 107316 - PREFABRICATED CANOPY SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes design, fabrication and installation of complete welded, extruded aluminum wall mounted canopies. All work shall be in accordance with the drawings and this specification.
  - 1. Manufacturer's standard building components and accessories may be used, provided components, accessories, and complete structure conform to design indicated and specified requirements.
- B. Custom extruded aluminum canopies as shown on drawings at basement stair and window wells.

#### 1.3 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Engineer, design, fabricate and erect the pre-engineered building system to withstand loads from winds, gravity, structural movement including movement thermally induced, and to resist in-service use conditions that the building will experience, including exposure to the weather, without failure.
- B. Submittals:
  - 1. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product information, specifications and installation instructions for building components and accessories.
  - 2. Shop Drawings: Submit complete shop drawings including all necessary plan dimensions, elevations and details. Contractor shall verify all dimensions and provide elevations at each column, finish floor, and related soffit before releasing to manufacturer for fabrication.
  - 3. Certification: Submit design calculations signed and sealed by a Registered Professional Engineer. Design calculations shall state that the protective cover system design complies with the wind requirements of ANSI/ASCE 7-88, the stability criteria of applicable building code, and all other governing criteria. Engineer to be registered in state where project is located.
- C. Quality Assurance:
  - 1. Protective cover shall be wholly produced by a recognized manufacturer with at least ten (10) years experience in the design and fabrication of extruded aluminum protective cover system. Components shall be installed by manufacturer. Protective cover system, including material and workmanship, shall be warranted from defects for a period of one year from substantial completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 AVAILABLE MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis of Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Mapes Architectural Products; Super Lumideck, or comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Dittmer Architectural Aluminum
  - 2. Peachtree Protective Covers

3. E.L. Burns Co., Inc.
4. Royal Aluminum

## 2.2 DESIGN

- A. Protective cover shall be all welded extruded aluminum system complete with internal drainage. Non-welded systems are not acceptable. Roll formed deck is not acceptable. Expansion joints shall be included to accommodate temperature changes of 120°F.

## 2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Members: All sections shall be extended aluminum 6063 alloy, Heat treated to a T-6 Temper.
- B. Fasteners: Fasteners shall be aluminum, 18-8 stainless steel, 300 series stainless steel, or 410 stainless steel.
- C. Protective coating: Aluminum columns embedded in concrete or solid grouted cmu shall be protected by clear acrylic.
- D. Grout:
  1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type 1.
  2. Sand: ASTM C 404.
  3. Water: Potable
- E. Gaskets: Gaskets shall be dry seal santoprene pressure type.
- F. Aluminum Flashing: ASTM B 209, Type 3003 H14, 0.040 inch, minimum.

## 2.4 COMPONENTS

- A. Beams: Beams shall be open-top tubular extrusion of size and shape shown on drawings, top edges thickened for strength and designed to receive deck members in self-flashing manner. Extruded structural ties shall be installed in tops of all beams.
- B. Deck: Deck shall be extruded self-flashing sections interlocking into composite unit with sufficient chamber to offset dead load deflection and cause positive drainage. Welded plates shall be used as closures at deck ends.
- C. Fascia: Fascia shall be manufacturer's standard shape. Size as indicated on drawings.
- D. Flashing: Flashing shall be .040 aluminum (min.). All thru-wall flashing by others.
- E. Hanger rods: Manufacturer's standard, as required to comply with structural performance requirements.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Bent Construction: Beams and columns shall be factory welded with neatly mitered corners onto one-piece rigid bents. All welds shall be smooth and uniform using an inert gas shielded arc. Suitable edge preparation shall be performed to assure 100% penetration. Grind welds only where interfering with adjoining structure to allow for flush connection. Field welding is not permitted. Rigid mechanical joints shall be used shipping limitations prohibit the shipment of fully welded bents.
- B. Deck Construction: Deck shall be manufactured of extruded modules that interlock in self-flashing manner. Interlocking joints shall be positively fastened at 80°C. creating a monolithic structural unit capable for developing the full strength of the sections. The fastenings must have minimum shear strength of 350 pounds each. Deck shall be assembled with sufficient camber to offset dead load deflection.

## 2.6 FINISHES

- A. High-Performance Organic Finish: Three-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear top coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range..

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Erection shall be performed after all curtain wall, EIFS and roofing work in the vicinity is complete and cleaned.
- B. Contractor shall verify and approve dimensions and elevations shown on shop drawings with actual field dimensions to verify conditions are satisfactory for installation.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Column Sleeves: Column sleeves (styrofoam blockouts) or anchor bolts (if required) shall be furnished by the protective manufacturer and installed by Contractor.
- B. Erection: Protective cover shall be erected true to line, level and plumb. Aluminum columns embedded in concrete shall be filled with grout to the discharge level to prevent standing water. Non-draining columns shall have weep holes installed at top of concrete to remove condensation.
- C. Coordination: Coordinate installation with other trades as necessary for a complete and operable installation.

### 3.3 CLEANING

- A. All protective cover components shall be cleaned promptly after completion of installation.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Extreme care shall be taken to protect materials during and after installation.

END OF SECTION 107316

## SECTION 111300 - LOADING DOCK EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Dock levelers.
2. Truck restraints.
3. Dock bumpers.

##### B. Related Sections:

1. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete work for recessed loading dock equipment.
2. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for curb angles at edges of recessed pits and loading dock platform edge channels.
3. Division 22 Section "Plumbing Fixtures" for pit drains for loading dock equipment permanently installed in pits.
4. Division 26 Sections for electrical wiring for, and connections to, loading dock equipment.
5. Division 26 Sections "Interior Lighting" and "Exterior Lighting" for dock lighting fixtures.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Operating Range: Maximum amount of travel above and below the loading dock level.
- B. Working Range: Recommended amount of travel above and below the loading dock level for which loading and unloading operations can take place.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for loading dock equipment. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For loading dock equipment. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Welding certificates.

- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency; indicate compliance of dock levelers with requirements in MH 30.1 for determining rated capacity, which is based on comprehensive testing within last two (2) years of current products.

- 1. Submittal Form: According to MH 30.1, Appendix A.

- D. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For loading dock equipment to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.

- 1. Maintenance Proximity: Not more than two (2) hours normal travel time from Installer's place of business to Project site.

- B. Source Limitations: Obtain loading dock equipment from single source from single manufacturer.

- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

- 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  - 2. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

- 1. Inspect and discuss electrical roughing-in, equipment bases, and other preparatory work specified elsewhere.
  - 2. Review sequence of operation for each type of loading dock equipment.
  - 3. Review coordination of interlocked equipment specified in this Section and elsewhere.
  - 4. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store and handle dock seals in a manner to avoid significant or permanent damage to fabric or frame.

- 1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for minimum and maximum temperature requirements for storage.

#### 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of construction contiguous with loading dock equipment, including recessed pit dimensions, slopes of driveways, and heights of loading docks, by field measurements before fabrication.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Dock Levelers: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace dock-leveler components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including cracked or broken structural support members, load-bearing welds, and front and rear hinges.
    - b. Faulty operation of operators, control system, or hardware.
    - c. Deck plate failures including cracked plate or permanent deformation in excess of 1/4 inch between deck supports.
    - d. Hydraulic system failures including failure of hydraulic seals and cylinders.
  2. Warranty Period for Structural Assembly: Ten (10) years from date of Substantial Completion.
  3. Warranty Period for Hydraulic System: Five (5) years from date of Substantial Completion.
  4. Warranty shall be for unlimited usage of leveler for the specified rated capacity over the term of the warranty.

#### 1.11 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide twelve (12) months full maintenance by skilled employees of loading dock equipment Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper loading dock equipment operation at rated speed and capacity. Provide parts and supplies the same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original equipment.
- B. Continuing Maintenance Proposal: From Installer to Owner, in the form of a standard yearly maintenance agreement, starting on date initial maintenance service is concluded. State services, obligations, conditions, and terms for agreement period and for future renewal options.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM 36/A 36M.
- B. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from steel plate complying with ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade 55.
- C. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500, cold formed.
- D. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
- E. Wood: DOC PS 20 dimension lumber, select structural grade, kiln dried.
- F. Pressure-Treated Wood: DOC PS 20 dimension lumber, select structural grade, kiln dried, and pressure treated with waterborne preservatives to comply with AWWA C2.

## 2.2 RECESSED DOCK LEVELERS

- A. General: Recessed, hinged-lip-type dock levelers designed for permanent installation in concrete pits preformed in the edge of loading platform; of type, function, operation, capacity, size, and construction indicated; and complete with controls, safety devices, and accessories required.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide 4Front Engineered Solutions – Kelley; Model HK 6 x 6 or designation or comparable product by one of the following:
    - a. Rite-Hite Corporation; RHH Hydraulic Dock Leveler
    - b. Chalfant Dock Equipment; H1 Series Leveler.
    - c. McGuire, W. B. Co., Inc.; Division of Overhead Door Corporation; HT Series Hydraulic Dock Leveler.
- B. Standard: Comply with MH 30.1.
- C. Rated Capacity: Capable of supporting total gross load of 40K without permanent deflection or distortion.
- D. Platform: Not less than 5/16-inch- thick, nonskid steel plate.
1. Platform Size: 6' 0" by 6' 0" (1829 x 1829 mm).
  2. Frame: Manufacturer's standard.
  3. Toe Guards: Equip open sides of dock leveler over range indicated with metal toe guards.
    - a. Toe-Guard Range: Entire upper operating range.
- E. Hinged Lip: Not less than 5/8-inch- thick, nonskid steel plate.
1. Hinge: Full width, piano-type hinge with heavy-wall hinge tube and greased fittings, with gussets on lip and ramp for support.
  2. Safety Barrier Lip: Designed to protect material-handling equipment from an accidental fall from loading platform edge of the dock leveler when the leveler is not in use.
- F. Function: Dock levelers shall compensate for differences in height between truck bed and loading platform.
1. Vertical Travel: Operating range above platform level of sufficient height to enable lip to extend and clear truck bed before contact with the following minimum working range:
    - a. Above Adjoining Platform: 12 inches.
    - b. Below Adjoining Platform: 12 inches.
  2. Automatic Vertical Compensation: Floating travel of ramp with lip extended and resting on truck bed shall compensate automatically for upward or downward movement of truck bed during loading and unloading.
  3. Lip Operation: Manufacturer's standard mechanism that automatically extends and supports hinged lip on ramp edge with lip resting on truck bed over dock leveler's working range, allows lip to yield under impact of incoming truck, and automatically retracts lip when truck departs.
    - a. Length of Lip Extension: 16 inches.
  4. Automatic Ramp Return: Automatic return of unloaded ramp, from raised or lowered positions to stored position, level with platform, as truck departs.

5. Interlock: Leveler will not operate while leveler night lock is engaged or truck restraint is not engaged.
  - G. Hydraulic Operating System: Electric control from a remote-control station; fully hydraulic operation. Electric-powered hydraulic raising and hydraulic lowering of ramp. Equip leveler with a packaged unit including a unitized, totally enclosed, nonventilated electric motor, pump, manifold reservoir, and valve assembly of proper size, type, and operation for capacity of leveler indicated. Include means for lowering ramp below platform level with lip retracted behind dock bumpers. Provide a hydraulic velocity fuse connected to main hydraulic cylinder to limit loaded ramp's free fall to not more than 3 inches.
    1. Remote-Control Station with Emergency Stop: Weatherproof multibutton control station with an UP button of the constant-pressure type and an emergency STOP button of the momentary-contact type, enclosed in NEMA ICS 6, Type 4 box. Ramp raises by depressing and holding UP button; ramp lowers at a controlled rate by releasing UP button. All ramp movement stops, regardless of position of ramp or lip, by depressing STOP button. Normal operation resumes by engaging a manual reset button or by pulling out STOP button.
      - a. Master Panel: Control panel with integral fused disconnecting means for operating dock leveler and truck restraints.
  - H. Construction: Fabricate dock-leveler frame, platform supports, and lip supports from structural- or formed-steel shapes. Weld platform and hinged lip to supports. Fabricate entire assembly to withstand deformation during both operating and stored phases of service. Chamfer lip edge to minimize obstructing wheels of material-handling vehicles.
    1. Cross-Traffic Support: Manufacturer's standard method of supporting ramp at platform level in stored position with lip retracted. Provide a means to release supports to allow ramp to descend below platform level.
    2. Maintenance Strut: Integral strut to positively support ramp in up position during maintenance of dock leveler.
  - I. Integral Laminated-Tread Dock Bumper: Fabricated from 4-1/2-inch- thick, multiple, uniformly thick plies cut from fabric-reinforced rubber tires. Laminate plies under pressure on not less than two 3/4-inch-diameter, steel supporting rods that are welded at one end to 1/4-inch- thick, structural-steel end angle and secured with a nut and angle at the other end. Fabricate angles with predrilled anchor holes and sized to provide not less than 1 inch of tread plies extending beyond the face of closure angles.
  - J. Accessories:
    1. Curb Angles: 3-by-3-by-1/4-inch galvanized-steel curb angles for edge of recessed leveler pit, with 1/2-inch- diameter by 6-inch- long concrete anchors welded to angle at 6 inches o.c.
  - K. Finish: Paint dock levelers after assembly.
    1. Toe Guards: Paint yellow to comply with ANSI Z535.1.
- ## 2.3 TRUCK RESTRAINTS
- A. General: Manufacturer's standard device designed to engage truck's rear-impact guard and hold truck at loading dock. Restraint shall consist of an iron or steel restraining arm that raises until contacting rear-impact guard. Arm shall move vertically, automatically adjusting to varying height of truck due to loading and unloading operations.
    1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Kelley Star 1 Vehicle Restraints or comparable product by one of the following:

- a. Rite-Hite Corporation; Dok-Lok Vehicle Restraints
  - b. Chalfant Dock Equipment.
  - c. McGuire, W. B. Co., Inc.; Division of Overhead Door Corporation.
- B. Standard: Comply with MH 30.3.
- C. Rated Capacity: Capable of supporting total gross load of 30,000 lbs without permanent deflection or distortion.
- D. Operating Range: Capable of restraining rear-impact guards within a range from:
1. Vertical: 30 inches above driveway.
  2. Horizontal: 12 inches in front of dock bumpers.
- E. Power Operating System: Manufacturer's standard electromechanical or hydraulic unit.
1. Remote-Control Station: Single-button station of the constant-pressure type, enclosed in NEMA ICS 6, Type 4 box. Restraint is engaged by depressing and holding button; restraint is released by releasing button.
  2. Interlock: Leveler will not operate while truck restraint is not engaged.
- F. Mechanical Operating System: Restraint operates by use of a lifting rod or hook to raise engagement device.
- G. Rear-Impact-Guard Sensor: Detects presence of rear-impact guard and automatically returns to stored position if rear-impact guard is not engaged.
- H. Caution Signs: Exterior, surface mounted; designed to inform both dock attendant and truck driver; with sign copy as follows. Provide one sign at each truck-restraint location.
1. Sign Copy in Forward and Reverse Text: Manufacturer's standard text permitting truck movement with green light.
  2. Interior Sign Copy: Manufacturer's standard text permitting truck movement with green light.
- I. Alarm: Audible and visual system indicating that rear-impact guard is not engaged, with manual reset.
- J. Accessories:
- a. Interlock to dock leveler.
  - b. Key switch.
- K. Truck-Restraint Finish: Painted.

## 2.4 DOCK BUMPERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Rite-Hite Corporation; Laminated Dock Bumper or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Chalfant Dock Equipment.
  2. McGuire, W. B. Co., Inc.; Division of Overhead Door Corporation.
- B. Laminated-Tread Dock Bumper Fabricated from multiple, uniformly thick plies cut from fabric-reinforced rubber tires. Laminate plies under pressure on not less than two 3/4-inch- diameter, steel supporting rods that are welded at one end to 1/4-inch- thick, structural-steel end angle and secured with a

nut and angle at the other end. Fabricate angles with predrilled anchor holes and sized to provide not less than 1 inch of tread plies extending beyond the face of closure angles.

1. Thickness: 4-1/2 inches.
2. Horizontal Style: 10 inches high by.
3. Vertical Style: 8 inches wide by 20 inches high.

- C. Anchorage Devices: Hot-dip galvanized-steel anchor bolts, nuts, washers, bolts, sleeves, cast-in-place plates, and other anchorage devices as required to fasten bumpers securely in place and to suit installation type indicated.

## 2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Finish loading dock equipment after assembly and testing.

## 2.6 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize components as indicated to comply with the following:

1. ASTM A 123/A 123M for iron and steel loading dock equipment.
2. ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329 for iron and steel hardware for loading dock equipment.

- B. Galvanized-Steel and Steel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat in manufacturer's standard color.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of loading dock equipment.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical systems for loading dock equipment to verify actual locations of connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine walls and floors of pits for suitable conditions where recessed loading dock equipment is to be installed. Pits shall be plumb and square and properly sloped for drainage from back to front of loading dock.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of loading dock equipment indicated to be attached to or recessed into concrete or masonry, and furnish anchoring devices with templates, diagrams, and instructions for their installation.
- B. Set curb angles in concrete edges of dock-leveler recessed pits with tops flush with loading platform. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- C. Clean recessed pits of debris.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install loading dock equipment, including motors, pumps, control stations wiring, safety devices, and accessories as required for a complete installation.
  - 1. Rough-in electrical connections according to requirements specified in Division 26 Sections.
- B. Recessed Dock Levelers: Attach dock levelers securely to loading dock platform, flush with adjacent loading dock surfaces and square to recessed pit.
- C. Truck Restraints: Attach truck restraints in a manner that complies with requirements for arrangement and height required for device to engage vehicle rear-impact guard. Interconnect control panel and signals with dock leveler.
  - 1. Wall-Mounted Units: Weld truck restraints to steel mounting plate embedded in loading dock edge.
  - 2. Wall-Mounted Units: Anchor truck restraints to face of loading dock with expansion anchors and bolts.
  - 3. Driveway-Mounted Units: Anchor truck restraints to driveway with expansion anchors and bolts.
- D. Dock Bumpers: Attach dock bumpers to face of loading dock in a manner that complies with requirements indicated for spacing, arrangement, and position relative to top of platform and anchorage.
  - 1. Welded Attachment: Plug-weld anchor holes in contact with steel inserts and fillet weld at other locations.
  - 2. Bolted Attachment: Attach dock bumpers to preset anchor bolts embedded in concrete or to cast-in-place inserts or threaded studs welded to embedded-steel plates or angles. If preset anchor bolts, cast-in-place inserts, or threaded studs welded to embedded-steel plates or angles are not provided, attach dock bumpers by drilling and anchoring with expansion anchors and bolts.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust loading dock equipment to function smoothly and safely, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Test dock levelers for vertical travel within operating range indicated.
- C. After completing installation of exposed, factory-finished loading dock equipment, inspect exposed finishes and repair damaged finishes.

### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain loading dock equipment.

END OF SECTION 111300

SECTION 122413 - ROLLER WINDOW SHADES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Motor-operated roller shades with double rollers.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Division 06 Section "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking and grounds for mounting roller shades and accessories.
- 2. Division 26 Sections for electrical service and connections for motors, controls, limit switches, and other powered devices and for system disconnect switches for motor-operated shades.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include styles, material descriptions, construction details, dimensions of individual components and profiles, features, finishes, and operating instructions for roller shades.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for roller shades, including shadeband materials, their orientation to rollers, and their seam and batten locations.

- 1. Motor-Operated Shades: Include details of installation and diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 10 inches (250 mm) long.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type and color of shadeband material.

- 1. Include Samples of accessories involving color selection.

E. Samples for Verification: For each type of roller shade.

- 1. Shadeband Material: Not less than 10 inches (250 mm) square. Mark inside face of material if applicable.
- 2. Roller Shade: Full-size operating unit, not less than 16 inches (400 mm) wide by 36 inches (900 mm) long for each type of roller shade indicated.
- 3. Installation Accessories: Full-size unit, not less than 10 inches (250 mm) long.

F. Roller-Shade Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

G. Qualification Data: For Installer.

H. Maintenance Data: For roller shades to include in maintenance manuals include the following:

1. Methods for maintaining roller shades and finishes.
2. Precautions about cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to fabrics, finishes and performances.
3. Operating hardware.
4. Motorized shade operator.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide roller shade band materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
  1. Flame-Resistance Ratings: Passes NFPA 701.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- D. Product Standard: Provide roller shades complying with WCMA A 100.1.
- E. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
  1. Approved mockups may become part of the complete Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roller shades in factory packages, marked with manufacturer, product name, and location of installation using same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install roller shades until construction and finish work in spaces, including painting, is complete and dry and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Field Measurements: Where roller shades are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Allow clearances for operating hardware of operable glazed units through entire operating range. Notify Architect of installation conditions that vary from Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Roller shade hardware and chair warranty: manufacturer's standard non-depreciating twenty-five (25) year limited warranty.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide MechoShade Systems, Inc. Electro 1 Double Shade #13 drive-end bracket with metal pocket or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Draper Inc.
  2. Hunter Douglas Contract.
  3. Lutron Electronics Co., Inc.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain roller shades from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 MOTOR-OPERATED, DOUBLE-ROLLER SHADES

- A. Motorized Operating Systems: Provide factory-assembled, shade-operator systems of size and capacity and with features, characteristics, and accessories suitable for conditions indicated, complete with electric motor and factory-prewired motor controls, power disconnect switch, enclosures protecting controls and operating parts, and accessories required for reliable operation without malfunction. Include wiring from motor controls to motors. Coordinate operator wiring requirements and electrical characteristics with building electrical system.
1. Electrical Components: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Motor: Electric Motor Intelligent encoded, tubular, asynchronous (non-synchronous) motors, with built-in reversible capacitor, temperature Class A, thermally protected, totally enclosed, maintenance free with line voltage power supply equipped with locking disconnect plug assembly furnished with each motor. Max draw for each shade motor shall be 2.3 amps. Low voltage motors do not meet the intent of this specification.
    - a. Electrical Characteristics: Single phase, 110 V, 60 Hz.
    - b. Motor Noise Rating: Use motors rated as 44 – 46 dbA measured at three feet.
    - c. Motor Location: Conceal motors inside shade motor tube.
  3. Limit Switches: Provide programming of upper and lower stopping points (operating limits) of shadeband's into motors via a hand held removable program module /configurator.
  4. Operating Features:
    - a. Group switching with integrated five button, single gang switch control.
    - b. Provide intermediate stopping positions for shades that allow for up to three (3) repeatable and precise aligned positions. All shades on the same switch circuit with the same opening height shall align at each intermediate stopping position
    - c. Provide two modes of operation, uniform and regular. Uniform mode shall allow for shades to only move to intermediate stop positions. Regular mode shall allow for shades to move to both intermediate stop positions, plus any position desired between the upper and lower limits as set by the installer
    - d. Capable of interface with audiovisual control system.

### 2.3 ROLLER SHADE TYPES

- A. Motorized Shades:
1. Mounting: Recess mounted with ceiling pocket, closure and closure mount.
  2. Configuration: Double solar and blackout shadecloth.

3. Controls: Electrically operated, IQ motor with low voltage control system.

## 2.4 SHADE BAND

- A. Shade Bands: Construction of shade band includes the fabric, the hem weight, hem-pocket, shade roller tube, and the attachment of the shade band to the roller tube. Sewn hems and open hem pockets are not acceptable.
  1. Shadeband Material: Light-filtering fabric on inside roller, light-blocking fabric on outside roller.
  2. Hem Pockets and Hem Weights: Fabric hem pocket with RF-welded seams (including welded ends) and concealed hem weights. Hem weights shall be of appropriate size and weight for shade band. Hem weight shall be continuous inside a sealed hem pocket. Hem pocket construction and hem weights shall be similar, for all shades within one room.
  3. Shade Band and Shade Roller Attachment:
    - a. Use extruded aluminum shade roller tube of a diameter and wall thickness required to support shade fabric without excessive deflection. Roller tubes less than 1.55 inch (39.37 mm) in diameter for manual shades, and less than 2.55 inches (64.77 mm) for motorized shades are not acceptable.
    - b. Provide for positive mechanical engagement with drive / brake mechanism.
    - c. Provide for positive mechanical attachment of shade band to roller tube; shade band shall be made removable / replaceable with a "snap-on" snap-off" spline mounting, without having to remove shade roller from shade brackets.
    - d. Mounting spline shall not require use of adhesives, adhesive tapes, staples, and/or rivets.
    - e. Any method of attaching shade band to roller tube that requires the use of: adhesive, adhesive tapes, staples, and/or rivets are not acceptable.

## 2.5 SHADE FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate units to completely fill existing openings from head to sill and jamb-to-jamb, unless specifically indicated otherwise.
  1. Outside of Jamb Installation: Width and length as indicated, with terminations between shades of end-to-end installations at center lines of mullion or other defined vertical separations between openings
- B. Provide battens in standard shades as required to assure proper tracking and uniform rolling of the shadebands. Contractor shall be responsible for assuring the width-to-height (W:H) ratios shall not exceed manufacturer's standards or, in absence of such standards, shall be responsible for establishing appropriate standards to assure proper tracking and rolling of the shadecloth within specified standards. Battens shall be roll-formed stainless steel or tempered steel, as required.
- C. For railroaded shadebands, provide seams in railroaded multi-width shadebands as required to meet size requirements and in accordance with seam alignment as acceptable to Architect. Seams shall be properly located. Furnish battens in place of plain seams when the width, height, or weight of the shade exceeds manufacturer's standards. In absence of such standards, assure proper use of seams or battens as required to, and assure the proper tracking of the railroaded multi-width shadebands.
- D. Provide battens for railroaded shades when width-to-height (W:H) ratios meet or exceed manufacturer's standards. In absence of manufacturer's standards, be responsible for proper use and placement of battens to assure proper tracking and roll of shadebands.

## 2.6 COMPONENTS

### A. Access and Material Requirements:

1. Provide shade hardware allowing for the removal of shade roller tube from brackets without removing hardware from opening and without requiring end or center supports to be removed.
2. Provide shade hardware that allows for removal and re-mounting of the shade bands without having to remove the shade tube, drive or operating support brackets.
3. Use only Delrin engineered plastics by DuPont for all plastic components of shade hardware. Styrene based plastics, and /or polyester, or reinforced polyester will not be acceptable.

### B. Motorized Shade Hardware and Shade Brackets:

1. Provide shade hardware constructed of minimum 1/8-inch (3.18 mm) thick plated steel, or heavier, thicker, as required to support 150 percent of the full weight of each shade.
2. Provide shade hardware system that allows for field adjustment of motor or replacement of any operable hardware component without requiring removal of brackets, regardless of mounting position (inside, or outside mount).
3. Provide shade hardware system that allows for operation of multiple shade bands offset by a maximum of 8-45 degrees from the motor axis between shade bands (4-22.5 degrees) on each side of the radial line, by a single shade motor (multi-banded shade, subject to manufacturer's design criteria).

## 2.7 ACCESSORIES

### A. Roller Shade Pocket: For recessed mounting in acoustical tile, or drywall ceilings as indicated on the Drawings.

1. Provide either extruded aluminum and or formed steel shade pocket, sized to accommodate roller shades, with exposed extruded aluminum closure mount, tile support and removable closure panel to provide access to shades.
  - a. Provide "Vented Pocket" such that there will be a minimum of four 1 inch (25.4 mm) diameter holes per foot allowing the solar gain to flow above the ceiling line.

### B. Pocket Accessories: As indicated on the Drawings.

### C. Fascia:

1. Continuous removable extruded aluminum fascia that attaches to shade mounting brackets without the use of adhesives, magnetic strips, or exposed fasteners.
2. Fascia shall be able to be installed across two or more shade bands in one piece.
3. Fascia shall fully conceal brackets, shade roller and fabric on the tube.
4. Provide bracket / fascia end caps where mounting conditions expose outside of roller shade brackets.
5. Notching of Fascia for manual chain shall not be acceptable.

## 2.8 SHADEBAND MATERIALS

### A. Shadeband Material Flame-Resistance Rating: Comply with NFPA 701. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

### B. Light-Filtering Fabric: Woven fabric, stain and fade resistant.

1. Basis of Design: MechoShade 1500 series.
2. Type: Extruded vinyl yarn comprising of 21 percent polyester and 79 percent reinforced vinyl.
3. Weave: Basketweave.
4. Thickness: single thickness non-raveling 0.030-inch (0.762 mm) thick vinyl fabric, woven from 0.018-inch (0.457 mm) diameter extruded vinyl yarn
5. Roll Width: 96 inches.
6. Orientation on Shadeband: As indicated on Drawings.
7. Openness Factor: 3 percent.
8. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

C. C.Light-Blocking Fabric: Opaque fabric, stain and fade resistant.

1. Basis of Design: Mechoshade Systems 0100 series.
2. Type: Room darkening (PVC Free) Shadecloth with opaque acrylic backing.
3. Thickness: .008 inches thick (.19 mm).
4. Weight: .94 lbs. per square yard.
5. Roll Width: 100 inches (1829 mm).
6. Orientation on Shadeband: As indicated on Drawings.
7. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, operational clearances, accurate locations of connections to building electrical system, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 ROLLER-SHADE INSTALLATION

- A. Turn-Key Single-Source Responsibility for Motorized Interior Roller Shades: To control the responsibility for performance of motorized roller shade systems, assign the design, engineering, and installation of motorized roller shade systems, motors, controls, and low voltage electrical control wiring specified in this Section to a single manufacturer and their authorized installer/dealer. The Architect will not produce a set of electrical drawings for the installation of control wiring for the motors, or motor controllers of the motorized roller shades. Power wiring (line voltage), shall be provided by the roller shade installer/dealer, in accordance with the requirements provided by the manufacturer. Coordinate the following with the roller shade installer/dealer:
  1. Main Contractor shall provide power panels and circuits of sufficient size to accommodate roller shade manufacturer's requirements, as indicated on the mechanical and electrical drawings.
  2. Main Contractor shall coordinate with requirements of roller shade installer/dealer, before inaccessible areas are constructed.
  3. Roller shade installer/dealer shall run line voltage (of sufficient quantity, in sufficient capacity as required) terminating in junction boxes in locations designated by roller shade dealer.
  4. Roller shade installer/dealer shall provide and run all line voltage (from the terminating points) to the motor controllers, wire all roller shade motors to the motor controllers, and provide and run low voltage control wiring from motor controllers to switch/ control locations designated by the Architect. All above-ceiling and concealed wiring shall be plenum-rated, or installed in conduit, as required by the electrical code having jurisdiction
  5. Main Contractor shall provide conduit with pull wire in all areas, which might not be accessible to roller shade contractor due to building design, equipment location or schedule.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust and balance roller shades to operate smoothly, easily, safely, and free from binding or malfunction throughout entire operational range.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean roller-shade surfaces after installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that roller shades are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Replace damaged roller shades that cannot be repaired, in a manner approved by Architect, before time of Substantial Completion.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain motor-operated roller shades.

END OF SECTION 122413

SECTION 124813 - ENTRANCE FLOOR MATS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Entrance mats and recessed frames, including fibered roll good entrance systems.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 03 Section Concrete (subfloors).

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product indicated.
- C. Maintenance Data: For floor mats and frames to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain floor mats and frames through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Accessibility Requirements: Provide installed floor mats that comply with Section 4.5 in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)."

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of finish floors to receive floor mats and frames.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HEAVY TRAFFIC CARPET MATTING

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide 3M Nomad Carpet Matting 8850 by Mats Inc. or a comparable product by one of the following:
  - 1. Amarco Products.
  - 2. Babcock-Davis.
  - 3. Forbo Industries, Inc.
  - 4. Matco International.
  - 5. Musson, R. C. Rubber Co.
  - 6. Pawling Corporation; Architectural Products Division.

- B. Heavy Traffic Carpet Matting 8850
  - 1. Construction: Large diameter polypropylene, small diameter nylon with Flexion.
  - 2. Vinyl Backing Width: 6’.
  - 3. Length Standard Sizes: 6’ x 10’.
  - 4. Thickness: 5/16”.
  - 5. Weight: 113.99 ounces/square yard.
  - 6. Color: Sterling.
  
- C. Performance: Physical properties of the entrance matting shall conform to the following minimums:
  - 1. Surface flammability: ASTM D2859: Pass (equal to CPSC FF 1-70).
  - 2. Electrostatic propensity: AATCC 134: Step: -1.88kV; Scuff: -1.38 kV.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and floor conditions for compliance with requirements for location, sizes, minimum recess depth, and other conditions affecting installation of floor mats and frames.
  - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Follow Division 01 relevant guidelines, and the latest edition of the manufacturer’s installation instructions.
- B. Interface with Other Work: If transitions are required to and/or from the specified entrance matting, contact manufacturer for suitable material.
- C. Sizes: where not indicated otherwise, provide single unit for each mat installation, but do not exceed manufacturer’s maximum size recommendation for units intended for removal and cleaning. Where possible, verify sizes by field measurement before shop fabrication.

#### 3.3 CLEANING

- A. General: Clean up job site, including sweeping or dust mopping the floor to remove all dirt or grit, and put all waste in general contractor’s dumpster.
- B. Initial Maintenance: Conduct a full initial maintenance following the latest edition of the manufacturer’s maintenance instructions; instruct owner’s maintenance staff in proper maintenance procedures.

END OF SECTION 124813

## SECTION 21 00 00- BASIC FIRE SUPPRESSION REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements, as well as the project general requirements for the job.

#### 1.3 PROJECT GENERAL REQUIRMENTS

- A. The intent of the drawings and specifications is to provide complete and properly functioning building systems. The Contractor shall provide all labor and material necessary to achieve such ends.
- B. The plans and specifications are to be considered complimentary. In case of discrepancies, the most stringent shall apply, as determined by the Engineer.
- C. Consider riser diagrams and detail as part of the Contract Documents. Provide equipment, valves, piping and other accessories shown on riser diagrams and details as if they were shown on the floor plans.
- D. Provide minor items, accessories or devices as necessary for completion and proper operation of systems, whether or not they are specifically indicated by specifications or drawings.
- E. Work that is installed in a method not in accordance with the contract documents, as determined by the Engineer, shall be removed at no additional cost or time penalty to the Owner.
- F. The Contractor shall thoroughly examine the contract drawings, visit the site and verify, in the field, all existing conditions before submitting a bid. By the submission of a bid, the Contractor shall acknowledge acceptance of this plan set as an adequate definition of the scope of work and extra cost claims based on inadequacy of plans shall not be considered. No consideration or allowance shall be granted for failure to investigate existing conditions or misunderstandings of the contractual requirements.
- G. Definitions: Refer to the drawings and other sections of these specifications for definitions not included below:
  - 1. "Contract Documents": Complete project specifications and drawings.
  - 2. "Provide": Furnish and install.

3. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to the project site.
  4. "Install": Erect in place.
  5. "Concealed": Hidden by walls and/or ceilings.
  6. "Exposed": Visible to view.
  7. "Indicated": Shown in the contract documents.
- H. The Contractor shall provide all equipment and materials in accordance with the best engineering practice. Follow the manufacturer's published installation instructions and provide all required auxiliary items. Show all required items on layout drawings.
- I. All equipment provided shall be new and the current models for which technical support from the manufacturer and replacement parts are available.
- J. All equipment supplied shall be suitable for the purpose intended. All manufacturers shall have had similar products in service for a minimum of three (3) years.
- K. Coordinate work and equipment of all sections within Division 21 with work and equipment of other Divisions, to assure complete and satisfactory installation.
1. Perform work, such as: excavation, backfill, concrete, flashing and fire proofing required by Division 21 in compliance with requirements of other applicable Divisions of the specifications.
- L. The Contractor shall install all piping parallel to or perpendicular to building walls in a neat workmanlike manner, unless specifically noted. Provide all support steel, hangers, vibration isolation and accessories necessary for equipment per manufacturer's recommendations. Do not support any ceilings or other building structure from piping or appurtenances. Do not allow piping or appurtenances to come into direct contact with building walls or floors. Do not support piping or appurtenances from installed ductwork, other piping, raceways, circuitry, etc. Each installed utility shall be individually supported from the building structure.
- M. Where access panels are required for equipment service access, the Contractor shall coordinate final access panel location with equipment location. Access panel sizes shall be sufficient to allow service as indicated in the manufacturer's published operation and maintenance manuals and all applicable codes and standards as adopted and modified by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
- N. Provide openings in building construction for passage of piping. Repair all walls, ceilings and floors, penetrated. Repairs shall be with materials and finishes that match existing construction and as indicated in the Architectural portions of these specifications. Submit floor slab penetration drawings and details as Informational Submittals, for record only.
- O. The Contractor shall carefully coordinate the openings in the building as to allow the rigging of the equipment. The fire pumps, controllers, valves, piping and other equipment shall be shipped to the site in sections that shall fit in the openings provided.
- P. Field direction that is perceived as different or contradictory to the contract documents shall not relieve the Contractor from complying with the contract documents.

#### 1.4 CONTRACT DRAWINGS

- A. Drawings indicate arrangements, approximate sizes and relative locations of major apparatus, equipment, devices and services provided as part of the Work.
  - 1. Check and compare layout of equipment indicated on drawings against all drawings, specifications of all Divisions, and exact locations determined using approved shop drawings of such equipment.
    - a. Where physical interference occurs, consult with the Engineer and prepare dated, dimensioned drawings correcting such interferences. Submit to the Engineer for review of such drawings.
    - b. Where physical interference occurs, consult with the Engineer and prepare dated, dimensioned drawings correcting such interferences. Submit to the Engineer for review of such drawings.
    - c. Do not scale drawing to determine working dimension. Such measurements shall be taken from figured dimensions.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Refer to other divisions of this specification for location of Contractor storage and staging area.
- B. Deliver all materials with factory-applied end closures. Maintain end closures through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- C. Protect materials from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. Do not exceed structural capacity of floor, if stored inside.
- D. Protect equipment, flanges, fittings, and piping specialties from moisture and dirt.
- E. Protect open pipe from dirt and debris. Cover all ends of uninstalled pipe and exposed ends of installed pipe.

#### 1.6 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate mechanical equipment installation other building components.
- B. Provide a detailed loaded project Critical path method (CPM) schedule for this Contractors work separately from the general Contractor's CPM, which can be integrated into the GC's schedule. The Sub-contractors CPM schedule shall show all work associated with the ordering, installation and commissioning of all equipment listed on the drawings by phase/floor as appropriate. This shall be submitted in paper and electronic (PDF) format and approved by the Owner before any request for payment is submitted. Sample tasks to be shown include but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Shop drawing preparation.
  - 2. Show A/E shop drawing approval period of 3 weeks.
  - 3. Equipment delivery.

4. Installation start by system and floor area.
5. All Testing.
6. Installation complete by system and floor area.
7. Utility Shutdown.
8. Temporary fire protection.
9. Utility connections.
10. Equipment start-up.
11. System fill.
12. Commissioning by system and floor.
13. Training.
14. Payment request.
15. Punch list.

- C. Arrange for chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction to allow for fire suppression work installations.
- D. Coordinate the installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- E. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installations of mechanical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Coordinate installation of large equipment requiring positioning prior to closing in the building.
- F. Coordinate connection of electrical services (of all voltages).
- G. Coordinate connection of fire suppression systems with exterior underground and overhead utilities and services. Comply with requirements of governing regulations, franchised service companies, and controlling agencies.
- H. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors where fire suppression items requiring access are concealed behind finished surfaces.
- I. Coordinate installation of identifying devices after completing covering and painting where devices are applied to surfaces. Install identifying devices prior to installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

#### 1.7 REFERENCED ORGANIZATIONS AND CODES

- A. The following list of abbreviations are utilized within the specifications and are provided as a reference:
  1. AABC - Associated Air Balance Council.
  2. ADA - American Disability Act.
  3. AGA - American Gas Association.
  4. AHJ - Authority Having Jurisdiction
  5. ANSI - American National Standards Institute.
  6. ASHRAE - American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers.
  7. ASME - American Society of Mechanical Engineers.
  8. ASPE - American Society of Plumbing Engineers.

9. ASSE - American Society of Sanitary Engineering
10. ASTM - American Society for Testing and Materials.
11. AWWA - American Water Works Association.
12. CS - Commercial Standard.
13. CSA - Canadian Standards Association.
14. EOR - Engineer of Record
15. FM - Factory Mutual Global
16. HI - Hydraulic Institute.
17. IBC - International Building Code.
18. IBR - Institute of Boiler and Radiator Manufacturers.
19. IECC - International Energy Conservation Code.
20. IEEE - Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers.
21. ITM - Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance as specified in NFPA 25.
22. MSSP - Manufacturers Standards Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry.
23. NEC - National Electrical Code.
24. NEMA - National Electrical Manufacturers Association.
25. NICET - National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies
26. NFPA - National Fire Protection Association.
27. NSF - NSF International
28. OSHA - Occupational Safety and Health Administration.
29. PHCC - National Standard Plumbing Code Illustrated.
30. SMACNA - Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association.
31. TEMA - Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association.
32. UL - Underwriters' Laboratories.

#### 1.8 PRE-BID SITE VISIT

- A. Prior to preparing the bid, the Contractor shall visit the site and become familiar with all existing conditions. Make all necessary investigations as to locations of utilities and all other matters that can affect the work. No additional compensation shall be made to the Contractor as a result of his failure to familiarize himself with the existing conditions under which the work must be performed.

#### 1.9 OUTAGES

- A. For all work requiring an outage, the Contractor shall submit an outage request to the Owner and Architect in enough time to allow a 3 week review or as required by Division 1. The outage request shall include as a minimum:
  1. System(s) effected.
  2. Proposed isolation points.
  3. Start and duration of outage.
  4. Contractor contact person.
  5. Emergency procedures.
  6. Method of procedure.
- B. All mechanical outages, which will interfere with the normal use of the building in any manner, shall be done at such times as shall be mutually agreed upon by the Contractor and the Owner.

- C. The Contractor shall include in his price the cost of all premium time required for outages and other work to be performed, which interferes with the normal use of the building.
- D. The operation of valves or switches required to achieve an outage must be accomplished by the Owners personnel only. Prospective Sub-contractors under this section are cautioned that the unauthorized operation of valves, power switches, or other control devices by their personnel can result in extremely serious consequences for which the Contractor shall be held accountable.

#### 1.10 CUTTING, WELDING, BURNING

- A. Before the Contractor commences any cutting, welding, burning, brazing or pipe sweating, the Contractor shall obtain a hot work permit from the Owner.
- B. The hot work permit copy shall remain on the job site at the hot work location until such work is completed.

#### 1.11 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Contract drawings are generally diagrammatic and do not indicate all offsets, fittings, transitions, access panels and other specialties required.
- B. Furnish and install all items as may be required to fit the work to the conditions encountered.
- C. Arrange piping, valves, equipment and other work generally as shown on the contract drawings, providing proper clearances and access.
- D. Where departures are proposed because of field conditions or other causes, prepare and submit detailed shop drawing submittal for approval in accordance with Submittals specified below.
- E. The Owner may make reasonable changes in location of equipment piping and ductwork up to the time of rough-in or fabrication at no charge and with no time extension.
- F. Equipment submitted that is not basis of design must meet all specified/scheduled performance criteria. No additional compensation shall be made to the Contractor if substituted equipment does not meet performance criteria.

#### 1.12 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

- A. The contract drawings and system performances have been designed on the basis of using the particular manufacturer's products specified or scheduled on the contract drawings.
- B. All proposed substitutions shall be reviewed by the Engineer. The determination of equal products to the prototype shall be at the sole discretion of the Engineer.
- C. Products of other manufacturer's listed in the specification shall be permitted provided as follows:

1. Product shall meet the specifications. If the contractor intends to use a product or equipment not explicitly defined in the project specifications, they shall submit to Substitution Request to the Owner/Architect/Engineer in writing for review and approval.
  2. Any substitutions for the approved product shall require the contractor to make all required changes to all associated trades to accommodate the substitution at no cost or time impact to the project. All substitutions shall be provided with a benefit to the Owner in the form of a credit, reduction in construction schedule, or other advantage approved by the Owner. Substitutions submitted for review without a credit or stated benefit shall be returned "Rejected/Resubmit".
  3. All changes shall be made, without additional cost to the Owner or effort by the design team. The Contractor shall be responsible to provide all adjustments for deviations, such that the final installation is complete and functions as the basis of design product is intended. For equipment substitutions, the Contractor shall make all required accommodations to utilize unit selected, at no additional cost to Owner including but not limited to:
    - a. Electrical modifications including circuit breaker fuse, disconnect switch, conduit and wire size.
    - b. Structural modifications.
    - c. Providing National Electrical Code (NEC) and Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ) required service clearances.
    - d. Space requirements with all other trades if physical dimensions are different than shown in the construction documents.
- D. Products with dimensions or other characteristics different from the basis of design product that render their use impractical or cause functional fit, access, or connection problems, shall not be acceptable.

#### 1.13 DELEGATED DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

- A. All shop drawing submittals associated with fire suppression systems shall be signed and sealed by the contractor's delegated design professional responsible for the project. Said individual must hold a current Fire Protection Engineer license from the State where the project will be constructed. Contractor must provide supporting documentation for their delegated design professional within three (3) weeks of the award of contract. Documentation shall include but not limited to a copy of their current license or wallet card, a signed detailed resume documenting a minimum of five (5) years experience in fire suppression design, and a detailed project completion history containing a minimum of three (3) projects where they were personally responsible for design.

#### 1.14 SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Follow the procedures specified in Division 1 Section "Administrative Requirements," except as modified below.
- B. The purpose of the submittal process is to show, via products, shop drawings, performance data, and calculations, how the Contractor shall conform to the contract documents.

- C. Shop drawing review by the Engineer of Record is only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with the information given in the construction documents. Review is not conducted for the purpose of determining the accuracy of or completeness such as dimensions or quantities.
- D. Shop drawings shall be submitted as an "Informational Submittal." Informational submittals shall be written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals will be reviewed for conformance with specified requirements, including but not limited to contract documents and specifications. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with these specified requirements.
- E. Contractor shall provide a submittal log within thirty (30) days of contract award detailing the each submittal item, anticipated submittal date, actual submittal date, submittal status, submittal number and approved date of each original and resubmittal package. This may be done electronically if the content and format are approved by the Engineer. Payment shall be withheld for any mobilization, project initiation and or start-up cost until it is approved.
- F. The Contractor shall submit shop drawings, coordination drawings, fabrication drawings and receive acceptance from the Engineer of Record prior to submission to the Authority Having Jurisdiction for trade permit, construction or ordering of same.
- G. Acceptance by Engineer of Record does not absolve Contractor of code or Authority Having Jurisdiction's requirements. Conversely, approval by the Authority Having Jurisdiction does not absolve the Contractor of satisfying the requirements of the contract documents.
- H. Submittals must clearly indicate the specific products, accessories and where they shall be used on this project. Submittals that do not contain the above information shall be rejected.
- I. Submittals shall be reviewed by the Contractor and bear his stamp that the submittal meets the requirements of the contract documents. Submittals that are not stamped shall be rejected as they will not have proof that the Contractors have adequately reviewed the submittal for compliance with the contract documents.
- J. Submittals shall be reviewed by the Engineer of Record for 'Informational Purposes Only'. If the Engineer of Record finds a submission to be in non-conformance with the contract documents and specifications for the project it will be returned to the contractor with an itemized list of observed deficiencies including recommended corrective actions to obtain compliance.
- K. Return of an 'Make Corrections Noted' submittal does not require resubmission to the Engineer of Record for re-review but rather acknowledgement in writing from the Contractor that they will make the corrective actions noted prior to construction and include them in the Record Documents.
- L. Submittals shall not be rejected more than two (2) times. If the contractor fails to provide a complete reviewable submittal to the Engineer of Record within the first two attempts they shall be back charged at a current rate of the Engineer of Record's hourly contract rate for all subsequent reviews, no matter how many are required.
- M. Resubmittals must be accompanied by an itemized response letter authored and signed by the delegated design professional on their company letterhead. Each revision shall be clouded on

plan and thoroughly explained in the response letter. 'Will Comply' is not an acceptable response.

- N. The Engineer of Record reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received, independent of all pre-determined project specific submittal review times and schedules.
- O. Contractor shall submit samples of color, lettering style, and other graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- P. Shop drawings shall include detailing, fabrication, and installation information for all supports and anchorage required for each specific fire suppression material and/or piece of equipment.
- Q. If the fire protection contractor proposes to use welded pipe and fittings they shall provide welder certificates signed by Contractor certifying that welders comply with requirements specified under the "Quality Assurance" Article and all applicable requirements of NFPA 13.
- R. Fire protection submittals shall be one complete package including but not limited to scaled plans, all material data as outlined in the project specifications, NFPA 13 format hydraulic calculations with detailed worksheets, a current hydrant flow test data on municipality's official report sheet, and a letter authored and signed by the delegated design professional noted above stating they have reviewed and approved the design package in conformance with all applicable codes, standards, and all contract documents. Equivalent k-factor method not permissible for use in hydraulic calculations. Incomplete submittals will be automatically rejected.
- S. Submittals for work that shall be solely for the benefit of the Contractor shall not be reviewed including but not limited to:
  - 1. Sleeve drawings.
  - 2. BIM coordination drawings and/or models.
- T. Contractor shall prepared coordination and shop drawings in accordance with Division 1 Section "Project Coordination," to a scale of 1/4"=1'-0" or larger aligned to the architect's project specific sheet size and layout; detailing major elements, components, and systems of fire suppression equipment and materials in relationship with other systems, installations, and building components. Locations where space is limited for installation and access and where sequencing and coordination of installations are of importance to the efficient flow of the Work shall be indicated. Said drawings shall include, but not necessarily be limited to the following:
  - 1. Details regarding the proposed locations of piping, valves, equipment, and materials including, but not limited to the following:
    - a. All sizes, shapes, connection points, service clearances, weights, support points of each proposed piece of equipment and the structure, adjacent equipment.
    - b. Specific equipment proposed by the contractor and not just generic prototype equipment coordinated with the product data submittal.
    - c. Planned piping layout, including valve and specialty locations and valve stem movement.
    - d. Clearances for installing and maintaining systems and components.
    - e. Clearances for servicing and maintaining equipment, and space for equipment disassembly required for periodic maintenance.

- f. Equipment connections and support details.
- g. Exterior wall and foundation penetrations.
- h. Fire-rated wall and floor penetrations.
- i. Sizes and location of required concrete pads and bases.
- j. Access doors.
- k. Name of owner and occupant.
- l. Project location including street address.
- m. Point of compass.
- n. Full height cross section, or schematic diagram, including structural member information if required for clarity including ceiling construction and method of protection for non-metallic piping.
- o. Location of partitions.
- p. Location of fire walls.
- q. Occupancy class of each area or room.
- r. Location and size of concealed spaces, closets, attics, and bathrooms.
- s. Any small enclosures in which no sprinklers are installed.
- t. Size of city main in street and whether dead end or circulating; of dead end, direction and distance to the nearest circulating main; and city main test results and system elevation relative to test hydrant.
- u. Other sources of water supply, with pressure or elevation.
- v. Make, type, model, and nominal K-factor of sprinklers including sprinkler identification number.
- w. Temperature rating and location of high-temperature sprinklers.
- x. Total area protected by each system on each floor.
- y. Number of sprinklers on each riser per floor.
- z. Total number of sprinklers on each dry pipe system, preaction system, combined dry pipe-preaction system, or deluge system.
- aa. Approximate capacity in gallons of each dry pipe system.
- bb. Pipe type and schedule of wall thickness.
- cc. Nominal pipe size and cutting lengths of pipe (center-to-center dimensions). Where typical branch lines prevail, it shall be necessary to size only one typical line.
- dd. Location and size of riser nipples.
- ee. Type of fittings and joints and location of all welds and bends. The contractor shall specify on drawing any sections to be shop welded and the type of fittings or formations to be used.
- ff. Type and locations of hangers, sleeves, braces, and methods of securing sprinklers when applicable.
- gg. All control valves, check valves, drain pipes, and test connections.
- hh. Make, type, model and size of alarm or dry pipe valve.
- ii. Make, type, model and size of preaction or deluge valve.
- jj. Kind and location of alarm bells.
- kk. Size and location of standpipe risers, hose outlets, hand hose, monitor nozzles, and related equipment.
- ll. Private fire service main sizes, lengths, locations, weights, materials, point of connection to city main; the sizes, types and locations of valves, valve indicators, regulators, meters, and valve pits; and the depth that the top of the pipe is laid below grade.
- mm. Piping provisions for flushing.
- nn. Where the equipment is to be installed as an addition to an existing system,

- oo. enough of the existing system indicated on the plans to make all conditions clear. For hydraulically designed systems, the information on the hydraulic nameplate.
  - pp. A graphic representation of the scale used on all plans.
  - qq. Name and address of contractor.
  - rr. Hydraulic reference points shown on the plan that correspond with comparable reference points on the hydraulic calculation sheets.
  - ss. The minimum rate of water application (density or flow or discharge pressure), the design area of water application, in-rack sprinkler demand, and the water required for hose streams both inside and outside.
  - tt. The total quantity of water and the pressure required noted at a common reference point for each system.
  - uu. Relative elevations of sprinklers, junction points, and supply reference points.
  - vv. If room design method is used, all unprotected wall openings throughout the floor protected.
  - ww. Calculation of loads for sizing and details of sway bracing.
  - xx. The setting for pressure reducing valves.
  - yy. Information about backflow preventers (manufacturer, size, type).
  - zz. Information about antifreeze solution used (type and amounts).
  - aaa. Information about flexible sprinkler drops including but not limited to manufacturer specific installation requirements.
  - bbb. Size and location of hydrants, showing size and number of outlets and if outlets are equipped with independent gate valves. Whether hose houses and equipment are to be provided, and by whom, shall be indicated. Static and residual hydrants that were used in flow tests shall be shown.
  - ccc. Size, location, and piping arrangement of fire department connections.
  - ddd. Ceiling /roof heights and slopes not shown in the full height cross section/
  - eee. Edition year of NFPA standards the fire suppression systems are design to.
  - fff. Any other information required for working drawings as required by codes and standards referenced in the contract documents.
  - ggg. Hydrant flow test data performed within 12 months of the submittal data. Test data shall be on municipality's official report sheet and include but not be limited to location and elevation of static and residual test gauge with relation to the riser reference point, flow location, static pressure, residual pressure, flow, date, time, name of personnel who conducted the test or supplied the information,
2. Details regarding scheduling, sequencing, movement, and positioning of large equipment into the building during construction.
  3. Floor plans, elevations, and details to indicate penetrations in floors, walls, and ceilings and their relationship to other penetrations and installations. Show all wall mounted access doors for fire suppression devices and equipment.
  4. Coordinated reflected ceiling plans to coordinate and integrate installations, air outlets and inlets, light fixtures, communication systems components, cable trays, sprinkler heads, access doors and other ceiling-mounted items.

#### 1.15 UNDERWRITER'S LABORATORY (UL) REQUIREMENTS

- A. All equipment containing electrical components and provided as part of the mechanical specifications shall bear the Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) label, as a complete packaged system.

1. Equipment not provided with a UL label shall be tested in the field, certified and provided with a UL label at the installer's expense.
2. Field testing shall be performed by a testing agency approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

1.16 FIRE SAFE MATERIALS

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, materials shall conform to UL, NFPA or ASTM standards for fire safety with smoke and fire hazard rating not exceeding flame spread of twenty five (25) and smoke developed of fifty (50).

1.17 COLOR SELECTION

- A. Color of finishes shall be as selected by the Architect. Submit colors of factory finished equipment for acceptance prior to ordering.

1.18 VARIANCES

- A. Where variances occur between the drawings and specifications or within either document itself, the item or arrangement of better quality, greater quantity or higher cost shall be included in the contract price. The Engineer shall decide on the item and manner in which the work shall be provided.

1.19 STANDARD OF QUALITY

- A. Provide materials that comply with quality, style and sizes specified and shown on Drawings.
  1. Manufacturer's names and model numbers may be stated in contract documents for the purpose of establishing standards of quality, style, size and type, and shall not be construed to exclude equipment or materials of other acceptable manufacturers, subject to compliance with contract requirements.
  2. Where a specific manufacturer is specified, provide specified item of product of one of other acceptable manufacturer where permitted, provided that alternate item conforms in all respects to Indicated requirements.
    - a. Consideration will not be given to claims that another manufacturer's item meets performance requirements with lesser construction.
    - b. Performance as delineated on contract drawings and in specifications shall be interpreted as minimum performance requirements.
    - c. Provide documentation that compares each specific characteristic of the specified manufacturer's product to that of the proposed "acceptable manufacturer's" product.

1.20 GUARANTEE/WARRANTY:

- A. All materials, equipment, etc. provided by the Contractor shall be guaranteed and warranted to be free from defects in workmanship and materials for a period of two (2) years after date of substantial completion and acceptance of work by the Owner or as required by Division. 1. Any defects in workmanship, materials, or performance which appear within the guarantee period shall be corrected by the Contractor without cost to the Owner, within a reasonable time. In default thereof, Owner may have such work done and charge the cost of same to the Contractor. Any special warranties shall be as detailed in relevant specification sections. Manufacturer's standard warranties shall not absolve Contractor of specification requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE AND MASONRY WORK

- A. Concrete: 3,500 psi compressive strength after twenty eight (28) days.

2.2 GROUT

- A. Non-shrink, Nonmetallic Grout: ASTM C 1107, Grade B.
  - 1. Characteristics: Post hardening, volume adjusting, dry, hydraulic cement grout, non-staining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.50MPa), twenty eight (28) day compressive strength
  - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory-packaged

2.3 ACCESS DOORS AND PANELS

- A. Provide manufactured steel door assemblies consisting of:
  - 1. Hinged door.
  - 2. Flush screwdriver cam locks and frame.
  - 3. Appropriate fire-rating where applicable.
- B. Doors shall be Milcor Metal Access doors or approved equal. Provide key locks where indicated.
- C. Design shall be provided for the following installations:
  - 1. Acoustical or Cement Plaster: Style B.
  - 2. Hard Finish Plaster: Style K or L.
  - 3. Masonry or Dry Wall: Style M.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 ROUGH-IN

- A. Verify final locations for rough-ins with field measurements and with the requirements of the actual equipment to be connected.
- B. Refer to equipment specifications included in the mechanical specifications for equipment rough in requirements.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATIONS

- A. General: Sequence, coordinate, and integrate the various elements of mechanical systems, materials, and equipment. Comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Coordinate fire suppression systems, equipment, and materials installation with other building components.
  - 2. Verify all dimensions by field measurements.
  - 3. Arrange for chases, slots, and openings in other building components during progress of construction, to allow for fire suppression installations.
  - 4. Coordinate the installation of required supporting devices and sleeves to be set in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components, as they are constructed.
  - 5. Sequence, coordinate, and integrate installations of mechanical materials and equipment for efficient flow of the Work. Give particular attention to large equipment requiring positioning prior to closing in the building.
  - 6. Where systems, materials and equipment are intended for overhead installation, and where mounting heights are not detailed or dimensioned, install systems, materials, and equipment to provide the maximum headroom possible. Notify the Owner prior to installation when headroom is less than 7'-6".
  - 7. Coordinate connection of fire suppression systems with exterior underground and overhead utilities and services. Comply with requirements of governing regulations, franchised service companies, and controlling agencies. Provide required connection for each service.
  - 8. Install systems, materials, and equipment to conform with approved submittal data, including coordination drawings, to greatest extent possible. Conform to arrangements indicated by the Contract Documents, recognizing that portions of the Work are shown only in diagrammatic form. Where coordination requirements conflict with individual system requirements, refer conflict to the Architect.
  - 9. Install systems, materials, and equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components.
  - 10. Install fire suppression equipment to facilitate servicing, maintenance, and repair or replacement of equipment components. As much as practical, connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum of interference with other installations. Extend grease fittings to an accessible location.
  - 11. Install access panel or doors where units are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in the Division 8 specifications.
  - 12. Install systems, materials, and equipment giving right-of-way priority to systems required to be installed at a specified slope.

### 3.3 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. General: Perform cutting and patching in accordance with Division 1 Sections. In addition to the requirements specified in Division 1, the following requirements apply:
  - 1. Protection of Installed Work: During cutting and patching operations, protect adjacent installations.
- B. Perform cutting, fitting, and patching of fire suppression equipment and materials required to:
  - 1. Uncover Work to provide for installation of Out-of-Sequence Work.
  - 2. Remove and replace defective Work.
  - 3. Remove and replace Work not conforming to requirements of the Contract Documents.
  - 4. Remove samples of installed Work as specified for testing.
  - 5. Install equipment and materials in existing structures.
  - 6. Commission the Work.
- C. Upon written instructions from the Architect, uncover and restore Work to provide for Architect/Engineer observation of concealed Work.
- D. Cut, remove and legally dispose of selected fire suppression equipment, components, and materials as indicated, including but not limited to removal of piping, fire suppression fixtures and trim, and other fire suppression items made obsolete by the new Work.
- E. Protect the structure, furnishings, finishes, and adjacent materials not indicated or scheduled to be removed.
- F. Provide and maintain temporary partitions or dust barriers adequate to prevent the spread of dust and dirt to adjacent areas.
  - 1. Patch finished surfaces and building components using new materials specified for the original installation and using experienced Installers. Installers' qualifications refer to the materials and methods required for the surface and building components being patched.
    - a. Refer to Division 1 Section "Definitions and Standards" for definition of "Experienced Installer".

### 3.4 PAINTING AND FINISHING

- A. Refer to Division 9 Section "Painting" for field painting requirement.
- B. Damage and Touch Up: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.
- C. Do not paint manufacturer's labels or tags.

### 3.5 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete equipment bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than four (4) inches larger than supported unit in both directions. Follow supported equipment manufacturer's setting templates for anchor bolt and tie locations. Use 3000-psi, twenty eight (28) day compressive strength concrete and reinforcement bars as specified in the architectural specifications. Housekeeping pads shall be 4-inches in height except for air handling units. For air handling units, housekeeping pad shall be at a depth to allow p-trap installation per manufacturer's requirements and for service access beneath installed p-trap.

### 3.6 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGE

- A. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor mechanical materials and equipment.
- B. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 "Structural Welding Code - Steel"

### 3.7 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGE

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorage to support and anchor fire suppression materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that shall not penetrate members where opposite side shall be exposed to view or shall receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

### 3.8 DEMOLITION

- A. Disconnect, demolish, and remove work specified as part of the mechanical specifications and as indicated. Remove pipes and ducts back to the active pipe and duct to remain and cap.
- B. Where pipe, ductwork, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged or disturbed, remove damaged portions and install new products of equal capacity and quality.
- C. Accessible Work: Remove indicated exposed pipe and ductwork in its entirety.
- D. Abandoned Work: Cut and remove buried pipe abandoned in place, two (2) inches (50 mm) beyond the face of adjacent construction. Cap and patch surface to match existing finish.
- E. Removal: Remove indicated equipment from the Project site.
- F. Temporary Disconnection: Remove, store, clean, reinstall, reconnect, and make operational equipment indicated for relocation.

### 3.9 GROUTING

- A. Install nonmetallic non-shrink grout for mechanical equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors. Mix grout according to manufacturer's printed instructions.
- B. Clean surfaces that come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms for placement of grout, as required.
- D. Avoid air entrapment when placing grout.
- E. Place grout to completely fill equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases to provide a smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout according to manufacturer's printed instructions.

### 3.10 PENETRATION OF WATERPROOF CONSTRUCTION

- A. Coordinate the work to minimize penetration of waterproof construction, including roofs, exterior walls and interior waterproof construction.
- B. Furnish and install drains, curbs, vent assemblies, sleeves, flashing, etc. specifically designed for application to the particular construction. Install system in accordance with the roofing manufacturer's instructions.

### 3.11 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILLING

- A. General:
  - 1. Perform all necessary excavation, for installation of work as part of the mechanical specifications in accordance with the architectural specifications.

### 3.12 CLEANING AND FINISHES

- A. Clean surfaces prior to application of insulation, adhesives, coating, and paint.
- B. Provide factory applied finish where specified.
- C. Protect all finishes, and restore all finishes to their original condition if damaged as a result of work installed as part of the mechanical specifications.
- D. Remove all construction marking and writing from exposed equipment, ductwork, piping and building surfaces.

### 3.13 PROTECTION OF WORK

- A. Protect work, material and equipment from weather and construction operations before and after installation.
- B. Properly store and handle all materials and equipment.
- C. Cover temporary openings in piping, ductwork and equipment to prevent the entrance of water, dirt, debris, and other foreign matter.

### 3.14 ELECTRICAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate selection of fire suppression equipment requiring electrical connections (of all voltages) with other specification sections. Coordinate installation closely with all other trades to facilitate electrical connections in a code compliance manner for project delivery in compliance with contract documents. In general, power wiring and motor starting equipment shall be provided as specified in the electrical specifications.
  - 1. Where the electrical requirements of the equipment furnished differ from the provisions made in the electrical specifications, make the necessary allowances as part of the fire suppression specifications.
  - 2. Where no electrical provisions are included in the electrical specifications, include all necessary electrical work as part of the fire suppression specifications. Notify Engineer of Record immediately.

### 3.15 PROVISIONS FOR ACCESS

- A. Furnish and install adequate access to all fire suppression components. The following list shall be used as a guide only:
  - 1. Equipment.
  - 2. Valves.
  - 3. Controls.
  - 4. Any and all fire suppression appurtenances required for ITM, no matter the frequency.
- B. Access shall be adequate as determined by the Architect.
- C. Refer to contract drawings where access panels have been specifically located.
- D. Provide additional access panels for adequate access to equipment and components as indicated in paragraph 'A' above.
- E. Where access is by means of lift out ceiling tiles or panels mark each access panel, using small color coded or numbered tabs. Provide an index chart for identification. Place markers in corner of tile.

3.16 PENETRATION OF WATERPROOF CONSTRUCTION

- A. Coordinate the work to minimize penetration of waterproof construction, including roofs, exterior walls and interior waterproof construction.
- B. Furnish and install drains, curbs, vent assemblies, sleeves, flashing, etc. specifically designed for application to the particular construction. Install system in accordance with the roofing manufacturer's instructions.

3.17 OPERATION OF EQUIPMENT DURING CONSTRUCTION

- A. Clean all systems and equipment prior to initial operation for testing and commissioning.
- B. Do not operate equipment unless all proper safety devices or controls are operational.
- C. Provide all maintenance and service for equipment which is operated during construction.
- D. Provide the services of a manufacturer's factory trained service organization to start the equipment. Submit testing report prior to equipment demonstration.
- E. Do not use fire suppression systems for temporary services during construction unless authorized in writing by the Architect.
- F. Upon completion of work, clean and restore all equipment to new conditions and replace all covers, filters, clean strainers and flush systems just prior to equipment demonstration.

3.18 SPARE PARTS

- A. Provide spare for systems provided under this project including but not limited to:
  - 1. See specific Div 21 specifications for details.

3.19 DEMONSTRATION AND INSTRUCTIONS

- A. Demonstrate operation and maintenance of equipment and systems to Owner's personnel a minimum two (2) weeks prior to date of final inspection. Correct any difficulties prior to requesting final inspection.
  - 1. For equipment requiring seasonal operation, perform instructions for other seasons at the same time.
  - 2. Training period shall be performed within one (1) week period.
- B. Contractor shall pre-test all equipment prior to requesting demonstration and instruction.
- C. Use operation and maintenance manuals and videos as basis of instruction. Review contents of manual and video with personnel in detail to explain all aspects of operation and maintenance. Provide sign-in sheet for each training conducted.

- D. Demonstrate the following:
  - 1. Start up.
  - 2. Operation.
  - 3. Control.
  - 4. Adjustment.
  - 5. Trouble shooting.
  - 6. Servicing.
  - 7. Maintenance.
  - 8. Shutdown.
  
- E. Provide at least sixteen (16) hours straight time instruction to the operating personnel.
  - 1. This instruction period shall consist of not less than two (2), eight (8) hour days.
  - 2. Time of instruction shall be designated by the Owner.

### 3.20 LUBRICATION

- A. All bearings, motors and all equipment requiring lubrication shall be provided with accessible fittings.
  
- B. Before turning over the equipment to the Owner, the Installer shall provide the following:
  - 1. Fully lubricate each item of equipment.
  - 2. Provide one (1) year's supply of lubricant for each type of lubricant.
  - 3. Provide complete written lubricating instructions, together with diagram locating the points requiring lubrication.
  
- C. Motors and equipment shall be provided with grease lubricated roller or ball bearings with Alemite or equal extended grease fittings and drain plugs.

### 3.21 WALL AND FLOOR PENETRATION

- A. All penetrations of partitions, walls and floors by ducts, piping or conduit under Division 21 shall be sealed and caulked. Provide U.L. listed fire stopping systems at penetrations through fire walls as specified in the architectural specifications.

### 3.22 EQUIPMENT PROVIDED UNDER ANOTHER DIVISION AND BY OTHERS

- A. The Installer of products under Division 21 shall make all system connections required to equipment furnished and installed under another division and by others.
  
- B. It shall be the responsibility of the Installer to obtain all necessary data from the equipment supplied under other Divisions.

### 3.23 AS BUILT DRAWINGS

- A. Upon completion of the fire suppression installations, the Installer shall deliver to the Architect five (5) complete sets of marked-up blueprints and electronic PDF of as-built conditions.
1. The mark-ups shall be legibly marked in red pencil to show all changes and departures of the installation as compared with the original design.
  2. Refer to General Requirements of Division 1 for additional requirements pertaining to Submittals and Record Drawings.

### 3.24 RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Prepare record documents in accordance with the requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Closeout." In addition to the requirements specified in Division 1, indicate the following installed conditions:
1. Mains and branches of piping systems, with valves and control devices located and numbered, concealed unions located, and with items requiring maintenance located (i.e., traps, strainers, expansion compensators, tanks, etc.). Valve location diagrams, complete with valve tag chart. Indicate actual inverts and horizontal locations of underground piping.
  2. Equipment locations (exposed and concealed), dimensioned from prominent building lines.
  3. Maintenance clearances and access points.
  4. Numbering coordinated with contract documents and O&M manuals.
  5. Approved substitutions, Contract Modifications, Responses to Contractor's Request for Information, and actual equipment and materials installed.
- B. Engage the services of a Land Surveyor or Professional Engineer registered in the state in which the project is located to record the locations and invert elevations of underground installations.

### 3.25 CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Prepare operations and maintenance manuals in accordance with Division 1 Section "Project Closeout." In addition to the requirements specified in Division 1, include the following information for equipment items:
1. Periodic maintenance schedule.
  2. Parts list.
  3. Parts supplier listing.
  4. Service diagrams.
- B. The Contractor shall provide six (6) bound copies of manufacturer's published operating and maintenance instructions for all serviceable equipment provided under this contract at least two (2) months prior to Substantial Completion. Operating and maintenance instructions shall be presented to the design engineer bound in three ring binders, tabbed by system and as electronic PDF on a flash drive, before the pre-final review of construction.
1. List of systems and equipment requiring service manuals.

2. Description of function, normal operating characteristics and limitations, performance curves, engineering data and tests, and complete nomenclature and commercial numbers of replacement parts.
  3. Manufacturer's printed operating procedures to include start-up, run-in, and routine and normal operating instructions; regulation, control, stopping, shutdown, and emergency instructions; and summer and winter operating instructions.
  4. Maintenance procedures for routine preventative maintenance and troubleshooting; disassembly, repair, and reassembly; aligning and adjusting instructions.
  5. Servicing instructions and lubrication charts and schedules.
  6. Systems and equipment test reports.
  7. All warranties for equipment installed on this project (minimum 2 years). Warranty letters shall be provided on company letterhead and detail the scope, duration, and extents of coverage.
  8. A detailed company directory of key project personnel with contact information including but not limited to company's Estimator, Project Manager, Superintendent, Foreman, Designated Design Professional, and Service Manager.
  9. Contractor's workmanship and materials warranty.
  10. Start-up report in readable legible fashion.
  11. Letter of Completion stating that installation is 100% complete per applicable codes and standards to satisfy all requirements of the contract documents. Letter shall be signed by the active president of the organization.
  12. Copies of all permits with closeout documentation (green stickers, reports, etc.)
  13. Sign-in sheets for all owner training presentations.
- C. Arrange for each installer of equipment that requires regular maintenance to meet with the Owner's personnel to provide instruction in proper operation and maintenance. If installers are not experienced in procedures, provide instruction by manufacturer's representatives. Include a detailed review of the following items:
1. Maintenance manuals, including a customized list of preventive maintenance items and annual schedule for maintenance.
  2. Record documents.
  3. Complete inventory of spare parts and materials.
  4. Tools.
  5. Lubricants.
  6. Fuels.
  7. Identification systems.
  8. Control sequences.
  9. Hazards.
  10. Cleaning.
  11. Warranties and bonds.
  12. Maintenance agreements and similar continuing commitments.
- D. As part of instruction for operating equipment, demonstrate the following procedures:
1. Start up.
  2. Shut down.
  3. Emergency operations.
  4. Noise and vibration adjustments.
  5. Safety procedures.
  6. Maintenance operations per NFPA 25.

- E. Provide all commissioning reports.
- F. Submit all documentation and obtain approval as required for LEED certification.

3.26 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: General cleaning during construction is required by the General Conditions and included in Section "Temporary Facilities."
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to the condition expected in a normal, commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Remove all mechanical clipping, wiring, nuts, bolts, etc. left on top of ceilings and ceiling tiles.

3.27 PROJECT PUNCH OUT

- A. Architect/Engineer shall perform punch out reviews and shall provide the Contractor with a list of punch list items to be completed before contract close out. Each and every punch list item shall be initialed and dated by the Contractor when the work is complete. The Architect/Engineer shall not perform any punch list verification until all items have been completed, initialed, dated and the list returned to the Architect/Engineer. If any items have been initialed as being completed by the Contractor and the Architect/Engineer determines that the work is not complete, the Architect/Engineer shall be reimbursed by the Contractor at his regular hourly rate for any and all items requiring revisiting of the site by the Architect/Engineer. Reimbursement shall be made by deducting the Architect/Engineer fee from the Contractor's final payment.

**END OF SECTION 21 00 00**

## SECTION 210517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves.
  - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 3. Grout.
- B. Related Requirements
  - 1. Section 210000 "Basic Fire Suppression Requirements"

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
  - 3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop.
- C. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, with plain ends and integral welded waterstop collar.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

#### 2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2. CALPICO, Inc.
3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
4. Metraflex Company (The).
5. Proco Products, Inc.

B. Description:

1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20 psig minimum.
3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size.
4. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, ASTM B 633 of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

### 2.3 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
- C. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- D. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
  2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  3. Using grout, seal space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- E. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.

F. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 07 8413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.4 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron pipe sleeves.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron pipe sleeves.
  2. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
  3. Interior Partitions:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 210517

## SECTION 210518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed and exposed-rivet hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

#### 2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. Split Floor Plates: Steel with concealed hinge.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece cast brass or split-plate steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece cast brass with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. New Piping One-piece, floor plate.

#### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 210518

## SECTION 210523 - GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR FIRE PROTECTION PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Two-piece ball valves with indicators.
2. Iron butterfly valves with indicators.
3. Check valves.
4. Iron OS&Y gate valves.
5. Trim and drain valves.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 210000 "Basic Fire Suppression Requirements"

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- B. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- C. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- D. SBR: Styrene-butadiene rubber.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, and weld ends.
3. Set valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.

- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.
- D. Protect flanges and specialties from moisture and dirt.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. UL Listed: Valves shall be listed in UL's "Online Certifications Directory" under the headings listed below and shall bear UL mark:
  - 1. Main Level: HAMV - Fire Main Equipment.
    - a. Level 1: HCBZ - Indicator Posts, Gate Valve.
    - b. Level 1: HLOT - Valves.
      - 1) Level 3: HLUG - Ball Valves, System Control.
      - 2) Level 3: HLXS - Butterfly Valves.
      - 3) Level 3: HMER - Check Valves.
      - 4) Level 3: HMRZ - Gate Valves.
  - 2. Main Level: VDGT - Sprinkler System & Water Spray System Devices.
    - a. Level 1: VQGU - Valves, Trim and Drain.
- B. FM Global Approved: Valves shall be listed in its "Approval Guide," under the headings listed below:
  - 1. Automated Sprinkler Systems:
    - a. Valves.
      - 1) Gate valves.
      - 2) Check valves.
        - a) Single check valves.
      - 3) Miscellaneous valves.
- C. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain valves for each valve type from single manufacturer.
- D. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.

2. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
  3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- E. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
- F. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 24 for valves.
- G. Valve Pressure Ratings: Not less than the minimum pressure rating indicated or higher as required by system pressures.
- H. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Valve Actuator Types:
1. Worm-gear actuator with handwheel for quarter-turn valves, except for trim and drain valves.
  2. Handwheel: For other than quarter-turn trim and drain valves.
  3. Handlever: For quarter-turn trim and drain valves NPS 2 and smaller.

## 2.2 TWO-PIECE BALL VALVES WITH INDICATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. NIBCO INC.
  2. Victaulic Company.
- B. Description:
1. UL 1091, except with ball instead of disc and FM Global standard for indicating valves (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 1112.
  2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  3. Body Design: Two piece.
  4. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
  5. Port Size: Full or standard.
  6. Seats: PTFE.
  7. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
  8. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  9. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
  10. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
  11. End Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2: Threaded ends.
  12. End Connections for Valves NPS 2-1/2: Grooved ends.

## 2.3 IRON BUTTERFLY VALVES WITH INDICATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Anvil International.

2. [Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.](#)
3. [NIBCO INC.](#)
4. [Tyco Fire Products LP.](#)
5. [Victaulic Company.](#)

B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 1091 and FM Global standard for indicating valves, (butterfly or ball type), Class Number 112.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Seat Material: EPDM.
5. Stem: Stainless steel.
6. Disc: Ductile iron,.
7. Actuator: Worm gear or traveling nut.
8. Supervisory Switch: Internal or external.
9. Body Design: Grooved-end connections.

## 2.4 CHECK VALVES

A. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. [Anvil International.](#)
2. [Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.](#)
3. [NIBCO INC.](#)
4. [Tyco Fire Products LP.](#)
5. [Victaulic Company.](#)
6. [Viking Corporation.](#)

B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 312 and FM Global standard for swing check valves, Class Number 1210.
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Type: Single swing check.
4. Body Material: Cast iron, ductile iron, or bronze.
5. Clapper: Bronze, ductile iron, or stainless steel.
6. Clapper Seat: Brass, bronze, or stainless steel.
7. Hinge Shaft: Bronze or stainless steel.
8. Hinge Spring: Stainless steel.
9. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or threaded.

## 2.5 IRON OS&Y GATE VALVES

A. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, **[provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:**

1. [Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.](#)
2. [Mueller Co.](#)
3. [NIBCO INC.](#)
4. [Victaulic Company.](#)

B. Description:

1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y- and NRS-type gate valves).
2. Minimum Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
3. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze.
5. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze.
6. Stem: Brass or bronze.
7. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
8. Supervisory Switch: External.
9. End Connections: Grooved.

2.6 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball Valves:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. [Milwaukee Valve Company.](#)
  - b. [NIBCO INC.](#)
  - c. [Tyco Fire Products LP.](#)
  - d. [Victaulic Company.](#)
2. Description:
  - a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  - b. Body Design: Two piece.
  - c. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
  - d. Port size: Full or standard.
  - e. Seats: PTFE.
  - f. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
  - g. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - h. Actuator: Handlever.
  - i. End Connections for Valves NPS 1 through NPS 2-1/2: Threaded ends.
  - j. End Connections for Valves NPS 1-1/4 and NPS 2-1/2: Grooved ends.

B. Angle Valves:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. [NIBCO INC.](#)
  - b. [United Brass Works, Inc.](#)
2. Description:
- a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
  - b. Body Material: Brass or bronze.
  - c. Ends: Threaded.
  - d. Stem: Bronze.
  - e. Disc: Bronze.
  - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.
- C. Globe Valves:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, **[provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:**
    - a. [NIBCO INC.](#)
    - b. [United Brass Works, Inc.](#)
  2. Description:
    - a. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
    - b. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - c. Ends: Threaded.
    - d. Stem: Bronze.
    - e. Disc Holder and Nut: Bronze.
    - f. Disc Seat: Nitrile.
    - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
    - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### 3.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in the following Sections for specific valve installation requirements and applications:
  - 1. Section 211200 "Fire-Suppression Standpipes" for application of valves in fire-suppression standpipes.
  - 2. Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for application of valves in wet-pipe, fire-suppression sprinkler systems.
  - 3. Section 211316 "Dry-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for application of valves in dry-pipe, fire-suppression sprinkler systems.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Install valves having threaded connections with unions at each piece of equipment arranged to allow easy access, service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown. Provide separate support where necessary.
- E. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above the pipe center.
- F. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- G. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 210553 "Identification for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules and signs on surfaces concealing valves; and the NFPA standard applying to the piping system in which valves are installed. Install permanent identification signs indicating the portion of system controlled by each valve.
- H. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections.
- I. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.

END OF SECTION 210523

## SECTION 210529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
  - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 3. Metal framing systems.
  - 4. Thermal hanger-shield inserts.
  - 5. Fastener systems.
  - 6. Equipment supports.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 210000 "Basic Fire Suppression Requirements"

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
  - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 2. Metal framing systems.
  - 3. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
  - 2. Include design calculations for designing trapeze hangers.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2015 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for fire-suppression piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
  - 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 13.
- D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 203.

### 2.2 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Description: Factory-fabricated components, NFPA approved, UL listed, or FM approved for fire-suppression piping support.
  - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot-dip galvanized.
  - 3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

### 2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes, with NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

## 2.4 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved, insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  - 1. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated or Stainless steel.
  - 2. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

## 2.5 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: NFPA-approved, UL-listed, or FM-approved, welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B 221.
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240/A 240M.
- E. Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout, suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation, for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

### 3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with installation requirements of approvals and listings. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size, or install intermediate supports for smaller-diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual. Install in accordance with approvals and listings.
  - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install in accordance with approvals and listings.
- D. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- E. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- F. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- G. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms, and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- H. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports, so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- I. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.

- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment, and make bearing surface smooth.

### 3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections, so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded, shop-painted areas. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as those used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

### 3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with NFPA requirements for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finishes.

- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  - 2. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
- H. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
  - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- I. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Comply with NFPA requirements.
- J. Building Attachments: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel or Malleable-Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  - 2. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  - 3. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
- K. Saddles and Shields: Comply with NFPA requirements. Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  - 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
- L. Comply with NFPA requirements for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- M. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- N. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 210529

## SECTION 210553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Valve tags.
  - 5. Warning tags.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 21 0000 "Basic Fire Suppression Requirements"

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment-Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled and the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve Schedules: Valve numbering scheme.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Letter Color: Black.
  - 3. Background Color: White.
  - 4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  - 5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  - 6. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate. VOC content shall not exceed 250 g/L.

- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- C. Equipment-Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inchbond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inchthick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: Yellow.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inchfor name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inchfor viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate. VOC content shall not exceed 250 g/L.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Pre-coiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe-Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.

E. Pipe-Label Colors:

1. Background Color: Safety Red.
2. Letter Color: White.

## 2.4 VALVE TAGS

- A. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping-system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain.
  3. Valve-Tag Color: Safety Red.
  4. Letter Color: White.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.5 WARNING TAGS

- A. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
1. Size: Approximately 4 by 7 inches.
  2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
  3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
  4. Color: Safety Yellow background with black lettering.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, as well as dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and other substances that could impair bond of identification devices.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be installed.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping: Painting of piping is specified in Section 09 9123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection excluding short takeoffs. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit a view of concealed piping.
  - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 20 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 10 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- C. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.

### 3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in fire-suppression piping systems. List tagged valves in a valve-tag schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and with captions similar to those indicated in "Valve-Tag Size and Shape" Subparagraph below:
  - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: 1-1/2 inches round.

### 3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 210553

## SECTION 211119 – FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Flush-type fire-department connections.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each fire-department connection.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 FLUSH-TYPE FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION

- A. Standard: UL 405.
- B. Type: Flush, for wall mounting.
- C. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
- D. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
- E. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
- F. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
- G. Escutcheon Plate: Rectangular, brass, wall type.
- H. Outlet: With pipe threads.
- I. Body Style: Horizontal.

- J. Number of Inlets: Two.
- K. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR & STANDPIPE."
- L. Finish: Rough chrome plated.
- M. Outlet Size: NPS 6.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of fire-department connections.
- B. Examine roughing-in for fire-suppression standpipe system to verify actual locations of piping connections before fire-department connection installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall-type fire-department connections.
- B. Install automatic (ball-drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection.

END OF SECTION 211119

## SECTION 211200 - FIRE-SUPPRESSION STANDPIPES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
2. Fire-protection specialty valves.
3. Hose connections.
4. Alarm devices.
5. Pressure gages.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 210523 "General-Duty Valves for Water-Based Fire-Suppression Piping."
2. Section 211119 "Fire-Department Connections" for exposed wall-mounted and yard fire hydrants.
3. Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems" for wet-pipe sprinkler piping.
4. Section 210000 "Basic Fire Suppression Requirements"

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Standard-Pressure Standpipe Piping: Fire-suppression standpipe piping designed to operate at working pressure 175 psig maximum.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire-suppression standpipes.
  1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For standpipe systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Fire-suppression standpipes, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Domestic water piping.
  - 2. Compressed-air piping.
  - 3. HVAC hydronic piping.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer and professional engineer.
- C. Approved Standpipe Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 14, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Fire-hydrant flow test report.
- F. Field Test Reports and Certificates: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 14. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping" and "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Underground Piping."
- G. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-suppression standpipes specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
  - 1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing fire-suppression standpipes and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
    - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. NFPA Standards: Fire-suppression standpipe equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with NFPA 14.

## 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Fire-Suppression Standpipe Service: Do not interrupt fire-suppression standpipe service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary fire-suppression standpipe service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of fire-suppression standpipe service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of fire-suppression standpipe service without Construction Manager's written permission.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Manual Wet-Type, Class I Standpipe System: Includes NPS 2-1/2 hose connections. Has small water supply to maintain water in standpipes. Piping is wet, but water must be pumped into standpipes to satisfy demand.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Standard-Pressure, Fire-Suppression Standpipe System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.
- B. Delegated Design: Design fire-suppression standpipes, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Fire-suppression standpipe design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Minimum residual pressure at each hose-connection outlet is as follows:
    - a. NPS 2-1/2 Hose Connections: 100 psig.

### 2.3 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, and fitting materials and for joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

### 2.4 BLACK STEEL PIPE AND ASSOCIATED FITTINGS

- A. Schedule 40: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B; with factory- or field-formed ends to accommodate joining method.
- B. Schedule 40: ASTM A 135/A 135M, Grade A; with factory- or field-formed ends to accommodate joining method.

- C. Schedule 40: ASTM A 795/A 795M, Type E, Grade A; with factory- or field-formed ends to accommodate joining method.
- D. Uncoated, Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865/A 865M, threaded.
- E. Uncoated, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- F. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- G. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
- H. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.
- I. Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M and ASME B16.9.
- J. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Shurjoint Piping Products USA Inc.
    - b. Tyco Fire Products LP.
    - c. Victaulic Company.
  - 2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
  - 3. Galvanized and Uncoated, Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
  - 4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213, rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

## 2.5 GALVANIZED-STEEL PIPE AND ASSOCIATED FITTINGS

- A. Schedule 40: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B; with factory- or field-formed ends to accommodate joining method.
- B. Schedule 40: ASTM A 135/A 135M, Grade A; with factory- or field-formed ends to accommodate joining method.
- C. Schedule 40: ASTM A 795/A 795M, Type E, Grade A; with factory- or field-formed ends to accommodate joining method.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M or ASTM A 106/A 106M, Standard Weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- E. Galvanized, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- F. Malleable-Iron Unions:

1. ASME B16.39, Class 150.
2. Hexagonal-stock body.
3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal, bronze seating surface.
4. Threaded ends.

G. Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125, cast iron.

H. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Shurjoint Piping Products USA Inc.
  - b. Victaulic Company.
2. Fittings for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe: Galvanized, ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting; ASTM A 106/A 106M, steel pipe; or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
3. Fittings for Grooved-End, Galvanized-Steel Pipe:
  - a. AWWA C606 for steel-pipe dimensions.
  - b. Ferrous housing sections.
  - c. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
  - d. Bolts and nuts.
  - e. Minimum Pressure Rating:
    - 1) NPS 8 and Smaller: 600 psig.

## 2.6 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free.
1. Class 125, Cast-Iron Flanges and Class 150, Bronze Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
  2. Class 250, Cast-Iron Flanges and Class 300, Steel Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

## 2.7 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. General Requirements:
1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
  2. Pressure Rating:

- a. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175 psig minimum.
  3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
  4. Size: Same as connected piping.
  5. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- B. Alarm Valves:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. [Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. \(The\).](#)
    - b. [Tyco Fire Products LP.](#)
    - c. [Victaulic Company.](#)
    - d. [Viking Corporation.](#)
  2. Standard: UL 193.
  3. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.
  4. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electrical sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gages, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
  5. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain without valves and separate from main drain piping.
  6. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain with check valve to main drain piping.
- C. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. [Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. \(The\).](#)
    - b. [Tyco Fire Products LP.](#)
  2. Standard: UL 1726.
  3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
  4. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
  5. Size: NPS 3/4.
  6. End Connections: Threaded.

## 2.8 HOSE CONNECTIONS

- A. Nonadjustable-Valve Hose Connections:
1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. [Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co., Inc.](#)
    - b. [Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.](#)
    - c. [Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.](#)

- d. [Potter Roemer LLC.](#)
  - e. [Tyco Fire Products LP.](#)
  - f. [Viking Corporation.](#)
2. Standard: UL 668 hose valve for connecting fire hose.
  3. Pressure Rating: 300 psig minimum.
  4. Material: Brass or bronze.
  5. Size: NPS 1-1/2 or NPS 2-1/2, as indicated.
  6. Inlet: Female pipe threads.
  7. Outlet: Male hose threads with lugged cap, gasket, and chain. Include hose valve threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department threads.
  8. Pattern: Angle or gate.
  9. Finish: Match Existing

## 2.9 ALARM DEVICES

- A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.
- B. Electrically Operated Alarm Bell:
  1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. [Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell International company.](#)
    - b. [Notifier.](#)
    - c. [Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.](#)
  2. Standard: UL 464.
  3. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.
  4. Size: 6-inch minimum diameter.
  5. Finish: Red-enamel factory finish, suitable for outdoor use.
- C. Water-Flow Indicators:
  1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. [Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.](#)
    - b. [System Sensor.](#)
    - c. [Viking Corporation.](#)
    - d. [WATTS.](#)
  2. Standard: UL 346.
  3. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.

4. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
5. Type: Paddle operated.
6. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
7. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.

D. Valve Supervisory Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell International company.
  - b. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
  - c. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
  - d. System Sensor.
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.

2.10 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. AMETEK, Inc.
  2. Ashcroft Inc.
  3. Brecco Corporation.
  4. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
- B. Standard: UL 393.
- C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.
- D. Pressure Gage Range: Zero to 300 psig.
- E. Water System Piping Gage: Include "WATER" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.
- F. Air System Piping Gage: Include "AIR" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 14 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

### 3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for hose connections and stations to verify actual locations of piping connections before installation.
- B. Examine walls and partitions for suitable thickness, fire- and smoke-rated construction, framing for hose-station cabinets, and other conditions where hose connections and stations are to be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated, as far as practical.
  - 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with requirements in NFPA 14 for installation of fire-suppression standpipe piping.
- C. Install listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- D. Install drain valves on standpipes. Extend drain piping to outside of building.
- E. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valves to drain piping between fire-department connections and check valves. Drain to floor drain or outside building.
- F. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- G. Install hangers and supports for standpipe system piping according to NFPA 14. Comply with requirements in NFPA 13 for hanger materials.
- H. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.

- I. Fill wet-type standpipe system piping with water.
- J. Install electric heating cables and pipe insulation on wet-type fire-suppression standpipe piping in areas subject to freezing. Comply with requirements for heating cables in Section 210533 "Heat Tracing for Fire-Suppression Piping" and for piping insulation in Section 210700 "Fire-Suppression Systems Insulation."
- K. Connect compressed-air or nitrogen supply to dry-pipe sprinkler piping.
- L. Connect air compressor to the following piping and wiring:
  - 1. Pressure gages and controls.
  - 2. Electrical power system.
  - 3. Fire-alarm devices, including low-pressure alarm.
- M. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- N. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- O. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 210518 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

### 3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- C. Ream ends of pipes and tubes, and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- D. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- E. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.

- G. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.
- H. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- I. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
  - 1. Shop weld pipe joints where welded piping is indicated. Do not use welded joints for galvanized-steel pipe.

### 3.5 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 14 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Specialty Valves:
  - 1. General Requirements: Install in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
  - 2. Alarm Valves: Install bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.

### 3.6 HOSE-CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install hose connections adjacent to standpipes.
- B. Install freestanding hose connections for access and minimum passage restriction.
- C. Install wall-mounted-type hose connections in cabinets. Include pipe escutcheons, with finish matching valves, inside cabinet where water-supply piping penetrates cabinet. Install valves at angle required for connection of fire hose. Comply with requirements for cabinets in Section 104413 "Fire Protection Cabinets."

### 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 14.

- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  - 3. Flush, test, and inspect standpipe systems according to NFPA 14, "System Acceptance" Chapter.
  - 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
  - 5. Start and run air compressors.
  - 6. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
  - 7. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
  - 8. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire-department equipment.
- C. Fire-suppression standpipe system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves.

### 3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Piping between Fire-Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with grooved ends; grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-pipe couplings; and grooved joints.
- B. Standard-pressure, wet-type fire-suppression standpipe piping, shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - 2. Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with threaded ends; galvanized, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - 3. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with cut- or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  - 4. Schedule 40, galvanized-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; galvanized, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  - 5. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.

END OF SECTION 211200

## SECTION 211313 - WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
2. Specialty valves.
3. Sprinklers.
4. Alarm devices.
5. Pressure gages.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 210000 "Basic Fire Suppression Requirements"
2. Section 210523 "General-Duty Valves for Water-Based Fire-Suppression Piping" for ball, butterfly, check, gate, post-indicator, and trim and drain valves.
3. Section 211119 "Fire Department Connections" for exposed-, flush-, and yard-type fire department connections.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of 175-psig maximum.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

- B. Shop Drawings: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details. Retain "Delegated-Design Submittal" Paragraph below if Work of this Section is required to withstand specific design loads and design responsibilities have been delegated to Contractor, or if structural data are required as another way to verify compliance with performance requirements.

Professional engineer qualifications are specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler systems, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Domestic water piping.
  - 2. Compressed air piping.
  - 3. HVAC hydronic piping.
  - 4. Items penetrating finished ceiling include the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and professional engineer.
- C. Design Data:
  - 1. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Field Test Reports:
  - 1. Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."
  - 2. Fire-hydrant flow test report.
- F. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
  - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer.

### B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- ### A. Interruption of Existing Sprinkler Service: Do not interrupt sprinkler service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sprinkler service according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sprinkler service.
  2. Do not proceed with interruption of sprinkler service without Construction Manager's written permission.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- ### A. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:
1. NFPA 13.
- ### B. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.
- ### C. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design wet-pipe sprinkler systems.
1. See FP001 for flow data. Fire pump to be used as hydraulic source in calculations.
  2. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

- a. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 percent or 10 psi (whichever is greater), including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
  - b. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:
    - 1) Building Service Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
    - 2) Electrical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
    - 3) General Storage Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
    - 4) Mechanical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
    - 5) Office and Public Areas: Light Hazard.
    - 6) Main Exhibit Hall Area: Ordinary Hazard Group 2
3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
- a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
  - b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
  - c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
  - d. Main Exhibit Hall Area: Ordinary Hazard Group 2, 0.17 gpm over 3000-sq. ft. area.
4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: According to UL listing.
5. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:
- a. Office Spaces: 225 sq. ft..
  - b. Storage Areas: 130 sq. ft..
  - c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft..
  - d. Electrical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft..
  - e. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13 recommendations unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Schedule 40, Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- B. Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- C. Galvanized- and Uncoated-Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865/A 865M, threaded.
- D. Galvanized and Uncoated, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- E. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- F. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.
- G. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.
  1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free or EPDM rubber gasket.

- a. Class 125 and Class 250, Cast-Iron, Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
  - b. Class 150 and Class 300, Ductile-Iron or -Steel, Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.
2. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M and ASME B16.9.
1. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- I. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Tyco Fire Products LP.
    - b. Victaulic Company.
  2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
  3. Uncoated Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
  4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

## 2.3 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- B. Pressure Rating:
  1. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175-psig minimum.
- C. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- D. Size: Same as connected piping.
- E. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- F. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
    - b. Tyco Fire Products LP.

2. Standard: UL 1726.
3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
4. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
5. Size: NPS 3/4.
6. End Connections: Threaded.

## 2.4 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

### A. Branch Outlet Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Tyco Fire Products LP.
  - b. Victaulic Company.
2. Standard: UL 213.
3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
5. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
6. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
7. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
8. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.

### B. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
  - b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
  - c. Tyco Fire Products LP.
  - d. Victaulic Company.
2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded or grooved.

### C. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
  - b. Tyco Fire Products LP.
  - c. Victaulic Company.
  - d. Viking Corporation.
2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

D. Adjustable Drop Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Aegis Technologies, Inc.
  - b. CECA, LLC.
  - c. Corcoran Piping System Co.
  - d. Merit Manufacturing.
2. Standard: UL 1474.
3. Pressure Rating: 250-psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Steel pipe with EPDM-rubber O-ring seals.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Length: Adjustable.
7. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

E. Flexible Sprinkler Hose Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. FlexHead Industries, Inc.
  - b. Victaulic Company.
2. Standard: UL 1474.
3. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling grid.
4. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
5. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

## 2.5 SPRINKLERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
  2. Tyco Fire Products LP.
  3. Victaulic Company.
  4. Viking Corporation.
- B. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- C. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig minimum.
- D. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
1. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
  2. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.
- E. Sprinkler Finishes: Chrome plated bronze and painted.
- F. Special Coatings: corrosion-resistant paint.
- G. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.
1. Ceiling Mounting: Plastic, white finish, one piece, flat.
  2. Sidewall Mounting: Plastic, white finish, one piece, flat.
- H. Sprinkler Guards:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
    - b. Tyco Fire Products LP.
    - c. Victaulic Company.
    - d. Viking Corporation.
  2. Standard: UL 199.
  3. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

## 2.6 ALARM DEVICES

- A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.

B. Electrically Operated Alarm Bell:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell International company.
  - b. Notifier.
  - c. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
2. Standard: UL 464.
3. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.
4. Size: 6-inch minimum- diameter.
5. Finish: Red-enamel factory finish, suitable for outdoor use.
6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Water-Flow Indicators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
  - b. System Sensor.
  - c. Viking Corporation.
  - d. WATTS.
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
5. Type: Paddle operated.
6. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
7. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.

D. Valve Supervisory Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell International company.
  - b. Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
  - c. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
  - d. System Sensor.

2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.7 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. AGF Manufacturing, Inc.
  2. AMETEK, Inc.
  3. Brecco Corporation.
  4. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
- B. Standard: UL 393.
- C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.
- D. Pressure Gage Range: 0 to 300 psig.
- E. Label: Include "WATER" label on dial face.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.
  1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
  2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.

- B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.
- C. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- D. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- E. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.
- F. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- G. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.
- H. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- I. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13.
- J. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- K. Pressurize and check dry-pipe sprinkler system piping and air compressors.
- L. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.
- M. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- N. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- O. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 210518 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- D. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- E. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- F. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
  - 1. Shop weld pipe joints where welded piping is indicated. Do not use welded joints for galvanized-steel pipe.
- G. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.
- H. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.

### 3.4 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Specialty Valves:
  - 1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
  - 2. Install alarm valves with bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.

### 3.5 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of narrow dimension of acoustical ceiling panels.

- B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.
- C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

### 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  - 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
  - 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
  - 5. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
  - 6. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
  - 7. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.
- B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.
- B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

### 3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves.

### 3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, Schedule 40 steel pipe with grooved ends, grooved-end fittings, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and grooved joints.
- B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.
- C. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  - 2. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.
- D. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with cut- or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  - 2. Schedule 40, black-steel pipe with plain ends; steel welding fittings; and welded joints.

### 3.11 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

- A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:
  - 1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
  - 2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Dry pendent, recessed, flush, and concealed sprinklers as indicated.
  - 3. Wall Mounting: Dry sidewall sprinklers.
  - 4. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Upright, dry pendent sprinklers; and dry sidewall sprinklers as indicated.
  - 5. Special Applications: Extended-coverage
- B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.
  - 1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
  - 2. Flush Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with painted white escutcheon.
  - 3. Recessed Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with bright chrome escutcheon.
  - 4. Residential Sprinklers: Dull chrome.
  - 5. Upright Pendent and Sidewall Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view; wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.

END OF SECTION 211313

## SECTION 211316 - DRY-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
2. Specialty valves.
3. Sprinkler specialty pipe fittings.
4. Sprinklers.
5. Alarm devices.
6. Pressure gages.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 211119 "Fire Department Connections" for exposed-, flush-, and yard-type fire department connections.
2. Section 210523 "General-Duty Valves for Water-Based Fire-Suppression Piping" for ball, butterfly, check, gate, post-indicator, and trim and drain valves.
3. Section 210000 "Basic Fire Suppression Requirements"

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Dry-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of 175-psig maximum.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

- B. Shop Drawings: For dry-pipe sprinkler systems.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details. Retain "Delegated-Design Submittal" Paragraph below if Work of this Section is required to withstand specific design loads and design responsibilities have been delegated to Contractor, or if structural data are required as another way to verify compliance with performance requirements.

Professional engineer qualifications are specified in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For dry-pipe sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler systems, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Domestic water piping.
  - 2. Compressed air piping.
  - 3. HVAC hydronic piping.
  - 4. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and professional engineer.
- C. Design Data:
  - 1. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.
- D. Fire-hydrant flow test report.
- E. Field Test Reports:
  - 1. Fire-hydrant flow test report.
  - 2. Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."
- F. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For dry-pipe sprinkler systems and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
  - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- ### A. Interruption of Existing Sprinkler Service: Do not interrupt sprinkler service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sprinkler service according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sprinkler service.
  2. Do not proceed with interruption of sprinkler service without Construction Manager's written permission.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

- #### A. Dry-Pipe Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing compressed air. Opening of sprinklers releases compressed air and permits water pressure to open dry-pipe valve. Water then flows into piping and discharges from opened sprinklers.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- #### A. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:
1. NFPA 13.
- #### B. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.
- #### C. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design dry-pipe sprinkler systems.

- D. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 percent or 10 psi (whichever is greater), including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
  2. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:
    - a. Building Service Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
    - b. Electrical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
    - c. General Storage Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
    - d. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
    - e. Office and Public Areas: Light Hazard.
  3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
    - a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
    - b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
    - c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
  4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: According to UL listing.
  5. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:
    - a. Office Spaces: 225 sq. ft.
    - b. Storage Areas: 130 sq. ft.
    - c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft.
    - d. Electrical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft.
    - e. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13 recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Total Combined Hose-Stream Demand Requirement: According to NFPA 13 unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Light-Hazard Occupancies: 100 gpm for 30 minutes.
    - b. Ordinary-Hazard Occupancies: 250 gpm for 60 to 90 minutes.

### 2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Standard-Weight, Stainless-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- C. Stainless-Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865/A 865M, threaded.
- D. Stainless, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- E. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- F. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME B16.1, Class 125.
- G. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. [Tyco Fire Products LP.](#)
  - b. [Victaulic Company.](#)
2. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
3. Stainless, Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

## 2.4 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- B. Pressure Rating:
  1. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175-psig minimum.
- C. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
- D. Size: Same as connected piping.
- E. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
- F. Dry-Pipe Valves:
  1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. [Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. \(The\).](#)
    - b. [Tyco Fire Products LP.](#)
    - c. [Victaulic Company.](#)
    - d. [Viking Corporation.](#)
  2. Standard: UL 260.
  3. Design: Differential-pressure type.
  4. Include UL 1486, quick-opening devices, trim sets for air supply, drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gages, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.
    - a. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) [Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. \(The\).](#)

- 2) [Tyco Fire Products LP.](#)
  - 3) [Victaulic Company.](#)
  - 4) [Viking Corporation.](#)
5. Standard: UL 260.
6. Type: Automatic device to maintain minimum air pressure in piping.
7. Include shutoff valves to permit servicing without shutting down sprinkler piping, bypass valve for quick filling, pressure regulator or switch to maintain pressure, strainer, pressure ratings with 14- to 60-psig adjustable range, and 175-psig outlet pressure.
8. Air Compressor:
- a. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) [General Air Products, Inc.](#)
    - 2) [Viking Corporation.](#)
  - b. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
  - c. Motor Horsepower: Fractional.
  - d. Power: 120-V ac, 60 Hz, single phase.

G. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. [Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. \(The\).](#)
  - b. [Tyco Fire Products LP.](#)
2. Standard: UL 1726.
3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
4. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
5. Size: NPS 3/4.
6. End Connections: Threaded.

## 2.5 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. General Requirements for Dry-Pipe System Fittings: UL listed for dry-pipe service.

B. Branch Outlet Fittings:

1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. [Tyco Fire Products LP.](#)

- b. [Victaulic Company.](#)
2. Standard: UL 213.
  3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
  4. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
  5. Type: Mechanical-tee and -cross fittings.
  6. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
  7. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
  8. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.
- C. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:
1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. [AGF Manufacturing, Inc.](#)
    - b. [Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. \(The\).](#)
    - c. [Tyco Fire Products LP.](#)
    - d. [Victaulic Company.](#)
  2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
  3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
  4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
  5. Size: Same as connected piping.
  6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.
- D. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:
1. [Manufacturers:](#) Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. [AGF Manufacturing, Inc.](#)
    - b. [Tyco Fire Products LP.](#)
    - c. [Victaulic Company.](#)
    - d. [Viking Corporation.](#)
  2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
  3. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
  4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
  5. Size: Same as connected piping.
  6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.
- E. Adjustable Drop Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Aegis Technologies, Inc.
  - b. CECA, LLC.
  - c. Corcoran Piping System Co.
  - d. Merit Manufacturing.
2. Standard: UL 1474.
3. Pressure Rating: 250-psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Steel pipe with EPDM O-ring seals.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Length: Adjustable.
7. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

F. Flexible Sprinkler Hose Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. FlexHead Industries, Inc.
  - b. Victaulic Company.
2. Standard: UL 1474.
3. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling grid.
4. Pressure Rating: 175-psig minimum.
5. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

## 2.6 SPRINKLERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
  2. Tyco Fire Products LP.
  3. Victaulic Company.
  4. Viking Corporation.
- B. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" or FM Global's "Approval Guide."
- C. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175-psig minimum.
- D. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
  1. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.

2. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.
- E. Sprinkler Finishes: Chrome plated bronze and painted.
- F. Special Coatings: Corrosion-resistant paint.
- G. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.
1. Ceiling Mounting: Plastic, white finish, one piece, flat.
  2. Sidewall Mounting: Plastic, white finish, one piece, flat.
- H. Sprinkler Guards:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc. (The).
    - b. Tyco Fire Products LP.
    - c. Victaulic Company.
    - d. Viking Corporation.
  2. Standard: UL 199.
  3. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

## 2.7 ALARM DEVICES

- A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.
- B. Electrically Operated Alarm Bell:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell International company.
    - b. Notifier.
    - c. Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.
  2. Standard: UL 464.
  3. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.
  4. Size: 6-inch minimum diameter.
  5. Finish: Red-enamel factory finish, suitable for outdoor use.

6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Pressure Switches:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. [Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.](#)
  - b. [System Sensor.](#)
  - c. [Tyco Fire Products LP.](#)
  - d. [Viking Corporation.](#)
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised water-flow switch with retard feature.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design Operation: Rising pressure signals water flow.

D. Valve Supervisory Switches:

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. [Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell International company.](#)
  - b. [Kennedy Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.](#)
  - c. [Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC.](#)
  - d. [System Sensor.](#)
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application

## 2.8 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. [AGF Manufacturing, Inc.](#)
  2. [AMETEK, Inc.](#)
  3. [Brecco Corporation.](#)
  4. [WIKA Instrument Corporation.](#)

- B. Standard: UL 393.
- C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.
- D. Pressure Gage Range: 0 to 300 psig.
- E. Label: Include "WATER" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.
- F. Air System Piping Gage: Include "AIR" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

#### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated on approved working plans.
  - 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
  - 2. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.
- C. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- D. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- E. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- F. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.
- G. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- H. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valves to drain piping between fire department connections and check valves. Drain to floor drain or to outside building.

- I. Connect compressed-air supply to dry-pipe sprinkler piping.
- J. Connect air compressor to the following piping and wiring:
  - 1. Pressure gages and controls.
  - 2. Electrical power system.
  - 3. Fire-alarm devices, including low-pressure alarm.
- K. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- L. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements in NFPA 13.
- M. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.
- N. Drain dry-pipe sprinkler piping.
- O. Pressurize and check dry-pipe sprinkler system piping and air compressors.
- P. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- Q. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- R. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 210518 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- C. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- D. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- E. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.

- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- G. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.

### 3.4 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Specialty Valves:
  - 1. Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
  - 2. Install dry-pipe valves with trim sets for air supply, drain, priming level, alarm connections, ball drip valves, pressure gages, priming chamber attachment, and fill-line attachment.
    - a. Install air compressor and compressed-air-supply piping.
    - b. Install air-pressure maintenance device with shutoff valves to permit servicing without shutting down sprinkler system; bypass valve for quick system filling; pressure regulator or switch to maintain system pressure; strainer; pressure ratings with 14- to 60-psig adjustable range; and 175-psig maximum inlet pressure.
    - c. Install compressed-air-supply piping from building's compressed-air piping system.

### 3.5 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of narrow dimension of acoustical ceiling panels.
- B. Install sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.
- C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

### 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  - 3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
  - 4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
  - 5. Start and run air compressors.
  - 6. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
  - 7. Coordinate with fire-pump tests. Operate as required.
  - 8. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire department equipment.
- B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.
- B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

### 3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain specialty valves.

### 3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Stainless, standard-weight steel pipe with grooved ends, grooved-end fittings, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and grooved joints.
- B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.

- C. Standard-pressure, dry-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Standard-weight, stainless-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; stainless, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
- D. Standard-pressure, dry-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Standard-weight, stainless-steel pipe with cut-grooved ends; stainless, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

### 3.11 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

- A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:
  - 1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
  - 2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Dry pendent, recessed, flush, and concealed sprinklers as indicated.
  - 3. Wall Mounting: Dry sidewall sprinklers.
  - 4. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Upright, dry pendent sprinklers; and dry sidewall sprinklers as indicated.
  - 5. Special Applications: Extended-coverage
- B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.
  - 1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
  - 2. Flush Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with painted white escutcheon.
  - 3. Recessed Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with bright chrome escutcheon.
  - 4. Upright Pendent and Sidewall Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view; wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.

END OF SECTION 211316

## SECTION 220513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR PLUMBING EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

#### 2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

## 2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Premium efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
  - 1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
  - 2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.
- E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.
- F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- I. Insulation: Class F.
- J. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  - 2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

## 2.4 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
  - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width-modulated inverters.
  - 2. Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
  - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
  - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
  - 5. Motor Shaft Grounding Rings: Conductive microfiber shaft grounding rings to redirect shaft current to protect motor bearings.

## 2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - 2. Split phase.
  - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
  - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.
- C. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 220513

## SECTION 220517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves.
  - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
  - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 4. Grout.
  - 5. Silicone sealants.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, anticorrosion coated or galvanized, with plain ends and integral welded waterstop collar in new construction.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

#### 2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.

2. Zurn Industries, LLC.

- B. Description: Manufactured, Dura-coated or Duco-coated cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange for use in waterproof floors and roofs. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.

1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2. CALPICO, Inc.
3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
4. Metraflex Company (The).
5. Proco Products, Inc.

- B. Description:

1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20 psig minimum.
3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
4. Pressure Plates: Composite plastic.
5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, ASTM B 633 of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.

- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
  - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - 2. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
  - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
  - 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  - 5. Use silicone sealant to seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
  - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
      - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

- b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
  - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- 4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
- 5. Interior Partitions:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 220517

## SECTION 220518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. BrassCraft Manufacturing Co.; a Masco company.
  - 2. Dearborn Brass.
  - 3. Jones Stephens Corp.
  - 4. Keeney Manufacturing Company (The).

#### 2.2 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped [**steel**] [**brass**] with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

- C. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed and exposed-rivet hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

## 2.3 FLOOR PLATES

- A. Split Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - d. Insulated Piping: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - f. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - h. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - 2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping to Remain:
    - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.

- c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
- 1. New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping: One-piece, floor plate.
  - 2. Existing Piping: Split floor plate.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 220518

## SECTION 220519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
2. Thermowells.
3. Dial-type pressure gages.
4. Sight flow indicators.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 221113 "Facility Water Distribution Piping" for domestic water meters and combined domestic and fire-protection water-service meters outside the building.
2. Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for water meters.
3. Section 221513 "General-Service Compressed-Air Piping" for compressed air gages.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

- A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Trerice, H. O. Co.
2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Cast aluminum; 9-inch nominal size.
4. Case Form: Back angle unless otherwise indicated.
5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue organic liquid.
6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
7. Window: Glass or plastic.
8. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
  - a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
9. Connector: 3/4 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

## 2.2 PRESSURE GAGES

### A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ashcroft Inc.
  - b. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
  - c. Trerice, H. O. Co.
  - d. WATTS.
  - e. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Sealed type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Ring: Stainless steel.
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

## 2.3 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Valves: Brass ball, with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- G. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- H. Install thermometers in the following locations:
  - 1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
- I. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
  - 1. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater shall be the following:
  - 1. Metal case, industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- B. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F.
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F.

3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump shall be the following:
  - 1. Sealed, direct-mounted, metal case.

3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.

END OF SECTION 220519

## SECTION 220523.12 - BALL VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Bronze ball valves.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

- 1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61 Annex G and NSF 372.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

- 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
- 2. Protect threads, flange faces, and soldered ends.
- 3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.

- B. Use the following precautions during storage:

- 1. Maintain valve end protection.
- 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use operating handles or stems as lifting or rigging points.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 Annex G and NSF 372 for valve materials for potable-water service.
- D. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Valve Actuator Types:
  - 1. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves smaller than NPS 4.
- H. Valves in Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Include 2-inch stem extensions.
  - 2. Extended operating handles of nonthermal-conductive material and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.

### 2.2 BRONZE BALL VALVES

- A. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - c. WATTS.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
    - b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Two piece.
    - d. Body Material: Bronze.
    - e. Ends: Threaded.

- f. Seats: PTFE.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- i. Port: Full.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

#### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

#### 3.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.
- B. Select valves with the following end connections:
  - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.

3.4 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:

1. Bronze ball valves, two-piece with full port and stainless-steel trim.

END OF SECTION 220523.12

## SECTION 220523.13 - BUTTERFLY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.
  - 1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61 Annex G and NSF 372.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
  - 3. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 Annex G and NSF 372 for valve materials for potable-water service.
- D. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- E. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Valve Actuator Types:
  - 1. Handlever: For valves NPS 6 and smaller.
- G. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions.

### 2.2 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with Stainless-Steel Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. Hammond Valve.
    - c. Jenkins Valves; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
    - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - e. Mueller Steam Specialty; A WATTS Brand.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating, NPS 12 and Smaller: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
    - e. Seat: EPDM.
    - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
    - g. Disc: Stainless steel.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine mating flange faces for damage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- D. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

### 3.4 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM seat, stainless-steel disc.

END OF SECTION 220523.13

## SECTION 220523.14 - CHECK VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Bronze swing check valves.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.
  - 1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads.
  - 3. Set check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
- C. Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects and Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content Compliance: NSF 61 and NSF 372.
- D. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

### 2.2 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc, Class 125:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. Jenkins Valves; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - d. Red-White Valve Corp.
    - e. WATTS.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
    - e. Ends: Threaded.
    - f. Disc: Bronze.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Check Valves: Install check valves for proper direction of flow.
  - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
- F. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

### 3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
  - 1. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
    - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc.
- B. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.

C. End Connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.

3.5 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc, Class 125, with threaded end connections.

END OF SECTION 220523.14

## SECTION 220529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
- 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
- 3. Metal framing systems.
- 4. Thermal hanger-shield inserts.
- 5. Fastener systems.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
- 2. Section 220548.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:

- 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
- 2. Metal framing systems.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2015 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.

### 2.2 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coated or epoxy powder coated.
4. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

### 2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made from structural-carbon-steel shapes, with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

### 2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. B-line, an Eaton business.
  - b. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
  - c. Unistrut; Part of Atkore International.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly, made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturred lips.
5. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.

6. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
7. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
8. Metallic Coating: G90 Hot-dip galvanized.
9. Paint Coating: Green epoxy, acrylic, or urethane.

## 2.5 THERMAL HANGER-SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Clement Support Services.
  2. ERICO International Corporation.
  3. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
  4. Pipe Shields Inc.
  5. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig minimum compressive strength.
- D. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## 2.6 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. B-line, an Eaton business.
    - b. Hilti, Inc.
    - c. ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
  2. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated steel or stainless steel.
  3. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

## 2.7 PIPE-POSITIONING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42 positioning system composed of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

## 2.8 MATERIALS

- A. Carbon Steel: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
- B. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- C. Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation, for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

### 3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size, or install intermediate supports for smaller-diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- D. Thermal Hanger-Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.

- E. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete, after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Pipe-Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.
- G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- I. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms, and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- J. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports, so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- K. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- L. Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating Above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating Below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal hanger-shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39 protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40 protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
  - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
    - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
  - 5. Thermal Hanger Shields: Install with insulation of same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment, and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections, so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded, shop-painted areas. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as those used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded, shop-painted areas on miscellaneous metal are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

### 3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finishes.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use thermal hanger-shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- H. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  - 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
  - 3. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
  - 4. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  - 5. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
  - 6. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  - 7. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  - 8. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  - 9. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
  - 10. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.
  - 11. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes
- I. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.

2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- J. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
  2. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11 split pipe rings.
  3. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
- K. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable-Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  6. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  7. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  8. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  9. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
- L. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal Hanger-Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- M. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- N. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- O. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- P. Use pipe-positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 220529

## SECTION 220548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
- 2. Elastomeric hangers.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 210548.13 "Vibration Controls for Fire-Suppression Piping and Equipment" for devices for fire-suppression equipment and systems.
- 2. Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC" for devices for HVAC equipment and systems.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
- 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device type required.

- B. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.

- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation device.

- 1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation for plumbing piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.

- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Air-Mounting System Performance Certification: Include natural frequency, load, and damping test data[ **performed by an independent agency**].

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

- A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods: .
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
    - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
    - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
    - d. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
  - 2. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
  - 3. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment or piping resulting in stresses or misalignment.

END OF SECTION 220548.13

## SECTION 220553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Valve tags.
  - 5. Warning tags.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Brimar Industries, Inc.
    - c. Carlton Industries, LP.

- d. Champion America.
  - e. Seton Identification Products.
2. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  3. Letter Color: Black.
  4. Background Color: White.
  5. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
  6. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  7. Minimum Letter Size: 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
  8. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  9. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Brady Corporation.
  2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  3. Carlton Industries, LP.
  4. Champion America.
  5. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- C. Letter Color: White.
- D. Background Color: Red.
- E. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- F. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

- G. Minimum Letter Size: 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- H. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- I. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- J. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

### 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Brady Corporation.
  - 2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  - 3. Carlton Industries, LP.
  - 4. Champion America.
  - 5. Seton Identification Products.
- B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- C. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.

### 2.4 VALVE TAGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Brady Corporation.
  - 2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  - 3. Carlton Industries, LP.
  - 4. Champion America.
  - 5. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain, beaded chain or S-hook.
- C. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.5 WARNING TAGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Brady Corporation.
  2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  3. Carlton Industries, LP.
  4. Champion America.
  5. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
1. Size: Approximately 4 by 7 inches.
  2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
  3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
  4. Color: Safety yellow background with black lettering.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- B. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
  - 1. Domestic Water Piping
    - a. Background: Safety green.
    - b. Letter Colors: White.
  - 2. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping:
    - a. Background Color: Safety white.
    - b. Letter Color: Black.

### 3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
  - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:

- a. Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
  - b. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
2. Valve-Tag Colors:
- a. Cold Water: Natural.
  - b. Hot Water: Natural.
3. Letter Colors:
- a. Cold Water: White.
  - b. Hot Water: White.

### 3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 220553

## SECTION 220719 - PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
  - 1. Domestic cold-water piping.
  - 2. Domestic hot-water piping.
  - 3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.
  - 4. Roof drains and rainwater leaders.
  - 5. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 220716 "Plumbing Equipment Insulation."

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
  - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
  - 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
  - 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
  - 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  - 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.
- C. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
  - 1. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

## 1.7 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - b. Knauf Insulation.
    - c. Owens Corning.
  - 2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

### 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.
- B. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.

## 2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  - 5. Color: White.
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.

- c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - d. Knauf Insulation.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.

## 2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A, and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
  3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Color: White.

## 2.6 SEALANTS

- A. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
  5. Color: White.

## 2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  2. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

## 2.8 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
    - b. Knauf Insulation.
    - c. Venture Tape.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
    - b. Knauf Insulation.
    - c. Venture Tape.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

## 2.9 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
    - b. RPR Products, Inc.
  2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal.
  3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal.

- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- C. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. C & F Wire.

## 2.10 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

- A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Engineered Brass Company.
    - b. Insul-Tect Products Co.
    - c. Truebro.
    - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
  - 2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.
- B. Protective Shielding Piping Enclosures:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Truebro.
    - b. Zurn Industries, LLC.
  - 2. Description: Manufactured plastic enclosure for covering plumbing fixture hot- and cold-water supplies and trap and drain piping. Comply with ADA requirements.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
    - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  - 1. Vibration-control devices.
  - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
  - 4. Cleanouts.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

- C. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- D. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
  - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
  - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  - 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  - 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  - 5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
  - 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  - 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for

- above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
  9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
  2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
  3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
  4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
  5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
  2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
  3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
  4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.8 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:

1. Underground piping.
2. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

### 3.9 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

#### A. Domestic Cold Water:

1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
2. NPS 1-1/4 and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

#### B. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:

1. NPS 1-1/4 and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

#### C. Stormwater and Overflow:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

#### D. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

#### E. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

#### F. Storm Piping Where Heat Tracing Is Installed:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1-1/2 inches thick.

- G. Floor Drains, Traps, and Sanitary Drain Piping within 10 Feet of Drain Receiving Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:
  - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
    - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

3.10 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Exposed:
  - 1. PVC: 30 mils thick.

END OF SECTION 220719

SECTION 22 11 13 – FACILITY WATER DISTRIBUTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes water-distribution piping and related components outside the building for water service.
- B. Utility-furnished products include water meters that will be furnished to the site, ready for installation.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. DI: Ductile Iron.
- B. PVC: Polyvinyl Chloride

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Coordination Drawings: For piping including relation to other services in same area, drawn to scale. Show piping and elevations.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements:
  - 1. Comply with Carroll County standards for potable-water-service piping, including materials, installation, testing, disinfection and backflow prevention.
- B. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- C. NSF Compliance:
  - 1. Comply with NSF 61 for materials for water-service piping and specialties for domestic water.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver piping with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe-end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Protect stored piping from moisture and dirt. Elevate above grade. Do not exceed structural capacity of floor when storing inside.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water-Distribution Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water-distribution service according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Architect and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
  2. Do not proceed with interruption of water-distribution service without Owner's written permission.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K, water tube, drawn temper.
1. Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint pressure type. Furnish only wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
  2. Copper, Pressure-Seal Fittings:
    - a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - b. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Viega; Plumbing & Heating Systems.
    - c. NPS 2 to NPS 4: Bronze fitting with stainless-steel grip ring and EPDM O-ring seal in each end.
- B. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.

### 2.2 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
1. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile- or gray-iron standard pattern or AWWA C153, ductile-iron compact pattern.
  2. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125, cast iron.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

### 3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. General: Use pipe, fittings, and joining methods for piping systems according to the following applications.
- B. Transition couplings and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping pressure rating may be used, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Do not use flanges or unions for underground piping.
- D. Flanges, unions, grooved-end-pipe couplings, and special fittings may be used, instead of joints indicated, on aboveground piping and piping in vaults.
- E. Underground water-service piping NPS 3/4 to NPS 3 shall be the following:
  - 1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
- F. Underground water-service piping NPS 4 to NPS 8 shall be the following:
  - 1. Ductile-iron, mechanical-joint pipe; ductile-iron, mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints.

### 3.3 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. See Division 22 for piping-system common requirements.

### 3.4 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install ductile-iron, water-service piping according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
  - 1. Install PE corrosion-protection encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- B. Bury piping with depth of cover over top at least 36 inches, with top at least 12 inches below level of maximum frost penetration, and according to the following:
  - 1. In Loose Gravelly Soil and Rock: With at least 12 inches additional cover.
- C. Extend water-service piping and connect to water-supply source and building-water-piping systems at outside face of building wall in locations and pipe sizes indicated.
  - 1. Terminate water-service piping at building wall until building-water-piping systems are installed. Terminate piping with caps, plugs, or flanges as required for piping material. Make connections to building-water-piping systems when those systems are installed.
- D. Sleeves are specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- F. Install underground piping with restrained joints at horizontal and vertical changes in direction. Use restrained-joint piping, thrust blocks, anchors, tie-rods and clamps, and other supports.
- G. See Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping" for potable-water piping inside the building.

### 3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Make pipe joints according to the following:
  - 1. Copper-Tubing, Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use proprietary crimping tool and procedure recommended by copper, pressure-seal-fitting manufacturer.
  - 2. Ductile-Iron Piping, Gasketed Joints for Water-Service Piping: AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.

### 3.6 ANCHORAGE INSTALLATION

- A. Anchorage, General: Install water-distribution piping with restrained joints. Anchorages and restrained-joint types that may be used include the following:
  - 1. Concrete thrust blocks.
  - 2. Locking mechanical joints.
  - 3. Set-screw mechanical retainer glands.
  - 4. Bolted flanged joints.
  - 5. Heat-fused joints.
  - 6. Pipe clamps and tie rods.
- B. Install anchorages for tees, plugs and caps, bends, crosses, valves, and hydrant branches. Include anchorages for the following piping systems:
  - 1. Gasketed-Joint, Ductile-Iron, Water-Service Piping: According to AWWA C600.
- C. Apply full coat of asphalt or other acceptable corrosion-resistant material to surfaces of installed ferrous anchorage devices.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. See Division 22 for piping connections to valves and equipment.
- C. Connect water-distribution piping to existing water piping.
- D. Connect water-distribution piping to interior domestic water piping.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Piping Tests: Conduct piping tests before joints are covered and after concrete thrust blocks have hardened sufficiently. Fill pipeline 24 hours before testing and apply test pressure to stabilize system. Use only potable water.
- B. Hydrostatic Tests: Test at not less than one-and-one-half times working pressure for two hours.
  - 1. Increase pressure in 50-psig increments and inspect each joint between increments. Hold at test pressure for 1 hour; decrease to 0 psig. Slowly increase again to test pressure and hold for 1 more hour. Maximum allowable leakage is 2 quarts per hour per 100 joints. Remake leaking joints with new materials and repeat test until leakage is within allowed limits.
- C. Prepare reports of testing activities.

3.9 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install continuous underground detectable warning tape during backfilling of trench for underground water-distribution piping. Locate below finished grade, directly over piping. Underground warning tapes are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving".

3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect water-distribution piping as follows:
  - 1. Purge new water-distribution piping systems and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired before use.
  - 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedure, if method is not prescribed by Owner, use procedure described in NFPA 24 for flushing of piping. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at points of outlet.
  - 3. Use purging and disinfecting procedure, if method is not prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction, use procedure described in AWWA C651 or do as follows:
    - a. Fill system or part of system with water/chlorine solution containing at least 50 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 24 hours.
    - b. Drain system or part of system of previous solution and refill with water/chlorine solution containing at least 200 ppm of chlorine; isolate and allow to stand for 3 hours.
    - c. After standing time, flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine remains in water coming from system.
    - d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles. Repeat procedure if biological examination shows evidence of contamination.
- B. Prepare reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

END OF SECTION 22 11 13

## SECTION 221116 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Copper tube and fittings.
  - 2. Stainless-steel piping
  - 3. Piping joining materials.
  - 4. Encasement for piping.
  - 5. Dielectric fittings.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For transition fittings and dielectric fittings.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than four days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
  - 2. Do not interrupt water service without Owner's written permission.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
- B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61 Annex G.
- C. Comply with NSF 372 for low lead.

### 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.
- B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, annealed temper.
- C. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
- D. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- E. Copper Unions:
  - 1. MSS SP-123.
  - 2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
  - 3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
  - 4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.
- F. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. Mueller Industries, Inc.
    - c. Viega LLC.
  - 2. Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.

### 2.3 STAINLESS-STEEL PIPING

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61 Annex G.
- B. Stainless-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 312/A 312M, Schedule 10.
- C. Stainless-Steel Pipe Fittings: ASTM A 815/A 815M.
- D. Appurtenances for Grooved-End, Stainless-Steel Pipe:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anvil International.
  - b. Grinnell Mechanical Products.
  - c. Victaulic Company.
2. Fittings for Grooved-End, Stainless-Steel Pipe: Stainless-steel casting with dimensions matching stainless-steel pipe.
3. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved-End, Stainless-Steel Pipe:
  - a. AWWA C606 for stainless-steel-pipe dimensions.
  - b. Stainless-steel housing sections.
  - c. Stainless-steel bolts and nuts.
  - d. EPDM-rubber gaskets suitable for hot and cold water.
  - e. Minimum Pressure Rating:
    - 1) NPS 8 and Smaller: 600 psig.

#### 2.4 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

##### A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:

1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.

##### B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

##### C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.

##### D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8M/A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

##### E. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.

#### 2.5 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

##### A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.

##### B. Form: Sheet or tube.

##### C. Color: Black.

#### 2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- ##### A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

B. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
  - b. WATTS.
  - c. Wilkins.
  - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
  - b. Matco-Norca.
  - c. WATTS.
  - d. Wilkins.
2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
3. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
4. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
5. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install underground copper tube in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- D. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- E. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.

- F. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- G. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- H. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- I. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- J. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- K. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- L. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- M. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- N. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- O. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- P. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- Q. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- R. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

### 3.2 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.

2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- E. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" chapter.
- F. Pressure-Sealed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- G. Joint Construction for Grooved-End Stainless Steel Piping: Make joints according to AWWA C606. Roll groove ends of pipe as specified. Lubricate and install gasket over ends of pipes or pipe and fitting. Install coupling housing sections over gasket with keys seated in piping grooves. Install and tighten housing bolts.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- I. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

### 3.3 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.

### 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
  2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.

- E. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
- F. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- G. Install hangers for stainless-steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 3 and NPS 3-1/2: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
- H. Install supports for vertical stainless-steel piping every 15 feet.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
  - 1. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
  - 2. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.

### 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Piping Inspections:

- a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
    - 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
    - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
  - c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
  - d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Piping Tests:
- a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
  - b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  - e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
  2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
  3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
  4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
    - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.

- b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

### 3.9 CLEANING

#### A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
  - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
  - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
    - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
    - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
  - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
  - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
  - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
  - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
  - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.

#### C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.

#### D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

### 3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:
  - 1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
- D. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
  - 2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
- E. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
  - 2. Stainless-steel Schedule 10 pipe, grooved-joint fittings, and grooved joints.

### 3.11 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
  - 1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  - 2. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated balancing valves.
  - 3. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.
- C. Iron grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping.

END OF SECTION 221116

## SECTION 221119 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Vacuum breakers.
2. Backflow preventers.
3. Balancing valves.
4. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
5. Strainers.
6. Hose bibbs.
7. Wall hydrants.
8. Drain valves.
9. Water-hammer arresters.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 220519 "Meters and Gauges for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gages, and flow meters in domestic water piping.
2. Section 224500 "Emergency Plumbing Fixtures" for water tempering equipment.
3. Section 224716 "Pressure Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For domestic water piping specialties.
  1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61 and NSF 14.
- B. Comply with NSF 372 for low lead.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.3 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. WATTS.
    - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
  - 3. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
  - 4. Body: Bronze.
  - 5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
  - 6. Finish: Rough bronze.

### 2.4 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

- A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. WATTS.
    - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1013.

3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle third of flow range.
5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
7. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight-through flow.
8. Accessories:
  - a. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet.
  - b. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Outside-screw and yoke-gate type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet.
  - c. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

## 2.5 BALANCING VALVES

### A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
  - b. ITT Corporation.
  - c. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
  - d. WATTS.
2. Type: Ball valve with two readout ports and memory-setting indicator.
3. Body: bronze.
4. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
5. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

### B. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

## 2.6 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED, WATER MIXING VALVES

### A. Water-Temperature Limiting Devices:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. Armstrong International, Inc.
  - c. Chicago Faucet.
  - d. Legend Valve & Fitting, Inc.
  - e. Leonard Valve Company.
  - f. POWERS; A WATTS Brand.
  - g. WATTS.
2. Standard: ASSE 1017.

3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Type: Thermostatically controlled, water mixing valve.
5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
6. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
7. Accessories: Check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
8. Valve Finish: Chrome plated.

B. Primary, Thermostatic, Water Mixing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. Armstrong International, Inc.
  - c. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - d. Leonard Valve Company.
  - e. POWERS; A WATTS Brand.
  - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1017.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
4. Type: Exposed-mounted, thermostatically controlled, water mixing valve.
5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
6. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
7. Accessories: Manual temperature control, check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
8. Valve Finish: Rough bronze.
9. Piping Finish: Copper.

## 2.7 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations unless otherwise indicated.
5. Perforation Size:
  - a. Strainers NPS 2 and Smaller: 0.033 inch.
6. Drain: Factory-installed, hose-end drain valve.

## 2.8 HOSE BIBBS

A. Hose Bibbs:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. WATTS.
  - e. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
  - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
3. Body Material: Bronze.
4. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
5. Supply Connections: NPS 3/4 threaded.
6. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
7. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
8. Vacuum Breaker: Integral nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
9. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
10. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle.
11. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

## 2.9 WALL HYDRANTS

### A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. WATTS.
  - e. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
  - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
6. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
7. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
8. Box: Deep, flush mounted with cover.
9. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
10. Outlet: Exposed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
11. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
12. Operating Keys(s): Two with each wall hydrant.

## 2.10 DRAIN VALVES

### A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

## 2.11 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS

### A. Water-Hammer Arresters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. Precision Plumbing Products.
  - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - f. WATTS.
  - g. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
3. Type: Copper tube with piston.
4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

#### A. Backflow Preventers: Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.

- B. Balancing Valves: Install in locations where they can easily be adjusted.
- C. Temperature-Actuated, Water Mixing Valves: Install with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
- D. Y-Pattern Strainers: For water, install on supply side of each pump.
- E. Water-Hammer Arresters: Install in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping specialties adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Comply with requirements for grounding equipment in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
  - 1. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
  - 2. Calibrated balancing valves.
  - 3. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Test each reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.

- B. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION 221119

## SECTION 221123.21 - INLINE, DOMESTIC-WATER PUMPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. In-line, sealless centrifugal pumps.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction materials, rated capacities, certified performance curves with operating points plotted on curves, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For inline, domestic-water pumps to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Retain shipping flange protective covers and protective coatings during storage.
- B. Protect bearings and couplings against damage.
- C. Comply with pump manufacturer's written instructions for handling.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Compliance: UL 778 for motor-operated water pumps.
- C. Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects and Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content Compliance: NSF 61 and NSF 372.

### 2.2 IN-LINE, SEALLESS CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, in-line, close-coupled, canned-motor, sealless, overhung-impeller centrifugal pumps.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Bell and Gossett.
  - 2. Grundfos Pumps Corp.
  - 3. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
- C. Pump Construction:
  - 1. Pump and Motor Assembly: Hermetically sealed, replaceable-cartridge type with motor and impeller on common shaft and designed for installation with pump and motor shaft horizontal.
  - 2. Minimum Working Pressure: 125 psig.
  - 3. Maximum Continuous Operating Temperature: 220 deg F.
  - 4. Casing: Stainless steel, with threaded or companion-flange connections.
  - 5. Impeller: stainless steel.
  - 6. Motor: Variable speed.

### 2.3 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 220513 "Common Motor Requirements for Plumbing Equipment."
  - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

### 2.4 CONTROLS

- A. Thermostats: Integral; adjustable for control of hot-water circulation pump.

1. Type: Water-immersion temperature sensor, for installation in piping.
2. Range: 65 to 200 deg F.
3. Enclosure: NEMA 250.
4. Operation of Pump: Variable.
5. Settings: Set pump at 110 deg F.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for domestic-water-piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.

#### 3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with HI 1.4.
- B. Mount pumps in orientation complying with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Install continuous-thread hanger rods and vibration isolation of size required to support pump weight.
  1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 220548.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Fabricate brackets or supports as required.
  2. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

#### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to inline, domestic-water pumps, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic-water piping to pumps. Install suction and discharge piping equal to or greater than size of pump nozzles.
  1. Install flexible connectors adjacent to pumps in suction and discharge piping of the following pumps:
    - a. Horizontally mounted, in-line pumps.
    - b. Comply with requirements for flexible connectors specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- D. Install shutoff valve and strainer on suction side of each pump, and check, shutoff, and throttling valves on discharge side of each pump. Install valves same size as connected piping.

Comply with requirements for strainers specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties." Comply with requirements for valves specified in the following:

1. Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
2. Section 220523.14 "Check Valves for Plumbing Piping."
3. Install pressure gauge and snubber at suction of each pump and pressure gauge and snubber at discharge of each pump. Install at integral pressure-gauge tappings where provided or install pressure-gauge connectors in suction and discharge piping around pumps. Comply with requirements for pressure gauges and snubbers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

### 3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring between temperature controllers and devices.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification of pumps.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Inline, domestic-water pump will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
  1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Check piping connections for tightness.
  3. Clean strainers on suction piping.

4. Set thermostats, for automatic starting and stopping operation of pumps.
5. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
  - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
  - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
  - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
6. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
7. Start motor.
8. Open discharge valve slowly.
9. Adjust temperature settings on thermostats.

### 3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust inline, domestic-water pumps to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Adjust initial temperature set points.
- C. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.

END OF SECTION 221123.21

SECTION 22 13 13 – FACILITY SANITARY SEWERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipe and fittings.
  - 2. Cleanouts.
  - 3. Manholes.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. PVC: Polyvinyl Chloride.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of PVC pipe and fitting, from manufacturer.
- B. Shop Drawings: For manholes. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and frames and covers.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store plastic manholes, pipe, and fittings in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.
- C. Handle manholes according to manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Sewerage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Architect Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of service without Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. PVC Gravity Sewer Piping:

1. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM F 679, T-1 wall thickness, PVC gravity sewer pipe with bell-and-spigot ends and with integral ASTM F 477, elastomeric seals for gasketed joints.

## 2.2 MANHOLES

### A. Standard Precast Concrete Manholes:

1. Description: ASTM C 478, precast, reinforced concrete, of depth indicated, with provision for sealant joints.
2. Diameter: 48 inches minimum unless otherwise indicated.
3. Ballast: Increase thickness of precast concrete sections or add concrete to base section, as required to prevent flotation.
4. Base Section: 6-inch minimum thickness for floor slab and 4-inch minimum thickness for walls and base riser section; with separate base slab or base section with integral floor.
5. Riser Sections: 4-inch minimum thickness, of length to provide depth indicated.
6. Top Section: Eccentric-cone type unless concentric-cone or flat-slab-top type is indicated; with top of cone of size that matches grade rings.
7. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 990, bitumen or butyl rubber.
8. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C 923, cast or fitted into manhole walls, for each pipe connection.
9. Steps: ASTM A 615/A 615M, deformed, 1/2-inch steel reinforcing rods encased in ASTM D 4101, PP; wide enough to allow worker to place both feet on one step and designed to prevent lateral slippage off step. Cast or anchor steps into sidewalls at 12- to 16-inch intervals. Omit steps if total depth from floor of manhole to finished grade is less than 36 inches.
10. Adjusting Rings: Precast rubber grade adjustment ring (GNR Technologies Infra-Riser or Approved Equal). Use maximum of two rings, with level or sloped edge in thickness and diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and with height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope. Include sealant recommended by ring manufacturer.
11. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete or brick masonry rings, 6- to 9-inch total thickness, with diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and with height as required to adjust manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.

### B. Manhole Frames and Covers:

1. Description: Ferrous; 24-inch ID by 7- to 9-inch riser, with 4-inch- minimum-width flange and 26-inch- diameter cover. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "SANITARY SEWER."
2. Material: ASTM A 48, Class 30B cast iron unless otherwise indicated.

### C. Manhole-Cover Inserts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. FRW Industries; a Syneco Systems, Inc. company.
  - b. Knutson Enterprises.
  - c. L. F. Manufacturing, Inc.
  - d. Parson Environmental Products, Inc.
2. Description: Manufactured, plastic form, of size to fit between manhole frame and cover and designed to prevent stormwater inflow. Include handle for removal and gasket for gastight sealing.
3. Type: Solid.

## 2.3 CLEANOUTS

### A. PVC Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Canplas LLC.
  - b. IPS Corporation.
  - c. NDS.
  - d. Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies, Inc.
  - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - f. Zurn Light Commercial Products Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
2. Description: PVC body with PVC threaded plug. Include PVC sewer pipe fitting and riser to cleanout of same material as sewer piping.

## 2.4 CONCRETE

### A. General: Cast-in-place concrete complying with ACI 318, ACI 350/350R, and the following:

1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
4. Water: Potable.

### B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.

1. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A 185/A 185M, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 deformed steel.

### C. Manhole Channels and Benches: Field formed from concrete. Portland cement design mix, 4000 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio. Include channels and benches in manholes.

1. Channels: Concrete invert, formed to same width as connected piping, with height of vertical sides to three-fourths of pipe diameter. Form curved channels with smooth, uniform radius and slope.
  - a. Invert Slope: 2 percent minimum through manhole.
2. Benches: Concrete, sloped to drain into channel.
  - a. Slope: 8 percent.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

- #### A. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground sanitary sewer piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for using lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
- C. Install manholes for changes in direction unless fittings are indicated. Use fittings for branch connections. Direct tap method is not permitted.
- D. Install proper size increasers, reducers, and couplings where different sizes or materials of pipes and fittings are connected. Reducing size of piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- E. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:
  - 1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow, at minimum slope of 2 percent unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Install piping NPS 6 and larger with restrained joints at tee fittings and at changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place-concrete supports or anchors.
  - 3. Install piping with 48-inch minimum cover, unless otherwise indicated..
  - 4. Install PVC gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.
- F. Clear interior of piping and manholes of dirt and superfluous material as work progresses. Maintain swab or drag in piping, and pull past each joint as it is completed. Place plug in end of incomplete piping at end of day and when work stops.

### 3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure, drainage piping according to the following:
  - 1. Join PVC gravity sewer piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-seal joints or ASTM D 3034 for elastomeric-gasket joints.
  - 2. Join dissimilar pipe materials with nonpressure-type, flexible or rigid couplings.

### 3.4 MANHOLE INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install manholes complete with appurtenances and accessories indicated.
- B. Install precast concrete manhole sections with sealants according to ASTM C 891.
- C. Form continuous concrete channels and benches between inlets and outlet.
- D. Set tops of frames and covers flush with finished surface of manholes that occur in pavements. Set tops 3 inches above finished surface elsewhere unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Install manhole-cover inserts in frame and immediately below cover.

### 3.5 CLEANOUT INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts and riser extensions from sewer pipes to cleanouts at grade. Use cast-iron soil pipe fittings or PVC schedule 40 in sewer pipes at branches for cleanouts, and use cast-iron soil pipe or PVC schedule 40 for riser extensions to cleanouts. Install piping so cleanouts open in direction of flow in sewer pipe.
- B. Set cleanout frames and covers in earth in cast-in-place-concrete block, 24 by 24 by 8 inches deep. Set with tops 1 inch above surrounding grade.
- C. Set cleanout frames and covers in concrete pavement and roads with tops flush with pavement surface.

### 3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping to building's sanitary building drains specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- B. Make connections to existing piping and underground manholes.
  - 1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe, install wye fitting into existing piping, and encase entire wye fitting plus 6-inch overlap with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
  - 2. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 4 to NPS 20. Remove section of existing pipe, install wye fitting into existing piping, and encase entire wye with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.
  - 3. Protect existing piping and manholes to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.

### 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Materials and their installation are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving." Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping and at outside edges of underground manholes.
  - 1. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground manholes.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.
  - 1. Submit separate report for each system inspection.
  - 2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
    - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
    - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
    - c. Damage: Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
    - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
    - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.

3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
  4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.
- B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.
1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
  2. Test completed piping systems according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  3. Schedule tests and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
  4. Submit separate report for each test.
- C. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- D. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.
- 3.10 CLEANING
- A. Clean dirt and superfluous material from interior of piping. Flush with potable water.

END OF SECTION 22 13 13

## SECTION 221316 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
  - 3. Copper tube and fittings.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For hubless, single-stack drainage system. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sanitary Waste Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than four days in advance of proposed interruption of sanitary waste service.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of sanitary waste service without Owner's written permission.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.

### 2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

### 2.3 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Extra Heavy class.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

### 2.4 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. Cast-Iron, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
    - b. MG Piping Products Company.
  - 2. Standard: ASTM C 1277.
  - 3. Description: Two-piece ASTM A 48/A 48M, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

### 2.5 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Type DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
- B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.

- C. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

## 2.6 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

### A. Transition Couplings:

1. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
2. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
    - 2) Fernco Inc.
    - 3) Froet Industries LLC.
    - 4) Mission Rubber Company, LLC; a division of MCP Industries.
  - b. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
  - c. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
  - d. End Connections: Same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
  - e. Sleeve Materials:
    - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
    - 2) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems.
  1. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations.
  2. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- F. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- H. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- I. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends.
  - 1. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical.
  - 2. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe.
    - a. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines.
  - 3. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees.
  - 4. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected.
    - a. Reducing size of waste piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- J. Lay buried building waste piping beginning at low point of each system.
  - 1. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream.
  - 2. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
  - 3. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- K. Install soil and waste and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Building Sanitary Waste: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 2 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and larger.
  - 2. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- L. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- M. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- N. Install engineered soil and waste and vent piping systems as follows:

1. Combination Waste and Vent: Comply with standards of authorities having jurisdiction.
- O. Plumbing Specialties:
1. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
    - a. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping.
    - b. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  2. Install drains in sanitary waste gravity-flow piping.
    - a. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
- P. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
1. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- R. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
1. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- S. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
1. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION
- A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
  - B. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with calked joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum calked joints.
  - C. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
  - D. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.

### 3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

#### A. Transition Couplings:

1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
2. In Waste Drainage Piping: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

### 3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

#### A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
2. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
3. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
4. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:

- a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.

#### B. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.

#### C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

#### D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.

#### E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.

#### F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.

#### G. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.

#### H. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
4. NPS 3 and NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.

#### I. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.

#### J. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-58 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect waste and vent piping to the following:
  - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect waste piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect waste and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.

### 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping.
- B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
  - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary waste and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired.

- a. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced waste and vent piping until it has been tested and approved.
  - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test waste and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in.
  - a. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water.
  - b. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop.
  - c. Inspect joints for leaks.
4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight.
  - a. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg.
  - b. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure.
  - c. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection.
  - d. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### 3.9 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect sanitary waste and vent piping during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
- D. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by waste and vent piping installation.

### 3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be one of the following:
  1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings and hubless, single-stack aerator fittings;
  3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings and hubless, single-stack aerator fittings; hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- C. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Copper Type DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
  - 4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- D. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be the following:
  - 1. Extra Heavy class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- E. Underground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 and larger shall be the following:
  - 1. Extra Heavy class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

END OF SECTION 221316

## SECTION 221319 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Cleanouts.
- 2. Roof flashing assemblies.
- 3. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for roof drains.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene.
- B. FOG: Fats, oils, and greases.
- C. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings:

- 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sanitary waste piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Sanitary waste piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing, and marked for intended location and application.

### 2.2 CLEANOUTS

#### A. Cast-Iron Exposed Cleanouts:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. WATTS.
  - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M.
- 3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
- 4. Body Material: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
- 5. Closure: Countersunk, cast-iron plug.
- 6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

#### B. Cast-Iron Exposed Floor Cleanouts:

- 1. <Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - d. WATTS.
  - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for adjustable housing cleanout.
- 3. Size: Same as connected branch.
- 4. Type: Adjustable housing.
- 5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
- 6. Clamping Device: Not required.
- 7. Outlet Connection: Threaded.
- 8. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket.
- 9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.

10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
11. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
12. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
13. Riser: ASTM A 74, Extra-Heavy class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

1. <Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. WATTS.
  - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure Plug:
  - a. Cast iron.
  - b. Countersunk head.
  - c. Drilled and threaded for cover attachment screw.
  - d. Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
6. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.
7. Wall Access: Round, nickel-bronze, copper-alloy, or stainless-steel wall-installation frame and cover.

2.3 ROOF FLASHING ASSEMBLIES

A. Roof Flashing Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
  - b. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Description: Manufactured assembly made of 6.0-lb/sq. ft., 0.0938-inch- thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least 8 inches from pipe, with galvanized-steel boot reinforcement and counterflashing fitting.
  - a. Open-Top Vent Cap: Without cap.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

### A. Open Drains:

1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C 564 rubber gaskets.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping with increaser fitting of size indicated.

### B. Air-Gap Fittings:

1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
  2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
  3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
  4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- B. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- C. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- D. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof. Comply with requirements in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- E. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 2 inches above floor.
- F. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- G. Install sleeve and sleeve seals with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

- H. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.
- I. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.

### 3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- B. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required.
- C. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
  - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches, and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around pipe.
  - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around sleeve.
  - 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches around specialty.
- D. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- E. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- F. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- G. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.

### 3.4 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit.
  - 1. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections, and prepare test reports.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319

## SECTION 221319.13 - SANITARY DRAINS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Floor drains.
  - 2. Trench drains.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene styrene.
- B. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- C. HDPE: High-density polyethylene.
- D. PE: Polyethylene.
- E. PP: Polypropylene.
- F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 DRAIN ASSEMBLIES

- A. Sanitary drains shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

## 2.2 FLOOR DRAINS

### A. Cast-Iron Floor Drains (Finished Areas):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - e. Wade; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.
  - f. WATTS.
  - g. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
3. Pattern: Floor drain.
4. Body Material: Gray iron.
5. Seepage Flange: Required.
6. Anchor Flange: Required.
7. Clamping Device: Required.
8. Outlet: Bottom.
9. Coating on Interior and Exposed Exterior Surfaces: Not required.
10. Sediment Bucket: Not required.
11. Top or Strainer Material: Nickel bronze.
12. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Nickel bronze.
13. Top Shape: Round.
14. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.
15. Funnel: Not required.
16. Inlet Fitting: Gray iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet.

### B. Cast-Iron Floor Drains (Mechanical Rooms):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - e. Wade; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.
  - f. WATTS.
  - g. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
3. Pattern: Floor drain.
4. Body Material: Gray iron.
5. Seepage Flange: Required.
6. Anchor Flange: Required.
7. Clamping Device: Required.
8. Outlet: Bottom.

9. Coating on Interior and Exposed Exterior Surfaces: Not required.
10. Sediment Bucket: Not required.
11. Top or Strainer Material: Cast Iron.
12. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Rough bronze.
13. Top Shape: Square.
14. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
15. Funnel: Not required.
16. Inlet Fitting: Gray iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.

## 2.3 TRENCH DRAINS

### A. Trench Drains:

1. <Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - e. Wade; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.
  - f. WATTS.
  - g. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3 for trench drains.
3. Material: Ductile or gray iron.
4. Flange: Anchor.
5. Clamping Device: Required.
6. Outlet: Bottom.
7. Grate Material: Stainless steel.
8. Grate Finish: Not required.
9. Top Loading Classification: Medium Duty.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
  2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage.
  3. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
    - a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
    - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.

- c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.
  - 4. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange, so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring.
    - a. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
  - 5. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained.
  - 1. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Comply with ASME A112.3.1 for installation of stainless-steel channel drainage systems.
  - 1. Install on support devices, so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- D. Install FRP channel drainage system components on support devices, so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- E. Install plastic channel drainage system components on support devices, so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- F. Install open drain fittings with top of hub 2 inches above floor.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221319.13

## SECTION 221413 - FACILITY STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
  - 3. Specialty pipe and fittings.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Detail storm drainage piping. Show support locations, type of support, weight on each support, required clearances, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Structural members to which drainage piping will be attached or suspended from.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Storm Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than four days in advance of proposed interruption of storm drainage service.

2. Do not proceed with interruption of storm drainage service without Owner's written permission.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:

1. Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water.

### 2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
2. Tyler Pipe; a part of McWane family of companies.

- B. Pipe and Fittings:

1. Marked with CISPI collective trademark and NSF certification mark.
2. Class: ASTM A 74, Extra Heavy class.

- C. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.

- D. Caulking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

### 2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.
2. Tyler Pipe; a part of McWane family of companies.

- B. Pipe and Fittings:

1. Marked with CISPI collective trademark and NSF certification mark.
2. Standard: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.

- C. Cast-Iron, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Charlotte Pipe and Foundry Company.

b. MG Piping Products Company.

2. Standard: ASTM C 1277..
3. Description: Two-piece ASTM A 48/A 48M, cast-iron housing; stainless-steel bolts and nuts; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

## 2.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

### A. Transition Couplings:

1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in ODs or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified-piping-system fitting.
3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
    - 2) Fernco Inc.
    - 3) Mission Rubber Company, LLC; a division of MCP Industries.
  - b. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
  - c. Description: Elastomeric sleeve, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
  - d. Sleeve Materials:
    - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
    - 2) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems.
1. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations.

2. Install piping as indicated unless deviations from layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- F. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- H. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- I. Make changes in direction for piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends.
  1. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees.
  2. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected.
    - a. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- J. Lay buried building piping beginning at low point of each system.
  1. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream.
  2. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
  3. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- K. Install piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Building Storm Drain: 1 percent downward in direction of flow.
  2. Horizontal Storm Drainage Piping: 1 percent downward in direction of flow.
- L. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- M. Plumbing Specialties:
  1. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building storm drains connect to building storm sewers in storm drainage gravity-flow piping.
    - a. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."

2. Install drains in storm drainage gravity-flow piping.
  - a. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
- N. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- O. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
  1. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- P. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
  1. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- Q. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
  1. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- B. Hubless, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Coupled Joints:
  1. Join according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.

### 3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Transition Couplings:
  1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
  2. In Drainage Piping: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

### 3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
  2. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
  3. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:

- a. MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
- B. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 10 and NPS 12: 60 inches with 7/8-inch rod.
  - 6. Spacing for 10-foot pipe lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.
- F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.

### 3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.
  - 1. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor, and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
  - 2. Comply with requirements for cleanouts and drains specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.

### 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed storm drainage piping.
- B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in.
  2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Test storm drainage piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired.
    - a. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced storm drainage piping until it has been tested and approved.
    - a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  3. Test Procedure:
    - a. Test storm drainage piping on completion of roughing-in.
    - b. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts until completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
  4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  5. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- C. Piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.9 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

### 3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground storm drainage piping NPS 6 and smaller shall be the following:
  1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

- B. Aboveground, storm drainage piping NPS 8 and larger shall be the following:
  - 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
  
- C. Underground storm drainage piping NPS 6 and smaller shall be the following:
  - 1. Extra Heavy class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
  
- D. Underground, storm drainage piping NPS 8 and larger shall be the following:
  - 1. Extra Heavy class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

END OF SECTION 221413

## SECTION 221423 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Metal roof drains.
- 2. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.
- 3. Cleanouts.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for penetrations of roofs.
- 2. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping roof penetrations.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 METAL ROOF DRAINS

- A. Cast-Iron, Large-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. Wade; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.

- e. WATTS.
  - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.4.
  3. Body Material: Cast iron.
  4. Dimension of Body: Nominal 14-to 16-inch diameter.
  5. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Not required.
  6. Flow-Control Weirs: Not required.
  7. Outlet: Bottom.
  8. Outlet Type: No hub.
  9. Extension Collars: Not required.
  10. Underdeck Clamp: Required.
  11. Expansion Joint: Not required.
  12. Dome Material: Cast iron.
  13. Perforated Gravel Guard: Not required.
  14. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required.
  15. Water Dam: Not required.

B. Cast-Iron, Large-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Overflow Drains:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. Wade; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.
  - e. WATTS.
  - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.4.
3. Body Material: Cast iron.
4. Dimension of Body: Nominal 14-to 16-inch diameter.
5. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Not required.
6. Flow-Control Weirs: Not required.
7. Outlet: Bottom.
8. Outlet Type: No hub.
9. Extension Collars: Not required.
10. Underdeck Clamp: Required.
11. Expansion Joint: Not required.
12. Dome Material: Cast iron.
13. Perforated Gravel Guard: Not required.
14. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required.
15. Water Dam: 2 inches high.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Downspout Boots:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. J.R. Hoe & Sons Inc.
  - b. Neenah Foundry Company.
2. Description: Manufactured, ASTM A 48/A 48M, gray-iron casting, with strap or ears for attaching to building; NPS 4 outlet; and shop-applied bituminous coating.
3. Size: Inlet size to match downspout and NPS 4 outlet.

## 2.3 CLEANOUTS

### A. Cast-Iron Exposed Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. Wade; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.
  - e. WATTS.
  - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Body Material: No-hub, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk, cast-iron plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as, or not more than, one size smaller than cleanout size.

### B. Cast-Iron Exposed Floor Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - d. Wade; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.
  - e. WATTS.
  - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Type: Heavy-duty, adjustable housing.
5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
6. Clamping Device: Not required.
7. Outlet Connection: Threaded.

8. Closure: Cast-iron plug.
9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Polished bronze.
11. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
12. Top Loading Classification: Extra-Heavy Duty.
13. Riser: ASTM A 74, Extra-Heavy class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

C. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. Wade; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.
  - e. WATTS.
  - f. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body: No-hub, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure Plug:
  - a. Cast iron.
  - b. Countersunk head.
  - c. Drilled and threaded for cover attachment screw.
  - d. Size: Same as, or not more than, one size smaller than cleanout size.
6. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel cover plate with screw.
7. Wall Access: Round, nickel-bronze, copper-alloy, or stainless-steel wall-installation frame and cover.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions.
  1. Install flashing collar or flange of roof drain to prevent leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
  2. Install expansion joints, if indicated, in roof drain outlets.
  3. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.
- B. Install downspout boots at grade with top 6 inches above grade. Secure to building wall.

- C. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following instructions unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Use cleanouts the same size as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
  - 2. Locate cleanouts at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
  - 3. Locate cleanouts at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
  - 4. Locate cleanouts at base of each vertical storm piping conductor.
- D. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- E. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- F. Install test tees in vertical conductors and near floor.
- G. Install wall cleanouts in vertical conductors. Install access door in wall if indicated.
- H. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies for penetrations of fire- and smoke-rated assemblies.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221413 "Facility Storm Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

### 3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece of metal unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 221423

## SECTION 223300 - ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Commercial, electric, storage, domestic-water heaters.
  - 2. Domestic-water heater accessories.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of domestic-water heater indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Seismic Qualification Data: For commercial domestic-water heaters, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
  - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of commercial, electric, domestic-water heater, from manufacturer.
- C. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

- F. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric, domestic-water heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASME Compliance: Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- C. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61 Annex G, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects."

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of electric, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
    - b. Faulty operation of controls.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
  - 2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.
    - a. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
      - 1) Storage Tank: Three years.
      - 2) Controls and Other Components: Three years.
    - b. Compression Tanks: Five years.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COMMERCIAL, ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

- A. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
    - b. Cemline Corporation.
    - c. Lochinvar, LLC.
    - d. PVI; A WATTS Brand.
    - e. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
    - f. State Industries.
  2. Standard: UL 1453.
  3. Storage-Tank Construction: Non-ASME-code, steel vertical arrangement.
    - a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank and piping connections. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
      - 1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
      - 2) NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
    - c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 Annex G barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
  4. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
    - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
    - b. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
    - c. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
    - d. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
    - e. Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in or bolt-on immersion type arranged in multiples of three.
    - f. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
    - g. Safety Controls: High-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
    - h. Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
  5. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.

## 2.2 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

### A. Domestic-Water Compression Tanks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. A. O. Smith Corporation.
  - b. AMTROL, Inc.
  - c. State Industries.
  - d. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
2. Description: Steel pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
3. Construction:
  - a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
  - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 Annex G barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
  - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
4. Capacity and Characteristics:
  - a. Working-Pressure Rating: 100 psig.
  - b. Capacity Acceptable: 7 gal. minimum.

B. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Comply with ANSI/CSA LC 3. Include dimensions not less than base of domestic-water heater, and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4 with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads or with ASME B1.20.7 garden-hose threads.

C. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

D. Heat-Trap Fittings: ASHRAE 90.2.

E. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

F. Vacuum Relief Valves: ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Hydrostatically test commercial domestic-water heaters to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.

B. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting

and reinspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.

- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Commercial, Electric, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters on concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete bases specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 1. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
  - 2. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
  - 3. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  - 4. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 5. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 6. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 7. Anchor domestic-water heaters to substrate.
- B. Install electric, domestic-water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
  - 1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- C. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters without storage. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.
- D. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- E. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- F. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.

- G. Fill electric, domestic-water heaters with water.
- H. Charge domestic-water compression tanks with air.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to electric, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
  - 2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters.

END OF SECTION 223300

## SECTION 224213.13 - COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Water closets.
  - 2. Flushometer valves.
  - 3. Toilet seats.
  - 4. Supports.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Effective Flush Volume: Average of two reduced flushes and one full flush per fixture.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for water closets.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than six of each type.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 WALL-MOUNTED WATER CLOSETS

#### A. Water Closets: Wall mounted, top spud, accessible.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Standard.
  - b. Kohler Co.
  - c. Sloan Valve Company.
  - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Bowl:
  - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
  - b. Material: Vitreous china.
  - c. Type: Siphon jet.
  - d. Style: Flushometer valve.
  - e. Height: Standard.
  - f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
  - g. Water Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
  - h. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2; top.
3. Water-Closet Mounting Height: Handicapped/elderly according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

#### B. Water Closets: Wall mounted, top spud, standard.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Standard.
  - b. Kohler Co.
  - c. Sloan Valve Company.
  - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Bowl:
  - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
  - b. Material: Vitreous china.
  - c. Type: Siphon jet.
  - d. Style: Flushometer valve.
  - e. Height: Standard.
  - f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
  - g. Water Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.

h. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2; top.

C. Water-Closet Mounting Height: Standard

## 2.2 FLUSHOMETER VALVES

A. Lever-Handle, Piston Flushometer Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Delany Products.
  - b. Sloan Valve Company.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
7. Panel Finish: Chrome plated or stainless steel.
8. Style: Exposed.
9. Consumption: 1.28 gal. per flush.
10. Minimum Inlet: NPS 1.
11. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4.

## 2.3 TOILET SEATS

A. Toilet Seats:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Bemis Manufacturing Company.
  - b. Centoco Manufacturing Corporation.
  - c. Kohler Co.
  - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.5.
3. Material: Plastic.
4. Type: Commercial (Heavy duty).
5. Shape: Elongated rim, open front.
6. Hinge: Self-sustaining, check.
7. Hinge Material: Noncorroding metal.
8. Seat Cover: Not required.
9. Color: White.

## 2.4 SUPPORTS

### A. Water Closet Carrier:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.
3. Description: Waste-fitting assembly, as required to match drainage piping material and arrangement with faceplates, couplings gaskets, and feet; bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include additional extension coupling, faceplate, and feet for installation in wide pipe space.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before water-closet installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where water closets will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

#### A. Water-Closet Installation:

1. Install level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install accessible, wall-mounted water closets at mounting height for handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

#### B. Support Installation:

1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for floor-mounted, back-outlet water closets.
2. Use carrier supports with waste-fitting assembly and seal.
3. Install wall-mounted, back-outlet water-closet supports with waste-fitting assembly and waste-fitting seals; and affix to building substrate.

#### C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

1. Install flushometer-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet.
2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible water closets with handle mounted on open side of water closet.

4. Install actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
- D. Install toilet seats on water closets.
- E. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:
  1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
  2. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- F. Joint Sealing:
  1. Seal joints between water closets and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
  2. Match sealant color to water-closet color.
  3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect water closets with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match water closets.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to water closets, allow space for service and maintenance.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust water closets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning water closets, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean water closets and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- B. Install protective covering for installed water closets and fittings.
- C. Do not allow use of water closets for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224213.13

## SECTION 224213.16 - COMMERCIAL URINALS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Urinals.
  - 2. Flushometer valves.
  - 3. Supports.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for urinals.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than six of each type.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 WALL-HUNG URINALS

#### A. Urinals: Wall hung, back outlet, washout.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Standard.
  - b. Kohler Co.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Fixture:
  - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
  - b. Material: Vitreous china.
  - c. Type: Washout with extended shields.
  - d. Strainer or Trapway: Manufacturer's standard strainer with integral trap.
  - e. Water Consumption: Low.
  - f. Spud Size and Location: NPS 3/4, top.
  - g. Outlet Size and Location: NPS 2, back.
  - h. Color: White.
3. Waste Fitting:
  - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2 for coupling.
  - b. Size: NPS 2.
4. Support: Type I Urinal Carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include rectangular, steel uprights..
5. Urinal Mounting Height: Standard.

#### B. Urinals: Wall hung, back outlet, washout, accessible.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Standard.
  - b. Kohler Co.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Fixture:
  - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
  - b. Material: Vitreous china.
  - c. Type: Washout with extended shields.
  - d. Strainer or Trapway: Manufacturer's standard strainer with integral trap.
  - e. Water Consumption: Low.
  - f. Spud Size and Location: NPS 3/4, top.

- g. Outlet Size and Location: NPS 2, back.
    - h. Color: White.
  - 3. Waste Fitting:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2 for coupling.
    - b. Size: NPS 2.
  - 4. Support: Type I Urinal Carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include rectangular, steel uprights..
- C. Urinal Mounting Height: Handicapped/elderly according to ICC A117.1.

## 2.2 URINAL FLUSHOMETER VALVES

### A. Lever-Handle, Piston Flushometer Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Delany Products.
  - b. Sloan Valve Company.
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
7. Panel Finish: Chrome plated or stainless steel.
8. Style: Exposed.
9. Consumption: 0.5 gal. per flush.
10. Minimum Inlet: NPS 3/4.
11. Minimum Outlet: NPS 3/4.

## 2.3 SUPPORTS

### A. Type I Urinal Carrier:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. WATTS.
  - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before urinal installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where urinals will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

#### A. Urinal Installation:

1. Install urinals level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install wall-hung, back-outlet urinals onto waste fitting seals and attached to supports.
3. Install accessible, wall-mounted urinals at mounting height for the handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

#### B. Support Installation:

1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung urinals.
2. Use off-floor carriers with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet urinals.
3. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible urinals.

#### C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

1. Install flushometer-valve water-supply fitting on each supply to each urinal.
2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible urinals with handle mounted on open side of compartment.

#### D. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations.
2. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

#### E. Joint Sealing:

1. Seal joints between urinals and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
2. Match sealant color to urinal color.
3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect urinals with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match urinals.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to urinals, allow space for service and maintenance.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust urinals and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning urinals, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean urinals and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- B. Install protective covering for installed urinals and fittings.
- C. Do not allow use of urinals for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224213.16

## SECTION 224216.13 - COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Lavatories.
2. Faucets.
3. Supply fittings.
4. Waste fittings.
5. Supports.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for lavatories.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring of automatic faucets.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lavatories and faucets to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 VITREOUS-CHINA, COUNTER-MOUNTED LAVATORIES

#### A. Lavatory: Oval, vitreous china, undercounter mounted.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Standard.
  - b. Kohler Co.
  - c. Sloan Valve Company.
  - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Fixture:
  - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
  - b. Type: For undercounter mounting.
  - c. Nominal Size: Oval, 19 by 16 inches.
  - d. Faucet-Hole Punching: No holes.
  - e. Faucet-Hole Location: On countertop.
  - f. Color: White.
  - g. Mounting Material: Sealant and undercounter mounting kit.

### 2.2 VITREOUS-CHINA, WALL-MOUNTED LAVATORIES

#### A. Lavatory: Vitreous china, wall mounted, with back.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Standard.
  - b. Kohler Co.
  - c. Sloan Valve Company.
  - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Fixture:
  - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
  - b. Type: For wall hanging.
  - c. Nominal Size: Oval, 20-3/4 by 18-1/4 inches.
  - d. Faucet-Hole Punching: Three holes, 2-inch centers.
  - e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
  - f. Color: White.

- g. Mounting Material: Chair carrier.
- 3. Support: Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier. Include rectangular, steel uprights.
- 4. Lavatory Mounting Height: Handicapped/elderly according to ICC A117.1.

## 2.3 SOLID-BRASS, MANUALLY OPERATED FAUCETS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for faucet materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Lavatory Faucets: Manual-type, two-handle mixing, commercial, solid-brass valve.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Chicago Faucets; Geberit Company.
    - b. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
    - c. Just Manufacturing.
    - d. T&S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
    - e. Zurn Industries, LLC.
  - 2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
  - 3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
  - 4. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
  - 5. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
  - 6. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm.
  - 7. Mounting Type: Deck, exposed.
  - 8. Valve Handle(s): Wrist blade, 4 inches.
  - 9. Spout: Rigid type.
  - 10. Spout Outlet: Aerator.

## 2.4 SUPPLY FITTINGS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
- C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
- D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.
- E. Operation: Loose key.
- F. Risers:
  - 1. NPS 3/8.
  - 2. ASME A112.18.6, braided- or corrugated-stainless-steel, flexible hose riser.

## 2.5 WASTE FITTINGS

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 offset and straight tailpiece.
- C. Trap:
  - 1. Size: NPS 1-1/2 by NPS 1-1/4.
  - 2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and ground-joint swivel elbow with 0.032-inch-thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated, brass or steel wall flange.
  - 3. Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch-thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.

## 2.6 SUPPORTS

- A. Type II Lavatory Carrier:
  - 1. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before lavatory installation.
- B. Examine counters and walls for suitable conditions where lavatories will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install lavatories level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.
- C. Install accessible wall-mounted lavatories at handicapped/elderly mounting height for people with disabilities or the elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- D. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Seal joints between lavatories, counters, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

- F. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust lavatories and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning lavatories, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of lavatories, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean lavatories, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed lavatories and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of lavatories for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224216.13

## SECTION 224216.16 - COMMERCIAL SINKS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Service basins.
2. Sink faucets.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for sinks.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics and furnished specialties and accessories.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sinks to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SERVICE BASINS

- A. Service Basins <Insert drawing designation>: Terrazzo, floor mounted.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
    - b. Florestone Products Co., Inc.
    - c. Stern-Williams Co., Inc.
  2. Fixture:
    - a. Standard: IAPMO PS 99.
    - b. Shape: Square.
    - c. Nominal Size: 24 by 24 inches.
    - d. Height: 10 inches.
    - e. Tiling Flange: Not required.
    - f. Rim Guard: On front top surfaces.
    - g. Color: Not applicable.
    - h. Drain: Grid with NPS 3 outlet.
  3. Mounting: On floor and flush to wall.

### 2.2 SINK FAUCETS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for faucet-spout materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Sink Faucets: Manual type, two lever handle mixing valve.
1. Commercial, Solid-Brass Faucets <Insert faucet designation>:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Chicago Faucets; Geberit Company.
      - 2) Elkay Manufacturing Co.
      - 3) Just Manufacturing.
      - 4) Sloan Valve Company.
      - 5) T&S Brass and Bronze Works, Inc.
      - 6) Zurn Industries, LLC.
    2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
    3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.
    4. Body Type: [Centerset] [Widespread] [Single hole] <Insert type>.
    5. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.

6. Finish: Chrome plated.
7. Maximum Flow Rate: 2.2 gpm.
8. Handle(s): Lever.
9. Mounting Type: Back/wall, exposed.
10. Spout Type: Rigid, solid brass with wall brace.
11. Vacuum Breaker: Required for hose outlet.
12. Spout Outlet: Hose thread according to ASME B1.20.7.

### 2.3 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before sink installation.
- B. Examine walls, floors, and counters for suitable conditions where sinks will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install sinks level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.
- C. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- D. Seal joints between sinks and counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

- B. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

#### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust sinks and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning sinks, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

#### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of sinks, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean sinks, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed sinks and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of sinks for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224216.16

## SECTION 224223 - COMMERCIAL SHOWERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Shower faucets.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for showers.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For shower faucets to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
  - 2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SHOWER FAUCETS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61 Annex G, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for shower materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Shower Faucets <Insert drawing designation>:
- C. Shower Faucets:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Chicago Faucets; Geberit Company.
    - b. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
    - c. Leonard Valve Company.
    - d. Moen Incorporated.
    - e. Powers.
    - f. Sloan Valve Company.
    - g. Zurn Industries, LLC.
  - 2. Description: Single-handle, pressure-balance mixing valve with hot- and cold-water indicators; check stops; and shower head.
  - 3. Faucet:
    - a. Standards: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and ASSE 1016.
    - b. Body Material: Solid brass.
    - c. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
    - d. Maximum Flow Rate: 2.5 gpm.
    - e. Mounting: Concealed.
    - f. Operation: Single-handle, push-pull or twist or rotate control.
    - g. Antiscald Device: Integral with mixing valve.
    - h. Check Stops: Check-valve type, integral with or attached to body; on hot- and cold-water supply connections.
  - 4. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2.
  - 5. Shower Head:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
    - b. Type: Hand held shower unit with pressure compensated flowrate.
    - c. 69" vinyl hose and 48" slide bar
    - d. Shower Head Material: Metallic with chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Spray Pattern: Adjustable.
    - f. Integral Volume Control: Not required.
    - g. Shower-Arm, Flow-Control Fitting: 1.5 gpm.
    - h. Temperature Indicator: Not required.

## 2.2 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before shower installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where showers will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble shower components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Install showers level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- C. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each shower faucet.
  - 1. Exception: Use ball valves if supply stops are not specified with shower. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  - 2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
- D. Install shower flow-control fittings with specified maximum flow rates in shower arms.
- E. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Comply with escutcheons requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

- C. Comply with traps and soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

#### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust showers and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning showers, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

#### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of showers, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean showers, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of showers for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224223

## SECTION 224500 - EMERGENCY PLUMBING FIXTURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Eye/face wash equipment.
  - 2. Combination units.
  - 3. Water-tempering equipment.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Accessible Fixture: Emergency plumbing fixture that can be approached, entered, and used by people with disabilities.
- B. Plumbed Emergency Plumbing Fixture: Fixture with fixed, potable-water supply.
- C. Self-Contained Emergency Plumbing Fixture: Fixture with flushing-fluid-solution supply.
- D. Tepid: Moderately warm.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include flow rates and capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: Submit certificates of performance testing specified in "Source Quality Control" Article.

- B. Field quality-control test reports.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For emergency plumbing fixtures to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ISEA Standard: Comply with ISEA Z358.1.
- C. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372, for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.

### 2.2 EYE/FACE WASH EQUIPMENT

- A. Standard, Wall-Mounted, Plumbed Eye/Face Wash Units:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Acorn Safety.
    - b. Bradley Corporation.
    - c. Guardian Equipment Co.
    - d. Haws Corporation.
  - 2. Capacity: Not less than 3.0 gpm for at least 15 minutes.
  - 3. Supply Piping: NPS 1/2 chrome-plated brass or stainless steel with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
  - 4. Control-Valve Actuator: Paddle.
  - 5. Spray-Head Assembly: Two or four receptor-mounted spray heads.
  - 6. Receptor: Chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel bowl.
  - 7. Drain Piping:
    - a. Size: NPS 1-1/4 minimum.
    - b. Finish: Chrome-plated brass.
    - c. Fittings: Receptor drain, P-trap, waste to wall, and wall flange complying with ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
  - 8. Mounting: Wall bracket.

## 2.3 COMBINATION UNITS

### A. Standard, Plumbed Emergency Shower with Eyewash Combination Units,:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Acorn Safety.
  - b. Bradley Corporation.
  - c. Guardian Equipment Co.
  - d. Haws Corporation.
2. Piping:
  - a. Material: Chrome-plated brass or stainless steel.
  - b. Unit Supply: NPS 1-1/4 minimum.
  - c. Unit Drain: Outlet at front minimum 20-inches from floor.
3. Shower:
  - a. Capacity: Not less than 20 gpm for at least 15 minutes.
  - b. Supply Piping: NPS 1 with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
  - c. Control-Valve Actuator: Pull rod.
  - d. Shower Head: 8-inch-minimum diameter, chrome-plated brass or stainless steel.
  - e. Mounting: Pedestal.
4. Eyewash Unit:
  - a. Capacity: Not less than 0.4 gpm for at least 15 minutes.
  - b. Supply Piping: NPS 1/2 with flow regulator and stay-open control valve.
  - c. Control-Valve Actuator: Paddle.
  - d. Spray-Head Assembly: Two receptor-mounted spray heads.
  - e. Receptor: Chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel bowl.
  - f. Mounting: Attached shower pedestal.
  - g. Drench-Hose Option: May be provided instead of eyewash unit.
    - 1) Capacity: Not less than 0.4 gpm for at least 15 minutes.
    - 2) Drench Hose: Hand-held spray head with squeeze-handle actuator and hose.
    - 3) Mounting: Bracket on shower pedestal.

## 2.4 WATER-TEMPERING EQUIPMENT

### A. Hot- and Cold-Water, Water-Tempering Equipment,:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Acorn Safety.
  - b. Bradley Corporation.
  - c. Guardian Equipment Co.

- d. Haws Corporation.
  - e. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - f. Leonard Valve Company.
  - g. POWERS; A WATTS Brand.
  - h. WATTS.
2. Description: Factory-fabricated equipment with thermostatic mixing valve.
- a. Thermostatic Mixing Valve: Designed to provide 85 deg F tepid, potable water at emergency plumbing fixtures, to maintain temperature at plus or minus 5 deg F throughout required 15-minute test period, and in case of unit failure to continue cold-water flow, with union connections, controls, metal piping, and corrosion-resistant enclosure.
  - b. Supply Connections: For hot and cold water.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for water and waste piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before plumbed emergency plumbing fixture installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EMERGENCY PLUMBING FIXTURE INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble emergency plumbing fixture piping, fittings, control valves, and other components.
- B. Install fixtures level and plumb.
- C. Fasten fixtures to substrate.
- D. Install shutoff valves in water-supply piping to fixtures, to facilitate maintenance of the equipment. Use ball valve if specific type valve is not indicated. Install valves chained or locked in open position if permitted. Install valves in locations where they can easily be reached for operation. Comply with requirements for valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  1. Exception: Omit shutoff valve on supply to group of plumbing fixtures that includes emergency equipment.
  2. Exception: Omit shutoff valve on supply to emergency equipment if prohibited by authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Install dielectric fitting in supply piping to emergency equipment if piping and equipment connections are made of different metals. Comply with requirements for dielectric fittings specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

- F. Install thermometers in supply and outlet piping connections to water-tempering equipment. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- G. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of emergency equipment receptors that are indicated to be directly connected to drainage system. Comply with requirements for waste piping specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- H. Install indirect waste piping on drain outlet of emergency equipment receptors that are indicated to be indirectly connected to drainage system. Comply with requirements for waste piping specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- I. Install escutcheons on piping wall and ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect hot- and cold-water-supply piping to hot- and cold-water, water-tempering equipment. Connect output from water-tempering equipment to emergency plumbing fixtures. Comply with requirements for hot- and cold-water piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- B. Directly connect emergency plumbing fixture receptors with trapped drain outlet to sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for waste piping specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- C. Indirectly connect emergency plumbing fixture receptors without trapped drain outlet to sanitary waste drainage piping.
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to emergency plumbing fixtures, allow space for service and maintenance of fixtures.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install equipment nameplates or equipment markers on emergency plumbing fixtures and equipment and equipment signs on water-tempering equipment. Comply with requirements for identification materials specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Mechanical-Component Testing: After plumbing connections have been made, test for compliance with requirements. Verify ability to achieve indicated capacities.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection.

2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
  4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Emergency plumbing fixtures and water-tempering equipment will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace fixture flow regulators for proper flow.
- B. Adjust equipment temperature settings.

END OF SECTION 224500

## SECTION 224716 - PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes pressure water coolers and related components.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of pressure water cooler.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For pressure water coolers to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Filter Cartridges: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each type and size indicated, but no fewer than 2 of each.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

- A. Pressure Water Coolers <Insert drawing designation>: Recessed.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Elkay Manufacturing Co.
  - b. Halsey Taylor.
  - c. Haws Corporation.
2. Standards:
  - a. Comply with NSF 61 Annex G.
  - b. Comply with ASHRAE 34, "Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants," for water coolers. Provide HFC 134a (tetrafluoroethane) refrigerant unless otherwise indicated.
3. Cabinet: All stainless steel.
4. Bubbler: One, with adjustable stream regulator, located on deck.
5. Control: Push button.
6. Drain: Grid with NPS 1-1/4 tailpiece.
7. Supply: NPS 3/8 with shutoff valve.
8. Waste Fitting: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, NPS 1-1/4 brass P-trap.
9. Filter: One or more water filters complying with NSF 42 and NSF 53 for cyst and lead reduction to below EPA standards; with capacity sized for unit peak flow rate.
10. Cooling System: Electric, with hermetically sealed compressor, cooling coil, air-cooled condensing unit, corrosion-resistant tubing, refrigerant, corrosion-resistant-metal storage tank, and adjustable thermostat.
  - a. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
11. Capacities and Characteristics:
  - a. Cooled Water: 8 gph.
  - b. Ambient-Air Temperature: 90 deg F.
  - c. Inlet-Water Temperature: 80 deg F
  - d. Cooled-Water Temperature: 50 deg F.
12. Ventilation Grille: Stainless steel, located below water cooler.
13. Support: Mounting frame for attaching to substrate.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.

- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings. For fixtures indicated for children, install at height required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install mounting frames, affixed to building construction, and attach recessed, pressure water coolers to mounting frames.
- C. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to domestic-water distribution piping. Use ball valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation. Valves are specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- D. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.
- E. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- F. Seal joints between fixtures and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Install ball shutoff valve on water supply to each fixture. Install valve upstream from filter for water cooler. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- D. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.
- B. Adjust pressure water-cooler temperature settings.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. After installing fixture, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
- B. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures.
- D. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224716

## SECTION 230513 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
  - 1. Motor controllers.
  - 2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
  - 4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

#### 2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

## 2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Premium efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
- E. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- F. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- G. Insulation: Class F.
- H. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
  - 2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- I. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

## 2.4 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
  - 1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width-modulated inverters.
  - 2. Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
  - 3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
  - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
  - 5. Motor Shaft Grounding Rings: Conductive microfiber shaft grounding rings to redirect shaft current to protect motor bearings.
- B. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

## 2.5 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - 2. Split phase.
  - 3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
  - 4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.

- B. Bearings: Prelubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- C. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.
- D. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 230513

## SECTION 230516 - EXPANSION FITTINGS AND LOOPS FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Alignment guides and anchors.
  - 2. Pipe loops and swing connections.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For expansion joints to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe and Pressure-Vessel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Compatibility: Products shall be suitable for piping service fluids, materials, working pressures, and temperatures.

- B. Capability: Products to absorb 200 percent of maximum axial movement between anchors.

## 2.2 ALIGNMENT GUIDES AND ANCHORS

### A. Alignment Guides:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
  - b. Flex-Weld, Inc.
  - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - d. Metraflex Company (The).
2. Description: Steel, factory-fabricated alignment guide, with bolted two-section outer cylinder and base for attaching to structure; with two-section guiding slider for bolting to pipe.

### B. Anchor Materials:

1. Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
2. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.10 or ASTM A 183, steel hex head.
3. Washers: ASTM F 844, steel, plain, flat washers.
4. Mechanical Fasteners: Insert-wedge-type stud with expansion plug anchor for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
  - a. Stud: Threaded, zinc-coated carbon steel.
  - b. Expansion Plug: Zinc-coated steel.
  - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.
5. Chemical Fasteners: Insert-type stud, bonding-system anchor for use with hardened portland cement concrete, with tension and shear capacities appropriate for application.
  - a. Bonding Material: ASTM C 881/C 881M, Type IV, Grade 3, two-component epoxy resin suitable for surface temperature of hardened concrete where fastener is to be installed.
  - b. Stud: ASTM A 307, zinc-coated carbon steel with continuous thread on stud, unless otherwise indicated.
  - c. Washer and Nut: Zinc-coated steel.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PIPE LOOP AND SWING CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Connect risers and branch connections to mains with at least five pipe fittings, including tee in main.

- B. Connect risers and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in riser.
- C. Connect mains and branch connections to terminal units with at least four pipe fittings, including tee in main.

### 3.2 ALIGNMENT-GUIDE AND ANCHOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install alignment guides to guide expansion and to avoid end-loading and torsional stress.
- B. Install guide(s) on each side of pipe expansion fittings and loops. Install guides nearest to expansion joint not more than four pipe diameters from expansion joint.
- C. Attach guides to pipe, and secure guides to building structure.
- D. Install anchors at locations to prevent stresses from exceeding those permitted by ASME B31.9 and to prevent transfer of loading and stresses to connected equipment.
- E. Anchor Attachments:
  - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Pipe: Attach by welding. Comply with ASME B31.9 and ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  - 2. Anchor Attachment to Copper Tubing: Attach with pipe hangers. Use MSS SP-69, Type 24; U bolts bolted to anchor.
- F. Fabricate and install steel anchors by welding steel shapes, plates, and bars. Comply with ASME B31.9 and AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
  - 1. Anchor Attachment to Steel Structural Members: Attach by welding.
  - 2. Anchor Attachment to Concrete Structural Members: Attach by fasteners. Follow fastener manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Use grout to form flat bearing surfaces for guides and anchors attached to concrete.

END OF SECTION 230516

## SECTION 230517 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves.
2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves – New Construction: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, anti-corrosion coated or zinc coated, with plain ends and integral welded waterstop collar.

- B. Steel Pipe Sleeves – Existing Construction: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, anti-corrosion coated or zinc coated, with plain.

## 2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co.
  - 2. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- B. Description: Manufactured, Dura-coated or Duco-coated cast-iron sleeve with integral cast flashing flange for use in waterproof floors and roofs. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
  - 3. GPT; an EnPro Industries company.
  - 4. Metraflex Company (The).
  - 5. Proco Products, Inc.
- B. Description:
  - 1. Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly, made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall.
  - 2. Plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

## 2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink, recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in nonfire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
  - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - 2. Using grout, seal space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- E. Fire-Resistance-Rated Penetrations, Horizontal Assembly Penetrations, and Smoke-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping and fill materials specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
  - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
  - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
  - 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 3 inches above finished floor level.
  - 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  - 5. Using waterproof silicone sealant, seal space between top hub of stack-sleeve fitting and pipe.

- B. Fire-Resistance-Rated, Horizontal Assembly, and Smoke Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire or smoke rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with fire- and smoke-stop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal-system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
- B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

### 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
  - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls Above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
  - 2. Concrete Slabs Above Grade:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.
  - 3. Interior Partitions:
    - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves.
    - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves.

END OF SECTION 230517

## SECTION 230518 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing Piping to Remain: Existing piping that is not to be removed and that is not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by the following] [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
  - 1. BrassCraft Manufacturing Co.; a Masco company.
  - 2. Dearborn Brass.
  - 3. Jones Stephens Corp.
  - 4. Keeney Manufacturing Company (The).

#### 2.2 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.

- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped steel with polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish; concealed and exposed-rivet hinge; and spring-clip fasteners.

## 2.3 FLOOR PLATES

- A. Split Floor Plates: Steel with concealed hinge.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep pattern.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece steel with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece stamped steel or split-plate, stamped steel with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped steel with exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - 2. Escutcheons for Existing Piping to Remain:
    - a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.

- d. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - e. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
  - f. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped steel with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge with polished, chrome-plated finish.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
- 1. New Piping and Relocated Existing Piping: Split floor plate.
  - 2. Existing Piping to Remain: Split floor plate.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Using new materials, replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates.

END OF SECTION 230518

## SECTION 230519 - METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
  - 2. Duct-thermometer mounting brackets.
  - 3. Thermowells.
  - 4. Dial-type pressure gages.
  - 5. Gage attachments.
  - 6. Test plugs.
  - 7. Test-plug kits.
  - 8. Thermal-energy meters.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

#### A. Metal-Case, Industrial-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Terrice, H. O. Co.
2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Cast aluminum; 9-inch nominal size.
4. Case Form: Back angle unless otherwise indicated.
5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
7. Window: Glass or plastic.
8. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
  - a. Design for Air-Duct Installation: With ventilated shroud.
  - b. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
9. Connector: 3/4 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

### 2.2 DUCT-THERMOMETER MOUNTING BRACKETS

- #### A. Description: Flanged bracket with screw holes, for attachment to air duct and made to hold thermometer stem.

### 2.3 THERMOWELLS

#### A. Thermowells:

1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion in piping tee fitting.
3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES.
5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.

11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

## 2.4 DIAL-TYPE PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ashcroft Inc.
  - b. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
  - c. Trerice, H. O. Co.
  - d. WATTS.
  - e. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Sealed type; cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Ring: Stainless steel.
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

## 2.5 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Valves: Brass ball, with NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

## 2.6 TEST PLUGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Flow Design, Inc.
  2. Trerice, H. O. Co.
  3. WATTS.
  4. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

- B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion in piping tee fitting.
- C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- D. Thread Size: NPS 1/4, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.
- F. Core Inserts: EPDM self-sealing rubber.

## 2.7 TEST-PLUG KITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Flow Design, Inc.
  - 2. Trerice, H. O. Co.
  - 3. WATTS.
  - 4. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
- B. Furnish one test-plug kit(s) containing one thermometer, one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
- C. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F.
- D. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch- diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig.
- E. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

## 2.8 THERMAL-ENERGY METERS

- A. Impeller-Turbine, Thermal-Energy Meters:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ONICON Incorporated.
    - b. Sierra Instruments.
    - c. Toshiba.
  - 2. Description: System with strainer, flow sensor, temperature sensors, transmitter, indicator, and connecting wiring.

3. Flow Sensor: Impeller turbine with corrosion-resistant-metal body and transmitter; for installing in piping.
  - a. Design: Total thermal-energy measurement.
  - b. Minimum Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
  - c. Minimum Temperature Range: 40 to 250 deg F.
4. Temperature Sensors: Insertion-type transducer.
5. Indicator: Solid-state, integrating-type meter; for wall mounting.
  - a. Data Output: Six-digit electromechanical counter with readout in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units.
  - b. Battery Pack: Five-year lithium battery.
6. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent.
7. Display: Visually indicates total fluid volume in gallons and thermal-energy flow in kilowatts per hour or British thermal units.
8. Strainer: Full size of main line piping.
9. Operating Instructions: Include complete instructions with each thermal-energy meter system.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending to center of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install duct-thermometer mounting brackets in walls of ducts. Attach to duct with screws.
- G. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- H. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids (except steam).
- I. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- J. Mount thermal-energy meters on wall if accessible; if not, provide brackets to support meters.
- K. Install thermometers in the following locations:

1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler.
2. Two inlets and two outlets of each chiller.
3. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units.
4. Outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts.

L. Install pressure gages in the following locations:

1. Discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
2. Inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water and condenser-water connection.
3. Suction and discharge of each pump.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow space for service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.
- B. Connect thermal-energy meter transmitters to meters.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

### 3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler shall be the following:
  1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- B. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each chiller shall be the following:
  1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- C. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units and built-up central systems shall be the following:
  1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- D. Thermometers at inlets and outlets of each hydronic heat terminal unit coil shall be the following:
  1. Test plug with EPDM self-sealing rubber inserts.
- E. Thermometers at outside-, return-, supply-, and mixed-air ducts shall be the following:
  1. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- F. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

### 3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F.

- B. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 150 deg F.
- C. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 250 deg F.
- D. Scale Range for Air Ducts: Minus 40 to plus 110 deg F.

### 3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each chiller chilled-water and condenser-water connection shall be the following:
  - 1. Sealed, direct-mounted, metal case.
- B. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each pump shall be the following:
  - 1. Sealed, direct-mounted, metal case.

### 3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Chilled-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.
- B. Scale Range for Condenser-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.
- C. Scale Range for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.

### 3.8 THERMAL-ENERGY METER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermal-Energy Meters for Chilled-Water Piping: Impeller-turbine type.
- B. Thermal-Energy Meters for Condenser-Water Piping: Impeller-turbine type.
- C. Thermal-Energy Meters for Heating, Hot-Water Piping: Impeller-turbine type.

END OF SECTION 230519

## SECTION 230523.11 - GLOBE VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Bronze globe valves.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
  - 3. Set angle and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
- C. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- D. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- E. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions.

### 2.2 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

- A. Bronze Globe Valves, Class 150:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. Hammond Valve.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - d. WATTS.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
    - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and union-ring bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Threaded.
    - e. Stem: Bronze.
    - f. Disc: Bronze.
    - g. Packing: Asbestos free.
    - h. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

### 3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
  - 1. Throttling Service: Globe valves.
- B. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves with the following end connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.

3.5 MAKE-UP WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze globe valves, Class 150, bronze disc, with threaded ends.

END OF SECTION 230523.11

## SECTION 230523.12 - BALL VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Bronze ball valves.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. SWP: Steam working pressure.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

- 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
- 2. Protect threads.
- 3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.

- B. Use the following precautions during storage:

- 1. Maintain valve end protection.
- 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
- C. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- D. Refer to HVAC valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Valve Actuator Types:
  - 1. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves smaller than NPS 4.
- H. Valves in Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Include 2-inch stem extensions.
  - 2. Extended operating handle of nonthermal-conductive material, and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking the vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.
- I. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

### 2.2 BRONZE BALL VALVES

- A. Bronze Ball Valves, Two-Piece with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. Hammond Valve.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - d. WATTS.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.

- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Full.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

#### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

#### 3.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- B. Select valves with the following end connections:
  - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.

3.4 CHILLED-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze ball valves, two piece, with stainless-steel trim, and full port.

3.5 CONDENSER-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze ball valves, two piece with stainless-steel trim, and full port.

3.6 HEATING-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze ball valves, two piece with stainless-steel trim, and full port.

END OF SECTION 230523.12

## SECTION 230523.13 - BUTTERFLY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
  - 2. Chainwheels.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. SWP: Steam working pressure.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect flange faces.
  - 3. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
  - 2. ASME B16.5 for pipe flanges and flanged fittings, NPS 1/2 through NPS 24.
- C. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- D. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Valve Actuator Types:
  - 1. Gear Actuator: For valves NPS 8 and larger.
  - 2. Handlever: For valves NPS 6 and smaller.
  - 3. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to gear, stem, or other actuator of size and with chain for mounting height, according to "Valve Installation" Article.
- F. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions with extended necks.

### 2.2 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with Stainless-Steel Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. Bray Controls.
    - c. Hammond Valve.
    - d. Jenkins Valves; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
    - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - f. Mueller Steam Specialty; A WATTS Brand.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
    - b. CWP Rating: 150 psig.

- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: EPDM.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Stainless steel.

## 2.3 CHAINWHEELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Babbitt Steam Specialty Co.
  - 2. Roto Hammer Industries.
  - 3. Trumbull Industries.
- B. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, chain guides, chain, and attachment brackets for mounting chainwheels directly to hand wheels.
  - 1. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile iron, of type and size required for valve. Include zinc or epoxy coating.
  - 2. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine mating flange faces for damage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- D. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install chainwheels on operators for butterfly valves NPS 4 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.
- F. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

### 3.4 CHILLED-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
  - 1. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Stainless-steel disc, 200 CWP, and EPDM seat.
  - 2. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 14 to NPS 24: Stainless-steel disc, 150 CWP, and EPDM seat.

### 3.5 CONDENSER-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
  - 1. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Stainless-steel disc, 200 CWP, and EPDM seat.
  - 2. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 14 to NPS 24: Stainless-steel disc, 150 CWP, and EPDM seat.

### 3.6 HEATING-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
  - 1. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Stainless-steel disc, 200 CWP, and EPDM seat.

END OF SECTION 230523.13

## SECTION 230523.14 - CHECK VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  1. Bronze swing check valves.
  2. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
  3. Iron, center-guided check valves.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. SWP: Steam working pressure.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  2. Protect threads, flange faces.
  3. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  1. Maintain valve end protection.
  2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
  - 2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
  - 3. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
- C. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- D. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- E. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

### 2.2 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc, Class 125:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. Crane; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
    - c. Hammond Valve.
    - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - e. WATTS.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
    - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
    - e. Ends: Threaded.
    - f. Disc: Bronze.

## 2.3 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

### A. Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats, Class 125:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. Crane; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
  - c. Hammond Valve.
  - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - e. WATTS.
  
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
  - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
  - d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
  - e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - f. Ends: Flanged.
  - g. Trim: Bronze.
  - h. Gasket: Asbestos free.

## 2.4 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL

### A. Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever and Weight-Closure Control, Class 125:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. Crane; Crane Energy Flow Solutions.
  - c. Hammond Valve.
  - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - e. WATTS.
  
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
  - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
  - d. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
  - e. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - f. Ends: Flanged.
  - g. Trim: Bronze.
  - h. Gasket: Asbestos free.
  - i. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and weight.

## 2.5 IRON, CENTER-GUIDED CHECK VALVES

### A. Iron, Globe, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 125:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Hammond Valve.
  - b. Metraflex Company (The).
  - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - d. Mueller Steam Specialty; A WATTS Brand.
  - e. WATTS.
  
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
  - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 150 psig.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
  - e. Style: Globe, spring loaded.
  - f. Ends: Flanged.
  - g. Seat: Bronze.

### B. Iron, Compact-Wafer, Center-Guided Check Valves with Metal Seat, Class 250:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Hammond Valve.
  - b. Metraflex Company (The).
  - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-125.
  - b. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12, CWP Rating: 400 psig.
  - c. NPS 14 to NPS 24, CWP Rating: 300 psig.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.
  - e. Style: Compact wafer, spring loaded.
  - f. Seat: Bronze.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
  - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
  - 2. Center-Guided Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
  - 3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.
- F. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements for valve tags and schedules in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

### 3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:

1. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
  - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc.
  - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal-seat check valves.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
  1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
  2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends.
  3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
  4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
  5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends.
  6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.

### 3.5 CHILLED-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
  1. Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc, Class 125.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
  1. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight closure control, Class 125.
  2. Iron, compact-wafer or globe, center-guided check valves metal seat, Class 125.

### 3.6 CONDENSER-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
  1. Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc, Class 125.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
  1. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight-closure control, Class 125.
  2. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24: Iron, compact-wafer or globe, center-guided check valves with metal seat, Class 125.

### 3.7 HEATING-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
  1. Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc, Class 125.

B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:

1. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 12: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight-closure control, Class 125.
2. Iron swing check valves with metal seats, Class 125.
3. Iron, compact-wafer or globe, center-guided check valves with metal seat, Class 125.

END OF SECTION 230523.14

## SECTION 230529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
5. Fastener systems.
6. Equipment supports.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
2. Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC" for vibration isolation devices.
3. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
  2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

### 2.2 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coated, or epoxy powder-coated.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-plated steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-plated steel.

### 2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

### 2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. B-line, an Eaton business.
  - b. Flex-Strut Inc.
  - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
  - d. Unistrut; Part of Atkore International.

2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
6. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
7. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
8. Metallic Coating: Pre-galvanized G90.
9. Paint Coating: Green epoxy, acrylic, or urethane.

## 2.5 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. ERICO International Corporation.
  2. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
  3. Pipe Shields Inc.
  4. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psi minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psi minimum compressive strength.
- D. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## 2.6 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. B-line, an Eaton business.
    - b. Hilti, Inc.
    - c. ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.

2. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated or stainless-steel.
3. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

## 2.7 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.

## 2.8 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.9 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B 221.
- B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
- C. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; galvanized.
- D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 240/A 240M.
- E. Threaded Rods: Continuously threaded. Zinc-plated or galvanized steel for indoor applications and stainless steel for outdoor applications. Mating nuts and washers of similar materials as rods.
- F. Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

### 3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled strut systems.
- D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- E. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- M. Insulated Piping:
  - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.

- b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
    - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
    - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
  5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
  6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" and Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings" for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

### 3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.

- H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
  3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
  4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
  5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
  6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
  7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  10. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  11. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
  12. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  13. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  14. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
  3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
  4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.

5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
- M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- N. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
  2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
  3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
  4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.

5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
  6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
  7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
  8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
    - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
    - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
    - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- O. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- P. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 230529

## SECTION 230548.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
3. Open-spring isolators.
4. Housed-spring isolators.
5. Pipe-riser resilient supports.
6. Resilient pipe guides.
7. Air-spring isolators.
8. Restrained-air-spring isolators.
9. Elastomeric hangers.
10. Spring hangers.
11. Vibration isolation equipment bases.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 210548.13 "Vibration Controls for Fire Suppression" for devices for fire-suppression equipment and systems.
2. Section 220548.13 "Vibration Controls for Plumbing" for devices for plumbing equipment and systems.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device type required.

- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation device.

1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation for HVAC piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

C. Welding certificates.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads: .

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
- b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
- c. Mason Industries, Inc.
- d. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.

3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.

4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.

5. Surface Pattern: Waffle pattern.

6. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.

- a. Surface Pattern: Waffle pattern.

## 2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

### A. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts: .

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - d. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Mounting Plates:
  - a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded.
3. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

## 2.3 OPEN-SPRING ISOLATORS

### A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators: .

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - d. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Baseplates: Factory-drilled steel plate for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
7. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

## 2.4 HOUSED-SPRING ISOLATORS

### A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators in Two-Part Telescoping Housing: .

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - d. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators.
  - a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
  - b. Top housing with attachment and leveling bolt.

## 2.5 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

### A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods: <Insert drawing designation>.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - d. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
3. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

## 2.6 SPRING HANGERS

### A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression: .

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
  - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
  - d. Novia; A Division of C&P.
  - e. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
7. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
8. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

## 2.7 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. California Dynamics Corporation.
  2. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
  3. Mason Industries, Inc.
  4. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- B. Concrete Inertia Base: Factory-fabricated or field-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails ready for placement of cast-in-place concrete.
  1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
    - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
  2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
  3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.

4. Fabrication: Fabricate steel templates to hold equipment anchor-bolt sleeves and anchors in place during placement of concrete. Obtain anchor-bolt templates from supported equipment manufacturer.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

#### 3.3 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

END OF SECTION 230548.13

## SECTION 230553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Valve tags.
  - 5. Warning tags.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Brimar Industries, Inc.
    - c. Champion America.

- d. Seton Identification Products.
  2. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  3. Letter Color: Black.
  4. Background Color: White.
  5. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
  6. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  7. Minimum Letter Size: 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
  8. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  9. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Brady Corporation.
  2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  3. National Marker Company.
  4. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- C. Letter Color: White.
- D. Background Color: Red.
- E. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- F. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

- G. Minimum Letter Size: 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
- H. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- I. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- J. Label Content: Include caution and warning information plus emergency notification instructions.

### 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Brady Corporation.
  - 2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  - 3. Champion America.
  - 4. Seton Identification Products.
- B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.
- C. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- D. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- E. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; also include pipe size and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: Size letters according to ASME A13.1 for piping.

### 2.4 VALVE TAGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Brady Corporation.
  - 2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  - 3. Champion America.
  - 4. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Description: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.

1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain or S-hook.
- C. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.5 WARNING TAGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Brady Corporation.
  2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  3. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Description: Preprinted or partially preprinted accident-prevention tags of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
  2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
  3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
  4. Color: Safety-yellow background with black lettering.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  - 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations and on both sides of through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- B. Directional Flow Arrows: Arrows shall be used to indicate direction of flow in pipes, including pipes where flow is allowed in both directions.
- C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
  - 1. Chilled-Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
  - 2. Condenser-Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.
  - 3. Heating Water Piping: White letters on a safety-green background.

### 3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves, valves within factory-fabricated equipment units, shutoff valves, faucets, convenience and lawn-watering hose connections, and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
  - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. Chilled Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
    - b. Condenser Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
    - c. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
    - d. Gas: 1-1/2 inches, round.

2. Valve-Tag Colors:

- a. Flammable Fluids: Black letters on a safety-yellow background.
- b. Potable and Other Water: White letters on a safety-green background.

3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 230553

## SECTION 230593 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Balancing Air Systems:
  - a. Constant-volume air systems.
  - b. Variable-air-volume systems.
- 2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:
  - a. Variable-flow hydronic systems.
- 3. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Equipment:
  - a. Motors.
  - b. Chillers.
  - c. Cooling towers.
  - d. Boilers.
  - e. Heat-transfer coils.
- 4. Testing, adjusting, and balancing existing systems and equipment.
- 5. Sound tests.
- 6. Vibration tests.
- 7. Duct leakage tests.
- 8. Control system verification.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. BAS: Building automation systems.
- C. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- D. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.

- F. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.
- G. TDH: Total dynamic head.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. TAB Conference: If requested by the Owner, conduct a TAB conference at Project site after approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Provide a minimum of 14 days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
  - 1. Minimum Agenda Items:
    - a. The Contract Documents examination report.
    - b. The TAB plan.
    - c. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
    - d. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- 1. TAB Report: Documentation indicating that Work complies with ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.
- F. Certified TAB reports.
- G. Sample report forms.
- H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
  - 1. Instrument type and make.
  - 2. Serial number.
  - 3. Application.
  - 4. Dates of use.

5. Dates of calibration.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Specialists Qualifications: Certified by AABC.
  1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.
  2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC as a TAB technician.
- B. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."
- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine ceiling plenums used for supply, return, or relief air to verify that they are properly separated from adjacent areas. Verify that penetrations in plenum walls are sealed and fire-stopped if required.
- F. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.

1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
  2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- G. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- H. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- I. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- J. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- K. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens have been replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- L. Examine control valves for proper installation for their intended function of throttling, diverting, or mixing fluid flows.
- M. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- N. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- O. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- P. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.
- 3.2 PREPARATION
- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:
1. Equipment and systems to be tested.
  2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.
  3. Instrumentation to be used.
  4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.
- B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:
1. Airside:

- a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
- b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.
- c. Volume, smoke, and fire dampers are open and functional.
- d. Clean filters are installed.
- e. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.
- f. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
- g. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
- h. Ceilings are installed.
- i. Windows and doors are installed.
- j. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

2. Hydronics:

- a. Verify leakage and pressure tests on water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.
- b. Piping is complete with terminals installed.
- c. Water treatment is complete.
- d. Systems are flushed, filled, and air purged.
- e. Strainers are pulled and cleaned.
- f. Control valves are functioning per the sequence of operation.
- g. Shutoff and balance valves have been verified to be 100 percent open.
- h. Pumps are started and proper rotation is verified.
- i. Pump gage connections are installed directly at pump inlet and outlet flanges or in discharge and suction pipe prior to valves or strainers.
- j. Variable-frequency controllers' startup is complete and safeties are verified.
- k. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
  1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
  2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
  3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation," Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

### 3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Cross-check the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

### 3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
  - 1. Measure total airflow.
    - a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
    - b. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
    - c. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
    - d. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
  - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
    - a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet.
    - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet.
    - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.

- d. Report artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
  3. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
  4. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload occurs. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows.
1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
  2. Adjust submain and branch duct volume dampers for specified airflow.
  3. Re-measure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted.
- C. Adjust air inlets and outlets for each space to indicated airflows.
1. Set airflow patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.
  2. Measure inlets and outlets airflow.
  3. Adjust each inlet and outlet for specified airflow.
  4. Re-measure each inlet and outlet after they have been adjusted.
- D. Verify final system conditions.
1. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to design if necessary.
  2. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
  3. Re-measure all final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
  4. Mark all final settings.
  5. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary.
  6. Measure and record all operating data.
  7. Record final fan-performance data.

### 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
1. Verify that the system static pressure sensor is located two-thirds of the distance down the duct from the fan discharge.
  2. Verify that the system is under static pressure control.
  3. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow. Measure inlet static pressure, and adjust system static pressure control set point so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
  4. Calibrate and balance each terminal unit for maximum and minimum design airflow as follows:

- a. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for maximum airflow. Some controllers require starting with minimum airflow. Verify calibration procedure for specific project.
  - b. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design maximum airflow. Record calibration factor.
  - c. When maximum airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units.
  - d. Adjust controls so that terminal is calling for minimum airflow.
  - e. Measure airflow and adjust calibration factor as required for design minimum airflow. Record calibration factor. If no minimum calibration is available, note any deviation from design airflow.
  - f. When in full cooling or full heating, ensure that there is no mixing of hot-deck and cold-deck airstreams unless so designed.
  - g. On constant volume terminals, in critical areas where room pressure is to be maintained, verify that the airflow remains constant over the full range of full cooling to full heating. Note any deviation from design airflow or room pressure.
5. After terminals have been calibrated and balanced, test and adjust system for total airflow. Adjust fans to deliver total design airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
- a. Set outside-air, return-air, and relief-air dampers for proper position that simulates minimum outdoor-air conditions.
  - b. Set terminals for maximum airflow. If system design includes diversity, adjust terminals for maximum and minimum airflow so that connected total matches fan selection and simulates actual load in the building.
  - c. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses to obtain total airflow.
  - d. Where duct conditions are not suitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.
  - e. If a reliable Pitot-tube traverse or coil traverse is not possible, measure airflow at terminals and calculate the total airflow.
6. Measure fan static pressures as follows:
- a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet.
  - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet.
  - c. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up the air-handling system.
  - d. Report any artificial loading of filters at the time static pressures are measured.
7. Set final return and outside airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
- a. Balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
  - b. Verify that terminal units are meeting design airflow under system maximum flow.
8. Re-measure the inlet static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the system static pressure set point to the most energy-efficient set point to maintain the optimum system static pressure. Record set point and give to controls contractor.

9. Verify final system conditions as follows:
  - a. Re-measure and confirm that minimum outdoor, return, and relief airflows are within design. Readjust to match design if necessary.
  - b. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.
  - c. Re-measure final fan operating data, rpms, volts, amps, and static profile.
  - d. Mark final settings.
  - e. Test system in economizer mode. Verify proper operation and adjust if necessary. Measure and record all operating data.
  - f. Verify tracking between supply and return fans.

### 3.7 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for pumps, coils, and heat exchangers. Obtain approved submittals and manufacturer-recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required coil and heat exchanger flow rates with pump design flow rate.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.
- C. In addition to requirements in "Preparation" Article, prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing as follows:
  1. Check liquid level in expansion tank.
  2. Check highest vent for adequate pressure.
  3. Check flow-control valves for proper position.
  4. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
  5. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
  6. Check that air has been purged from the system.

### 3.8 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals, and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.
- B. Adjust the variable-flow hydronic system as follows:
  1. Verify that the differential-pressure sensor is located as indicated.
  2. Determine whether there is diversity in the system.
- C. For systems with no diversity:
  1. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
    - a. Measure total water flow.
      - 1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
      - 2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
      - 3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.

- b. Measure pump TDH as follows:
    - 1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
    - 2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
    - 3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
    - 4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
    - 5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
  - c. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
2. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
    - a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
    - b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
    - c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
  3. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
    - a. Measure flow at terminals.
    - b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
    - c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
    - d. Position control valves to bypass the coil and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
    - e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
  4. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
    - a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.
    - b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
  5. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine the system differential-pressure set point.
  6. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion open discharge valve 100 percent and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
  7. Mark final settings and verify that all memory stops have been set.
  8. Verify final system conditions as follows:
    - a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
    - b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
    - c. Mark final settings.

9. Verify that memory stops have been set.

D. For systems with diversity:

1. Determine diversity factor.
2. Simulate system diversity by closing required number of control valves, as approved by the design engineer.
3. Adjust pumps to deliver total design gpm.
  - a. Measure total water flow.
    - 1) Position valves for full flow through coils.
    - 2) Measure flow by main flow meter, if installed.
    - 3) If main flow meter is not installed, determine flow by pump TDH or exchanger pressure drop.
  - b. Measure pump TDH as follows:
    - 1) Measure discharge pressure directly at the pump outlet flange or in discharge pipe prior to any valves.
    - 2) Measure inlet pressure directly at the pump inlet flange or in suction pipe prior to any valves or strainers.
    - 3) Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights.
    - 4) Verify pump impeller size by measuring the TDH with the discharge valve closed. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
    - 5) With valves open, read pump TDH. Adjust pump discharge valve until design water flow is achieved.
  - c. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motor in an overloaded condition.
4. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed in mains and branches to design water flows.
  - a. Measure flow in main and branch pipes.
  - b. Adjust main and branch balance valves for design flow.
  - c. Re-measure each main and branch after all have been adjusted.
5. Adjust flow-measuring devices installed at terminals for each space to design water flows.
  - a. Measure flow at terminals.
  - b. Adjust each terminal to design flow.
  - c. Re-measure each terminal after it is adjusted.
  - d. Position control valves to bypass the coil, and adjust the bypass valve to maintain design flow.
  - e. Perform temperature tests after flows have been balanced.
6. For systems without pressure-independent valves or flow-measuring devices at terminals:
  - a. Measure and balance coils by either coil pressure drop or temperature method.

- b. If balanced by coil pressure drop, perform temperature tests after flows have been verified.
7. Open control valves that were shut. Close a sufficient number of control valves that were previously open to maintain diversity, and balance terminals that were just opened.
8. Prior to verifying final system conditions, determine system differential-pressure set point.
9. If the pump discharge valve was used to set total system flow with variable-frequency controller at 60 Hz, at completion open discharge valve 100 percent and allow variable-frequency controller to control system differential-pressure set point. Record pump data under both conditions.
10. Mark final settings and verify that memory stops have been set.
11. Verify final system conditions as follows:
  - a. Re-measure and confirm that total water flow is within design.
  - b. Re-measure final pumps' operating data, TDH, volts, amps, and static profile.
  - c. Mark final settings.
12. Verify that memory stops have been set.

### 3.9 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
  1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
  2. Motor horsepower rating.
  3. Motor rpm.
  4. Phase and hertz.
  5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
  6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
  7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.
  8. Service factor and frame size.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test manual bypass of controller to prove proper operation.

### 3.10 PROCEDURES FOR CHILLERS

- A. Balance water flow through each evaporator and condenser to within specified tolerances of indicated flow with all pumps operating. With only one chiller operating in a multiple chiller installation, do not exceed the flow for the maximum tube velocity recommended by the chiller manufacturer. Measure and record the following data with each chiller operating at design conditions:
  1. Evaporator-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
  2. For water-cooled chillers, condenser-water entering and leaving temperatures, pressure drop, and water flow.
  3. Evaporator and condenser refrigerant temperatures and pressures, using instruments furnished by chiller manufacturer.

4. Power factor if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
5. Kilowatt input if factory-installed instrumentation is furnished for measuring kilowatts.
6. Capacity: Calculate in tons of cooling.

### 3.11 PROCEDURES FOR COOLING TOWERS

#### A. Balance total condenser-water flows to towers. Measure and record the following data:

1. Condenser-water flow to each cell of the cooling tower.
2. Entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
3. Wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of entering air.
4. Wet- and dry-bulb temperatures of leaving air.
5. Condenser-water flow rate recirculating through the cooling tower.
6. Cooling-tower spray pump discharge pressure.
7. Condenser-water flow through bypass.
8. Fan and motor operating data.

### 3.12 PROCEDURES FOR BOILERS

#### A. Hydronic Boilers:

1. Measure and record entering- and leaving-water temperatures.
2. Measure and record water flow.
3. Record relief valve pressure setting.

### 3.13 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

#### A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each water coil:

1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
2. Water flow rate.
3. Water pressure drop for major (more than 20 gpm) equipment coils, excluding unitary equipment such as reheat coils, unit heaters, and fan-coil units.
4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
6. Airflow.

#### B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:

1. Nameplate data.
2. Airflow.
3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load.
5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.

### 3.14 SOUND TESTS

- A. After the systems are balanced and construction is Substantially Complete, measure and record sound levels at 10 locations as designated by the Architect.
- B. Instrumentation:
  - 1. The sound-testing meter shall be a portable, general-purpose testing meter consisting of a microphone, processing unit, and readout.
  - 2. The sound-testing meter shall be capable of showing fluctuations at minimum and maximum levels, and measuring the equivalent continuous sound pressure level (LEQ).
  - 3. The sound-testing meter must be capable of using 1/3 octave band filters to measure mid-frequencies from 31.5 Hz to 8000 Hz.
  - 4. The accuracy of the sound-testing meter shall be plus or minus one decibel.
- C. Test Procedures:
  - 1. Perform test at quietest background noise period. Note cause of unpreventable sound that affects test outcome.
  - 2. Equipment should be operating at design values.
  - 3. Calibrate the sound-testing meter prior to taking measurements.
  - 4. Use a microphone suitable for the type of noise levels measured that is compatible with meter. Provide a windshield for outside or in-duct measurements.
  - 5. Record a set of background measurements in dBA and sound pressure levels in the eight un-weighted octave bands 63 Hz to 8000 Hz (NC) with the equipment off.
  - 6. Take sound readings in dBA and sound pressure levels in the eight un-weighted octave bands 63 Hz to 8000 Hz (NC) with the equipment operating.
  - 7. Take readings no closer than 36 inches from a wall or from the operating equipment and approximately 60 inches from the floor, with the meter held or mounted on a tripod.
  - 8. For outdoor measurements, move sound-testing meter slowly and scan area that has the most exposure to noise source being tested. Use A-weighted scale for this type of reading.
- D. Reporting:
  - 1. Report shall record the following:
    - a. Location.
    - b. System tested.
    - c. dBA reading.
    - d. Sound pressure level in each octave band with equipment on and off.
  - 2. Plot sound pressure levels on NC worksheet with equipment on and off.

### 3.15 VIBRATION TESTS

- A. After systems are balanced and construction is Substantially Complete, measure and record vibration levels on equipment having motor horsepower equal to or greater than 15.
- B. Instrumentation:

1. Use portable, battery-operated, and microprocessor-controlled vibration meter with or without a built-in printer.
2. The meter shall automatically identify engineering units, filter bandwidth, amplitude, and frequency scale values.
3. The meter shall be able to measure machine vibration displacement in mils of deflection, velocity in inches per second, and acceleration in inches per second squared.
4. Verify calibration date is current for vibration meter before taking readings.

C. Test Procedures:

1. To ensure accurate readings, verify that accelerometer has a clean, flat surface and is mounted properly.
2. With the unit running, set up vibration meter in a safe, secure location. Connect transducer to meter with proper cables. Hold magnetic tip of transducer on top of the bearing, and measure unit in mils of deflection. Record measurement, then move transducer to the side of the bearing and record in mils of deflection. Record an axial reading in mils of deflection by holding nonmagnetic, pointed transducer tip on end of shaft.
3. Change vibration meter to velocity (inches per second) measurements. Repeat and record above measurements.
4. Record CPM or rpm.
5. Read each bearing on motor, fan, and pump as required. Track and record vibration levels from rotating component through casing to base.

D. Reporting:

1. Report shall record location and the system tested.
2. Include horizontal-vertical-axial measurements for tests.
3. Verify that vibration limits follow Specifications, or, if not specified, follow the General Machinery Vibration Severity Chart or Vibration Acceleration General Severity Chart from the AABC National Standards. Acceptable levels of vibration are normally "smooth" to "good."
4. Include in report General Machinery Vibration Severity Chart, with conditions plotted.

3.16 DUCT LEAKAGE TESTS

- A. Witness the duct pressure testing performed by Installer.
- B. Verify that proper test methods are used and that leakage rates are within specified tolerances.
- C. Report deficiencies observed.

3.17 CONTROLS VERIFICATION

- A. In conjunction with system balancing, perform the following:
  1. Verify temperature control system is operating within the design limitations.
  2. Confirm that the sequences of operation are in compliance with Contract Documents.
  3. Verify that controllers are calibrated and function as intended.

4. Verify that controller set points are as indicated.
5. Verify the operation of lockout or interlock systems.
6. Verify the operation of valve and damper actuators.
7. Verify that controlled devices are properly installed and connected to correct controller.
8. Verify that controlled devices travel freely and are in position indicated by controller: open, closed, or modulating.
9. Verify location and installation of sensors to ensure that they sense only intended temperature, humidity, or pressure.

- B. Reporting: Include a summary of verifications performed, remaining deficiencies, and variations from indicated conditions.

### 3.18 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

- A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.
1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.
  2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
  3. Check the condition of filters.
  4. Check the condition of coils.
  5. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.
  6. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
  7. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.
- B. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished. Verify the following:
1. New filters are installed.
  2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
  3. Drain pans are clean.
  4. Fans are clean.
  5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
  6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.
- C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.
1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows, and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.
  2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
  3. If calculations increase or decrease the airflow rates and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
  4. Balance each air outlet.

### 3.19 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent.
  - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
  - 3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
  - 4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
- B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

### 3.20 PROGRESS REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.

### 3.21 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
  - 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  - 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
  - 3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
  - 1. Pump curves.
  - 2. Fan curves.
  - 3. Manufacturers' test data.
  - 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
  - 5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
  - 1. Title page.
  - 2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
  - 3. Project name.
  - 4. Project location.
  - 5. Architect's name and address.
  - 6. Engineer's name and address.
  - 7. Contractor's name and address.

8. Report date.
  9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
  10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
  11. Summary of contents including the following:
    - a. Indicated versus final performance.
    - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
  12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
  13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
  14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
  15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
    - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    - b. Conditions of filters.
    - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    - d. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    - e. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    - f. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
  2. Water and flow rates.
  3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
  4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
  5. Terminal units.
  6. Balancing stations.
  7. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and unit size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Unit arrangement and class.
    - g. Discharge arrangement.
    - h. Number, type, and size of filters.
  2. Motor Data:
    - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    - b. Horsepower and rpm.

- c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
  - 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
    - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
    - c. Fan rpm.
    - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - h. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
    - i. Return airflow in cfm.
    - j. Outdoor-air damper position.
    - k. Return-air damper position.
- F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:
  - 1. Coil Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Coil type.
    - d. Number of rows.
    - e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
    - f. Make and model number.
    - g. Face area in sq. ft..
    - h. Tube size in NPS.
    - i. Tube and fin materials.
    - j. Circuiting arrangement.
  - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Airflow rate in cfm.
    - b. Average face velocity in fpm.
    - c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
    - d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
    - h. Water flow rate in gpm.
    - i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
    - j. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
    - k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
- G. Gas- and Oil-Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:
  - 1. Unit Data:

- a. System identification.
  - b. Location.
  - c. Make and type.
  - d. Model number and unit size.
  - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
  - f. Fuel type in input data.
  - g. Output capacity in Btu/h.
  - h. Ignition type.
  - i. Burner-control types.
  - j. Motor horsepower and rpm.
  - k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
  - l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
    - b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
    - c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
    - d. Air temperature differential in deg F.
    - e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.
    - f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.
    - g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.
    - h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
    - i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
    - j. Manifold pressure in psig.
    - k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
    - l. Operating set point in Btu/h.
    - m. Motor voltage at each connection.
    - n. Motor amperage for each phase.
    - o. Heating value of fuel in Btu/h.
- H. Electric-Coil Test Reports: For electric furnaces, duct coils, and electric coils installed in central-station air-handling units, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Coil identification.
    - d. Capacity in Btu/h.
    - e. Number of stages.
    - f. Connected volts, phase, and hertz.
    - g. Rated amperage.
    - h. Airflow rate in cfm.
    - i. Face area in sq. ft..
    - j. Minimum face velocity in fpm.
  2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Heat output in Btu/h.
    - b. Airflow rate in cfm.

- c. Air velocity in fpm.
  - d. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
  - e. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
  - f. Voltage at each connection.
  - g. Amperage for each phase.
- I. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
1. Fan Data:
    - a. System identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Make and type.
    - d. Model number and size.
    - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
    - f. Arrangement and class.
  2. Motor Data:
    - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
    - b. Horsepower and rpm.
    - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
    - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
  3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
    - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
    - c. Fan rpm.
    - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.
- J. Round and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
1. Report Data:
    - a. System and air-handling-unit number.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
    - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
    - e. Duct size in inches.
    - f. Duct area in sq. ft..
    - g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm.
    - h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
    - i. Actual airflow rate in cfm.
    - j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
    - k. Barometric pressure in psig.
- K. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:

1. Unit Data:
  - a. System and air-handling unit identification.
  - b. Location and zone.
  - c. Apparatus used for test.
  - d. Area served.
  - e. Make.
  - f. Number from system diagram.
  - g. Type and model number.
  - h. Size.
  
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
  - a. Airflow rate in cfm.
  - b. Air velocity in fpm.
  - c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm.
  - d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm.
  - e. Final airflow rate in cfm.
  - f. Final velocity in fpm.
  - g. Space temperature in deg F.

L. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:

1. Unit Data:
  - a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
  - b. Location and zone.
  - c. Room or riser served.
  - d. Coil make and size.
  - e. Flowmeter type.
  
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
  - a. Airflow rate in cfm.
  - b. Entering-water temperature in deg F.
  - c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F.
  - d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig.
  - e. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
  - f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.

M. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:

1. Unit Data:
  - a. Unit identification.
  - b. Location.
  - c. Service.
  - d. Make and size.
  - e. Model number and serial number.
  - f. Water flow rate in gpm.

- g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig.
- h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig.
- i. Pump rpm.
- j. Impeller diameter in inches.
- k. Motor make and frame size.
- l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
- m. Voltage at each connection.
- n. Amperage for each phase.
- o. Full-load amperage and service factor.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Static head in feet of head or psig.
- b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig.
- c. Actual impeller size in inches.
- d. Full-open flow rate in gpm.
- e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig.
- f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig.
- g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig.
- h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig.
- i. Final water flow rate in gpm.
- j. Voltage at each connection.
- k. Amperage for each phase.

N. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

- a. Instrument type and make.
- b. Serial number.
- c. Application.
- d. Dates of use.
- e. Dates of calibration.

3.22 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

- A. Owner shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
- B. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
- C. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
- D. If TAB work fails, proceed as follows:

1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
  2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB specialist to complete TAB work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB specialist's final payment.
  3. If the second verification also fails, Owner may contact AABC Headquarters regarding the AABC National Performance Guaranty.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 230593

## SECTION 230713 - DUCT INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
  - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
  - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
  - 3. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
  - 4. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."
  - 2. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
  - 3. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
  - 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  - 4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

#### 1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- E. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning.

### 2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
  - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.

### 2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.
  3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
  4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
  5. Color: White.

## 2.4 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - c. Vimasco Corporation.
  2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
  3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Color: White.

## 2.5 SEALANTS

- A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
  5. Color: Aluminum.

## 2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

## 2.7 TAPES

- A. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
  - b. Knauf Insulation.
  - c. Venture Tape.
2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

## 2.8 SECUREMENTS

### A. Bands:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
  - b. RPR Products, Inc.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with closed seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with closed seal.

### B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
    - 2) Gemco.
    - 3) Hardcast, Inc.
    - 4) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
    - 5) Nelson Stud Welding.
2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
  - 2) CL WARD & Family Inc.
  - 3) Gemco.
  - 4) Hardcast, Inc.
  - 5) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
  - 6) Nelson Stud Welding.
- 3. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
    - 2) Gemco.
    - 3) Hardcast, Inc.
    - 4) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
    - 5) Nelson Stud Welding.
  - b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. C & F Wire.

## 2.9 CORNER ANGLES

- A. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.

- a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
- 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
- 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
  - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:

1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
  3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
    - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
  4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
  5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.

6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
  7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.
- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
  2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
  3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
    - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
    - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
    - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
    - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
  4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
    - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
    - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
  5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
  6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

### 3.6 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

#### A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
3. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
4. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.

#### B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
2. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
3. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
4. Flexible connectors.
5. Vibration-control devices.
6. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

### 3.7 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

#### A. Concealed, round, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

#### B. Concealed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

#### C. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

#### D. Concealed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

#### E. Concealed, rectangular, exhaust-air duct insulation between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

#### F. Exposed, round, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following (Excludes Exhibit Hall C):

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

#### G. Exposed, round outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

#### H. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- I. Exposed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- J. Concealed and exposed, outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- K. Concealed and exposed, exhaust-air plenum insulation shall be the following:
  1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1-1/2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

END OF SECTION 230713

## SECTION 230716 - HVAC EQUIPMENT INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC equipment that is not factory insulated:
  - 1. Chillers.
  - 2. Chilled-water pumps.
  - 3. Condenser-water pumps.
  - 4. Expansion/compression tanks.
  - 5. Air separators.
  - 6. Piping system filtration unit housings.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."
  - 2. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
  - 2. Detail removable insulation at equipment connections.
  - 3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
  - 4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
  - 5. Detail field application for each equipment type.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation

materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

- C. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with equipment Installer for equipment insulation application.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

## 1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Breeching Insulation Schedule" and "Equipment Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
    - b. Armacell LLC.
    - c. K-Flex USA.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. Provide insulation with factory-applied ASJ jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning.
- H. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - b. Knauf Insulation.
    - c. Owens Corning.

2. Type I, 850 Deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- I. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning.

## 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.
- B. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
    - b. Armacell LLC.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - d. K-Flex USA.

- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  
- D. ASJ Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.

## 2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
  
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
  
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
  
  - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
  - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
  - 5. Color: White.
  
- C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - d. Knauf Insulation.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

## 2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - c. Vimasco Corporation.
  2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over equipment insulation.
  3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
  4. Color: White.

## 2.6 SEALANTS

- A. Joint Sealants:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - d. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation.
  2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
  5. Color: White or gray.
- B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
  3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
  4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
  5. Color: White.

## 2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

## 2.8 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
    - b. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Venture Tape.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

## 2.9 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
    - b. RPR Products, Inc.
  2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal.
  3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.
- B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
  - 2) Gemco.
  - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
  - 4) Nelson Stud Welding.
2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
    - 2) CL WARD & Family Inc.
    - 3) Gemco.
    - 4) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
    - 5) Nelson Stud Welding.
  3. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.
      - 2) Gemco.
      - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
      - 4) Nelson Stud Welding.
    - b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. C & F Wire.

## 2.10 CORNER ANGLES

- A. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  - 1. Verify that systems and equipment to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
  - 1. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
  - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
    - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  - 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  - 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- O. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
  - 1. Vibration-control devices.
  - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  - 3. Nameplates and data plates.
  - 4. Manholes.
  - 5. Handholes.
  - 6. Cleanouts.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF EQUIPMENT, TANK, AND VESSEL INSULATION

- A. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Secure insulation with adhesive and anchor pins and speed washers.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of tank and vessel surfaces.
  2. Groove and score insulation materials to fit as closely as possible to equipment, including contours. Bevel insulation edges for cylindrical surfaces for tight joints. Stagger end joints.
  3. Protect exposed corners with secured corner angles.
  4. Install adhesively attached or self-sticking insulation hangers and speed washers on sides of tanks and vessels as follows:
    - a. Do not weld anchor pins to ASME-labeled pressure vessels.
    - b. Select insulation hangers and adhesive that are compatible with service temperature and with substrate.
    - c. On tanks and vessels, maximum anchor-pin spacing is 3 inches from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c. in both directions.
    - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
    - e. Cut and miter insulation segments to fit curved sides and domed heads of tanks and vessels.
    - f. Impale insulation over anchor pins and attach speed washers.
    - g. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
  5. Secure each layer of insulation with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation materials.
  6. Where insulation hangers on equipment and vessels are not permitted or practical and where insulation support rings are not provided, install a girdle network for securing insulation. Stretch prestressed aircraft cable around the diameter of vessel and make taut with clamps, turnbuckles, or breather springs. Place one circumferential girdle around equipment approximately 6 inches from each end. Install wire or cable between two circumferential girdles 12 inches o.c. Install a wire ring around each end and around outer periphery of center openings, and stretch prestressed aircraft cable radially from the wire ring to nearest circumferential girdle. Install additional circumferential girdles along the body of equipment or tank at a minimum spacing of 48 inches o.c. Use this network for securing insulation with tie wire or bands.
  7. Stagger joints between insulation layers at least 3 inches.
  8. Install insulation in removable segments on equipment access doors, manholes, handholes, and other elements that require frequent removal for service and inspection.
  9. Bevel and seal insulation ends around manholes, handholes, ASME stamps, and nameplates.
  10. For equipment with surface temperatures below ambient, apply mastic to open ends, joints, seams, breaks, and punctures in insulation.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation Installation for Tanks and Vessels: Install insulation over entire surface of tanks and vessels.

1. Apply 100 percent coverage of adhesive to surface with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints.

C. Insulation Installation on Pumps:

1. Fabricate metal boxes lined with insulation. Fit boxes around pumps and coincide box joints with splits in pump casings. Fabricate joints with outward bolted flanges. Bolt flanges on 6-inch centers, starting at corners. Install 3/8-inch-diameter fasteners with wing nuts. Alternatively, secure the box sections together using a latching mechanism.
2. Fabricate boxes from galvanized steel, at least 0.050 inch thick.
3. For below ambient services, install a vapor barrier at seams, joints, and penetrations. Seal between flanges with replaceable gasket material to form a vapor barrier.

### 3.5 FINISHES

A. Equipment Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
  - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections: Inspect field-insulated equipment, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each type of equipment defined in the "Equipment Insulation Schedule" Article. For large equipment, remove only a portion adequate to determine compliance.

C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

### 3.7 EQUIPMENT INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a type of equipment, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

- B. Insulate indoor and outdoor equipment that is not factory insulated.
- C. Chillers: Insulate cold surfaces on chillers, including, but not limited to, evaporator bundles, suction piping, compressor inlets, tube sheets, water boxes, and nozzles with the following:
  - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
- D. Chilled-water pump insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- E. Condenser-water pump insulation shall be the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- F. Chilled-water expansion/compression tank insulation shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
  - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
  - 3. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch thick.
- G. Heating-hot-water expansion/compression tank insulation shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
  - 2. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch thick.
- H. Chilled-water air-separator insulation shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
  - 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 1 inch thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
  - 3. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 1 inch **<Insert dimension>** thick.
- I. Heating-hot-water air-separator insulation shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
  - 2. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches thick.

END OF SECTION 230716

## SECTION 230719 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:

1. Condensate drain piping, indoors.
2. Chilled-water piping, indoors.
3. Condenser-water piping, outdoors.
4. Heating hot-water piping, indoors.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."
2. Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).

- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation

materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

- C. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
  - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

## 1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - b. Knauf Insulation.
    - c. Manson Insulation Inc.
    - d. Owens Corning.
  - 2. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
- G. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied FSK jacket complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    - b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Owens Corning.

## 2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.

## 2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
- C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
    - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.

## 2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
    - c. Knauf Insulation.
    - d. Vimasco Corporation.
  - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.

3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
  - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - d. Knauf Insulation.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

## 2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - c. Vimasco Corporation.
2. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Color: White.

## 2.6 SEALANTS

A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
  - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries.
  - c. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.

5. Color: Aluminum.

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: White.

## 2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

## 2.8 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal Jacket:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
  - b. RPR Products, Inc.
2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
  - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing.
  - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
  - c. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
  - d. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
    - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
    - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
    - 3) Tee covers.
    - 4) Flange and union covers.

- 5) End caps.
- 6) Beveled collars.
- 7) Valve covers.
- 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

## 2.9 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
    - b. Compac Corporation.
    - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
    - d. Knauf Insulation.
    - e. Venture Tape.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
    - b. Compac Corporation.
    - c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
    - d. Knauf Insulation.
    - e. Venture Tape.
  2. Width: 3 inches.
  3. Thickness: 6.5 mils.
  4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
  5. Elongation: 2 percent.
  6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
  7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

## 2.10 SECUREMENTS

### A. Bands:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
  - b. RPR Products, Inc.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 3/4 inch wide with wing seal.
4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

### B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch-wide, stainless steel or Monel.

### C. Wire: 0.062-inch soft-annealed, stainless steel.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. C & F Wire.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
  1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
  2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
  3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
  1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

### 3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
  1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
  2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
  3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
  4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
  2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch-wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
  3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at **[2 inches] [4 inches]** o.c.
    - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
  4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
  5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
  2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
  3. Nameplates and data plates.
  4. Manholes.
  5. Handholes.
  6. Cleanouts.

### 3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
  2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
  3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
  4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
  2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
  3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
  4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
  5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe

insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.

6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
  7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
  8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
  9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
  2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
  3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
  4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
  5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

### 3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

- C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.9 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

3.10 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick.

- B. Chilled Water, above 40 Deg F:

1. NPS 12 and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1-1/2 inches thick.
  - b. Polyolefin: [**1 inch**] <Insert dimension> thick.
2. NPS 14 and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber Preformed Pipe, Type I or Pipe and Tank Insulation, : 2 inches thick.

- C. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, 200 Deg F and Below:

1. NPS 12 and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1-1/2 inches thick.

3.11 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Condenser-Water Supply and Return:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
  - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches thick.

3.12 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Exposed within 8 foot above finished floor:
  1. Painted Aluminum, Corrugated: 0.020 inch thick.

3.13 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Exposed:
  1. Aluminum, Corrugated with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.024 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 230719

## SECTION 230923 - DIRECT DIGITAL CONTROL (DDC) SYSTEM FOR HVAC

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. DDC system for monitoring and controlling of HVAC systems.
2. Delivery of selected control devices to equipment and systems manufacturers for factory installation and to HVAC systems installers for field installation.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 230923.13 "Energy Meters" for thermal and electric power energy meters that connect to DDC systems.
2. Section 230923.17 "Level Instruments" for liquid-level switches, sensors, and transmitters that connect to DDC systems.
3. Section 230923.22 "Position Instruments" for limit switches that connect to DDC systems.
4. Section 230923.33 "Vibration Instruments" for vibration instruments that connect to DDC systems.
5. Section 230923.43 "Weather Stations" for weather stations that connect to DDC systems.
6. Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC" for control sequences in DDC systems.
7. Communications Cabling:
  - a. Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables" for balanced twisted pair communications cable.
  - b. Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" for balanced twisted pair communications cable.
  - c. Section 271523 "Communications Optical Fiber Horizontal Cabling" for optical fiber communications cable.
8. Raceways:
  - a. Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for raceways for low-voltage control cable.
  - b. Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for raceways for balanced twisted pair cabling and optical fiber cable.
9. Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for identification requirements for electrical components.

10. Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems" for identification requirements for communications components.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Algorithm: A logical procedure for solving a recurrent mathematical problem. A prescribed set of well-defined rules or processes for solving a problem in a finite number of steps.
- B. Analog: A continuously varying signal value, such as current, flow, pressure, or temperature.
- C. BACnet Specific Definitions:
  1. BACnet: Building Automation Control Network Protocol, ASHRAE 135. A communications protocol allowing devices to communicate data over and services over a network.
  2. BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks (BIBBs): BIBB defines a small portion of BACnet functionality that is needed to perform a particular task. BIBBs are combined to build the BACnet functional requirements for a device.
  3. BACnet/IP: Defines and allows using a reserved UDP socket to transmit BACnet messages over IP networks. A BACnet/IP network is a collection of one or more IP subnetworks that share the same BACnet network number.
  4. BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL): Organization responsible for testing products for compliance with ASHRAE 135, operated under direction of BACnet International.
  5. PICS (Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement): Written document that identifies the particular options specified by BACnet that are implemented in a device.
- D. Binary: Two-state signal where a high signal level represents "ON" or "OPEN" condition and a low signal level represents "OFF" or "CLOSED" condition. "Digital" is sometimes used interchangeably with "Binary" to indicate a two-state signal.
- E. Controller: Generic term for any standalone, microprocessor-based, digital controller residing on a network, used for local or global control. Three types of controllers are indicated: Network Controller, Programmable Application Controller, and Application-Specific Controller.
- F. Control System Integrator: An entity that assists in expansion of existing enterprise system and support of additional operator interfaces to I/O being added to existing enterprise system.
- G. COV: Changes of value.
- H. DDC System Provider: Authorized representative of, and trained by, DDC system manufacturer and responsible for execution of DDC system Work indicated.
- I. Distributed Control: Processing of system data is decentralized and control decisions are made at subsystem level. System operational programs and information are provided to remote subsystems and status is reported back. On loss of communication, subsystems shall be capable of operating in a standalone mode using the last best available data.
- J. DOCSIS: Data-Over Cable Service Interface Specifications.
- K. E/P: Voltage to pneumatic.

- L. Gateway: Bidirectional protocol translator that connects control systems that use different communication protocols.
- M. HLC: Heavy load conditions.
- N. I/O: System through which information is received and transmitted. I/O refers to analog input (AI), binary input (BI), analog output (AO) and binary output (BO). Analog signals are continuous and represent control influences such as flow, level, moisture, pressure, and temperature. Binary signals convert electronic signals to digital pulses (values) and generally represent two-position operating and alarm status. "Digital," (DI and (DO), is sometimes used interchangeably with "Binary," (BI) and (BO), respectively.
- O. I/P: Current to pneumatic.
- P. LAN: Local area network.
- Q. LNS: LonWorks Network Services.
- R. LON Specific Definitions:
  - 1. FTT-10: Echelon Transmitter-Free Topology Transceiver.
  - 2. LonMark: Association comprising suppliers and installers of LonTalk products. Association provides guidelines for implementing LonTalk protocol to ensure interoperability through a standard or consistent implementation.
  - 3. LonTalk: An open standard protocol developed by the Echelon Corporation that uses a "Neuron Chip" for communication. LonTalk is a register trademark of Echelon.
  - 4. LonWorks: Network technology developed by Echelon.
  - 5. Node: Device that communicates using CEA-709.1-C protocol and that is connected to a CEA-709.1-C network.
  - 6. Node Address: The logical address of a node on the network, consisting of a Domain number, Subnet number, and Node number. "Node number" portion of an address is a number assigned to device during installation, is unique within a subnet, and is not a factory-set unique Node ID.
  - 7. Node ID: A unique 48-bit identifier assigned at factory to each CEA-709.1-C device. Sometimes called a "Neuron ID."
  - 8. Program ID: An identifier (number) stored in a device (usually EEPROM) that identifies node manufacturer, functionality of device (application and sequence), transceiver used, and intended device usage.
  - 9. Standard Configuration Property Type (SCPT): Pronounced "skip-it." A standard format type maintained by LonMark International for configuration properties.
  - 10. Standard Network Variable Type (SNVT): Pronounced "snivet." A standard format type maintained by LonMark used to define data information transmitted and received by individual nodes. "SNVT" is used in two ways. It is an acronym for "Standard Network Variable Type" and is often used to indicate a network variable itself (i.e., it can mean "a network variable of a standard network variable type").
  - 11. Subnet: Consists of a logical grouping of up to 127 nodes, where logical grouping is defined by node addressing. Each subnet is assigned a number, which is unique within a Domain. See "Node Address."
  - 12. TP/FT-10: Free Topology Twisted Pair network defined by CEA-709.3 and is most common media type for a CEA-709.1-C control network.

13. TP/XF-1250: High-speed, 1.25-Mbps, twisted-pair, doubly terminated bus network defined by "LonMark Interoperability Guidelines" typically used only to connect multiple TP/FT-10 networks.
  14. User-Defined Configuration Property Type (UCPT): Pronounced "U-Keep-It." A Configuration Property format type that is defined by device manufacturer.
  15. User-Defined Network Variable Type (UNVT): Network variable format defined by device manufacturer. UNVTs create non-standard communications that other vendors' devices may not correctly interpret and may negatively impact system operation. UNVTs are not allowed.
- 
- S. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
  - T. Mobile Device: A data-enabled phone or tablet computer capable of connecting to a cellular data network and running a native control application or accessing a web interface.
  - U. Modbus TCP/IP: An open protocol for exchange of process data.
  - V. MS/TP: Master-slave/token-passing, IEE 8802-3. Datalink protocol LAN option that uses twisted-pair wire for low-speed communication.
  - W. MTBF: Mean time between failures.
  - X. Network Controller: Digital controller, which supports a family of programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers, that communicates on peer-to-peer network for transmission of global data.
  - Y. Network Repeater: Device that receives data packet from one network and rebroadcasts it to another network. No routing information is added to protocol.
  - Z. Peer to Peer: Networking architecture that treats all network stations as equal partners.
  - AA. POT: Portable operator's terminal.
  - BB. PUE: Performance usage effectiveness.
  - CC. RAM: Random access memory.
  - DD. RF: Radio frequency.
  - EE. Router: Device connecting two or more networks at network layer.
  - FF. Server: Computer used to maintain system configuration, historical and programming database.
  - GG. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol.
  - HH. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.
  - II. USB: Universal Serial Bus.
  - JJ. User Datagram Protocol (UDP): This protocol assumes that the IP is used as the underlying protocol.

KK. VAV: Variable air volume.

LL. WLED: White light emitting diode.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at **[Project site]** <**Insert location**>.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Multiple Submissions:

1. If multiple submissions are required to execute work within schedule, first submit a coordinated schedule clearly defining intent of multiple submissions. Include a proposed date of each submission with a detailed description of submittal content to be included in each submission.
2. Clearly identify each submittal requirement indicated and in which submission the information will be provided.
3. Include an updated schedule in each subsequent submission with changes highlighted to easily track the changes made to previous submitted schedule.

B. Product Data: For each type of product include the following:

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
4. Installation, operation and maintenance instructions including factors effecting performance.
5. Bill of materials of indicating quantity, manufacturer, and extended model number for each unique product.
  - a. Workstations.
  - b. Servers.
  - c. Printers.
  - d. Gateways.
  - e. Routers.
  - f. Protocol analyzers.
  - g. DDC controllers.
  - h. Enclosures.
  - i. Electrical power devices.
  - j. UPS units.
  - k. Accessories.
  - l. Instruments.

- m. Control dampers and actuators.
    - n. Control valves and actuators.
    - o. <Insert product>.
  - 6. When manufacturer's product datasheets apply to a product series rather than a specific product model, clearly indicate and highlight only applicable information.
  - 7. Each submitted piece of product literature shall clearly cross reference specification and drawings that submittal is to cover.
- C. Software Submittal:
- 1. Cross-referenced listing of software to be loaded on each operator workstation, server, gateway, <Insert product> and DDC controller.
  - 2. Description and technical data of all software provided, and cross-referenced to products in which software will be installed.
  - 3. Operating system software, operator interface and programming software, color graphic software, DDC controller software, maintenance management software, and third-party software.
  - 4. Include a flow diagram and an outline of each subroutine that indicates each program variable name and units of measure.
  - 5. Listing and description of each engineering equation used with reference source.
  - 6. Listing and description of each constant used in engineering equations and a reference source to prove origin of each constant.
  - 7. Description of operator interface to alphanumeric and graphic programming.
  - 8. Description of each network communication protocol.
  - 9. Description of system database, including all data included in database, database capacity and limitations to expand database.
  - 10. Description of each application program and device drivers to be generated, including specific information on data acquisition and control strategies showing their relationship to system timing, speed, processing burden and system throughout.
  - 11. Controlled Systems: Instrumentation list with element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data. Include written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.
- D. Sustainable Design Submittals:
- 1. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for Energy Star labeling.>](#)
  - 2. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for adhesives.>](#)
- E. Shop Drawings:
- 1. General Requirements:
    - a. Include cover drawing with Project name, location, Owner, Architect, Contractor and issue date with each Shop Drawings submission.
    - b. Include a drawing index sheet listing each drawing number and title that matches information in each title block.
    - c. Drawings Size: <Insert requirements>.
  - 2. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details where applicable.

3. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
4. Detail means of vibration isolation and show attachments to rotating equipment.
5. Plan Drawings indicating the following:
  - a. Screened backgrounds of walls, structural grid lines, HVAC equipment, ductwork and piping.
  - b. Room names and numbers with coordinated placement to avoid interference with control products indicated.
  - c. Each desktop workstation, server, gateway, router, DDC controller, control panel instrument connecting to DDC controller, and damper and valve connecting to DDC controller, if included in Project.
  - d. Exact placement of products in rooms, ducts, and piping to reflect proposed installed condition.
  - e. Network communication cable and raceway routing.
  - f. Information, drawn to scale, of **<Insert requirements>**.
  - g. Proposed routing of wiring, cabling, conduit, and tubing, coordinated with building services for review before installation.
6. Schematic drawings for each controlled HVAC system indicating the following:
  - a. I/O points labeled with point names shown. Indicate instrument range, normal operating set points, and alarm set points. Indicate fail position of each damper and valve, if included in Project.
  - b. I/O listed in table format showing point name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and cross-reference to product data sheet number.
  - c. A graphic showing location of control I/O in proper relationship to HVAC system.
  - d. Wiring diagram with each I/O point having a unique identification and indicating labels for all wiring terminals.
  - e. Unique identification of each I/O that shall be consistently used between different drawings showing same point.
  - f. Elementary wiring diagrams of controls for HVAC equipment motor circuits including interlocks, switches, relays and interface to DDC controllers.
  - g. Narrative sequence of operation.
  - h. Graphic sequence of operation, showing all inputs and output logical blocks.
7. Control panel drawings indicating the following:
  - a. Panel dimensions, materials, size, and location of field cable, raceways, and tubing connections.
  - b. Interior subpanel layout, drawn to scale and showing all internal components, cabling and wiring raceways, nameplates and allocated spare space.
  - c. Front, rear, and side elevations and nameplate legend.
  - d. Unique drawing for each panel.
8. DDC system network riser diagram indicating the following:
  - a. Each device connected to network with unique identification for each.
  - b. Interconnection of each different network in DDC system.

- c. For each network, indicate communication protocol, speed and physical means of interconnecting network devices, such as copper cable type, or optical fiber cable type. Indicate raceway type and size for each.
    - d. Each network port for connection of an operator workstation or other type of operator interface with unique identification for each.
  9. DDC system electrical power riser diagram indicating the following:
    - a. Each point of connection to field power with requirements (volts/phase/hertz/amperes/connection type) listed for each.
    - b. Each control power supply including, as applicable, transformers, power-line conditioners, transient voltage suppression and high filter noise units, DC power supplies, and UPS units with unique identification for each.
    - c. Each product requiring power with requirements (volts/phase/hertz/amperes/connection type) listed for each.
    - d. Power wiring type and size, race type, and size for each.
  10. Monitoring and control signal diagrams indicating the following:
    - a. Control signal cable and wiring between controllers and I/O.
    - b. Point-to-point schematic wiring diagrams for each product.
    - c. Control signal tubing to sensors, switches and transmitters.
    - d. Process signal tubing to sensors, switches and transmitters.
    - e. Pneumatic main air and control signal tubing to pneumatic **[damper]** **[and]** **[valve]** actuators, pilot-positioners if applicable, and associated transducers.
  11. Color graphics indicating the following:
    - a. Itemized list of color graphic displays to be provided.
    - b. For each display screen to be provided, a true color copy showing layout of pictures, graphics and data displayed.
    - c. Intended operator access between related hierarchical display screens.
- F. System Description:
  1. Full description of DDC system architecture, network configuration, operator interfaces and peripherals, servers, controller types and applications, gateways, routers and other network devices, and power supplies.
  2. Complete listing and description of each report, log and trend for format and timing and events which initiate generation.
  3. System and product operation under each potential failure condition including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Loss of power.
    - b. Loss of network communication signal.
    - c. Loss of controller signals to inputs and outputs.
    - d. Operator workstation failure.
    - e. Server failure.
    - f. Gateway failure.
    - g. Network failure
    - h. Controller failure.

- i. Instrument failure.
    - j. Control damper and valve actuator failure.
    - k. **<Insert potential failure conditions>**.
  4. Complete bibliography of documentation and media to be delivered to Owner.
  5. Description of testing plans and procedures.
  6. Description of Owner training.
- G. Samples:
  1. For each of the following exposed product, installed in finished space for approval of selection of aesthetic characteristics:
    - a. Gas instruments specified in Section 230923.16 "Gas Instruments."
    - b. Moisture instruments specified in Section 230923.19 "Moisture Instruments."
    - c. Motion instruments specified in Section 230923.21 "Motion Instruments."
    - d. Pressure instruments specified in Section 230923.23 "Pressure Instruments."
    - e. Temperature instruments specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."
  2. **<Insert devices>**.
- H. Delegated-Design Submittal: For DDC system products and installation indicated as being delegated.
  1. Supporting documentation showing DDC system design complies with performance requirements indicated, including calculations and other documentation necessary to prove compliance.
  2. Schedule and design calculations for control dampers and actuators.
    - a. Flow at Project design and minimum flow conditions.
    - b. Face velocity at Project design and minimum airflow conditions.
    - c. Pressure drop across damper at Project design and minimum airflow conditions.
    - d. AMCA 500-D damper installation arrangement used to calculate and schedule pressure drop, as applicable to installation.
    - e. Maximum close-off pressure.
    - f. Leakage airflow at maximum system pressure differential (fan close-off pressure).
    - g. Torque required at worst case condition for sizing actuator.
    - h. Actuator selection indicating torque provided.
    - i. Actuator signal to control damper (on, close or modulate).
    - j. Actuator position on loss of power.
    - k. Actuator position on loss of control signal.
  3. Schedule and design calculations for control valves and actuators.
    - a. Flow at Project design and minimum flow conditions.
    - b. Pressure-differential drop across valve at Project design flow condition.
    - c. Maximum system pressure-differential drop (pump close-off pressure) across valve at Project minimum flow condition.
    - d. Design and minimum control valve coefficient with corresponding valve position.
    - e. Maximum close-off pressure.

- f. Leakage flow at maximum system pressure differential.
  - g. Torque required at worst case condition for sizing actuator.
  - h. Actuator selection indicating torque provided.
  - i. Actuator signal to control damper (on, close or modulate).
  - j. Actuator position on loss of power.
  - k. Actuator position on loss of control signal.
4. Schedule and design calculations for selecting flow instruments.
- a. Instrument flow range.
  - b. Project design and minimum flow conditions with corresponding accuracy, control signal to transmitter and output signal for remote control.
  - c. Extreme points of extended flow range with corresponding accuracy, control signal to transmitter and output signal for remote control.
  - d. Pressure-differential loss across instrument at Project design flow conditions.
  - e. Where flow sensors are mated with pressure transmitters, provide information for each instrument separately and as an operating pair.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

### A. Coordination Drawings:

1. Plan drawings and corresponding product installation details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - a. Product installation location shown in relationship to room, duct, pipe and equipment.
  - b. Structural members to which products will be attached.
  - c. Wall-mounted instruments located in finished space showing relationship to light switches, fire-alarm devices and other installed devices.
  - d. Size and location of wall access panels for products installed behind walls and requiring access.
2. Reflected ceiling plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - a. Ceiling components.
  - b. Size and location of access panels for products installed above inaccessible ceiling assemblies and requiring access.
  - c. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
    - 1) Lighting fixtures.
    - 2) Air outlets and inlets.
    - 3) Speakers.
    - 4) Sprinklers.
    - 5) Access panels.
    - 6) Motion sensors.
    - 7) Pressure sensors.
    - 8) Temperature sensors and other DDC control system instruments.

9) <Insert item>.

B. Qualification Data:

1. Systems Provider Qualification Data:

- a. Resume of project manager assigned to Project.
- b. Resumes of application engineering staff assigned to Project.
- c. Resumes of installation and programming technicians assigned to Project.
- d. Resumes of service technicians assigned to Project.
- e. Brief description of past project including physical address, floor area, number of floors, building system cooling and heating capacity and building's primary function.
- f. Description of past project DDC system, noting similarities to Project scope and complexity indicated.
- g. Names of staff assigned to past project that will also be assigned to execute work of this Project.
- h. Owner contact information for past project including name, phone number, and e-mail address.
- i. Contractor contact information for past project including name, phone number, and e-mail address.
- j. Architect[ **and Engineer**] contact information for past project including name, phone number, and e-mail address.

2. Manufacturer's qualification data.
3. Testing agency's qualifications data.

C. Welding certificates.

D. Product Certificates:

1. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certifying that each proposed DDC system component complies with ASHRAE 135.
2. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certifying that each proposed DDC system component complies with LonWorks.
3. <Insert list of products>.

E. Product Test Reports: For each product that requires testing to be performed by [manufacturer] [manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency] [a qualified testing agency].

F. Preconstruction Test Reports: For each separate test performed.

G. Source quality-control reports.

H. Field quality-control reports.

I. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For DDC system to include in emergency, operation and maintenance manuals.
1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Project Record Drawings of as-built versions of submittal Shop Drawings provided in electronic PDF format.
    - b. Testing and commissioning reports and checklists of completed final versions of reports, checklists, and trend logs.
    - c. As-built versions of submittal Product Data.
    - d. Names, addresses, e-mail addresses and 24-hour telephone numbers of Installer and service representatives for DDC system and products.
    - e. Operator's manual with procedures for operating control systems including logging on and off, handling alarms, producing point reports, trending data, overriding computer control and changing set points and variables.
    - f. Programming manuals with description of programming language and syntax, of statements for algorithms and calculations used, of point database creation and modification, of program creation and modification, and of editor use.
    - g. Engineering, installation, and maintenance manuals that explain how to:
      - 1) Design and install new points, panels, and other hardware.
      - 2) Perform preventive maintenance and calibration.
      - 3) Debug hardware problems.
      - 4) Repair or replace hardware.
    - h. Documentation of all programs created using custom programming language including set points, tuning parameters, and object database.
    - i. Backup copy of graphic files, programs, and database on electronic media such as DVDs.
    - j. List of recommended spare parts with part numbers and suppliers.
    - k. Complete original-issue documentation, installation, and maintenance information for furnished third-party hardware including computer equipment and sensors.
    - l. Complete original-issue copies of furnished software, including operating systems, custom programming language, operator workstation software, and graphics software.
    - m. Licenses, guarantees, and warranty documents.
    - n. Recommended preventive maintenance procedures for system components, including schedule of tasks such as inspection, cleaning, and calibration; time between tasks; and task descriptions.
    - o. Owner training materials.

## 1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials and parts that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- B. Include product manufacturers' recommended parts lists for proper product operation over **[four]** **<Insert time period>**-year period following warranty period. Parts list shall be indicated for each year.
- C. Furnish parts, as indicated by manufacturer's recommended parts list, for product operation during **[one]** **[two]** **<Insert time period>**-year period following warranty period.
- D. Furnish quantity indicated of matching product(s) in Project inventory for each unique size and type of following:
  - 1. Network Controller: **[One]** **<Insert quantity>**.
  - 2. Programmable Application Controller: **[One]** **<Insert quantity>**.
  - 3. Application-Specific Controller: **[One]** **<Insert quantity>**.
  - 4. **[Room ]**Carbon Dioxide Sensor and Transmitter: **[One]** **<Insert quantity>**.
  - 5. **[Room ]**Moisture Sensor and Transmitter: **[One]** **<Insert quantity>**.
  - 6. **[Room ]**Pressure Sensor and Transmitter: **[One]** **<Insert quantity>**.
  - 7. **[Room ]**Temperature Sensor **[ and Transmitter]**: **[One]** **<Insert quantity>**.
  - 8. General-Purpose Relay: **[One]** **<Insert quantity>**.
  - 9. Multifunction Time-Delay Relay: **[One]** **<Insert quantity>**.
  - 10. Latching Relay: **[One]** **<Insert quantity>**.
  - 11. Current-Sensing Relay: **[One]** **<Insert quantity>**.
  - 12. Combination On-Off Status Sensor and On-Off Relay: **[One]** **<Insert quantity>**.
  - 13. Transformer: **[One]** **<Insert quantity>**.
  - 14. DC Power Supply: **[One]** **<Insert quantity>**.
  - 15. Supply of **[20]** **<Insert number>** percent spare optical fiber cable splice organizer cabinets for several re-terminations.
  - 16. **<Insert product>**.

## 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. DDC System Manufacturer Qualifications:
  - 1. Nationally recognized manufacturer of DDC systems and products.
  - 2. DDC systems with similar requirements to those indicated for a continuous period of **[five]** **[10]** **<Insert number>** years within time of bid.
  - 3. DDC systems and products that have been successfully tested and in use on at least **[three]** **[five]** **<Insert number>** past projects.
  - 4. Having complete published catalog literature, installation, operation and maintenance manuals for all products intended for use.
  - 5. Having full-time in-house employees for the following:
    - a. Product research and development.
    - b. Product and application engineering.
    - c. Product manufacturing, testing and quality control.
    - d. Technical support for DDC system installation training, commissioning and troubleshooting of installations.
    - e. Owner operator training.
- B. DDC System Provider Qualifications:

1. Authorized representative of, and trained by, DDC system manufacturer.
  2. In-place facility located within **<Insert distance>** of Project.
  3. Demonstrated past experience with installation of DDC system products being installed for period within **[three] [five] <Insert number>** consecutive years before time of bid.
  4. Demonstrated past experience on **[five] <Insert number>** projects of similar complexity, scope and value.
  5. Each person assigned to Project shall have demonstrated past experience.
  6. Staffing resources of competent and experienced full-time employees that are assigned to execute work according to schedule.
  7. Service and maintenance staff assigned to support Project during warranty period.
  8. Product parts inventory to support on-going DDC system operation for a period of not less than **[5] <Insert number>** years after Substantial Completion.
  9. DDC system manufacturer's backing to take over execution of Work if necessary to comply with requirements indicated. Include Project-specific written letter, signed by manufacturer's corporate officer, if requested.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA.
1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.
- D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
  2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
  3. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
  4. AWS D1.4/D1.4M, "Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel."
- E. Pipe and Pressure-Vessel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- F. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and products and for fabrication and installation.
1. Build mockups of completed installation where products are exposed to view and are located in areas with aesthetic requirements that warrant special attention, including the following spaces:
    - a. **<Insert specific locations for mockups>**.
  2. Build mockups of completed installation for areas indicated on Drawings.
  3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
- 1.10 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING
- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: **[Owner will engage] [Engage]** a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on field mockups.

1. **<Insert configurations of assemblies>**.
  2. Include test assemblies representative of proposed materials and construction.
  3. Build mockup at testing agency facility using personnel, materials, and methods of construction that will be used at Project site.
  4. Notify Architect [**seven**] **<Insert number>** days in advance of dates and times of tests.
- B. Preconstruction Testing: Performed by a qualified testing agency on manufacturer's standard assemblies.
1. **<Insert preconstruction testing requirements>**.

#### 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures shall be adjusted, repaired, or replaced at no additional cost or reduction in service to Owner.
  2. Include updates or upgrades to software and firmware if necessary to resolve deficiencies.
    - a. Install updates only after receiving Owner's written authorization.
  3. Warranty service shall occur during normal business hours and commence within [**16**] [**24**] **<Insert number>** hours of Owner's warranty service request.
  4. Warranty Period: [**Two**] **<Insert number>** year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
    - a. For Gateway: [**Two**] [**Three**] **<Insert number>**-year parts and labor warranty for each.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 DDC SYSTEM MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
1. Tridium, Inc.

#### 2.2 DDC SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Microprocessor-based monitoring and control including analog/digital conversion and program logic. A control loop or subsystem in which digital and analog information is received and processed by a microprocessor, and digital control signals are generated based on control algorithms and transmitted to field devices to achieve a set of predefined conditions.
1. DDC system shall consist of a[ **high-speed,**] peer-to-peer network of distributed DDC controllers[, **other network devices**], operator interfaces, and software.

- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.3 WEB ACCESS

- A. DDC system shall be [**Web based**] [**or**] [**Web compatible**].

- 1. Web-Based Access to DDC System:

- a. DDC system software shall be based on server thin-client architecture, designed around open standards of Web technology. DDC system server shall be accessed using a Web browser over DDC system network, using Owner's LAN, and remotely over Internet[ **through Owner's LAN**].
- b. Intent of thin-client architecture is to provide operators complete access to DDC system via a Web browser. No special software other than a Web browser shall be required to access graphics, point displays, and trends; to configure trends, points, and controllers; and to edit programming.
- c. Web access shall be password protected.

- 2. Web-Compatible Access to DDC System:

- a. [**Workstation**] [**and**] [**or**] [**server**] shall perform overall system supervision and configuration, graphical user interface, management report generation, and alarm annunciation.
- b. DDC system shall support Web browser access to building data. Operator using a standard Web browser shall be able to access control graphics and change adjustable set points.
- c. Web access shall be password protected.

## 2.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design DDC system to satisfy requirements indicated.

- B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional to design DDC system to satisfy requirements indicated.

- 1. System Performance Objectives:

- a. DDC system shall manage HVAC systems.
- b. DDC system control shall operate HVAC systems to achieve optimum operating costs while using least possible energy and maintaining specified performance.
- c. DDC system shall respond to power failures, HVAC equipment failures, and adverse and emergency conditions encountered through connected I/O points.
- d. DDC system shall operate while unattended by an operator and through operator interaction.
- e. DDC system shall record trends and transaction of events and produce report information such as performance, energy, occupancies, and equipment operation.

- C. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Products installed in ducts, equipment, and return-air paths shall comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- D. DDC System Speed:
1. Response Time of Connected I/O:
    - a. AI point values connected to DDC system shall be updated at least every **[five]** **[two]** seconds for use by DDC controllers. Points used globally shall also comply with this requirement.
    - b. BI point values connected to DDC system shall be updated at least every **[five]** **[two]** **<Insert number>** seconds for use by DDC controllers. Points used globally shall also comply with this requirement.
    - c. AO points connected to DDC system shall begin to respond to controller output commands within **[two]** **[one]** second(s). Global commands shall also comply with this requirement.
    - d. BO point values connected to DDC system shall respond to controller output commands within **[two]** **[one]** **<Insert number>** second(s). Global commands shall also comply with this requirement.
  2. Display of Connected I/O:
    - a. Analog point COV connected to DDC system shall be updated and displayed at least every **[10]** **[five]** **<Insert number>** seconds for use by operator.
    - b. Binary point COV connected to DDC system shall be updated and displayed at least every **[10]** **[five]** **<Insert number>** seconds for use by operator.
    - c. Alarms of analog and digital points connected to DDC system shall be displayed within **[45]** **[30]** **[15]** **<Insert number>** seconds of activation or change of state.
    - d. Graphic display refresh shall update within **[eight]** **[four]** **<Insert number>** seconds.
    - e. Point change of values and alarms displayed from workstation to workstation when multiple operators are viewing from multiple workstations shall not exceed graphic refresh rate indicated.
- E. Network Bandwidth: Design each network of DDC system to include at least **[30]** **<Insert number>** percent available spare bandwidth with DDC system operating under normal and heavy load conditions indicated. Calculate bandwidth usage, and apply a safety factor to ensure that requirement is satisfied when subjected to testing under worst case conditions.
- F. DDC System Data Storage:
1. Include capability to archive not less than **[24]** **[48]** **[60]** **<Insert number>** consecutive months of historical data for all I/O points connected to system, including alarms, event histories, transaction logs, trends and other information indicated.
  2. Local Storage:

- a. Provide **[server]** **[workstation]** with data storage indicated. Server(s) shall use IT industry standard database platforms and be capable of functions described in "DDC Data Access" Paragraph.
3. Cloud Storage:
    - a. Provide **[application-based]** **[and]** **[web browser]** interfaces to configure, upload, download, and manage data, and service plan with storage adequate to store all data for term indicated. Cloud storage shall use IT industry standard database platforms and be capable of functions described in "DDC Data Access" Paragraph.
- G. DDC Data Access:
1. When logged into the system, operator shall be able to also interact with any DDC controller connected to DDC system as required for functional operation of DDC system.
  2. System(s) shall be used for application configuration; for archiving, reporting and trending of data; for operator transaction archiving and reporting; for network information management; for alarm annunciation; and for operator interface tasks and controls application management.
- H. Future Expandability:
1. DDC system size shall be expandable to an ultimate capacity of at least **[two]** **[three]** **[four]** **<Insert number>** times total I/O points indicated.
  2. Additional DDC controllers, I/O and associated wiring shall be all that is needed to achieve ultimate capacity. Initial network infrastructure shall be designed and installed to support ultimate capacity.
  3. Operator interfaces installed initially shall not require hardware and software additions and revisions for ultimate capacity.
- I. Input Point Displayed Accuracy: Input point displayed values shall meet following end-to-end overall system accuracy, including errors associated with meter, sensor, transmitter, lead wire or cable, and analog to digital conversion.
1. Energy:
    - a. Thermal: Within **[5]** **[3]** **[1]** **<Insert number>** percent of reading.
    - b. Electric Power: Within **[1]** **<Insert number>** percent of reading.
    - c. Requirements indicated on Drawings for meters not supplied by utility.
  2. Flow:
    - a. Air: Within **[5]** **[2]** **<Insert number>** percent of design flow rate.
    - b. Air (Terminal Units): Within **[10]** **[5]** **<Insert number>** percent of design flow rate.
    - c. Water: Within **[2]** **[5]** **<Insert number>** percent of design flow rate.
    - d. Steam: Within **[5]** **<Insert number>** percent of design flow rate.
  3. Gas:
    - a. Carbon Dioxide: Within **[50]** **<Insert value>** ppm.

- b. Carbon Monoxide: Within [5] <Insert number> percent of reading.
  - c. Oxygen: Within [5] <Insert number> percent of reading.
  - d. Refrigerant: Within [50] <Insert value> ppm.
4. Moisture (Relative Humidity):
  - a. Air: Within [5] [2] <Insert number> percent RH.
  - b. Space: Within [5] [2] <Insert number> percent RH.
  - c. Outdoor: Within [5] [2] <Insert number> percent RH.
5. Level: Within [5] [2] <Insert number> percent of reading.
6. Pressure:
  - a. Air, Ducts and Equipment: [1] [0.5] <Insert number> percent of instrument [range] [span].
  - b. Space: Within [1] [0.5] [0.25] <Insert number> percent of instrument [range] [span].
  - c. Water: Within [1] [0.5] [0.25] <Insert number> percent of instrument [range] [span].
  - d. Steam: Within [1] [0.5] [0.25] <Insert number> percent of instrument [range] [span].
7. Speed: Within [10] [5] <Insert number> percent of reading.
8. Temperature, Dew Point:
  - a. Air: Within [1 deg F] [0.5 deg F] <Insert value>.
  - b. Space: Within [1 deg F] [0.5 deg F] <Insert value>.
  - c. Outdoor: Within [3 deg F] [2 deg F] <Insert value>.
9. Temperature, Dry Bulb:
  - a. Air: Within [1 deg F] [0.5 deg F] <Insert value>.
  - b. Space: Within [1 deg F] [0.5 deg F] <Insert value>.
  - c. Outdoor: Within [2 deg F] [1 deg F] <Insert value>.
  - d. Chilled Water: Within [1 deg F] [0.5 deg F] <Insert value>.
  - e. Condenser Water: Within [1 deg F] [0.5 deg F] <Insert value>.
  - f. Heating Hot Water: Within [1 deg F] [0.5 deg F] <Insert value>.
  - g. Energy Recovery Runaround Liquid: Within [1 deg F] [0.5 deg F] <Insert value>.
  - h. Steam: Within [2 deg F] [1 deg F] <Insert value>.
  - i. Temperature Difference: Within [0.25 deg F] <Insert value>.
  - j. <Insert system>.
  - k. Other Temperatures Not Indicated: Within [1 deg F] [0.5 deg F] <Insert value>.
10. Temperature, Wet Bulb:
  - a. Air: Within [1 deg F] [0.5 deg F] <Insert value>.
  - b. Space: Within [1 deg F] [0.5 deg F] <Insert value>.
  - c. Outdoor: Within [2 deg F] [1 deg F] <Insert value>.
11. Vibration: Within [5] [10] <Insert number> percent of reading.

- J. Precision of I/O Reported Values: Values reported in database and displayed shall have following precision:
1. Current:
    - a. Milliampere: Nearest 1/100th of a milliampere.
    - b. Amperes: Nearest 1/10th of an ampere up to 100 A; nearest ampere for 100 A and more.
  2. Energy:
    - a. Electric Power:
      - 1) Rate (Watts): Nearest 1/10th of a watt through 1000 W.
      - 2) Rate (Kilowatts): Nearest 1/10th of a kilowatt through 1000 kW; nearest kilowatt above 1000 kW.
      - 3) Usage (Kilowatt-Hours): Nearest kilowatt through 10,000 kW; nearest 10 kW between 10,000 and 100,000 kW; nearest 100 kW for above 100,000 kW.
    - b. Thermal, Rate:
      - 1) Heating: For Btu/h, nearest Btu/h up to 1000 Btu/h; nearest 10 Btu/h between 1000 and 10,000 Btu/h; nearest 100 Btu/h for above 10,000 Btu/h. For Mbh, round to nearest Mbh up to 1000 Mbh; nearest 10 Mbh between 1000 and 10,000 Mbh; nearest 100 Mbh above 10,000 Mbh.
      - 2) Cooling: For tons, nearest ton up to 1000 tons; nearest 10 tons between 1000 and 10,000 tons; nearest 100 tons above 10,000 tons.
    - c. Thermal, Usage:
      - 1) Heating: For Btu, nearest Btu up to 1000 Btu; nearest 10 Btu between 1000 and 10,000 Btu; nearest 100 Btu for above 10,000 Btu. For Mbtu, round to nearest Mbtu up to 1000 Mbtu; nearest 10 Mbtu between 1000 and 10,000 Mbtu; nearest 100 Mbtu above 10,000 Mbtu.
      - 2) Cooling: For ton-hours, nearest ton-hours up to 1000 ton-hours; nearest 10 ton-hours between 1000 and 10,000 ton-hours; nearest 100 tons above 10,000 tons.
  3. Flow:
    - a. Air: Nearest 1/10th of a cfm through 100 cfm; nearest cfm between 100 and 1000 cfm; nearest 10 cfm between 1000 and 10,000 cfm; nearest 100 cfm above 10,000 cfm.
    - b. Water: Nearest 1/10th gpm through 100 gpm; nearest gpm between 100 and 1000 gpm; nearest 10 gpm between 1000 and 10,000 gpm; nearest 100 gpm above 10,000 gpm.
    - c. Steam: Nearest 1/10th lb/hr through 100 lbs/hr; nearest lbs/hr between 100 and 1000 lbs/hr; nearest 10 lbs/hr above 1000 lbs/hr.
  4. Gas:

- a. Carbon Dioxide (ppm): Nearest ppm.
  - b. Carbon Monoxide (ppm): Nearest ppm.
  - c. Oxygen (Percentage): Nearest 1/10th of 1 percent.
  - d. Refrigerant (ppm): Nearest ppm.
5. Moisture (Relative Humidity):
- a. Relative Humidity (Percentage): Nearest 1 percent.
6. Level: Nearest 1/100th of an inch through 10 inches; nearest 1/10 of an inch between 10 and 100 inches; nearest inch above 100 inches.
7. Speed:
- a. Rotation (rpm): Nearest 1 rpm.
  - b. Velocity: Nearest 1/10th fpm through 100 fpm; nearest fpm between 100 and 1000 fpm; nearest 10 fpm above 1000 fpm.
8. Position, Dampers and Valves (Percentage Open): Nearest 1 percent.
9. Pressure:
- a. Air, Ducts and Equipment: Nearest 1/10th in. w.c..
  - b. Space: Nearest 1/100th in. w.c..
  - c. Steam: Nearest 1/10th psig through 100 psig; nearest psig above 100 psig.
  - d. Water: Nearest 1/10 psig through 100 psig; nearest psig above 100 psig.
10. Temperature:
- a. Air, Ducts and Equipment: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
  - b. Outdoor: Nearest degree.
  - c. Space: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
  - d. Chilled Water: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
  - e. Condenser Water: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
  - f. Heating Hot Water: Nearest degree.
  - g. Heat Recovery Runaround: Nearest 1/10th of a degree.
  - h. Steam: Nearest degree.
11. Vibration: Nearest 1/10th in/s.
12. Voltage: Nearest 1/10 volt up to 100 V; nearest volt above 100 V.
- K. Control Stability: Control variables indicated within the following limits:
1. Flow:
    - a. Air, Ducts and Equipment, except Terminal Units: Within [5] [2] <Insert number> percent of design flow rate.
    - b. Air, Terminal Units: Within [10] [5] <Insert number> percent of design flow rate.
    - c. Water: Within [2] [5] <Insert number> percent of design flow rate.
    - d. Steam: Within [5] <Insert number> percent of design flow rate.
  2. Gas:

- a. Carbon Dioxide: Within [50] <Insert value> ppm.
  - b. Carbon Monoxide: Within [5] <Insert number> percent of reading.
  - c. Oxygen: Within [5] <Insert number> percent of reading.
3. Moisture (Relative Humidity):
- a. Air: Within [5] [2] <Insert number> percent RH.
  - b. Space: Within [5] [2] <Insert number> percent RH.
  - c. Outdoor: Within [5] [2] <Insert number> percent RH.
4. Level: Within [5] [2] <Insert number> percent of reading.
5. Pressure:
- a. Air, Ducts and Equipment: [1] [0.5] <Insert number> percent of instrument [range] [span].
  - b. Space: Within [1] [0.5] [0.25] <Insert number> percent of instrument [range] [span].
  - c. Water: Within [1] [0.5] [0.25] <Insert number> percent of instrument [range] [span].
  - d. Steam: Within [1] [0.5] [0.25] <Insert number> percent of instrument [range] [span].
6. Temperature, Dew Point:
- a. Air: Within [1 deg F] [0.5 deg F] <Insert value>.
  - b. Space: Within [1 deg F] [0.5 deg F] <Insert value>.
7. Temperature, Dry Bulb:
- a. Air: Within [2 deg F] [1 deg F] [0.5 deg F] <Insert value>.
  - b. Space: Within [2 deg F] [1 deg F] [0.5 deg F] <Insert value>.
  - c. Chilled Water: Within [1 deg F] [0.5 deg F] <Insert value>.
  - d. Condenser Water: Within [1 deg F] [0.5 deg F] <Insert value>.
  - e. Heating Hot Water: Within [2 deg F] [1 deg F] [0.5 deg F] <Insert value>.
  - f. Energy Recovery Runaround Liquid: Within [1 deg F] [0.5 deg F] <Insert value>.
  - g. <Insert system>.
8. Temperature, Wet Bulb:
- a. Air: Within [1 deg F] [0.5 deg F] <Insert value>.
  - b. Space: Within [1 deg F] [0.5 deg F] <Insert value>.
- L. Environmental Conditions for Controllers, Gateways, and Routers:
1. Products shall operate without performance degradation under ambient environmental temperature, pressure and humidity conditions encountered for installed location.
    - a. If product alone cannot comply with requirement, install product in a protective enclosure that is isolated and protected from conditions impacting performance.

Enclosure shall be internally insulated, electrically heated, cooled and ventilated as required by product and application.

2. Products shall be protected with enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Products not available with integral enclosures complying with requirements indicated shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures. Installed location shall dictate the following NEMA 250 enclosure requirements:
  - a. Outdoors, Protected: **[Type 2] [Type 3] [Type 12] <Insert type>**.
  - b. Outdoors, Unprotected: **[Type 4] [Type 4X]**.
  - c. Indoors, Heated with Filtered Ventilation: **[Type 1] [Type 2] <Insert type>**.
  - d. Indoors, Heated with Non-Filtered Ventilation: **[Type 2] [Type 12] <Insert type>**.
  - e. Indoors, Heated and Air Conditioned: **[Type 1] <Insert type>**.
  - f. Mechanical Equipment Rooms:
    - 1) Chiller and Boiler Rooms: **[Type 12] [Type 4] [Type 4X] <Insert type>**.
    - 2) Air-Moving Equipment Rooms: **[Type 1] [Type 2] [Type 12] <Insert type>**.
  - g. Localized Areas Exposed to Washdown: **[Type 4] [Type 4X] <Insert type>**.
  - h. Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Not Exposed to Possible Condensation: **[Type 2] [Type 3] [Type 12] <Insert type>**.
  - i. Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Exposed to Possible Condensation: **[Type 4] [Type 4X] <Insert type>**.
  - j. Hazardous Locations: Explosion-proof rating for condition.
  - k. **<Insert location and enclosure requirements>**.

M. Environmental Conditions for Instruments and Actuators:

1. Instruments and actuators shall operate without performance degradation under the ambient environmental temperature, pressure, humidity, and vibration conditions specified and encountered for installed location.
  - a. If instruments and actuators alone cannot comply with requirement, install instruments and actuators in protective enclosures that are isolated and protected from conditions impacting performance. Enclosure shall be internally insulated, electrically heated[, cooled] and ventilated as required by instrument and application.
2. Instruments, actuators and accessories shall be protected with enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Instruments and actuators not available with integral enclosures complying with requirements indicated shall be housed in protective secondary enclosures. Installed location shall dictate the following NEMA 250 enclosure requirements:
  - a. Outdoors, Protected: **[Type 2] [Type 3] [Type 12] <Insert type>**.
  - b. Outdoors, Unprotected: **[Type 4] [Type 4X]**.
  - c. Indoors, Heated with Filtered Ventilation: **[Type 1] [Type 2] <Insert type>**.
  - d. Indoors, Heated with Non-Filtered Ventilation: **[Type 2] [Type 12] <Insert type>**.
  - e. Indoors, Heated and Air-conditioned: **[Type 1] <Insert type>**.

- f. Mechanical Equipment Rooms:
    - 1) Chiller and Boiler Rooms: [**Type 12**] [**Type 4**] [**Type 4X**] <Insert type>.
    - 2) Air-Moving Equipment Rooms: [**Type 1**] [**Type 2**] [**Type 12**] <Insert type>.
  - g. Localized Areas Exposed to Washdown: [**Type 4**] [**Type 4X**] <Insert type>.
  - h. Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Not Exposed to Possible Condensation: [**Type 2**] [**Type 3**] [**Type 12**] <Insert type>.
  - i. Within Duct Systems and Air-Moving Equipment Exposed to Possible Condensation: [**Type 4**] [**Type 4X**] <Insert type>.
  - j. Hazardous Locations: Explosion-proof rating for condition.
  - k. <Insert location and enclosure requirements>.
- N. DDC System Reliability:
- 1. Design, install and configure DDC controllers, [gateways,] [routers,] [and] <Insert product> to yield a MTBF of at least [40,000] [20,000] <Insert number> hours, based on a confidence level of at least [90] <Insert number> percent. MTBF value shall include any failure for any reason to any part of products indicated.
  - 2. If required to comply with MTBF indicated, include DDC system and product redundancy to maintain DCC system, and associated systems and equipment that are being controlled, operational and under automatic control.
  - 3. Critical systems and equipment that require a higher degree of DDC system redundancy than MTBF indicated shall be indicated on Drawings.
- O. Electric Power Quality:
- 1. Power-Line Surges:
    - a. Protect [**susceptible**] DDC system products connected to ac power circuits from power-line surges to comply with requirements of IEEE C62.41.
    - b. Do not use fuses for surge protection.
    - c. Test protection in the normal mode and in the common mode, using the following two waveforms:
      - 1) 10-by-1000-mic.sec. waveform with a peak voltage of 1500 V and a peak current of 60 A.
      - 2) 8-by-20-mic.sec. waveform with a peak voltage of 1000 V and a peak current of 500 A.
  - 2. Power Conditioning:
    - a. Protect [**susceptible**] DDC system products connected to ac power circuits from irregularities and noise rejection. Characteristics of power-line conditioner shall be as follows:
      - 1) At 85 percent load, output voltage shall not deviate by more than plus or minus 1 percent of nominal when input voltage fluctuates between minus 20 percent to plus 10 percent of nominal.

- 2) During load changes from zero to full load, output voltage shall not deviate by more than plus or minus 3 percent of nominal.
  - 3) Accomplish full correction of load switching disturbances within five cycles, and 95 percent correction within two cycles of onset of disturbance.
  - 4) Total harmonic distortion shall not exceed 3-1/2 percent at full load.
3. Ground Fault: Protect products from ground fault by providing suitable grounding. Products shall not fail due to ground fault condition.

P. Backup Power Source:

1. HVAC systems and equipment served by a backup power source shall have associated DDC system products that control such systems and equipment also served from a backup power source.

Q. UPS:

1. DDC system products powered by UPS units shall include the following:
  - a. Desktop workstations.
  - b. Printers.
  - c. Servers.
  - d. Gateways.
  - e. DDC controllers[, **except application-specific controllers**].
2. DDC system instruments and actuators powered by UPS units shall include the following:
  - a. Instruments associated with the following systems controlled by DDC system:
    - 1) **<Insert list of systems>**.
  - b. Dampers and actuators associated with the following systems controlled by DDC system:
    - 1) **<Insert list of systems>**.
  - c. Valves and actuators associated with the following systems controlled by DDC system:
    - 1) **<Insert list of systems>**.

R. Continuity of Operation after Electric Power Interruption:

1. Equipment and associated factory-installed controls, field-installed controls, electrical equipment, and power supply connected to building normal and backup power systems shall automatically return equipment and associated controls to operating state occurring immediately before loss of normal power, without need for manual intervention by operator when power is restored either through backup power source or through normal power if restored before backup power is brought online.

## 2.5 PANEL-MOUNTED, MANUAL OVERRIDE SWITCHES

### A. Manual Override of Control Dampers:

1. Include panel-mounted, two-position, selector switch for each automatic control damper being controlled by DDC controller.
2. Label each switch with damper designation served by switch.
3. Label switch positions to indicate either "Manual" or "Auto" control signal to damper.
4. With switch in "Auto" position signal to control damper actuator shall be control loop output signal from DDC controller.
5. With switch in "Manual" position, signal to damper actuator shall be controlled at panel with either an integral or separate switch to include local control.
  - a. For Binary Control Dampers: Manual two-position switch shall have "Close" and "Open" switch positions indicated. With switch in "Close" position, damper shall close. With switch in "Open" position, damper shall open.
  - b. For Analog Control Dampers: A gradual switch shall have "Close" and "Open" switch limits indicated. Operator shall be able to rotate switch knob to adjust damper to any position from close to open.
6. DDC controller shall monitor and report position of each manual override selector switch. With switch placed in "manual" position, DDC controller shall signal an override condition to alert operator that damper is under manual, not automatic, control.
7. Configure manual override switches to allow operator to manually operate damper while at panel without DDC controller **[installed] [and] [operational]**.
8. Terminal equipment including **[VAV units,] [fan-coil units,] [and] [unit heaters]** do not require manual override unless otherwise indicated by sequence of operation.

### B. Manual Override of Control Valves:

1. Include panel-mounted, two-position, selector switch for each automatic control valve being controlled by a DDC controller.
2. Label each switch with valve designation served by switch.
3. Label switch positions to indicate either "Manual" or "Auto" control signal to valve.
4. With switch in "Auto" position, signal to control-valve actuator shall be a control loop output signal from DDC controller.
5. With switch in "Manual" position, signal to valve actuator shall be controlled at panel with either an integral or a separate switch to include local control.
  - a. For Binary Control Dampers: Manual two-position switch shall have "Close" and "Open" switch positions indicated. With switch in "Close" position, damper shall close. With switch in "Open" position, damper shall open.
  - b. For Analog Control Dampers: A gradual switch shall have "Open" and "Close" switch limits indicated. Operator shall be able to rotate switch knob to adjust damper to any position from close to open.
6. DDC controller shall monitor and report position of each manual override selector switch. With switch placed in "manual" position, DDC controller shall signal an override condition to alert operator that valve is under manual, not automatic, control.
7. Configure manual override switches to allow operator to manually operate valve while at panel without DDC controller **[installed] [and] [operational]**.

8. Terminal equipment including [VAV units,] [fan-coil units,] [and] [unit heaters] do not require manual override unless otherwise indicated by sequence of operation.

## 2.6 SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE

- A. System architecture shall consist of no more than [two] [or] [three] <Insert number> levels of LANs.
  1. Level one LAN shall connect network controllers and operator workstations.
  2. [Level one] [or] [Level two] LAN shall connect programmable application controllers to other programmable application controllers, and to network controllers.
  3. [Level two] [or] [Level three] LAN shall connect application-specific controllers to programmable application controllers and network controllers.
  4. [Level two] [or] [Level three] LAN shall connect application-specific controllers to application-specific controllers.
- B. Minimum Data Transfer and Communication Speed:
  1. LAN Connecting Operator Workstations and Network Controllers: [100] [10] [2.5] [1.25] <Insert value> Mbps.
  2. LAN Connecting Programmable Application Controllers: [1000] [100] <Insert value> kbps.
  3. LAN Connecting Application-Specific Controllers: [115,000] [76,800] [38,400] [19,200] <Insert value> bps.
- C. DDC system shall consist of dedicated[ and separated] LANs that are not shared with other building systems and tenant data and communication networks.
- D. System architecture shall be modular and have inherent ability to expand to not less than [two] [three] <Insert number> times system size indicated with no impact to performance indicated.
- E. System architecture shall perform modifications without having to remove and replace existing network equipment.
- F. Number of LANs and associated communication shall be transparent to operator. All I/O points residing on any LAN shall be capable of global sharing between all system LANs.
- G. System design shall eliminate dependence on any single device for system alarm reporting and control execution. Each controller shall operate independently by performing its' own control, alarm management and historical data collection.
- H. Special Network Architecture Requirements:
  1. Air-Handling Systems: For control applications of an air-handling system that consists of air-handling unit(s) and VAV terminal units, include a dedicated LAN of application-specific controllers serving VAV terminal units connected directly to controller that is controlling air-handling system air-handling unit(s). Basically, create a DDC system LAN that aligns with air-handling system being controlled.
  2. <Insert additional requirements>.

## 2.7 DDC SYSTEM OPERATOR INTERFACES

- A. Operator Means of System Access: Operator shall be able to access entire DDC system through any of multiple means, including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Desktop and portable workstation with hardwired connection through LAN port.
  2. Portable operator terminal with hardwired connection through LAN port.
  3. Portable operator workstation with wireless connection through LAN router.
  4. Mobile device and application with secured wireless connection through LAN router or cellular data service.
  5. Remote connection through web access.
- B. Access to system, regardless of operator means used, shall be transparent to operator.
- C. Network Ports: For hardwired connection of desktop or portable workstation. Network port shall be easily accessible, properly protected, clearly labeled, and installed at the following locations:
1. Each mechanical equipment room.
  2. Each boiler room.
  3. Each chiller room or outdoor chiller yard.
  4. Each cooling tower location.
  5. Each different roof level with roof-mounted air-handling units or rooftop units.
  6. Security system command center.
  7. Fire-alarm system command center.
- D. Desktop Workstations:
1. Connect to DDC system Level one LAN through a communications port directly on LAN or through a communications port on a DDC controller.
  2. Able to communicate with any device located on any DDC system LAN.
- E. Portable Workstations:
1. Connect to DDC system Level one LAN through a communications port directly on LAN or through a communications port on a DDC controller.
  2. Able to communicate with any device located on any DDC system LAN.
  3. Connect to DDC system [**Level two**] [**or**] [**Level three**] LAN through a communications port on an application-specific controller, or a room temperature sensor connected to an application-specific controller.
  4. Connect to system through a wireless router connected to Level one LAN.
  5. Connect to system through a cellular data service.
  6. Portable workstation shall be able to communicate with any device connected to any system LAN regardless of point of physical connection to system.
  7. Monitor, program, schedule, adjust set points, and report capabilities of I/O connected anywhere in system.
  8. Have dynamic graphic displays that are identical to desktop workstations.
- F. POT:
1. Connect DDC controller through a communications port local to controller.

2. Able to communicate with any DDC system controller that is directly connected [**or with LAN**] [**or connected to DDC system**].

G. Mobile Device:

1. Connect to system through a wireless router connected to LAN [**and cellular data service**].
2. Able to communicate with any DDC controller connected to DDC system using [**a dedicated application**] [**and**][**secure web access**].

H. Telephone Communications:

1. Through use of a standard modem, operator shall be able to communicate with any device connected to any system LAN.
2. Have auto-dial and auto-answer communications to allow desktop and portable workstations and DDC controllers to communicate with remote workstations and remote DDC controllers via telephone lines.

a. Desktop and Portable Workstations:

- 1) Operators shall be able to perform all control functions, report functions, and database generation and modification functions as if directly connected to system LAN.
- 2) Have routines to automatically answer calls, and either file or display information sent remotely.
- 3) Communications taking place over telephone lines shall be completely transparent to operator.
- 4) Dial-up program shall maintain a user-definable cross-reference and associated telephone numbers so it is not required to remember or manually dial telephone numbers.

b. DDC Controllers:

- 1) Not have modems unless specifically indicated for a unique controller.
- 2) Controllers with modems shall automatically place calls to report critical alarms, or to upload trend and historical information for archiving.
- 3) Analyze and prioritize alarms to minimize initiation of calls.
- 4) Buffer noncritical alarms in memory and report them as a group of alarms, or until an operator manually requests an upload.
- 5) Make provisions for handling busy signals, no-answers, and incomplete data transfers.
- 6) Call default devices when communications cannot be established with primary devices.

I. Critical Alarm Reporting:

1. Operator-selected critical alarms shall be sent by DDC system to notify operator of critical alarms that require immediate attention.
2. DDC system shall send alarm notification to multiple recipients that are assigned for each alarm.

3. DDC system shall notify recipients by any or all means, including e-mail, text message and prerecorded phone message to mobile and landline phone numbers.

- J. Simultaneous Operator Use: Capable of accommodating up to **[five] [10] [20] <Insert number>** simultaneous operators that are accessing DDC system through any one of operator interfaces indicated.

## 2.8 NETWORKS

- A. Acceptable networks for connecting workstations, mobile devices, and network controllers include the following:

1. ATA 878.1, ARCNET.
2. CEA-709.1-C.
3. IP.
4. IEEE 8802-3, Ethernet.
5. **<Insert type>**.

- B. Acceptable networks for connecting programmable application controllers include the following:

1. ATA 878.1, ARCNET.
2. CEA-709.1-C.
3. IP.
4. IEEE 8802-3, Ethernet.
5. **<Insert type>**.

- C. Acceptable networks for connecting application-specific controllers include the following:

1. ATA 878.1, ARCNET.
2. CEA-709.1-C.
3. EIA-485A.
4. IP.
5. IEEE 8802-3, Ethernet.
6. **<Insert type>**.

## 2.9 NETWORK COMMUNICATION PROTOCOL

- A. Network communication protocol(s) used throughout entire DDC system shall be open to Owner and available to other companies for use in making future modifications to DDC system.

- B. ASHRAE 135 Protocol:

1. ASHRAE 135 communication protocol shall be sole and native protocol used throughout entire DDC system.
2. DDC system shall not require use of gateways except to integrate HVAC equipment and other building systems and equipment, not required to use ASHRAE 135 communication protocol.

3. If used, gateways shall connect to DDC system using ASHRAE 135 communication protocol and Project object properties and read/write services indicated by interoperability schedule.
4. Operator workstations, controllers and other network devices shall be tested and listed by BACnet Testing Laboratories.

C. CEA-709.1-C Protocol:

1. DDC system shall be an open implementation of LonWorks technology using CEA 709.1-C communication protocol and using LonMark SNVTs as defined in LonMark SNVT list exclusively for communication throughout DDC system.
2. LNS shall be used for all network management including addressing and binding of network variables.
  - a. Final LNS database shall be submitted with Project closeout submittals.
  - b. All devices shall be online and commissioned into LNS database.
3. All devices connected to DDC system network(s) shall use CEA-709.1-C protocol and be installed so SCPT output from any node on network can be bound to any other node in the domain.

D. Industry Standard Protocols:

1. DDC system shall use any one or a combination of the following industry standard protocols for network communication while complying with other DDC system requirements indicated:
  - a. ASHRAE 135.
  - b. CEA-709.1-C.
  - c. Modbus Application Protocol Specification V1.1b.
  - d. **<Insert standard protocol>**.
2. Operator workstations [**and network controllers**] shall communicate through [**ASHRAE 135**] [**or**] [**CEA-709.1-C**] protocol.
3. Portions of DDC system networks using ASHRAE 135 communication protocol shall be an open implementation of network devices complying with ASHRAE 135. Network devices shall be tested and listed by BACnet Testing Laboratories.
4. Portions of DDC system networks using CEA-709.1-C communication protocol shall be an open implementation of LonWorks technology using CEA-709.1-C communication protocol and using LonMark SNVTs as defined in LonMark SNVT list exclusively for DDC system.
5. Portions of DDC system networks using Modbus Application Protocol Specification V1.1b communication protocol shall be an open implementation of network devices and technology complying with Modbus Application Protocol Specification V1.1b.
6. Gateways shall be used to connect networks and network devices using different protocols.

## 2.10 DDC SYSTEM WIRELESS NETWORKS

- A. Use [Zigbee] [or] [an open industry standard and technology used by multiple DDC system manufacturers] <Insert wireless technology> technology to create a wireless mesh network to provide wireless connectivity for network devices at multiple system levels including communications from programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers to temperature sensors and from network controllers to programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers.
- B. Installer shall design wireless networks to comply with DDC system performance requirements indicated. Wireless network devices shall co-exist on same network with hardwired devices.
- C. Hardwired controllers shall be capable of retrofit to wireless devices with no special software.
- D. A wireless coordinator shall provide a wireless interface between programmable application controllers, application-specific controllers, and network controllers.
- E. Wireless Coordinators:
  - 1. Each wireless mesh network shall use wireless coordinator(s) for initiation and formation of network.
  - 2. Use direct sequence spread spectrum RF technology.
  - 3. Operate on the 2.4-GHz ISM Band.
  - 4. Comply with IEEE 802.15.4 for low-power, low duty-cycle RF transmitting systems.
  - 5. FCC compliant to 47 CFR 15, Subpart B, Class A.
  - 6. Operate as a bidirectional transceiver with sensors and routers to confirm and synchronize data transmission.
  - 7. Capable of communication with sensors and routers up to a maximum distance of 250 feet in line of sight.
  - 8. Include visual indicators to provide diagnostic information required for operator verification of operation.
- F. Wireless Routers:
  - 1. Each wireless mesh network shall use wireless routers with any controller to provide a wireless interface to a network controller, through a wireless coordinator.
  - 2. Use direct sequence spread spectrum RF technology.
  - 3. Operate on the 2.4-GHz ISM Band.
  - 4. Comply with IEEE 802.15.4 for low-power, low duty-cycle RF transmitting systems.
  - 5. FCC compliant to 47 CFR 15, Subpart B, Class A.
  - 6. Operate as a bidirectional transceiver with other mesh network devices to ensure network integrity.
  - 7. Capable of communication with other mesh network devices at a maximum distance of 250 feet in line of sight.
  - 8. Include indication for use in commissioning and troubleshooting.
- G. Wireless Temperature Sensors:
  - 1. Wireless temperature sensors shall sense and transmit room temperatures, temperature set point, room occupancy notification and low battery condition to an associated router.
  - 2. Use direct sequence spread spectrum RF technology.

3. Operate on the 2.4-GHz ISM Band.
4. Comply with IEEE 802.15.4 for low-power, low duty-cycle RF transmitting systems.
5. FCC compliant to CFR 15, Subpart B, Class A.
6. Include set point adjustment between 55 to 85 deg F.
7. Multiple sensors shall be able to report to a router connected to a DDC controller for averaging or high and low selection.

H. One-to-One Wireless Network Receivers:

1. One-to-one wireless receivers shall receive wireless RF signals containing temperature data from multiple wireless room temperature sensors and communicate information to programmable application controllers or application-specific controllers.
  - a. Use direct sequence spread spectrum RF technology.
  - b. Operate on the 2.4-GHz ISM Band.
  - c. Comply with IEEE 802.15.4 for low-power, low duty-cycle RF transmitting systems.
  - d. FCC compliant to 47 CFR 15, Subpart B, Class A.
  - e. Operate as a bidirectional transceiver with the sensors to confirm and synchronize data transmission.
  - f. Capable of communication up to a distance of 200 feet.
  - g. Include visual indication of the following:
    - 1) Power.
    - 2) Receiver activity.
    - 3) Wireless RF transmission from wireless sensors.
    - 4) No transmission, weak signal, adequate signal or excellent signal.

I. One-to-One Wireless Network Sensors:

1. One-to-one wireless sensors shall sense and report room temperatures to one-to-one receiver.
  - a. Use direct sequence spread spectrum RF technology.
  - b. Operate on the 2.4-GHz ISM Band.
  - c. Comply with IEEE 802.15.4 for low-power, low duty-cycle RF transmitting systems.
  - d. FCC compliant to CFR 15, Subpart B, Class A.
  - e. Include set point adjustment between 55 to 85 deg F.

2.11 DESKTOP WORKSTATIONS

- A. Description: A tower or all-in-one computer designed for normal use at a single, semipermanent location.
- B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. Performance Requirements:

1. Performance requirements may dictate equipment exceeding minimum requirements indicated.
2. Energy Star compliant.

D. Personal Computer:

1. Minimum Processor Speed: **<Insert gigahertz>**.
2. RAM:
  - a. Capacity: **[2] [4] [8] <Insert value> [GB]**.
  - b. Speed and Type: **[1333] <Insert value> MHz, <Insert type>**.
3. Hard Drive:
  - a. Media: **[Solid state] [Rotating disc, nominal rotational speed of 7200 rpm] [Hybrid solid-state and rotating disc]**.
  - b. Number of Hard Drives: **[One] [Two] <Insert number>**.
  - c. Capacity: **<Insert number and measurement unit>**.
  - d. Minimum Average Seek Time: **<Insert number and measurement unit>**.
  - e. Cache Buffer Size: **<Insert number and measurement unit>**.
  - f. **<Insert requirements>**.
4. Second Hard Drive:
  - a. Media: **[Solid state] [Rotating disc, nominal rotational speed of 7200 rpm] [Hybrid solid-state and rotating disc]**.
  - b. Capacity: **<Insert number and measurement unit>**.
  - c. Minimum Average Seek Time: **<Insert number and measurement unit>**.
  - d. Cache Buffer Size: **<Insert number and measurement unit>**.
  - e. **<Insert requirements>**.
5. Optical Drive:
  - a. Type: **<Insert type>**.
  - b. Minimum Average Access Time: **<Insert number> ms**.
  - c. Data Transfer Speed: **<Insert number> [MB] [TB]/s**.
  - d. Reading Formats: Data, audio, recordable, **<Insert other>** and rewritable.
6. Optical Read and Write Drive:
  - a. Include with at least 2 MB of data buffer.
  - b. Type: **<Insert type>**.
  - c. Minimum Data Buffer Capacity: **<Insert number and measurement unit>**.
  - d. Minimum Average Access Time: **<Insert number> ms**.
  - e. Nominal Data Transfer Rates:
    - 1) Reading: **<Insert number> [MB] [TB]/s**.
    - 2) Writing: **<Insert number> [MB] [TB]/s**.
  - f. Average access time of 150 ms or less.
  - g. MTBF of at least 100,000 power-on hours.

7. At least four expansion slots of [32] [64] <Insert number> bit.
  8. Video Card:
    - a. Resolution: [1920 by 1200] <Insert values> pixels.
    - b. RAM: <Insert number> [MB] [GB] [TB].
    - c. Controller Speed: <Insert number> [MHz] [GHz].
    - d. On-Board Memory Speed: <Insert number> [MHz] [GHz].
    - e. On-Board Memory Data Width: <Insert number> bit.
  9. Sound Card:
    - a. At least 128 voice wavetable synthesis.
    - b. Capable of delivering three-dimensional sound effects.
    - c. High-resolution 16-bit stereo digital audio recording and playback with user-selectable sample rates up to 48,000 Hz.
  10. Network Interface Card: Include card with connection, as applicable.
    - a. 10-100-1000 base TX Ethernet with RJ45 connector port.
    - b. 100 base FX Ethernet with SC or ST port.
- E. Wireless Ethernet, 802.11 a/b/g/n.
1. Optical Modem: Full duplex link for connection to optical fiber cable provided.
  2. I/O Ports:
    - a. Two USB 3.0 ports on front panel, six on back panel, and three internal on motherboard.
    - b. One serial port.
    - c. One parallel port.
    - d. Two PS/2 ports.
    - e. One RJ-45.
    - f. One stereo line-in and headphone/line-out on back panel.
    - g. One microphone and headphone connector on front panel.
    - h. One IEEE 1394 on front and back panel with PCI-e card.
    - i. One ESATA port on back panel.
  3. Battery: Life of at least three years to maintain system clock/calendar and ROM, as a minimum.
- F. Keyboard:
1. 101 enhanced keyboard.
  2. Full upper- and lowercase ASCII keyset, numeric keypad, dedicated cursor control keypad, and 12 programmable function keys.
  3. Wireless operation within up to 72 inches in front of workstation.
- G. Pointing Device:
1. Either a two- or three-button mouse.
  2. Wireless operation within up to 72 inches in front of workstation.

H. Flat Panel Display Monitor:

1. Display:
  - a. Color display with **<Insert inches>** diagonal viewable area.
  - b. **[Digital]** [or] **[analog]** input signal.
  - c. Aspect Ratio: **[16 to 9]** **<Insert value>**.
  - d. Antiglare display.
  - e. Response Time: **<Insert number>** ms.
  - f. Dynamic Contrast Ratio: **[50000 to 1]** **<Insert ratio>**.
  - g. Brightness: **[250 cd/sq. m]** **<Insert value>**.
  - h. Tilt adjustable base.
  - i. Energy Star compliant.
  - j. Resolution: **[1920 by 1080]** **<Insert value>** pixels at 60 Hz with pixel size of **[0.277]** **<Insert number>** mm or smaller.
  - k. Number of Displays: **[One]** **[Two]** **<Insert number>**.

I. Speakers:

1. Two, with individual controls for volume, bass and treble.
2. Signal to Noise Ratio: At least 65 dB.
3. Power: At least 4 W per speaker/channel.
4. Magnetic shielding to prevent distortion on the video monitor.

J. I/O Cabling: Include applicable cabling to connect I/O devices.

2.12 PORTABLE WORKSTATIONS

A. Description: A self-contained computer designed to allow for normal use in different locations and conditions.

B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

C. Performance Requirements:

1. Performance requirements may dictate equipment exceeding minimum requirements indicated.
2. Energy Star compliant.
3. Hardware and software shall support local down-loading to DDC controllers.
4. Data transfer rate to DDC controller shall be at network speed.

D. Processor:

1. Minimum Processor Speed: **<Insert gigahertz>**.
2. RAM:
  - a. Capacity: **<Insert value>** **[GB]** **[TB]**.
  - b. Speed and Type: **<Insert value>** MHz, **<Insert type>**.
3. Hard Drive:

- a. Number of Hard Drives: [**One**] [**Two**] <Insert number>.
  - b. Capacity: <Insert number and measurement unit>.
  - c. Minimum Average Seek Time: <Insert number and measurement unit>.
  - d. Cache Buffer Size: <Insert number and measurement unit>.
  - e. <Insert requirements>.
4. Video Card: <Insert number and measurement unit> of RAM.
- E. Input and Output Ports:
1. Serial port.
  2. Shared port for external keyboard or mouse.
  3. Four USB 3.0 ports.
  4. Ethernet port.
  5. HDMI port.
  6. IEEE 1394 port.
- F. Battery:
1. Capable of supporting operation of portable workstation for a minimum of [**8**] <Insert number> hours.
  2. Battery life of at least three years.
  3. Battery charge time of less than three hours.
  4. Spare Battery(ies). [**One**] [**Two**].
- G. Keyboard:
1. 85-key [**backlit**] keyboard.
  2. Full upper- and lowercase ASCII keyset.
- H. Integral Pointing Device: Touchpad with two buttons. Gesture enabled.
- I. Display:
1. <Insert inches> diagonal or larger high-definition WLED color display.
  2. Antiglare screen.
  3. [**1920 by 1080**] <Insert value> pixel resolution.
  4. Brightness: 300 nits.
- J. Network Interfaces:
1. Network Interface Card: Include card with connection, as application.
    - a. 10-100-1000 base TX Ethernet with RJ45 connector port.
    - b. 100 base FX Ethernet with SC or ST port.
  2. Wireless:
    - a. Internal with integrated antenna, capable of supporting 802.11 a/b/g/n.
- K. Digital Video Disc Rewrite Recorder (DVD+/-RW):

1. Compatible with DVD disks and data, audio, recordable and rewritable compact disks.
2. Nominal Data Transfer Rates:
  - a. Reading: <Insert number> [MB] [TB]/s.
  - b. Writing: <Insert number> [MB] [TB]/s.
3. 160-ms access time.

L. Accessories:

1. Nylon carrying case.
2. Docking station.
3. Mobile broadband card.
4. Wireless optical mouse.
5. <Insert value> [GB] [TB] portable hard drive.
6. Light-sensitive web cam and noise-cancelling digital array microphone.
7. Category 6a patch cable. Minimum cable length shall be <Insert length>.
8. HDMI cable. Minimum cable length shall be <Insert length>.

2.13 PORTABLE OPERATOR TERMINAL

- A. Description: Handheld device with integral keypad or touch screen operator interface.
- B. Display: Multiple lines of text display for use in operator interaction with DDC system.
- C. Cable: Flexible [**coiling**] cable, at least 36 inches long, with a plug-in jack for connection to DDC controllers, network ports or instruments with an integral LAN port. As an alternative to hardwired connection, POT shall be accessible to DDC controllers through a wireless network connection.
- D. POT shall be powered through network connection.
- E. Connection of POT to DDC system shall not interrupt or interfere with normal network operation in any way, prevent alarms from being transmitted, or preclude central initiated commands and system modification.
- F. POT shall give operator the ability to do the following:
  1. Display and monitor BI point status.
  2. Change BO point set point (on or off, open or closed).
  3. Display and monitor analog point values.
  4. Change analog control set points.
  5. Command a setting of AO point.
  6. Display and monitor I/O point in alarm.
  7. Add a new or delete an existing I/O point.
  8. Enable and disable I/O points, initiators, and programs.
  9. Display and change time and date.
  10. Display and change time schedules.
  11. Display and change run-time counters and run-time limits.
  12. Display and change time and event initiation.

13. Display and change control application and DDC parameters.
14. Display and change programmable offset values.
15. Access DDC controller initialization routines and diagnostics.
16. **<Insert requirements>**.

## 2.14 SERVERS

- A. Description: x86 based permanently installed computer used for client-server computing.
- B. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. Mounting: [**Rack**] [**Blade**] [**Tower**] [**Tower able to be rack-mounted**].
- D. Power: [**Single**] [**Dual**] power supply, minimum 300 W.
- E. Performance Requirements:
  1. Performance requirements may dictate equipment exceeding minimum requirements indicated.
  2. Energy Star compliant.
  3. Minimum Processor Speed: **<Insert gigahertz>**.
  4. RAM:
    - a. Capacity: **<Insert value>** [**GB**] [**TB**].
    - b. Speed and Type: **<Insert value>** MGz, **<Insert type>**.
    - c. Expandable Capacity: **<Insert value>** [**GB**] [**TB**].
  5. Redundant Array of Independent Disks: [**Zero**] [**One**] [**Two**] [**Three**] [**Four**] [**Five**] **<Insert number>** configuration.
  6. Drive Bays: Eight at 2.5 inches or eight at 3.5 inches.
  7. Hard-Drive Storage: [**Two**] [**Three**] [**Four**] drives each with **<Insert value>** [**GB**] [**TB**] storage and nominal rotational speed of 7200 rpm.
  8. Network Interface: [**Dual port Gigabit Ethernet**] [**Optical fiber**].
  9. DVD +RW Drive.
  10. Color, flat-screen display with **<Insert inches>** diagonal viewable area.
  11. Keyboard and mouse.
  12. Next-day on-site warranty for [**two**] [**three**] **<Insert number>**-year period following Substantial Completion.
- F. Servers shall include the following:
  1. Full-feature backup server (server and backup minimum requirement).
  2. Software licenses.
  3. Cable installation between server(s) and network.
- G. Web Server:
  1. If required to be separate, include Web server hardware and software to match, except backup server is not required.
  2. Firewalls between server Web and networks.

3. Password protection for access to server from Web server.
4. Cable installation between the server(s) and building Ethernet network.

H. Power each server through a [**dedicated**]UPS unit.

## 2.15 PRINTERS

A. Black and White Laser Printer:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. [**1200 by 1200**] <Insert value> dots per inch resolution.
3. First sheet printed within 10 seconds.
4. <Insert number> page per minute rated print speed at best quality mode.
5. Print buffer with at least <Insert value> MB of RAM, expandable to at least 288 MBs.
6. Complies with Energy Star requirements.
7. Capable of handling letter- and legal-size paper and overhead transparencies.
8. Two paper trays; one tray with <Insert number> sheet capacity, and one tray with <Insert number> sheet capacity.
9. At least <Insert number> page toner/cartridge capacity.

B. Color Laser Printer:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. [**1200 by 1200**] <Insert value> dots per inch resolution black and white, [**1200 by 1200**] <Insert value> dots per inch resolution black and white and color.
3. First sheet printed within 10 seconds.
4. <Insert number> page per minute rated print speed at best quality mode.
5. Print buffer with at least [**512**] <Insert value> MB of RAM, expandable to at least [**one**] <Insert value> GB.
6. Complies with Energy Star requirements.
7. Capable of handling letter- and legal-size paper and overhead transparencies.
8. Two paper trays; one tray with <Insert number> sheet capacity, and one tray with 500 <Insert number> sheet capacity.
9. Two-sided printing.
10. At least <Insert number> page toner/cartridge capacity.

C. Color Inkjet Printer:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Inkjet technology with true four-color printing (black, cyan, magenta, and yellow).
3. Print quality of [**1200 by 600**] <Insert value> dots per inch with black on inkjet paper and [**4800 by 1200**] <Insert value> dots per inch color printing on premium photo paper.
4. Rated speed of <Insert number> pages per minute printing black and white in normal mode and <Insert number> pages per minute printing color in normal mode.
5. Two paper trays; one tray with <Insert number> sheet capacity, and one tray with <Insert number> sheet capacity.
6. Capable of handling letter- and legal-size paper and overhead transparencies.
7. <Insert number> MB of RAM.
8. Duplex printing (printing on both sides of paper).

D. Dot Matrix Printer:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Letter-quality, wide-carriage, 24-pin dot matrix printer.
3. **<Insert number>** kb print buffer.
4. Minimum Print Speed:
  - a. 330 characters per second (draft).
  - b. 110 characters per second (letter quality).
5. Seven print fonts.
6. Continuous - forms feed with manual single sheet feed.
7. Capable of handling 16-inch-wide continuous-feed paper.

2.16 SYSTEM SOFTWARE

A. System Software Minimum Requirements:

1. Real-time multitasking and multiuser [~~32-~~] [**or**] [~~64-~~]bit operating system that allows concurrent multiple operator workstations operating and concurrent execution of multiple real-time programs and custom program development.
2. Operating system shall be capable of operating DOS and Microsoft Windows applications.
3. Database management software shall manage all data on an integrated and non-redundant basis. Additions and deletions to database shall be without detriment to existing data. Include cross linkages so no data required by a program can be deleted by an operator until that data have been deleted from respective programs.
4. Network communications software shall manage and control multiple network communications to provide exchange of global information and execution of global programs.
5. Operator interface software shall include day-to-day operator transaction processing, alarm and report handling, operator privilege level and data segregation control, custom programming, and online data modification capability.
6. Scheduling software shall schedule centrally based time and event, temporary, and exception day programs.

B. Operator Interface Software:

1. Minimize operator training through use of English language prorating and English language point identification.
2. Minimize use of a typewriter-style keyboard through use of a pointing device similar to a mouse.
3. Operator sign-off shall be a manual operation or, if no keyboard or mouse activity takes place, an automatic sign-off.
4. Automatic sign-off period shall be programmable from one to 60 minutes in one-minute increments on a per operator basis.
5. Operator sign-on and sign-off activity shall be recorded and sent to printer.
6. Security Access:
  - a. Operator access to DDC system shall be under password control.

- b. An alphanumeric password shall be field assignable to each operator.
  - c. Operators shall be able to access DDC system by entry of proper password.
  - d. Operator password shall be same regardless of which computer or other interface means is used.
  - e. Additions or changes made to passwords shall be updated automatically.
  - f. Each operator shall be assigned an access level to restrict access to data and functions the operator is cable of performing.
  - g. Software shall have at least five access levels.
  - h. Each menu item shall be assigned an access level so that a one-for-one correspondence between operator assigned access level(s) and menu item access level(s) is required to gain access to menu item.
  - i. Display menu items to operator with those capable of access highlighted. Menu and operator access level assignments shall be online programmable and under password control.
7. Data Segregation:
- a. Include data segregation for control of specific data routed to a workstation, to an operator or to a specific output device, such as a printer.
  - b. Include at least [32] <Insert number> segregation groups.
  - c. Segregation groups shall be selectable such as "fire points," "fire points on second floor," "space temperature points," "HVAC points," and so on.
  - d. Points shall be assignable to multiple segregation groups. Display and output of data to printer or monitor shall occur where there is a match of operator or peripheral segregation group assignment and point segregations.
  - e. Alarms shall be displayed and printed at each peripheral to which segregation allows, but only those operators assigned to peripheral and having proper authorization level will be allowed to acknowledge alarms.
  - f. Operators and peripherals shall be assignable to multiple segregation groups and all assignments are to be online programmable and under password control.
8. Operators shall be able to perform commands including, but not limited to, the following:
- a. Start or stop selected equipment.
  - b. Adjust set points.
  - c. Add, modify, and delete time programming.
  - d. Enable and disable process execution.
  - e. Lock and unlock alarm reporting for each point.
  - f. Enable and disable totalization for each point.
  - g. Enable and disable trending for each point.
  - h. Override control loop set points.
  - i. Enter temporary override schedules.
  - j. Define holiday schedules.
  - k. Change time and date.
  - l. Enter and modify analog alarm limits.
  - m. Enter and modify analog warning limits.
  - n. View limits.
  - o. Enable and disable demand limiting.
  - p. Enable and disable duty cycle.
  - q. Display logic programming for each control sequence.
  - r. <Insert requirements>.

9. Reporting:
  - a. Generated automatically and manually.
  - b. Sent to displays, printers and disk files.
  - c. Types of Reporting:
    - 1) General listing of points.
    - 2) List points currently in alarm.
    - 3) List of off-line points.
    - 4) List points currently in override status.
    - 5) List of disabled points.
    - 6) List points currently locked out.
    - 7) List of items defined in a "Follow-Up" file.
    - 8) List weekly schedules.
    - 9) List holiday programming.
    - 10) List of limits and deadbands.
10. Summaries: For specific points, for a logical point group, for an operator selected group(s), or for entire system without restriction due to hardware configuration.

C. Graphic Interface Software:

1. Include a full interactive graphical selection means of accessing and displaying system data to operator. Include at least five levels with the penetration path operator assignable (for example, site, building, floor, air-handling unit, and supply temperature loop). Native language descriptors assigned to menu items are to be operator defined and modifiable under password control.
2. Include a hierarchical-linked dynamic graphic operator interface for accessing and displaying system data and commanding and modifying equipment operation. Interface shall use a pointing device with pull-down or penetrating menus, color and animation to facilitate operator understanding of system.
3. Include at least 10 levels of graphic penetration with the hierarchy operator assignable.
4. Descriptors for graphics, points, alarms and such shall be modified through operator's workstation under password control.
5. Graphic displays shall be online user definable and modifiable using the hardware and software provided.
6. Data to be displayed within a graphic shall be assignable regardless of physical hardware address, communication or point type.
7. Graphics are to be online programmable and under password control.
8. Points may be assignable to multiple graphics where necessary to facilitate operator understanding of system operation.
9. Graphics shall also contain software points.
10. Penetration within a graphic hierarchy shall display each graphic name as graphics are selected to facilitate operator understanding.
11. Back-trace feature shall permit operator to move upward in the hierarchy using a pointing device. Back trace shall show all previous penetration levels. Include operator with option of showing each graphic full screen size with back trace as horizontal header or by showing a "stack" of graphics, each with a back trace.
12. Display operator accessed data on the monitor.

13. Operator shall select further penetration using pointing device to click on a site, building, floor, area, equipment, and so on. Defined and linked graphic below that selection shall then be displayed.
14. Include operator with means to directly access graphics without going through penetration path.
15. Dynamic data shall be assignable to graphics.
16. Display points (physical and software) with dynamic data provided by DDC system with appropriate text descriptors, status or value, and engineering unit.
17. Use color, rotation, or other highly visible means, to denote status and alarm states. Color shall be variable for each class of points, as chosen by operator.
18. Points shall be dynamic with operator adjustable update rates on a per point basis from [one] <Insert value> second to over a [minute] <Insert value>.
19. For operators with appropriate privilege, points shall be commanded directly from display using pointing device.
  - a. For an analog command point such as set point, current conditions and limits shall be displayed and operator can position new set point using pointing device.
  - b. For a digital command point such as valve position, valve shall show its current state such as open or closed and operator could select alternative position using pointing device.
  - c. Keyboard equivalent shall be available for those operators with that preference.
20. Operator shall be able to split or resize viewing screen into quadrants to show one graphic on one quadrant of screen and other graphics or spreadsheet, bar chart, word processing, curve plot and other information on other quadrants on screen. This feature shall allow real-time monitoring of one part of system while displaying other parts of system or data to better facilitate overall system operation.
21. Help Features:
  - a. On-line context-sensitive help utility to facilitate operator training and understanding.
  - b. Bridge to further explanation of selected keywords. Document shall contain text and graphics to clarify system operation.
    - 1) If help feature does not have ability to bridge on keywords for more information, a complete set of user manuals shall be provided in an indexed word-processing program, which shall run concurrently with operating system software.
  - c. Available for Every Menu Item:
    - 1) Index items for each system menu item.
22. Graphic generation software shall allow operator to add, modify, or delete system graphic displays.
  - a. Include libraries of symbols depicting HVAC symbols such as fans, coils, filters, dampers, valves pumps, and electrical symbols[ **similar to those indicated**].
  - b. Graphic development package shall use a pointing device in conjunction with a drawing program to allow operator to perform the following:

- 1) Define background screens.
- 2) Define connecting lines and curves.
- 3) Locate, orient and size descriptive text.
- 4) Define and display colors for all elements.
- 5) Establish correlation between symbols or text and associated system points or other displays.

D. Project-Specific Graphics: Graphics documentation including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Site plan showing each building, and additional site elements, which are being controlled or monitored by DDC system.
2. Plan for each building floor, including interstitial floors, and each roof level of each building, showing the following:
  - a. Room layouts with room identification and name.
  - b. Locations and identification of all monitored and controlled HVAC equipment and other equipment being monitored and controlled by DDC system.
  - c. Location and identification of each hardware point being controlled or monitored by DDC system.
  - d. **<Insert requirements>**.
3. Control schematic for each of following, including a graphic system schematic representation[, **similar to that indicated on Drawings,**] with point identification, set point and dynamic value indication[, **sequence of operation**] **[and] [control logic diagram]**.
4. Graphic display for each piece of equipment connected to DDC system through a data communications link. Include dynamic indication of all points associated with equipment.
5. DDC system network riser diagram that shows schematic layout for entire system including all networks and all controllers, **[gateways] [operator workstations] [and] [other network devices]**.

E. Customizing Software:

1. Software to modify and tailor DDC system to specific and unique requirements of equipment installed, to programs implemented and to staffing and operational practices planned.
2. Online modification of DDC system configuration, program parameters, and database using menu selection and keyboard entry of data into preformatted display templates.
3. As a minimum, include the following modification capability:
  - a. Operator assignment shall include designation of operator passwords, access levels, point segregation and auto sign-off.
  - b. Peripheral assignment capability shall include assignment of segregation groups and operators to consoles and printers, designation of backup workstations and printers, designation of workstation header points and enabling and disabling of print-out of operator changes.
  - c. System configuration and diagnostic capability shall include communications and peripheral port assignments, DDC controller assignments to network, DDC controller enable and disable, assignment of command trace to points and application programs and initiation of diagnostics.

- d. System text addition and change capability shall include English or native language descriptors for points, segregation groups and access levels and action messages for alarms, run time and trouble condition.
- e. Time and schedule change capability shall include time and date set, time and occupancy schedules, exception and holiday schedules and daylight savings time schedules.
- f. Point related change capability shall include the following:
  - 1) System and point enable and disable.
  - 2) Run-time enable and disable.
  - 3) Assignment of points to segregation groups, calibration tables, lockout, and run time and to a fixed I/O value.
  - 4) Assignment of alarm and warning limits.
- g. Application program change capability shall include the following:
  - 1) Enable and disable of software programs.
  - 2) Programming changes.
  - 3) Assignment of comfort limits, global points, time and event initiators, time and event schedules and enable and disable time and event programs.
4. Software shall allow operator to add points, or groups of points, to DDC system and to link them to energy optimization and management programs. Additions and modifications shall be online programmable using operator workstation, downloaded to other network devices and entered into their databases. After verification of point additions and associated program operation, database shall be uploaded and recorded on hard drive and disk for archived record.
5. Include high-level language programming software capability for implementation of custom DDC programs. Software shall include a compiler, linker, and up- and down-load capability.
6. Include a library of DDC algorithms, intrinsic control operators, arithmetic, logic and relational operators for implementation of control sequences. Also include, as a minimum, the following:
  - a. Proportional control (P).
  - b. Proportional plus integral (PI).
  - c. Proportional plus integral plus derivative (PID).
  - d. Adaptive and intelligent self-learning control.
    - 1) Algorithm shall monitor loop response to output corrections and adjust loop response characteristics according to time constant changes imposed.
    - 2) Algorithm shall operate in a continuous self-learning manner and shall retain in memory a stored record of system dynamics so that on system shut down and restart, learning process starts from where it left off.
7. Fully implemented intrinsic control operators including sequence, reversing, ratio, time delay, time of day, highest select AO, lowest select AO, analog controlled digital output, analog control AO, and digitally controlled AO.
8. Logic operators such as "And," "Or," "Not," and others that are part of a standard set available with a high-level language.

9. Arithmetic operators such as "Add," "Subtract," "Multiply," "Divide," and others that are part of a standard set available with a high-level language.
10. Relational operators such as "Equal To," "Not Equal To," "Less Than," "Greater Than," and others that are part of a standard set available with a high-level language.

F. Alarm Handling Software:

1. Include alarm handling software to report all alarm conditions monitored and transmitted through DDC controllers[, gateways] [**and other network devices**].
2. Include first in, first out handling of alarms according to alarm priority ranking, with most critical alarms first, and with buffer storage in case of simultaneous and multiple alarms.
3. Alarm handling shall be active at all times to ensure that alarms are processed even if an operator is not currently signed on to DDC system.
4. Alarms display shall include the following:
  - a. Indication of alarm condition such as "Abnormal Off," "Hi Alarm," and "Low Alarm."
  - b. "Analog Value" or "Status" group and point identification with native language point descriptor such as "Space Temperature, Building 110, 2nd Floor, Room 212."
  - c. Discrete per point alarm action message, such as "Call Maintenance Dept. Ext-5561."
  - d. Include extended message capability to allow assignment and printing of extended action messages. Capability shall be operator programmable and assignable on a per point basis.
5. Alarms shall be directed to appropriate operator workstations, printers, and individual operators by privilege level and segregation assignments.
6. Send e-mail alarm messages to designated operators.
7. Send e-mail, page, text and voice messages to designated operators for critical alarms.
8. Alarms shall be categorized and processed by class.
  - a. Class 1:
    - 1) Associated with fire, security and other extremely critical equipment monitoring functions; have alarm, trouble, return to normal, and acknowledged conditions printed and displayed.
    - 2) Unacknowledged alarms to be placed in unacknowledged alarm buffer.
    - 3) All conditions shall cause an audible sound and shall require individual acknowledgment to silence audible sound.
  - b. Class 2:
    - 1) Critical, but not life-safety related, and processed same as Class 1 alarms, except do not require individual acknowledgment.
    - 2) Acknowledgement may be through a multiple alarm acknowledgment.
  - c. Class 3:

- 1) General alarms; printed, displayed and placed in unacknowledged alarm buffer queues.
  - 2) Each new alarm received shall cause an audible sound. Audible sound shall be silenced by "acknowledging" alarm or by pressing a "silence" key.
  - 3) Acknowledgement of queued alarms shall be either on an individual basis or through a multiple alarm acknowledgement.
  - 4) Alarms returning to normal condition shall be printed and not cause an audible sound or require acknowledgment.
- d. Class 4:
- 1) Routine maintenance or other types of warning alarms.
  - 2) Alarms to be printed only, with no display, no audible sound and no acknowledgment required.
9. Include an unacknowledged alarm indicator on display to alert operator that there are unacknowledged alarms in system. Operator shall be able to acknowledge alarms on an individual basis or through a multiple alarm acknowledge key, depending on alarm class.
10. To ensure that no alarm records are lost, it shall be possible to assign a backup printer to accept alarms in case of failure of primary printer.

G. Reports and Logs:

1. Include reporting software package that allows operator to select, modify, or create reports using DDC system I/O point data available.
2. Each report shall be definable as to data content, format, interval and date.
3. Report data shall be sampled and stored on DDC controller, within storage limits of DDC controller, and then uploaded to archive on **[workstation]** **[server]** for historical reporting.
4. Operator shall be able to obtain real-time logs of all I/O points by type or status, such as alarm, point lockout, or normal.
5. Reports and logs shall be stored on **[workstation]** **[and]** **[server]** hard drives in a format that is readily accessible by other standard software applications, including spreadsheets and word processing.
6. Reports and logs shall be readily printed and set to be printed either on operator command or at a specific time each day.

H. Standard Reports: Standard DDC system reports shall be provided and operator shall be able to customize reports later.

1. All I/O: With current status and values.
2. Alarm: All current alarms, except those in alarm lockout.
3. Disabled I/O: All I/O points that are disabled.
4. Alarm Lockout I/O: All I/O points in alarm lockout, whether manual or automatic.
5. Alarm Lockout I/O in Alarm: All I/O in alarm lockout that are currently in alarm.
6. Logs:
  - a. Alarm history.
  - b. System messages.
  - c. System events.
  - d. Trends.

- I. Custom Reports: Operator shall be able to easily define any system data into a daily, weekly, monthly, or annual report. Reports shall be time and date stamped and shall contain a report title.
- J. Tenant Override Reports: Prepare Project-specific reports.
  - 1. Weekly report showing daily total time in hours that each tenant has requested after-hours HVAC.
  - 2. Monthly report showing daily total time in hours that each tenant has requested after-hours HVAC.
  - 3. Annual summary report that shows after-hours HVAC usage on a monthly basis.
- K. HVAC Equipment Reports: Prepare Project-specific reports.
  - 1. Chiller Report: Daily report showing operating conditions of each chiller according to ASHRAE 147, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Chilled-water entering temperature.
    - b. Chilled-water leaving temperature.
    - c. Chilled-water flow rate.
    - d. Chilled-water inlet and outlet pressures.
    - e. Evaporator refrigerant pressure and temperature.
    - f. Condenser refrigerant pressure and liquid temperature.
    - g. Condenser-water entering temperature.
    - h. Condenser-water leaving temperature.
    - i. Condenser-water flow rate.
    - j. Refrigerant levels.
    - k. Oil pressure and temperature.
    - l. Oil level.
    - m. Compressor refrigerant discharge temperature.
    - n. Compressor refrigerant suction temperature.
    - o. Addition of refrigerant.
    - p. Addition of oil.
    - q. Vibration levels or observation that vibration is not excessive.
    - r. Motor amperes per phase.
    - s. Motor volts per phase.
    - t. Refrigerant monitor level (PPM).
    - u. Purge exhaust time or discharge count.
    - v. Ambient temperature (dry bulb and wet bulb).
    - w. Date and time logged.
  - 2. **<Insert requirements for each type of HVAC equipment requiring a report>.**
- L. Utility Reports: Prepare Project-specific reports.
  - 1. Electric Report:
    - a. Include weekly report showing daily electrical consumption and peak electrical demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
    - b. Include monthly report showing the daily electrical consumption and peak electrical demand with time and date stamp for each meter.

- c. Include annual report showing the monthly electrical consumption and peak electrical demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
  - d. For each weekly, monthly and annual report, include sum total of submeters combined by load type, such as lighting, receptacles and HVAC equipment showing daily electrical consumption and peak electrical demand.
  - e. For each weekly, monthly and annual report, include sum total of all submeters in building showing electrical consumption and peak electrical demand.
2. Natural Gas Report:
- a. Include weekly report showing daily natural gas consumption and peak natural gas demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
  - b. Include monthly report showing the daily natural gas consumption and peak natural gas demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
  - c. Include annual report showing the monthly natural gas consumption and peak natural gas demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
  - d. For each weekly, monthly and annual report, include sum total of submeters combined by load type, such as boilers and service water heaters showing daily natural gas consumption and peak natural gas demand.
  - e. For each weekly, monthly and annual report, include sum total of all submeters in building showing natural gas consumption and peak natural gas demand.
3. Service Water Report:
- a. Include weekly report showing daily service water consumption and peak service water demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
  - b. Include monthly report showing the daily service water consumption and peak service water demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
  - c. Include annual report showing the monthly service water consumption and peak service water demand with time and date stamp for each meter.
  - d. For each weekly, monthly and annual report, include sum total of submeters combined by load type, such as cooling tower makeup and irrigation showing daily service water consumption and peak service water demand.
  - e. For each weekly, monthly and annual report, include sum total of all submeters in building showing service water consumption and peak service water demand.
4. **<Insert requirements for each utility requiring a report>.**
- M. Energy Reports: Prepare Project-specific daily, weekly, monthly [**and annual**] [, **annual and since-installed**] energy reports.
1. Prepare report for each purchased energy utility, indicating the following:
    - a. Time period being reported with beginning and end date, and time indicated.
    - b. Consumption in units of measure commonly used to report specific utility consumption over time.
    - c. Gross area served by utility.
    - d. Consumption per unit area served using utility-specific unit of measure.
    - e. Cost per utility unit.
    - f. Utility cost per unit area.

- g. Convert all utilities to a common energy consumption unit of measure and report for each utility.
    - h. Consumption per unit area using common unit of measure.
  2. Prepare report for each renewable energy source, indicating the following:
    - a. Time period being reported with beginning and end date, and time indicated.
    - b. Harvested energy in units of measure commonly used to report specific harvested energy consumption over time.
    - c. Gross area served by renewable energy source.
    - d. Harvested energy per unit area served using specific unit of measure.
    - e. Cost per purchased utility unit displaced by renewable energy.
    - f. Cost savings attributed to harvested energy source.
    - g. Cost savings per unit area attributed to harvested energy.
    - h. Convert all renewable energy sources to a common energy consumption unit of measure and report for each.
    - i. Harvested energy per unit area using common unit of measure.
  3. Prepare purchased energy utility report for each submetered area that indicates the following:
    - a. Time period being reported with beginning and end date, and time indicated.
    - b. Gross area served.
    - c. Energy consumption by energy utility type.
    - d. Energy consumption per unit area by energy utility type.
    - e. Total energy consumption of all utilities in common units of measure.
    - f. Total energy consumption of all utilities in common units of measure per unit area.
    - g. Unit energy cost by energy utility type.
    - h. Energy cost by energy utility type.
    - i. Energy cost per unit area by energy utility type.
    - j. Total cost of all energy utilities.
    - k. Total cost of all energy utilities per unit area.
  4. Prepare Project total purchased energy utility report that combines all purchased energy utilities and all areas served. Project total energy report shall indicate the following:
    - a. Time period being reported with beginning and end date, and time indicated.
    - b. Gross area served.
    - c. Energy consumption by energy utility type.
    - d. Energy consumption per unit area by energy utility type.
    - e. Total energy consumption of all utilities in common units of measure.
    - f. Total energy consumption of all utilities in common units of measure per unit area.
    - g. Unit energy cost by energy utility type.
    - h. Energy cost by energy utility type.
    - i. Energy cost per unit area by energy utility type.
    - j. Total cost of all energy utilities.
    - k. Total cost of all energy utilities per unit area.
- N. HVAC System Efficiency Reports: Prepare Project-specific **[daily] [weekly] [monthly] [and annual] [, annual and since-installed]** HVAC system efficiency reports.

1. Prepare report for [**each**] chilled-water system, indicating the following:
    - a. Time period being reported with beginning and end date, and time indicated.
    - b. Cooling energy supplied during time period.
    - c. Power energy consumed during time period by cooling equipment used to produce cooling energy supplied. [**List power consumed for each individual piece of equipment in system and summed total of all equipment in system.**]
    - d. Energy efficiency coefficient of performance determined by dividing power energy consumed into cooling energy supplied.
    - e. Energy efficiency determined by dividing cooling energy supplied into power energy consumed.
    - f. Units of measure used in report shall be consistent with units indicated for system.
  
  2. Prepare report for [**each**] hot-water system, indicating the following:
    - a. Time period being reported with beginning and end date, and time indicated.
    - b. Cooling energy supplied during time period.
    - c. Fuel consumed during time period by boilers used to produce heating energy supplied. [**List fuel consumed for each individual piece of equipment in system and summed total of all equipment in system.**]
    - d. Energy efficiency determined by dividing heating energy supplied into fuel energy consumed.
    - e. Units of measure used in report shall be consistent with units indicated for system.
  
  3. Prepare report for [**each**] steam system, indicating the following:
    - a. Time period being reported with beginning and end date, and time indicated.
    - b. Cooling energy supplied during time period.
    - c. Fuel consumed during time period by boilers used to produce heating energy supplied. [**List fuel consumed for each individual piece of equipment in system and summed total of all equipment in system.**]
    - d. Energy efficiency determined by dividing heating energy supplied into fuel energy consumed.
    - e. Units of measure used in report shall be consistent with units indicated for system.
  
  4. <Insert requirements for each HVAC system requiring a report>.
- O. PUE Reports: Prepare Project-specific [**daily**] [**weekly**] [**monthly**] [**and annual**] [, **annual and since-installed**] PUE reports.
1. Prepare separate report for each [**tenant**] <Insert category>.
  2. Prepare Project PUE report that combines PUE and all tenants served.
  3. Calculate PUE following guidelines in [**The Green Grid, White Paper No. 22**] <Insert requirements>.
- P. Weather Reports:
1. Include daily report showing the following:
    - a. Daily minimum, maximum, and average outdoor dry-bulb temperature.
    - b. Daily minimum, maximum, and average outdoor wet-bulb temperature.

- c. Daily minimum, maximum, and average outdoor dew point temperature.
  - d. Number of heating degree-days for each day calculated from a base temperature of **[55 deg F]** <Insert temperature>.
  - e. Number of cooling degree-days for each day calculated from a base temperature of **[65 deg F]** <Insert temperature>.
  - f. Daily minimum, maximum, and average outdoor carbon dioxide level.
  - g. Daily minimum, maximum, and average relative humidity.
  - h. Daily minimum, maximum, and average barometric pressure.
  - i. Daily minimum, maximum, and average wind speed and direction.
2. Include weekly report showing the following:
- a. Daily minimum, maximum, and average outdoor dry-bulb temperature.
  - b. Daily minimum, maximum, and average outdoor wet-bulb temperature.
  - c. Daily minimum, maximum, and average outdoor dew point temperature.
  - d. Number of heating degree-days for each day calculated from a base temperature of **[55 deg F]** <Insert temperature>.
  - e. Number of cooling degree-days for each day calculated from a base temperature of **[65 deg F]** <Insert temperature>.
  - f. Weekly minimum, maximum, and average outdoor carbon dioxide level.
  - g. Daily minimum, maximum, and average relative humidity.
  - h. Daily minimum, maximum, and average barometric pressure.
  - i. Daily minimum, maximum, and average wind speed and direction.
3. Include monthly report showing the following:
- a. Daily minimum, maximum, and average outdoor dry-bulb temperature.
  - b. Daily minimum, maximum, and average outdoor wet-bulb temperature.
  - c. Daily minimum, maximum, and average outdoor dew point temperature.
  - d. Number of heating degree-days for each day calculated from a base temperature of **[55 deg F]** <Insert temperature>.
  - e. Number of cooling degree-days for each day calculated from a base temperature of **[65 deg F]** <Insert temperature>.
  - f. Monthly minimum, maximum, and average outdoor carbon dioxide level.
  - g. Daily minimum, maximum, and average relative humidity.
  - h. Daily minimum, maximum, and average barometric pressure.
  - i. Daily minimum, maximum, and average wind speed and direction.
4. Include annual (12-month) report showing the following:
- a. Monthly minimum, maximum, and average outdoor dry-bulb temperature.
  - b. Monthly minimum, maximum, and average outdoor wet-bulb temperature.
  - c. Monthly minimum, maximum, and average outdoor dew point temperature.
  - d. Number of heating degree-days for each month calculated from a base temperature of **[55 deg F]** <Insert temperature>.
  - e. Number of cooling degree-days for each month calculated from a base temperature of **[65 deg F]** <Insert temperature>.
  - f. Annual minimum, maximum, and average outdoor carbon dioxide level.
  - g. Monthly minimum, maximum, and average relative humidity.
  - h. Daily minimum, maximum, and average barometric pressure.
  - i. Daily minimum, maximum, and average wind speed and direction.

Q. Standard Trends:

1. Trend all I/O point present values, set points, and other parameters indicated for trending.
2. Trends shall be associated into groups, and a trend report shall be set up for each group.
3. Trends shall be stored within DDC controller and uploaded to hard drives automatically on reaching [75] <Insert value> of DDC controller buffer limit, or by operator request, or by archiving time schedule.
4. Preset trend intervals for each I/O point after review with Owner.
5. Trend intervals shall be operator selectable from 10 seconds up to 60 minutes. Minimum number of consecutive trend values stored at one time shall be 100 per variable.
6. When drive storage memory is full, most recent data shall overwrite oldest data.
7. Archived and real-time trend data shall be available for viewing numerically and graphically by operators.

R. Custom Trends: Operator shall be able to define a custom trend log for any I/O point in DDC system.

1. Each trend shall include interval, start time, and stop time.
2. Data shall be sampled and stored on DDC controller, within storage limits of DDC controller, and then uploaded to archive on [workstation] [server] hard drives.
3. Data shall be retrievable for use in spreadsheets and standard database programs.

S. Programming Software:

1. Include programming software to execute sequences of operation indicated.
2. Include programming routines in simple and easy to follow logic with detailed text comments describing what the logic does and how it corresponds to sequence of operation.
3. Programming software shall be [as follows] [any of the following] [one of the following]:
  - a. Graphic Based: Programming shall use a library of function blocks made from preprogrammed code designed for DDC control systems.
    - 1) Function blocks shall be assembled with interconnection lines that represent to control sequence in a flowchart.
    - 2) Programming tools shall be viewable in real time to show present values and logical results of each function block.
  - b. Menu Based: Programming shall be done by entering parameters, definitions, conditions, requirements and constraints.
  - c. Line by Line and Text Based: Programming shall declare variable types such as local, global, real, integer, and so on, at the beginning of the program. Use descriptive comments frequently to describe programming code.
4. Include means for detecting programming errors and testing software control strategies with a simulation tool before implementing in actual control. Simulation tool may be inherent with programming software or as a separate product.

T. Database Management Software:

1. Where a separate SQL database is used for information storage, DDC system shall include database management software that separates database monitoring and managing functions by supporting multiple separate windows.
2. Database secure access shall be accomplished using standard SQL authentication including ability to access data for use outside of DDC system applications.
3. Database management function shall include summarized information on trend, alarm, event, and audit for the following database management actions:
  - a. Backup.
  - b. Purge.
  - c. Restore.
4. Database management software shall support the following:
  - a. Statistics: Display database server information and trend, alarm, event, and audit information on database.
  - b. Maintenance: Include method of purging records from trend, alarm, event and audit databases by supporting separate screens for creating a backup before purging, selecting database, and allowing for retention of a selected number of day's data.
  - c. Backup: Include means to create a database backup file and select a storage location.
  - d. Restore: Include a restricted means of restoring a database by requiring operator to have proper security level.
5. Database management software shall include information of current database activity, including the following:
  - a. Ready.
  - b. Purging record from a database.
  - c. Action failed.
  - d. Refreshing statistics.
  - e. Restoring database.
  - f. Shrinking a database.
  - g. Backing up a database.
  - h. Resetting Internet information services.
  - i. Starting network device manager.
  - j. Shutting down the network device manager.
  - k. Action successful.
6. Database management software monitoring functions shall continuously read database information once operator has logged on.
7. Include operator notification through on-screen pop-up display and e-mail message when database value has exceeded a warning or alarm limit.
8. Monitoring settings window shall have the following sections:
  - a. Allow operator to set and review scan intervals and start times.
  - b. E-mail: Allow operator to create and review e-mail and phone text messages to be delivered when a warning or an alarm is generated.
  - c. Warning: Allow operator to define warning limit parameters, set reminder frequency and link e-mail message.

- d. Alarm: Allow operator to define alarm limit parameters, set reminder frequency and link e-mail message.
  - e. Database Login: Protect system from unauthorized database manipulation by creating a read access and a write access for each of trend, alarm, event and audit databases as well as operator proper security access to restore a database.
9. Monitoring settings taskbar shall include the following informational icons:
- a. Normal: Indicates by color and size, or other easily identifiable means that all databases are within their limits.
  - b. Warning: Indicates by color and size, or other easily identifiable means that one or more databases have exceeded their warning limit.
  - c. Alarm: Indicates by color and size, or other easily identifiable means that one or more databases have exceeded their alarm limit.

## 2.17 OFFICE APPLICATION SOFTWARE

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Include current version of office application software at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Office application software package shall include multiple separate applications and use a common platform for all applications, similar to Microsoft's "Office Professional."
  1. Database.
  2. E-mail.
  3. Presentation.
  4. Publisher.
  5. Spreadsheet.
  6. Word processing.

## 2.18 MAINTENANCE MANAGEMENT SOFTWARE

- A. Scope:
  1. Include complete and functional software-driven maintenance management system. Software shall perform scheduling of preventive maintenance and generation of work orders, for mechanical and electrical equipment and systems.
  2. Work orders shall be automatically generated from alarm conditions, run time, and calendar time. Each work order generated shall list parts, tools, craftspeople, and define task to be performed.
  3. Work order generated shall be used to schedule a repair or preventive maintenance routine.
  4. Work order shall be used to track completion of work, parts used and total cost of repair.
  5. A database shall include an inventory tracking system. Work orders generated shall automatically update inventory database to show quantity of tools, repair parts and expendables used for a work order.
  6. Work orders and preventive maintenance schedules shall be printed on a dedicated printer assigned solely to maintenance management function.

B. Additional Hardware Requirements:

1. Maintenance management software shall not require additional hardware, except for an additional printer that is dedicated to maintenance management.
2. Maintenance management software shall be integrated into DDC system.

C. Software Requirements:

1. From main menu of maintenance management system, it shall be possible through selection of icons to penetrate to individual functions described below.
2. Work Orders:
  - a. Automatically generate work orders initiated from alarm conditions, accumulated run time or calendar time. Work orders generated shall specify a particular task to be accomplished including the labor, material and tools needed to accomplish work.
  - b. Include at least two of the following types of work orders:
    - 1) Corrective and emergency maintenance work orders shall be generated for a specific job or repair for emergency, breakdown, or scheduled work.
    - 2) Preventive maintenance that are used on a periodic basis to generate preventive maintenance work orders.
  - c. Include the following functions:
    - 1) Work Order Tracking: Perform every function related to processing work orders including creating, approving and initiating work orders, checking their status history and closing or reworking them when appropriate.
    - 2) Work Requests: Report any problems that require corrective maintenance activity generated by dispatchers and those people designated to request work orders.
    - 3) Quick Reporting: Report work done on an open work order or a small job.
    - 4) Work Manager: Specify the type of labor to be applied to a specific work order at specific times. It shall include the capability to dispatch one or more laborers to top-priority jobs on as-needed basis and to interrupt work in progress to reassign labor to higher priority tasks.
  - d. Reports:
    - 1) Daily Maintenance Schedule by Supervisor: List a schedule of open work orders for a specified date by supervisor.
    - 2) Equipment Cost Roll-up Report: Include a roll-up of equipment costs incurred since the date the report was last run.
    - 3) Delinquent Work Order Report: List open work orders whose target completion date is earlier than the date the report is run.
    - 4) Employee Job Assignments: List labor codes that have job assignments for the specified date.
    - 5) Daily Work Order Assignment: List work orders that have labor assignments for the specified date.
    - 6) Estimated versus Actual Work Order Costs: List a cost summary of outstanding work orders.

- 7) Open Work Orders Report: List open work orders for locations and equipment.
3. Inventory:
- a. Include an inventory tracking system to keep track of stocked, non-stocked and special-order items.
  - b. Link inventory tracking to database and when items are consumed, as noted on a work order issued by system, inventory of stocked items shall be automatically updated.
  - c. Include the following functions:
    - 1) Inventory Control: Enter, display, and update information on each inventory item. It shall allow viewing of master inventory records that are independent of storeroom locations or item/location records. Include a screen that lists inventory transactions that move items in or out of inventory or from one storeroom location to another. Minimum information tracked shall include the following:
      - a) Vendors supply items.
      - b) Item balances, including the bin and lot level for each storeroom location.
      - c) Alternative items.
    - 2) Issues and Transfers: Issue stock directly from inventory, with or without a work order. When transfer of stock from one location to another location occurs, provide appropriate adjustments in stock balance record. Include a trace record of stock transfers from one storeroom to another.
    - 3) Item Assembly Structures: Include modeling of equipment with inventory items and building of equipment and location hierarchies.
    - 4) Metered Material Usage:
      - a) Track usage by a piece of equipment.
      - b) Record against a standing work order for a selected piece of equipment.
      - c) Material usage transaction shall be written for each item of material used and be provided as an input to calculation for per unit material consumption report for a piece of equipment.
  - d. Reports:
    - 1) Inventory Analysis Report: List for a given storeroom location, inventory items analysis information that allows quick identification of which inventory items represent greatest monetary investment for dollar value and rate of turnover.
    - 2) Inventory Cycle Count Report: List for a specified storeroom, inventory items that are due to be cycle-counted, based on cycle-count frequency and last count date.
    - 3) Economic Order Quantity Report: For a given storeroom location, display optimum economic ordering quantity for items in selected results set.

- 4) Inventory Pick Report: A pick list, by work order for items needed to be pulled from a designated storeroom's inventory for work orders having a target start date of specified date.
- 5) Suggested Order Report: List inventory items in selected results set that are due to be recorded, for a specified storeroom location, based on the following calculation: Suggest a reorder if current balance minus reserve quantity plus on-order quantity is less than reorder point.
- 6) Reorder Point Report: List selected set of items and optimum minimum level to have in stock based on demand, lead delivery time and a reserve safety stock.
- 7) Inventory Valuation Report: Gives an accounting of cost of current inventory, for inventory records in a designated storeroom location.
- 8) Item Order Status: Lists items on order.
- 9) List of Expired Items: Lists expired lot items in a storeroom. Report shall include item number, description, expiration date, bin number, lot number, manufacturer lot number, and quantity of expired items in that lot and bin.
- 10) Item Availability at All Locations: Lists alternative storeroom locations for selected items.
- 11) Where Used Report: List equipment on which item is recorded as being used.

4. Equipment:

- a. Include equipment and location records; establish relationships between equipment, between locations, and between equipment and locations; track maintenance costs; and enter and review meter readings.
- b. Include the following functions:
  - 1) Equipment: Store equipment numbers and corresponding information including equipment class, location, vendor, up/down status and maintenance costs for each piece of equipment. Include building of equipment assemblies. Equipment assemblies hierarchical ordering shall be provided for arrangement of buildings, departments, equipment and sub-assemblies.
  - 2) Operating Locations: Facilitate creation of records for operating locations of equipment, and track equipment that is used in multiple locations. In addition, allow hierarchical organization of equipment operating in facility by means of grouping equipment locations into areas of responsibility.
  - 3) Failure Codes: Develop and display failure hierarchies to acquire an accurate history of types of failures that affect equipment and operating locations.
  - 4) Condition Monitoring: Display time related or limit measurements recorded for a piece of equipment. It shall be possible to generate work orders from this screen and to take immediate action on problem conditions.
- c. Reports:
  - 1) Availability Statistic by Location: List equipment availability by location over a user-specified time period.
  - 2) Equipment Failure Summary: List total number of failures by problem code for a piece of equipment for a specified time period.

- 3) Detailed Equipment Failure Report by Equipment: List of failure reports for the current piece of equipment for a specified time period.
- 4) Equipment Hierarchy Report: List of equipment.
- 5) Equipment History Graphs: Include a graphical report in histogram format that displays equipment breakdown history over a specified period.
- 6) Equipment Measurement Report: Tabular listing and description of each measurement point for a piece of equipment and the history of measurements taken for that point.
- 7) Maintenance Cost by Equipment: List of transactions costs for elected equipment in the specified date range.
- 8) Failure Count by Equipment: Graphically report the number of failures for each piece of equipment showing number of failures for each piece of equipment over a specified time period, occurrence of each problem code within set of failures and failures by problem code.
- 9) Failure Analysis Graphs: Graphically report number of failures for each piece of equipment over a specified time period, number of occurrences of each problem code within set of failures and failures by problem code.
- 10) Failure Code Hierarchy Report: List of failure codes in each level of the failure hierarchy.
- 11) Location Failure Summary: A summary for each selected location of failures reported and any hierarchy level locations for specified time period.
- 12) Failure Summary by Location: A summary of failures for the selected location and their subordinate locations that are part of the hierarchical system.
- 13) Detailed Failure Report by Location: List all failures for selected location and its subordinate locations that are part of a hierarchical system.
- 14) Maintenance Cost by System: List of total costs reported in a given date range for locations in selected hierarchical system.
- 15) Location Hierarchy Report: Lists member locations of a hierarchical system displayed in hierarchical fashion.

5. Purchasing:

- a. Include preparation and generation of purchase requisitions and purchase orders; to report receipt of both items and services, match invoices with purchase orders and receipts and define and convert foreign currencies.
- b. Include the following functions:
  - 1) Purchase Requisition: Create and process purchase requisitions for items and services.
  - 2) Purchase Orders: Create and process purchase orders for items and services from scratch or from purchase requisitions. Record receipts of items and services.
  - 3) Invoices: Include functionality to match purchase orders with invoices and receipts. It shall also be possible to match a service receipt to an invoice. Project for entering of an invoice for bills that do not require purchase orders or receipts.
  - 4) Currency Management: Define currencies and specify exchange rates. Include preparation of purchase requisitions and purchase orders in currency of vendor, while tracking costs in systems base currency.

- c. Reports:
  - 1) Invoice Approval Report: Include an approval form for entered invoices.
  - 2) Inventory Receipts Register: List purchase orders and inventory received for the user-specified time frame.
  - 3) Direct Purchase Back-Order Report: List of items ordered as a direct purchase not received by the required delivery date.
  - 4) Standard Purchase Order: A printing of primary purchase order with vendors shipping information, and items purchased.
  - 5) Purchase Order Status Report: List of purchase orders whose status has changed during a certain time period.
  - 6) Standard Purchase Requisition: A printing of primary purchase requisition, including vendor name and shipping information.
  
- 6. Job Plans:
  - a. Include creation of a detailed description of work to be performed by a work order. The job plan shall contain operations, procedures and list of estimated material, labor and tools required for work.
  
- 7. Labor:
  - a. Store information on employees, contractors, and crafts and include the following functions:
    - 1) Labor: Create, modify and view employee records. Employee records shall contain pay rate, overtime worked, overtime refused, specials skills and certifications.
    - 2) Crafts: Create, modify and view craftspeople records.
    - 3) Labor Reporting: Report labor usage by employee or craft externally from the work orders module.
  
  - b. Reports:
    - 1) Employee Attendance Analysis: List of planned attendance, actual attendance, vacation and sick time in hours as a percentage of planned attendance for selected employees for specified time period.
    - 2) Labor Productivity Analysis: List of actual labor hours by labor report category showing each by percentage.
    - 3) Labor Availability versus Commitments by Crafts: A graphical report that details available labor hours versus committed work order hours by craft and day.
  
- 8. Calendars:
  - a. Establish calendar records indicating working time for equipment, location, craft, and labor records.
  
- 9. Resources:

- a. Include entry and retrieval of data associated with resources required to maintain facility and to include the following functions:
  - 1) Companies: Establish and update data on vendors and other companies.
  - 2) Tools: Create and maintain information on the tools used on jobs. The information contained within this module shall be available to job plans and work orders.
  - 3) Service Contracts: Specify information on service contracts with vendors or manufacturers.
10. Custom Applications:
  - a. Include creation of customized database tables and application screens that supplement functions specified.
11. Setup:
  - a. Include configuration of database, security and setup applications.
  - b. Perform the following functions:
    - 1) Reports and Other Applications: Register reports and other applications for use within system.
    - 2) Documents: Enter, track and link information from Drawings to equipment and inventory items.
    - 3) Chart of Accounts: Add or modify accounts; set up financial periods; enter inventory accounts, company accounts, and resource recovery accounts; and define tax codes and rates.
    - 4) Signature Security: Establish each user's access rights to modules, applications, screens and options.
    - 5) Database Configuration: Customize database, including adjusting field lengths and modifying data types.
    - 6) Application Setup: Change position of icons and menu items on the main menu screen.
    - 7) Application Launching: Allow for connecting of third-party applications to data fields and push buttons.
12. Utilities:
  - a. Include utilities module that allows system administrator to customize system and to maintain database.
  - b. Include the following functions:
    - 1) Interactive SQL: Include access to database for database management functions of import/export and backup.
    - 2) Edit Windows: Display a dialog box to customize an application.
    - 3) Archive Data: Remove records from database and store them for future reference.
- D. Documentation:

1. Include complete documentation for the system consisting of a User Manual and Systems Administrator Guide.
2. User Manual shall describe how to use each application module and screen with step-by-step instructions detailing entry and retrieval of data for functions specified.
3. Include a step-by-step description of how each report is defined and retrieved.
4. Bind documentation and clearly title it indicating volume number and use.

## 2.19 ASHRAE 135 GATEWAYS

- A. Include BACnet communication ports, whenever available as an equipment OEM standard option, for integration via a single communication cable. BACnet-controlled plant equipment includes, but is not limited to, boilers, chillers, **<Insert equipment,>** and variable-speed drives.
- B. Include gateways to connect BACnet to legacy systems, existing non-BACnet devices, and existing non-BACnet DDC-controlled equipment, only when specifically requested and approved by Owner.
- C. Include with each gateway an interoperability schedule showing each point or event on legacy side that BACnet "client" will read, and each parameter that BACnet network will write to. Describe this interoperability of BACnet services, or BIBBs, defined in ASHRAE 135, Annex K.
- D. Gateway Minimum Requirements:
  1. Read and view all readable object properties on non-BACnet network to BACnet network and vice versa where applicable.
  2. Write to all writeable object properties on non-BACnet network from BACnet network and vice versa where applicable.
  3. Include single-pass (only one protocol to BACnet without intermediary protocols) translation from non-BACnet protocol to BACnet and vice versa.
  4. Comply with requirements of Data Sharing Read Property, Data Sharing Write Property, Device Management Dynamic Device Binding-B, and Device Management Communication Control BIBBs according to ASHRAE 135.
  5. Hardware, software, software licenses, and configuration tools for operator-to-gateway communications.
  6. Backup programming and parameters on CD media and the ability to modify, download, backup, and restore gateway configuration.

## 2.20 ASHRAE 135 PROTOCOL ANALYZER

- A. Analyzer and required cables and fittings for connection to ASHRAE 135 network.
- B. Analyzer shall include the following minimum capabilities:
  1. Capture and store to a file data traffic on all network levels.
  2. Measure bandwidth usage.
  3. Filtering options with ability to ignore select traffic.

## 2.21 CEA-709.1-C NETWORK HARDWARE

### A. Routers:

1. Network routers, including routers configured as repeaters, shall comply with requirements of CEA-709.1-C and include connection between two or more CEA-709.3 TP/FT-10 channels or between two or more CEA-709.3 TP/FT-10 channels and a TP/XF-1250 channel.
2. IP Routers:
  - a. Perform layer three routing of CEA-709.1-C packets over an IP network according to CEA-852-B.
  - b. Include appropriate connection to the IP network and connections to CEA-709.3 TP/FT-10 or TP/XF-1250 network.
  - c. Support the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IP configuration and use of an CEA-852-B Configuration Server (for CEA-852-B configuration), but shall not rely on these services for configuration.
  - d. Capable of manual configuration via a console RS-232 port.

### B. Gateways:

1. Perform bidirectional protocol translation from one non-CEA-709.1-C protocol to CEA-709.1-C.
2. Incorporate a network connection to a TP/FT-10 network according to CEA-709.3 and a connection for a non-CEA-709.1-C network.

## 2.22 WIRELESS ROUTERS FOR OPERATOR INTERFACE

### A. Single-Band Wireless Routers:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: High-speed router with integral Ethernet ports.
3. Technology: IEEE 802.11n; [2.4] <Insert number>-GHz speed band.
4. Speed: Up to [300] <Insert number> Mbps.
5. Compatibility: IEEE 802.11n/g/b/a wireless devices.
6. Ethernet Ports: Four, gigabit (1000 Mbps).
7. Wireless Security: Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) and WPA2 according to IEEE 802.11i.

### B. Dual-Band Wireless Routers:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: High-speed, dual-band router with integral Ethernet ports and USB port.
3. Technology: IEEE 802.11n; 2.4- and 5-GHz speed bands.
4. Speed: Up to [300] <Insert number> Mbps on 2.4-GHz band and up to [450] <Insert number> Mbps on 5-GHz band.
5. Compatibility: IEEE 802.11n/g/b/a wireless devices.
6. Ethernet Ports: Four, gigabit (1000 Mbps).
7. USB Port: One, USB 2.0 or 3.0.

8. Wireless Security: Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) and WPA2 according to IEEE 802.11i.

## 2.23 DDC CONTROLLERS

- A. DDC system shall consist of a combination of network controllers, programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers to satisfy performance requirements indicated.
- B. DDC controllers shall perform monitoring, control, energy optimization and other requirements indicated.
- C. DDC controllers shall use a multitasking, multiuser, real-time digital control microprocessor with a distributed network database and intelligence.
- D. Each DDC controller shall be capable of full and complete operation as a completely independent unit and as a part of a DDC system wide distributed network.
- E. Environment Requirements:
  1. Controller hardware shall be suitable for the anticipated ambient conditions.
  2. Controllers located in conditioned space shall be rated for operation at [32 to 120 deg F] <Insert temperature range>.
  3. Controllers located outdoors shall be rated for operation at [40 to 150 deg F] <Insert temperature range>.
- F. Power and Noise Immunity:
  1. Controller shall operate at 90 to 110 percent of nominal voltage rating and shall perform an orderly shutdown below 80 percent of nominal voltage.
  2. Operation shall be protected against electrical noise of 5 to 120 Hz and from keyed radios with up to 5 W of power located within 36 inches of enclosure.
- G. DDC Controller Spare Processing Capacity:
  1. Include spare processing memory for each controller. RAM, PROM, or EEPROM will implement requirements indicated with the following spare memory:
    - a. Network Controllers: [50] [60] [70] <Insert value> percent.
    - b. Programmable Application Controllers: Not less than [60] [70] [80] <Insert number> percent.
    - c. Application-Specific Controllers: Not less than [70] [80] [90] <Insert number> percent.
  2. Memory shall support DDC controller's operating system and database and shall include the following:
    - a. Monitoring and control.
    - b. Energy management, operation and optimization applications.
    - c. Alarm management.
    - d. Historical trend data of all connected I/O points.

- e. Maintenance applications.
  - f. Operator interfaces.
  - g. Monitoring of manual overrides.
- H. DDC Controller Spare I/O Point Capacity: Include spare I/O point capacity for each controller as follows:
- 1. Network Controllers:
    - a. [10] [20] <Insert number> percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
    - b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
      - 1) AIs: [Two] [Three] <Insert number>.
      - 2) AOs: [Two] [Three] <Insert number>.
      - 3) BIs: [Three] [Five] <Insert number>.
      - 4) BOs: [Three] [Five] <Insert number>.
  - 2. Programmable Application Controllers:
    - a. [10] [20] <Insert number> percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
    - b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
      - 1) AIs: [Two] [Three] <Insert number>.
      - 2) AOs: [Two] [Three] <Insert number>.
      - 3) BIs: [Three] [Five] <Insert number>.
      - 4) BOs: [Three] [Five] <Insert number>.
  - 3. Application-Specific Controllers:
    - a. [10] <Insert number> percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
    - b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
      - 1) AIs: [One] [Two] <Insert number>.
      - 2) AOs: [One] [Two] <Insert number>.
      - 3) BIs: [One] [Two] <Insert number>.
      - 4) BOs: [One] [Two] <Insert number>.
- I. Maintenance and Support: Include the following features to facilitate maintenance and support:
- 1. Mount microprocessor components on circuit cards for ease of removal and replacement.
  - 2. Means to quickly and easily disconnect controller from network.
  - 3. Means to quickly and easily access connect to field test equipment.
  - 4. Visual indication that controller electric power is on, of communication fault or trouble, and that controller is receiving and sending signals to network.
- J. General Requirements for CEA-709.1-C DDC Controllers:
- 1. Controllers shall be LonMark certified.

2. Distinguishable and accessible switch, button, or pin, when pressed shall broadcast its 48-bit Node ID and Program ID over network.
3. TP/FT-10 transceiver according to CEA-709.3 and connections for TP/FT-10 control network wiring.
4. TP/XF-1250 transceiver according to CEA-709.3 and connections for TP/XF-1250 control network wiring.
5. Communicate using CEA-709.1-C protocol.
6. Controllers configured into subnets, as required, to comply with performance requirements indicated.
7. Network communication through LNS network management and database standard for CEA-709.1-C network devices.
8. Locally powered, not powered through network connection.
9. Functionality required to support applications indicated, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Input and outputs indicated and as required to support sequence of operation and application in which it is used. SNVTs shall have meaningful names identifying the value represented by an SNVT. Unless an SNVT of an appropriate engineering type is unavailable, all network variables shall be of an SNVT with engineering units appropriate to value the variable represents.
  - b. Configurable through SCPTs defined in LonMark SCPT List, operator-defined UCPTs, network configuration inputs (NCIs) of an SNVT type defined in LonMark SNVT List, NCIs of an operator-defined network variable type, or hardware settings on controller itself for all settings and parameters used by application in which it is used.
10. Programmable controllers shall conform to LonMark Interoperability Guidelines and have LonMark certification.

K. Input and Output Point Interface:

1. Hardwired input and output points shall connect to network, programmable application and application-specific controllers.
2. Input and output points shall be protected so shorting of point to itself, to another point, or to ground will not damage controller.
3. Input and output points shall be protected from voltage up to 24 V of any duration so that contact will not damage controller.
4. AIs:
  - a. AIs shall include monitoring of low-voltage (zero- to 10-V dc), current (4 to 20 mA) and resistance signals from thermistor and RTD sensors.
  - b. AIs shall be compatible with, and field configurable to, sensor and transmitters installed.
  - c. Controller AIs shall perform analog-to-digital (A-to-D) conversion with a minimum resolution of [8] [12] <Insert value> bits or better to comply with accuracy requirements indicated.
  - d. Signal conditioning including transient rejection shall be provided for each AI.
  - e. Capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span.
  - f. Incorporate common-mode noise rejection of at least 50 dB from zero to 100 Hz for differential inputs, and normal-mode noise rejection of at least 20 dB at 60 Hz from a source impedance of 10000 ohms.

5. AOs:
  - a. Controller AOs shall perform analog-to-digital (A-to-D) conversion with a minimum resolution of [8] [12] <Insert value> bits or better to comply with accuracy requirements indicated.
  - b. Output signals shall have a range of [4 to 20 mA dc] [or] [zero- to 10-V dc] as required to include proper control of output device.
  - c. Capable of being individually calibrated for zero and span.
  - d. AOs shall not exhibit a drift of greater than 0.4 percent of range per year.
  
6. BIs:
  - a. Controller BIs shall accept contact closures and shall ignore transients of less than 5-ms duration.
  - b. Isolation and protection against an applied steady-state voltage of up to 180-V ac peak.
  - c. BIs shall include a wetting current of at least 12 mA to be compatible with commonly available control devices and shall be protected against effects of contact bounce and noise.
  - d. BIs shall sense "dry contact" closure without external power (other than that provided by the controller) being applied.
  - e. Pulse accumulation input points shall comply with all requirements of BIs and accept up to 10 pulses per second for pulse accumulation. Buffer shall be provided to totalize pulses. Pulse accumulator shall accept rates of at least 20 pulses per second. The totalized value shall be reset to zero on operator's command.
  
7. BOs:
  - a. Controller BOs shall include relay contact closures or triac outputs for momentary and maintained operation of output devices.
    - 1) Relay contact closures shall have a minimum duration of 0.1 second. Relays shall include at least 180 V of isolation. Electromagnetic interference suppression shall be provided on all output lines to limit transients to non-damaging levels. Minimum contact rating shall be 1 A at 24-V ac.
    - 2) Triac outputs shall include at least 180 V of isolation. Minimum contact rating shall be 1 A at 24-V ac.
  - b. BOs shall include for two-state operation or a pulsed low-voltage signal for pulse-width modulation control.
  - c. BOs shall be selectable for either normally open or normally closed operation.
  - d. Include tristate outputs (two coordinated BOs) for control of three-point floating-type electronic actuators without feedback.
  - e. Limit use of three-point floating devices to VAV terminal unit control applications, [and other applications indicated on Drawings,] <Insert applications>. Control algorithms shall operate actuator to one end of its stroke once every [12] [24] <Insert time> hours for verification of operator tracking.

## 2.24 NETWORK CONTROLLERS

### A. General Network Controller Requirements:

1. Include adequate number of controllers to achieve performance indicated.
2. System shall consist of one or more independent, standalone, microprocessor-based network controllers to manage global strategies indicated.
3. Controller shall have enough memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements.
4. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.
5. Operating system of controller shall manage input and output communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow for central monitoring and alarms.
6. Controllers [**that perform scheduling**] shall have a real-time clock.
7. Controller shall continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an abnormal operation is detected, controller shall assume a predetermined failure mode and generate an alarm notification.
8. Controllers shall be fully programmable.

### B. Communication:

1. Network controllers shall communicate with other devices on DDC system [**Level one**] ~~<Insert level>~~ network.
2. Network controller also shall perform routing if connected to a network of programmable application and application-specific controllers.

### C. Operator Interface:

1. Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a portable operator's workstation[ **or mobile device**].
2. Local Keypad and Display:
  - a. Equip controller with local keypad and digital display for interrogating and editing data.
  - b. Use of keypad and display shall require security password.

### D. Serviceability:

1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
3. Controller shall maintain BIOS and programming information in event of a power loss for at least [**72**] [**96**] ~~<Insert number>~~ hours.

## 2.25 PROGRAMMABLE APPLICATION CONTROLLERS

### A. General Programmable Application Controller Requirements:

1. Include adequate number of controllers to achieve performance indicated.

2. Controller shall have enough memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements.
3. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.
4. Operating system of controller shall manage input and output communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow for central monitoring and alarms.
5. Controllers [**that perform scheduling**] shall have a real-time clock.
6. Controller shall continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an abnormal operation is detected, controller shall assume a predetermined failure mode and generate an alarm notification.
7. Controllers shall be fully programmable.

B. Communication:

1. Programmable application controllers shall communicate with other devices on network.

C. Operator Interface:

1. Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a portable operator's workstation[ **or mobile device**].
2. Local Keypad and Display:
  - a. Equip controller with local keypad and digital display for interrogating and editing data.
  - b. Use of keypad and display shall require security password.

D. Serviceability:

1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
3. Controller shall maintain BIOS and programming information in event of a power loss for at least 72 hours.

## 2.26 APPLICATION-SPECIFIC CONTROLLERS

A. Description: Microprocessor-based controllers, which through hardware or firmware design are dedicated to control a specific piece of equipment. Controllers are not fully user-programmable but are configurable and customizable for operation of equipment they are designed to control.

1. Capable of standalone operation and shall continue to include control functions without being connected to network.
2. Data shall be shared between networked controllers and other network devices.

B. Communication: Application-specific controllers shall communicate with other application-specific controller and devices on network, and to programmable application and network controllers.

- C. Operator Interface: Controller shall be equipped with a service communications port for connection to a portable operator's workstation. [ **Connection shall extend to port on space temperature sensor that is connected to controller.** ]
- D. Serviceability:
  - 1. Controller shall be equipped with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
  - 2. Wiring and cable connections shall be made to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
  - 3. Controller shall use nonvolatile memory and maintain all BIOS and programming information in event of power loss.

## 2.27 CONTROLLER SOFTWARE

- A. General Controller Software Requirements:
  - 1. Software applications shall reside and operate in controllers. Editing of applications shall occur at operator workstations.
  - 2. I/O points shall be identified by up to [30] <Insert number>-character point name and up to [16] <Insert number>-character point descriptor. Same names shall be used at operator workstations.
  - 3. Control functions shall be executed within controllers using DDC algorithms.
  - 4. Controllers shall be configured to use stored default values to ensure fail-safe operation. Default values shall be used when there is a failure of a connected input instrument or loss of communication of a global point value.
- B. Security:
  - 1. Operator access shall be secured using individual security passwords and user names.
  - 2. Passwords shall restrict operator to points, applications, and system functions as assigned by system manager.
  - 3. Operator log-on and log-off attempts shall be recorded.
  - 4. System shall protect itself from unauthorized use by automatically logging off after last keystroke. The delay time shall be operator-definable.
- C. Scheduling: Include capability to schedule each point or group of points in system. Each schedule shall consist of the following:
  - 1. Weekly Schedule:
    - a. Include separate schedules for each day of week.
    - b. Each schedule should include the capability for start, stop, optimal start, optimal stop, and night economizer.
    - c. Each schedule may consist of up to 10 events.
    - d. When a group of objects are scheduled together, include capability to adjust start and stop times for each member.
  - 2. Exception Schedules:

- a. Include ability for operator to designate any day of the year as an exception schedule.
  - b. Exception schedules may be defined up to a year in advance. Once an exception schedule is executed, it will be discarded and replaced by regular schedule for that day of week.
3. Holiday Schedules:
- a. Include capability for operator to define up to 99 special or holiday schedules.
  - b. Schedules may be placed on scheduling calendar and will be repeated each year.
  - c. Operator shall be able to define length of each holiday period.
- D. System Coordination:
1. Include standard application for proper coordination of equipment.
  2. Application shall include operator with a method of grouping together equipment based on function and location.
  3. Group may then be used for scheduling and other applications.
- E. Binary Alarms:
1. Each binary point shall be set to alarm based on operator-specified state.
  2. Include capability to automatically and manually disable alarming.
- F. Analog Alarms:
1. Each analog object shall have both high and low alarm limits.
  2. Alarming shall be able to be automatically and manually disabled.
- G. Alarm Reporting:
1. Operator shall be able to determine action to be taken in event of an alarm.
  2. Alarms shall be routed to appropriate operator workstations based on time and other conditions.
  3. Alarm shall be able to start programs, print, be logged in event log, generate custom messages, and display graphics.
- H. Remote Communication:
1. System shall have ability to dial out in the event of an alarm.
- I. Electric Power Demand Limiting:
1. Demand-limiting program shall monitor building or other operator-defined electric power consumption from signals connected to electric power meter or from a watt transducer or current transformer.
  2. Demand-limiting program shall predict probable power demand such that action can be taken to prevent exceeding demand limit. When demand prediction exceeds demand limit, action will be taken to reduce loads in a predetermined manner. When demand prediction indicates demand limit will not be exceeded, action will be taken to restore loads in a predetermined manner.

3. Demand reduction shall be accomplished by the following means:
  - a. Reset air-handling unit supply temperature set points.
  - b. Reset space temperature set points.
  - c. De-energize equipment based on priority.
4. Demand-limiting parameters, frequency of calculations, time intervals, and other relevant variables shall be based on the means by which electric power service provider computes demand charges.
5. Include demand-limiting prediction and control for any individual meter monitored by system or for total of any combination of meters.
6. Include means operator to make the following changes online:
  - a. Addition and deletion of loads controlled.
  - b. Changes in demand intervals.
  - c. Changes in demand limit for meter(s).
  - d. Maximum shutoff time for equipment.
  - e. Minimum shutoff time for equipment.
  - f. Select rotational or sequential shedding and restoring.
  - g. Shed and restore priority.
7. Include the following information and reports, to be available on an hourly, daily, weekly, monthly and annual basis:
  - a. Total electric consumption.
  - b. Peak demand.
  - c. Date and time of peak demand.
  - d. Daily peak demand.
- J. Maintenance Management: System shall monitor equipment status and generate maintenance messages based on operator-designated run-time, starts, and calendar date limits.
- K. Sequencing: Include application software based on sequences of operation indicated to properly sequence chillers, boilers, and other applicable HVAC equipment.
- L. Control Loops:
  1. Support any of the following control loops, as applicable to control required:
    - a. Two-position (on/off, open/close, slow/fast) control.
    - b. Proportional control.
    - c. Proportional plus integral (PI) control.
    - d. Proportional plus integral plus derivative (PID) control.
      - 1) Include PID algorithms with direct or reverse action and anti-windup.
      - 2) Algorithm shall calculate a time-varying analog value used to position an output or stage a series of outputs.
      - 3) Controlled variable, set point, and PID gains shall be operator-selectable.
    - e. Adaptive (automatic tuning).

- M. Staggered Start: Application shall prevent all controlled equipment from simultaneously restarting after a power outage. Order which equipment (or groups of equipment) is started, along with the time delay between starts, shall be operator-selectable.
- N. Energy Calculations:
1. Include software to allow instantaneous power or flow rates to be accumulated and converted to energy usage data.
  2. Include an algorithm that calculates a sliding-window average (rolling average). Algorithm shall be flexible to allow window intervals to be operator specified (such as 15, 30, or 60 minutes).
  3. Include an algorithm that calculates a fixed-window average. A digital input signal shall define start of window period (such as signal from utility meter) to synchronize fixed-window average with that used by utility.
- O. Anti-Short Cycling:
1. BO points shall be protected from short cycling.
  2. Feature shall allow minimum on-time and off-time to be selected.
- P. On and Off Control with Differential:
1. Include an algorithm that allows a BO to be cycled based on a controlled variable and set point.
  2. Algorithm shall be direct- or reverse-acting and incorporate an adjustable differential.
- Q. Run-Time Totalization:
1. Include software to totalize run-times for all BI [**and BO**] points.
  2. A high run-time alarm shall be assigned, if required, by operator.

## 2.28 ENCLOSURES

- A. General Enclosure Requirements:
1. House each controller and associated control accessories in a [**single**] enclosure. Enclosure shall serve as central tie-in point for control devices such as switches, transmitters, transducers, power supplies and transformers.
  2. Do not house more than one controller in a single enclosure.
  3. Include enclosure door with key locking mechanism. Key locks alike for all enclosures and include one pair of keys per enclosure.
  4. Equip doors of enclosures housing controllers and components with analog or digital displays with windows to allow visual observation of displays without opening enclosure door.
  5. Individual wall-mounted single-door enclosures shall not exceed [**36 inches**] <Insert dimension> wide and [**48 inches**] [**60 inches**] <Insert dimension> high.
  6. Individual wall-mounted double-door enclosures shall not exceed [**60 inches**] <Insert dimension> wide and [**36 inches**] <Insert dimension> high.
  7. Freestanding enclosures shall not exceed [**48 inches**] <Insert dimension> wide and [**72 inches**] <Insert dimension> high.

8. Include wall-mounted enclosures with brackets suitable for mounting enclosures to wall or freestanding support stand as indicated.
9. Supply each enclosure with a complete set of as-built schematics, tubing, and wiring diagrams and product literature located in a pocket on inside of door. [ **For enclosures with windows, include pocket on bottom of enclosure.** ]

B. Internal Arrangement:

1. Internal layout of enclosure shall group and protect pneumatic, electric, and electronic components associated with a controller, but not an integral part of controller.
2. Arrange layout to group similar products together.
3. Include a barrier between line-voltage and low-voltage electrical and electronic products.
4. Factory or shop install products, tubing, cabling and wiring complying with requirements and standards indicated.
5. Terminate field cable and wire using heavy-duty terminal blocks.
6. Include spare terminals, equal to not less than [10] [20] <Insert number> percent of used terminals.
7. Include spade lugs for stranded cable and wire.
8. Install a maximum of two wires on each side of a terminal.
9. Include enclosure field power supply with a toggle-type switch located at entrance inside enclosure to disconnect power.
10. Include enclosure with a line-voltage nominal 20-A GFCI duplex receptacle for service and testing tools. Wire receptacle on hot side of enclosure disconnect switch and include with a 5-A circuit breaker.
11. Mount products within enclosure on removable internal panel(s).
12. Include products mounted in enclosures with engraved, laminated phenolic nameplates (black letters on a white background). The nameplates shall have at least 1/4-inch-high lettering.
13. Route tubing cable and wire located inside enclosure within a raceway with a continuous removable cover.
14. Label each end of cable, wire and tubing in enclosure following an approved identification system that extends from field I/O connection and all intermediate connections throughout length to controller connection.
15. Size enclosure internal panel to include at least [25] <Insert number> percent spare area on face of panel.

C. Environmental Requirements:

1. Evaluate temperature and humidity requirements of each product to be installed within each enclosure.
2. Calculate enclosure internal operating temperature considering heat dissipation of all products installed within enclosure and ambient effects (solar, conduction and wind) on enclosure.
3. Where required by application, include temperature-controlled electrical heat to maintain inside of enclosure above minimum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.
4. Where required by application, include temperature-controlled ventilation fans with filtered louver(s) to maintain inside of enclosure below maximum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.

5. Include temperature-controlled cooling within the enclosure for applications where ventilation fans cannot maintain inside temperature of enclosure below maximum operating temperature of product with most stringent requirement.
6. Where required by application, include humidity-controlled electric dehumidifier or cooling to maintain inside of enclosure below maximum relative humidity of product with most stringent requirement and to prevent surface condensation within enclosure.

D. Wall-Mounted, NEMA 250, Type 1:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Enclosure shall be NRTL listed according to UL 50 or UL 50E.
3. Construct enclosure of steel, not less than:
  - a. Enclosure size less than 24 in.: **[0.053 in.] [or] [0.067 in.]** thick.
  - b. Enclosure size 24 in. and larger: **[0.067 in.] [or] [0.093 in.]** thick.
4. Finish enclosure inside and out with polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
  - a. Exterior color shall be **[white] [ANSI 61 gray] [selected by Architect] [manufacturer's standard] <Insert color>**.
  - b. Interior color shall be **[white] [ANSI 61 gray] [manufacturer's standard]**.
5. Hinged door full size of front face of enclosure and supported using:
  - a. Enclosures sizes less than 36 in. tall: Multiple butt hinges.
  - b. Enclosures sizes 36 in. tall and larger: Continuous piano hinges.
6. Removable internal panel with a white polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
  - a. Size less than 24 in.: **[Solid] [or] [Perforated]** steel, 0.053 in. thick.
  - b. Size 24 in. and larger: Solid **[aluminum, 0.10 in.] [or] [steel, 0.093 in.]** thick.
7. Internal panel mounting hardware, grounding hardware and sealing washers.
8. Grounding stud on enclosure body.
9. Thermoplastic pocket on inside of door for record Drawings and Product Data.

E. Wall Mounted NEMA 250, Types 4 and 12:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Enclosure shall be NRTL listed according to UL 508A.
3. Seam and joints are continuously welded and ground smooth.
4. Where recessed enclosures are indicated, include enclosures with face flange for flush mounting.
5. Externally formed body flange around perimeter of enclosure face for continuous perimeter seamless gasket door seal.
6. Single-door enclosure sizes up to 60 inches tall by 36 inches wide.
7. Double-door enclosure sizes up to 36 inches tall by 60 inches wide.
8. Construct enclosure of steel, not less than the following:

- a. Size Less Than 24 Inches: **[0.053 inch]** [or] **[0.067 inch]** thick.
  - b. Size 24 Inches and Larger: 0.067 inch thick.
9. Finish enclosure with polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
- a. Exterior color shall be **[white]** [ANSI 61 gray] [as selected by Architect] **[manufacturer's standard]** <Insert color>.
  - b. Interior color shall be **[white]** [ANSI 61 gray] **[manufacturer's standard]**.
10. Corner-formed door, full size of enclosure face, supported using multiple concealed hinges with easily removable hinge pins.
- a. Sizes through 24 Inches Tall: Two hinges.
  - b. Sizes between 24 Inches through 48 Inches Tall: Three hinges.
  - c. Sizes Larger 48 Inches Tall: Four hinges.
11. Double-door enclosures with overlapping door design to include unobstructed full-width access.
- a. Single-door enclosures 48 inches and taller, and all double-door enclosures, with three-point (top, middle and bottom) latch system.
12. Removable internal panel with a white polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
- a. Size Less Than 24 Inches: **[Solid]** [or] **[perforated]** steel, 0.053 inch thick.
  - b. Size 24 Inches and Larger: Solid **[aluminum, 0.10 inch]** [or] **[steel, 0.093 inch]** thick.
13. Internal panel mounting studs with hardware, grounding hardware, and sealing washers.
14. Grounding stud on enclosure body.
15. Thermoplastic pocket on inside of door for record Drawings and Product Data.
- F. Wall-Mounted, NEMA 250, Type 4X SS:
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  2. Enclosure shall be NRTL listed according to UL 508A.
  3. Seam and joints are continuously welded and ground smooth.
  4. Externally formed body flange around perimeter of enclosure face for continuous perimeter seamless gasket door seal.
  5. Construct enclosure of **[Type 304]** **[Type 316L]** stainless steel, not less than the following:
    - a. Size Less Than 24 Inches: 0.053 inch thick.
    - b. Size 24 Inches and Larger: 0.067 inch thick.
  6. Outside body and door of enclosure with brushed No. 4 finish.
  7. Corner-formed door, full size of enclosure face, supported using multiple concealed hinges with easily removable hinge pins.

- a. Sizes through 24 Inches Tall: Two hinges.
  - b. Sizes between 24 Inches through 48 Inches Tall: Three hinges.
  - c. Sizes Larger 48 Inches Tall: Four hinges.
8. Corner-formed door, full size of enclosure face, supported using continuous piano hinge full length of door.
  9. Doors fitted with three-point (top, middle, and bottom) latch system with single, heavy-duty, liquid-tight Type 316 stainless-steel handle with integral locking mechanism.
  10. Removable internal panel shall be 0.093-inch solid steel with a white polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
  11. Internal panel mounting studs and hardware, grounding hardware, and sealing washers.
  12. Install corrosion-resistant polyester vent drain in a stainless-steel sleeve at the bottom of enclosure.
  13. Include enclosure with stainless-steel mounting brackets.
- G. Freestanding, NEMA 250, Type 1:
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  2. Enclosure shall be NRTL listed according to UL 508A.
  3. Seam and joints are continuously welded and ground smooth.
  4. Externally formed body flange around perimeter of enclosure face.
  5. Single-door enclosure sizes up to 84 inches tall by 36 inches wide.
  6. Double-door enclosure sizes up to 84 inches tall by 72 inches wide.
  7. Construct enclosure of steel, not less than 0.067 inch thick.
  8. Finish enclosure with polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
    - a. Exterior color shall be [white] [ANSI 61 gray] [as selected by Architect] [manufacturer's standard] <Insert color>.
    - b. Interior color shall be [white] [ANSI 61 gray] [manufacturer's standard].
  9. Corner-formed flush door, full size of enclosure face, supported using four concealed hinges with easily removable hinge pins.
  10. Double-door enclosures with overlapping door design to include unobstructed full-width access.
  11. Doors with three-point (top, middle, and bottom) latch system with single heavy-duty handle and integral locking mechanism.
  12. Removable back covers.
  13. Removable solid steel internal panel, 0.093 inch thick, with a white polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
  14. Internal panel mounting studs with hardware, grounding hardware, and sealing washers.
  15. Grounding stud on enclosure body.
  16. Thermoplastic pocket on inside of door for record Drawings and Product Data.
  17. Nominal 4-inch-tall integral lifting base, not less than 0.123 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment to mounting surface.
  18. Each top end of enclosure fitted with lifting tabs, not less than 0.172 inch thick.
  19. Internal rack-mount shelves and angles as required by application.
- H. Freestanding, NEMA 250, Types 4 and 12:
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

2. Enclosure shall be NRTL listed according to UL 508A.
  3. Seam and joints are continuously welded and ground smooth.
  4. Externally formed body flange around perimeter of enclosure face.
  5. Type 12 Enclosure Sizes:
    - a. Single-door enclosure sizes up to 90 inches tall by 36 inches wide.
    - b. Double-door enclosure sizes up to 90 inches tall by 72 inches wide.
  6. Type 4 Enclosure Sizes:
    - a. Single-door enclosure sizes up to 72 inches tall by 36 inches wide.
  7. Construct enclosure of steel, not less than 0.093 inch thick.
  8. Finish enclosure with polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
    - a. Exterior color shall be [white] [ANSI 61 gray] [as selected by Architect] [manufacturer's standard] <Insert color>.
    - b. Interior color shall be [white] [ANSI 61 gray] [manufacturer's standard].
  9. Corner-formed door with continuous perimeter oil-resistant gasket supported using continuous piano hinge full length of door.
  10. Doors fitted with three-point (top, middle, and bottom) latch system with latching rod rollers and single, heavy-duty oil-tight handle with integral locking mechanism.
  11. Removable solid steel internal panel, 0.093 inch thick, with a white polyester powder coating that is electrostatically applied and then baked to bond to substrate.
  12. Internal panel mounting studs with hardware, grounding hardware, and sealing washers.
  13. Grounding stud on enclosure body.
  14. Thermoplastic pocket on inside of door for record Drawings and Product Data.
  15. Top of enclosure fitted with no fewer than two lifting eyes.
  16. Internal rack-mount shelves and angles as required by application.
- I. Accessories:
1. Electric Heater:
    - a. Aluminum housing with brushed finish.
    - b. Thermostatic control with adjustable set point from zero to 100 deg F.
    - c. Capacity: 100, 200, 400, and 800 W as required by application.
    - d. Fan draws cool air from bottom of enclosure and passes air across thermostat and heating elements before being released into enclosure cavity. Heated air is discharged through the top of heater.
  2. Ventilation Fans, Filtered Intake and Exhaust Grilles:
    - a. Number and size of fans, filters and grilles as required by application.
    - b. Compact cooling fans engineered for 50,000 hours of continuous operation without lubrication or service.
    - c. Fans capable of being installed on any surface and in any position within enclosure for spot cooling or air circulation.
    - d. Thermostatic control with adjustable set point from 32 to 140 deg F.

- e. Airflow Capacity at Zero Pressure:
    - 1) 4-Inch Fan: 100 cfm.
    - 2) 6-Inch Fan: 240 cfm.
    - 3) 10-Inch Fan: 560 cfm.
  - f. Maximum operating temperature of 158 deg F.
  - g. 4-inch fan thermally protected and provided with permanently lubricated ball-bearings.
  - h. 6- and 10-inch fans with ball-bearing construction and split capacitor motors thermally protected to avoid premature failure.
  - i. Dynamically balanced impellers molded from polycarbonate material.
  - j. Fan furnished with power cord and polarized plug for power connection.
  - k. Fan brackets, finger guards and mounting hardware provided with fans to complete installation.
  - l. Removable Intake and Exhaust Grilles: [**ABS plastic**] [**or**] [**stainless steel**] of size to match fan size and suitable for NEMA 250, Types 1 and 12 enclosures.
  - m. Filters for NEMA 250, Type 1 Enclosures: Washable [**foam**] [**or**] [**aluminum**], of a size to match intake grille.
  - n. Filters for NEMA 250, Type 12 Enclosures: Disposable, of a size to match intake grille.
3. Air Conditioner:
- a. Electric-powered, self-contained air-conditioning unit specially designed for electrical enclosures to maintain temperature inside enclosure below ambient temperature outside enclosure.
  - b. Thermostatic control with adjustable set point from 60 to 120 deg F.
  - c. Enclosure side or top mounting with unit capacity as required by application.
  - d. Designed for closed-loop cooling with continuous operation in ambient environments up to 125 deg F.
  - e. HFC refrigerant.
  - f. Reusable and washable air filter.
  - g. High-performance, industrial-grade, and high-efficiency fans.
  - h. Furnished with power cord and polarized plug for power connection.
  - i. Condensate management system with base pan side drain.
  - j. Mounting hardware, gaskets, mounting template and instruction manual furnished with unit.
  - k. Outdoor units equipped with head pressure control for low ambient operation, compressor heater, coated condenser coil and thermostat.
4. Thermoelectric Humidifier:
- a. ABS plastic enclosure.
  - b. Capacity of 8 oz. of water per 24 hours.
  - c. Built-in drain captures moisture and plastic hose directs moisture to outside enclosure through a drain.
  - d. Controlled to maintain enclosure relative humidity at an adjustable set point.
  - e. Unit power supply shall be internally wired to enclosure electrical power source.
5. Framed Fixed Window Kit for NEMA 250, Types 4, 4X, and 12 Enclosures:

- a. 0.25-inch-thick, scratch-resistant acrylic or polycarbonate window mounted in a metal frame matching adjacent door material.
  - b. Enclosure types, except NEMA 250 Type 1, shall have a continuous gasket material around perimeter of window and frame to provide watertight seal.
  - c. Window kit shall be factory or shop installed before shipment to Project.
6. Frameless Fixed Window Kit for NEMA 250, Type 1 Enclosures:
- a. 0.125-inch-thick, polycarbonate window mounted in enclosure door material.
  - b. Window attached to door with screw fasteners and continuous strip of high-strength double-sided tape around window perimeter.
  - c. Window kit shall be factory or shop installed before shipment to Project.
7. Frame Fixed or Hinged Window Kit for NEMA 250, Types 1 and 12 Enclosures:
- a. 0.25-inch-thick, scratch-resistant acrylic or polycarbonate window mounted in a metal frame matching adjacent door material.
  - b. Enclosure types, except NEMA 250 Type 1, shall have a continuous gasket material around perimeter of window and frame to provide watertight seal.
  - c. Window kit shall be factory or shop installed before shipment to Project.
8. Bar handle with keyed cylinder lock set.

## 2.29 RELAYS

### A. General-Purpose Relays:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Relays shall be heavy duty and rated for at least 10 A at 250-V ac and 60 Hz.
3. Relays shall be either double pole double throw (DPDT) or three-pole double throw, depending on the control application.
4. Use a plug-in-style relay with an eight-pin octal plug for DPDT relays and an 11-pin octal plug for three-pole double-throw relays.
5. Construct the contacts of either silver cadmium oxide or gold.
6. Enclose the relay in a clear transparent polycarbonate dust-tight cover.
7. Relays shall have LED indication and a manual reset and push-to-test button.
8. Performance:
  - a. Mechanical Life: At least 10 million cycles.
  - b. Electrical Life: At least 100,000 cycles at rated load.
  - c. Pickup Time: 15 ms or less.
  - d. Dropout Time: 10 ms or less.
  - e. Pull-in Voltage: 85 percent of rated voltage.
  - f. Dropout Voltage: 50 percent of nominal rated voltage.
  - g. Power Consumption: 2 VA.
  - h. Ambient Operating Temperatures: Minus 40 to 115 deg F.
9. Equip relays with coil transient suppression to limit transients to non-damaging levels.
10. Plug each relay into an industry-standard, 35-mm DIN rail socket. Plug all relays located in control panels into sockets that are mounted on a DIN rail.

11. Relay socket shall have screw terminals. Mold into the socket the coincident screw terminal numbers and associated octal pin numbers.

B. Multifunction Time-Delay Relays:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Relays shall be continuous duty and rated for at least 10 A at 240-V ac and 60 Hz.
3. Relays shall be DPDT relay with up to eight programmable functions to provide on/off delay, interval and recycle timing functions.
4. Use a plug-in-style relay with either an 8- or 11-pin octal plug.
5. Construct the contacts of either silver cadmium oxide or gold.
6. Enclose the relay in a dust-tight cover.
7. Include knob and dial scale for setting delay time.
8. Performance:
  - a. Mechanical Life: At least 10 million cycles.
  - b. Electrical Life: At least 100,000 cycles at rated load.
  - c. Timing Ranges: Multiple ranges from 0.1 seconds to 100 minutes.
  - d. Repeatability: Within 2 percent.
  - e. Recycle Time: 45 ms.
  - f. Minimum Pulse Width Control: 50 ms.
  - g. Power Consumption: 5 VA or less at 120-V ac.
  - h. Ambient Operating Temperatures: Minus 40 to 115 deg F.
9. Equip relays with coil transient suppression to limit transients to non-damaging levels.
10. Plug each relay into an industry-standard, 35-mm DIN rail socket. Plug all relays located in control panels into sockets that are mounted on a DIN rail.
11. Relay socket shall have screw terminals. Mold into the socket the coincident screw terminal numbers and associated octal pin numbers.

C. Latching Relays:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Relays shall be continuous duty and rated for at least 10 A at 250-V ac and 60 Hz.
3. Relays shall be either DPDT or three-pole double throw, depending on the control application.
4. Use a plug-in-style relay with a multibladed plug.
5. Construct the contacts of either silver cadmium oxide or gold.
6. Enclose the relay in a clear transparent polycarbonate dust-tight cover.
7. Performance:
  - a. Mechanical Life: At least 10 million cycles.
  - b. Electrical Life: At least 100,000 cycles at rated load.
  - c. Pickup Time: 15 ms or less.
  - d. Dropout Time: 10 ms or less.
  - e. Pull-in Voltage: 85 percent of rated voltage.
  - f. Dropout Voltage: 50 percent of nominal rated voltage.
  - g. Power Consumption: 2 VA.
  - h. Ambient Operating Temperatures: Minus 40 to 115 deg F.
8. Equip relays with coil transient suppression to limit transients to non-damaging levels.

9. Plug each relay into an industry-standard, 35-mm DIN rail socket. Plug all relays located in control panels into sockets that are mounted on a DIN rail.
10. Relay socket shall have screw terminals. Mold into the socket the coincident screw terminal numbers and associated octal pin numbers.

D. Current Sensing Relay:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Monitors ac current.
3. Independent adjustable controls for pickup and dropout current.
4. Energized when supply voltage is present and current is above pickup setting.
5. De-energizes when monitored current is below dropout current.
6. Dropout current is adjustable from 50 to 95 percent of pickup current.
7. Include a current transformer, if required for application.
8. House current sensing relay and current transformer in its own enclosure. Use NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure for indoors and NEMA 250, Type 4 for outdoors.

E. Combination On-Off Status Sensor and On-Off Relay:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description:
  - a. On-off control and status indication in a single device.
  - b. LED status indication of activated relay and current trigger.
  - c. Closed-Open-Auto override switch located on the load side of the relay.
3. Performance:
  - a. Ambient Temperature: Minus 30 to 140 deg F.
  - b. Voltage Rating: Single-phase loads rated for 300-V ac. Three-phase loads rated for 600-V ac.
4. Status Indication:
  - a. Current Sensor: Integral sensing for single-phase loads up to 20 A and external solid or split sensing ring for three-phase loads up to 150 A.
  - b. Current Sensor Range: As required by application.
  - c. Current Set Point: [**Fixed**] [**Adjustable**] [**Fixed or adjustable as required by application**].
  - d. Current Sensor Output:
    - 1) Solid-state, single-pole double-throw contact rated for 30-V ac and dc and for 0.4 A.
    - 2) Solid-state, single-pole double-throw contact rated for 120-V ac and 1.0 A.
    - 3) Analog, zero- to 5- or 10-V dc.
    - 4) Analog, 4 to 20 mA, loop powered.
5. Relay: Single-pole double-throw, continuous-duty coil; rated for 10-million mechanical cycles.
6. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.

## 2.30 ELECTRICAL POWER DEVICES

### A. Transformers:

1. Transformer shall be sized for the total connected load, plus an additional 25 percent of connected load.
2. Transformer shall be at least [40] [100] <Insert value> VA.
3. Transformer shall have both primary and secondary fuses.

### B. Power-Line Conditioner:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. General Power-Line Conditioner Requirements:
  - a. Design to ensure maximum reliability, serviceability and performance.
  - b. Overall function of the power-line conditioner is to receive raw, polluted electrical power and purify it for use by electronic equipment. The power-line conditioner shall provide isolated, regulated, transient and noise-free sinusoidal power to loads served.
3. Standards: NRTL listed per UL 1012.
4. Performance:
  - a. Single phase, continuous, 100 percent duty rated KVA/KW capacity. Design to supply power for linear or nonlinear, high crest factor, resistive and reactive loads.
  - b. Automatically regulate output voltage to within 2 percent or better with input voltage fluctuations of plus 10 to minus 20 percent of nominal when system is loaded 100 percent. Use Variable Range Regulation to obtain improved line voltage regulation when operating under less than full load conditions.
    - 1) At 75 Percent Load: Output voltage automatically regulated to within 3 percent with input voltage fluctuations of plus 10 to minus 35 percent of nominal.
    - 2) At 50 Percent Load: Output voltage automatically regulated to within 3 percent with input voltage fluctuations of plus 10 to minus 40 percent of nominal.
    - 3) At 25 Percent Load: Output voltage automatically regulated to within 3 percent with input voltage fluctuations of plus 10 to minus 45 percent of nominal.
  - c. With input voltage distortion of up to 40 percent, limit the output voltage sine wave to a maximum harmonic content of 5 percent.
  - d. Automatically regulate output voltage to within 2.5 percent when load (resistive) changes from zero percent to 100 percent to zero percent.
  - e. Output voltage returns to 95 percent of nominal level within two cycles and to 100 percent within three cycles when the output is taken from no load to full resistive load or vice-versa. Recovery from partial resistive load changes is corrected in a shorter period of time.
  - f. K Factor: 30, designed to operate with nonlinear, non-sinusoidal, high crest factor loads without overheating.

- g. Input power factor within 0.95 approaching unity with load power factor as poor as 0.6.
  - h. Attenuate load-generated odd current harmonics 23 dB at the input.
  - i. Electrically isolate the primary from the secondary. Meet isolation criteria as defined in NFPA 70, Article 250-5D.
  - j. Lighting and Surge Protection: Compares to UL 1449 rating of 330 V when subjected to Category B3 (6000 V/3000 A) combination waveform as established by IEEE C62.41.
  - k. Common-mode noise attenuation of 140 dB.
  - l. Transverse-mode noise attenuation of 120 dB.
  - m. With loss of input power for up to 16.6 ms, the output sine wave remains at usable ac voltage levels.
  - n. Reliability of 200,000 hours' MTBF.
  - o. At full load, when measured at 1-m distance, audible noise is not to exceed 54 dB.
  - p. Approximately 92 percent efficient at full load.
5. Transformer Construction:
- a. Ferroresonant, dry type, convection cooled, 600V class. Transformer windings of Class H (220 deg C) insulated copper.
  - b. Use a Class H installation system throughout with operating temperatures not to exceed 150 deg C over a 40-deg C ambient temperature.
  - c. Configure transformer primary for multi-input voltage. Include input terminals for source conductors and ground.
  - d. Manufacture transformer core using M-6 grade, grain-oriented, stress-relieved transformer steel.
  - e. Configure transformer secondary in a 240/120-V split with a 208-V tap or straight 120 V, depending on power output size.
  - f. Electrically isolate the transformer secondary windings from the primary windings. Bond neutral conductor to cabinet enclosure and output neutral terminal.
  - g. Include interface terminals for output power hot, neutral and ground conductors.
  - h. Label leads, wires and terminals to correspond with circuit wiring diagram.
  - i. Vacuum impregnate transformer with epoxy resin.
6. Cabinet Construction:
- a. Design for panel or floor mounting.
  - b. NEMA 250, Type 1, general-purpose, indoor enclosure.
  - c. Manufacture the cabinet from heavy gauge steel complying with UL 50.
  - d. Include a textured baked-on paint finish.
- C. Transient Voltage Suppression and High-Frequency Noise Filter Unit:
- 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  - 2. The maximum continuous operating voltage shall be at least 125 percent.
  - 3. The operating frequency range shall be 47 to 63 Hz.
  - 4. Protection modes according to NEMA LS-1.
  - 5. The rated single-pulse surge current capacity, for each mode of protection, shall be no less than the following:
    - a. Line to Neutral: 45,000 A.

- b. Neutral to Ground: 45,000 A.
  - c. Line to Ground: 45,000 A.
  - d. Per Phase: 90,000 A.
6. Clamping voltages shall be in compliance with test and evaluation procedures defined in NEMA LS-1. Maximum clamping voltage shall be as follows:
- a. Line to Neutral: 360 V.
  - b. Line to Ground: 360 V.
  - c. Neutral to Ground: 360 V.
7. Electromagnetic interference and RF interference noise rejection or attenuation values shall comply with test and evaluation procedures defined in NEMA LS-1.
- a. Line to Neutral:
    - 1) 100 kHz: 42 dB.
    - 2) 1 MHz: 25 dB.
    - 3) 10 MHz: 21 dB.
    - 4) 100 MHz: 36 dB.
  - b. Line to Ground:
    - 1) 100 kHz: 16 dB.
    - 2) 1 MHz: 55 dB.
    - 3) 10 MHz: 81 dB.
    - 4) 100 MHz: 80 dB.
8. Unit shall have LED status indicator that extinguishes to indicate a failure.
9. Unit shall be listed by an NRTL as a transient voltage surge suppressor per UL 1449, and as an electromagnetic interference filter per UL 1283.
10. Unit shall not generate any appreciable magnetic field.
11. Unit shall not generate an audible noise.

D. DC Power Supply:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Plug-in style suitable for mating with a standard eight-pin octal socket. Include the power supply with a mating mounting socket.
3. Enclose circuitry in a housing.
4. Include both line and load regulation to ensure a stable output. To protect both the power supply and the load, power supply shall have an automatic current limiting circuit.
5. Performance:
  - a. Output voltage nominally 25-V dc within 5 percent.
  - b. Output current up to 100 mA.
  - c. Input voltage nominally 120-V ac, 60 Hz.
  - d. Load regulation within 0.5 percent from zero- to 100-mA load.
  - e. Line regulation within 0.5 percent at a 100-mA load for a 10 percent line change.
  - f. Stability within 0.1 percent of rated volts for 24 hours after a 20-minute warmup.

## 2.31 UNINTERRUPTABLE POWER SUPPLY (UPS) UNITS FOR WORKSTATIONS

### A. 250 through 1000 VA:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. UPS units shall provide continuous, regulated output power without using their batteries during brown-out, surge, and spike conditions.
3. Load served shall not exceed 75 percent of UPS rated capacity, including power factor of connected loads.
  - a. Larger-capacity units shall be provided for systems with larger connected loads.
  - b. UPS shall provide [**five**] <Insert number> minutes of battery power.
4. Performance:
  - a. Input Voltage: Single phase, 120- or 230-V ac, compatible with field power source.
  - b. Load Power Factor Range (Crest Factor): 0.65 to 1.0.
  - c. Output Voltage: 101- to 132-V ac, while input voltage varies between 89 and 152-V ac.
  - d. On Battery Output Voltage: Sine wave.
  - e. Inverter overload capacity shall be minimum 150 percent for 30 seconds.
  - f. Recharge time shall be a maximum of six hours to 90 percent capacity after full discharge to cutoff.
  - g. Transfer Time: 6 ms.
  - h. Surge Voltage Withstand Capacity: IEEE C62.41, Categories A and B; 6 kV/200 and 500 A; 100-kHz ringwave.
5. UPS shall be automatic during fault or overload conditions.
6. Unit with integral line-interactive, power condition topology to eliminate all power contaminants.
7. Include front panel with power switch and visual indication of power, battery, fault and temperature.
8. Unit shall include an audible alarm of faults and front panel silence feature.
9. Unit with four NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-15R receptacles.
10. UPS shall include dry contacts (digital output points) for low battery condition and battery-on (primary utility power failure)[ **and connect the points to the DDC system**].
11. Batteries shall be sealed lead-acid type and be maintenance free. Battery replacement shall be front accessible by user without dropping load.
12. Include tower models installed in ventilated cabinets to the particular installation location.

### B. 1000 through 3000 VA:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. UPS units shall provide continuous, regulated output power without using their batteries during brown-out, surge, and spike conditions.
3. Load served shall not exceed 75 percent of UPS rated capacity, including power factor of connected loads.

- a. Larger-capacity units, or multiple units, shall be provided for systems with larger connected loads.
  - b. UPS shall provide **[five]** **[10]** **<Insert number>** minutes of battery power.
4. Performance:
- a. Input Voltage: Single phase, 120-V ac, plus 20 to minus 30 percent.
  - b. Power Factor: Minimum 0.97 at full load.
  - c. Output Voltage: Single phase, 120-V ac, within 3 percent, steady state with rated output current of 10.0 A, 30.0-A peak.
  - d. Inverter overload capacity shall be minimum 150 percent for 30 seconds.
  - e. Recharge time shall be a maximum of eight hours to 90 percent capacity.
5. UPS bypass shall be automatic during fault or overload conditions.
6. UPS shall include dry contacts (digital output points) for low battery condition and battery-on (primary utility power failure) **[ and connect the points to the DDC system ]**.
7. Batteries shall be sealed lead-acid type and be maintenance free.
8. Include tower models installed in ventilated cabinets or rack models installed on matching racks, as applicable to the particular installation location and space availability/configuration.

## 2.32 PIPING AND TUBING

### A. Pneumatic, and Pressure Instrument Signal Air, Tubing and Piping:

1. Products in this paragraph are intended for use with the following:
  - a. Main air and signal air to pneumatically controlled instruments, actuators and other control devices and accessories.
  - b. Signal air between pressure instruments, such as sensors, switches, transmitters, controllers and accessories.
2. Copper Tubing:
  - a. Seamless phosphor deoxidized copper, soft annealed or drawn tempered, with chemical and physical properties according to ASTM B 75.
  - b. Performance, dimensions, weight and tolerance according to ASTM B 280.
  - c. Diameter, as required by application, not less than nominal 0.25 inch.
  - d. Wall thickness, as required by the application, but not less than 0.030 inch.
3. Copper Tubing Connectors and Fittings:
  - a. Brass, compression type.
    - 1) [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  - b. Brass, solder-joint type.

- 1) [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  4. Galvanized-Steel Piping:
    - a. Galvanized pipe shall be ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40.
    - b. Fittings, galvanized malleable iron, ASME B16.3, Class 150.
  5. Polyethylene Tubing:
    - a. Fire-resistant black virgin polyethylene according to ASTM D 1248, Type 1, Class C and Grade 5.
    - b. Tubing shall comply with stress crack test according to ASTM D 1693.
    - c. Diameter, as required by application, of not less than nominal 0.25 inch.
  6. Polyethylene Tubing Connectors and Fittings:
    - a. Brass, barbed fittings.
      - 1) [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
    - b. Brass, compression type.
      - 1) [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Process Tubing:
1. Products in this paragraph are intended for signals to instruments connected to liquid and steam systems.
  2. Copper Tubing:
    - a. Seamless phosphor deoxidized copper, soft annealed or drawn tempered with chemical and physical properties according to ASTM B 75.
    - b. Performance, dimensions, weight and tolerance according to ASTM B 280.
    - c. Diameter, as required by application, of not less than nominal 0.25 inch.
    - d. Wall thickness, as required by application, but not less than 0.030 inch.
  3. Copper Tubing Connectors and Fittings:
    - a. Brass, compression type.
      - 1) [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
    - b. Brass, solder-joint type.
      - 1) [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  4. Stainless-Steel Tubing:

- a. Seamless Type 316 stainless steel, Grade TP, cold drawn, annealed and pickled, free from scale.
  - b. Chemical and physical properties according to ASTM A 269.
  - c. Diameter, as required by application, of not less than nominal 0.25 inch.
  - d. Wall thickness, as required by application, but not less than 0.035 inch.
  - e. Furnish stainless-steel tubing in [**20-foot**] straight random lengths.
5. Stainless-Steel Tubing Connectors and Fittings:
- a. Connectors and fittings shall be stainless steel, with stainless-steel collets, flareless type.
    - 1) [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  - b. Connect instruments to tubing with connectors having compression connector on one end and IPS or NPT thread on other end.

### 2.33 CONTROL WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Wire: Single conductor control wiring above 24 V.
1. Wire size shall be at least [**No. 18**] [**No. 16**] [**No. 14**] **<Insert value>** AWG.
  2. Conductor shall be 7/24 soft annealed copper strand with 2- to 2.5-inch lay.
  3. Conductor insulation shall be 600 V, Type THWN or Type THHN, and 90 deg C according to UL 83.
  4. Conductor colors shall be black (hot), white (neutral), and green (ground).
  5. Furnish wire on spools.
- B. Single Twisted Shielded Instrumentation Cable above 24 V:
1. Wire size shall be a minimum [**No. 18**] [**No. 20**] [**No. 22**] **<Insert value>** AWG.
  2. Conductors shall be a twisted, 7/24 soft annealed copper strand with a 2- to 2.5-inch lay.
  3. Conductor insulation shall have a Type THHN/THWN or Type TFN rating.
  4. Shielding shall be 100 percent type, 0.35/0.5-mil aluminum/Mylar tape, helically applied with 25 percent overlap, and aluminum side in with tinned copper drain wire.
  5. Outer jacket insulation shall have a 600-V, 90-deg C rating and shall be Type TC cable.
  6. For twisted pair, conductor colors shall be black and white. For twisted triad, conductor colors shall be black, red and white.
  7. Furnish wire on spools.
- C. Single Twisted Shielded Instrumentation Cable 24 V and Less:
1. Wire size shall be a minimum [**No. 18**] [**No. 20**] [**No. 22**] **<Insert value>** AWG.
  2. Conductors shall be a twisted, 7/24 soft annealed copper stranding with a 2- to 2.5-inch lay.
  3. Conductor insulation shall have a nominal 15-mil thickness, constructed from flame-retardant PVC.
  4. Shielding shall be 100 percent type, 1.35-mil aluminum/polymer tape, helically applied with 25 percent overlap, and aluminum side in with tinned copper drain wire.

5. Outer jacket insulation shall have a 300-V, 105-deg C rating and shall be Type PLTC cable.
  6. For twisted pair, conductor colors shall be black and white. For twisted triad, conductor colors shall be black, red and white.
  7. Furnish wire on spools.
- D. LAN and Communication Cable: Comply with DDC system manufacturer requirements for network being installed.
1. Cable shall be balanced twisted pair.
  2. Comply with the following requirements and for balanced twisted pair cable described in [Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."] [Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."]
    - a. Cable shall be plenum rated.
    - b. Cable shall have a unique color that is different from other cables used on Project.

#### 2.34 RACEWAYS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for electrical power raceways and boxes.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for raceways for balanced twisted pair cables and optical fiber cables.

#### 2.35 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE AND CONNECTORS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 271323 "Communications Optical Fiber Backbone Cabling" for optical fiber backbone cabling and connectors.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 271523 "Communications Optical Fiber Horizontal Cabling" for optical fiber horizontal cabling and connectors.

#### 2.36 ACCESSORIES

- A. Pneumatic Pressure Gages:
  1. Pressure gages shall a 1.5-inch-diameter face for pressures up through 30 psig and 2.5-inch-diameter face for greater pressures.
  2. Include separate gages for branch pressure and main pressure lines.
  3. White dial face with black printing.
  4. Include 1-psig increment for scale ranges through 30 psig and 2-psig increment for larger ranges.
  5. Accuracy: Within 1 percent of full-scale range.
- B. Pressure Electric Switches:
  1. Diaphragm-operated snap acting switch.
  2. Set point adjustable from 3 to 20 psig.

3. Differential adjustable from 2 to 6 psig.
4. Rated for resistance loads at 120-V ac.
5. Body and switch housing shall be metal.

C. Damper Blade Limit Switches:

1. Sense positive open and/or closed position of the damper blades.
2. NEMA 250, Type 13, oil-tight construction.
3. Arrange for the mounting application.
4. Additional waterproof enclosure when required by its environment.
5. Arrange to prevent "over-center" operation.

D. I/P and E/P Transducers:

1. Commercial Grade:

- a. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- b. The transducer shall convert an AO signal to a stepped pneumatic signal. Unless otherwise required by the operating sequence, use a 3- to 15-psig pneumatic signal for pneumatic actuation.
- c. Construct the entire assembly so that shock and vibration will neither harm the transducer nor affect its accuracy.
- d. Transducer shall have auto/manual output switch, manual output control and an output pressure gage.
- e. Accuracy: Within 1.0 percent of the output span.
- f. Linearity: Within 0.5 percent of the output span.
- g. Output Capacity: Not less than 550 scim at 15 psig.
- h. Transducer shall have separate zero and span calibration adjustments.
- i. The transducer shall withstand up to 40 psig of supply pressure without damage.
- j. For use on only modulating pneumatic outputs that are associated with terminal units, including fan-coil units, VAV units, unit heaters and **<Insert equipment>**.

2. Industrial Grade:

- a. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- b. The transducer shall convert an AO signal to a proportional pneumatic signal. Unless otherwise required by the operating sequence, use a 3- to 15-psig pneumatic signal for pneumatic actuation. A stepped pneumatic signal is unacceptable.
- c. Construct the entire assembly so that shock and vibration will neither harm the transducer nor affect its accuracy.
- d. Suitable for operation in an ambient temperature range of minus 40 to 150 deg F.
- e. Accuracy: Within 0.5 percent of the output span.
- f. Linearity: Within 0.5 percent of the output span.
- g. Output Capacity: Not less than 5 scfm.
- h. Transducer shall have zero and span calibration adjustments.
- i. The transducer shall withstand up to 50 psig of supply pressure without damage.
- j. For use on all modulating pneumatic outputs, not requiring a commercial-grade transducer.

E. E/P Switch:

1. Construct the body of cast aluminum or brass; three pipe body (common, normally open, and normally closed).
2. Internal construction of steel, copper or brass.
3. Air Connections: Barb.
4. Rating of 30 psig when installed in systems below 25 psig and of 150 psig when installed in systems above 25 psig.
5. Include coil transient suppression.

F. Instrument Enclosures:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Include instrument enclosure for secondary protection to comply with requirements indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
3. NRTL listed and labeled to UL 50.
4. Sized to include at least 25 percent spare area on subpanel.
5. Instrument(s) mounted within enclosure on internal subpanel(s).
6. Enclosure face with engraved, laminated phenolic nameplate for each instrument within enclosure.
7. Enclosures housing pneumatic instruments shall include main pressure gage and a branch pressure gage for each pneumatic device, installed inside.
8. Enclosures housing multiple instruments shall route tubing and wiring within enclosure in a raceway having a continuous removable cover.
9. Enclosures larger than [12 inches] **<Insert dimension>** shall have a hinged full-size face cover.
10. Equip enclosure with lock and common key.

G. Manual Valves:

1. Needle Type:

- a. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- b. PTFE packing.
- c. Construct of brass for use with copper and polyethylene tubing and of stainless steel for use with stainless-steel tubing.
- d. Aluminum T-bar handle.
- e. Include tubing connections.

2. Ball Type:

- a. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- b. Body: Bronze ASTM B 62 or ASTM B 61.
- c. Ball: Type 316 stainless steel.
- d. Stem: Type 316 stainless steel.
- e. Seats: Reinforced PTFE.
- f. Packing Ring: Reinforced PTFE.
- g. Lever: Stainless steel with a vinyl grip.
- h. 600 WOG.

- i. Threaded end connections.

H. Wall-Mounted Portable Workstation Cabinet:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Surface-mounted wall cabinet for tilt-out operation of laptop computers and large-format mobile devices.
3. Cabinet shall have a load limit of 50 lb.
4. Cabinet shall include the following:
  - a. Oil-filled dampers for controlled lowering of equipment to operational position.
  - b. 3RU EIA mounting rails.
  - c. Removable laptop shelf.
  - d. Separate top compartment with mounting area, hinged rail and security lock.
  - e. Front ventilation slots.
  - f. Knockouts for conduit connections on top and bottom of cabinet.
5. Cabinet shall be constructed of steel and painted with a powder-coat epoxy.
6. Inside center of backbox shall have provision to mount a field-furnished and -installed, single gang electrical outlet box.

2.37 IDENTIFICATION

A. Instrument Air Pipe and Tubing:

1. Engraved tag shall bear the following information:
  - a. Service (Example): "Instrument Air."
  - b. Pressure Range (Example): 0 to 30 psig.
2. Letter size shall be a minimum of [0.25 inch] <Insert dimension> high.
3. Tag shall consist of white lettering on blue background.
4. Tag shall be engraved phenolic consisting of three layers of rigid laminate. Top and bottom layers are color-coded blue with contrasting white center exposed by engraving through outer layer.
5. Include tag with a brass grommet, chain and S-hook.

B. Control Equipment, Instruments, and Control Devices:

1. [Self-adhesive label] [Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic sign] bearing unique identification.
  - a. Include instruments with unique identification identified by equipment being controlled or monitored, followed by point identification.
2. Letter size shall be as follows:
  - a. Operator Workstations: Minimum of [0.5 inch] <Insert dimension> high.
  - b. Servers: Minimum of [0.5 inch] <Insert dimension> high.
  - c. Printers: Minimum of [0.5 inch] <Insert dimension> high.

- d. DDC Controllers: Minimum of **[0.5 inch]** <Insert dimension> high.
  - e. Gateways: Minimum of **[0.5 inch]** <Insert dimension> high.
  - f. Repeaters: Minimum of **[0.5 inch]** <Insert dimension> high.
  - g. Enclosures: Minimum of **[0.5 inch]** <Insert dimension> high.
  - h. Electrical Power Devices: Minimum of **[0.25 inch]** <Insert dimension> high.
  - i. UPS units: Minimum of **[0.5 inch]** <Insert dimension> high.
  - j. Accessories: Minimum of **[0.25 inch]** <Insert dimension> high.
  - k. Instruments: Minimum of **[0.25 inch]** <Insert dimension> high.
  - l. Control Damper and Valve Actuators: Minimum of **[0.25 inch]** <Insert dimension> high.
3. Legend shall consist of white lettering on black background.
  4. Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic sign shall be engraved phenolic consisting of three layers of rigid laminate. Top and bottom layers are color-coded black with contrasting white center exposed by engraving through outer layer and shall be fastened with drive pins.
  5. Instruments, control devices and actuators with Project-specific identification tags having unique identification numbers following requirements indicated and provided by original manufacturer do not require additional identification.

C. Valve Tags:

1. Brass tags and brass chains attached to valve.
2. Tags shall be at least **[1.5 inches]** <Insert dimension> in diameter.
3. Include tag with unique valve identification indicating control influence such as flow, level, pressure, or temperature; followed by location of valve, and followed by three-digit sequential number. For example: TV-1.001.
4. Valves with Project-specific identification tags having unique identification numbers following requirements indicated and provided by original manufacturer do not require an additional tag.

D. Raceway and Boxes:

1. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
2. Paint cover plates on junction boxes and conduit same color as the tape banding for conduits. After painting, label cover plate "HVAC Controls," using an engraved phenolic tag.
3. For raceways housing pneumatic tubing, add a phenolic tag labeled "HVAC Instrument Air Tubing."
4. For raceways housing air signal tubing, add a phenolic tag labeled "HVAC Air Signal Tubing."

E. Equipment Warning Labels:

1. Self-adhesive label with pressure-sensitive adhesive back and peel-off protective jacket.
2. Lettering size shall be at least 14-point type with white lettering on red background.
3. Warning label shall read "CAUTION-Equipment operated under remote automatic control and may start or stop at any time without warning. Switch electric power disconnecting means to OFF position before servicing."

4. Lettering shall be enclosed in a white line border. Edge of label shall extend at least [**0.25 inch**] <Insert dimension>beyond white border.

## 2.38 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: [**Owner will engage**] [**Engage**] a qualified testing agency to evaluate the following according to industry standards for each product, and to verify DDC system reliability specified in performance requirements:
  1. DDC controllers.
  2. Gateways.
  3. Routers.
  4. Operator workstations.
  5. <Insert product>.
- B. Product(s) [**and**] [**material(s)**] will be considered defective if [**it does**] [**they do**] not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  1. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates.
- B. Examine roughing-in for products to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
  1. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
  2. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where product will be installed.
- D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 DDC SYSTEM INTERFACE WITH OTHER SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

- A. Communication Interface to Equipment with Integral Controls:

1. DDC system shall have communication interface with equipment having integral controls and having a communication interface for remote monitoring or control.
2. Equipment to Be Connected:
  - a. Domestic water booster pumps specified in Section 221123.13 "Domestic-Water Packaged Booster Pumps."
  - b. Air-terminal units specified in Section 233600 "Air Terminal Units."
  - c. Kitchen hoods specified in Section 233813 "Commercial-Kitchen Hoods."
  - d. Boilers specified in Section 235213 "Electric Boilers."
  - e. Boilers specified in Section 235216 "Condensing Boilers."
  - f. Boilers specified in Section 235223 "Cast-Iron Boilers."
  - g. Boilers specified in Section 235233 "Water-Tube Boilers."
  - h. Boilers specified in Section 235239 "Fire-Tube Boilers."
  - i. Feedwater equipment specified in Section 235313 "Boiler Feedwater Pumps."
  - j. Deaerators specified in Section 235316 "Deaerators."
  - k. Chillers specified in Section 236413.13 "Direct-Fired Absorption Water Chillers."
  - l. Chillers specified in Section 236413.16 "Indirect-Fired Absorption Water Chillers."
  - m. Chillers specified in Section 236416 "Centrifugal Water Chillers."
  - n. Chillers specified in Section 236423.13 "Air-Cooled, Scroll Water Chillers."
  - o. Chillers specified in Section 236423.16 "Water-Cooled, Scroll Water Chillers."
  - p. Chillers specified in Section 236426.13 "Air-Cooled, Rotary-Screw Water Chillers."
  - q. Chillers specified in Section 236426.16 "Water-Cooled, Rotary-Screw Water Chillers."
  - r. Cooling towers specified in Section 236513.13 "Open-Circuit, Forced-Draft Cooling Towers."
  - s. Cooling towers specified in Section 236513.16 "Closed-Circuit, Forced-Draft Cooling Towers."
  - t. Cooling towers specified in Section 236514.13 "Open-Circuit, Induced-Draft, Counterflow Cooling Towers."
  - u. Cooling towers specified in Section 236514.14 "Open-Circuit, Induced-Draft, Crossflow Cooling Towers."
  - v. Cooling towers specified in Section 236514.16 "Closed-Circuit, Induced-Draft, Counterflow Cooling Towers."
  - w. Cooling towers specified in Section 236514.17 "Closed-Circuit, Induced-Draft, Combined-Flow Cooling Towers."
  - x. Heat wheels and heat exchangers specified in Section 237223 "Air-to-Air Energy Recovery Equipment."
  - y. Air-handling units specified in Section 237313 "Modular Indoor Central-Station Air-Handling Units."
  - z. Roof-top units specified in Section 237413 "Packaged, Outdoor, Central-Station Air-Handling Units."
  - aa. Dedicated outdoor-air units specified in Section 237433 "Dedicated Outdoor-Air Units."
  - bb. Packaged terminal air-conditioners specified in Section 238113.11 "Packaged Terminal Air-Conditioners, Through-Wall Units."
  - cc. Packaged terminal air-conditioners specified in Section 238113.12 "Packaged Terminal Air-Conditioners, Freestanding Units."
  - dd. Packaged terminal air-conditioners specified in Section 238113.13 "Packaged Terminal Air-Conditioners, Outdoor, Wall-Mounted Units."

- ee. Computer-room air-conditioning units specified in Section 238123.11 "Small-Capacity (6 Tons (21 kW) and Smaller), Computer-Room Air-Conditioners, Floor Mounted Units."
- ff. Computer-room air-conditioning units specified in Section 238123.12 "Large-Capacity (7 Tons (25 kW) and Larger), Computer-Room Air-Conditioners, Floor Mounted Units."
- gg. Computer-room air-conditioning units specified in Section 238123.13 "Computer-Room Air Conditioners, Ceiling-Mounted Units."
- hh. Computer-room air-conditioning units specified in Section 238123.14 "Computer-Room Air Conditioners, Console Units."
- ii. Computer-room, rack-mounted cooling equipment specified in Section 238123.18 "Computer-Room, Rack-Cooling Equipment."
- jj. Fan-coil units specified in Section 238219 "Fan Coil Units."
- kk. Unit ventilators specified in Section 238223 "Unit Ventilators."
- ll. Wetted-element humidifiers specified in Section 238413.16 "Wetted-Element Humidifiers."
- mm. Atomizing humidifiers specified in Section 238413.19 "Atomizing Humidifiers."
- nn. Direct-steam-injection humidifiers specified in Section 238413.23 "Direct-Steam-Injection Humidifiers."
- oo. Self-contained steam humidifiers specified in Section 238413.29 "Self-Contained Steam Humidifiers."
- pp. Heat exchanger humidifiers specified in Section 238413.36 "Heat Exchanger Humidifiers."
- qq. Dehumidification units specified in Section 238416 "Mechanical Dehumidification Units."
- rr. Switchboards specified in Section 262300 "Low-Voltage Switchgear."
- ss. Motor-control centers specified in Section 262419 "Motor-Control Centers."
- tt. Variable-frequency controllers specified in Section 262923 "Variable-Frequency Motor Controllers."
- uu. Diesel emergency engine generators specified in Section 263213.13 "Diesel Emergency Engine Generators."
- vv. Diesel engine generators specified in Section 263213.14 "Diesel Engine Generators."
- ww. Gaseous emergency engine generators specified in Section 263213.16 "Gaseous Emergency Engine Generators."
- xx. Gaseous engine generators specified in Section 263213.17 "Gaseous Engine Generators."
- yy. Bi-fuel emergency engine generators specified in Section 263213.19 "Bi-Fuel Emergency Engine Generators."
- zz. Bi-fuel engine generators specified in Section 263213.20 "Bi-Fuel Engine Generators."
- aaa. UPS specified in Section 263353 "Static Uninterruptible Power Supply."
- bbb. Refrigerant monitoring.
- ccc. **<Insert equipment and Section number and title>.**

B. Communication Interface to Other Building Systems:

1. DDC system shall have a communication interface with systems having a communication interface.
2. Systems to Be Connected:

- a. Elevators specified in Section 142100 "Electric Traction Elevators."
- b. Elevators specified in Section 142113 "Electric Traction Freight Elevators."
- c. Elevators specified in Section 142400 "Hydraulic Elevators."
- d. Elevators specified in Section 142413 "Hydraulic Freight Elevators."
- e. Escalators specified in Section 143100 "Escalators."
- f. Automated water treatment systems specified in Section 232500 "HVAC Water Treatment."
- g. Automated water treatment systems specified in Section 232516 "Water Treatment for Open-Loop Hydronic Systems."
- h. Automated water treatment systems specified in Section 232519 "Water Treatment for Steam System Feedwater."
- i. Power monitoring specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
- j. Lighting controls specified in Section 260926 "Lighting Control Panelboards."
- k. Lighting controls specified in Section 260943.16 "Addressable-Luminaire Lighting Controls."
- l. Lighting controls specified in Section 260943.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls."
- m. Fire-alarm system specified in Section 284621.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems."
- n. Fire-alarm system specified in Section 284621.13 "Conventional Fire-Alarm Systems."
- o. Access controls specified in Section 281300 "Access Control System Software and Database Management."
- p. Intrusion detection specified in Section 283100 "Intrusion Detection."
- q. Perimeter security specified in Section 283121 "Area and Perimeter Intrusion Detection."
- r. <Insert system and Section number and title>.

### 3.3 DDC SYSTEM INTERFACE WITH EXISTING SYSTEMS

#### A. Interface with Existing Systems:

1. DDC systems shall interface existing systems to achieve integration.
2. Monitoring and Control of DDC System by Existing Control System:
  - a. DDC system performance requirements shall be satisfied when monitoring and controlling DDC system by existing control system.
  - b. Operator of existing system shall be able to upload, download, monitor, trend, control and program every input and output point in DDC system from existing control system using existing control system software and operator workstations.
  - c. Remote monitoring and control from existing control system shall not require operators of existing control system to learn new software.
  - d. Interface of DDC system into existing control system shall be transparent to operators of existing control system and allow operators to [**program, monitor, and control**] [**monitor and control**] DDC system from any operator workstation connected to existing control system.
  - e. <Insert requirements>.
3. Integration of Existing Control System into DDC System:

- a. Existing control system performance requirements shall be satisfied when monitoring and controlling existing control system through DDC system.
- b. Operator shall be able to upload, download, monitor, alarm, report, trend, control and program every input and output point in existing system from DDC system using operator workstations and software provided. The combined systems shall share one database.
- c. Interface of existing control system I/O points into DDC system shall be transparent to operators. All operational capabilities shall be identical regardless of whether I/O already exists or I/O is being installed.
- d. **<Insert requirements>**.

**B. Integration with Existing Enterprise System:**

1. DDC system shall interface with an existing enterprise system to adhere to Owner standards already in-place and to achieve integration.
2. Owner's control system integrator will provide the following services:
  - a. Enterprise system expansion and development of graphics, logs, reports, trends and other operational capabilities of enterprise system for I/O being added to DDC control system for use by enterprise system operators.
  - b. Limited assistance during commissioning to extent of DDC system integration with existing enterprise system.
  - c. Prepare on-site demonstration mockup of integration of DDC system to be installed with existing system before installing DDC system.
3. Engage Owner's control system integrator to provide the following services:
  - a. Enterprise system expansion and development of graphics, logs, reports, trends and other operational capabilities of enterprise system for I/O being added to DDC control system for use by enterprise system operators.
  - b. Limited assistance during commissioning to extent of DDC system integration with existing enterprise system.
  - c. Prepare on-site demonstration mockup of integration of DDC system to be installed with existing system before installing DDC system.
4. Control System Integrator Contact Information:
  - a. Company: **<Insert name>**.
  - b. Company Street Address: **<Insert address>**.
  - c. Company Contact: **<Insert name>**.
  - d. Phone Number: **<Insert phone number>**.
  - e. E-mail Address: **<Insert e-mail address>**.
5. Attend meetings with control system integrator to integrate DDC system.

**3.4 CONTROL DEVICES FOR INSTALLATION BY INSTALLERS**

- A. Deliver selected control devices, specified in indicated HVAC instrumentation and control device Sections, to identified equipment and systems manufacturers for factory installation and to identified installers for field installation.

- B. Deliver the following to duct fabricator and Installer for installation in ductwork. Include installation instructions to Installer and supervise installation for compliance with requirements.
1. DDC control dampers, which are specified in Section 230923.12 "DDC Control Dampers."
  2. Airflow sensors and switches, which are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments."
  3. Pressure sensors, which are specified in Section 230923.23 "Pressure Instruments."
  4. **<Insert additional control devices>**.
- C. Deliver the following to plumbing and HVAC piping installers for installation in piping. Include installation instructions to Installer and supervise installation for compliance with requirements.
1. DDC control valves, which are specified in Section 230923.11 "Control Valves."
  2. Pipe-mounted flow meters, which are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments."
  3. Pipe-mounted sensors, switches and transmitters. Flow meters are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments." Liquid[ **and steam**] temperature sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."
  4. Tank-mounted sensors, switches and transmitters. Pressure sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.23 "Pressure Instruments." Liquid[ **and steam**] temperature sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."
  5. Pipe- and tank-mounted thermowells. Liquid[ **and steam**] thermowells are specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."
  6. **<Insert additional control devices>**.

### 3.5 CONTROL DEVICES FOR EQUIPMENT MANUFACTURER FACTORY INSTALLATION

- A. Deliver the following to air-handling unit manufacturer for factory installation. Include installation instructions to air-handling unit manufacturer[ **and supervise installation for compliance with requirements**].
1. **[Programmable application] [or] [application-specific]** controller.
  2. Unit-mounted DDC control dampers and actuators, which are specified in Section 230923.12 "Control Dampers."
  3. Unit-mounted airflow sensors, switches and transmitters, which are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments."
  4. Unit-mounted gas sensors and transmitters, which are specified in Section 230923.16 "Gas Instruments."
  5. Unit-mounted leak-detection switches, which are specified in Section 230923.18 "Leak-Detection Instruments."
  6. Unit-mounted speed sensors, switches and transmitters, which are specified in Section 230923.24 "DDC Speed Instruments."
  7. Unit-mounted pressure sensors, switches and transmitters, which are specified in Section 230923.23 "Pressure Instruments."
  8. Unit-mounted temperature sensors, switches and transmitters. Air-temperature sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."
  9. Relays.
  10. **<Insert additional control devices>**.

- B. Deliver the following to terminal unit manufacturer for factory installation. Include installation instructions to terminal unit manufacturer.
1. **[Programmable application] [or] [application-specific]** controller.
  2. Electric damper actuator. Dampers actuators are specified in Section 230923.12 "Control Dampers."
  3. Unit-mounted flow and pressure sensors, transmitters and transducers. Flow sensors, transmitters, and transducers are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments." Pressure sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.23 "Pressure Instruments."
  4. Unit-mounted temperature sensors. Air-temperature sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."
  5. Relays.
  6. **<Insert additional control devices>**.
- C. Deliver the following to fan-coil unit manufacturer for factory installation. Include installation instructions to fan-coil unit manufacturer.
1. **[Programmable application] [or] [application-specific]** controller.
  2. Unit-mounted temperature sensors. Air-temperature sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.27 "Temperature Instruments."
  3. Flow and pressure switches. Air and liquid flow sensors, transmitters, and transducers are specified in Section 230923.14 "Flow Instruments." Pressure sensors, switches, and transmitters are specified in Section 230923.23 "Pressure Instruments."
  4. Leak-detection switches, which are specified in Section 230923.18 "Leak-Detection Instruments."
  5. Relays.
  6. **<Insert additional control devices>**.

### 3.6 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install products to satisfy more stringent of all requirements indicated.
- B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.
- C. Support products, tubing, piping wiring and raceways. Brace products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment when subjected to a **<Insert value>** force.
- D. If codes and referenced standards are more stringent than requirements indicated, comply with requirements in codes and referenced standards.
- E. Fabricate openings and install sleeves in ceilings, floors, roof, and walls required by installation of products. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, and cutting, check for concealed work to avoid damage. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.
- F. Firestop Penetrations Made in Fire-Rated Assemblies: Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- G. Seal penetrations made in acoustically rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

H. Welding Requirements:

1. Restrict welding and burning to supports and bracing.
2. No equipment shall be cut or welded without approval. Welding or cutting will not be approved if there is risk of damage to adjacent Work.
3. Welding, where approved, shall be by inert-gas electric arc process and shall be performed by qualified welders according to applicable welding codes.
4. If requested on-site, show satisfactory evidence of welder certificates indicating ability to perform welding work intended.

I. Fastening Hardware:

1. Stillson wrenches, pliers, and other tools that damage surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening fasteners.
2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.

J. If product locations are not indicated, install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit service and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks without removal of permanently installed furniture and equipment.

K. Corrosive Environments:

1. Avoid or limit use of materials in corrosive airstreams and environments, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - a. Laboratory exhaust-air streams.
  - b. Process exhaust-air streams.
2. When conduit is in contact with a corrosive airstream and environment, use Type 316 stainless-steel conduit and fittings or conduit and fittings that are coated with a corrosive-resistant coating that is suitable for environment. Comply with requirements for installation of raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
3. Where instruments are located in a corrosive airstream and are not corrosive resistant from manufacturer, field install products in NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosure constructed of Type 316L stainless steel.

### 3.7 WORKSTATION INSTALLATION

A. Desktop Workstations Installation:

1. Install workstation(s) at location(s) directed by Owner.
2. Install multiple-receptacle power strip with cord for use in connecting multiple workstation components to a single duplex electrical power receptacle.
3. Install software on workstation(s) and verify software functions properly.
4. Develop Project-specific graphics, trends, reports, logs and historical database.
5. Power [**each**] workstation through a [**dedicated**] UPS unit. Locate UPS adjacent to workstation.

B. Portable Workstations Installation:

1. Turn over portable workstations to Owner at Substantial Completion.
2. Install software on workstation(s) and verify software functions properly.

C. Color Graphics Application:

1. Use system schematics indicated as starting point to create graphics.
2. Develop Project-specific library of symbols for representing system equipment and products.
3. Incorporate digital images of Project-completed installation into graphics where beneficial to enhance effect.
4. Submit sketch of graphic layout with description of all text for each graphic for Owner's[ **and Architect's**] review before creating graphic using graphics software.
5. Seek Owner input in graphics development once using graphics software.
6. Final editing shall be done on-site with Owner's[ **and Architect's**] review and feedback.
7. Refine graphics as necessary for Owner acceptance.
8. On receiving Owner acceptance, print a hard copy for inclusion in operation and maintenance manual. Prepare a scanned copy PDF file of each graphic and include with softcopy of DDC system operation and maintenance manual.

D. Wall-Mounted Portable Operator's Workstation Cabinet Installation:

1. Install wall-mounted portable operator's workstation cabinet(s) at location(s) indicated on Drawings.
2. Install wall-mounted portable operator's workstation cabinet(s) at following location(s) and at locations directed by Owner:
  - a. Each mechanical room.
  - b. Chiller room.
  - c. Boiler room.
  - d. **<Insert location>**.
3. Connect each cabinet to [**120-V, single-phase, 60Hz**] **<Insert power requirements>** field power source, and install single gang electrical box with [**NEMA WD 6, Type 20R duplex**] **<Insert receptacle type>** receptacle and metal cover plate in cabinet. Comply with requirements in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
4. Connect each cabinet to Ethernet network and install an Ethernet network port for connection to portable operator workstation Ethernet cable. Comply with requirements in Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."

3.8 POT INSTALLATION

- A. Install [**one**] [**two**] **<Insert quantity>** portable operator terminal(s).
- B. Turn over POTs to Owner at Substantial Completion.
- C. Install software on each POT and verify that software functions properly.

### 3.9 SERVER INSTALLATION

- A. Install **[one]** **[two]** **<Insert quantity>** server(s) at location(s) directed by Owner.
- B. Install number of servers required to suit requirements indicated. Review Project requirements and indicate layout of proposed location in Shop Drawings.
- C. Install software indicated on server(s) and verify that software functions properly.
- D. Develop Project-specific graphics, trends, reports, logs, and historical database.
- E. Power servers through **[dedicated]** UPS unit. Locate UPS adjacent to server.

### 3.10 PRINTER INSTALLATION

- A. Provide the following printer(s) at location(s) directed by Owner:
  - 1. Black and White Laser: Quantity, **[one]** **[one per desktop workstation]** **<Insert quantity>**.
  - 2. Color Laser: Quantity, **[one]** **[one per desktop workstation]** **<Insert quantity>**.
  - 3. Color Inkjet: Quantity, **[one]** **[one per desktop workstation]** **<Insert quantity>**.
  - 4. Dot Matrix: Quantity, **[one]** **[one per desktop workstation]** **<Insert quantity>**.
- B. Install printer software on workstations and verify that software functions properly.

### 3.11 GATEWAY INSTALLATION

- A. Install gateways if required for DDC system communication interface requirements indicated.
  - 1. Install gateway(s) required to suit indicated requirements.
    - a. **<Insert requirements>**.
- B. Test gateway to verify that communication interface functions properly.

### 3.12 ROUTER INSTALLATION

- A. Install routers if required for DDC system communication interface requirements indicated.
  - 1. Install router(s) required to suit indicated requirements.
    - a. **<Insert requirements>**.
- B. Test router to verify that communication interface functions properly.

### 3.13 CONTROLLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install controllers in enclosures to comply with indicated requirements.

- B. Connect controllers to field power supply[ **and to UPS units where indicated**].
- C. Install controller with latest version of applicable software and configure to execute requirements indicated.
- D. Test and adjust controllers to verify operation of connected I/O to achieve performance indicated requirements while executing sequences of operation.
- E. Installation of Network Controllers:
  - 1. Quantity and location of network controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
  - 2. Install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.
  - 3. Top of controller shall be within [72 inches] [84 inches] <Insert dimension> of finished floor.
- F. Installation of Programmable Application Controllers:
  - 1. Quantity and location of programmable application controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
  - 2. Install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.
  - 3. Top of controller shall be within [72 inches] [84 inches] <Insert dimension> of finished floor.
- G. Application-Specific Controllers:
  - 1. Quantity and location of application-specific controllers shall be determined by DDC system manufacturer to satisfy requirements indicated.
  - 2. For controllers not mounted directly on equipment being controlled, install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.

### 3.14 INSTALLATION OF WIRELESS ROUTERS FOR OPERATOR INTERFACE

- A. Install wireless routers to achieve optimum performance and best possible coverage.
- B. Mount wireless routers in a protected location that is within 60 inches of floor and easily accessible by operators.
- C. Connect wireless routers to field power supply and to UPS units if network controllers are powered through UPS units.
- D. Install wireless router with latest version of applicable software and configure wireless router with WPA2 security and password protection. Create access password with not less than 12 characters consisting of letters and numbers and at least one special character. Document password in operations and maintenance manuals for reference by operators.
- E. Test and adjust wireless routers for proper operation with portable workstation and other wireless devices intended for use by operators.

### 3.15 ENCLOSURES INSTALLATION

- A. Install the following items in enclosures, to comply with indicated requirements:
1. Gateways.
  2. Routers.
  3. Controllers.
  4. Electrical power devices.
  5. UPS units.
  6. Relays.
  7. Accessories.
  8. Instruments.
  9. Actuators
  10. **<Insert devices>**.
- B. Attach wall-mounted enclosures to wall using the following types of steel struts:
1. For NEMA 250, [**Type 1**] **<Insert type>** Enclosures: Use [**painted steel**] [**galvanized-steel**] [**corrosion-resistant-coated steel**] strut and hardware.
  2. For NEMA 250, [**Type 4**] [**Type 4X**] **<Insert type>** Enclosures and Enclosures Located Outdoors: Use stainless-steel strut and hardware.
  3. Install plastic caps on exposed cut edges of strut.
- C. Align [**top**] [**or**] [**bottom**] of adjacent enclosures[ **of like size**].
- D. Install floor-mounted enclosures located [**in mechanical equipment rooms**] on concrete housekeeping pads. Attach enclosure legs using [**galvanized-**] [**or**] [**stainless-**] steel anchors.
- E. Install continuous and fully accessible wireways to connect conduit, wire, and cable to multiple adjacent enclosures. Wireway used for application shall have protection equal to NEMA 250 rating of connected enclosures.

### 3.16 ELECTRIC POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect electrical power to DDC system products requiring electrical power connections.
- B. Design of electrical power to products not indicated with electric power is delegated to DDC system provider and installing trade. Work shall comply with NFPA 70 and other requirements indicated.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers" for electrical power circuit breakers.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical power conductors and cables.
- E. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for electrical power raceways and boxes.

### 3.17 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for identification products and installation.
- B. Install [**self-adhesive labels**] [**laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs**] with unique identification on face for each of the following:
  - 1. Operator workstation.
  - 2. Server.
  - 3. Printer.
  - 4. Gateway.
  - 5. Router.
  - 6. Protocol analyzer.
  - 7. DDC controller.
  - 8. Enclosure.
  - 9. Electrical power device.
  - 10. UPS unit.
  - 11. Accessory.
- C. Install unique instrument identification on face of each instrument connected to a DDC controller.
- D. Install unique identification on face of each control [**damper**] [**and**] [**valve**] actuator connected to a DDC controller.
- E. Where product is installed above accessible tile ceiling, also install matching identification on face of ceiling grid located directly below.
- F. Where product is installed above an inaccessible ceiling, also install identification on face of access door directly below.
- G. Warning Labels and Signs:
  - 1. Shall be permanently attached to equipment that can be automatically started by DDC control system.
  - 2. Shall be located in highly visible location near power service entry points.

### 3.18 NETWORK INSTALLATION

- A. Install optical fiber cable when connecting between the following network devices and when located in different buildings on campus, or when distance between devices exceeds **<Insert distance>**:
  - 1. Operator workstations.
  - 2. Operator workstations and network controllers.
  - 3. Network controllers.
  - 4. **<Insert network device>**.

- B. Install balanced twisted pair [**or optical fiber**] cable when connecting between the following network devices[ **located in same building**]:
1. Operator workstations.
  2. Operator workstations and network controllers.
  3. Network controllers.
  4. **<Insert network device>**.
- C. Install balanced twisted pair or copper cable (as required by equipment) when connecting between the following:
1. Gateways.
  2. Gateways and network controllers or programmable application controllers.
  3. Routers.
  4. Routers and network controllers or programmable application controllers.
  5. Network controllers and programmable application controllers.
  6. Programmable application controllers.
  7. Programmable application controllers and application-specific controllers.
  8. Application-specific controllers.
  9. **<Insert network device>**.
- D. Install cable in continuous raceway.
1. Where indicated on Drawings, cable trays may be used for copper cable in lieu of conduit.

### 3.19 NETWORK NAMING AND NUMBERING

- A. Coordinate with Owner and provide unique naming and addressing for networks and devices.
- B. ASHRAE 135 Networks:
1. MAC Address:
    - a. Every network device shall have an assigned and documented MAC address unique to its network.
    - b. Ethernet Networks: Document MAC address assigned at its creation.
    - c. ARCNET or MS/TP networks: Assign from 00 to 64.
  2. Network Numbering:
    - a. Assign unique numbers to each new network.
    - b. Provide ability for changing network number through device switches or operator interface.
    - c. DDC system, with all possible connected LANs, can contain up to 65,534 unique networks.
  3. Device Object Identifier Property Number:

- a. Assign unique device object identifier property numbers or device instances for each device network.
  - b. Provide for future modification of device instance number by device switches or operator interface.
  - c. LAN shall support up to 4,194,302 unique devices.
4. Device Object Name Property Text:
- a. Device object name property field shall support 32 minimum printable characters.
  - b. Assign unique device "Object Name" property names with plain-English descriptive names for each device.
    - 1) Example 1: Device object name for device controlling boiler plant at Building 1000 would be "HW System B1000."
    - 2) Example 2: Device object name for a VAV terminal unit controller could be "VAV unit 102".
5. Object Name Property Text for Other Than Device Objects:
- a. Object name property field shall support 32 minimum printable characters.
  - b. Assign object name properties with plain-English names descriptive of application.
    - 1) Example 1: "Zone 1 Temperature."
    - 2) Example 2 "Fan Start and Stop."
6. Object Identifier Property Number for Other Than Device Objects:
- a. Assign object identifier property numbers according to [**Drawings**] [**or**] [**tables**] indicated.
  - b. If not indicated, object identifier property numbers may be assigned at Installer's discretion but must be approved by Owner in advance, be documented and be unique for like object types within device.

### 3.20 PIPING AND TUBING INSTALLATION

#### A. Above-Grade Pneumatic and Air Signal Piping and Tubing Installation:

1. Material Application:
  - a. Install copper tubing, except as follows:
    - 1) Tubing Exposed to View: Polyethylene tubing installed in raceways may be used in lieu of copper tubing.
    - 2) Concealed Tubing: Polyethylene tubing may be used in lieu of copper tubing when [**concealed behind accessible ceilings**] [**and**] [**concealed in walls and connecting wall-mounted instruments with recessed connections**].
  - b. Install copper tubing for sizes up through [**NPS 1**] **<Insert size>** and install galvanized-steel pipe for larger sizes, except as follows:

- 1) Tubing Exposed to View: Polyethylene tubing installed in raceways may be used in lieu of copper tubing where exposed to view.
  - 2) Concealed Tubing: Polyethylene tubing may be used in lieu of copper tubing when [**concealed behind accessible ceilings**] [**and**] [**concealed in walls and connecting wall-mounted instruments with recessed connections**].
- c. Install copper tubing[, **unless other accessible materials are indicated,**] for pneumatic main and control signals to instruments including, but not limited to, the following:
- 1) Pneumatic actuators.
  - 2) I/P transducers.
  - 3) Sensors.
  - 4) Switches.
  - 5) Transmitters.
  - 6) **<Insert instrument>**.
- d. Install copper tubing[, **unless other accessible materials are indicated,**] for air signals to instruments including, but not limited to, the following:
- 1) Sensors.
  - 2) Switches.
  - 3) Transmitters.
  - 4) **<Insert instrument>**.
- e. Install drawn-temper copper tubing, except within 36 inches of device terminations tubing shall be annealed-tempered copper tubing.
- f. Install compression fittings to connect copper tubing to instruments, control devices, and accessories.
- g. Install [**barbed**] [**or**] [**compression**] fittings to connect polyethylene tubing to instruments, control devices, and accessories.
2. Routing:
- a. Do not expose tubing in finished spaces, such as spaces with ceilings; occupied spaces, offices, and conference rooms, unless expressly approved in writing by Architect. Tubing may be exposed in areas without ceilings.
  - b. Where tubing is installed in finished occupied spaces, install the tubing in surface metal raceway with appropriate fittings only where not feasible to conceal in wall, above ceiling or behind architectural enclosures or covers.
  - c. Install piping and tubing plumb and parallel to and at right angles with building construction.
  - d. Install multiple runs of tubing or piping in equally spaced parallel lines.
  - e. Piping and tubing shall not interfere with access to valves, equipment, duct and equipment access doors, or obstruct personnel access and passageways of any kind.
  - f. Coordinate with other trades before installation to prevent proposed piping and tubing from interfering with pipe, duct, terminal equipment, light fixtures, conduit and cable tray space. If changes to Shop Drawings are necessary due to field coordination, document changes on record Drawings.

- g. Install vibration loops in copper tubing when connecting to instrument and actuators that vibrate.
- 3. Support:
  - a. According to MSS SP-69, Table 3, except support spacing shall not exceed 60 inches.
  - b. Support copper tubing with copper hangers, clips, and tube trays.
  - c. Do not use tape for support or dielectric isolation.
  - d. Install supports at each change in direction and at each branch take off.
  - e. Attached supports to building structure independent of work of other trades. Support from ducts, pipes, cable trays, and conduits is prohibited.
  - f. Attached support from building structure with threaded rods, structural shapes, or channel strut.
  - g. Install and brace supports to carry static load plus a safety margin, which will allow tubing to be serviced.
  - h. Brace supports to prevent lateral movement.
  - i. Paint steel support members that are not galvanized or zinc coated.
  - j. Support polyethylene tubing same as copper tubing.
- 4. Do not attach piping and tubing to equipment that may be removed frequently for maintenance or that may impart vibration and expansion from temperature change.
- 5. Protect exposed tubing in mechanical equipment rooms from mechanical damage within [76 inches] [84 inches] [96 inches] <Insert dimension> above floor. Use aluminum channel reversed and secured over tubing to protect tubing from damage.
- 6. Joining and Makeup:
  - a. Where joining and mating dissimilar metals where galvanic action could occur, install dielectric isolation.
  - b. Install a dirt leg with an isolation valve and threaded plug at each main air, connection to a panel, pneumatic pilot positioner and PRV station.
  - c. Make threaded joints for connecting to instrument equipment with connectors with a compression tubing connector on one end and threaded connection on other end.
  - d. Make tubing bends with a tube-bending tool. Hard bends, wrinkled or flattened bends are unacceptable.
  - e. Install tube fittings according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - f. Do not make tubing connections to a fitting before completing makeup of the connection.
  - g. Align tubing with the fitting. Avoid springing tube into position, as this may result in excessive stress on both tubing and fitting with possible resulting leaks.
  - h. Do not install fittings close to a bend. A length of straight tubing, not deformed by bending, is required for a proper connection.
  - i. Check tubing for correct diameter and wall thickness.
  - j. Tube ends shall be cut square and deburred. Exercise care during cutting to keep tubing round.
  - k. Thread pipe on a threading machine. Ream inner edges of pipe ends, file and grind to remove burrs.
  - l. Wrap pipe threads of fittings on pneumatic lines with a single wrap of PTFE tape.
  - m. Protect piping and tubing from entrance of foreign matter.

7. Conduit in which nonmetallic tubing is installed shall not exceed 50 percent fill. Support conduit according to NFPA 70 unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Below-Grade Pneumatic and Air Signal Piping and Tubing Installation:
1. Install tubing below grade in a continuous 4-inch, Schedule 80, PVC conduit.
  2. Install at a depth of at least 24 inches below finished grade.
  3. Install tubing in raceways dedicated to tubing. Do not combine electrical conductors and tubing in raceways.
- C. Identify piping and tubing as follows:
1. Every 50 feet of straight run.
  2. At least once for each branch within 36 inches of main tee.
  3. At each change in direction.
  4. Within 36 inches of each ceiling, floor, roof and wall penetration.
  5. Where exposed to and where concealed from view, including above ceiling plenums, shafts, and chases.
  6. At each valve.
  7. Mark each instrument tube connection with a number-coded identification. Each unique tube shall have same unique number at instrument connection and termination at opposite end of tube.
- D. Isolation Valves Installation:
1. Install valves full size of piping and tubing.
  2. Install at the following locations:
    - a. At each branch.
    - b. Before and after each PRV.
    - c. Before and after each air dryer.
    - d. At each control device.
  3. Valves shall be located to be readily accessible from floor.
- E. Process Tubing Installation:
1. Install process tubing for signal to instruments in liquid and steam systems. Instruments include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Meters.
    - b. Sensors.
    - c. Switches.
    - d. Transmitters.
  2. Support tubing according to MSS SP-69, Table 3, but at intervals no less than 60 inches.
  3. Install NPS 1/2 process tubing for industrial-grade sensors, transmitters, and switches. Install stainless-steel bushings where required.
  4. Make tubing bends with a bending tool. Flattened or wrinkled bends are unacceptable.
  5. Support tubing independent of other trades.
  6. Route tubing parallel to and at right angles to building construction.

7. Install tubing concealed in areas with ceilings.
8. Install a dirt leg with an isolation valve and threaded plug in drain valve at each connection to a transmitter and switch.
9. Insulate process piping connected to hot water and steam systems for personnel protection if the surface temperature exceeds 120 deg F. Only insulate piping within maintenance personnel reach from floor, platform, or catwalk.
10. Wrap pipe threads of fitting in process tubing with service temperatures below 350 deg F with a single wrap of PTFE tape.
11. Coat pipe threads of fittings on process tubing in services with temperatures exceeding 350 deg F with pipe compound before being made up to reduce the possibility of galling.
12. Do not make tubing connections to a fitting before completing makeup of the connection.
13. Check tubing for correct diameter and wall thickness. Cut the tube ends square and deburred. Exercise care during cutting to keep tubing round.
14. Do not install fittings close to a bend. A length of straight tubing, not deformed by bending, is required for a proper connection.
15. Align tubing with fitting when installed. Avoid springing tube into position.
16. Install tubing with extreme care exercised to keep foreign matter out of system. Open tubing ends shall be kept plugged to keep out dust, dirt and moisture.
17. Do not attach tubing to equipment that may be removed frequently for maintenance or may impart vibration and expansion from temperature change.
18. Protect exposed tubing in mechanical equipment rooms from inadvertent mechanical damage within [76 inches] [84 inches] [96 inches] <Insert dimension> above floor. Use aluminum channel reversed and secured over tubing to protect tubing from damage.

F. Isolation Valves Installation:

1. Install valves full size of piping and tubing.
2. Install isolation valves at the following locations:
  - a. Process connection.
  - b. Inlet to each instrument including, sensors, transmitters, switches, gages, and other control devices.
3. Locate valves to be readily accessible from floor.

3.21 CONTROL WIRE, CABLE AND RACEWAYS INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Wire and Cable Installation:

1. Comply with installation requirements in Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
2. Comply with installation requirements in Section 271313 "Communications Copper Backbone Cabling."
3. Comply with installation requirements in Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."
4. Install cables with protective sheathing that is waterproof and capable of withstanding continuous temperatures of 90 deg C with no measurable effect on physical and electrical properties of cable.

- a. Provide shielding to prevent interference and distortion from adjacent cables and equipment.
5. Terminate wiring in a junction box.
  - a. Clamp cable over jacket in junction box.
  - b. Individual conductors in the stripped section of the cable shall be slack between the clamping point and terminal block.
6. Terminate field wiring and cable not directly connected to instruments and control devices having integral wiring terminals using terminal blocks.
7. Install signal transmission components according to IEEE C2, REA Form 511a, NFPA 70, and as indicated.
8. Use shielded cable to transmitters.
9. Use shielded cable to temperature sensors.
10. Perform continuity and meager testing on wire and cable after installation.

C. Conduit Installation:

1. Comply with Section "260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for control-voltage conductors.
2. Comply with Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for balanced twisted pair cabling and optical fiber installation.

3.22 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 271323 "Communications Optical Fiber Backbone Cabling."
- B. Comply with installation requirements in Section 271523 "Communications Optical Fiber Horizontal Cabling."

3.23 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: **[Owner will engage] [Engage]** a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections[ **with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**]:
  1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  3. Testing of Pneumatic and Air-Signal Tubing:
    - a. Test for leaks and obstructions.

- b. Disconnect each pipe and tubing line before a test is performed, and blowout dust, dirt, trash, condensate and other foreign materials with compressed air. Use commercially pure compressed air or nitrogen as distributed in gas cylinders. Air from an oil-free compressor with an air dryer is an acceptable alternative for the test.
- c. After foreign matter is expelled and line is free from obstructions, plug far end of tubing run.
- d. Connect a pressure source to near end of run with a needle valve between air supply and tubing run.
- e. Connect a pressure gage accurate to within 0.5 percent of test between the shutoff needle valve and tubing run under test.
- f. For system pressures above 30 psig, apply a pressure of 1.5 times operating pressure. Record pressure in tubing run every 10 minutes for one hour. Allowable drop in pressure in one-hour period shall not exceed 1 psig.
- g. For system pressures 30 psig and below, apply a pressure of 2.0 times operating pressure to piping and tubing run. Record pressure in tubing run every 5 minutes for one hour. Allowable drop in pressure in one-hour period shall not exceed 0.5 psig.

D. Testing:

1. Perform preinstallation, in-progress, and final tests, supplemented by additional tests, as necessary.
2. Preinstallation Cable Verification: Verify integrity and serviceability for new cable lengths before installation. This assurance may be provided by using vendor verification documents, testing, or other methods. As a minimum, furnish evidence of verification for cable attenuation and bandwidth parameters.
3. In-Progress Testing: Perform standard tests for correct pair identification and termination during installation to ensure proper installation and cable placement. Perform tests in addition to those specified if there is any reason to question condition of material furnished and installed. Testing accomplished is to be documented by agency conducting tests. Submit test results for Project record.
4. Final Testing: Perform final test of installed system to demonstrate acceptability as installed. Testing shall be performed according to a test plan supplied by DDC system manufacturer. Defective Work or material shall be corrected and retested. As a minimum, final testing for cable system, including spare cable, shall verify conformance of attenuation, length, and bandwidth parameters with performance indicated.
5. Test Equipment: Use an optical fiber time domain reflectometer for testing of length and optical connectivity.
6. Test Results: Record test results and submit copy of test results for Project record.

3.24 DDC SYSTEM I/O CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

- A. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests and calibration.
- B. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
- C. Check instruments for proper installation on direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that will impact performance.

- D. Check instrument tubing for proper isolation, fittings, slope, dirt legs, drains, material and support.
- E. For pneumatic products, verify that air supply for each product is properly installed.
- F. Control Damper Checkout:
  - 1. For pneumatic dampers, verify that pressure gages are provided in each air line to damper actuator and positioner.
  - 2. Verify that control dampers are installed correctly for flow direction.
  - 3. Verify that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
  - 4. Verify that damper frame attachment is properly secured and sealed.
  - 5. Verify that damper actuator and linkage attachment is secure.
  - 6. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed and connected to correct power source.
  - 7. Verify that damper blade travel is unobstructed.
- G. Control Valve Checkout:
  - 1. For pneumatic valves, verify that pressure gages are provided in each air line to valve actuator and positioner.
  - 2. Verify that control valves are installed correctly for flow direction.
  - 3. Verify that valve body attachment is properly secured and sealed.
  - 4. Verify that valve actuator and linkage attachment is secure.
  - 5. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed and connected to correct power source.
  - 6. Verify that valve ball, disc or plug travel is unobstructed.
  - 7. After piping systems have been tested and put into service, but before insulating and balancing, inspect each valve for leaks. Adjust or replace packing to stop leaks. Replace the valve if leaks persist.
- H. Instrument Checkout:
  - 1. Verify that instrument is correctly installed for location, orientation, direction and operating clearances.
  - 2. Verify that attachment is properly secured and sealed.
  - 3. Verify that conduit connections are properly secured and sealed.
  - 4. Verify that wiring is properly labeled with unique identification, correct type and size and is securely attached to proper terminals.
  - 5. Inspect instrument tag against approved submittal.
  - 6. For instruments with tubing connections, verify that tubing attachment is secure and isolation valves have been provided.
  - 7. For flow instruments, verify that recommended upstream and downstream distances have been maintained.
  - 8. For temperature instruments:
    - a. Verify sensing element type and proper material.
    - b. Verify length and insertion.

3.25 DDC SYSTEM I/O ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION AND TESTING:

- A. Calibrate each instrument installed that is not factory calibrated and provided with calibration documentation.
- B. Provide a written description of proposed field procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures before calibration and adjustment.
- C. For each analog instrument, make a three-point test of calibration for both linearity and accuracy.
- D. Equipment and procedures used for calibration shall comply with instrument manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Provide diagnostic and test equipment for calibration and adjustment.
- F. Field instruments and equipment used to test and calibrate installed instruments shall have accuracy at least twice the instrument accuracy being calibrated. An installed instrument with an accuracy of 1 percent shall be checked by an instrument with an accuracy of 0.5 percent.
- G. Calibrate each instrument according to instrument instruction manual supplied by manufacturer.
- H. If after calibration indicated performance cannot be achieved, replace out-of-tolerance instruments.
- I. Comply with field testing requirements and procedures indicated by ASHRAE's Guideline 11, "Field Testing of HVAC Control Components," in the absence of specific requirements, and to supplement requirements indicated.
- J. Analog Signals:
  - 1. Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
  - 2. Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
  - 3. Check resistance signals for temperature sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of operating span using a precision-resistant source.
- K. Digital Signals:
  - 1. Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
  - 2. Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact making or breaking.
- L. Control Dampers:
  - 1. Stroke and adjust control dampers following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed and back to 100 percent open.
  - 2. Stroke control dampers with pilot positioners. Adjust damper and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so damper is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed and 100 percent open at proper air pressure.
  - 3. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time less than 30 seconds.

4. For control dampers equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

M. Control Valves:

1. Stroke and adjust control valves following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed and back to 100 percent open.
2. Stroke control valves with pilot positioners. Adjust valve and positioner following manufacturer's recommended procedure, so valve is 100 percent closed, 50 percent closed and 100 percent open at proper air pressures.
3. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with a cycle time less than 30 seconds.
4. For control valves equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

N. Meters: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.

O. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.

P. Switches: Calibrate switches to make or break contact at set points indicated.

Q. Transmitters:

1. Check and calibrate transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.
2. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at zero, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistant source.

### 3.26 DDC SYSTEM CONTROLLER CHECKOUT

A. Verify power supply.

1. Verify voltage, phase and hertz.
2. Verify that protection from power surges is installed and functioning.
3. Verify that ground fault protection is installed.
4. If applicable, verify if connected to UPS unit.
5. If applicable, verify if connected to a backup power source.
6. If applicable, verify that power conditioning units, transient voltage suppression and high-frequency noise filter units are installed.

B. Verify that wire and cabling is properly secured to terminals and labeled with unique identification.

C. Verify that spare I/O capacity is provided.

### 3.27 DDC CONTROLLER I/O CONTROL LOOP TESTS

A. Testing:

1. Test every I/O point connected to DDC controller to verify that safety and operating control set points are as indicated and as required to operate controlled system safely and at optimum performance.
2. Test every I/O point throughout its full operating range.
3. Test every control loop to verify operation is stable and accurate.
4. Adjust control loop proportional, integral and derivative settings to achieve optimum performance while complying with performance requirements indicated. Document testing of each control loop's precision and stability via trend logs.
5. Test and adjust every control loop for proper operation according to sequence of operation.
6. Test software and hardware interlocks for proper operation. Correct deficiencies.
7. Operate each analog point at the following:
  - a. Upper quarter of range.
  - b. Lower quarter of range.
  - c. At midpoint of range.
8. Exercise each binary point.
9. For every I/O point in DDC system, read and record each value at operator workstation, at DDC controller and at field instrument simultaneously. Value displayed at operator workstation, at DDC controller and at field instrument shall match.
10. Prepare and submit a report documenting results for each I/O point in DDC system and include in each I/O point a description of corrective measures and adjustments made to achieve desired results.

### 3.28 DDC SYSTEM VALIDATION TESTS

- A. Perform validation tests before requesting final review of system. Before beginning testing, first submit Pretest Checklist and Test Plan.
- B. After approval of Test Plan, execute all tests and procedures indicated in plan.
- C. After testing is complete, submit completed test checklist.
- D. Pretest Checklist: Submit the following list with items checked off once verified:
  1. Detailed explanation for any items that are not completed or verified.
  2. Required mechanical installation work is successfully completed and HVAC equipment is working correctly.
  3. HVAC equipment motors operate below full-load amperage ratings.
  4. Required DDC system components, wiring, and accessories are installed.
  5. Installed DDC system architecture matches approved Drawings.
  6. Control electric power circuits operate at proper voltage and are free from faults.
  7. Required surge protection is installed.
  8. DDC system network communications function properly, including uploading and downloading programming changes.
  9. Using BACnet protocol analyzer, verify that communications are error free.
  10. Each controller's programming is backed up.
  11. Equipment, products, tubing, wiring cable and conduits are properly labeled.
  12. All I/O points are programmed into controllers.

13. Testing, adjusting and balancing work affecting controls is complete.
14. Dampers and actuators zero and span adjustments are set properly.
15. Each control damper and actuator goes to failed position on loss of power.
16. Valves and actuators zero and span adjustments are set properly.
17. Each control valve and actuator goes to failed position on loss of power.
18. Meter, sensor and transmitter readings are accurate and calibrated.
19. Control loops are tuned for smooth and stable operation.
20. View trend data where applicable.
21. Each controller works properly in standalone mode.
22. Safety controls and devices function properly.
23. Interfaces with fire-alarm system function properly.
24. Electrical interlocks function properly.
25. Operator workstations and other interfaces are delivered, all system and database software is installed, and graphic are created.
26. Record Drawings are completed.

E. Test Plan:

1. Prepare and submit a validation test plan including test procedures for performance validation tests.
2. Test plan shall address all specified functions of DDC system and sequences of operation.
3. Explain detailed actions and expected results to demonstrate compliance with requirements indicated.
4. Explain method for simulating necessary conditions of operation used to demonstrate performance.
5. Include a test checklist to be used to check and initial that each test has been successfully completed.
6. Submit test plan documentation [10] [20] <Insert number> business days before start of tests.

F. Validation Test:

1. Verify operating performance of each I/O point in DDC system.
  - a. Verify analog I/O points at operating value.
  - b. Make adjustments to out-of-tolerance I/O points.
    - 1) Identify I/O points for future reference.
    - 2) Simulate abnormal conditions to demonstrate proper function of safety devices.
    - 3) Replace instruments and controllers that cannot maintain performance indicated after adjustments.
2. Simulate conditions to demonstrate proper sequence of control.
3. Readjust settings to design values and observe ability of DDC system to establish desired conditions.
4. After 24 Hours following Initial Validation Test:
  - a. Re-check I/O points that required corrections during initial test.
  - b. Identify I/O points that still require additional correction and make corrections necessary to achieve desired results.

5. After 24 Hours of Second Validation Test:
  - a. Re-check I/O points that required corrections during second test.
  - b. Continue validation testing until I/O point is normal on two consecutive tests.
6. Completely check out, calibrate, and test all connected hardware and software to ensure that DDC system performs according to requirements indicated.
7. After validation testing is complete, prepare and submit a report indicating all I/O points that required correction and how many validation re-tests it took to pass. Identify adjustments made for each test and indicate instruments that were replaced.

G. DDC System Response Time Test:

1. Simulate HLC.
  - a. Heavy load shall be an occurrence of [50] <Insert number> percent of total connected binary COV, one-half of which represent an "alarm" condition, and [50] <Insert number> percent of total connected analog COV, one-half of which represent an "alarm" condition, that are initiated simultaneously on a one-time basis.
2. Initiate 10 successive occurrences of HLC and measure response time to typical alarms and status changes.
3. Measure with a timer having at least 0.1-second resolution and 0.01 percent accuracy.
4. Purpose of test is to demonstrate DDC system, as follows:
  - a. Reaction to COV and alarm conditions during HLC.
  - b. Ability to update DDC system database during HLC.
5. Passing test is contingent on the following:
  - a. Alarm reporting at printer beginning no more than [two] <Insert number> seconds after the initiation (time zero) of HLC.
  - b. All alarms, both binary and analog, are reported and printed; none are lost.
  - c. Compliance with response times specified.
6. Prepare and submit a report documenting HLC tested and results of test including time stamp and print out of all alarms.

H. DDC System Network Bandwidth Test:

1. Test network bandwidth usage on all DDC system networks to demonstrate bandwidth usage under DDC system normal operating conditions and under simulated HLC.
2. To pass, none of DDC system networks shall use more than 70 percent of available bandwidth under normal and HLC operation.

3.29 DDC SYSTEM WIRELESS NETWORK VERIFICATION

- A. DDC system Installer shall design wireless DDC system networks to comply with performance requirements indicated.

- B. Installer shall verify wireless network performance through field testing and shall document results in a field test report.
- C. Testing and verification of all wireless devices shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
  - 1. Speed.
  - 2. Online status.
  - 3. Signal strength.

### 3.30 FINAL REVIEW

- A. Submit written request to Architect **[and]** **[Construction Manager]** when DDC system is ready for final review. Written request shall state the following:
  - 1. DDC system has been thoroughly inspected for compliance with contract documents and found to be in full compliance.
  - 2. DDC system has been calibrated, adjusted and tested and found to comply with requirements of operational stability, accuracy, speed and other performance requirements indicated.
  - 3. DDC system monitoring and control of HVAC systems results in operation according to sequences of operation indicated.
  - 4. DDC system is complete and ready for final review.
- B. Review by **[Architect]** **[and]** **[Construction Manager]** shall be made after receipt of written request. A field report shall be issued to document observations and deficiencies.
- C. Take prompt action to remedy deficiencies indicated in field report and submit a second written request when all deficiencies have been corrected. Repeat process until no deficiencies are reported.
- D. Should more than two reviews be required, DDC system manufacturer and Installer shall compensate entity performing review for total costs, labor and expenses, associated with third and subsequent reviews. Estimated cost of each review shall be submitted and approved by DDC system manufacturer and Installer before making the review.
- E. Prepare and submit closeout submittals **[and begin procedures indicated in "Extended Operation Test" Article]** when no deficiencies are reported.
- F. A part of DDC system final review shall include a demonstration to parties participating in final review.
  - 1. Provide staff familiar with DDC system installed to demonstrate operation of DDC system during final review.
  - 2. Provide testing equipment to demonstrate accuracy and other performance requirements of DDC system that is requested by reviewers during final review.
  - 3. Demonstration shall include, but not be limited to, the following:
    - a. Accuracy and calibration of **[10]** **[20]** **<Insert number>** I/O points randomly selected by reviewers. If review finds that some I/O points are not properly

- calibrated and not satisfying performance requirements indicated, additional I/O points may be selected by reviewers until total I/O points being reviewed that satisfy requirements equals quantity indicated.
- b. HVAC equipment and system hardwired and software safeties and life-safety functions are operating according to sequence of operation. Up to [10] [20] <Insert number> I/O points shall be randomly selected by reviewers. Additional I/O points may be selected by reviewers to discover problems with operation.
  - c. Correct sequence of operation after electrical power interruption and resumption after electrical power is restored for randomly selected HVAC systems.
  - d. Operation of randomly selected dampers and valves in normal-on, normal-off and failed positions.
  - e. Reporting of alarm conditions for randomly selected alarms, including different classes of alarms, to ensure that alarms are properly received by operators and operator workstations.
  - f. Trends, summaries, logs and reports set-up for Project.
  - g. For up to [three] <Insert number> HVAC systems randomly selected by reviewers, use graph trends to show that sequence of operation is executed in correct manner and that HVAC systems operate properly through complete sequence of operation including different modes of operations indicated. Show that control loops are stable and operating at set points and respond to changes in set point of 20 percent or more.
  - h. Software's ability to communicate with controllers, operator workstations, uploading and downloading of control programs.
  - i. Software's ability to edit control programs off-line.
  - j. Data entry to show Project-specific customizing capability including parameter changes.
  - k. Step through penetration tree, display all graphics, demonstrate dynamic update, and direct access to graphics.
  - l. Execution of digital and analog commands in graphic mode.
  - m. Spreadsheet and curve plot software and its integration with database.
  - n. Online user guide and help functions.
  - o. Multitasking by showing different operations occurring simultaneously on four quadrants of split screen.
  - p. System speed of response compared to requirements indicated.
  - q. For Each [Network] [and] [Programmable Application] Controller:
    - 1) Memory: Programmed data, parameters, trend and alarm history collected during normal operation is not lost during power failure.
    - 2) Operator Interface: Ability to connect directly to each type of digital controller with a portable workstation and mobile device. Show that maintenance personnel interface tools perform as indicated in manufacturer's technical literature.
    - 3) Standalone Ability: Demonstrate that controllers provide stable and reliable standalone operation using default values or other method for values normally read over network.
    - 4) Electric Power: Ability to disconnect any controller safely from its power source.
    - 5) Wiring Labels: Match control drawings.
    - 6) Network Communication: Ability to locate a controller's location on network and communication architecture matches Shop Drawings.

- 7) Nameplates and Tags: Accurate and permanently attached to control panel doors, instrument, actuators and devices.
- r. For Each Operator Workstation:
- 1) I/O points lists agree with naming conventions.
  - 2) Graphics are complete.
  - 3) UPS unit, if applicable, operates.
- s. Communications and Interoperability: Demonstrate proper interoperability of data sharing, alarm and event management, trending, scheduling, and device and network management.[ **Use ASHRAE 135 protocol analyzer to help identify devices, view network traffic, and verify interoperability.**] Requirements must be met even if only one manufacturer's equipment is installed.
- 1) Data Presentation: On each operator workstation, demonstrate graphic display capabilities.
  - 2) Reading of Any Property: Demonstrate ability to read and display any used readable object property of any device on network.
  - 3) Set Point and Parameter Modifications: Show ability to modify set points and tuning parameters indicated.[ **Modifications are made with messages and write services initiated by an operator using workstation graphics, or by completing a field in a menu with instructional text.**]
  - 4) Peer-to-Peer Data Exchange: Network devices are installed and configured to perform without need for operator intervention to implement Project sequence of operation and to share global data.
  - 5) Alarm and Event Management: Alarms and events are installed and prioritized according to Owner. Demonstrate that time delays and other logic are set up to avoid nuisance tripping. Show that operators with sufficient privileges are permitted.
  - 6) Schedule Lists: Schedules are configured for start and stop, mode change, occupant overrides, and night setback as defined in sequence of operations.
  - 7) Schedule Display and Modification: Ability to display any schedule with start and stop times for calendar year. Show that all calendar entries and schedules are modifiable from any connected operator workstation by an operator with sufficient privilege.
  - 8) Archival Storage of Data: Data archiving is handled by operator workstation and server and local trend archiving and display is accomplished.
  - 9) Modification of Trend Log Object Parameters: Operator with sufficient privilege can change logged data points, sampling rate, and trend duration.
  - 10) Device and Network Management:
    - a) Display of network device status.
    - b) Display of BACnet Object Information.
    - c) Silencing devices transmitting erroneous data.
    - d) Time synchronization.
    - e) Remote device re-initialization.
    - f) Backup and restore network device programming and master database(s).
    - g) Configuration management of routers.

t. <Insert additional requirements>.

### 3.31 EXTENDED OPERATION TEST

- A. Extended operation test is intended to simulate normal operation of DDC system by Owner.
- B. Operate DDC system for an operating period of [14] [21] [28] <Insert number> consecutive calendar days following Substantial Completion. Coordinate exact start date of testing with Owner.
- C. Provide an operator familiar with DDC system installed to man an operator workstation [**while on-site**] during eight hours of each normal business day occurring during operating period.
- D. During operating period, DDC system shall demonstrate correct operation and accuracy of monitored and controlled points as well as operation capabilities of sequences, logs, trends, reports, specialized control algorithms, diagnostics, and other software indicated.
  - 1. Correct defects of hardware and software when it occurs.
- E. Definition of Failures and Downtime during Operating Period:
  - 1. Failed I/O point constituting downtime is an I/O point failing to perform its intended function consistently and a point physically failed due to hardware and software.
  - 2. Downtime is when any I/O point in DDC system is unable to fulfill its' required function.
  - 3. Downtime shall be calculated as elapsed time between a detected point failure as confirmed by an operator and time point is restored to service.
  - 4. Maximum time interval allowed between DDC system detection of failure occurrence and operator confirmation shall be 0.5 hours.
  - 5. Downtime shall be logged in hours to nearest 0.1 hour.
  - 6. Power outages shall not count as downtime, but shall suspend test hours unless systems are provided with UPS and served through a backup power source.
  - 7. Hardware or software failures caused by power outages shall count as downtime.
- F. During operating period, log downtime and operational problems are encountered.
  - 1. Identify source of problem.
  - 2. Provide written description of corrective action taken.
  - 3. Record duration of downtime.
  - 4. Maintain log showing the following:
    - a. Time of occurrence.
    - b. Description of each occurrence and pertinent written comments for reviewer to understand scope and extent of occurrence.
    - c. Downtime for each failed I/O point.
    - d. Running total of downtime and total time of I/O point after each problem has been restored.
  - 5. Log shall be available to Owner for review at any time.

- G. For DDC system to pass extended operation test, total downtime shall not exceed [1] [2] <Insert number> percent of total point-hours during operating period.
1. Failure to comply with minimum requirements of passing at end of operating period indicated shall require that operating period be extended one consecutive day at a time until DDC system passes requirement.
- H. Evaluation of DDC system passing test shall be based on the following calculation:
1. Downtime shall be counted on a point-hour basis where total number of DDC system point-hours is equal to total number of I/O points in DDC system multiplied by total number of hours during operating period.
  2. One point-hour of downtime is one I/O point down for one hour. Three points down for five hours is a total of 15 point-hours of downtime. Four points down for one-half hour is 2 point-hours of downtime.
  3. Example Calculation: Maximum allowable downtime for 30-day test when DDC system has 1000 total I/O points (combined analog and binary) and has passing score of 1 percent downtime is computed by 30 days x 24 h/day x 1000 points x 1 percent equals 7200 point-hours of maximum allowable downtime.
- I. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.32 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within [12] <Insert number> months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to [two] <Insert number> visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

### 3.33 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include [three] [six] [nine] [12] <Insert number> months' full maintenance by DDC system manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include [monthly] [quarterly] [semiannual] [annual] preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, cleaning, calibration and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

### 3.34 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for [one] [two] <Insert number> year(s).
- B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within [one] [two] <Insert number> year(s) from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.

1. Upgrade Notice: At least [30] <Insert number> days to allow Owner to schedule and access system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

### 3.35 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative with complete knowledge of Project-specific system installed to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain DDC system.
- B. Extent of Training:
  1. Base extent of training on scope and complexity of DDC system indicated and training requirements indicated. Provide extent of training required to satisfy requirements indicated even if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
  2. Inform Owner of anticipated training requirements if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
  3. Minimum Training Requirements:
    - a. Provide not less than [five] [10] [15] <Insert number> days of training total.
    - b. Stagger training over multiple training classes to accommodate Owner's requirements. All training shall occur before end of warranty period.
    - c. Total days of training shall be broken into not more than [two] [three] [four] <Insert number> separate training classes.
    - d. Each training class shall be not less than [one] [two] [three] <Insert number> consecutive day(s).
- C. Training Schedule:
  1. Schedule training with Owner [20] <Insert number> business days before expected Substantial Completion.
  2. Schedule training to provide Owner with at least [10] [15] [20] <Insert number> business days of notice in advance of training.
  3. Training shall occur within normal business hours at a mutually agreed on time. Unless otherwise agreed to, training shall occur Monday through Friday, except on U.S. Federal holidays, with two morning sessions and two afternoon sessions. Each morning session and afternoon session shall be split in half with [15] [30] <Insert number>-minute break between sessions. Morning and afternoon sessions shall be separated by [30] [60] <Insert number>-minute lunch period. Training, including breaks and excluding lunch period, shall not exceed [eight] <Insert number> hours per day.
  4. Provide staggered training schedule as requested by Owner.
- D. Training Attendee List and Sign-in Sheet:
  1. Request from Owner in advance of training a proposed attendee list with name, phone number and e-mail address.
  2. Provide a preprinted sign-in sheet for each training session with proposed attendees listed and no fewer than six blank spaces to add additional attendees.
  3. Preprinted sign-in sheet shall include training session number, date and time, instructor name, phone number and e-mail address, and brief description of content to be covered

- during session. List attendees with columns for name, phone number, e-mail address and a column for attendee signature or initials.
4. Circulate sign-in sheet at beginning of each session and solicit attendees to sign or initial in applicable location.
  5. At end of each training day, send Owner an e-mail with an attachment of scanned copy (PDF) of circulated sign-in sheet for each session.
- E. Training Attendee Headcount:
1. Plan in advance of training for [**two**] [**three**] [**five**] <Insert number> attendees.
  2. Make allowance for Owner to add up to [**one**] [**two**] <Insert number> attendee(s) at time of training.
  3. Headcount may vary depending on training content covered in session. Attendee access may be restricted to some training content for purposes of maintaining system security.
- F. Training Attendee Prior Knowledge: For guidance in planning required training and instruction, assume attendees have the following:
1. [**High school**] [**High school and technical school**] [**High school and four-year college**] <Insert level> education and degree.
  2. [**Basic**] [**Intermediate**] [**Advanced**] user knowledge of computers and office applications.
  3. [**Basic**] [**Intermediate**] [**Advanced**] knowledge of HVAC systems.
  4. [**Basic**] [**Intermediate**] [**Advanced**] knowledge of DDC systems.
  5. [**Basic**] [**Intermediate**] [**Advanced**] knowledge of DDC system and products installed.
- G. Attendee Training Manuals:
1. Provide each attendee with a color hard copy of all training materials and visual presentations.
  2. Hard-copy materials shall be organized in a three-ring binder with table of contents and individual divider tabs marked for each logical grouping of subject matter. Organize material to provide space for attendees to take handwritten notes within training manuals.
  3. In addition to hard-copy materials included in training manual, provide each binder with a sleeve or pocket that includes a DVD or flash drive with PDF copy of all hard-copy materials.
- H. Instructor Requirements:
1. One or multiple qualified instructors, as required, to provide training.
  2. Instructors shall have not less than [**five**] <Insert number> years of providing instructional training on not less than [**five**] <Insert number> past projects with similar DDC system scope and complexity to DDC system installed.
- I. Organization of Training Sessions:
1. Organize training sessions into logical groupings of technical content and to reflect different levels of operators having access to system. Plan training sessions to accommodate the following three levels of operators:
    - a. Daily operators.

- b. Advanced operators.
    - c. System managers and administrators.
  2. Plan and organize training sessions to group training content to protect DDC system security. Some attendees may be restricted to some training sessions that cover restricted content for purposes of maintaining DDC system security.
- J. Training Outline:
1. Submit training outline for Owner review at least [10] <Insert number> business day before scheduling training.
  2. Outline shall include a detailed agenda for each training day that is broken down into each of four training sessions that day, training objectives for each training session and synopses for each lesson planned.
- K. On-Site Training:
1. Owner will provide conditioned classroom or workspace with ample desks or tables, chairs, power and data connectivity for instructor and each attendee.
  2. Instructor shall provide training materials, projector and other audiovisual equipment used in training.
  3. Provide as much of training located on-site as deemed feasible and practical by Owner.
  4. On-site training shall include regular walk-through tours, as required, to observe each unique product type installed with hands-on review of operation, calibration and service requirements.
  5. Operator workstation provided with DDC system shall be used in training. If operator workstation is not indicated, provide a temporary workstation to convey training content.
- L. Off-Site Training:
1. Provide conditioned training rooms and workspace with ample tables desks or tables, chairs, power and data connectivity for each attendee.
  2. Provide capability to remotely access to Project DDC system for use in training.
  3. Provide a workstation for use by each attendee.
- M. Training Content for Daily Operators:
1. Basic operation of system.
  2. Understanding DDC system architecture and configuration.
  3. Understanding each unique product type installed including performance and service requirements for each.
  4. Understanding operation of each system and equipment controlled by DDC system including sequences of operation, each unique control algorithm and each unique optimization routine.
  5. Operating operator workstations, printers and other peripherals.
  6. Logging on and off system.
  7. Accessing graphics, reports and alarms.
  8. Adjusting and changing set points and time schedules.
  9. Recognizing DDC system malfunctions.
  10. Understanding content of operation and maintenance manuals including control drawings.

11. Understanding physical location and placement of DDC controllers and I/O hardware.
12. Accessing data from DDC controllers.
13. Operating portable operator workstations.
14. Review of DDC testing results to establish basic understanding of DDC system operating performance and HVAC system limitations as of Substantial Completion.
15. Running each specified report and log.
16. Displaying and demonstrating each data entry to show Project-specific customizing capability. Demonstrating parameter changes.
17. Stepping through graphics penetration tree, displaying all graphics, demonstrating dynamic updating, and direct access to graphics.
18. Executing digital and analog commands in graphic mode.
19. Demonstrating control loop precision and stability via trend logs of I/O for not less than 10 percent of I/O installed.
20. Demonstrating DDC system performance through trend logs and command tracing.
21. Demonstrating scan, update, and alarm responsiveness.
22. Demonstrating spreadsheet and curve plot software, and its integration with database.
23. Demonstrating on-line user guide, and help function and mail facility.
24. Demonstrating multitasking by showing dynamic curve plot, and graphic construction operating simultaneously via split screen.
25. Demonstrating the following for HVAC systems and equipment controlled by DDC system:
  - a. Operation of HVAC equipment in normal-off, -on and failed conditions while observing individual equipment, dampers and valves for correct position under each condition.
  - b. For HVAC equipment with factory-installed software, show that integration into DDC system is able to communicate with DDC controllers or gateways, as applicable.
  - c. Using graphed trends, show that sequence of operation is executed in correct manner, and HVAC systems operate properly through complete sequence of operation including seasonal change, occupied and unoccupied modes, warm-up and cool-down cycles and other modes of operation indicated.
  - d. Hardware interlocks and safeties function properly and DDC system performs correct sequence of operation after electrical power interruption and resumption after power is restored.
  - e. Reporting of alarm conditions for each alarm, and confirm that alarms are received at assigned locations, including operator workstations.
  - f. Each control loop responds to set point adjustment and stabilizes within time period indicated.
  - g. Sharing of previously graphed trends of all control loops to demonstrate that each control loop is stable and set points are being maintained.

26. <Insert requirement>.

N. Training Content for Advanced Operators:

1. Making and changing workstation graphics.
2. Creating, deleting and modifying alarms including annunciation and routing.
3. Creating, deleting and modifying point trend logs including graphing and printing on an ad-hoc basis and operator-defined time intervals.
4. Creating, deleting and modifying reports.

5. Creating, deleting and modifying points.
6. Creating, deleting and modifying programming including ability to edit control programs off-line.
7. Creating, deleting and modifying system graphics and other types of displays.
8. Adding DDC controllers and other network communication devices such as gateways and routers.
9. Adding operator workstations.
10. Performing DDC system checkout and diagnostic procedures.
11. Performing DDC controllers operation and maintenance procedures.
12. Performing operator workstation operation and maintenance procedures.
13. Configuring DDC system hardware including controllers, workstations, communication devices and I/O points.
14. Maintaining, calibrating, troubleshooting, diagnosing and repairing hardware.
15. Adjusting, calibrating and replacing DDC system components.
16. **<Insert requirement>**.

O. Training Content for System Managers and Administrators:

1. DDC system software maintenance and backups.
2. Uploading, downloading and off-line archiving of all DDC system software and databases.
3. Interface with Project-specific, third-party operator software.
4. Understanding password and security procedures.
5. Adding new operators and making modifications to existing operators.
6. Operator password assignments and modification.
7. Operator authority assignment and modification.
8. Workstation data segregation and modification.
9. **<Insert requirement>**.

P. Video of Training Sessions:

1. Provide a digital video and audio recording of each training session. Create a separate recording file for each session.
2. Stamp each recording file with training session number, session name and date.
3. Provide Owner with [two] **<Insert number>** copies of digital files on DVDs or flash drives for later reference and for use in future training.
4. Owner retains right to make additional copies for intended training purposes without having to pay royalties.

END OF SECTION 230923

## SECTION 231123 - FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
  - 2. Piping specialties.
  - 3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
  - 4. Manual gas shutoff valves.
  - 5. Pressure regulators.
  - 6. Dielectric fittings.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
  - 1. Piping specialties.
  - 2. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
  - 3. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and details, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other installations, using input from installers of the items involved.

- B. Site Survey: Plans, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other services and utilities.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pressure regulators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing natural-gas piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- C. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.
- D. Protect stored PE pipes and valves from direct sunlight.

#### 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations. Contact utility-locating service for area where Project is located.

#### 1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

- B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
  - 1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Service Regulators: 65 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Natural-Gas System Pressures within Buildings: Two pressure ranges. Primary pressure is more than 0.5 psig but not more than 2 psig, and is reduced to secondary pressure of 0.5 psig or less.

### 2.2 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
  - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
  - 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
  - 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
  - 4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
    - a. Material Group: 1.1.
    - b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
    - c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
    - d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
    - e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel underground.

### 2.3 PIPING SPECIALTIES

### 2.4 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.
- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

## 2.5 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. See "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.
- B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
  - 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
  - 2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
  - 3. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
  - 4. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
  - 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
  - 2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
  - 3. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
- D. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
    - b. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - c. BrassCraft Manufacturing Co.; a Masco company.
  - 2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
  - 3. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
  - 4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
  - 5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
  - 6. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
  - 7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
  - 8. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
  - 9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.
- E. Cast-Iron, Non-Lubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
    - b. Homestead Valve.
    - c. Milliken Valve Company.
    - d. Mueller Co.

2. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A 126, Class B.
3. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
4. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
5. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
6. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
7. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
8. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

## 2.6 PRESSURE REGULATORS

### A. General Requirements:

1. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
3. Elevation compensator.
4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

### B. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Meter Company.
  - b. Eclipse Innovative Thermal Technologies.
  - c. Fisher Control Valves & Instruments; a brand of Emerson Process Management.
  - d. Maxitrol Company.
2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
6. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
7. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
8. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
9. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
10. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 2 psig.

### C. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Eaton.
  - b. Maxitrol Company.
  - c. SCP, Inc.
2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
  3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
  4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
  5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
  6. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
  7. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
  8. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  9. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 2 psig.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Inspect natural-gas piping according to NFPA 54 to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- B. Comply with NFPA 54 requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

#### 3.3 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- K. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- L. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
  - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
- M. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- N. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- O. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- P. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- Q. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.
- R. Install pressure gage upstream and downstream from each line regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."
- S. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- T. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- U. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.4 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance.

- B. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.

### 3.5 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:
  - 1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
  - 2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
  - 3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
  - 4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
  - 5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. Welded Joints:
  - 1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
  - 2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
  - 3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.
- E. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for natural-gas service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - 1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 2. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
  - 5. NPS 4 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 5/8 inch.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.

- B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.
- C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.
- E. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

### 3.8 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.

### 3.9 PAINTING

- A. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
  - 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
    - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (semigloss).
    - d. Color: Gray.
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

### 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to the International Fuel Gas Code and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.11 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground natural-gas piping shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
  - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
- B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
  - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.

### 3.12 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES MORE THAN 0.5 PSIG AND LESS THAN 2 PSIG

- A. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
  - 2. Steel pipe with steel welding fittings and welded joints.

### 3.13 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger at service meter shall be the following:
  - 1. Cast-iron, nonlubricated plug valve.
- B. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller shall be the following:
  - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
- C. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger shall be the following:
  - 1. Cast-iron, nonlubricated plug valve.
- D. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be the following:
  - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.

END OF SECTION 231123

## SECTION 232113 - HYDRONIC PIPING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes pipe and fitting materials and joining methods for the following:
  - 1. Copper tube and fittings.
  - 2. Steel pipe and fittings.
  - 3. Joining materials.
  - 4. Transition fittings.
  - 5. Dielectric fittings.
  - 6. Bypass chemical feeder.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
  - 1. Pipe.
  - 2. Fittings.
  - 3. Joining materials.
  - 4. Bypass chemical feeder.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal:
  - 1. Design calculations and detailed fabrication and assembly of pipe anchors and alignment guides, hangers and supports for multiple pipes, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to the building structure.
  - 2. Locations of pipe anchors and alignment guides and expansion joints and loops.
  - 3. Locations of and details for penetrations, including sleeves and sleeve seals for exterior walls, floors, basement, and foundation walls.
  - 4. Locations of and details for penetration and firestopping for fire- and smoke-rated wall and floor and ceiling assemblies.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Piping layout, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Suspended ceiling components.

2. Other building services.
3. Structural members.

B. Qualification Data: For Installer.

C. Welding certificates.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Preconstruction Test Reports:

1. Water Analysis: Submit a copy of the water analysis to illustrate water quality available at Project site.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installers of Pressure-Sealed Joints: Installers shall be certified by pressure-seal joint manufacturer as having been trained and qualified to join piping with pressure-seal pipe couplings and fittings.

B. Steel Support Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

C. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

1. Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for materials, products, and installation.
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

## 1.6 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on water quality.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Hydronic piping components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure and temperature unless otherwise indicated:

1. Hot-Water Heating Piping: 100 psig at 200 deg F.
2. Chilled-Water Piping: 150 psig at 73 deg F.
3. Condenser-Water Piping: 150 psig at 73 deg F.

4. Makeup-Water Piping: 80 psig at 73 deg F.
5. Condensate-Drain Piping: 150 deg F.
6. Air-Vent Piping: 200 deg F.
7. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping: Equal to the pressure of the piping system to which it is attached.

## 2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Drawn-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type L.
- B. Annealed-Temper Copper Tubing: ASTM B 88, Type K.
- C. DWV Copper Tubing: ASTM B 306, Type DWV.
- D. Copper or Bronze Pressure-Seal Fittings:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Elkhart Products Corporation.
    - b. Mueller Industries, Inc.
    - c. Viega LLC.
  2. Housing: Copper.
  3. O-Rings and Pipe Stops: EPDM.
  4. Tools: Manufacturer's special tools.
  5. Minimum 200-psig working-pressure rating at 250 deg F.
- E. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

## 2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel with plain ends; welded and seamless, Grade B, and wall thickness as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- B. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Classes 150 and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- C. Malleable-Iron Unions: ASME B16.39; Classes 150, 250, and 300 as indicated in "Piping Applications" Article.
- D. Wrought-Steel Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M, wall thickness to match adjoining pipe.
- E. Wrought Cast- and Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
  1. Material Group: 1.1.
  2. End Connections: Butt welding.
  3. Facings: Raised face.

- F. Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of same materials and wall thicknesses as pipe in which they are installed.

## 2.4 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
  - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
- B. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- D. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

## 2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. A.Y. McDonald Mfg. Co.
    - b. WATTS.
    - c. Wilkins.
    - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
    - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Matco-Norca.
    - b. WATTS.

- c. Wilkins.
  - d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
2. Description:
- a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
  - b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
  - c. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
  - d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - b. Calpico, Inc.
  - c. Central Plastics Company.
  - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
2. Description:
- a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
  - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
  - c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
  - d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
  - e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

2.6 BYPASS CHEMICAL FEEDER

- A. Description: Welded steel construction; 125-psig working pressure; 5-gal. capacity; with fill funnel and inlet, outlet, and drain valves.
1. Chemicals: Specially formulated, based on analysis of makeup water, to prevent accumulation of scale and corrosion in piping and connected equipment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:
- 1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or pressure-seal joints.
  - 2. Schedule 40, Grade B steel pipe; Class 150, malleable-iron fittings; flange fittings; and threaded joints.
- B. Hot-water heating piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be any of the following:

1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
  2. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
- C. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:
1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or pressure-seal joints.
  2. Schedule 40 steel pipe; Class 150, malleable-iron fittings; flange fittings; and threaded joints.
- D. Chilled-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be any of the following:
1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
  2. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
- E. Condenser-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be any of the following:
1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or pressure-seal joints.
  2. Schedule 40 steel pipe; Class 150, malleable-iron fittings; flange fittings; and threaded joints.
- F. Condenser-water piping, aboveground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be any of the following:
1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
  2. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints.
- G. Makeup-water piping installed aboveground shall be the following:
1. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
- H. Condensate-Drain Piping: Type DWV, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints.
- I. Air-Vent Piping:
1. Inlet: Same as service where installed.
  2. Outlet: Type K, annealed-temper copper tubing with soldered joints.
- J. Safety-Valve-Inlet and -Outlet Piping for Hot-Water Piping: Same materials and joining methods as for piping specified for the service in which safety valve is installed.
- 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATIONS
- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- K. Install groups of pipes parallel to each other, spaced to permit applying insulation and servicing of valves.
- L. Install drains, consisting of a tee fitting, NPS 3/4 ball valve, and short NPS 3/4 threaded nipple with cap, at low points in piping system mains and elsewhere as required for system drainage.
- M. Install valves according to the following:
  - 1. Section 230523.11 "Globe Valves for HVAC Piping."
  - 2. Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping."
  - 3. Section 230523.13 "Butterfly Valves for HVAC Piping."
  - 4. Section 230523.14 "Check Valves for HVAC Piping."
- N. Install unions in piping, NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to valves, at final connections of equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
- O. Install flanges in piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, at final connections of equipment and elsewhere as indicated.
- P. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- Q. Comply with requirements in Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for installation of expansion loops, expansion joints, anchors, and pipe alignment guides.
- R. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for identifying piping.
- S. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

- T. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- U. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.3 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric unions.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flanges.
- D. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

### 3.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hanger, support, and anchor devices. Comply with the following requirements for maximum spacing of supports.
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
  - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal piping less than 20 feet long.
  - 2. Adjustable roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal piping 20 feet or longer.
  - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
  - 4. Provide copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- C. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - 1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 7 feet.
  - 2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 7 feet.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet.
  - 4. NPS 2: Maximum span, 10 feet.
  - 5. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 11 feet.
  - 6. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 12 feet.
- D. Install hangers for drawn-temper copper piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
  - 1. NPS 3/4: Maximum span, 5 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  - 2. NPS 1: Maximum span, 6 feet; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 7 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 4. NPS 1-1/2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  - 5. NPS 2: Maximum span, 8 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

6. NPS 2-1/2: Maximum span, 9 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
  7. NPS 3 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
- E. Support vertical runs at roof, at each floor, and at 10-foot intervals between floors.

### 3.5 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- E. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- G. Pressure-Sealed Joints: Use manufacturer-recommended tool and procedure. Leave insertion marks on pipe after assembly.

### 3.6 TERMINAL EQUIPMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Sizes for supply and return piping connections shall be the same as or larger than equipment connections.
- B. Install control valves in accessible locations close to connected equipment.
- C. Install ports for pressure gages and thermometers at coil inlet and outlet connections. Comply with requirements in Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

### 3.7 CHEMICAL TREATMENT

- A. Perform an analysis of makeup water to determine type and quantities of chemical treatment needed to keep system free of scale, corrosion, and fouling, and to sustain the following water characteristics:

1. pH: 9.0 to 10.5.
2. "P" Alkalinity: 100 to 500 ppm.
3. Boron: 100 to 200 ppm.
4. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maximum of 100 ppm.
5. Corrosion Inhibitor:
  - a. Sodium Nitrate: 1000 to 1500 ppm.
  - b. Molybdate: 200 to 300 ppm.
  - c. Chromate: 200 to 300 ppm.
  - d. Sodium Nitrate Plus Molybdate: 100 to 200 ppm each.
  - e. Chromate Plus Molybdate: 50 to 100 ppm each.
6. Soluble Copper: Maximum of 0.20 ppm.
7. Tolyriazole Copper and Yellow Metal Corrosion Inhibitor: Minimum of 10 ppm.
8. Total Suspended Solids: Maximum of 10 ppm.
9. Ammonia: Maximum of 20 ppm.
10. Free Caustic Alkalinity: Maximum of 20 ppm.
11. Microbiological Limits:
  - a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maximum of 1000 organisms/mL.
  - b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maximum of 100 organisms/mL.
  - c. Nitrate Reducers: 100 organisms/mL.
  - d. Sulfate Reducers: Maximum of zero organisms/mL.
  - e. Iron Bacteria: Maximum of zero organisms/mL.

B. Install bypass chemical feeders in each hydronic system where indicated.

1. Install in upright position with top of funnel not more than 48 inches above the floor.
2. Install feeder in minimum NPS 3/4 bypass line, from main with full-size, full-port, ball valve in the main between bypass connections.
3. Install NPS 3/4 pipe from chemical feeder drain to nearest equipment drain and include a full-size, full-port, ball valve.

C. Fill system with fresh water and add liquid alkaline compound with emulsifying agents and detergents to remove grease and petroleum products from piping. Circulate solution for a minimum of 24 hours, drain, clean strainer screens, and refill with fresh water.

D. Add initial chemical treatment and maintain water quality in ranges noted above for the first year of operation.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prepare hydronic piping according to ASME B31.9 and as follows:

1. Leave joints, including welds, uninsulated and exposed for examination during test.
2. Provide temporary restraints for expansion joints that cannot sustain reactions due to test pressure. If temporary restraints are impractical, isolate expansion joints from testing.
3. Flush hydronic piping systems with clean water; then remove and clean or replace strainer screens.

4. Isolate equipment from piping. If a valve is used to isolate equipment, its closure shall be capable of sealing against test pressure without damage to valve. Install blinds in flanged joints to isolate equipment.
5. Install safety valve, set at a pressure no more than one-third higher than test pressure, to protect against damage by expanding liquid or other source of overpressure during test.

B. Perform the following tests on hydronic piping:

1. Use ambient temperature water as a testing medium unless there is risk of damage due to freezing. Another liquid that is safe for workers and compatible with piping may be used.
2. While filling system, use vents installed at high points of system to release air. Use drains installed at low points for complete draining of test liquid.
3. Isolate expansion tanks and determine that hydronic system is full of water.
4. Subject piping system to hydrostatic test pressure that is not less than 1.5 times the system's working pressure. Test pressure shall not exceed maximum pressure for any vessel, pump, valve, or other component in system under test. Verify that stress due to pressure at bottom of vertical runs does not exceed 90 percent of specified minimum yield strength or 1.7 times the "SE" value in Appendix A in ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping."
5. After hydrostatic test pressure has been applied for at least 10 minutes, examine piping, joints, and connections for leakage. Eliminate leaks by tightening, repairing, or replacing components, and repeat hydrostatic test until there are no leaks.
6. Prepare written report of testing.

C. Perform the following before operating the system:

1. Open manual valves fully.
2. Inspect pumps for proper rotation.
3. Set makeup pressure-reducing valves for required system pressure.
4. Inspect air vents at high points of system and determine if all are installed and operating freely (automatic type), or bleed air completely (manual type).
5. Set temperature controls so all coils are calling for full flow.
6. Inspect and set operating temperatures of hydronic equipment, such as boilers, chillers, cooling towers, to specified values.
7. Verify lubrication of motors and bearings.

END OF SECTION 232113

## SECTION 232116 - HYDRONIC PIPING SPECIALTIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Hydronic specialty valves.
2. Air-control devices.
3. Strainers.
4. Connectors.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for expansion fittings and loops.
2. Section 230523.11 "Globe Valves for HVAC Piping" for specification and installation requirements for globe valves common to most piping systems.
3. Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping" for specification and installation requirements for ball valves common to most piping systems.
4. Section 230523.13 "Butterfly Valves for HVAC Piping" for specification and installation requirements for butterfly valves common to most piping systems.
5. Section 230523.14 "Check Valves for HVAC Piping" for specification and installation requirements for check valves common to most piping systems.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product:

1. Include construction details and material descriptions for hydronic piping specialties.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
3. Include flow and pressure drop curves based on manufacturer's testing for calibrated-orifice balancing valves and automatic flow-control valves.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For hydronic piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Differential Pressure Meter: For each type of balancing valve and automatic flow control valve, include flowmeter, probes, hoses, flow charts, and carrying case.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pipe Welding: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.
- B. Safety Valves and Pressure Vessels: Shall bear the appropriate ASME label. Fabricate and stamp air separators and expansion tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 HYDRONIC SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Bronze, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - b. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
  - c. Flow Design, Inc.
  - d. Griswold Controls.
  - e. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
- 2. Body: Bronze, ball or plug type with calibrated orifice or venturi.
- 3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
- 4. Plug: Resin.
- 5. Seat: PTFE.
- 6. End Connections: Threaded.
- 7. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
- 8. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
- 9. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
- 10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

- B. Cast-Iron or Steel, Calibrated-Orifice, Balancing Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - b. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
  - c. Flow Design, Inc.
  - d. Griswold Controls.
  - e. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.

2. Body: Cast-iron or steel body, ball, plug, or globe pattern with calibrated orifice or venturi.
3. Ball: Brass or stainless steel.
4. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
5. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
6. Seat: PTFE.
7. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.
8. Pressure Gage Connections: Integral seals for portable differential pressure meter.
9. Handle Style: Lever, with memory stop to retain set position.
10. CWP Rating: Minimum 125 psig.
11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

C. Diaphragm-Operated, Pressure-Reducing Valves: ASME labeled.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - c. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - d. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
  - e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
  - f. WATTS.
2. Body: Bronze or brass.
3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.
4. Seat: Brass.
5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
6. Diaphragm: EPT.
7. Low inlet-pressure check valve.
8. Inlet Strainer: Removable without system shutdown.
9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

D. Diaphragm-Operated Safety Valves: ASME labeled.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - c. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - d. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
  - e. Spence Engineering Company, Inc.
  - f. WATTS.
2. Body: Bronze or brass.
3. Disc: Glass and carbon-filled PTFE.

4. Seat: Brass.
5. Stem Seals: EPDM O-rings.
6. Diaphragm: EPT.
7. Wetted, Internal Work Parts: Brass and rubber.
8. Inlet Strainer: Removable without system shutdown.
9. Valve Seat and Stem: Noncorrosive.
10. Valve Size, Capacity, and Operating Pressure: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IV, and selected to suit system in which installed, with operating pressure and capacity factory set and field adjustable.

## 2.2 AIR-CONTROL DEVICES

### A. Manual Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - c. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - d. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
  - e. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
2. Body: Bronze.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Screwdriver or thumbscrew.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/8.
7. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 225 deg F.

### B. Automatic Air Vents:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - c. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
  - d. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Internal Parts: Nonferrous.
4. Operator: Noncorrosive metal float.
5. Inlet Connection: NPS 1/2.
6. Discharge Connection: NPS 1/4.
7. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

### C. Bladder-Type Expansion Tanks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - c. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
  - d. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
  - e. Wessels Company.
2. Tank: Welded steel, rated for 125-psig working pressure and 375 deg F maximum operating temperature. Factory test after taps are fabricated and supports installed and are labeled according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
3. Bladder: Securely sealed into tank to separate air charge from system water to maintain required expansion capacity.
4. Air-Charge Fittings: Schrader valve, stainless steel with EPDM seats.

D. Tangential-Type Air Separators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - c. Bell & Gossett; a Xylem brand.
  - d. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
2. Tank: Welded steel; ASME constructed and labeled for 125-psig minimum working pressure and 375 deg F maximum operating temperature.
3. Air Collector Tube: Perforated stainless steel, constructed to direct released air into expansion tank.
4. Tangential Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged connections for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
5. Blowdown Connection: Threaded.
6. Size: Match system flow capacity.

## 2.3 STRAINERS

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: Stainless-steel, 40-mesh strainer, or perforated stainless-steel basket.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

B. Basket Strainers:

1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.

2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

## 2.4 CONNECTORS

### A. Stainless-Steel Bellow, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Stainless-steel bellows with woven, flexible, bronze, wire-reinforcing protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Threaded or flanged to match equipment connected.
3. Performance: Capable of 3/4-inch misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

### B. Spherical, Rubber, Flexible Connectors:

1. Body: Fiber-reinforced rubber body.
2. End Connections: Steel flanges drilled to align with Classes 150 and 300 steel flanges.
3. Performance: Capable of misalignment.
4. CWP Rating: 150 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Install shutoff-duty valves at each branch connection to supply mains and at supply connection to each piece of equipment.
- B. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves at each branch connection to return main.
- C. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.
- D. Install check valves at each pump discharge and elsewhere as required to control flow direction.
- E. Install safety valves at hot-water generators and elsewhere as required by ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Install drip-pan elbow on safety-valve outlet and pipe without valves to the outdoors; pipe drain to nearest floor drain or as indicated on Drawings. Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, for installation requirements.
- F. Install pressure-reducing valves at makeup-water connection to regulate system fill pressure.

### 3.2 HYDRONIC SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual air vents at high points in piping, at heat-transfer coils, and elsewhere as required for system air venting.
- B. Install automatic air vents at high points of system piping in mechanical equipment rooms only. Install manual vents at heat-transfer coils and elsewhere as required for air venting.
- C. Install piping from boiler air outlet, air separator, or air purger to expansion tank with a 2 percent upward slope toward tank.
- D. Install tangential air separator in pump suction. Install blowdown piping with gate or full-port ball valve; extend full size to nearest floor drain.
- E. Install expansion tanks on the floor. Vent and purge air from hydronic system, and ensure that tank is properly charged with air to suit system Project requirements.

END OF SECTION 232116

## SECTION 232123 - HYDRONIC PUMPS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Close-coupled, in-line centrifugal pumps.
  - 2. Separately coupled, base-mounted, end-suction centrifugal pumps.
  - 3. Separately coupled, base-mounted, double-suction centrifugal pumps.
  - 4. Wet-rotor pumps.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Buna-N: Nitrile rubber.
- B. EPT: Ethylene propylene terpolymer.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of pump. Include certified performance curves and rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, final impeller dimensions, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each pump.
  - 1. Show pump layout and connections.
  - 2. Include setting drawings with templates for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Mechanical Seals: One mechanical seal for each pump.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CLOSE-COUPLED, IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - 2. Grundfos Pumps Corporation.
  - 3. ITT Corporation.
  - 4. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, close-coupled, in-line pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for installation with pump and motor shafts mounted horizontally or vertically.
- C. Pump Construction:
  - 1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet and companion-flange connections.
  - 2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. For constant-speed pumps, trim impeller to match specified performance.
  - 3. Pump Shaft: Steel, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
  - 4. Seal: Mechanical seal consisting of carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket. Include water slinger on shaft between motor and seal.
  - 5. Seal: Packing seal consisting of stuffing box with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
  - 6. Pump Bearings: Oil lubricated; bronze-journal or thrust type.
- D. Motor: Single speed and rigidly mounted to pump casing.
  - 1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
    - a. Enclosure: Open, dripproof.

- b. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron.
- c. Motor Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings.
- d. Efficiency: Premium efficient.

## 2.2 SEPARATELY COUPLED, BASE-MOUNTED, END-SUCTION CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - 2. Aurora Pump; Pentair Ltd.
  - 3. ITT Corporation.
  - 4. PACO Pumps; Grundfos Pumps Corporation, USA.
  - 5. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, overhung-impeller, separately coupled, end-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for base mounting, with pump and motor shafts horizontal.
- C. Pump Construction:
  - 1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, and flanged connections. Provide integral mount on volute to support the casing, and provide attached piping to allow removal and replacement of impeller without disconnecting piping or requiring the realignment of pump and motor shaft.
  - 2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, keyed to shaft, and secured with a locking cap screw. For pumps not frequency-drive controlled, trim impeller to match specified performance.
  - 3. Pump Shaft: Stainless steel.
  - 4. Seal: Mechanical seal consisting of carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket.
  - 5. Seal: Packing seal consisting of stuffing box with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
  - 6. Pump Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings in cast-iron housing with grease fittings.
- D. Shaft Coupling: Molded-rubber insert and interlocking spider capable of absorbing vibration. EPDM coupling sleeve for variable-speed applications.
- E. Coupling Guard: Dual rated; ANSI B15.1, Section 8; OSHA 1910.219 approved; steel; removable; attached to mounting frame.
- F. Mounting Frame: Welded-steel frame and cross members, factory fabricated from ASTM A 36/A 36M channels and angles. Fabricate to mount pump casing, coupling guard, and motor.
- G. Motor: Single speed, secured to mounting frame, with adjustable alignment.

1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - a. Enclosure: Open, dripproof.
  - b. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron.
  - c. Motor Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings.
  - d. Efficiency: Premium efficient.

### 2.3 SEPARATELY COUPLED, BASE-MOUNTED, DOUBLE-SUCTION CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  2. Aurora Pump; Pentair Ltd.
  3. ITT Corporation.
  4. PACO Pumps; Grundfos Pumps Corporation, USA.
  5. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, centrifugal, impeller-between-bearings, separately coupled, double-suction pump as defined in HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3; designed for base mounting, with pump and motor shafts horizontal.
- C. Pump Construction:
  1. Casing: Horizontally split, cast iron, with replaceable bronze wear rings, threaded gage tappings at inlet and outlet, drain plug at bottom and air vent at top of volute, and ASME B16.1, Class 125 flanges. Casing supports shall allow removal and replacement of impeller without disconnecting piping.
  2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, and keyed to shaft. For pumps not frequency-drive controlled, trim impeller to match specified performance.
  3. Pump Shaft: Stainless steel.
  4. Seal: Mechanical seal consisting of carbon rotating ring against a ceramic seat held by a stainless-steel spring, and Buna-N bellows and gasket.
  5. Seal: Packing seal consisting of stuffing box with a minimum of four rings of graphite-impregnated braided yarn with bronze lantern ring between center two graphite rings, and bronze packing gland.
  6. Pump Bearings: Grease-lubricated ball bearings in cast-iron housing with grease fittings.
- D. Shaft Coupling: Molded-rubber insert and interlocking spider capable of absorbing vibration. EPDM coupling sleeve for variable-speed applications.
- E. Coupling Guard: Dual rated; ANSI B15.1, Section 8; OSHA 1910.219 approved; steel; removable; attached to mounting frame.

- F. Mounting Frame: Welded-steel frame and cross members, factory fabricated from ASTM A 36/A 36M channels and angles. Fabricate to mount pump casing, coupling guard, and motor.
- G. Motor: Single speed, secured to mounting frame, with adjustable alignment.
  - 1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
    - a. Enclosure: Open, dripproof.
    - b. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron.
    - c. Motor Bearings: Grease lubricated.
    - d. Efficiency: Premium efficient.

#### 2.4 WET-ROTOR PUMPS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  - 2. Grundfos Pumps Corporation.
  - 3. ITT Corporation.
  - 4. TACO Comfort Solutions, Inc.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, wet-rotor pump.
- C. Pump Construction:
  - 1. Body: 100 percent lead-free bronze.
  - 2. Impeller: Noryl.
  - 3. Pump Shaft: Ceramic.
  - 4. Bearings. Double-sintered carbon.
- D. Motor: Single speed.
  - 1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 2. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
    - a. Efficiency: Premium efficient.

## 2.5 PUMP SPECIALTY FITTINGS

### A. Suction Diffuser:

1. Angle pattern.
2. 175-psig pressure rating, cast-iron body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting.
3. Bronze startup and bronze or stainless-steel permanent strainers.
4. Bronze or stainless-steel straightening vanes.
5. Drain plug.
6. Factory-fabricated support.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.
- C. Examine foundations and inertia bases for suitable conditions where pumps are to be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PUMP INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with HI 1.4 and HI 2.4.
- B. Install pumps to provide access for periodic maintenance including removing motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.
- C. Independently support pumps and piping so weight of piping is not supported by pumps and weight of pumps is not supported by piping.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
  1. Install base-mounted pumps on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- E. Equipment Mounting: Install in-line pumps with continuous-thread hanger rods and elastomeric hangers of size required to support weight of in-line pumps.
  1. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."

2. Comply with requirements for hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

### 3.3 ALIGNMENT

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform alignment service.
- B. Comply with requirements in Hydronics Institute standards for alignment of pump and motor shaft. Add shims to the motor feet and bolt motor to base frame. Do not use grout between motor feet and base frame.
- C. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.
- D. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 232213 "Steam and Condensate Heating Piping" and Section 232216 "Steam and Condensate Piping Specialties." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to pump, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are same size as piping connected to pumps.
- D. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.
- E. Install check valve and throttling valve with memory stop on discharge side of pumps.
- F. Install suction diffuser and shutoff valve on suction side of pumps.
- G. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.
- H. Install pressure gages on pump suction and discharge or at integral pressure-gage tapping, or install single gage with multiple-input selector valve.
- I. Install check valve and gate or ball valve on each condensate pump unit discharge.
- J. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- K. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Check piping connections for tightness.
  - 3. Clean strainers on suction piping.
  - 4. Perform the following startup checks for each pump before starting:
    - a. Verify bearing lubrication.
    - b. Verify that pump is free to rotate by hand and that pump for handling hot liquid is free to rotate with pump hot and cold. If pump is bound or drags, do not operate until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
    - c. Verify that pump is rotating in the correct direction.
  - 5. Prime pump by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pump for operation.
  - 6. Start motor.
  - 7. Open discharge valve slowly.

### 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps.

END OF SECTION 232123

## SECTION 232516 - WATER TREATMENT FOR OPEN-LOOP HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following HVAC water-treatment systems:
  - 1. Automatic chemical-feed equipment.
  - 2. Ozone-generator biocide equipment.
  - 3. Stainless-steel pipes and fittings.
  - 4. UV biocide equipment.
  - 5. Chemical treatment test equipment.
  - 6. Chemicals.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EEPROM: Electrically erasable, programmable read-only memory.
- B. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.
- C. RO: Reverse osmosis.
- D. TSS: Total suspended solids are solid materials, including organic and inorganic, that are suspended in the water. These solids may include silt, plankton, and industrial wastes.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories for the following products:
  - 1. Bypass feeders.
  - 2. Water meters.
  - 3. Inhibitor injection timers.
  - 4. pH controllers.
  - 5. TSS controllers.
  - 6. Biocide feeder timers.
  - 7. Chemical solution tanks.
  - 8. Injection pumps.
  - 9. Ozone generators.

10. UV-irradiation units.
11. Chemical test equipment.
12. Chemical material safety data sheets.

B. Shop Drawings: Pretreatment and chemical treatment equipment showing tanks, maintenance space required, and piping connections to HVAC systems.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Water Analysis Provider Qualifications: Verification of experience and capability of HVAC water-treatment service provider.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Other Informational Submittals:

1. Water-Treatment Program: Written sequence of operation on an annual basis for the application equipment required to achieve water quality defined in "Performance Requirements" Article.
2. Water Analysis: Illustrate water quality available at Project site.
3. Passivation Confirmation Report: Verify passivation of galvanized-steel surfaces, and confirm this observation in a letter to Architect.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sensors, injection pumps, and controllers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. HVAC Water-Treatment Service Provider Qualifications: An experienced HVAC water-treatment service provider capable of analyzing water qualities, installing water-treatment equipment, and applying water treatment as specified in this Section.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Aqua-Chem, Inc.
2. Boland Trane Services.
3. Cascade Water Services, Inc.

4. H-O-H Water Technology, Inc.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Water quality for HVAC systems shall minimize corrosion, scale buildup, and biological growth for optimum efficiency of equipment without creating a hazard to operating personnel or the environment.
- B. Base HVAC water treatment on quality of water available at Project site, HVAC system equipment material characteristics and functional performance characteristics, operating personnel capabilities, and requirements and guidelines of authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Open HVAC systems, including condenser water, shall have the following water qualities:
  1. pH: Maintain a value within 8.0 to 9.1.
  2. "P" Alkalinity: Maintain a maximum value of 100 ppm.
  3. Chemical Oxygen Demand: Maintain a maximum value of 100 ppm.
  4. Soluble Copper: Maintain a maximum value of 0.20 ppm.
  5. TSS: Maintain a maximum value of 10 ppm.
  6. Ammonia: Maintain a maximum value of 20 ppm.
  7. Free "OH" Alkalinity: Maintain a maximum value of zero ppm.
  8. Microbiological Limits:
    - a. Total Aerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 10,000 organisms/mL.
    - b. Total Anaerobic Plate Count: Maintain a maximum value of 1000 organisms/mL.
    - c. Nitrate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of 100 organisms/mL.
    - d. Sulfate Reducers: Maintain a maximum value of zero organisms/mL.
    - e. Iron Bacteria: Maintain a maximum value of zero organisms/mL.
  9. Polymer Testable: Maintain a minimum value within 10 to 40.
- D. Passivation for Galvanized Steel: For the first 60 days of operation.
  1. pH: Maintain a value within 7 to 8.
  2. Calcium Carbonate Hardness: Maintain a value within 100 to 300 ppm.
  3. Calcium Carbonate Alkalinity: Maintain a value within 100 to 300 ppm.

## 2.3 AUTOMATIC CHEMICAL-FEED EQUIPMENT

- A. Water Meter:
  1. AWWA C701, turbine-type, totalization meter.
  2. Body: Epoxy-coated cast iron.
  3. Minimum Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
  4. Maximum Pressure Loss at Design Flow: 3 psig.
  5. Registration: Gallons or cubic feet.
  6. End Connections: Flanged.
  7. Controls: Flow-control switch with normally open contacts; rated for maximum 10 A, 250-V ac, and that will close at adjustable increments of total flow.

8. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Inhibitor Injection Timers:

1. Microprocessor-based controller with digital display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
2. Programmable timers with infinite adjustment over full range, and mounted in cabinet with hand-off-auto switches and status lights.
3. Test switch.
4. Hand-off-auto switch for chemical pump.
5. Illuminated legend to indicate feed when pump is activated.
6. Programmable lockout timer with indicator light. Lockout timer to deactivate the pump and activate alarm circuits.
7. Digital display makeup totalizer to measure amount of makeup and bleed-off water from two water meter inputs.
8. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. pH Controller:

1. Microprocessor-based controller, 1 percent accuracy in a range from zero to 14 units. Incorporate solid-state integrated circuits and digital display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
2. Digital display and touch pad for input.
3. Sensor probe adaptable to sample stream manifold.
4. High, low, and normal pH indication.
5. High- or low-pH-alarm-light trip points, field adjustable; with silence switch.
6. Hand-off-auto switch for acid pump.
7. Internal adjustable hysteresis or deadband.
8. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. TSS Controller:

1. Microprocessor-based controller, 1 percent accuracy in a range from zero to 5000 micromhos. Incorporate solid-state integrated circuits and digital display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
2. Digital display and touch pad for input.
3. Sensor probe adaptable to sample stream manifold.
4. High, low, and normal conductance indication.
5. High- or low-conductance-alarm-light trip points, field adjustable; with silence switch.

6. Hand-off-auto switch for solenoid bleed-off valve.
  7. Bleed-off valve activated indication.
  8. Internal adjustable hysteresis or deadband.
  9. Bleed Valves:
    - a. Cooling Systems: Forged-brass body, globe pattern, general-purpose solenoid with continuous-duty coil, or motorized valve.
    - b. Steam Boilers: Motorized ball valve, steel body, and TFE seats and seals.
- E. Biocide Feeder Timer:
1. Microprocessor-based controller with digital display in NEMA 250, Type 12 enclosure with gasketed and lockable door. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
  2. 24-hour timer with 14-day skip feature to permit activation any hour of day.
  3. Precision, solid-state, bleed-off lockout timer and clock-controlled biocide pump timer. Prebleed and bleed lockout timers.
  4. Solid-state alternator to enable use of two different formulations.
  5. 24-hour display of time of day.
  6. 14-day display of day of week.
  7. Battery backup so clock is not disturbed by power outages.
  8. Hand-off-auto switches for biocide pumps.
  9. Biocide A and Biocide B pump running indication.
- F. Chemical Solution Tanks:
1. Chemical-resistant reservoirs fabricated from high-density opaque polyethylene with minimum 110 percent containment vessel.
  2. Molded cover with recess for mounting pump.
  3. Capacity: 50 gal..
- G. Chemical Solution Injection Pumps:
1. Self-priming, positive displacement; rated for intended chemical with minimum 25 percent safety factor for design pressure and temperature.
  2. Adjustable flow rate.
  3. Metal and thermoplastic construction.
  4. Built-in relief valve.
  5. Fully enclosed, continuous-duty, single-phase motor. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- H. Chemical Solution Tubing: Polyethylene tubing with compression fittings and joints except ASTM A 269, Type 304, stainless steel for steam boiler injection assemblies.
- I. Injection Assembly:

1. Quill: Minimum NPS 1/2 with insertion length sufficient to discharge into at least 25 percent of pipe diameter.
2. Ball Valve: Two-piece stainless steel as described in "Stainless-Steel Pipes and Fittings" Article; selected to fit quill.
3. Packing Gland: Mechanical seal on quill of sufficient length to allow quill removal during system operation.
4. Assembly Pressure/Temperature Rating: Minimum 600 psig at 200 deg F.

#### 2.4 OZONE-GENERATOR BIOCIDES EQUIPMENT

- A. Corona discharge generator with stainless-steel generating cells, and transformer housed in a NEMA 250, Type 4 enclosure. Assembly shall be suitable for continuous duty. Include factory-mounted site glasses to verify proper operation of generator.
- B. Generator vessels shall be constructed according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, bear an ASME label, and be equipped with pressure relief valve.
- C. External air compressor or induced airflow through a cleanable prefilter shall supply concentrated oxygen through a molecular sieve with minus 62 deg F dew point to avoid the formation of nitric acid.
- D. Controls: Microprocessor based with software in EEPROM, surge protection, high-temperature cutout, and operational status lights. Interface for start/stop and status indication at central workstation as described in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
- E. Ozone Contactors:
  1. Bubble diffusers.
  2. Induction injection nozzle.
  3. Injectors with static mixers.
- F. Ozone Detector and Alarm Devices:
  1. Detector:
    - a. Sensor: Metal dioxide semiconductor.
    - b. Concentration Range: 0.01 to 0.14 ppm.
    - c. Accuracy: Plus or minus 20 percent of range.
    - d. Sensitivity: 0.01 ppm.
    - e. Response Time: Maximum 10 seconds.
    - f. Operating Temperature: 50 to 100 deg F.
    - g. Relative Humidity: 20 to 95 percent, noncondensing over the operating temperature range.
  2. Horns:
    - a. Electric-vibrating-polarized type.
    - b. 24-V dc, with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind a grille.
    - c. Horns shall produce a sound-pressure level of 90 dBA, measured 10 feet from the horn.

- d. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Visible Alarm Devices:
    - a. Xenon strobe lights listed in UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate.
    - b. Rated Light Output: 75 candela.
    - c. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
    - d. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- G. Self-Contained Breathing Apparatus: Open-circuit, pressure-demand, compressed air includes completely assembled, portable, self-contained devices designed for hazardous breathing environment application.
1. Face Piece: EPDM or silicone rubber construction material, one-size-fits-all with double-sealing edge, stainless-steel speaking diaphragm and lens retainer, five adjustable straps to hold face piece to head (two straps on each side and one on top), exhalation valve in mask, close-fitting nose piece to ensure no CO<sub>2</sub> buildup, and perspiration drain to avoid skin irritation and to prevent eyepiece, spectacle, and lens fogging.
  2. Backplate: Orthopedically designed of chemical and impact-resistant, glass-fiber composite.
  3. Harness and Carrier Assembly: Large triangular back pad, backplate, and adjustable waist and shoulder straps. Modular in design, detachable components, and easy to clean and maintain. Shoulder straps padded with flame-resistant material, reinforced with stainless-steel cable, and attached with T-nuts, washers, and screws.
  4. Air Cylinder: 45-minute, low-pressure, air-supply-loaded fiberglass cylinders fitted with quick-fill assembly for refilling and air transfer.
  5. Wall-Mounting Cabinet: Leakproof, corrosion-resistant, clear, plastic case.
  6. Tested and Certified: By the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health and by the Mine Safety and Health Administration, according to 42 CFR 84, Subpart H.

## 2.5 STAINLESS-STEEL PIPES AND FITTINGS

- A. Stainless-Steel Tubing: Comply with ASTM A 269, Type 316.
- B. Stainless-Steel Fittings: Comply with ASTM A 815/A 815M, Type 316, Grade WP-S.
- C. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Stainless-Steel Ball Valves: ASTM A 351/A 351M, Type 316 stainless-steel body; ASTM A 276, Type 316 stainless-steel stem and vented ball, carbon-filled TFE seats, threaded body design with adjustable stem packing, threaded ends, and 250-psig steam working-pressure rating and 600-psig cold working-pressure rating.

## 2.6 UV BIOCIDES EQUIPMENT

- A. Target Irradiation: Minimum 30,000 microwatts x s/sq. cm.

B. Light Source Vessels:

1. ASTM A 666, Type 304 stainless steel.
2. Construct for minimum 150 psig at 150 deg F according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, and equipped with pressure relief valve.
3. Light Source Sleeve: Quartz, with EPDM O-ring seals.
4. Light Source: Replaceable UV lamp producing a minimum target irradiation of 254-nm wavelength light.

C. Controls: Interlock with pumps to operate when water is circulating.

2.7 CHEMICAL TREATMENT TEST EQUIPMENT

- A. Test Kit: Manufacturer-recommended equipment and chemicals in a wall-mounting cabinet for testing pH, TSS, inhibitor, chloride, alkalinity, and hardness; sulfite and testable polymer tests for high-pressure boilers, and oxidizing biocide test for open cooling systems.
- B. Corrosion Test-Coupon Assembly: Constructed of corrosive-resistant material, complete with piping, valves, and mild steel and copper coupons. Locate copper coupon downstream from mild steel coupon in the test-coupon assembly.
  1. Four-station rack for open systems.

2.8 CHEMICALS

- A. Chemicals shall be as recommended by water-treatment system manufacturer that are compatible with piping system components and connected equipment and that can attain water quality specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WATER ANALYSIS

- A. Perform an analysis of supply water to determine quality of water available at Project site.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install chemical application equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor chemical tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.
- B. Install water testing equipment on wall near water chemical application equipment.
- C. Install interconnecting control wiring for chemical treatment controls and sensors.
- D. Mount sensors and injectors in piping circuits.

- E. Install automatic chemical-feed equipment for condenser water and include the following:
1. Install makeup-water softener.
  2. Install water meter in makeup-water supply.
  3. Install inhibitor injection pumps and solution tanks with injection timer sensing contacts in water meter.
    - a. Pumps shall operate for timed interval on contact closure at water meter in makeup-water supply connection. Injection pump shall discharge into boiler feedwater tank or feedwater supply connection at boiler.
  4. Install test equipment and provide test-kit to Owner. Install test-coupon assembly in bypass circuit around circulating pumps unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  5. Install TSS controller with sensor and bleed valves.
    - a. Bleed valves shall cycle to maintain maximum TSS concentration.
  6. Install pH sensor and controller with injection pumps and solution tanks.
    - a. Injector pumps shall operate to maintain required pH.
  7. Install UV-irradiation lamps in condenser-water piping.
    - a. UV lights shall operate continuously with condenser-water flow.

### 3.3 OZONE-GENERATOR INSTALLATION

- A. Install ozone generator and equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor mineral and brine tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.
- B. Pipe ozone from ozone generator to condenser water with stainless-steel pipe and fittings with welded joints.
- C. Install two-piece, stainless-steel ball valve in ozone supply to condenser water.
- D. Pipe cooling water to ozone generator and to air-gap drain fitting with stainless-steel pipe and fittings with welded joints where enclosed in ozone-generator room.
- E. Install two-piece, stainless-steel ball valve in cooling water supply to ozone generator.
- F. Mounting supports for ozone generator shall be ASTM A 666, Type 316 stainless steel.
- G. Mount breathing apparatus outside ozone-generator room.
- H. Mount and install ozone detector, warning lights, and audible alarm inside ozone-generator room. Mount another set of warning lights and audible alarm just outside the main entrance to ozone-generator room.

### 3.4 UV-IRRADIATION UNIT INSTALLATION

- A. Install UV-irradiation units on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor mineral and brine tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.
- B. Make piping connections between HVAC water-treatment equipment and dissimilar-metal piping with dielectric fittings. Comply with requirements in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties" for dielectric fittings.
- C. Install shutoff valves on HVAC water-treatment equipment inlet and outlet. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Section 230523.11 "Globe Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping," and Section 230523.13 "Butterfly Valves for HVAC Piping."
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers required in makeup-water connections to potable-water systems.
- E. Confirm applicable electrical requirements in electrical Sections for connecting electrical equipment.
- F. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- G. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. Inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including piping and electrical connections.
  - 2. Inspect piping and equipment to determine that systems and equipment have been cleaned, flushed, and filled with water, and are fully operational before introducing chemicals for water-treatment system.
  - 3. Place HVAC water-treatment system into operation and calibrate controls during the preliminary phase of HVAC systems' startup procedures.
  - 4. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is tested and satisfactory test results are achieved.
  - 5. Test for leaks and defects. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.

6. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, and replaced water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that has been covered or concealed before it has been tested and approved.
  7. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow test pressure to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects.
  8. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping until no leaks exist.
- C. Equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- E. At four-week intervals following Substantial Completion, perform separate water analyses on HVAC systems to show that automatic chemical-feed systems are maintaining water quality within performance requirements specified in this Section. Submit written reports of water analysis advising Owner of changes necessary to adhere to "Performance Requirements" Article.
- F. Comply with ASTM D 3370 and with the following standards:
1. Silica: ASTM D 859.
  2. Acidity and Alkalinity: ASTM D 1067.
  3. Iron: ASTM D 1068.
  4. Water Hardness: ASTM D 1126.

### 3.7 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Scope of Maintenance Service: Provide chemicals and service program to maintain water conditions required above to inhibit corrosion, scale formation, and biological growth for condenser-water piping and equipment. Services and chemicals shall be provided for a period of one year from date of Substantial Completion and shall include the following:
1. Initial water analysis and hydronic water-treatment recommendations.
  2. Startup assistance for Contractor to flush the systems, clean with detergents, and initially fill systems with required chemical treatment prior to operation.
  3. Periodic field service and consultation.
  4. Customer report charts and log sheets.
  5. Laboratory technical analysis.
  6. Analyses and reports of all chemical items concerning safety and compliance with government regulations.

### 3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC water-treatment systems and equipment.

END OF SECTION 232516

## SECTION 232533 - HVAC MAKEUP-WATER FILTRATION EQUIPMENT

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following HVAC water filtration equipment:
  - 1. HVAC makeup-water softeners.
  - 2. Multimedia filters.
  - 3. Centrifugal separators.
  - 4. Water-softener chemicals.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RO: Reverse osmosis.
- B. TSS: Total suspended solids are solid materials, including organic and inorganic, that are suspended in the water. These solids may include silt, plankton, and industrial wastes.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories for the following products:
  - 1. Water softeners.
  - 2. Multimedia filters.
  - 3. Self-cleaning strainers.
  - 4. Bag- or cartridge-type filters.
  - 5. Centrifugal separators.
- B. Shop Drawings: Softeners and filtration equipment, maintenance space required, and piping connections to HVAC systems.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
  - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Water Analysis Provider Qualifications: Verification of experience and capability of HVAC water-treatment service provider.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Other Informational Submittals:
  - 1. Water Analysis: Illustrate water quality available at Project site.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sensors, injection pumps, water softeners, water filtration units, and controllers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 HVAC MAKEUP-WATER SOFTENER

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Culligan International Company.
  - 2. Diamond Water Conditioning; a Griesbach company.
  - 3. Pentair, Inc.
  - 4. RainSoft.
  - 5. Water King.
- B. Description: Twin mineral tanks and one brine tank, factory mounted on skid.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Fabricate supports and attachments to tanks with reinforcement strong enough to resist tank movement during seismic event when tank supports are anchored to building structure as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- E. Mineral Tanks:
  - 1. Fabricate and label steel filter tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
  - 2. Fabricate and label fiber-reinforced plastic (FRP) filter tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section X, if indicated.
  - 3. Pressure Rating: 100 psig minimum.
  - 4. Wetted Components: Suitable for water temperatures from 40 to at least 100 deg F.
  - 5. Freeboard: 50 percent, minimum, for backwash expansion above the normal resin bed level.

6. Support Legs or Skirt: Constructed of structural steel, welded or bonded to tank before testing and labeling.
  7. Finish: Hot-dip galvanized on exterior and interior of tank after fabrication.
  8. Upper Distribution System: Single-point type, fabricated from galvanized-steel pipe and fittings.
  9. Lower Distribution System: Hub and radial-arm or header-lateral type; fabricated from PVC pipe and fittings with individual, fine-slotted, nonclogging polyethylene strainers; arranged for even-flow distribution through resin bed.
- F. Controls: Automatic; factory mounted on mineral tanks and factory wired.
1. Adjustable duration of regeneration steps.
  2. Push-button start and complete manual operation override.
  3. Pointer on pilot-control valve shall indicate cycle of operation.
  4. Means of manual operation of pilot-control valve if power fails.
  5. Main Operating Valves: Industrial, automatic, multiport, diaphragm type with the following features:
    - a. Slow opening and closing, nonslam operation.
    - b. Diaphragm guiding on full perimeter from fully open to fully closed.
    - c. Isolated dissimilar metals within valve.
    - d. Self-adjusting, internal, automatic brine injector that draws brine and rinses at constant rate independent of pressure.
    - e. Float-operated brine valve to automatically measure the correct amount of brine to the softener and refill with fresh water.
    - f. Sampling cocks for soft water.
  6. Flow Control: Automatic control of backwash and flush rates over variations in operating pressures that do not require field adjustments. Equip mineral tanks with automatic-reset-head water meter that electrically activates cycle controller to initiate regeneration at preset total in gallons and that automatically resets after regeneration to preset total in gallons for next service run. Include alternator to regenerate one mineral tank with the other in service.
- G. Brine Tank: Combination measuring and wet-salt storing system.
1. Tank and Cover Material: Fiberglass a minimum of 3/16 inch thick; or molded polyethylene a minimum of 3/8 inch thick.
  2. Brine Valve: Float operated and plastic fitted for automatic control of brine withdrawn and freshwater refill.
  3. Size: Large enough for at least four regenerations at full salting.
- H. Factory-Installed Accessories:
1. Piping, valves, tubing, and drains.
  2. Sampling cocks.
  3. Main-operating-valve position indicators.
  4. Water meters.
- I. Water Test Kit: Include in wall-mounting enclosure for water softener.

## 2.2 MULTIMEDIA FILTERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Diamond Water Systems, Inc.
  2. Everfilt.
  3. LAKOS; a Lindsay Company.
  4. PEP Filters, Inc.
  5. Sonitec-Vortisand Inc.
  6. United Industries, Inc; Tower-flo Water Systems.
- B. Description: Factory-fabricated and -tested, simplex, multimedia filter system of filter tank, media, strainer, circulating pump, piping, and controls for removing particles from water.
1. Filter Tank: Corrosion resistant with distribution system and media.
    - a. Fabricate and label steel filter tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
    - b. Fabricate and label FRP filter tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section X, if indicated.
    - c. Pipe Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded according to ASME B1.20.1.
  2. Motorized Valves: Flanged, ductile-iron butterfly type with EPDM valve seat and stem seal; with ASTM B 148 aluminum bronze disc.
  3. Strainer: Basket type mounted on pump suction.
  4. Piping: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type S, F, or E; Grade B, Schedule 40 black steel, with flanged, grooved, or threaded joints and malleable, steel welding, or ductile-iron fittings.
  5. Piping: ASTM B 88, Type L copper water tube, copper-alloy solder-joint fittings, and brazed, flanged, or grooved joints.
  6. Safety Valves: Automatic pressure relief.
  7. Circulating Pump: Overhung impeller, close coupled, single stage, end suction, centrifugal. Comply with UL 778 and with HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
    - a. Casing: Radially split, cast iron.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum.
    - c. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
    - d. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
    - e. Seal: Mechanical.
    - f. Motor: Open, drip-proof motor supported on the pump-bearing frame. General requirements for motors are specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  8. Controls: Automatic control of circulating pump and tank backwash; factory wired for single electrical connection.
    - a. Panel: NEMA 250, Type 4 enclosure with time clock and pressure gages.
    - b. Pump: Automatic and manual switching; manual switch position bypasses safeties and controls.
    - c. Backwash: Automatic; with time clock and differential pressure switch.

- d. Backwash Valve: Tank mounted with valves interlocked to single actuator.
- 9. Support: Skid mounting.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.3 CENTRIFUGAL SEPARATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Culligan International Company.
  - 2. LAKOS; a Lindsay Company.
  - 3. PEP Filters, Inc.
  - 4. Puroflux Corporation.
  - 5. Rosedale Products, Inc.
- B. Description: Simplex separator housing with baffles and chambers for removing particles from water by centrifugal action and gravity.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Housing: With manufacturer's proprietary system of baffles and chambers.
  - 1. Construction: Fabricate and label steel separator housing to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
  - 2. Inlet: Designed with tangential entry to produce centrifugal flow of feedwater.
  - 3. Vortex Chamber: Designed for downward vortex flow and gravity separation of particles.
  - 4. Collection Chamber: Designed to hold separated particles.
  - 5. Outlet: Near top of unit.
  - 6. Purge: At bottom of collection chamber.
  - 7. Pipe Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded according to ASME B1.20.1.
  - 8. Pipe Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Steel, Class 150 flanges according to ASME B16.5 or grooved according to AWWA C606. Provide stainless-steel flanges if tank is stainless steel.
- E. Motorized Purge Valve: Gate or plug pattern valve.
  - 1. Motorized Valves: Butterfly-type, flanged or grooved-end, ductile-iron body, with EPDM valve seat and stem seal; with ASTM B 148 aluminum bronze disc.
- F. Strainer: Stainless-steel basket type mounted on pump suction.
- G. Piping: ASTM B 88, Type L copper water tube, copper-alloy solder-joint fittings.
- H. Circulating Pump: Overhung impeller, close coupled, single stage, end suction, centrifugal. Comply with UL 778 and with HI 1.1-1.2 and HI 1.3.
  - 1. Casing: Radially split, cast iron.

2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum.
  3. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze; statically and dynamically balanced, closed, and keyed to shaft.
  4. Shaft and Shaft Sleeve: Steel shaft, with copper-alloy shaft sleeve.
  5. Seal: Mechanical.
  6. Motor: Open, dripproof motor supported on the pump-bearing frame. General requirements for motors are specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
- I. Controls: Automatic control of circulating pump and separator purge; factory wired for single electrical connection.
1. Panel: NEMA 250, Type 4 enclosure.
  2. Pump: Automatic and manual switching; manual switch position bypasses safeties and controls.
  3. Separator Purge: Automatic and manual.
  4. TSS Controller Interlock: Open separator purge valve with bleed-off control.
- J. Support: Skid mounting.

## 2.4 WATER-SOFTENER CHEMICALS

- A. Mineral: High-capacity, sulfonated-polystyrene ion-exchange resin that is stable over entire pH range with good resistance to bead fracture from attrition or shock. Resin exchange capacity minimum 30,000 grains/cu. ft. of calcium carbonate of resin when regenerated with 15 lb of salt.
- B. Salt for Brine Tanks: High-purity sodium chloride, free of dirt and foreign material. Rock and granulated forms are unacceptable.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 WATER ANALYSIS

- A. Perform an analysis of supply water to determine quality of water available at Project site.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
1. Install water-softener equipment on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

### 3.3 WATER-SOFTENER INSTALLATION

- A. Install water-softener equipment on concrete bases, level and plumb. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible. Anchor mineral and brine tanks and floor-mounting accessories to substrate.
- B. Install brine lines and fittings furnished by equipment manufacturer but not factory installed.
- C. Prepare mineral-tank distribution system and underbed for minerals and place specified mineral into mineral tanks.
- D. Install water-testing sets on wall adjacent to water softeners.

### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Make piping connections between HVAC water-softener equipment and dissimilar-metal piping with dielectric fittings. Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."
- D. Install shutoff valves on HVAC water-softener equipment inlet and outlet. Metal general-duty valves are specified in Section 230523.11 "Globe Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.12 "Ball Valves for HVAC Piping," Section 230523.13 "Butterfly Valves for HVAC Piping."
- E. Comply with requirements in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for backflow preventers required in makeup-water connections to potable-water systems.
- F. Confirm applicable electrical requirements in electrical Sections for connecting electrical equipment.
- G. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Equipment will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Scope of Maintenance Service: Provide chemicals and service program to maintain water conditions required above to inhibit corrosion, scale formation, and biological growth for

equipment. Services and chemicals shall be provided for a period of one year from date of Substantial Completion, and shall include the following:

1. Periodic field service and consultation.
2. Customer report charts and log sheets.
3. Laboratory technical analysis.
4. Analyses and reports of all chemical items concerning safety and compliance with government regulations.

### 3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC water-treatment systems and equipment.

END OF SECTION 232533

## SECTION 233113 - METAL DUCTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
3. Double-wall round ducts and fittings.
4. Sheet metal materials.
5. Duct liner.
6. Sealants and gaskets.
7. Hangers and supports.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.

- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
  - a. Luminaires.
  - b. Air outlets and inlets.
  - c. Speakers.
  - d. Sprinklers.
  - e. Access panels.
  - f. Perimeter moldings.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

### 2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
    - b. Linx Industries (formerly Lindab).
    - c. McGill AirFlow LLC.

- d. SEMCO LLC.
  - e. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
  - f. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 30 inches in Diameter: Flanged.
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

### 2.3 DOUBLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- 1. Linx Industries (formerly Lindab).
  - 2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - 3. SEMCO LLC.
  - 4. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
- B. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- 1. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
    - a. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 30 Inches in Diameter: Flanged.
  - 2. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials

involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

3. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Inner Duct: Minimum 0.028-inch perforated galvanized sheet steel having 3/32-inch-diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent.
- D. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
  2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
  3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
  4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.

## 2.4 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
  2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

## 2.5 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. CertainTeed Corporation.
  - b. Knauf Insulation.
  - c. Owens Corning.
- 1) Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
2. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
  3. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
- B. Insulation Pins and Washers:
1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
  2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
- C. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
  2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
  3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
  4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
  5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
  6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts.
  7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
  8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
    - a. Fan discharges.
    - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
  9. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

## 2.6 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
  - 1. Application Method: Brush on.
  - 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
  - 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
  - 4. Water resistant.
  - 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
  - 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
  - 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
  - 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
  - 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- C. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
  - 1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
  - 2. Type: S.
  - 3. Grade: NS.
  - 4. Class: 25.
  - 5. Use: O.
- D. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- E. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
  - 1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
  - 2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.

## 2.7 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- C. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- D. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
  - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.

- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

### 3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts at a minimum to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
  - 2. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
  - 3. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.
  - 4. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
  - 5. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 6. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class C.
  - 7. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class B.
  - 8. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
  - 9. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

### 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.

- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

### 3.6 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
  - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
  - 2. Test the following systems:
    - a. Supply Ducts with a Pressure Class of 3-Inch wg or Higher: Test representative duct sections totaling no less than 100 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
  - 3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
  - 4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
  - 5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
  - 6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.
- C. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.8 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

### 3.9 DUCT SCHEDULE

A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:

B. Supply Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units and Terminal Units:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
2. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive 4-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.
3. Ducts Connected to Variable-Air-Volume Air-Handling Units:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive 4-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 3.
4. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.

C. Return Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units and Terminal Units:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.

- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.

D. Exhaust Ducts:

- 1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
  - a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
- 2. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.

E. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:

- 1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units:
  - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
  - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
  - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 24.
  - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 24.

F. Intermediate Reinforcement:

- 1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel or carbon steel coated with zinc-chromate primer.

G. Liner:

- 1. Supply Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch thick.
- 2. Return Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch thick.
- 3. Transfer Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch thick.

H. Double-Wall Duct Interstitial Insulation:

- 1. Supply Air Ducts: 2 inches thick.

I. Elbow Configuration:

- 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
  - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
  - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
  - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
    - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
      - 1) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
    - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
    - c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Welded.
- J. Branch Configuration:
1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
    - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
    - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Conical spin in.
  2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
    - a. Velocity 1500 fpm or Lower: Conical tap.
    - b. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 233113

## SECTION 233300 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Manual volume dampers.
2. Control dampers.
3. Flange connectors.
4. Duct silencers.
5. Turning vanes.
6. Duct-mounted access doors.
7. Flexible connectors.
8. Duct accessory hardware.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 233346 "Flexible Ducts" for insulated and non-insulated flexible ducts.
2. Section 233723 "HVAC Gravity Ventilators" for roof-mounted ventilator caps.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop and dynamic insertion loss data. Include breakout noise calculations for high transmission loss casings.

- B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.

1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
  - a. Special fittings.
  - b. Manual volume damper installations.
  - c. Control-damper installations.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

#### 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
  - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
  - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- C. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

#### 2.3 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
    - b. American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek Architectural Group company.

- c. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - d. Ruskin Company.
- 2. Standard leakage rating.
- 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
- 4. Frames:
  - a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
  - b. Mitered and welded corners.
  - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
- 5. Blades:
  - a. Multiple or single blade.
  - b. Opposed-blade design.
  - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
  - d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
- 6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
- 7. Bearings:
  - a. Molded synthetic.
  - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
- 8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

## 2.4 CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek Architectural Group company.
  - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 3. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 4. Ruskin Company.
- B. Low-leakage rating and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
- C. Frames:
  - 1. Hat shaped.
  - 2. 0.094-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel.
  - 3. Interlocking, gusseted corners.
- D. Blades:
  - 1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 6 inches.
  - 2. Parallel-blade design.
  - 3. Galvanized-steel.

4. 0.064 inch thick single skin.
  5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene.
  6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.
- E. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch-diameter; stainless steel; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.
1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.
- F. Bearings:
1. Stainless-steel sleeve.
  2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
  3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

## 2.5 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Nexus PDQ.
  3. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- C. Material: Galvanized steel.
- D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

## 2.6 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Aero-Dyne Sound Control Co.
  2. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  3. Duro Dyne Inc.
  4. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- D. Vane Construction: Double wall.

## 2.7 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek Architectural Group company.
  2. Cesco Products; a division of MESTEK, Inc.
  3. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  4. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  5. Pottorff.
  6. Ventfabrics, Inc.
  7. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
1. Door:
    - a. Double wall, rectangular.
    - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
    - c. Vision panel.
    - d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inchbutt or piano hinge and cam latches.
    - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
  2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
  3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
    - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
    - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
    - c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Three hinges and two compression latches.
    - d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches: Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.

## 2.8 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Duro Dyne Inc.
  3. Ventfabrics, Inc.
  4. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.

- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
  - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
  - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
  - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

## 2.9 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Compliance with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1-2004 includes Section 6.4.3.3.3 - "Shutoff Damper Controls," restricts the use of backdraft dampers, and requires control dampers for certain applications. Install control dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
  - 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:

1. On both sides of duct coils.
  2. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, and equipment.
  3. Control devices requiring inspection.
  4. Elsewhere as indicated.
- H. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- I. Access Door Sizes:
1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
  2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
  3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
  4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
  5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
  6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- J. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- K. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- L. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- M. Connect terminal units to supply ducts with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- N. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- O. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
- P. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- Q. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch movement during start and stop of fans.
- 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Tests and Inspections:
1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
  2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
  3. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.

END OF SECTION 233300

## SECTION 233346 - FLEXIBLE DUCTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Insulated flexible ducts.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For flexible ducts.
  - 1. Include plans showing locations and mounting and attachment details.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- C. Comply with the Air Diffusion Council's "ADC Flexible Air Duct Test Code FD 72-R1."
- D. Comply with ASTM E 96/E 96M, "Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials."

## 2.2 INSULATED FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  3. Thermaflex; a Flex-Tek Group company.
  4. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, two-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene vapor-barrier film.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.
  4. Insulation R-Value: R6.

## 2.3 FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTORS

- A. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action or Nylon strap in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install flexible ducts according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts.
- B. Install in indoor applications only. Flexible ductwork should not be exposed to UV lighting.
- C. Connect terminal units to supply ducts with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- D. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- E. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
- F. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- G. Installation:
1. Install ducts fully extended.
  2. Do not bend ducts across sharp corners.
  3. Bends of flexible ducting shall not exceed a minimum of one duct diameter.
  4. Avoid contact with metal fixtures, water lines, pipes, or conduits.

5. Install flexible ducts in a direct line, without sags, twists, or turns.

H. Supporting Flexible Ducts:

1. Suspend flexible ducts with bands 1-1/2 inches wide or wider and spaced a maximum of 48 inches apart. Maximum centerline sag between supports shall not exceed 1/2 inch per 12 inches.
2. Install extra supports at bends placed approximately one duct diameter from center line of the bend.
3. Ducts may not rest on ceiling joists or truss supports.

END OF SECTION 233346

## SECTION 233423 - HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Centrifugal roof ventilators.
  - 2. Upblast propeller roof exhaust fans.
  - 3. In-line centrifugal fans.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Also include the following:
  - 1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
  - 2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
  - 3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
  - 4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
  - 5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
  - 6. Roof curbs.
  - 7. Fan speed controllers.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Roof framing and support members relative to duct penetrations.
  - 2. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
  - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  - 4. Ceiling-mounted items including light fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power ventilators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Belts: One set for each belt-driven unit.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall have AMCA-Certified performance ratings and shall bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- C. UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705. Power ventilators for use for restaurant kitchen exhaust shall also comply with UL 762.

## 1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- C. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Aerovent; a division of Twin City Fan Companies, Ltd.
  - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 3. Loren Cook Company.
- B. Housing: Removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle; square, one-piece, aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.
  - 1. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.
- C. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
- D. Belt Drives:
  - 1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
  - 2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
  - 3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
  - 4. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
  - 5. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.
- E. Accessories:
  - 1. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
  - 2. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
  - 3. Motorized Dampers: Parallel-blade dampers mounted in curb base with electric actuator; wired to close when fan stops.
- F. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch-thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
  - 1. Configuration: Built-in cant and mounting flange.
  - 2. Overall Height: 18 inches.
  - 3. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.

### 2.2 UPBLAST PROPELLER ROOF EXHAUST FANS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 2. Loren Cook Company.

3. New York Blower Company (The).
  4. Twin City Fan.
- B. Wind Band, Fan Housing, and Base: Reinforced and braced galvanized steel, containing galvanized-steel butterfly dampers and rain trough, motor and drive assembly, and fan wheel.
1. Damper Rods: Steel with nylon bearings.
  2. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.
- C. Belt Drives:
1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
  2. Weatherproof housing of same material as fan housing.
  3. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
  4. Shaft Bearings: Prelubricated and sealed, self-aligning, pillow-block-type ball bearings.
  5. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
  6. Motor Mount: On outside of fan cabinet, adjustable base for belt tensioning.
- D. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch-thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
1. Configuration: Built-in raised cant and mounting flange.
  2. Overall Height: 18 inches.
  3. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.

## 2.3 IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  2. Loren Cook Company.
  3. Twin City Fan.
- B. Housing: Split, spun aluminum with aluminum straightening vanes, inlet and outlet flanges, and support bracket adaptable to floor, side wall, or ceiling mounting.
- C. Direct-Drive Units: Motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing.
- D. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, with adjustable sheaves, enclosure around belts within fan housing, and lubricating tubes from fan bearings extended to outside of fan housing.
- E. Fan Wheels: Aluminum, airfoil blades welded to aluminum hub.
- F. Accessories:

1. Control Damper: Automatically operated with motorized damper motor interlocked with fan to close when fan is not operating.
2. Companion Flanges: For inlet and outlet duct connections.
3. Fan Guards: 1/2- by 1-inch mesh of galvanized steel in removable frame. Provide guard for inlet or outlet for units not connected to ductwork.
4. Motor and Drive Cover (Belt Guard): Epoxy-coated steel.

## 2.4 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- B. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

## 2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Certify sound-power level ratings according to AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- B. Certify fan performance ratings, including flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.
- B. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.
- C. Support suspended units from structure using threaded steel rods and elastomeric hangers having a static deflection of 1 inch. Vibration-control devices are specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- D. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- E. Label units according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
  - 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
  - 3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
  - 4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
  - 5. Adjust belt tension.
  - 6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
  - 7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
  - 8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
  - 9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
  - 10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
  - 11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- C. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust belt tension.

- C. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
- E. Lubricate bearings.

END OF SECTION 233423

## SECTION 233600 - AIR TERMINAL UNITS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Series, fan-powered air terminal units.
  - 2. Casing liner.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of air terminal unit.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for air terminal units.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For air terminal units.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
  - 4. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
  - 2. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustic tile.
  - 3. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air terminal units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Instructions for resetting minimum and maximum air volumes.
    - b. Instructions for adjusting software set points.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fan-Powered-Unit Filters: Furnish one spare filter for each filter installed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, "Section 6 - Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning."

### 2.2 SERIES FAN-POWERED AIR TERMINAL UNITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Krueger.
  - 2. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 3. Price Industries.
  - 4. Titus.
  - 5. Trane.
- B. Configuration: Volume-damper assembly and fan in series arrangement inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud for installation above a ceiling.
  - 1. Designed for quiet operation.
- C. Casing: 0.040-inch- thick galvanized steel, single wall.

1. Casing Liner: Comply with requirements in "Casing Liner" Article for fibrous-glass duct liner.
  2. Air Inlets: Round stub connections or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
  3. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections.
  4. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket and quarter-turn latches.
  5. Fan: Forward-curved centrifugal.
  6. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- D. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with flow-sensing ring and peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
1. Maximum Damper Leakage: AHRI 880 rated, [2] [3] percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
  2. Damper Position: Normally open.
- E. Velocity Sensors: Multipoint array with velocity sensors in air inlets and air outlets.
- F. Motor:
1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  2. Type: Electronically commutated motor.
  3. Fan-Motor Assembly Isolation: Rubber isolators.
  4. Enclosure: Open dripproof.
  5. Enclosure Materials: Cast iron.
  6. Efficiency: Premium efficient.
  7. Motor Speed: Single speed.
    - a. Speed Control: Infinitely adjustable with electronic controls.
- G. Filters:
1. Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value and Average Arrestance: According to ASHRAE 52.2.
  2. Material: Polyurethane foam; MERV 3.
  3. Thickness: 1 inch.
  4. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- H. Hydronic Heating Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch, and rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F. Include manual air vent and drain valve.
- I. Electric-Resistance Heating Coils: Nickel-chromium heating wire, free of expansion noise and hum, mounted in ceramic inserts in a galvanized-steel housing; with primary automatic, and secondary manual, reset thermal cutouts. Terminate elements in stainless-steel, machine-staked terminals secured with stainless-steel hardware.

1. SCR controlled.
  2. Access door interlocked disconnect switch.
  3. Downstream air temperature sensor with local connection to override discharge-air temperature to not exceed a maximum temperature set point (adjustable).
  4. Nickel chrome 80/20 heating elements.
  5. Airflow switch for proof of airflow.
  6. Fan interlock contacts.
  7. Fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection (for coils more than 48 A).
  8. Mercury contactors.
- J. Factory-Mounted and -Wired Controls: Electrical components mounted in control box with removable cover. Incorporate single-point electrical connection to power source.
1. Control Transformer: Factory mounted for control voltage on electric and electronic control units with terminal strip in control box for field wiring of thermostat and power source.
  2. Wiring Terminations: Fan and controls to terminal strip. Terminal lugs to match quantities, sizes, and materials of branch-circuit conductors. Enclose terminal lugs in terminal box that is sized according to NFPA 70.
  3. Disconnect Switch: Factory-mounted, fuse type.
- K. Control Panel Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1, with access panel sealed from airflow and mounted on side of unit.

## 2.3 CASING LINER

- A. Casing Liner: Fibrous-glass duct liner, complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
1. Minimum Thickness: 1 inch.
    - a. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
      - 1) Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
  2. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
  3. Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.

## 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test assembled air terminal units according to AHRI 880.
1. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, maximum and minimum factory-set airflows, coil type, and AHRI certification seal.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 5, "Hangers and Supports" and with Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
- C. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- D. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

### 3.2 TERMINAL UNIT INSTALLATION

- A. Install air terminal units according to NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."
- B. Install air terminal units level and plumb. Maintain sufficient clearance for normal service and maintenance.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Where installing piping adjacent to air terminal unit, allow space for service and maintenance.
- B. Hot-Water Piping: Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties," and connect heating coils to supply with shutoff valve, strainer, control valve, and union or flange; and to return with balancing valve and union or flange.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for connecting ducts to air terminal units.
- D. Make connections to air terminal units with flexible connectors complying with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, and maximum and minimum factory-set airflows. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for equipment labels and warning signs and labels.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. After installing air terminal units and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Leak Test: After installation, fill water coils and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Air terminal unit will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Verify that inlet duct connections are as recommended by air terminal unit manufacturer to achieve proper performance.
  - 3. Verify that controls and control enclosure are accessible.
  - 4. Verify that control connections are complete.
  - 5. Verify that nameplate and identification tag are visible.
  - 6. Verify that controls respond to inputs as specified.

### 3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air terminal units.

END OF SECTION 233600

## SECTION 233713.13 - AIR DIFFUSERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Round ceiling diffusers.
2. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
3. Louver face diffusers.
4. Linear slot diffusers.
5. Ceiling-integral continuous slot diffusers.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers.
2. Section 233713.23 "Air Registers and Grilles" for adjustable-bar register and grilles, fixed-face registers and grilles, and linear bar grilles.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
2. Diffuser Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
5. Duct access panels.

- B. Source quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 ROUND CEILING DIFFUSERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 2. Price Industries.
  - 3. Titus.
- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- C. Material: Steel.
- D. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
- E. Face Style: Four cone.
- F. Mounting: Duct connection.
- G. Pattern: Fully adjustable.
- H. Dampers: Radial opposed blade.
- I. Accessories:
  - 1. Safety chain.

### 2.2 LOUVER FACE DIFFUSERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 2. Price Industries.
  - 3. Titus.
- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- C. Material: Steel.
- D. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
- E. Face Size: See drawings.
- F. Mounting: See drawings.

- G. Pattern: Four-way core style.
- H. Dampers: None.
- I. Accessories:
  - 1. Square to round neck adaptor.
  - 2. Adjustable pattern vanes.

### 2.3 LINEAR SLOT DIFFUSERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Krueger.
  - 2. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 3. Price Industries.
  - 4. Titus.
- B. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- C. Material - Shell: Steel, insulated.
- D. Material - Pattern Controller and Tees: Aluminum.
- E. Finish - Face and Shell: Baked enamel, black.
- F. Finish - Pattern Controller: Baked enamel, black.

### 2.4 CEILING-INTEGRAL CONTINUOUS DIFFUSERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Krueger.
  - 2. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 3. Price Industries.
  - 4. Titus.
- B. Section Length: See drawings.
- C. Straight and curved sections as required to accommodate layout.
- D. Mitered tees and corners.
- E. Finishes:
  - 1. Interior: Standard black.
- F. Throw: Standard.

G. Mounting: Ceiling.

H. Plenum: Insulated.

I. Other Features:

1. Painted interior.
2. Blank-offs.

## 2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where diffusers are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713.13

## SECTION 233713.23 - REGISTERS AND GRILLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Fixed face registers and grilles.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to registers and grilles.
  - 2. Section 233713.13 "Air Diffusers" for various types of air diffusers.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
  - 2. Register and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

- 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
  - 2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
  - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  - 4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
  - 5. Duct access panels.

- B. Source quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 REGISTERS

#### A. Fixed Face Register:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Krueger.
  - b. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - c. Price Industries.
  - d. Titus.
2. Material: Steel.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced 3/4 inch apart.
5. Face Arrangement: Perforated core.
6. Core Construction: Integral.
7. Frame: 1-1/4 inches wide.
8. Mounting: See drawings.
9. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade.

### 2.2 GRILLES

#### A. Fixed Face Grille:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Krueger.
  - b. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - c. Price Industries.
  - d. Titus.
2. Material: Steel.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal; spaced 3/4 inch apart.
5. Face Arrangement: Perforated core.
6. Core Construction: Integral.
7. Frame: 1-1/4 inches wide.
8. Mounting: See drawings.

### 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- #### A. Verification of Performance: Rate registers and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where registers and grilles are installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install registers and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Outlets and Inlets Locations: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install registers and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust registers and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 233713.23

## SECTION 233723 - HVAC GRAVITY VENTILATORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Louvered-penthouse ventilators.
  - 2. Roof hoods.

#### 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Ventilators shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of ventilator components, noise or metal fatigue caused by ventilator blade rattle or flutter, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors. Wind pressures shall be considered to act normal to the face of the building.
- B. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes, without buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, or other detrimental effects.
  - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- C. Water Entrainment: Limit water penetration through unit to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. For louvered-penthouse ventilators specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.
- B. Shop Drawings: For gravity ventilators. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, ventilator attachments to curbs, and curb attachments to roof structure.
  - 1. Show weep paths, gaskets, flashing, sealant, and other means of preventing water intrusion.
  - 2. Detail fabrication and assembly of shop-fabricated ventilators.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Roof framing plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Structural members to which roof curbs and ventilators will be attached.
  - 2. Sizes and locations of roof openings.
- B. Welding certificates.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
  - 2. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5 or T-52.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003 or 5005 with temper as required for forming or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 zinc coating, mill phosphatized.
- D. Fasteners: Same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal or 300 Series stainless steel unless otherwise indicated. Do not use metals that are incompatible with joined materials.
  - 1. Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
  - 2. Use hex-head or Phillips pan-head screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Post-Installed Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors made from stainless-steel components, with capability to sustain without failure a load equal to 4 times the loads imposed for concrete, or 6 times the load imposed for masonry, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- F. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

## 2.2 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Factory or shop fabricate gravity ventilators to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units to the minimum extent as necessary for shipping and handling. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Fabricate frames, including integral bases, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.
- C. Fabricate units with closely fitted joints and exposed connections accurately located and secured.
- D. Fabricate supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.
- E. Perform shop welding by AWS-certified procedures and personnel.

## 2.3 LOUVERED-PENTHOUSE VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 2. Loren Cook Company.
  - 3. Twin City Fan
- B. Construction: All-welded assembly with 4-inch-deep louvers, mitered corners, and aluminum sheet roof.
- C. Frame and Blade Material and Nominal Thickness: Extruded aluminum, of thickness required to comply with structural performance requirements, but not less than 0.080 inch for frames and 0.080 inch for blades.
  - 1. Blade Spacing: 3-1/2 inches.
  - 2. Blade Angle: 45 degrees.
  - 3. AMCA Seal: Mark units with the AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.
  - 4. Exterior Corners: Prefabricated corner units with mitered and welded blades and with fully recessed mullions at corners.
- D. Frame and Blade Material and Nominal Thickness: Galvanized-steel sheet, of thickness required to comply with structural performance requirements, but not less than 0.052 inch for frames and 0.052 inch for blades.
- E. Roof Curbs: Galvanized-steel sheet; with mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch-thick, rigid fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to fit roof opening and ventilator base.
  - 1. Configuration: Built-in raised cant and mounting flange.
  - 2. Overall Height: 18 inches.
- F. Bird Screening: Galvanized-steel, 1/2-inch-square mesh, 0.041-inch wire.

G. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finish:

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces of dirt, grease, and other contaminants. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780. Apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it.

H. Accessories:

1. Dampers:
  - a. Location: Penthouse neck.
  - b. Control: Motorized.

2.4 ROOF HOODS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
2. Loren Cook Company.
3. Twin City Fan & Blower.

B. Factory or shop fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figures 6-6 and 6-7.

C. Materials: Aluminum sheet, minimum 0.063-inch-thick base and 0.050-inch-thick hood; suitably reinforced.

D. Roof Curbs: Galvanized-steel sheet; with mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch-thick, rigid fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to fit roof opening and ventilator base.

1. Configuration: Built-in raised cant and mounting flange.
2. Overall Height: 18 inches.

E. Bird Screening: Aluminum, 1/2-inch-square mesh, 0.063-inch wire.

F. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Finish:

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces of dirt, grease, and other contaminants. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780. Apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install gravity ventilators level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.
- B. Install gravity ventilators with clearances for service and maintenance.
- C. Install perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.
- D. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as installation progresses. Comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealants applied during installation.
- E. Label gravity ventilators according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- F. Protect galvanized and nonferrous-metal surfaces from corrosion or galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint on surfaces that will be in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals.
- G. Repair finishes damaged by cutting, welding, soldering, and grinding. Restore finishes so no evidence remains of corrective work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the factory, make required alterations, and refinish entire unit or provide new units.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" and Section 233116 "Nonmetal Ducts." Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

END OF SECTION 233723

## SECTION 235113.16 - VENT DAMPERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Barometric dampers.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 235123 "Gas Vents" for Type B and BW vents, Type L vents, and listed special gas vents.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of product.

- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
- 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For draft control devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of barometric dampers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failure includes failure due to corrosion.
2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 BAROMETRIC DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Field Controls L.L.C.
  2. Snappy Air Distribution Products.
  3. Tec-Air Inc.
  4. Tjernlund Products, Inc.
- B. Damper Construction: High-temperature-enamel-painted steel damper and housing with galvanized-steel breeching connection. Adjustable counterweight with lock. Include knife-edge bearings that do not require lubrication.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install listed components in a manner complying with the listing.
- B. Secure barometric dampers to breechings with hardware compatible with connected materials.
- C. Locate barometric dampers as close to draft hood collar as possible.
- D. Secure barometric dampers to appliances, breechings, or chimneys with hardware compatible with connected materials.

END OF SECTION 235113.16

## SECTION 235216 - CONDENSING BOILERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes gas-fired, fire-tube condensing boilers, trim, and accessories for generating hot water.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for boilers.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For boilers, boiler trim, and accessories.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
  - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Source quality-control reports.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.
- D. Product Certificates:
  - 1. ASME Stamp Certification and Report: Submit "A," "S," or "PP" stamp certificate of authorization, as required by authorities having jurisdiction, and document hydrostatic testing of piping external to boiler.
  - 2. CSA B51 pressure vessel Canadian Registration Number (CRN).

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For boilers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of boilers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period for Fire-Tube Condensing Boilers:
    - a. Leakage and Materials: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
    - b. Heat Exchanger Damaged by Thermal Stress and Corrosion: **[Prorated]** **[Nonprorated]** for **[five]** <Insert number> years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label boilers to comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Boilers shall have minimum efficiency according to "Gas and Oil Fired Boilers - Minimum Efficiency Requirements."
- D. DOE Compliance: Minimum efficiency shall comply with 10 CFR 430, Subpart B, Appendix N.
- E. UL Compliance: Test boilers for compliance with UL 795. Boilers shall be listed and labeled by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. CSA Compliance: Test boilers for compliance with CSA B51.
- G. Mounting Base: For securing boiler to concrete base.

### 2.2 FORCED-DRAFT, FIRE-TUBE CONDENSING BOILERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - 1. AERCO; A WATTS Brand.
  - 2. Lochivar, LLC.
  - 3. Thermal Solutions.
  - 4. Fulton Heating Solutions, Inc.

- B. Description: Factory-fabricated, -assembled, and -tested, fire-tube condensing boiler with heat exchanger sealed pressure tight, built on a steel base, including insulated jacket; flue-gas vent; combustion-air intake connections; water supply, return, and condensate drain connections; and controls. Water-heating service only.
- C. Heat Exchanger: Nonferrous, corrosion-resistant combustion chamber.
- D. Pressure Vessel: Carbon steel with welded heads and tube connections.
- E. Burner: Natural gas, forced draft.
- F. Blower: Centrifugal fan to operate during each burner firing sequence and to prepurge and post purge the combustion chamber.
  - 1. Motors: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
    - a. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated; if not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- G. Gas Train: Combination gas valve with manual shutoff and pressure regulator.
- H. Ignition: Spark ignition with 100 percent main-valve shutoff with electronic flame supervision.
- I. Casing:
  - 1. Jacket: Sheet metal, with snap-in or interlocking closures.
  - 2. Control Compartment Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1A.
  - 3. Finish: Baked-enamel protective finish.
  - 4. Insulation: Minimum 2-inch-thick, mineral-fiber insulation surrounding the heat exchanger.
  - 5. Combustion-Air Connections: Inlet and vent duct collars.

### 2.3 TRIM

- A. Include devices sized to comply with ASME B31.1.
- B. Aquastat Controllers: Operating, firing rate, and high limit.
- C. Safety Relief Valve: ASME rated.
- D. Pressure and Temperature Gage: Minimum 3-1/2-inch-diameter, combination water-pressure and -temperature gage. Gages shall have operating-pressure and -temperature ranges, so normal operating range is about 50 percent of full range.
- E. Boiler Air Vent: Automatic.
- F. Drain Valve: Minimum NPS 3/4 hose-end gate valve.

- G. Circulation Pump: Nonoverloading, in-line pump with split-capacitor motor having thermal-overload protection and lubricated bearings; designed to operate at specified boiler pressures and temperatures.

## 2.4 CONTROLS

- A. Refer to Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC" and Section 230993.11 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC DDC."
- B. Burner Operating Controls: To maintain safe operating conditions, burner safety controls limit burner operation.
  - 1. High Cutoff: Automatic reset stops burner if operating conditions rise above maximum boiler design temperature.
  - 2. Low-Water Cutoff Switch: Electronic probe shall prevent burner operation on low water. Cutoff switch shall be manual-reset type.
- C. Building Automation System Interface: Factory install hardware and software to enable building automation system to monitor, control, and display boiler status and alarms.
  - 1. Hardwired Points:
    - a. Monitoring: On/off status, common trouble alarm, low-water-level alarm.
    - b. Control: On/off operation, hot-water-supply temperature set-point adjustment.
  - 2. A communication interface with building automation system shall enable building automation system operator to remotely control and monitor the boiler from an operator workstation. Control features available, and monitoring points displayed, locally at boiler control panel shall be available through building automation system.

## 2.5 ELECTRICAL POWER

- A. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are specified in electrical Sections.
- B. Single-Point Field Power Connection: Factory-installed and -wired switches, motor controllers, transformers, and other electrical devices necessary shall provide a single-point field power connection to boiler.
  - 1. House in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
  - 2. Wiring shall be numbered and color coded to match wiring diagram.
  - 3. Install factory wiring outside of an enclosure in a metal raceway.
  - 4. Field power interface shall be to fused disconnect switch.
  - 5. Provide branch power circuit to each motor and to controls with a disconnect switch or circuit breaker.
  - 6. Provide each motor with overcurrent protection.

## 2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Burner and Hydrostatic Test: Factory adjust burner to eliminate excess oxygen, carbon dioxide, oxides of nitrogen emissions, and carbon monoxide in flue gas and to achieve combustion efficiency; perform hydrostatic test.
- B. Test and inspect factory-assembled boilers, before shipping, according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Allow Owner access to source quality-control testing of boilers. Notify Architect 14 days in advance of testing.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for concrete equipment bases, anchor-bolt sizes and locations, and piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations, sizes, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Final boiler locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations before roughing-in for piping and electrical connections.
- B. Examine mechanical spaces for suitable conditions where boilers will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 BOILER INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Install boilers on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- B. Install gas-fired boilers according to NFPA 54.
- C. Assemble and install boiler trim.
- D. Install electrical devices furnished with boiler but not specified to be factory mounted.
- E. Install control wiring to field-mounted electrical devices.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

- B. Install piping adjacent to boiler to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Install piping from equipment drain connection to nearest floor drain. Piping shall be at least full size of connection. Provide an isolation valve if required.
- D. Connect piping to boilers, except safety relief valve connections, with flexible connectors of materials suitable for service. Flexible connectors and their installation are specified in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
- E. Connect gas piping to boiler gas-train inlet with union. Piping shall be at least full size of gas-train connection. Provide a reducer if required.
- F. Connect hot-water piping to supply- and return-boiler tappings with shutoff valve and union or flange at each connection.
- G. Install piping from safety relief valves to nearest floor drain.
- H. Boiler Venting:
  - 1. Install flue venting kit and combustion-air intake.
  - 2. Connect full size to boiler connections. Comply with requirements in Section 235123 "Gas Vents."
- I. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- J. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. Perform installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Leak Test: Hydrostatic test. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
  - 3. Operational Test: Start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Adjust air-fuel ratio and combustion.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
    - a. Check and adjust initial operating set points and high- and low-limit safety set points of fuel supply, water level, and water temperature.
    - b. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- C. Boiler will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

- E. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
  
- F. Performance Tests:
  - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect component assemblies and equipment installations, including connections, and to conduct performance testing.
  - 2. Boilers shall comply with performance requirements indicated, as determined by field performance tests. Adjust, modify, or replace equipment to comply.
  - 3. Perform field performance tests to determine capacity and efficiency of boilers.
    - a. Test for full capacity.
    - b. Test for boiler efficiency at low fire 20, 40, 60, 80, 100, 80, 60, 40, and 20 percent of full capacity. Determine efficiency at each test point.
  - 4. Repeat tests until results comply with requirements indicated.
  - 5. Provide analysis equipment required to determine performance.
  - 6. Provide temporary equipment and system modifications necessary to dissipate the heat produced during tests if building systems are inadequate.
  - 7. Notify Architect 24 hours minimum in advance of test dates.
  - 8. Document test results in a report and submit to Architect.

### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain boilers. Refer to Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 235216

## **PART 1 - GENERAL**

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Packaged, water-cooled, electric-motor-driven centrifugal chillers.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. COP: Coefficient of performance. The ratio of the rate of heat removal to the rate of energy input, using consistent units for any given set of rating conditions.
- B. DDC: Direct digital control.
- C. EER: Energy-efficiency ratio. The ratio of the cooling capacity given in terms of Btu/h to the total power input given in terms of watts at any given set of rating conditions.
- D. IPLV: Integrated part-load value. A single-number part-load efficiency figure of merit for a single chiller calculated according to the method defined by AHRI 550/590 and referenced to AHRI standard rating conditions.
- E. kVAR: Kilovolt-ampere reactive.
- F. kW/Ton: The ratio of total power input of the chiller in kilowatts to the net refrigerating capacity in tons at any given set of rating conditions.
- G. NPLV: Nonstandard part-load value. A single-number part-load efficiency figure of merit for a single chiller calculated according to the method defined by AHRI 550/590 and intended for operating conditions other than the AHRI standard rating conditions.
- H. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include refrigerant, rated capacities, operating characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
  - 2. Performance at AHRI standard conditions and at conditions indicated.
  - 3. Performance at AHRI standard unloading conditions.
  - 4. Minimum evaporator flow rate.

5. Minimum condenser flow rate.
  6. Refrigerant capacity of chiller.
  7. Oil capacity of chiller.
  8. Fluid capacity of evaporator, and condenser.
  9. Characteristics of safety relief valves.
  10. Minimum entering condenser-fluid temperature.
  11. Performance at varying capacities with constant design condenser-fluid temperature. Repeat performance at varying capacities for different condenser-fluid temperatures from design to minimum in 5 deg F increments.
  12. Force and moment capacity of each piping connection.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
1. Product Data: For energy performance.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, load distribution, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings:
1. Drawings, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
    - a. Structural supports.
    - b. Piping roughing-in requirements.
    - c. Wiring roughing-in requirements, including spaces reserved for electrical equipment.
    - d. Access requirements, including working clearances for mechanical controls and electrical equipment, and tube pull and service clearances.
  2. Coordination drawings showing plan, section, and elevation views, drawn to a minimum scale of 1/4 inch equals 1'-0".
  3. Each view to show screened background with the following:
    - a. Column grids, beams, columns, and concrete housekeeping pads.

- b. Room layout with walls, floors, and roofs, including each room name and number.
- c. Equipment and products of other trades that are located in vicinity of chillers and part of final installation, such as lighting, fire-suppression, and plumbing systems.
- d. Temporary structural sheet plating layout.

B. Certificates: For certification required in "Quality Assurance" Article.

C. Source quality-control reports.

D. Field Quality-Control Reports: Startup service reports.

E. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each chiller to include emergency operation, and maintenance manuals.

B. Instructional Videos: Including those that are pre-recorded and those that are recorded during training.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Touch-up Paint: 32-oz. container of paint used for finish coat. Label outside of container with detailed description of paint to allow for procurement of a matching paint in the future.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. AHRI Certification: Certify chiller according to AHRI 550/590 - 2011 with Addendum 1 certification program.

B. ASHRAE Compliance:

1. ASHRAE 15 for safety code within mechanical refrigeration rooms.

2. ASHRAE 147 for refrigerant leaks, recovery, handling and storage requirements.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Ship chillers from the factory with a holding charge of refrigerant.

B. Ship each oil-lubricated chiller with a full charge of oil.

1. Ship oil factory installed in chiller.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of chillers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Extended warranties include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Complete chiller, including refrigerant and oil charge.
    - b. Complete compressor and drive assembly, including refrigerant and oil charge.
    - c. Refrigerant and oil charge.
      - 1) Loss of refrigerant charge for any reason due to manufacturer product defect or product shipping.
    - d. Parts only and labor.
  2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Leak Tight Warranty: Provide as part of the chiller scope a refrigerant loss warranty for the lesser of 60 months from initial start-up or 66 months from date of shipment. During this period, manufacturer shall furnish replacement refrigerant which is lost due to a leak in the machine. Once a leak is determined, action must be taken (acceptable to the manufacturer) to eliminate the source of the leak.
- C. Provide a 5-year extended warranty for the compressor, compressor driveline, motor, motor controller, including gears. Warranty shall include all service, parts and labor.
1. Chiller with hermetic motors shall provide a 5-year extended refrigerant warranty for contamination from motor failure. If contamination from motor failure occurs, the chiller manufacturer shall provide complete replacement of refrigerant, including all service, parts and labor to clean up the refrigerant system.
- D. Provide a separate price from the manufacturer for a 10-year extended warranty for the compressor, compressor driveline, starter, motor, motor controller, including gears and shaft seals. Warranty shall include all refrigerant, parts and labor. Manufacturer's warranty is required; third party insurance/warranty quotes are not acceptable.

## **PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

### **2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Condenser-Fluid Temperature Performance:
1. Startup Condenser-Fluid Temperature: Chiller shall be capable of starting with an entering condenser-fluid temperature of 60 deg F and providing stable operation until the system temperature is elevated to the minimum operating entering condenser-fluid temperature.
  2. Minimum Operating Condenser-Fluid Temperature: Chiller shall be capable of continuous operation over the entire capacity range indicated with an entering condenser-fluid temperature of 65 deg F.
  3. Make factory modifications to standard chiller design if necessary to comply with performance indicated.

- B. Site Altitude: Chiller shall be suitable for altitude at which installed without affecting performance indicated. Make adjustments to affected chiller components to account for site altitude.
- C. Performance Tolerance: Comply with the following in lieu of AHRI 550/590:
  - 1. Allowable Capacity Tolerance: Zero percent.
- D. ASHRAE Compliance:
  - 1. ASHRAE 15 for safety code for mechanical refrigeration.
  - 2. ASHRAE 147 for refrigerant leaks, recovery, and handling and storage requirements.
- E. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1 – 2013.
- F. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label chillers to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1, as applicable to chiller design. For chillers charged with HFC-134a refrigerant, include an ASME U-stamp and nameplate certifying compliance.
- G. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- H. Comply with requirements of Underwriters Laboratories Inc., and include label by a qualified testing agency showing compliance.
- I. Operation Following Loss of Normal Power:
  - 1. Equipment, associated factory- and field-installed controls, and associated electrical equipment shall automatically return equipment and associated controls to the operating state occurring immediately before loss of normal power without need for manual intervention by an operator when power is restored either through a backup power source, or through normal power if restored before backup power is brought online.
  - 2. Provide means and methods required to satisfy requirement, even if not explicitly indicated.

## 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Basis of Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
  - 2. Daikin Applied.
  - 3. Trane.

4. York, Johnson Controls

2.3 MANUFACTURED UNIT

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested chiller complete with compressor, compressor motor, compressor motor controller, lubrication system, evaporator, condenser, controls, interconnecting unit piping and wiring, and indicated accessories.
1. Dual-Compressor Chillers: For chillers with dual compressors, provide each compressor with a dedicated motor and motor controller, and provide for continued operation when either compressor-drive assembly fails.

2.4 COMPRESSOR-DRIVE ASSEMBLY

- A. Description: Single-stage or multistage, variable- or dynamic-displacement, centrifugal-type compressor driven by an electric motor.
- B. Compressor:
1. Casing: Cast iron, precision ground.
2. Impeller: High-strength cast-aluminum or cast-aluminum alloy on carbon- or alloy-steel shaft.
- C. Drive: Direct- or gear-drive, hermetic design, using an electric motor as the driver.
1. Gear Drives:
- a. For chillers with oil-lubricated gear drives, provide single- or double-helical gear design continuously coated with oil while chiller is operating.
- b. For chillers with oil-free technology, gear drives shall be of single- or double-helical gear design without the need for oil while chiller is operating, starting, and stopping.
- c. Gears shall comply with American Gear Manufacturer Association standards.
2. Seals: Seal drive assembly to prevent refrigerant leakage.
- D. Compressor Motor:
1. Continuous-duty, squirrel-cage, induction-type, hermetically sealed two-pole motor with energy efficiency required to suit chiller energy efficiency indicated.
2. Factory mounted, aligned, and balanced as part of compressor assembly before shipping.
3. Motor shall be of sufficient capacity to drive compressor throughout entire operating range without overload and with sufficient capacity to start and accelerate compressor without damage.

4. Provide motor with thermistor or RTD in each of three-phase motor windings to monitor temperature and report information to chiller control panel.
- E. Vibration Balance: Balance chiller compressor and drive assembly to provide a precision balance that is free of noticeable vibration over the entire operating range.
1. Vibration Limits: Velocities not to exceed 0.15 inches/s and 0.8 mils peak to peak on all axes.
- F. Service: Easily accessible for inspection and service.
1. Compressor's internal components shall be accessible without having to remove compressor-drive assembly from chiller.
  2. Provide lifting lugs or eyebolts attached to casing.
- G. Capacity Control: Modulating, variable-inlet, guide-vane assembly combined with hot-gas bypass, if necessary, to achieve performance indicated.
1. Maintain stable operation that is free of surge, cavitation, and vibration throughout range of operation. Configure to achieve most energy-efficient operation possible.
  2. Operating Range: From 100 to 15 percent of design capacity.
  3. Condenser-Fluid Unloading Requirements over Operating Range: Constant-design of entering condenser-fluid temperature.
  4. Avoid use of hot-gas bypass if other options are available to achieve performance indicated. Apply hot-gas bypass according to ASHRAE/IES 90.1 and governing codes.
- H. Oil Lubrication System: Consisting of pump, filtration, heater, cooler, factory-wired power connection, and controls.
1. Bearings, gears, and other rotating surfaces shall be lubricated at all operating, startup, coast down, and standby conditions, including power failure.
  2. Manufacturer's standard method to remove refrigerant from oil.
  3. Oil filter shall be the easily replaceable cartridge type, minimum 0.5-micron efficiency, with means of positive isolation while servicing.
  4. Refrigerant-cooled oil cooler.
  5. Factory-installed and pressure-tested piping with isolation valves and accessories.
  6. Oil compatible with refrigerant and chiller components.
  7. Positive visual indication of oil level.

## 2.5 REFRIGERATION

### A. Refrigerant:

1. HFC-134a; ASHRAE 34, Class A1, referred to as HFC-134a or HCFC-1233zd; ASHRAE 34, Class B1, referred to as HCFC-1233zd.
2. Compatibility: Chiller parts exposed to refrigerants shall be fully compatible with refrigerants, and pressure components shall be rated for refrigerant pressures.

### B. Refrigerant Flow Control: Manufacturer's standard refrigerant flow-control device satisfying performance requirements indicated.

### C. Pressure Relief Device:

1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 15, ASHRAE 147, and applicable portions of ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section VIII, Division 1.
2. Select and configure pressure relief devices to protect against corrosion and inadvertent release of refrigerant.
3. Where dual pressure relief devices are installed in series, provide a sensor with indicator between devices to indicate refrigerant release past first device.
4. For Chillers Using HCFC-123zd: "Trane RuptureGuard" or approved equal offering complying with ASHRAE 15 and ASHRAE 147.
5. For Chillers Using HFC-134a: ASME-rated, spring-loaded, pressure relief valve; single- or multiple-reseating type. Pressure relief valve(s) shall be provided for each heat exchanger. Condenser shall have dual valves with one being redundant and configured to allow either valve to be replaced without loss of refrigerant.

### D. Refrigeration Transfer: Provide service valves and other factory-installed accessories required to facilitate transfer of refrigerant from chiller to a remote refrigerant storage and recycling system. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 15 and ASHRAE 147.

### E. Refrigerant Isolation for Chillers Using HFC-134a:

1. Factory install isolation valves in the compressor discharge line to the condenser and the refrigerant liquid line leaving the condenser to allow for isolation and storage of full refrigerant charge in the chiller condenser shell.

### F. Purge System:

1. For chillers operating at sub-atmospheric pressures (using HCFC-123zd refrigerant), factory install an automatic purge system for collection and return of refrigerant and lubricating oil and for removal of noncondensables, including, but not limited to, water, water vapor, and noncondensable gases.
2. System shall be of thermal purge design, refrigerant or air cooled, and equipped with a carbon filter that includes an automatic regeneration cycle.

3. Factory wire to chiller's main power supply and system complete with controls, piping, and refrigerant valves to isolate the purge system from the chiller.
4. Construct components of noncorrodible materials.
5. Controls shall interface with chiller control panel to indicate modes of operation, set points, data reports, diagnostics, and alarms.
6. Efficiency of not more than 0.02 lb of refrigerant per pound of air when rated according to AHRI 580.
7. Operation independent of chiller according to ASHRAE 147.

## 2.6 EVAPORATOR

- A. Description: Shell-and-tube design, with water in tubes and refrigerant surrounding tubes within shell. Shell is separate from condenser.
- B. Shell Material: Carbon-steel rolled plates with continuously welded seams or seamless pipe.
- C. Designed to prevent liquid refrigerant carryover from entering compressor.
- D. Tubes:
  1. Individually replaceable from either end and without damage to tube sheets and other tubes.
  2. Mechanically expanded into end sheets and physically attached to intermediate tube sheets.
  3. Material: Copper.
  4. Nominal OD: 3/4 or 1 inch.
  5. Minimum Root to Root Wall Thickness: 0.025 inch.
  6. External Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
  7. Internal Finish: Enhanced or smooth.
- E. End Tube Sheets: Continuously welded to each end of shell; drilled and reamed to accommodate tubes, with positive seal between fluid in tubes and refrigerant in shell.
- F. Intermediate Tube Sheets: Installed in shell and spaced along length of tube at intervals required to eliminate vibration and to avoid contact of tubes resulting in abrasion and wear.
- G. Water Box:

1. Cast-iron or carbon-steel construction; arranged to provide visual inspection and cleaning of tubes from either end without disturbing refrigerant in shell.
  2. Marine type for water box with piping connections; standard type for water box without piping connections, both ends.
  3. Provide water boxes and marine water-box covers with lifting lugs or eyebolts.
  4. All water boxes shall be removable for cleaning with marine water-box covers.
  5. Nozzle Pipe Connections: Welded, ASME B16.5, flat-face flange or grooved connection with flanged adaptor.
  6. Thermistor or RTD temperature sensor factory installed in each nozzle.
  7. Fit each water box with 3/4- or 1-inch drain connection at low point and vent connection at high point, each with threaded plug.
- H. Flow Sensor: Thermal dispersion type, factory calibrated for project-specific application.

## 2.7 CONDENSER

- A. Description: Shell-and-tube design, with water in tubes and refrigerant surrounding tubes within shell. Shell is separate from evaporator.
- B. Shell Material: Carbon-steel rolled plates with continuously welded seams or seamless pipe.
- C. Designed to prevent direct impingement of high-velocity hot gas from compressor discharge on tubes.
- D. Tubes:
1. Individually replaceable from either end and without damage to tube sheets and other tubes.
  2. Mechanically expanded into end sheets and physically attached to intermediate tube sheets.
  3. Material: Copper.
  4. Nominal OD: 3/4 or 1 inch.
  5. Minimum Root to Root Wall Thickness: 0.028 inch.
  6. External Finish: Manufacturer's standard.
  7. Internal Finish: Enhanced or smooth.
- E. End Tube Sheets: Continuously welded to each end of shell; drilled and reamed to accommodate tubes, with positive seal between fluid in tubes and refrigerant in shell.

- F. Intermediate Tube Sheets: Installed in shell and spaced along length of tube at intervals required to eliminate vibration and to avoid contact of tubes resulting in abrasion and wear.
- G. Water Box:
  - 1. Cast-iron or carbon-steel construction; arranged to provide visual inspection and cleaning of tubes from either end without disturbing refrigerant in shell.
  - 2. Marine type for water box with piping connections. Standard type for water box without piping connections, both ends.
  - 3. Water boxes and marine water-box covers shall have lifting lugs or eyebolts.
  - 4. Hinged marine water-box covers.
  - 5. Nozzle Pipe Connections: Welded, ASME B16.5, flat-face flange or grooved connection with flanged adaptor.
  - 6. Thermistor or RTD temperature sensor factory installed in each nozzle.
  - 7. Fit each water box with 3/4- or 1-inch drain connection at low point and vent connection at high point, each with threaded plug.
- H. Flow Sensor: Thermal dispersion type, factory calibrated for project-specific application.

## 2.8 INSULATION

- A. Closed-cell, flexible elastomeric thermal insulation complying with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
  - 1. Thickness: Two layers of 3/4 inch, total of 1-1/2 inch.
- B. Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer.
- C. Factory-applied insulation over all cold surfaces of chiller capable of forming condensation. Components shall include, but not be limited to, evaporator shell and end tube sheets, evaporator water boxes including nozzles, refrigerant suction pipe from evaporator to compressor, cold surfaces of compressor, refrigerant-cooled motor, and auxiliary piping.
  - 1. Apply adhesive to 100 percent of insulation contact surface.
  - 2. Before insulating steel surfaces, prepare surfaces for paint, and prime and paint as indicated for other painted components. Do not insulate unpainted steel surfaces.
  - 3. Seal seams and joints to provide a vapor barrier.
  - 4. Manufacturer has option to factory or field insulate chiller components installed in multiple pieces to reduce potential for damage during installation.

5. Manufacturer has option to factory or field insulate water boxes and nozzles to reduce potential for damage during installation.

D. Field-Applied Insulation:

1. Components that are not factory insulated shall be field insulated to comply with requirements indicated in this section.
2. Manufacturer shall be responsible for chiller insulation whether factory or field installed, to ensure manufacturer is the single point of responsibility for chillers.
3. Manufacturer factory-authorized service representative shall instruct and supervise installation of field-applied insulation.
4. After field-applied insulation is complete, paint insulation to match factory-applied finish.

2.9 ELECTRICAL

- A. Factory installed and wired, and functionally tested at factory before shipment.
- B. Single Compressor Units: Single-point, field-power connection to non-fused disconnect switch.
- C. Dual Compressor Units: Dual-point, field-power connection to individual non-fused disconnect switches.
- D. Minimum short circuit current rating (SCCR) according to UL 508 shall be not less than 50,000 A.
  1. Branch power circuit to each motor, electric heater, dedicated electrical load, and control, with disconnect switch having SCCR to match main disconnecting means.
  2. NEMA ICS 2-rated motor controller for auxiliary motors, hand-off-auto switch, and automatic overcurrent protection for each motor.
  3. Control-circuit transformer with primary and secondary automatic overcurrent protection.
- E. Terminal blocks with numbered and color-coded wiring to match wiring diagram. Spare wiring terminal block for connection to external controls or equipment.
- F. Factory-installed wiring located outside of enclosures shall be installed in metal raceway, and terminal connections shall be made with not more than a 24-inch length of liquidtight or flexible metallic conduit.
- G. Factory install and wire capacitor bank for the purpose of power factor correction to 0.95 at all operating conditions.

1. If capacitors are mounted in a dedicated enclosure, use same NEMA enclosure type as that for motor controller. Provide enclosure with service entrance knockouts and bushings for conduit.
2. Capacitors shall be of non-PCB dielectric fluid, metallized electrode design, with low loss with low-temperature rise. The kVAR ratings shall be indicated and shall not exceed the maximum limitations set by NFPA 70. Provide individual cells as required.
3. Provide each cell with current-limiting replaceable fuses and carbon-film discharge resistors to reduce residual voltage to less than 50 V within one minute after de-energizing.
4. Provide a ground terminal and a terminal block or individual connectors for phase connection.

## 2.10 MOTOR CONTROLLER

- A. Enclosure: Factory installed, unit mounted, NEMA 250, Type 1, with hinged full-front access door with lock and key or padlock and key.
- B. Control Circuit: Obtained from integral control power transformer with a control power transformer of enough capacity to operate connected control devices.
- C. Overload Relay shall be sized according to UL 1995 or shall be an integral component of chiller control microprocessor.
- D. Autotransformer Reduced-Voltage Controller: NEMA ICS 2, closed transition; include isolation switch and current-limiting fuses. Controller shall be able to operate in ambient temperatures up to 120 degrees F. All conductors, bus bars and fittings shall be copper.
- E. Accessories: Devices shall be factory installed in controller enclosure unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Externally Operated, Door-Interlocked Disconnect: Non-fused disconnect switch. Short circuit current rating (SCCR) according to UL 508 shall be not less than 50,000 A.
  2. Push-Button Stations, Pilot Lights, and Selector Switches: NEMA ICS 2, heavy-duty type.
  3. Stop and Lockout Push-Button Station: Momentary-break, push-button station with a factory-applied hasp arranged so padlock can be used to lock push button in depressed position with control circuit open.
  4. Control Relays: Time-delay relays.
  5. Elapsed-Time Meters: Numerical readout in hours on face of enclosure.
  6. Number-of-Starts Counter: Numerical readout on face of enclosure.

7. Multifunction Digital-Metering Monitor: Microprocessor-based unit suitable for three- or four-wire systems and with the following features:
  - a. Selectable, digital display of the following:
    - 1) Phase Currents, Each Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
    - 2) Phase-to-Phase Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
    - 3) Phase-to-Neutral Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
    - 4) Three-Phase Real Power: Plus or minus 2 percent.
    - 5) Three-Phase Reactive Power: Plus or minus 2 percent.
    - 6) Power Factor: Plus or minus 2 percent.
    - 7) Integrated Demand with Demand Interval Selectable from Five to 60 Minutes: Plus or minus 2 percent.
    - 8) Accumulated energy, in megawatt hours (joules), plus or minus 2 percent; stored values unaffected by power outages for up to 72 hours.
  - b. Mounting: Display and control unit flush or semirecessed in instrument compartment door.
8. Phase-Failure, Phase-Reversal, Undervoltage Relays: Solid-state sensing circuit with adjustable undervoltage setting and isolated output contacts for hardwired connection.
9. Power Protection: Chiller shall shut down within six cycles of power interruption during a 60 minute period.

## 2.11 CONTROLS

- A. Control: Standalone and microprocessor based, with all memory stored in nonvolatile memory, so that reprogramming is not required on loss of electrical power.
- B. Enclosure: Unit mounted, NEMA 250, Type 1, hinged or lockable, factory wired with a single-point, with field-power connection and a separate control circuit.
- C. Factory-installed wiring outside of enclosures shall be in a NFPA 70-approved raceway. Make terminal connections with liquidtight or flexible metallic conduit.
- D. Operator Interface: Multiple-character digital or graphic display with dynamic update of information and with keypad or touch-sensitive display located on front of control enclosure. In either imperial or metric units selectable through the interface, display the following information:

1. Date and time.
2. Operating or alarm status.
3. Fault history with not less than last 10 faults displayed.
4. Set points of controllable parameters.
5. Trend data.
6. Operating hours.
7. Number of chiller starts.
8. Outdoor-air temperature or space temperature if required for chilled-water reset.
9. Entering- and leaving-fluid temperatures of evaporator and condenser.
10. Difference in fluid temperatures of evaporator and condenser.
11. Fluid flow of evaporator and condenser.
12. Fluid-pressure drop of evaporator and condenser.
13. Refrigerant pressures in evaporator and condenser.
14. Refrigerant saturation temperature in evaporator and condenser shell.
15. Compressor refrigerant suction and discharge temperature.
16. Compressor bearing temperature.
17. Motor bearing temperature.
18. Motor winding temperature.
19. Oil temperature.
20. Oil discharge pressure.
21. Phase current.
22. Percentage of motor-rated load amperage.
23. Phase voltage.
24. Demand power (kilowatts).
25. Energy use (kilowatt-hours).
26. Power factor.

27. Inlet vane position.
  28. Purge suction temperature if purge system is provided.
  29. Purge elapsed time if purge system is provided.
- E. Control Functions:
1. Manual or automatic startup and shutdown time schedule.
  2. Entering and leaving chilled-water temperatures, control set points, and motor load limits. Evaporator-fluid temperature shall be reset based on return-water temperature.
  3. Current limit and demand limit.
  4. Condenser-fluid temperature.
  5. External chiller emergency stop.
  6. Variable evaporator flow.
  7. Thermal storage.
- F. Manually Reset Safety Controls: The following conditions shall shut down chiller and require manual reset:
1. HFC-134a: Low evaporator pressure or temperature; high condenser pressure.
  2. HCFC-123: Low evaporator-fluid temperature.
  3. Low oil differential pressure.
  4. High or low oil pressure.
  5. High oil temperature.
  6. High compressor-discharge temperature.
  7. Loss of condenser-fluid flow.
  8. Loss of evaporator-fluid flow.
  9. Motor overcurrent.
  10. Motor overvoltage.
  11. Motor undervoltage.
  12. Motor phase reversal.
  13. Motor phase failure.

14. Sensor- or detection-circuit fault.
  15. Processor communication loss.
  16. Motor controller fault.
  17. Extended compressor surge.
  18. Excessive air-leakage detection for chillers using HCFC-123 refrigerant.
- G. Trending: Capability to trend analog data of up to five parameters simultaneously over an adjustable period and frequency of polling.
- H. Security Access: Provide electronic security access to controls through identification and password, with at least three levels of access: view only; view and operate; and view, operate, and service.
- I. Control Authority: At least four conditions: Off, local manual control at chiller, local automatic control at chiller, and automatic control through a remote source.
- J. Communication Port: RS-232 port, USB 2.0 port or higher, or equivalent connection capable of connecting a printer and a notebook computer.
- K. BAS Interface: Factory install hardware and software to enable system to monitor, control, and display chiller status and alarms.
1. Hardwired I/O Points:
    - a. Monitoring: On-off status, common trouble alarm, electrical power demand (kilowatts), electrical power consumption (kilowatt-hours), and power factor.
    - b. Control: On-off operation, chilled-water, discharge temperature set-point adjustment and electrical power demand limit.
  2. Communication Interface: System shall be compatible with the existing Siemens BAS. ASHRAE 135 BACnet/IP communication interface shall enable control system operator to remotely control and monitor the chiller from an operator workstation.
    - a. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at chiller control panel shall be available through the control system, including, as a minimum, the following:
      - 1) Start-stop command from remote source.
      - 2) Unit control source, local, analog, digital or modem.
      - 3) Chiller control panel start-stop.
      - 4) Accumulated operating hours.

- 5) Accumulated starts.
- 6) Compressor motor status.
- 7) Unit operation code.
- 8) Unit safety fault code.
- 9) Unit cycling fault code.
- 10) Chilled-water pump status.
- 11) Chilled-water flow proof.
- 12) Chilled-water entering temperature.
- 13) Chilled-water leaving temperature.
- 14) Chilled-water leaving temperature set-point adjustment from remote source.
- 15) Condenser(s) water entering temperature.
- 16) Condenser(s) water leaving temperature.
- 17) Evaporator refrigerant pressure.
- 18) Condenser(s) refrigerant pressure.
- 19) Evaporator refrigerant saturation temperature.
- 20) Condenser(s) refrigerant saturation temperature.
- 21) Refrigerant discharge temperature.
- 22) Refrigerant level.
- 23) Refrigerant liquid level setpoint.
- 24) Oil pressure differential.
- 25) Oil sump pressure.
- 26) Oil pump pressure.
- 27) Oil sump temperature.
- 28) High-speed thrust bearing proximity position.
- 29) High-speed thrust bearing proximity reference.
- 30) Motor current percent of full-load amps.

- 31) Motor current phase A.
- 32) Motor current phase B.
- 33) Motor current phase C.
- 34) Motor current set-point adjustment from remote source.
- 35) Motor bearing shaft end vibration.
- 36) Motor bearing opposite shaft end vibration.
- 37) Motor bearing shaft end temperature.
- 38) Motor bearing opposite shaft end temperature.
- 39) Motor average winding temperature.
- 40) Anti-recycle time remaining.
- 41) Liquid line solenoid.
- 42) Pre-rotation vanes position.
- 43) Adaptive capacity control valve surge map installed, true or false.
- 44) Adaptive capacity control new surge point, true or false.
- 45) Adaptive capacity control surge type, pressure differential or current.
- 46) Adaptive capacity control surge count.
- 47) Adaptive capacity control PRV position.
- 48) Adaptive capacity control output frequency.

L. Quick-Start Feature:

1. Automatically restore chiller operation up to 100 percent capacity within five minutes after a 15 -second power interruption.
2. Quick-start feature shall ensure guide vanes remain open following a power interruption event and quick ramp-up speed logic is employed to facilitate shortest time to deliver chilled water at set-point temperature.
3. Chiller manufacturer shall provide integral UPS unit(s) with chiller controls if required to keep chiller integral controls operational to comply with requirement.

4. Chiller manufacturer shall demonstrate chiller start time as part of the factory test with the quick-start feature enabled while simulating power fault, power service return, restart time, and capacity control, to produce desired chilled-water temperature at load indicated.
- M. Variable Flow Capability: The chilled water controller of each chiller shall include both condenser and evaporator variable water-flow capability to allow the chiller to respond quickly to accelerating or decelerating water, and have the following features:
1. The variable water-flow compensation capability shall allow control of the leaving chilled water temperature to within +/- 1.0°F (0.6°C) at a water flow rate change of 30% per minute and will stay online at a water flow rate change of 50% per minute.
  2. The chiller and controller shall include factory mounted transducers to read the differential evaporator water pressure (psid) and condenser water pressure (psid). The following parameters shall be displayed on the unit control display:
    - a. Evaporator differential pressure (psid).
    - b. Condenser differential pressure (psid).
    - c. Evaporator flow rate (GPM).
    - d. Condenser water flow (GPM).
    - e. Evaporator capacity (Tons).

## 2.12 FINISH

- A. Paint chiller, using manufacturer's standard procedures, except comply with the following minimum requirements:
1. Provide at least one coat of primer with a total dry film thickness of at least 2 mils.
  2. Provide two coats of alkyd-modified, vinyl enamel, epoxy or polyurethane finish with a total dry film thickness of at least 4 mils.
  3. Paint surfaces that are to be insulated before applying the insulation.
  4. Paint installed insulation to match adjacent uninsulated surfaces.
  5. Color of finish coat shall be manufacturer's standard.

## 2.13 ACCESSORIES

- A. Flow Switches:
1. Chiller manufacturer shall furnish a switch for each evaporator and condenser and verify field-mounting location before installation.
  2. Thermal Dispersion Switches:

- a. Construction: Wetted parts of body and trim constructed of Type 316 stainless steel.
- b. Sensor Tip: Two transistors and heater element.
- c. Performance: Switch shall withstand, without damage, the full-pressure rating of the heat exchanger and exhibit zero set-point shift due to variation in working pressure or temperature.
- d. Set Point: Screw type, field adjustable.
- e. Electrical Connections: Internally mounted screw-type terminal blocks.
- f. Switch Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4.
- g. Switch Action: Double-pole, double-throw switch, with one pole field wired to the chiller control panel and the other pole field wired to the DDC system for HVAC.

B. Vibration Isolation:

1. Chiller manufacturer shall furnish vibration isolation for each chiller.
2. Neoprene Pad:
  - a. Two layers of 0.375-inch-thick, ribbed- or waffle-pattern neoprene pads separated by a 16-gage, stainless-steel plate.
  - b. Fabricate pads from 40- to 50-durometer neoprene.
  - c. Provide stainless-steel square bearing plate to load the pad uniformly between 20 and 40 psig with a 0.12- to 0.16-inch deflection.

2.14 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform functional run tests of chillers before shipping.

B. Factory Performance Testing:

1. Factory performance test chillers, before shipping, according to AHRI 550/590.
2. Test the following conditions:
  - a. Design conditions indicated.
  - b. Reduction in capacity from design to minimum load in steps of 25% with condenser fluid at design conditions.
  - c. At two point(s) of varying part-load performance to be selected by Owner at time of test.
3. Test the following conditions:
  - a. Design conditions scheduled.
  - b. Reduction in capacity from design to minimum load in steps of 25% with condenser fluid at design conditions.
  - c. At two point(s) of varying part-load, performance to be selected by Owner at time of test.
4. Allow Owner access to place where chillers are being tested. Notify Owner in writing at least 30 days in advance of testing.

5. Prepare test report indicating test procedures, instrumentation, test conditions, and results. Submit copy of results within one week of test date.

C. Rapid Restart Demonstration:

1. The manufacturer shall demonstrate the chillers capability to restart after a power loss and load up to 80% and 100% load respectively. The demonstration shall include the following sequence of events:
  - a. Begin the demonstration with the chiller running at design load.
  - b. Disengage power to the chiller for a period of 30 seconds.
  - c. Reapply power to the chiller and initiate the timer (note the time required for the compressor to start).
  - d. Next, note the time to establish 80% of the chiller load.
  - e. Next, note the time to establish 100% of the chiller load.
2. The chiller's compressor must restart within 30 seconds, reach 80% load within 100 seconds, and 100% load within 300 seconds.
3. If the chiller manufacturer is not able to demonstrate stable chiller operation under rapid restart conditions in their facility, the contractor shall coordinate with a qualified and AHRI certified third party testing company to have the demonstrations completed per the specification.
4. If the chiller is unable to perform per the specification, the manufacturer shall be allowed to modify the unit and retest at their own expense. All travel related expenses incurred by the customer shall be covered by the manufacturer's representative.

D. Variable Primary Flow Demonstration:

1. The demonstration is designed to validate the chillers capability to maintain a chilled water leaving temperature within +/- 1.0°F (0.6°C) while undergoing changes in the evaporator flow. The following sequence shall be demonstrated in the factory on an AHRI certified test loop:
  - a. The demonstration shall start at design load, 100%, running in a stable, steady state mode.
  - b. The evaporator flow will be reduced by 10% (30% with the enhanced flow management package option) within 60 seconds while maintaining the design evaporator entering temperature.
  - c. The chiller will be allowed to stabilize for 5 to 10 minutes.
  - d. Increase the evaporator flow to the design value and stabilize for 5 minutes.
  - e. Decrease the evaporator flow by 30% (50% with enhanced flow management package option) within 60 seconds.
  - f. Allow the chiller to stabilize for 5 to 10 minutes and then complete the demonstration.
2. During step (a), the leaving chilled water temperature will be monitored to ensure that it does not exceed +/- 1.0°F (0.6°C).

3. During step (e), the chiller must stay online and the leaving chilled water temperature may fluctuate outside the previously stated  $\pm 1.0^{\circ}\text{F}$  ( $0.6^{\circ}\text{C}$ ).
  4. If the chiller manufacturer is not able to demonstrate stable chiller operation under variable primary flow conditions in their facility, the contractor shall coordinate with a qualified and AHRI certified third party testing company to have the demonstrations completed per the specification.
- E. Factory test and inspect evaporator and condenser according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1. Pressure test fluid side of heat exchangers, including water boxes, to 1.5 times the rated pressure. Pressure proof test refrigerant side of heat exchangers to a minimum of 45 psig. Vacuum and pressure test for leaks.
- F. Eddy Current Testing:
1. Perform factory testing of evaporator and condenser tubes of each chiller to ensure tube quality and longevity.
  2. Submit test report, including, as a minimum:
    - a. List of equipment used and equipment settings.
    - b. Test data reports and accompanying strip charts of calibrations.
    - c. Identify tubes with significant defects and typical indications.
    - d. Statistical summary of defect indications.
    - e. Recommendations concerning tube condition, tube replacement, tube removal for evaluation, and future frequency of testing.
    - f. Approval by an American Society for Nondestructive Testing, Level III eddy current technician.
- G. Owner Travel Expenses:
1. Include cost associated with Owner travel expenses to witness factory testing. Total value attributed to travel expenses shall be clearly indicated.
  2. Expenses shall include roundtrip coach airfare, out-of-town hotel accommodations, out-of-town meals (breakfast, lunch, dinner), out-of-town ground transportation, and all associated taxes and fees.
  3. Exclude other incidental expenses not indicated.
  4. Include travel expenses for three Owner representatives with origin of Baltimore, MD.
- H. If the equipment fails to perform within the proposed tolerances, the manufacturer will be allowed to make necessary revisions to the equipment and retest as required. The manufacturer shall assume all expenses incurred by the Owner or his representatives to witness the retest.
- I. At the Owner's option, if the equipment does not perform within the specified tolerances, the manufacturer shall have the following penalties deducted from the contract:

1. Capacity Penalty: For each ton below the design capacity as set forth in ARI 550/590-98, with the exception of the allowable tolerance, which shall be zero tolerance in lieu of the AHRI 550/590, one thousand dollars per ton shall be deducted from the contract price.
  - a. Allowable capacity = [(1-tolerance) x design capacity x \$1000/ton short of allowable capacity]
2. Power Performance Consumption Penalty: All load points and the power consumption penalty (PCP) shall be based upon the ARI 5550/590-98 tolerances. The PCP shall be calculated based upon the following formula:  $PCP = [\text{Measured Tons} \times \text{Allowable kW/Ton} \times \$2000/\text{kW}]$ 
  - a. The allowable kW/Ton shall be calculated as  $\text{Allowable kW/Ton} = [(1 + \text{tolerance}) \times \text{design kW/Ton}]$ .
3. Total Penalty: The total performance penalty shall be the sum of Capacity Penalty plus the Power Consumption Penalty times the number of typical chillers, regardless of units actually tested.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine chillers before installation. Reject chillers that are damaged.
- B. Examine roughing-in for equipment support, anchor-bolt sizes and locations, piping, control and electrical connections to verify actual locations, sizes, and other conditions affecting chiller performance, maintenance, and operations before equipment installation.
  1. Chiller locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations before roughing-in for piping and control and electrical connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### **3.2 CHILLER INSTALLATION**

- A. Coordinate sizes, locations, and anchoring attachments of structural-steel support structures.
- B. Install chillers on support structure indicated.
- C. Equipment Mounting:
  1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- D. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.
- E. Maintain clearances required by governing code.

- F. Chiller manufacturer's factory-trained service personnel shall charge chiller with refrigerant and fill with oil if not factory installed.
- G. Install separate devices furnished by manufacturer and not factory installed.

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping," Section 232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties," and Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to chillers, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Evaporator-Fluid Connections:
  - 1. Make connections to chiller with a flange.
- D. Condenser-Fluid Connections:
  - 1. Connect to condenser inlet with shutoff valve, flexible connector, thermometer, and plugged tee with pressure gage.
  - 2. Make connections to chiller with a flange.
- E. Refrigerant-Pressure Relief Device Connections:
  - 1. For chillers installed indoors, extend separate vent piping for each chiller circuit to the outdoors without valves or restrictions.
  - 2. Comply with ASHRAE 15.
  - 3. Connect to chiller pressure relief device with flexible connector and dirt leg with drain valve.
- F. For chillers equipped with a purge system, extend separate purge vent piping for each chiller to the outdoors. Comply with ASHRAE 15 and ASHRAE 147.
- G. Connect each chiller drain connection with a drain valve, which is full size of drain connection. Connect drain pipe to drain valve with union, and extend drain pipe to terminate over floor drain.
- H. Connect each chiller water box vent connection with an automatic or manual vent, which is full size of vent connection.

### 3.4 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection. Nameplate shall be laminated

phenolic layers of black with engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high. Locate nameplate where easily visible.

### 3.5 CONTROLS CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Connect control wiring between chillers and other equipment to interlock operation as required to provide a complete and functioning system.
- D. Connect control wiring between chiller control interface and DDC control system for remote monitoring and control of chillers. Comply with requirements in Section 255550 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for Central Utility Plant HVAC".
- E. Install nameplate on face of chiller control panel indicating the control equipment designation serving chiller and the I/O point designation for each control connection. Nameplate shall be laminated phenolic layers of black with engraved white letters at least 0.5 inches high.

### 3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
  - 1. Supervise field assembly (if any), final installation, pressure testing, check-out, and start-up of each chiller.
  - 2. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Verify that refrigerant charge is sufficient and chiller has been leak tested.
  - 4. Verify that pumps are installed and functional.
  - 5. Verify that thermometers and gages are installed.
  - 6. Operate chiller for run-in period.
  - 7. Check bearing lubrication and oil levels.
  - 8. Verify that refrigerant pressure relief device is vented outside.
  - 9. Verify proper motor rotation.
  - 10. Verify static deflection of vibration isolators, including deflection during chiller startup and shutdown.
  - 11. Verify and record performance of fluid flow and low-temperature interlocks for evaporator and condenser.

12. Verify and record performance of chiller protection devices.
  13. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Inspect field-assembled components, equipment installation, piping, controls and electrical connections for proper assembly, installation, and connection.
  - C. Visually inspect chiller for damage before starting. Repair or replace damaged components, including insulation. Do not start chiller until damage that is detrimental to operation has been corrected.
  - D. Prepare test and inspection startup reports.
  - E. Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting to suit Owner's requirements. Provide up to two, four-hour visits to site for this purpose.

### 3.7 WARRANTY PERIOD TESTING

- A. Within one month(s) of warranty period expiration, perform testing, analysis, and reporting indicated for each chiller.
- B. Eddy Current Testing:
  1. Solicit services of a third-party testing agency, specializing in such analysis, to perform testing of evaporator and condenser tubes, to ensure tube quality and longevity.
  2. Submit test report to Owner, including, as a minimum:
    - a. List of equipment used and equipment settings.
    - b. Test data reports and accompanying strip charts of calibrations.
    - c. Identify tubes with significant defects and typical indications.
    - d. Statistical summary of defect indications.
    - e. Recommendations concerning tube condition, tube replacement, tube removal for evaluation, and future frequency of testing.
    - f. Approval by an American Society for Nondestructive Testing, Level III eddy current technician.
- C. Oil Analysis:
  1. Take oil sample and solicit services of a third-party testing agency, specializing in such analysis, to perform oil analysis.
  2. Submit analysis results and recommendations to Owner.
- D. Refrigerant Analysis:
  1. Take refrigerant sample and solicit services of a third-party testing agency, specializing in such analysis, to perform refrigerant analysis.

2. Submit analysis results and recommendations to Owner.

E. Site Access and Scheduling:

1. Contact Owner to schedule testing at least 30 days in advance of testing.
2. Make mutually agreeable schedule adjustments to accommodate Owner's request for testing.
3. Review, with Owner, requirements for visitors in advance of testing.
4. Comply with Owner requirements for visitors while on-site.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain chillers.

1. Instructor shall be factory trained and certified.
2. For equipment utilizing HCFC-123: Provide not less than eight hours of training.
3. For equipment utilizing HFC-134a: Provide not less than 16 hours of training spread across consecutive days, not to exceed eight hours per day.
4. Train personnel in operation and maintenance and to obtain maximum efficiency in plant operation.
5. Provide instructional videos showing general operation and maintenance that are coordinated with operation and maintenance manuals.
6. Obtain Owner sign-off that training is complete.
7. Owner training shall be held at Project site.

3.9 MAINTNENACE SERVICE

A. Furnish quarterly inspection services for the chiller during the first year of operation, beginning from the Date of Substantial Completion.

B. Quarterly inspection services, each shall include a minimum of 4-hours of on-site services for each chiller with written reports submitted to the Owner for each inspection visit. The report shall record overall condition of chiller and documentation that the chiller is being maintained by the Owner in accordance with the manufacturer's written recommendations. Any problems identified shall be promptly reported to the Owner.

1. At a time determined by the Owner during the first year inspection service, the evaporator and condenser water tubes for the chiller shall be inspected and cleaned by the Owner. Based on minimum 14-day advance notice by the Owner for each chiller tube cleaning, the factory-authorized representative shall be on-site to inspect and record the chiller conditions.

2. Adjustable of float type refrigerant metering devices and thermal expansion valves shall be inspected and adjusted by the manufacturer at the end of the first year of operation to assure equivalent reliability and maintenance to a fixed orifice system.

END OF SECTION 236416

SECTION 236514.13 - OPEN-CIRCUIT, INDUCED-DRAFT, COUNTERFLOW COOLING TOWERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes factory-assembled, open-circuit, induced-draft, counterflow cooling towers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated capacities, pressure drop, fan performance data, rating at selected points indicated, and furnished specialties and accessories.
  - 2. Maximum flow rate.
  - 3. Minimum flow rate.
  - 4. Pressure required at cooling tower supply piping connections.
  - 5. Drift loss as percent of design flow rate.
  - 6. Sound:
    - a. Sound pressure levels for operation with fan off, fan at minimum speed, and design speed. If sound requirements are indicated at a specific distance, submit performance using same distance for comparative analysis.
  - 7. Fan airflow at design conditions, brake horsepower, and drive losses (indicated in horsepower and percent of brake horsepower).
  - 8. Fan motor electrical characteristics including, but not limited to, speed, voltage, phase, hertz, amperage, efficiency, and power factor at 100, 75, 50, and 25 percent of nameplate horsepower.
  - 9. Electrical power requirements for each cooling tower component requiring power.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Manufacturer's drawings of assembled cooling towers, control panels, sections, and elevations.
  - 2. Assembled unit dimensions.
  - 3. Diagram showing each separate piece requiring field assembly.

4. Shipped sub-assembly dimensions and weights for field assembly.
5. Assembled unit weight without water.
6. Operating weight and load distribution.
7. Unit vibration isolation.
8. Required clearances for maintenance and operation.
9. Sizes and dimensioned locations of piping and wiring connections.
10. Diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

### A. Coordination Drawings:

1. Drawings on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - a. Structural supports.
  - b. Piping roughing-in requirements.
  - c. Conduit and wiring roughing-in requirements for controls and electrical power, including spaces reserved for controls and electrical equipment.
  - d. Access requirements, including working clearances for controls and electrical equipment, and service clearances. Mark and label clearances.
2. Drawings showing plans, sections, and elevation views, drawn to scale of at least 1/4.
3. Each view to show screened background with the following:
  - a. Structural grids.
  - b. Adjacent walls, floors, and roofs.
  - c. Equipment and products of other trades that are located in vicinity of cooling towers and are part of final installation, such as, controls, power, lighting, fire-suppression systems, and plumbing systems.

B. Product Certificates: For certification required in "Quality Assurance" Article.

C. Field Test Reports: Include startup service reports.

D. Source quality-control reports.

E. Field quality-control reports.

F. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each cooling tower to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

B. Instructional Videos: Including those that are prerecorded and those that are recorded during training.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by CTI.
- B. CTI Certification: Cooling tower thermal performance according to CTI STD 201RS.
- C. FM Global: Approval and listing in the latest edition of FM Global's "Approval Guide."

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Coordinate requirements for multi-piece assembly for shipment. Limit the number of separate pieces for field installation to as few as possible.
- B. If factory assembly of multiple pieces is required for testing or other reasons, disassemble cooling tower into major assemblies as required by installation before packaging for shipment.
  - 1. Clearly label each separate package with a unique designation and include with assembly instructions for each complete cooling tower.
  - 2. Install seals on gear-drive assemblies to eliminate oil leakage during shipment if shipped with oil.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace the following components of cooling towers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period:
  - 1. All components of cooling tower.
  - 2. Fan assembly including fan, drive, and motor.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - 1. Delta Cooling Towers, Inc.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Cooling tower and support structure shall withstand the effects of loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
- B. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Vibration:

1. Rotating assemblies shall be dynamically balanced to achieve a balance level of "good" while complying with industry-standard requirements for cooling towers.
2. Critical speed shall be at least 115 percent of design speed.

2.3 DESIGN ARRANGEMENT

- A. Counterflow design with airflow from all sides and induced-draft, top-mounted axial fan and pressurized pipe distribution.

2.4 CASING AND FRAME

- A. Casing Material: HDPE with UV inhibitors.
- B. Frame Material: HDPE with UV inhibitors.
- C. Hardware: stainless steel.
- D. Joints and Seams: Sealed watertight.
- E. Welded Connections: Sealed watertight.

2.5 COLLECTION BASIN

- A. Field-Constructed Collection Basin: Configure tower without a factory-assembled collection basin for installation and operation with a field-constructed collection basin.
- B. Factory-Assembled Collection Basin:
1. Material: HDPE with UV inhibitors.
  2. Hardware: stainless steel.
  3. Joints and Seams: Sealed watertight.
  4. Welded Connections: Sealed watertight.
  5. Removable stainless-steel strainer with openings smaller than nozzle orifices.
  6. Overflow and drain connections.
  7. Makeup-water connection.
  8. Outlet Connection: Configured to mate to ASME B16.5, Class 150 flange.
  9. Removable equalization flume plate between adjacent cells of multiple-cell towers.
  10. Equalizer connection for field-installed equalizer piping configured to mate to ASME B16.5, Class 150 flange.

2.6 COLLECTION BASIN HEATER

- A. Electric Heater:
1. Stainless-Steel Electric Immersion Heaters: Installed in a threaded coupling on the side of the collection basin.

2. Heater Control Panel: Mounted on the side of each cooling tower cell.
3. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X.
4. Magnetic contactors controlled by a temperature sensor/controller to maintain collection basin water-temperature set point. Water-level probe shall monitor cooling tower water level and de-energize the heater when the water reaches low-level set point.
5. Control-circuit transformer with primary and secondary side fuses.
6. Terminal blocks with numbered and color-coded wiring to match wiring diagram.
7. Single-point, field-power connection to a fused disconnect switch and heater branch circuiting complying with NFPA 70.
8. Factory Wiring Method: Metal raceway for factory-installed wiring outside of enclosures, except connections to each electric basin heater shall be liquidtight conduit.
  - a. Raceway shall be corrosion-resistant stainless steel.

## 2.7 PRESSURIZED DISTRIBUTION NETWORK

- A. Main header and lateral branch piping designed for even distribution over fill throughout the entire flow range without the need for balancing valves and for connecting individual, easily removable, non-clogging spray nozzles.
- B. Pipe Material: Schedule 40 PVC.
- C. Spray Nozzle Material: polypropylene.
- D. Piping Supports: Corrosion-resistant hangers and supports to resist movement during operation and shipment.

## 2.8 FILL

- A. Materials: PVC, with maximum flame-spread index of 25 according to ASTM E 84.
- B. Minimum Thickness: 10 mils, before forming.
- C. Fabrication: Fill-type sheets, fabricated, formed, and bonded together after forming into removable assemblies that are factory installed by manufacturer.
- D. Fill Material Operating Temperature: Suitable for entering-water temperatures up through 140 deg F.
- E. Hardware: stainless steel.

## 2.9 DRIFT ELIMINATORS

- A. Material: FRP or PVC; with maximum flame-spread index of 25 according to ASTM E 84.
- B. UV Treatment: Inhibitors to protect against damage caused by UV radiation.
- C. Configuration: Multipass, designed and tested to reduce water carryover to 0.001 percent of design flow rate indicated.

- D. Hardware: stainless steel.

## 2.10 AIR INLET

- A. Air-Intake Louvers:

1. Material: Matching casing.
2. UV Treatment: Inhibitors to protect against damage caused by UV radiation.
3. Multiple, easily removable sections arranged to uniformly direct air into cooling tower, to minimize air resistance, to block direct sunlight, and to prevent water from splashing out of tower during all modes of operation including operation with fans off.

- B. Removable Air-Intake Screens:

1. Stainless-steel wire mesh with openings of size sufficient to not restrict airflow or impact performance.
2. Segmented into manageable individual sections arranged to facilitate independent removal of each section without disturbing adjoining sections.

- C. Hardware: stainless steel.

## 2.11 FAN AND DRIVE ASSEMBLY

- A. Axial Fan: Balanced at the factory.

1. Blade Material: FRP.
2. Hub Material: Aluminum.
3. Blade Pitch: Field adjustable.
4. Fan Shaft: Stainless steel.
5. Fan Shaft Bearings: Self-aligning ball or roller bearings with moisture-proof seals and premium, moisture-resistant grease suitable for temperatures between minus 20 and plus 300 deg F. Bearings designed for an L-10 life of 100,000 hours.
6. Bearings Grease Fittings: Extended lubrication lines to an easily accessible location.

- B. Direct Drive: Fan hub directly connected, and properly secured, to motor shaft.

- C. Fan Motor:

1. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.
2. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, as required to comply with capacity and torque characteristics; medium induction motor.
3. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.
4. Motor Enclosure: Totally enclosed air-over (TEAO).
5. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.
6. Energy Efficiency: NEMA Premium Efficient.
7. Service Factor: 1.15.
8. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

9. Insulation: Class F.
10. Variable-Speed Motors: Inverter-duty rated per NEMA MG 1, Section IV, "Performance Standard Applying to All Machines," Part 31, "Definite-Purpose, Inverter-Fed, Polyphase Motors."
11. Motor Location: Mounted outside of cooling tower casing and cooling tower discharge airstream.
12. Severe-Duty Rating:
  - a. Rotor and stator protected with corrosion-inhibiting epoxy resin.
  - b. Double-shielded, vacuum-degassed bearings lubricated with premium, moisture-resistant grease suitable for temperatures between minus 20 and plus 300 deg F.
  - c. Internal Heater: Automatically energized when motor is de-energized.
  - d. Complying with IEEE 841.
13. Motor Base: Adjustable, or other suitable belt-tensioning provisions.
14. Motor Shaft Grounding: Motors shall be controlled through variable-frequency controllers with shaft grounding system to protect motor bearings from induced voltage. Drag on motor shaft due to shaft ground system shall be less than 0.5 percent of motor nameplate horsepower.

D. Hardware: stainless steel.

## 2.12 AIR DISCHARGE

A. Low-Profile Fan Discharge Stack:

1. Manufacturer's standard low-profile design.
2. Material: Material to match casing.
3. Stack Termination: Wire-mesh, stainless-steel screens; segmented into multiple removable pie sections and complying with OSHA regulations.

B. Hardware: stainless steel.

## 2.13 ELECTRICAL POWER

A. Factory Install: A disconnect switch for each fan motor.

1. Locate in a convenient and field-accessible location within sight of motor.
2. Installation shall comply with NFPA 70.
3. Wire, Conduit, and Enclosures:
  - a. Minimum Conduit Size: 0.75 inch.
  - b. Materials: Corrosion resistant and constructed of 300L series stainless steel or PVC coated steel.
  - c. Motor Termination: Liquid tight conduit, not to exceed 36 inches long.
  - d. Supports: Support conduits, boxes, and enclosures using corrosion-resistant fastening hardware constructed of stainless steel.
  - e. Wire:

- 1) Copper, rated for 600-V, solid wire for size No. 10 AWG and smaller and stranded wire for larger sizes.
- 2) Minimum Wire Size: No. 12 AWG.
- 3) Each circuit shall have a ground wire.
- 4) Install wire in conduit.

f. Boxes, Condulets, and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 4.

B. Disconnect Switches:

1. Specification Grade; "Heavy Duty Type"; "quick-make," "quick-break" construction.
2. Three pole, fused.
3. 600-V rated.
4. Minimum SCCR: As required by electrical power distribution system, but not less than 42,000 A.
5. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4.
6. Operating handle shall be of box-mounted type that directly drives switch mechanism.
7. Disconnect switch shall use a flange-operated visible blade that is close coupled to a vertical-lift-type handle that achieves a positive visible indication of disconnect with cover open or closed.
8. Disconnect switch shall have a defeatable, front-accessible, mechanical interlock to prevent opening of cover when switch is in "ON" position, and to prevent turning switch "ON" when the door is open.
9. Include a solid neutral as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Disconnect switch shall have a ground lug for ground wire termination.
11. Operating handle shall be lockable in open position.
12. Horsepower rated.
13. Feed through or double lugged.

## 2.14 CONTROLS

A. Vibration Switch: For each fan drive.

1. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4.
2. Vibration Detection: Sensor with a field-adjustable, acceleration-sensitivity set point in a range of 0 to 1 g and frequency range of 0 to 3000 cycles per minute. Cooling tower manufacturer shall recommend switch set point for proper operation and protection.
3. Switch shall have manual-reset button hardwired connection to fan motor electrical circuit.
4. Switch shall have field connection to a control system hardwired connection to fan motor electrical circuit.
5. Switch shall, on sensing excessive vibration, signal an alarm for connection to control system and shut down the fan.

## 2.15 SERVICE ACCESS

A. Doors:

1. Large enough for personnel to access cooling tower internal components.

- B. External Ladders with Safety Cages: Aluminum, galvanized or stainless-steel fixed ladders with ladder extensions to access external platforms and top of cooling tower from adjacent grade without the need for portable ladders. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.27.
- C. Handrails: Aluminum, galvanized or stainless-steel complete with knee rail and toe board, around top of cooling tower to safeguard personnel while accessing components located on top of the cooling tower. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.23.

## 2.16 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Performance Test: Factory test and certify cooling tower performance according to CTI STD 201RS, "Standard for the Certification of Water-Cooling Tower Thermal Performance."
  - 1. Prepare test report indicating test procedures, instrumentation, test conditions, and results. Submit copy of results within one week of test date.
- B. Factory Functional Tests:
  - 1. Test collection and distribution basins after assembly, and prove free of leaks.
  - 2. Test factory-installed electric/electronic water-level controls for proper operation.
  - 3. Test factory-installed electric basin heaters for proper operation.
  - 4. Test factory-installed fan and drive assemblies for proper operation.
  - 5. Test access doors to ensure smooth operation and proper fit.
  - 6. Submit report documenting tests performed and results within one week of test date.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine cooling towers before installation. Reject cooling towers that are damaged.
- B. Before cooling tower installation, examine roughing-in for tower support, anchor-bolt sizes and locations, piping, controls, and electrical connections to verify actual locations, sizes, and other conditions affecting cooling tower performance, maintenance, and operation.
  - 1. Cooling tower locations indicated on Drawings are approximate. Determine exact locations before roughing-in for piping, controls, and electrical connections.
  - 2. Verify sizes, locations, and anchoring attachments of structural-steel support structures.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install cooling towers on support structure.
- B. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

- C. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- D. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances for service and maintenance.
- E. Maintain clearances required by governing code.
- F. Loose Components: Install components, devices, and accessories furnished by manufacturer, with cooling tower, that are not factory mounted.
  - 1. Loose components shall be installed by Contractor under supervision of manufacturer's factory-trained service personnel.

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to cooling towers, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Install flexible pipe connectors at pipe connections of cooling towers mounted on vibration isolators.
- D. Install drain piping with valve at cooling tower drain connections and at low points in piping.
- E. Connect cooling tower overflows and drains, and piping drains, to sanitary sewage system.
- F. Makeup-Water Piping:
  - 1. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
  - 2. Connect to makeup-water connections with shutoff valve, plugged tee with pressure gage, flow meter, and drain connection with valve and union.
- G. Supply and Return Piping:
  - 1. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
  - 2. Connect to entering cooling tower connections with shutoff valve, strainer, balancing valve, thermometer, plugged tee with pressure gage, flow meter, and drain connection with valve.
  - 3. Connect to leaving cooling tower connection with shutoff valve thermometer, plugged tee with full port ball valve for portable field instruments, and drain connection with valve.
  - 4. Make connections to cooling tower with a flange.
- H. Equalizer Piping:
  - 1. Piping requirements to match supply and return piping.
  - 2. Connect an equalizer pipe, full size of cooling tower connection, between tower cells.
  - 3. Connect to cooling tower with shutoff valve and drain connection with valve.
  - 4. Make connections to cooling tower with a flange.

### 3.4 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect field electrical power source to each separate electrical device requiring field electrical power. Coordinate termination point and connection type with Installer.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.
- C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" for grounding connections.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection. Nameplate shall be laminated phenolic layers of black with engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high. Locate nameplate where easily visible.

### 3.5 CONTROLS CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring between cooling towers and other equipment to interlock operation as required to achieve a complete and functioning system.
- C. Connect control wiring between cooling tower control interface and control system for HVAC for remote monitoring and control of cooling towers. Comply with requirements in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
- D. Install label at each termination indicating control equipment designation serving cooling tower and the I/O point designation for each control connection. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for labeling and identifying products and installations.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- E. Tests and Inspections: Comply with ASME PTC 23.
- F. Cooling towers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
- B. Inspect field-assembled components, equipment installation, and piping; controls; and electrical connections for proper assemblies, installations, and connections.
- C. Obtain performance data from manufacturer.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and perform the following:
    - a. Clean entire unit including basins.
    - b. Verify that accessories are properly installed.
    - c. Verify clearances for airflow and for cooling tower servicing.
    - d. Check for vibration isolation and structural support.
    - e. Lubricate bearings.
    - f. Verify fan rotation for correct direction and for vibration or binding and correct problems.
    - g. Operate variable-speed fans through entire operating range and check for harmonic vibration imbalance. Set motor controller to skip speeds resulting in abnormal vibration.
    - h. Check vibration switch setting. Verify operation.
    - i. Verify water level in tower basin. Fill to proper startup level. Check makeup-water-level control and valve.
    - j. Verify operation of basin heater and control.
    - k. Verify that cooling tower air discharge is not recirculating air into tower or HVAC air intakes. Recommend corrective action.
    - l. Replace defective and malfunctioning units.
- D. Start cooling tower and associated water pumps. Follow manufacturer's written starting procedures.
- E. Prepare a written startup report that records the results of tests and inspections.

### 3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Set and balance water flow to each tower inlet.
- B. Adjust water-level control for proper operating level.
- C. Adjust basin heater control for proper operating set point.

### 3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain cooling towers.
  - 1. Video record the training sessions.
  - 2. Instructor shall be factory trained and certified.

3. Perform not less than 8 hours of training.
4. Train personnel in operation and maintenance and to obtain maximum efficiency in plant operation.
5. Perform instructional videos showing general operation and maintenance that are coordinated with operation and maintenance manuals.
6. Obtain Owner sign-off that training is complete.
7. Owner training shall be held at Project site.

END OF SECTION 236514.13

## SECTION 237343.16 - OUTDOOR, SEMI-CUSTOM AIR-HANDLING UNITS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulated, double-wall-casing, outdoor, semi-custom air-handling units that are factory assembled using multiple section components.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each air-handling unit.
  - 1. Unit dimensions and weight.
  - 2. Cabinet material, metal thickness, finishes, insulation, and accessories.
  - 3. Fans:
    - a. Certified fan-performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
    - b. Certified fan-sound power ratings.
    - c. Fan construction and accessories.
    - d. Motor ratings, electrical characteristics, and motor accessories.
  - 4. Certified coil-performance ratings with system operating conditions indicated.
  - 5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
  - 6. Filters with performance characteristics.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For vibration isolation indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
  - 1. Include design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Roof layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements.

2. Roof openings.
3. Roof curbs and flashing.
4. Support location, type, and weight.
5. Field measurements.

B. Source quality-control reports:

C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air-handling units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Filters: One set(s) for each air-handling unit.
2. Gaskets: One set(s) for each access door.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of structural-steel support members, if any, with actual equipment provided.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of air-handling units and components.
- C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- E. Structural Performance:

1. Casing Panels: Self-supporting and capable of withstanding positive/negative 8-inch wg internal static pressure, without exceeding a midpoint deflection of 0.0042 inch/inch of panel span.
2. Floor and Roof Panels: Self-supporting and capable of withstanding 300-lb static load at midspan, without exceeding a midpoint deflection of 0.0042 inch/inch.
3. Roof Panels: Self-supporting and capable of withstanding a static snow load of 30 lb/sq. ft., without exceeding a midpoint deflection of 0.0042 inch/inch.

F. Casing Leakage Performance: ASHRAE 111, Class 6 leakage or better at plus or minus 8-inch wg.

## 2.2 OUTDOOR, SEMI-CUSTOM AIR-HANDLING UNIT MANUFACTURERS

A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

## 2.3 UNIT CASINGS

A. Frame: Modular and providing overall structural integrity without reliance on casing panels for structural support.

B. Base Rail:

1. Material: Galvanized steel.
2. Height: 6 inches.

C. Casing Joints: Hermetically sealed at each corner and around entire perimeter.

D. Outside Casing Wall:

1. Material: Galvanized steel, minimum 18 gauge thick.
2. Material: Aluminum, minimum 16 gauge thick.
3. Factory Finish: Provide manufacturer's standard finish.

E. Inside Casing Wall:

1. Material: Galvanized steel, solid, minimum 18 gauge thick.
2. Material: Aluminum, solid, minimum 16 gauge thick.
3. Antimicrobial Coating: Applied during the manufacturing process. EPA approved.

F. Floor Plate:

1. Material: Galvanized steel, treadplate, minimum 18 gauge thick.
2. Material: Aluminum, treadplate, minimum 16 gauge thick.
3. Antimicrobial Coating: Applied during the manufacturing process. EPA approved.

G. Roof: Cross-broken and pitched with "C" caps over joints to provide watertight seal.

H. Piping Vestibule: Insulated with same insulation and thickness as casing, 18 inches deep by full width of piping connections.

- I. Static-Pressure Classifications:
  - 1. For Unit Sections Upstream of Fans: Minus 6-inch wg.
  - 2. For Unit Sections Downstream and Including Fans: 6-inch wg.
  
- J. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
  
- K. Casing Insulation:
  - 1. Materials: injected polyurethane foam insulation.
  - 2. Casing Panel R-Value: Minimum R-11.
  - 3. Insulation Thickness: 3 inches.
  - 4. Thermal Break: Provide continuity of insulation with no through-casing metal in casing walls, floors, or roofs of air-handling unit.
  
- L. Panels, Doors, and Windows:
  - 1. Panels:
    - a. Fabrication: Formed and reinforced, double-wall and insulated panels of same materials and thicknesses as casing.
    - b. Fasteners: Two or more camlock type for panel lift-out operation. Arrangement shall allow panels to be opened against airflow
    - c. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
    - d. Size: Large enough to allow unobstructed access for inspection and maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components. At least 18 inches wide by full height of unit casing up to a maximum height of 72 inches.
  
  - 2. Doors:
    - a. Fabrication: Formed and reinforced, double-wall and insulated panels of same materials and thicknesses as casing.
    - b. Hinges: A minimum of two ball-bearing hinges or stainless-steel piano hinge and two wedge-lever latches, operable from inside and outside. Arrange doors to be opened against airflow. Provide safety latch retainers on doors so that doors do not open uncontrollably.
    - c. Gasket: Neoprene, applied around entire perimeters of panel frames.
    - d. Size: Large enough to allow for unobstructed access for inspection and maintenance of air-handling unit's internal components. At least 18 inches wide by full height of unit casing up to a maximum height of 72 inches.
  
  - 3. Windows:
    - a. Construction: Fabricate windows in access panels and doors of double-glazed, safety glass with an airspace between panes and sealed with interior and exterior rubber seals.
    - b. Size: Minimum 6 inches, square or round.
  
  - 4. Locations and Applications:

- a. Fan Section: Doors, with windows.
  - b. Coil Section: Panels.
  - c. Access Section: Doors.
  - d. Access Sections Immediately Upstream and Downstream of Coil Sections: Doors.
  - e. Damper Section: Doors.
  - f. Filter Section: Doors large enough to allow periodic removal and installation of filters.
  - g. Access Sections Immediately Upstream and Downstream of Filter Sections: Doors.
  - h. Mixing Section: Doors.
5. Service Lights: LED vaporproof luminaire with individual switched junction box located outside, adjacent to each access door and panel.
- a. Locations: Each section accessed with door or panel.
6. Convenience Outlets: One 20-A duplex GFCI receptacle per location with junction box located on outside casing wall.
- a. Locations: Fan section.

M. Condensate Drain Pans:

1. Construction:
  - a. Double-wall, stainless-steel sheet with space between walls filled with foam insulation and moisture-tight seal.
2. Drain Connection:
  - a. Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.
  - b. Minimum Connection Size: NPS 2.
3. Slope: Minimum 0.125-in./ft. slope, to comply with ASHRAE 62.1, in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and from humidifiers and to direct water toward drain connection.
4. Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face for distance to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
5. Width: Entire width of water producing device.
6. Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
7. Formed sections.
8. Pan-Top Surface Coating for Galvanized-Steel Drain Pans: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
9. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

## 2.4 FAN, DRIVE, AND MOTOR SECTION

- A. Fan and Drive Assemblies: Statically and dynamically balanced and designed for continuous operation at maximum-rated fan speed and motor horsepower.
  - 1. Shafts: With field-adjustable alignment.
    - a. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with a protective coating of lubricating oil.
    - b. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.
- B. Plenum Fan Arrays: Contained as defined in AHRI 430. Steel or aluminum frame with inlet cone and structural framing around each fan built into an array of multiple fans. Provide backdraft dampers at each fan to prevent short circuiting of flow if one fan is not operating.
- C. Fan Shaft Bearings:
  - 1. Grease-Lubricated Bearings: Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing and an L-50 rated life of 200,000.
- D. Internal Vibration Isolation: Fans shall be factory mounted with manufacturer's standard vibration isolation mounting devices having a minimum static deflection of 1 inch.
- E. Motor: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 1. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
  - 2. NEMA Premium Efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
  - 3. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
  - 4. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
  - 5. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on exterior of unit.
    - a. Listed and labeled disconnects and components, complying with applicable provisions of NFPA 70.
    - b. Non-fused, NEMA 4.
- F. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Comply with Section 262923 "Variable-Frequency Motor Controllers."

## 2.5 COIL SECTION

- A. General Requirements for Coil Section:
  - 1. Comply with AHRI 410.
  - 2. Fabricate coil section to allow removal and replacement of coil for maintenance and to allow in-place access for service and maintenance of coil(s).

3. Coils shall not act as structural component of unit.

B. Preheat Coils:

1. Hot-Water Coils; Continuous circuit.
  - a. Piping Connections: Threaded, same end of coil.
  - b. Tube Material: Copper.
  - c. Fin Type: Plate.
  - d. Fin Material: Aluminum.
  - e. Fin and Tube Joint: Mechanical bond.
  - f. Headers:
    - 1) Cast iron with drain and air vent tapings.
    - 2) Seamless copper tube with brazed joints, prime coated.
  - g. Frames: Channel frame, **[0.052-inch-thick, galvanized steel] [0.064-inch-thick, galvanized steel] [0.079-inch-thick, galvanized steel] [0.0625-inch-thick, galvanized steel] [0.0625-inch-thick, stainless steel] <Insert thickness> <Insert material>**.
  - h. Coil Working-Pressure Ratings: 200 psig, 325 deg F.
  - i. Coating: None.

C. Cooling Coils:

1. Chilled-Water Coil: Continuous circuit.
  - a. Piping Connections: Threaded, same end of coil.
  - b. Tube Material: Copper.
  - c. Fin Material: Aluminum.
  - d. Fin and Tube Joint: Mechanical bond.
  - e. Headers:
    - 1) Cast iron with drain and air vent tapings.
    - 2) Seamless copper tube with brazed joints, prime coated.
  - f. Frames: Channel frame, **[0.052-inch-thick, galvanized steel] [0.064-inch-thick, galvanized steel] [0.079-inch-thick, galvanized steel] [0.0625-inch-thick, galvanized steel] [0.0625-inch-thick, stainless steel]**.
  - g. Coatings: None.
  - h. Working-Pressure Ratings: 200 psig, 325 deg F.

## 2.6 AIR FILTRATION SECTION

A. Panel Filters:

1. Description: Pleated factory-fabricated, self-supported, disposable air filters with holding frames.
2. Filter Unit Class: UL 900.
3. Media: Interlaced glass, synthetic, or cotton fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive.

4. Filter-Media Frame: Beverage board with perforated metal retainer, or metal grid, on outlet side.

B. Cartridge Filters:

1. Description: Factory-fabricated, adhesive-coated disposable, packaged air filters with media perpendicular to airflow, and with holding frames.
2. Filter Unit Class: UL 900.
3. Media: Fibrous material, coated with antimicrobial agent, constructed so individual pleats are maintained in pleated form under rater-airflow conditions by corrugated aluminum separators.
4. Filter Media Frame: Galvanized steel.

C. Front- or Back-Access Filter Mounting Frames:

1. Particulate Air Filter Frames: Galvanized-steel framing members with access for filter servicing, cut to size and prepunched for assembly into modules. Vertically support filters to prevent deflection of horizontal members without interfering with either filter installation or operation.
  - a. Prefilters: Incorporate a separate 2-inch- thick track with spring clips, with same access as primary filter.
  - b. Sealing: Full periphery foam gaskets.

D. Side-Access Filter Mounting Frames:

1. Particulate Air Filter Frames: Match inner casing and outer casing material, and insulation thickness. Galvanized steel track.
  - a. Prefilters: Incorporate an integral 2-inch- thick track with same access as primary filter.
  - b. Sealing: Incorporate positive-sealing device to ensure seal between gasketed material on channels to seal top and bottom of filter cartridge frames to prevent bypass of unfiltered air.

## 2.7 DAMPERS

- A. General Requirements for Dampers: Leakage rate, according to AMCA 500, "Laboratory Methods for Testing Dampers for Rating," shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and 8 cfm/sq. ft. at 4-inch wg, leakage Class 1 pressure differential.
- B. Damper Operators: Comply with requirements in Section 230923.12 "Control Dampers."
- C. Electronic Damper Operators:
  1. Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
  2. Electronic damper position indicator shall have visual scale indicating percent of travel and 2- to 10-V dc, feedback signal.
  3. Operator Motors:

- a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - b. Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.
  - c. Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.
4. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.
  5. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.
  6. Size dampers for running torque calculated as follows:
    - a. Parallel-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 7 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
    - b. Dampers with 2- to 3-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 1000 to 2500 fpm: Increase running torque by 1.5.
    - c. Dampers with 3- to 4-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 2500 to 3000 fpm: Increase running torque by 2.0.
  7. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
  8. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
  9. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism with external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
  10. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 10 VA at 24 V ac or 8 W at 24 V dc.
  11. Proportional Signal: 2 to 10 V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.
  12. Temperature Rating: Minus 22 to plus 122 deg F.
  13. Run Time: 60 seconds.
- D. Outdoor- and Return-Air Dampers: Low-leakage, double-skin, airfoil-blade, galvanized-steel dampers with compressible jamb seals and extruded-vinyl blade edge seals in opposed-blade arrangement with zinc-plated steel operating rods rotating in sintered bronze or nylon bearings mounted in a single galvanized-steel frame, and with operating rods connected with a common linkage. Leakage rate shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and 8 cfm/sq. ft. at 4-inch wg, leakage Class 1.

## 2.8 ROOF CURBS

1. Manufactures:
  - a. Hushcore Ultra System Acoustic Curb
- B. Materials: Galvanized steel with corrosion-resistant coating, watertight gaskets, and factory-installed wood nailer; complying with NRCA standards.
  1. Curb Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.

- a. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I or II.
  2. Thickness: 2 inches
  3. Application: Factory applied with adhesive and mechanical fasteners to the internal surface of curb.
    - a. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
    - b. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel, suitable for adhesive attachment, mechanical attachment, or welding attachment to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in cabinet.
    - c. Liner materials applied in this location shall have airstream surface coated with a temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric depending on service air velocity.
    - d. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
  4. Sound Attenuators: Supply and Return plenums.
  5. Panelized acoustical solid bottom rated at minimum STC-41.
  6. Standalone service platform 39-inches wide with integrated access ladder and guard rails along access side of air handling unit.
- C. Curb Dimensions: Height of 48 inches.

## 2.9 INTAKE AND RELIEF AIR OPENINGS

- A. Provide hood, including moisture eliminator, over all unit intake and relief openings. Match material and finish of casing exterior.

## 2.10 MATERIALS

- A. Steel:
  1. ASTM A 36/A 36M for carbon structural steel.
  2. ASTM A 568/A 568M for steel sheet.
- B. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A 653/A 653M.
- C. Aluminum: ASTM B 209.
- D. Corrosion-Resistant Coating: Coat with a corrosion-resistant coating capable of withstanding a 3000-hour salt-spray test according to ASTM B 117.
  1. Standards:
    - a. ASTM B 117 for salt spray.
    - b. ASTM D 2794 for minimum impact resistance of 100 in-lb.
    - c. ASTM B 3359 for cross-hatch adhesion of 5B.
  2. Thickness: 1 mil.
  3. Gloss: Minimum gloss of 60 on a 60-degree meter.

## 2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. AHRI 430 Certification: Air-handling units and their components shall be factory tested according to AHRI 430 and shall be listed and labeled by AHRI.
- B. AMCA 301 or AHRI 260: Air-handling unit fan sound ratings shall comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data," or AHRI 260, "Sound Rating of Ducted Air Moving and Conditioning Equipment."
- C. Fan Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Fans shall bear AMCA-certified sound ratings seal.
- D. Fan Performance Rating: Factory test fan performance for airflow, pressure, power, air density, rotation speed, and efficiency. Rate performance according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating."
- E. Water Coils: Factory tested to 300 psig according to AHRI 410 and ASHRAE 33.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine casing insulation materials and filter media before air-handling unit installation. Reject insulation materials and filter media that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for steam, hydronic, and condensate drainage piping systems and electrical services to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
- B. Roof Curb: Install on roof structure level and secure, according to NRCA's "NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems." Install units on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories." Secure units to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing or concrete base with anchor bolts.
- C. Unit Support: Install unit level on structural curbs. Coordinate wall penetrations and flashing with wall construction. Secure units to structural support with anchor bolts.
  - 1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."

- D. Arrange installation of units to provide access space around air-handling units for service and maintenance.
- E. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing, with new, clean filters.
- F. Install filter-gauge, static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters. Mount filter gauges on outside of filter housing or filter plenum in accessible position. Provide filter gauges on filter banks, installed with separate static-pressure taps upstream and downstream of filters.
- G. Connect duct to air-handling units with flexible connections. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

### 3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to air-handling unit, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to air-handling units mounted on vibration isolators with flexible connectors.
- D. Connect condensate drain pans using NPS 2, ASTM B 88, Type K copper tubing. Construct deep trap at connection to drain pan and install cleanouts at changes in direction.
- E. Hot- and Chilled-Water Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Install shutoff valve and union or flange at each coil supply connection. Install balancing valve and union or flange at each coil return connection.

### 3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
- D. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
  - 1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 2. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

### 3.5 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

- A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.
- B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  - 1. Leak Test: After installation, fill water and steam coils with water, and test coils and connections for leaks.
  - 2. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Air-handling unit or components will be considered defective if unit or components do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
  - 3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to piping, ducts, and electrical systems are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, controllers, and switches.
  - 4. Verify proper motor rotation direction, free fan wheel rotation, and smooth bearing operations.
  - 5. Verify that bearings and other moving parts are lubricated with factory-recommended lubricants.
  - 6. Verify that outdoor- and return-air mixing dampers open and close, and maintain minimum outdoor-air setting.
  - 7. Comb coil fins for parallel orientation.
  - 8. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed for electric coils.
  - 9. Install new, clean filters.
  - 10. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected duct systems are in fully open position.

B. Starting procedures for air-handling units include the following:

1. Energize motor; verify proper operation of motor, drive system, and fan wheel. Adjust fan to indicated rpm.
2. Measure and record motor electrical values for voltage and amperage.
3. Manually operate dampers from fully closed to fully open position and record fan performance.

3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for air-handling system testing, adjusting, and balancing.

3.9 CLEANING

- A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing air-handling unit and air-distribution systems and after completing startup service, clean air-handling units internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust. Clean fan wheels, cabinets, dampers, coils, and filter housings, and install new, clean filters.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air-handling units.

END OF SECTION 237343.16

## SECTION 238219 - FAN COIL UNITS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Ducted fan coil units and accessories.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of fan coil unit indicated.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Suspended ceiling components.
  - 2. Structural members to which fan coil units will be attached.
  - 3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
  - 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  - 5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.

- b. Air outlets and inlets.
  - c. Speakers.
  - d. Sprinklers.
  - e. Access panels.
6. Perimeter moldings.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fan coil units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
- a. Maintenance schedules and repair part lists for motors, coils, integral controls, and filters.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Fan Coil Unit Filters: Furnish one (1) spare filter for each filter installed.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 70.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- C. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

#### 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of fan coil units and suspension system components with other construction that penetrates or is supported by ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression-system components, and partition assemblies.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Factory-packaged and -tested units rated according to AHRI 440, ASHRAE 33, and UL 1995.

### 2.2 DUCTED FAN COIL UNITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
  - 2. Daikin Applied.
  - 3. Dunham-Bush.
  - 4. ENVIRO-TEC; by Johnson Controls, Inc.
  - 5. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - 6. Titus.
  - 7. Trane Inc.
- B. Fan Coil Unit Configurations: Row split.
  - 1. Number of Heating Coils: One with two-pipe system.
  - 2. Number of Cooling Coils: One with four-pipe system.
- C. Coil Section Insulation: 1-inch- thick, foil-faced glass fiber complying with ASTM C 1071 and attached with adhesive complying with ASTM C 916.
  - 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Insulation and adhesive shall have a combined maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency.
  - 2. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- D. Coil Section Insulation: Insulate coil section according to Section 230616 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."
  - 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Insulation and adhesive shall have a combined maximum flame-spread index of 25 and smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency.
  - 2. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- E. Main and Auxiliary Drain Pans: Stainless steel. Fabricate pans and drain connections to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
- F. Chassis: Galvanized steel where exposed to moisture, with baked-enamel finish and removable access panel.

- G. Cabinets: Steel with baked-enamel finish in manufacturer's standard paint color.
- H. Filters: Minimum arrestance and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2 and all addendums.
  - 1. Glass Fiber Treated with Adhesive: 80 percent arrestance and MERV 5.
- I. Hydronic Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch, rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F. Include manual air vent and drain.
- J. Direct-Driven Fans: Double width, forward curved, centrifugal; with permanently lubricated, multispeed motor resiliently mounted in the fan inlet. Aluminum or painted-steel wheels, and painted-steel or galvanized-steel fan scrolls.
  - 1. Motors: Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
  - 2. Motors: Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
- K. Basic Unit Controls:
  - 1. Control voltage transformer.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, to receive fan coil units for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping and electrical connections to verify actual locations before fan coil unit installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fan coil units level and plumb.
- B. Install fan coil units to comply with NFPA 90A.
- C. Install new filters in each fan coil unit within two weeks after Substantial Completion.

#### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Specific connection requirements are as follows:

1. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
2. Connect piping to fan coil unit factory hydronic piping package. Install piping package if shipped loose.
3. Connect condensate drain to indirect waste.
  - a. Install condensate trap of adequate depth to seal against fan pressure. Install cleanouts in piping at changes of direction.
- B. Connect supply-air and return-air ducts to fan coil units with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories." Comply with safety requirements in UL 1995 for duct connections.
- C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

#### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
  1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  2. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- B. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

#### 3.5 ADJUSTING

#### 3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain fan coil units.

END OF SECTION 238219

## SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Copper building wire rated 600 V or less.
2. Aluminum building wire rated 600 V or less.
3. Metal-clad cable, Type MC, rated 600 V or less.
4. Fire-alarm wire and cable.
5. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables" for control systems communications cables and Classes 1, 2, and 3 control cables.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RoHS: Restriction of Hazardous Substances.
- B. VFC: Variable-frequency controller.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicate type, use, location, and termination locations.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer's authorized service representative.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  1. Alpha Wire Company.
  2. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
  3. Southwire Company.
- C. Standards:
  1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
  2. RoHS compliant.
  3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.
- E. Conductor Insulation:
  1. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
  2. Type THW and Type THW-2: Comply with NEMA WC-70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 83.
  3. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

### 2.2 ALUMINUM BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn aluminum current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. Alpha Wire Company.
  2. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
  3. Southwire Company.
- C. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

D. Conductors: Aluminum, complying with ASTM B 800 and ASTM B 801.

E. Conductor Insulation:

1. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
2. Type THW and Type THW-2: Comply with NEMA WC-70/ICEA S-95-658 and UL 83.
3. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

### 2.3 METAL-CLAD CABLE, TYPE MC

A. Description: A factory assembly of one or more current-carrying insulated conductors in an overall metallic sheath.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Alpha Wire Company.
2. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
3. Southwire Company.

C. Standards:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. Comply with UL 1569.
3. RoHS compliant.
4. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

D. Circuits:

1. Single circuit and multicircuit with color-coded conductors.
2. Power-Limited Fire-Alarm Circuits: Comply with UL 1424.

E. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.

F. Ground Conductor Insulated.

G. Conductor Insulation:

1. Type TFN/THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

H. Armor: Steel interlocked.

## 2.4 FIRE-ALARM WIRE AND CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Allied Wire & Cable Inc.
  2. Draka Cableteq USA; a Prysmian Group company.
  3. Superior Essex Inc.
- B. General Wire and Cable Requirements: NRTL listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, Article 760.
- C. Signaling Line Circuits: Twisted, shielded pair, not less than No. 18 AWG or size as recommended by system manufacturer.
1. Circuit Integrity Cable: Twisted shielded pair, NFPA 70, Article 760, Classification CI, for power-limited fire-alarm signal service Type FPL. NRTL listed and labeled as complying with UL 1424 and UL 2196 for a two-hour rating.

## 2.5 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. 3M Electrical Products.
  2. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
  3. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
- C. Jacketed Cable Connectors: For steel and aluminum jacketed cables, zinc die-cast with set screws, designed to connect conductors specified in this Section.
- D. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.
1. Material: Copper.
  2. Type: Two hole with long barrels.
  3. Termination: Compression.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper for feeders smaller than No. 4 AWG; copper or aluminum for feeders No. 4 AWG and larger. Conductors shall be solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 10 AWG and larger.
- C. VFC Output Circuits Cable: Extra-flexible stranded for all sizes.
- D. Power-Limited Fire Alarm and Control: Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller.

#### 3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- D. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- E. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway, or Metal-clad cable, Type MC.
- F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- G. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.
- H. VFC Output Circuits: Type XHHW-2 in metal conduit.

#### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- G. Complete cable tray systems installation according to Section 260536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems" prior to installing conductors and cables.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF FIRE-ALARM WIRING

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NFPA 72.
- B. Wiring Method: Install wiring in metal pathway according to Section 270528.29 "Hangers and Supports for Communications Systems."
  - 1. Install plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings.
  - 2. Fire-alarm circuits and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system shall be installed in a dedicated pathway system. This system shall not be used for any other wire or cable.
- C. Wiring Method:
  - 1. Cables and pathways used for fire-alarm circuits, and equipment control wiring associated with fire-alarm system, may not contain any other wire or cable.
  - 2. Fire-Rated Cables: Use of two-hour, fire-rated fire-alarm cables, NFPA 70, Types MI and CI, is not permitted.
  - 3. Signaling Line Circuits: Power-limited fire-alarm cables may be installed in the same cable or pathway as signaling line circuits.
- D. Wiring within Enclosures: Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended by manufacturer. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of the enclosure. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess. Connect conductors that are terminated, spliced, or interrupted in any enclosure associated with fire-alarm system to terminal blocks. Mark each terminal according to system's wiring diagrams. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.
- E. Cable Taps: Use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; cabinets; or equipment enclosures where circuit connections are made.

- F. Color-Coding: Color-code fire-alarm conductors differently from the normal building power wiring. Use one color-code for alarm circuit wiring and another for supervisory circuits. Color-code audible alarm-indicating circuits differently from alarm-initiating circuits. Use different colors for visible alarm-indicating devices. Paint fire-alarm system junction boxes and covers red.
- G. Wiring to Remote Alarm Transmitting Device: 1-inch conduit between the fire-alarm control panel and the transmitter. Install number of conductors and electrical supervision for connecting wiring as needed to suit monitoring function.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
  - 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice, termination, and tap for aluminum conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 284621.11 "Addressable Fire-Alarm Systems" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

### 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

### 3.7 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

### 3.8 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
  - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Perform each of the following visual and electrical tests:
    - a. Inspect exposed sections of conductor and cable for physical damage and correct connection according to the single-line diagram.
    - b. Test bolted connections for high resistance using one of the following:
      - 1) A low-resistance ohmmeter.
      - 2) Calibrated torque wrench.
      - 3) Thermographic survey.
    - c. Inspect compression-applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.
    - d. Inspect for correct identification.
    - e. Inspect cable jacket and condition.
    - f. Insulation-resistance test on each conductor for ground and adjacent conductors. Apply a potential of 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable for a one-minute duration.
    - g. Continuity test on each conductor and cable.
    - h. Uniform resistance of parallel conductors.
- B. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports to record the following:
  - 1. Procedures used.
  - 2. Results that comply with requirements.
  - 3. Results that do not comply with requirements, and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION 260519

## SECTION 260523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Backboards.
  - 2. Category 5e balanced twisted pair cable.
  - 3. Category 6 balanced twisted pair cable.
  - 4. Category 6a balanced twisted pair cable.
  - 5. Balanced twisted pair cabling hardware.
  - 6. RS-485 cabling.
  - 7. Low-voltage control cabling.
  - 8. Control-circuit conductors.
  - 9. Identification products.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.
- C. Plenum: A space forming part of the air distribution system to which one or more air ducts are connected. An air duct is a passageway, other than a plenum, for transporting air to or from heating, ventilating, or air-conditioning equipment.
- D. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency, RCDD, layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.

- B. Source quality-control reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
  - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Flame Travel and Smoke Density in Plenums: As determined by testing identical products according to NFPA 262, by a qualified testing agency. Identify products for installation in plenums with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame Travel Distance: 60 inches or less.
  - 2. Peak Optical Smoke Density: 0.5 or less.
  - 3. Average Optical Smoke Density: 0.15 or less.
- C. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Riser Cables in Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1666.
- D. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Cables in Non-Riser Applications and Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1685.
- E. RoHS compliant.

### 2.2 BACKBOARDS

- A. Description: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches. Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."
- B. Painting: Paint plywood on all sides and edges with eggshell white latex paint. Comply with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

### 2.3 CATEGORY 6a BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 6a cable at frequencies up to 500MHz.

- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
  - 2. Berk-Tek Leviton; a Nexans/Leviton alliance.
  - 3. General Cable; General Cable Corporation.
- C. Standard: Comply with TIA-568-C.2 for Category 6a cables.
- D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 23 AWG solid copper.
- E. Shielding/Screening: **Shielded twisted pairs (FTP).**
- F. Cable Rating: **Plenum.**
- G. Jacket: [**White**] [**Gray**] [**Blue**] thermoplastic.

#### 2.4 BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Description: Hardware designed to connect, splice, and terminate balanced twisted pair copper communications cable.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Belden CDT Networking Division/NORDX.
  - 2. Berk-Tek Leviton; a Nexans/Leviton alliance.
  - 3. General Cable; General Cable Corporation.
- C. General Requirements for Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Hardware:
  - 1. Comply with the performance requirements of Category 6a.
  - 2. Comply with TIA-568-C.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools.
  - 3. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain balanced twisted pair cable hardware from same manufacturer as balanced twisted pair cable, from single source.
- E. Connecting Blocks: 110-style IDC for Category 6a. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare, integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.
- F. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.
  - 1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.

- G. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack location for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.
1. Features:
    - a. Universal T568A and T568B wiring labels.
    - b. Labeling areas adjacent to conductors.
    - c. Replaceable connectors.
    - d. 24 or 48 ports.
  2. Construction: 16-gauge steel and mountable on 19-inch equipment racks.
  3. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair conductor group of indicated cables, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.
- H. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in 48-inch lengths; terminated with an eight-position modular plug at each end.
1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
- I. Plugs and Plug Assemblies:
1. Male; eight position; color-coded modular telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100-ohm unshielded or shielded balanced twisted pair cable.
  2. Comply with IEC 60603-7-1, IEC 60603-7-2, IEC 60603-7-3, IEC 60603-7-4, and IEC 60603-7.5.
  3. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- J. Jacks and Jack Assemblies:
1. Female; eight position; modular; fixed telecommunications connector designed for termination of a single four-pair 100-ohm unshielded or shielded balanced twisted pair cable.
  2. Designed to snap-in to a patch panel or faceplate.
  3. Standards:
    - a. Category 6a, shielded balanced twisted pair cable shall comply with IEC 60603-7.51.
  4. Marked to indicate transmission performance.
- K. Faceplate:
1. Two, Four, or Six port, vertical single-gang faceplates designed to mount to single-gang wall / floor boxes.
  2. Metal Faceplate: Stainless steel, complying with requirements in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
  3. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of balanced twisted pair, optical fiber, and coaxial work area cords.
    - a. Flush mounting jacks, positioning the cord at a 45-degree angle.

L. Legend:

1. Machine printed, in the field, using adhesive-tape label.
2. Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

2.5 RS-485 CABLE

A. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.

1. Paired, two pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.

B. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.
2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262.

2.6 LOW-VOLTAGE CONTROL CABLE

A. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.

1. Multi-pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1685.

B. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. Multi-pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) tinned-copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.7 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. General Cable; General Cable Corporation.
2. Service Wire Co.
3. Southwire Company.

- B. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.

## 2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory test twisted pair cables according to TIA-568-C.2.
- B. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Test cables on receipt at Project site.
  - 1. Test each pair of twisted pair cable for open and short circuits.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF RACEWAYS AND BOXES

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for raceway selection and installation requirements for boxes, conduits, and wireways as supplemented or modified in this Section.
  - 1. Outlet boxes for cables shall be no smaller than 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep with extension ring sized to bring edge of ring to within 1/8 inch of the finished wall surface.
  - 2. Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- C. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.
- D. Raceway Installation in Equipment Rooms:
  - 1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard if a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of the room if multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of the room.
  - 2. Secure conduits to backboard if entering the room from overhead.
  - 3. Extend conduits 3 inches above finished floor.
  - 4. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
- E. Backboards: Install backboards with 96-inch dimension vertical. Butt adjacent sheets tightly and form smooth gap-free corners and joints.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C Series of standards.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems."
3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
4. Cables may not be spliced and shall be continuous from terminal to terminal. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points.
5. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install network cabling and control wiring and cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
6. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
7. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
8. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
9. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Do not use heat lamps for heating.
10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Monitor cable pull tensions.
11. Support: Do not allow cables to lie on removable ceiling tiles.
12. Secure: Fasten securely in place with hardware specifically designed and installed so as to not damage cables.
13. Provide strain relief.
14. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminals. Do not bend cables in a radius less than 10 times the cable OD. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.
15. Ground wire shall be copper, and grounding methods shall comply with IEEE C2. Demonstrate ground resistance.

C. Balanced Twisted Pair Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA-568-C.2.
2. Install termination hardware as specified in Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" unless otherwise indicated.
3. Do not untwist balanced twisted pair cables more than 1/2 inch at the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

D. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:

1. Install wiring in raceways.
2. Use insulated spade lugs for wire and cable connection to screw terminals.
3. Comply with requirements specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

E. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 30 inches apart.
3. Cable shall not be run through or on structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Do not run cables between structural members and corrugated panels.

F. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA-569-D recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communications cable from potential EMI sources including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
  - a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches.
  - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
  - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches.
3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
  - a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches.
  - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
  - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
  - a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
  - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches.
  - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or 5 HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches.
6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches.

### 3.4 REMOVAL OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Remove abandoned conductors and cables. Abandoned conductors and cables are those installed that are not terminated at equipment and are not identified with a tag for future use.

### 3.5 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:
  - 1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits; No 14 AWG.

### 3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

### 3.7 GROUNDING

- A. For data communication wiring, comply with TIA-607-B and with BICSI TDMM, "Bonding and Grounding (Earthing)" Chapter.
- B. For low-voltage control wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify data and communications system components, wiring, and cabling according to TIA-606-B; label printers shall use label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks complying with UL 969.
- C. Identify each wire on each end and at each terminal with a number-coded identification tag. Each wire shall have a unique tag.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Visually inspect cable jacket materials for UL or third-party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
3. Test cabling for direct-current loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination, but not after cross-connection.
  - a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in its "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in its "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
- C. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.
- D. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 260523

## SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.
- B. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:
  - 1. Underground distribution grounding.
  - 2. Ground bonding common with lightning protection system.
  - 3. Foundation steel electrodes.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans showing dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
  - 1. Test wells.
  - 2. Ground rods.
  - 3. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

- a. Plans showing as-built, dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
  - 1) Test wells.
  - 2) Ground rods.
  - 3) Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
- b. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at test wells, grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NFPA 70B.
  - 1) Tests shall determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if values do not.
  - 2) Include recommended testing intervals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

### 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Advanced Lightning Technology, Ltd.
  - 2. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems.
  - 3. ERICO International Corporation.
  - 4. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
  - 5. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
  - 6. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.

### 2.3 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper or tinned-copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
  2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
  3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
  4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
  5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
  6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
  7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
- C. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 thick by 4 inches high, by 24 inches long in cross section, with 9/32-inch holes spaced 1-1/8 inches apart. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V and shall be Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

## 2.4 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
- C. Bus-Bar Connectors: Compression-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
- D. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual, tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.
- E. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.
- F. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.
- G. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- H. Lay-in Lug Connector: Mechanical type, copper rated for direct burial terminal with set screw.
- I. Water Pipe Clamps:
  1. Mechanical type, two pieces with stainless-steel bolts.
    - a. Material: Tin-plated aluminum.
    - b. Listed for direct burial.
  2. U-bolt type with malleable-iron clamp and copper ground connector rated for direct burial.

## 2.5 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel, sectional type; 3/4 inch by 10 feet.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare tinned-copper conductor, No. 3/0 AWG minimum.
  - 1. Bury at least 24 inches below grade.
- C. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
  - 1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches minimum from wall, 6 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
  - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
  - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
  - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

### 3.2 GROUNDING SEPARATELY DERIVED SYSTEMS

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
- C. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- D. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from

panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.

- E. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
- C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
  - 2. Use exothermic welds for all below-grade connections.
- D. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and shall be at least 12 inches deep, with cover.
- E. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
  - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
  - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
  - 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- F. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:

1. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
- G. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- H. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet apart.
- I. Ground Ring: Install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure ground rod and to each steel column, extending around the perimeter of building area indicated.
1. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2/0 AWG for ground ring and for taps to building steel.
  2. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches from building's foundation.
- J. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact are galvanically compatible.
1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
  2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
  3. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
  4. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
  5. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at ground test wells, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
    - a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.

- b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
- 4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
- C. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- E. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
  - 1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: **10** ohms.
  - 2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: **5** ohms.
  - 3. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: **3** ohms.
- F. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 260526

## SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Steel slotted support systems.
2. Aluminum slotted support systems.
3. Nonmetallic slotted support systems.
4. Conduit and cable support devices.
5. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
6. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
7. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
8. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
  - a. Slotted support systems, hardware, and accessories.
  - b. Clamps.
  - c. Hangers.
  - d. Sockets.
  - e. Eye nuts.
  - f. Fasteners.
  - g. Anchors.
  - h. Saddles.
  - i. Brackets.
2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.

- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For hangers and supports for electrical systems.

1. Include design calculations and details of hangers.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Suspended ceiling components.
  2. Ductwork, piping, fittings, and supports.
  3. Structural members to which hangers and supports will be attached.
  4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
    - a. Luminaires.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Sprinklers.
    - e. Access panels.
- B. Welding certificates.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
  2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design hanger and support system.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
  2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D 635.

#### 2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch-diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches o.c. in at least one surface.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. B-line, an Eaton business.
  - b. G-Strut.
  - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
  - d. Unistrut; Part of Atkore International.
2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
  3. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Galvanized steel.
  4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
  5. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
  6. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  7. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  8. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.
- D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
      - 1) Hilti, Inc.
      - 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
      - 3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
  2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, **zinc-coated** steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1) B-line, an Eaton business.
  - 2) Hilti, Inc.
  - 3) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM F 3125/F 3125M, Grade A325.
6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:
  1. NECA 1.
  2. NECA 101
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- C. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.
- E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
  1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.

#### 3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.

- B. **Strength of Support Assemblies:** Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.
- C. **Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components:** Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
  - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
  - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
  - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
  - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
  - 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
  - 6. To Steel: Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69.
  - 7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
  - 8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that comply with anchorage requirements.
- D. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

### 3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."]
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base as follows:

1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 260529

## SECTION 260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings.
2. Nonmetallic conduits and fittings.
3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
4. Surface raceways.
5. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
6. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping at conduit and box entrances.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.
- B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
- C. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:

1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
  2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

#### A. Metal Conduit:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
  - b. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
  - c. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
2. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
4. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
5. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
6. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel.
7. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.

#### B. Metal Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
  - b. Allied Tube & Conduit; a part of Atkore International.
  - c. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
2. Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
3. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
4. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
5. Fittings for EMT:
  - a. Material: Steel.
  - b. Type: compression.

6. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
- C. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

## 2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

### A. Nonmetallic Conduit:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
  - b. RACO; Hubbell.
  - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
2. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduit shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. ENT: Comply with NEMA TC 13 and UL 1653.
4. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
5. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.

### B. Nonmetallic Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. AFC Cable Systems; a part of Atkore International.
  - b. RACO; Hubbell.
  - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation; A Member of the ABB Group.
2. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
3. Fittings for ENT and RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
  - a. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.
4. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

## 2.3 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. EGS/Appleton Electric.
  2. Hoffman; a brand of Pentair Equipment Protection.
  3. Hubbell Incorporated.
  4. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation.
- B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- E. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.
- F. Metal Floor Boxes:
1. Material: sheet metal.
  2. Type: Fully adjustable.
  3. Shape: Rectangular.
  4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- G. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb. Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.
- H. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- I. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.
- J. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- K. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches by 2-1/8 inches by 2-1/8 inches deep.
- L. Gangable boxes are prohibited.
- M. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
  2. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.

N. Cabinets:

1. NEMA 250, Type 1 galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.

2.4 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:

1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.
2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Armorcast Products Company.
  - b. Oldcastle Enclosure Solutions.
  - c. Quazite: Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
2. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
3. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
4. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
5. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
6. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC."
7. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
8. Handholes 12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

- A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
1. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.

2. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012 and traceable to NIST standards.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
  2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: EMT.
  3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, concrete encased.
  4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
  5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
- B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
  2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
  3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Raceway locations include the following:
    - a. Loading dock.
    - b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
    - c. Storage rooms accessed by fork lifts.
  4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
  5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
  6. Damp or Wet Locations: IMC.
  7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
  1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
  2. EMT: Use compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
  3. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
- E. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.
- F. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
- B. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- C. Do not install raceways or electrical items on any "explosion-relief" walls or rotating equipment.
- D. Do not fasten conduits onto the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
- E. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- F. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- G. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- H. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches of changes in direction.
- I. Make bends in raceway using large-radius preformed ells. Field bending shall be according to NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements. Use only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.
- J. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- K. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.
- L. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
  - 1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot intervals.
  - 2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
  - 3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 2 inches of concrete cover in all directions.
  - 4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
  - 5. Change from ENT to GRC before rising above floor.
- M. Stub-Ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
  - 1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.

2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- N. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- O. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
- P. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.
- Q. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.
- R. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.
- S. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- T. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.
- U. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
  2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
  3. Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
  4. Conduit extending into pressurized duct and equipment.
  5. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- V. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.
- W. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet. Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet.

2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
    - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
    - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.
    - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F temperature change.
  3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for metal conduits.
  4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
  5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.
- X. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
  2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- Y. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.
- Z. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.
- AA. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- BB. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- CC. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- DD. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
- EE. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- FF. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

#### A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
2. Install backfill as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
4. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.
  - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete for a minimum of 12 inches on each side of the coupling.
  - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
5. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, minimum 18" below grade.

### 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
  - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
  - 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533

## SECTION 260544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
- 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
- 3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
- 4. Grout.
- 5. Silicone sealants.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Wall Sleeves:

- 1. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

- C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:

- 1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.

2. Minimum Metal Thickness:

- a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and with no side larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
- b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Sealing Elements: [EPDM] [Nitrile (Buna N)] rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
3. Pressure Plates: [Carbon steel] [Plastic] [Stainless steel].
4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: [Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating,] [Stainless steel] of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - a. HOLDRITE.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.

1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
- B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
  1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
    - a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
    - b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
  2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
  3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
  4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
- D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:
  1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
  2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
- E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using cast-iron pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

### 3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION 260544

## SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Color and legend requirements for raceways, conductors, and warning labels and signs.
2. Labels.
3. Bands and tubes.
4. Tapes and stencils.
5. Tags.
6. Signs.
7. Cable ties.
8. Paint for identification.
9. Fasteners for labels and signs.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for electrical identification products.
- B. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate composition, size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.
- C. Identification Schedule: For each piece of electrical equipment and electrical system components to be an index of nomenclature for electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For arc-flash hazard study.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70.

- B. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- C. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70E and Section 260573.19 "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis" requirements for arc-flash warning labels.
- E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.
- F. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

## 2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
  - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
  - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.
- B. Color-Coding for Phase-and Voltage-Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded feeder and branch-circuit conductors.
  - 1. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
  - 2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Black.
    - b. Phase B: Red.
    - c. Phase C: Blue.
  - 3. Colors for 240-V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Black.
    - b. Phase B: Red.
  - 4. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Brown.
    - b. Phase B: Orange.
    - c. Phase C: Yellow.
  - 5. Color for Neutral: gray.
  - 6. Color for Equipment Grounds: Green with a yellow stripe.
  - 7. Colors for Isolated Grounds: Green with white stripe.
- C. Warning Label Colors:
  - 1. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.

- D. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
  2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES."
  3. Arc Flash warning **<Insert names and wording of warning signs or labels (for example, arc flash, multiple services and voltages, and others)>**.
- E. Equipment Identification Labels:
1. Black letters on a white field.
  2. Switchboards, panelboards, transformers, VFD's, and disconnects.

## 2.3 LABELS

- A. Vinyl Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, flexible labels laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing label ends.
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Snap-around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- C. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: [**Preprinted**] [**Write-on**], 3-mil- thick, [**polyester**] [**vinyl**] flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  2. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.
  3. Marker for Labels: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
  4. Marker for Labels: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.
- D. Self-Adhesive Labels: [**Polyester**] [**Vinyl**], thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil- thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  2. Minimum Nominal Size:
    - a. 1-1/2 by 6 inches for raceway and conductors
    - b. 3-1/2 by 5 inches for equipment.
    - c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

## 2.4 BANDS AND TUBES

- A. Snap-around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, 2 inches long, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tubes with machine-printed identification labels, sized to suit diameter and shrunk to fit firmly. Full shrink recovery occurs at a maximum of 200 deg F. Comply with UL 224.

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

## 2.5 TAPES AND STENCILS

- A. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; not less than 3 mils thick by 1 to 2 inches wide; compounded for outdoor use.

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- C. Tape and Stencil: 4-inch- wide black stripes on 10-inch centers placed diagonally over orange background and are 12 inches wide. Stop stripes at legends.

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- D. Floor Marking Tape: 2-inch- wide, 5-mil pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with [**black and white**] [**yellow and black**] stripes and clear vinyl overlay.

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- E. Underground-Line Warning Tape:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

2. Tape:

- a. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical [**and communications**] utility lines.
- b. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
- c. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.

3. Color and Printing:

- a. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, ANSI Z535.4, and ANSI Z535.5.

- b. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: "ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE" <Insert inscription>.
  - c. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: "TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE" <Insert inscription>.
4. Tag: [Type I] <Insert drawing designation>:
- a. Pigmented polyolefin, bright colored, [**continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility,**] compounded for direct-burial service.
  - b. Width: 3 inches.
  - c. Thickness: 4 mils.
  - d. Weight: 18.5 lb/1000 sq. ft..
  - e. Tensile according to ASTM D 882: 30 lbf and 2500 psi.
5. Tag: [Type II] <Insert drawing designation>:
- a. Multilayer laminate, consisting of high-density polyethylene scrim coated with pigmented polyolefin; bright colored, [**continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility,**] compounded for direct-burial service.
  - b. Width: 3 inches.
  - c. Thickness: 12 mils.
  - d. Weight: 36.1 lb/1000 sq. ft..
  - e. Tensile according to ASTM D 882: 400 lbf and 11,500 psi.
6. Tag: [Type ID] <Insert drawing designation>:
- a. Detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented polyolefin film, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core; bright colored, [**continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility,**] compounded for direct-burial service.
  - b. Width: 3 inches.
  - c. Overall Thickness: 5 mils.
  - d. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil.
  - e. Weight: 28 lb/1000 sq. ft..
  - f. Tensile according to ASTM D 882: 70 lbf and 4600 psi.
7. Tag: [Type IID] <Insert drawing designation>:
- a. Reinforced, detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented woven scrim, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core; bright-colored, [**continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility,**] compounded for direct-burial service.
  - b. Width: 3 inches.
  - c. Overall Thickness: 8 mils.
  - d. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil.
  - e. Weight: 34 lb/1000 sq. ft..
  - f. Tensile according to ASTM D 882: 300 lbf and 12,500 psi.

- F. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, **[black]** <Insert color> ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be **[1 inch]** <Insert dimension>.

## 2.6 TAGS

- A. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch, with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.

- 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- B. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags: Polyethylene tags, **[0.015 inch]** **[0.023 inch]** thick, color-coded for phase and voltage level, with factory **[screened]** **[printed]** permanent designations; punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.

- 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- C. Write-on Tags:

- 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- 2. Polyester Tags: **[0.010 inch]** **[0.015 inch]** <Insert dimension> thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment.

- 3. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.

- 4. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.

## 2.7 SIGNS

- A. Baked-Enamel Signs:

- 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- 2. Preprinted aluminum signs, **[high-intensity reflective,** ]punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.

- 3. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.

- 4. Nominal Size: 7 by 10 inches.

- B. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:

- 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- 2. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs, with 0.0396-inch galvanized-steel backing, punched and drilled for fasteners, and with colors, legend, and size required for application.

- 3. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.

- 4. Nominal Size: 10 by 14 inches.

- C. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

- 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- 2. Engraved legend.

- 3. Thickness:

- a. For signs up to 20 sq. in., minimum 1/16 inch thick.
- b. For signs larger than 20 sq. in., 1/8 inch thick.
- c. Engraved legend with [**black letters on white face**] [**white letters on a dark gray background**] <Insert colors>.
- d. [**Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners with 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting**] [**Self-adhesive**].
- e. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

## 2.8 CABLE TIES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
  1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
  2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
  4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.
- C. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.
  1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
  2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
  4. Color: Black.
- D. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, and self-locking.
  1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
  2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F according to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi.
  3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
  4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F.
  5. Color: Black.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.
- G. System Identification for Raceways and Cables under 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
  - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- H. System Identification for Raceways and Cables over 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
  - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- I. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
- J. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch- high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for **[power transfer]** **[load shedding]** **<Insert emergency operations>**.
- K. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.

- L. Accessible Fittings for Raceways: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
  - 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
  - 2. "POWER."
  - 3. "UPS."
  - 4. <Insert name>.
- M. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:
  - 1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
- N. Snap-around Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- O. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- P. Self-Adhesive Labels:
  - 1. On each item, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
  - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- high letters on 1-1/2-inch- high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
- Q. Snap-around Color-Coding Bands: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- R. Heat-Shrink, Preprinted Tubes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- S. Marker Tapes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- T. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 1. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding.
- U. Tape and Stencil: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.
- V. Floor Marking Tape: Apply stripes to finished surfaces following manufacturer's written instructions.
- W. Underground Line Warning Tape:

1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at 6 to 8 inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench [**or concrete envelope**] exceeds 16 inches overall.
2. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
3. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.

X. Metal Tags:

1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
2. Secure using [**general-purpose**] [**UV-stabilized**] [**plenum-rated**] cable ties.

Y. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags:

1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
2. Secure using [**general-purpose**] [**UV-stabilized**] [**plenum-rated**] cable ties.

Z. Write-on Tags:

1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
2. Secure using [**general-purpose**] [**UV-stabilized**] [**plenum-rated**] cable ties.

AA. Baked-Enamel Signs:

1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- high letters on minimum 1-1/2-inch- high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum 2 inches high.

BB. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:

1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- high letters on 1-1/2-inch- high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.

CC. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- high letters on 1-1/2-inch- high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.

DD. Cable Ties: General purpose, for attaching tags, except as listed below:

1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.
- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- C. Concealed Raceways, Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Tape and stencil. Stencil legend "DANGER - CONCEALED HIGH-VOLTAGE WIRING" with 3-inch- high, black letters on 20-inch centers.
  - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, and at **[10-foot] [30-foot]** maximum intervals.
- D. Accessible Raceways, Armored and Metal-Clad Cables, More Than 600 V: [**Vinyl wraparound labels**] [**Snap-around labels**] [**Self-adhesive labels**] [**Snap-around color-coding bands for raceway and cables**].
  - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
- E. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits, More Than **[30] <Insert number> A** and **[120] <Insert number> V** to Ground: Identify with self-adhesive [**raceway labels**] [**vinyl tape applied in bands**].
  - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
- F. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive labels containing the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
  - 1. "EMERGENCY POWER."
  - 2. "POWER."
  - 3. "UPS."
  - 4. **<Insert name>**.
- G. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use [**vinyl wraparound labels**] [**self-adhesive wraparound labels**] [**snap-around labels**] [**snap-around color-coding bands**] [**self-adhesive vinyl tape**] to identify the phase.
  - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.

- H. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, More Than 600 V: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use [**write-on tags**] [**nonmetallic preprinted tags colored and marked to indicate phase, and a separate tag with the circuit designation**].
- I. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use [**write-on tags**] [**self-adhesive labels**] with the conductor or cable designation, origin, and destination.
- J. Control-Circuit Conductor Termination Identification: For identification at terminations, provide [**heat-shrink preprinted tubes**] [**self-adhesive labels**] with the conductor designation.
- K. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach [**write-on tags**] [**marker tape**] to conductors[ **and list source**].
- L. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: [**Marker tape**] [**Self-adhesive vinyl tape**] that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
  - 1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- M. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.
- N. Concealed Raceways and Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Apply floor marking tape to the following finished surfaces:
  - 1. Floor surface directly above conduits running beneath and within 12 inches of a floor that is in contact with earth or is framed above unexcavated space.
  - 2. Wall surfaces directly external to raceways concealed within wall.
  - 3. Accessible surfaces of concrete envelope around raceways in vertical shafts, exposed in the building, or concealed above suspended ceilings.
- O. Workspace Indication: Apply [**floor marking tape**] [**or**] [**tape and stencil**] to finished surfaces. Show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- P. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including the color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.
- Q. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: [**Self-adhesive labels**] [**Baked-enamel warning signs**] [**Metal-backed, butyrate warning signs**].
  - 1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
  - 2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Power-transfer switches.
    - b. Controls with external control power connections.
    - c. **<Insert items>**.

- R. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive labels.
- S. Operating Instruction Signs: [**Self-adhesive labels**] [**Baked-enamel warning signs**] [**Metal-backed, butyrate warning signs**] [**Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs**].
- T. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: [**Self-adhesive labels**] [**Baked-enamel warning signs**] [**Metal-backed, butyrate warning signs**] [**Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs**] with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch- high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for [**power transfer**] [**load shedding**] <**Insert emergency operations**>.
- U. Equipment Identification Labels:
  - 1. Indoor Equipment: [**Self-adhesive label**] [**Baked-enamel signs**] [**Metal-backed butyrate signs**] [**Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic sign**].
  - 2. Outdoor Equipment: [**Laminated acrylic or melamine sign**] [**Stenciled legend 4 inches high**].
  - 3. Equipment to Be Labeled:
    - a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be in the form of a [**self-adhesive, engraved,**] [**engraved,**] laminated acrylic or melamine label.
    - b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
    - c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
    - d. Switchgear.
    - e. Switchboards.
    - f. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation indicated on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
    - g. Substations.
    - h. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
    - i. Motor-control centers.
    - j. Enclosed switches.
    - k. Enclosed circuit breakers.
    - l. Enclosed controllers.
    - m. Variable-speed controllers.
    - n. Push-button stations.
    - o. Power-transfer equipment.
    - p. Contactors.
    - q. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
    - r. Battery-inverter units.
    - s. Battery racks.
    - t. Power-generating units.
    - u. Monitoring and control equipment.
    - v. UPS equipment.
    - w. <**Insert equipment**>.

END OF SECTION 260553

## SECTION 260573.13 - SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes a computer-based, fault-current study to determine the minimum interrupting capacity of circuit protective devices.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled. Existing to remain items shall remain functional throughout the construction period.
- B. Field Adjusting Agency: An independent electrical testing agency with full-time employees and the capability to adjust devices and conduct testing indicated and that is a member company of NETA.
- C. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- D. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains, and distributes computer software used for power system studies.
- E. Power Systems Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.
- F. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion of the circuit from the system.
- G. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- H. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.
- I. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data:

1. For computer software program to be used for studies.
2. Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form.
  - a. Short-circuit study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
  - b. Short-circuit study and equipment evaluation report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
    - 1) Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.
    - 2) Revised one-line diagram, reflecting field investigation results and results of short-circuit study.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

##### A. Qualification Data:

1. For Power Systems Analysis Software Developer.
2. For Power System Analysis Specialist.
3. For Field Adjusting Agency.

##### B. Product Certificates: For short-circuit study software, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

##### A. Operation and Maintenance Data:

1. For overcurrent protective devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
2. The following are from the Short-Circuit Study Report:
  - a. Final one-line diagram.
  - b. Final Short-Circuit Study Report.
  - c. Short-circuit study data files.
  - d. Power system data.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- ##### A. Study shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.

- B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.
- C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
  - 1. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications: Computer program shall be designed to perform short-circuit studies or have a function, component, or add-on module designed to perform short-circuit studies.
  - 2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.
- D. Power Systems Analysis Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.
- E. Short-Circuit Study Certification: Short-Circuit Study Report shall be signed and sealed by Power Systems Analysis Specialist.
- F. Field Adjusting Agency Qualifications:
  - 1. Employer of a NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification responsible for all field adjusting of the Work.
  - 2. A member company of NETA.
  - 3. Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 POWER SYSTEM ANALYSIS SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.
- B. Comply with IEEE 399 and IEEE 551.
  - 1. Analytical features of power systems analysis software program shall have capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.
- C. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output.

### 2.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY REPORT CONTENTS

- A. Executive summary of study findings.

- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.
- C. One-line diagram of modeled power system, showing the following:
  - 1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
  - 2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
  - 3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
  - 4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
  - 5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, and panelboard designations and ratings.
  - 6. Derating factors and environmental conditions.
  - 7. Any revisions to electrical equipment required by the study.
- D. Comments and recommendations for system improvements or revisions in a written document, separate from one-line diagram.
- E. Protective Device Evaluation:
  - 1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to available short-circuit currents. Verify that equipment withstand ratings exceed available short-circuit current at equipment installation locations.
  - 2. Tabulations of circuit breaker, fuse, and other protective device ratings versus calculated short-circuit duties.
  - 3. For 600-V overcurrent protective devices, ensure that interrupting ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
  - 4. For devices and equipment rated for asymmetrical fault current, apply multiplication factors listed in standards to 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
  - 5. Verify adequacy of phase conductors at maximum three-phase bolted fault currents; verify adequacy of equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors at maximum ground-fault currents. Ensure that short-circuit withstand ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
- F. Short-Circuit Study Input Data:
  - 1. One-line diagram of system being studied.
  - 2. Power sources available.
  - 3. Manufacturer, model, and interrupting rating of protective devices.
  - 4. Conductors.
  - 5. Transformer data.
- G. Short-Circuit Study Output Reports:
  - 1. Low-Voltage Fault Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
    - a. Voltage.
    - b. Calculated fault-current magnitude and angle.
    - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
    - d. Equivalent impedance.

2. Momentary Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
  - a. Voltage.
  - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
  - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
  - d. Calculated asymmetrical fault currents:
    - 1) Based on fault-point X/R ratio.
    - 2) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 1.6.
    - 3) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 2.7.
  
3. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
  - a. Voltage.
  - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
  - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
  - d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
  - e. Equivalent impedance.
  - f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical basis.
  - g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the study.
  1. Verify completeness of data supplied on one-line diagram. Call any discrepancies to Architect's attention.
  2. For equipment included as Work of this Project, use characteristics submitted under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
  3. For equipment that is existing to remain, obtain required electrical distribution system data by field investigation and surveys, conducted by qualified technicians and engineers. Qualifications of technicians and engineers shall be as defined by NFPA 70E.
  
- B. Gather and tabulate the required input data to support the short-circuit study. Comply with requirements in Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for recording circuit protective device characteristics. Record data on a Record Document copy of one-line diagram. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:
  1. Product Data for Project's overcurrent protective devices involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent

- with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance at the service.
  3. Power sources and ties.
  4. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
  5. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating, and impedance.
  6. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
  7. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
  8. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, and conductor material.
  9. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
  10. Conductor sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
  11. Derating factors.

### 3.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY

- A. Perform study following the general study procedures contained in IEEE 399.
- B. Calculate short-circuit currents according to IEEE 551.
- C. Base study on device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.
- D. Begin short-circuit current analysis at the service, extending down to system overcurrent protective devices as follows:
  1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.
  2. Exclude equipment rated 240 V ac or less when supplied by a single transformer rated less than 125 kVA.
- E. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- F. Include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. Also account for the fault-current dc decrement to address asymmetrical requirements of interrupting equipment.
- G. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault and a single line-to-ground fault at each equipment indicated on one-line diagram.
  1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.
- H. Include in the report identification of any protective device applied outside its capacity.

END OF SECTION 260573.13

## SECTION 260573.16 - COORDINATION STUDIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes computer-based, overcurrent protective device coordination studies to determine overcurrent protective devices and to determine overcurrent protective device settings for selective tripping.
  - 1. Study results shall be used to determine coordination of series-rated devices.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled. Existing to remain items shall remain functional throughout the construction period.
- B. Field Adjusting Agency: An independent electrical testing agency with full-time employees and the capability to adjust devices and conduct testing indicated and that is a member company of NETA.
- C. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- D. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains, and distributes computer software used for power system studies.
- E. Power System Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.
- F. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion of the circuit from the system.
- G. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- H. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.
- I. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data:

1. For computer software program to be used for studies.
2. Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form.
  - a. Coordination-study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
  - b. Study and equipment evaluation reports.
3. Overcurrent protective device coordination study report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.
  - a. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

##### A. Qualification Data:

1. For Power System Analysis Software Developer.
2. For Power Systems Analysis Specialist.
3. For Field Adjusting Agency.

##### B. Product Certificates: For overcurrent protective device coordination study software, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

##### A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For overcurrent protective devices to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. The following are from the Coordination Study Report:
  - a. Final one-line diagram.
  - b. Final protective device coordination study.
  - c. Coordination study data files.
  - d. List of all protective device settings.
  - e. Time-current coordination curves.
  - f. Power system data.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Studies shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.
- B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.
- C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
- D. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications:
  - 1. Computer program shall be designed to perform coordination studies or have a function, component, or add-on module designed to perform coordination studies.
  - 2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.
- E. Power Systems Analysis Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.
- F. Field Adjusting Agency Qualifications:
  - 1. Employer of a NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III responsible for all field adjusting of the Work.
  - 2. A member company of NETA.
  - 3. Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 POWER SYSTEM ANALYSIS SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.
- B. Comply with IEEE 242 and IEEE 399.
- C. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.
- D. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output. Computer software program shall report device settings and ratings of all overcurrent protective devices and shall demonstrate selective coordination by computer-generated, time-current coordination plots.
  - 1. Optional Features:

- a. Arcing faults.
- b. Simultaneous faults.
- c. Explicit negative sequence.
- d. Mutual coupling in zero sequence.

## 2.2 COORDINATION STUDY REPORT CONTENTS

- A. Executive summary of study findings.
- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.
- C. One-line diagram of modeled power system, showing the following:
  1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
  2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.
  3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
  4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
  5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, and panelboard designations.
  6. Any revisions to electrical equipment required by the study.
  7. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.
    - a. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output Reports" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.13 "Short-Circuit Studies."
- D. Protective Device Coordination Study:
  1. Report recommended settings of protective devices, ready to be applied in the field. Use manufacturer's data sheets for recording the recommended setting of overcurrent protective devices when available.
    - a. Phase and Ground Relays:
      - 1) Device tag.
      - 2) Relay current transformer ratio and tap, time dial, and instantaneous pickup value.
      - 3) Recommendations on improved relaying systems, if applicable.
    - b. Circuit Breakers:
      - 1) Adjustable pickups and time delays (long time, short time, and ground).
      - 2) Adjustable time-current characteristic.
      - 3) Adjustable instantaneous pickup.
      - 4) Recommendations on improved trip systems, if applicable.
    - c. Fuses: Show current rating, voltage, and class.
- E. Time-Current Coordination Curves: Determine settings of overcurrent protective devices to achieve selective coordination. Graphically illustrate that adequate time separation exists

between devices installed in series, including power utility company's upstream devices. Prepare separate sets of curves for the switching schemes and for emergency periods where the power source is local generation. Show the following information:

1. Device tag and title, one-line diagram with legend identifying the portion of the system covered.
2. Terminate device characteristic curves at a point reflecting maximum symmetrical or asymmetrical fault current to which the device is exposed.
3. Identify the device associated with each curve by manufacturer type, function, and, if applicable, tap, time delay, and instantaneous settings recommended.
4. Plot the following listed characteristic curves, as applicable:
  - a. Power utility's overcurrent protective device.
  - b. Medium-voltage equipment overcurrent relays.
  - c. Medium- and low-voltage fuses including manufacturer's minimum melt, total clearing, tolerance, and damage bands.
  - d. Low-voltage equipment circuit-breaker trip devices, including manufacturer's tolerance bands.
  - e. Transformer full-load current, magnetizing inrush current, and ANSI through-fault protection curves.
  - f. Cables and conductors damage curves.
  - g. Ground-fault protective devices.
  - h. Motor-starting characteristics and motor damage points.
  - i. Generator short-circuit decrement curve and generator damage point.
  - j. The largest feeder circuit breaker in each motor-control center and panelboard.
5. Maintain selectivity for tripping currents caused by overloads.
6. Maintain maximum achievable selectivity for tripping currents caused by overloads on series-rated devices.
7. Provide adequate time margins between device characteristics such that selective operation is achieved.
8. Comments and recommendations for system improvements.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals for compliance with electrical distribution system coordination requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work. Devices to be coordinated are indicated on Drawings.
  1. Proceed with coordination study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to coordination study may not be used in study.

### 3.2 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the overcurrent protective device study.

1. Verify completeness of data supplied in one-line diagram on Drawings. Call any discrepancies to Architect's attention.
  2. For equipment included as Work of this Project, use characteristics submitted under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
  3. For equipment that is existing to remain, obtain required electrical distribution system data by field investigation and surveys, conducted by qualified technicians and engineers. Qualifications of technicians and engineers shall be as defined by NFPA 70E.
- B. Gather and tabulate all required input data to support the coordination study. List below is a guide. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 for the amount of detail required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
  2. Electrical power utility impedance at the service.
  3. Power sources and ties.
  4. Short-circuit current at each system bus (three phase and line to ground).
  5. Full-load current of all loads.
  6. Voltage level at each bus.
  7. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
  8. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating, and impedance.
  9. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
  10. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
  11. For relays, provide manufacturer and model designation, current transformer ratios, potential transformer ratios, and relay settings.
  12. Maximum demands from service meters.
  13. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, size, and conductor material.
  14. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
  15. Low-voltage cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material, and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
  16. Medium-voltage cable sizes, lengths, conductor material, cable construction, metallic shield performance parameters, and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
  17. Data sheets to supplement electrical distribution system one-line diagram, cross-referenced with tag numbers on diagram, showing the following:
    - a. Special load considerations, including starting inrush currents and frequent starting and stopping.
    - b. Transformer characteristics, including primary protective device, magnetic inrush current, and overload capability.

- c. Motor full-load current, locked rotor current, service factor, starting time, type of start, and thermal-damage curve.
- d. Generator thermal-damage curve.
- e. Ratings, types, and settings of utility company's overcurrent protective devices.
- f. Special overcurrent protective device settings or types stipulated by utility company.
- g. Time-current-characteristic curves of devices indicated to be coordinated.
- h. Manufacturer, frame size, interrupting rating in amperes root mean square (rms) symmetrical, ampere or current sensor rating, long-time adjustment range, short-time adjustment range, and instantaneous adjustment range for circuit breakers.
- i. Manufacturer and type, ampere-tap adjustment range, time-delay adjustment range, instantaneous attachment adjustment range, and current transformer ratio for overcurrent relays.
- j. Switchgear, switchboards, motor-control centers, and panelboards ampacity, and SCCR in amperes rms symmetrical.
- k. Identify series-rated interrupting devices for a condition where the available fault current is greater than the interrupting rating of downstream equipment. Obtain device data details to allow verification that series application of these devices complies with NFPA 70 and UL 489 requirements.

### 3.3 COORDINATION STUDY

- A. Comply with IEEE 242 for calculating short-circuit currents and determining coordination time intervals.
- B. Comply with IEEE 399 for general study procedures.
- C. Base study on device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.
- D. Begin analysis at the service, extending down to system overcurrent protective devices as follows:
  1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less.
  2. Exclude equipment rated 240 V ac or less when supplied by a single transformer rated less than 125 kVA.
- E. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- F. Transformer Primary Overcurrent Protective Devices:
  1. Device shall not operate in response to the following:
    - a. Inrush current when first energized.
    - b. Self-cooled, full-load current or forced-air-cooled, full-load current, whichever is specified for that transformer.
    - c. Permissible transformer overloads according to IEEE C57.96 if required by unusual loading or emergency conditions.

2. Device settings shall protect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.00, for fault currents.

G. Motor Protection:

1. Select protection for low-voltage motors according to IEEE 242 and NFPA 70.
2. Select protection for motors served at voltages more than 600 V according to IEEE 620.

H. Conductor Protection: Protect cables against damage from fault currents according to ICEA P-32-382, ICEA P-45-482, and protection recommendations in IEEE 242. Demonstrate that equipment withstands the maximum short-circuit current for a time equivalent to the tripping time of the primary relay protection or total clearing time of the fuse. To determine temperatures that damage insulation, use curves from cable manufacturers or from listed standards indicating conductor size and short-circuit current.

I. Generator Protection: Select protection according to manufacturer's written instructions and to IEEE 242.

J. Include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. Also account for fault-current dc decrement, to address asymmetrical requirements of interrupting equipment.

K. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault and a single line-to-ground fault at each equipment indicated on one-line diagram.

1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.

L. Protective Device Evaluation:

1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices and compare to short-circuit ratings.
2. Adequacy of switchgear, motor-control centers, and panelboard bus bars to withstand short-circuit stresses.
3. Any application of series-rated devices shall be recertified, complying with requirements in NFPA 70.
4. Include in the report identification of any protective device applied outside its capacity.

### 3.4 LOAD-FLOW AND VOLTAGE-DROP STUDY

A. Perform a load-flow and voltage-drop study to determine the steady-state loading profile of the system. Analyze power system performance two times as follows:

1. Determine load flow and voltage drop based on full-load currents obtained in "Power System Data" Article.
2. Determine load flow and voltage drop based on 80 percent of the design capacity of load buses.
3. Prepare load-flow and voltage-drop analysis and report to show power system components that are overloaded, or might become overloaded; show bus voltages that are less than as prescribed by NFPA 70.

### 3.5 MOTOR-STARTING STUDY

- A. Perform a motor-starting study to analyze the transient effect of system's voltage profile during motor starting. Calculate significant motor-starting voltage profiles and analyze the effects of motor starting on the power system stability.
- B. Prepare the motor-starting study report, noting light flicker for limits proposed by IEEE 141, and voltage sags so as not to affect operation of other utilization equipment on system supplying the motor.

### 3.6 FIELD ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust relay and protective device settings according to recommended settings provided by the coordination study. Field adjustments shall be completed by the engineering service division of equipment manufacturer under the "Startup and Acceptance Testing" contract portion.
- B. Make minor modifications to equipment as required to accomplish compliance with short-circuit and protective device coordination studies.
- C. Testing and adjusting shall be by a full-time employee of the Field Adjusting Agency, who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification.
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters. Perform NETA tests and inspections for all adjustable overcurrent protective devices.

### 3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage Power Systems Analysis Specialist to train Owner's maintenance personnel in the following:
  - 1. Acquaint personnel in fundamentals of operating the power system in normal and emergency modes.
  - 2. Hand-out and explain the coordination study objectives, study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpreting time-current coordination curves.
  - 3. For Owner's maintenance staff certified as NETA ETT-Certified Technicians Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III Technicians, teach how to adjust, operate, and maintain overcurrent protective device settings.

END OF SECTION 260573.16

## SECTION 260573.19 - ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes a computer-based, arc-flash study to determine the arc-flash hazard distance and the incident energy to which personnel could be exposed during work on or near electrical equipment.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.
- B. Field Adjusting Agency: An independent electrical testing agency with full-time employees and the capability to adjust devices and conduct testing indicated and that is a member company of NETA.
- C. One-Line Diagram: A diagram that shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- D. Power System Analysis Software Developer: An entity that commercially develops, maintains, and distributes computer software used for power system studies.
- E. Power Systems Analysis Specialist: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located.
- F. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion from the system.
- G. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- H. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.
- I. Single-Line Diagram: See "One-Line Diagram."

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.
- B. Study Submittals: Submit the following submittals after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form:
  - 1. Arc-flash study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
  - 2. Arc-flash study report; signed, dated, and sealed by Power Systems Analysis Specialist.
  - 3. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from Architect for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data:
  - 1. For Power Systems Analysis Software Developer.
  - 2. For Power System Analysis Specialist.
  - 3. For Field Adjusting Agency.
- B. Product Certificates: For arc-flash hazard analysis software, certifying compliance with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data:
  - 1. Provide maintenance procedures in equipment manuals according to requirements in NFPA 70E.
  - 2. Operation and Maintenance Procedures: In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," provide maintenance procedures for use by Owner's personnel that comply with requirements in NFPA 70E.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Study shall be performed using commercially developed and distributed software designed specifically for power system analysis.
- B. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section.
- C. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
- D. Power System Analysis Software Qualifications: An entity that owns and markets computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.

1. Computer program shall be designed to perform arc-flash analysis or have a function, component, or add-on module designed to perform arc-flash analysis.
  2. Computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.
- E. Power Systems Analysis Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer in charge of performing the arc-flash study, analyzing the arc flash, and documenting recommendations, licensed in the state where Project is located. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.
- F. Arc-Flash Study Certification: Arc-Flash Study Report shall be signed and sealed by Power Systems Analysis Specialist.
- G. Field Adjusting Agency Qualifications:
1. Employer of a NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification responsible for all field adjusting of the Work.
  2. A member company of NETA.
  3. Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.
- B. Comply with IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E.
- C. Analytical features of device coordination study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.

### 2.2 ARC-FLASH STUDY REPORT CONTENT

- A. Executive summary of study findings.
- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of results.
- C. One-line diagram, showing the following:
1. Protective device designations and ampere ratings.
  2. Conductor types, sizes, and lengths.

3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings, including derating factors and environmental conditions.
  4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
  5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, panelboard designations, and ratings.
- D. Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article.
- E. Short-Circuit Study Output Data: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output Reports" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.13 "Short-Circuit Studies."
- F. Protective Device Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Coordination Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."
- G. Arc-Flash Study Output Reports:
1. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each equipment location included in the report:
    - a. Voltage.
    - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
    - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
    - d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
    - e. Equivalent impedance.
    - f. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical basis.
    - g. Multiplying factors for 2-, 3-, 5-, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.
- H. Incident Energy and Flash Protection Boundary Calculations:
1. Arcing fault magnitude.
  2. Protective device clearing time.
  3. Duration of arc.
  4. Arc-flash boundary.
  5. Restricted approach boundary.
  6. Limited approach boundary.
  7. Working distance.
  8. Incident energy.
  9. Hazard risk category.
  10. Recommendations for arc-flash energy reduction.
- I. Fault study input data, case descriptions, and fault-current calculations including a definition of terms and guide for interpretation of computer printout.

## 2.3 ARC-FLASH WARNING LABELS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for self-adhesive equipment labels. Produce a 3.5-by-5-inch self-adhesive equipment label for each work location included in the analysis.

- B. Label shall have an orange header with the wording, "WARNING, ARC-FLASH HAZARD," and shall include the following information taken directly from the arc-flash hazard analysis:
  - 1. Location designation.
  - 2. Nominal voltage.
  - 3. Protection boundaries.
    - a. Arc-flash boundary.
    - b. Restricted approach boundary.
    - c. Limited approach boundary.
  - 4. Arc flash PPE category.
  - 5. Required minimum arc rating of PPE in Cal/cm squared.
  - 6. Available incident energy.
  - 7. Working distance.
  - 8. Engineering report number, revision number, and issue date.
- C. Labels shall be machine printed, with no field-applied markings.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals. Proceed with arc-flash study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to arc-flash study may not be used in study.

#### 3.2 ARC-FLASH HAZARD ANALYSIS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70E and its Annex D for hazard analysis study.
- B. Preparatory Studies: Perform the Short-Circuit and Protective Device Coordination studies prior to starting the Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis.
  - 1. Short-Circuit Study Output: As specified in "Short-Circuit Study Output Reports" Paragraph in "Short-Circuit Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.13 "Short-Circuit Studies."
  - 2. Coordination Study Report Contents: As specified in "Coordination Study Report Contents" Article in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."
- C. Calculate maximum and minimum contributions of fault-current size.
  - 1. Maximum calculation shall assume a maximum contribution from the utility and shall assume motors to be operating under full-load conditions.
  - 2. Calculate arc-flash energy with the utility contribution at a minimum and assume no motor contribution.
- D. Calculate the arc-flash protection boundary and incident energy at locations in electrical distribution system where personnel could perform work on energized parts.

- E. Include low-voltage equipment locations, except equipment rated 240 V ac or less fed from transformers less than 125 kVA.
- F. Calculate the limited, restricted, and prohibited approach boundaries for each location.
- G. Incident energy calculations shall consider the accumulation of energy over time when performing arc-flash calculations on buses with multiple sources. Iterative calculations shall take into account the changing current contributions, as the sources are interrupted or decremented with time. Fault contribution from motors and generators shall be decremented as follows:
  - 1. Fault contribution from induction motors shall not be considered beyond three to five cycles.
  - 2. Fault contribution from synchronous motors and generators shall be decayed to match the actual decrement of each as closely as possible (for example, contributions from permanent magnet generators will typically decay from 10 per unit to three per unit after 10 cycles).
- H. Arc-flash energy shall generally be reported for the maximum of line or load side of a circuit breaker. However, arc-flash computation shall be performed and reported for both line and load side of a circuit breaker as follows:
  - 1. When the circuit breaker is in a separate enclosure.
  - 2. When the line terminals of the circuit breaker are separate from the work location.
- I. Base arc-flash calculations on actual overcurrent protective device clearing time. Cap maximum clearing time at two seconds based on IEEE 1584, Section B.1.2.

### 3.3 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Obtain all data necessary for conduct of the arc-flash hazard analysis.
  - 1. Verify completeness of data supplied on one-line diagram on Drawings and under "Preparatory Studies" Paragraph in "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis" Article. Call discrepancies to Architect's attention.
  - 2. For new equipment, use characteristics from approved submittals under provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
  - 3. For existing equipment, whether or not relocated, obtain required electrical distribution system data by field investigation and surveys conducted by qualified technicians and engineers.
- B. Electrical Survey Data: Gather and tabulate the following input data to support study. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 1584 and NFPA 70E as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under the direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer or its representative who holds NETA ETT-Certified Technician Level III or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification. Data include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags

that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.

2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance or available short circuit current at the service.
3. Power sources and ties.
4. Short-circuit current at each system bus (three phase and line to ground).
5. Full-load current of all loads.
6. Voltage level at each bus.
7. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
8. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating and impedance.
9. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip and available range of settings, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
10. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
11. For relays, provide manufacturer and model designation, current transformer ratios, potential transformer ratios, and relay settings.
12. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, size, and conductor material.
13. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
14. Low-voltage conductor sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).
15. Medium-voltage conductor sizes, lengths, conductor material, conductor construction and metallic shield performance parameters, and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).

### 3.4 LABELING

- A. Apply arc-flash label on the front cover of each section of the equipment and on side or rear covers with accessible live parts and hinged doors or removable plates for each equipment included in the study. Base arc-flash label data on highest values calculated at each location.
- B. Each piece of equipment listed below shall have an arc-flash label applied to it:
  1. Motor-control center.
  2. Low-voltage switchboard.
  3. Switchgear.
  4. Medium-voltage switch.
  5. Medium voltage transformers
  6. Low voltage transformers. Exclude transformers with high voltage side 240 V or less and less than 125 kVA.
  7. Panelboard and safety switch over 250 V.
  8. Applicable panelboard and safety switch under 250 V.
  9. Control panel.
- C. Note on record Drawings the location of equipment where the personnel could be exposed to arc-flash hazard during their work.
  1. Indicate arc-flash energy.
  2. Indicate protection level required.

3.5 APPLICATION OF WARNING LABELS

- A. Install arc-flash warning labels under the direct supervision and control of Power System Analysis Specialist.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage Power Systems Analysis Specialist to train Owner's maintenance personnel in potential arc-flash hazards associated with working on energized equipment and the significance of arc-flash warning labels.

END OF SECTION 260573.19

## SECTION 260800 - COMMISSIONING OF ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes Cx process requirements for the following electrical components, systems, assemblies, and equipment:
  - 1. Electrical equipment connected to Normal power systems, including the following:
    - a. Motor-control centers.
    - b. Transformers.
    - c. Secondary service electrical systems.
    - d. Distribution and branch-circuit panelboards.
    - e. Lightning protection systems.
    - f. Grounding systems.
  - 2. Electrical equipment connected to Essential power systems that provide an alternative source of power in the absence of power from the Normal power system, including the following:
    - a. Motor-control centers.
    - b. Secondary service electrical systems.
    - c. Distribution and branch-circuit panelboards.
    - d. Lighting protection systems.
    - e. Grounding systems.
    - f. Generators.
  - 3. Controls and instrumentation, including the following:
    - a. Equipment monitoring systems.
    - b. Energy monitoring and control systems.
    - c. Lighting control systems.
    - d. Security systems.
    - e. Fire-alarm systems.
  - 4. Systems testing and verification, including Normal and Essential power systems, and transitions from Normal to Essential power systems and back.
- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements" for general Cx process requirements and CxA responsibilities.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BoD: Basis-of-Design Document, as defined in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- B. Cx: Commissioning, as defined in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- C. CxA: Commissioning Authority, as defined in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- D. Essential Power Systems: A power system that a facility transitions to in the absence of Normal power. This power includes all systems classified as "standby" or "emergency," including "legally required."
- E. Low Voltage: 600 V and below.
- F. Normal Power Systems: A power system that provides primary power to a facility.
- G. OPR: Owner's Project Requirements, as defined in Section 019113 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- H. "Systems," "Assemblies," "Subsystems," "Equipment," and "Components": Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For BAS and electrical testing technician.
- B. Construction Checklists: Draft construction checklists will be created by CxA for Contractor review.
  1. Instrumentation and control for electrical systems.
  2. Instrumentation and control for lighting control systems.
  3. Low-voltage power cables.
  4. Control voltage power cables.
  5. Electrical feeders and branch circuits.
  6. Dry-type transformers.
  7. Instrument transformers.
  8. Switchboard assemblies rated 1200 A or greater.
  9. Motor-control centers.
  10. Low-voltage motor starters.
  11. Low-voltage insulated case circuit breakers.
  12. Protective relays.
  13. Metering devices.
  14. Molded-case circuit breakers.

15. Low-voltage power circuit breakers.
16. Grounding systems.
17. Ground-fault protection systems.
18. Panelboards.
19. Receptacles and devices.
20. Engine generators.
21. Automatic transfer switches.
22. Variable-frequency drives.
23. AC synchronous motors and generators.
24. AC induction motors and generators.
25. Battery systems.
26. Battery chargers.
27. Flooded lead-acid batteries.
28. VRLA batteries.
29. Power factor correction equipment, including capacitors, dry-type reactors (both shunt and current-limiting), and liquid-filled reactors (both shunt and current-limiting).
30. Lighting.
31. Vehicle charging equipment.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electrical systems and components to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Testing Technician Qualifications: Technicians to perform electrical Construction Checklist verification tests, Construction Checklist verification test demonstrations, Cx tests, and Cx test demonstrations shall have the following minimum qualifications:
  1. Journey level or equivalent skill level. Vocational school four-year-program graduate or an Associate's degree in electrical systems, or similar field. Degree may be offset by three years' experience as an apprentice or a journey-level electrician. Generally, required knowledge includes electrical and HVAC&R concepts, building operations, and application and use of tools and instrumentation to measure performance of electrical equipment, assemblies, and systems.
  2. Minimum three years' experience installing, servicing, and operating systems manufactured by approved manufacturer.
- B. Testing Equipment and Instrumentation Quality and Calibration: For test equipment and instrumentation required to perform electrical Cx work, perform the following:
  1. Submit test equipment and instrumentation list. For each equipment or instrument, identify the following:
    - a. Equipment/instrument identification number.
    - b. Planned Cx application or use.
    - c. Manufacturer, make, model, and serial number.

- d. Calibration history, including certificates from agencies that calibrate the equipment and instrumentation.
2. Test equipment and instrumentation shall meet the following criteria:
    - a. Capable of testing and measuring performance within the specified acceptance criteria.
    - b. Be calibrated at manufacturer's recommended intervals with current calibration tags permanently affixed to the instrument being used.
    - c. Be maintained in good repair and operating condition throughout duration of use on Project.
    - d. Be recalibrated/repared if dropped or damaged in any way since last calibrated.
- C. Proprietary Test Instrumentation and Tools:
1. Equipment Manufacturer's Proprietary Instrumentation and Tools: For installed equipment included in the Cx process, test instrumentation and tools manufactured or prescribed by equipment manufacturer to service, calibrate, adjust, repair, or otherwise work on its equipment or required as a condition of equipment warranty, perform the following:
    - a. Submit proprietary instrumentation and tools list. For each instrument or tool, identify the following:
      - 1) Instrument or tool identification number.
      - 2) Equipment schedule designation of equipment for which the instrument or tool is required.
      - 3) Manufacturer, make, model, and serial number.
      - 4) Calibration history, including certificates from agencies that calibrate the instrument or tool, where appropriate.
    - b. Include a separate list of proprietary test instrumentation and tools in operation and maintenance manuals.
    - c. Electrical proprietary test instrumentation and tools become property of Owner at the time of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONSTRUCTION CHECKLISTS

- A. Prepare detailed construction checklists for electrical systems, subsystems, equipment, and components. Complete and submit construction checklists.

### 3.2 CONSTRUCTION CHECKLIST REVIEW

- A. Review and provide written comments on draft construction checklists. CxA will create required draft construction checklists and provide them to Contractor.
- B. Return draft Construction Checklist review comments within [10] <Insert number> days of receipt.
- C. When review comments have been resolved, CxA will provide final construction checklists, marked "Approved for Use, (date)."
- D. Use only construction checklists, marked "Approved for Use, (date)."

### 3.3 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Certify that electrical systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and that they are operating according to the Contract Documents and approved Shop Drawings and submittals.
- B. Certify that electrical instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents and approved Shop Drawings and submittals, and that pretest set points have been recorded.
- C. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested according to approved test procedures (for example, normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).
- D. Measure capacities and effectiveness of systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components, including operational and control functions to verify compliance with acceptance criteria.
- E. Test systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and response according to acceptance criteria.
- F. Construction Checklists: Prepare and submit detailed construction checklists for electrical systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.
  - 1. Contributors to development of construction checklists shall include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Electrical systems and equipment installers.
    - b. Electrical instrumentation and controls installers.
- G. Perform tests using design conditions, whenever possible.
  - 1. Simulated conditions may, with approval of Architect, be imposed using an artificial load when it is impractical to test under design conditions. Before simulating conditions, calibrate testing instruments. Provide equipment to simulate loads. Set simulated conditions as directed by CxA, and document simulated conditions and methods of simulation. After tests, return configurations and settings to normal operating conditions.

2. Cx test procedures may direct that set points be altered when simulating conditions is impractical.
  3. Cx test procedures may direct that sensor values be altered with a signal generator when design or simulating conditions and altering set points are impractical.
- H. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the electrical system, document the deficiency and report it to Owner. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.
- I. If seasonal testing is specified, complete appropriate initial performance tests and documentation and schedule seasonal tests.
- J. Coordinate schedule with, and perform Cx activities at the direction of the CxA.
- K. Comply with Construction Checklist requirements, including material verification, installation checks, startup, and performance tests requirements specified in Sections specifying electrical systems and equipment.
- L. Provide technicians, instrumentation, tools, and equipment to complete and document the following:
1. Performance tests.
  2. Demonstration of a sample of performance tests.
  3. Cx tests.
  4. Cx test demonstrations.

### 3.4 Cx TESTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Verification of Normal Power System Operation:
1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results for construction checklists for Division 26 electrical components associated with Normal power system.
  2. Equipment and Systems to Be Tested: Division 26 electrical equipment.
  3. Test Purpose: Verify operation of Normal power system.
  4. Test Conditions: Energize components of Normal power system, one at a time.
  5. Acceptance Criteria: Proper operation of Normal power system over a 48-hour period.
- B. Verification of Essential Power System Operation:
1. Prerequisites:
    - a. Acceptance of results for construction checklists for Division 26 electrical components associated with Essential power system.
    - b. Completion of "Verification of Normal Power System Operation" tests.
  2. Equipment and Systems to Be Tested: Division 26 electrical equipment.
  3. Test Purpose: Verify operation of Essential power system.
  4. Test Conditions:
    - a. Energize components of Normal power system.

- b. Simulate a failure of Normal power system.
- 5. Acceptance Criteria: Transfer of power from Normal to Essential power system within OPR.
- C. Verification of Control and Instrumentation:
  - 1. Prerequisites: Acceptance of results for construction checklists.
    - a. Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
    - b. Section 260926 "Lighting Control Panelboards."
    - c. Section 260936 "Modular Dimming Controls."
    - d. Section 260943.16 "Addressable-Luminaire Lighting Controls."
    - e. Section 260943.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls."
    - f. Section 262713 "Electricity Metering."
    - g. Section 263533 "Power Factor Correction Equipment."
- D. Test Purpose: Verify operation of control and monitoring systems for Normal and Essential power systems.
- E. Test Conditions:
  - 1. Energize components of Normal power system.
  - 2. Test operation of equipment.
- F. Acceptance Criteria: Operation of equipment according to OPR.

END OF SECTION 260800

## SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Time switches.
2. Photoelectric switches.
3. Standalone daylight-harvesting switching and dimming controls.
4. Indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
5. Switchbox-mounted occupancy sensors.
6. Digital timer light switches.
7. High-bay occupancy sensors.
8. Lighting contactors.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 262726 "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, non-networkable wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show installation details for the following:
  - a. Occupancy sensors.
  - b. Vacancy sensors.
2. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and elevations, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
3. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
  - a. Luminaires.
  - b. Air outlets and inlets.
  - c. Speakers.
  - d. Sprinklers.
  - e. Access panels.
  - f. Control modules.

- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranties.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lighting control device to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
  1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
  2. Program Software Backup: [**On USB media**] [**On manufacturer's website**]. Provide names, versions, and website addresses for locations of installed software.
  3. Device address list.
  4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace lighting control devices that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Faulty operation of lighting control software.
    - b. Faulty operation of lighting control devices.
    - c. **<Insert failure modes>**.
  2. Warranty Period: [**Two**] **<Insert number>** year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 TIME SWITCHES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- B. Electronic Time Switches: Solid state, programmable, with alphanumeric display; complying with UL 917.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70 and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Contact Configuration: [SPST] [DPST] [DPDT] <Insert configuration>.
  3. Contact Rating: [30-A inductive or resistive, 240-V ac] [20-A ballast load, 120-/240-V ac] <Insert rating>.
  4. Programs: Eight on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule[ **and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays**].
  5. Programs: Two on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule, allowing different set points for each day of the week[ **and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays**].
  6. Programs: <Insert number> channels; each channel is individually programmable with eight on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule.
  7. Programs: <Insert number> channels; each channel is individually programmable with two on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule with a skip-a-day weekly schedule.
  8. Programs: <Insert number> channels; each channel is individually programmable with two on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule, allowing different set points for each day of the week.
  9. Programs: <Insert number> channels; each channel is individually programmable with 40 on-off operations per week and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
  10. Programs: <Insert number> channels; each channel is individually programmable with 40 on-off operations per week, plus four seasonal schedules that modify the basic program and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
  11. Programs: <Insert configuration>[ **and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays**].
  12. Circuitry: Allow connection of a photoelectric relay as substitute for on-off function of a program[ **on selected channels**].
  13. Astronomic Time: [All] [Selected] channels.
  14. Automatic daylight savings time changeover.
  15. Battery Backup: Not less than seven days reserve, to maintain schedules and time clock.
- C. Electromechanical-Dial Time Switches: Comply with UL 917.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Contact Configuration: [SPST] [DPST] [SPDT] [DPDT] <Insert configuration>.
  3. Contact Rating: [30-A inductive or resistive, 240-V ac] [20-A ballast load, 120-/240-V ac] <Insert rating>.
  4. Circuitry: Allows connection of a photoelectric relay as a substitute for the on-off function of a program.
  5. Astronomic time dial.
  6. Eight-Day Program: Uniquely programmable for each weekday and holidays.
  7. Skip-a-day mode.
  8. Wound-spring reserve carryover mechanism to keep time during power failures, minimum of [16] <Insert number> hours.

## 2.2 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description: Solid state, with [SPST] [DPST] <Insert configuration> dry contacts rated for [1000 W incandescent] [or] [1800 VA inductive] <Insert value>, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A, and compatible with ballasts and LED lamps.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range[, and a directional lens in front of the photocell to prevent fixed light sources from causing turn-off].
  3. Time Delay: Fifteen-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
  4. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor.
  5. Mounting: Twist lock complies with NEMA C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure.
  6. Failure Mode: Luminaire stays ON.
- C. Description: Solid state, with [SPST] [DPST] dry contacts rated for [1000 W incandescent] [or] [1800 VA inductive], to operate connected load, complying with UL 773, and compatible with CFL and LED lamps.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
  3. Time Delay: Thirty-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
  4. Lightning Arrester: Air-gap type.
  5. Mounting: Twist lock complying with NEMA C136.10, with base.
  6. Failure Mode: Luminaire stays ON.
- D. Description: Solid state; one set of NO dry contacts rated for [24 V dc at 1 A] [24 V ac at 1 A], to operate connected load, complying with UL 773, and compatible with [luminaire] [power pack] [lighting control panelboard].
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
  3. Time Delay: Thirty-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
  4. Mounting: 1/2-inch threaded male conduit.
  5. Failure Mode: Luminaire stays ON.
  6. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for [20-A] <Insert value> [ballast] [or] [LED] load at 120- and 277-V ac, for [13-A] <Insert value> tungsten at 120-V ac, and for [1 hp] <Insert value> at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
    - a. LED status lights to indicate load status.

- b. Plenum rated.
7. Power Pack: Digital controller capable of accepting [**three**] [**four**] <Insert number> RJ45 inputs with [**one**] [**two**] outputs rated for [**20-A**] <Insert value> incandescent[ **or LED**] load at 120- and 277-V ac, for [**13-A**] [**16-A**] <Insert value> [**ballast**] [ **or**] [**LED**] at 120- and 277-V ac, and for [**1 hp**] <Insert value> at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
- a. With integral current monitoring
  - b. Compatible with digital addressable lighting interface.
  - c. Plenum rated.

### 2.3 DAYLIGHT-HARVESTING SWITCHING CONTROLS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description: System operates indoor lighting.
- C. Sequence of Operation: As daylight increases, the lights are turned off at a predetermined level. As daylight decreases, the lights are turned on at a predetermined level.
  - 1. Lighting control set point is based on two lighting conditions:
    - a. When no daylight is present.
    - b. When significant daylight is present (target level).
    - c. System programming is done with two hand-held, remote-control tools.
- D. Ceiling-Mounted Switching Controls: Solid-state, light-level sensor unit, with [**integrated**] power pack, that detects changes in indoor lighting levels that are perceived by the eye.
- E. Ceiling-Mounted Switching Controls: Solid-state, light-level sensor unit, with separate power pack[ **mounted on luminaire**], that detects changes in indoor lighting levels that are perceived by the eye.
- F. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories:
  - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 2. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F.
  - 3. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the associated power pack, complying with UL 773A. Sensor shall be powered by the power pack.
  - 4. Sensor Output: Digital signal compatible with power pack.
  - 5. Sensor type: [**Open loop**] [**Closed loop**].
  - 6. Zone: [**Single**] [**Multi**].
  - 7. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for [**20-A**] <Insert value> [**ballast**] [**or**] [**LED**] load at 120- and 277-V ac, for [**13-A**] <Insert value> tungsten at 120-V ac, and for [**1 hp**] <Insert value> at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
    - a. LED status lights to indicate load status.

- b. Plenum rated.
8. Power Pack: Digital controller capable of accepting [3] [4] <Insert number> RJ45 inputs with [one] [two] outputs rated for [20-A] <Insert value> incandescent[ or] [LED] load at 120- and 277-V ac, for [13-A] [16-A] <Insert value> [ballast] [ or LED]at 120- and 277-V ac, and for [1 hp] <Insert value> at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
    - a. With integral current monitoring
    - b. Compatible with digital addressable lighting interface.
    - c. Plenum rated.
  9. General Space Sensors Light-Level Monitoring Range: 10 to 200 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
  10. Atrium Space Sensors Light-Level Monitoring Range: 100 to 1000 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
  11. Skylight Sensors Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1000 to 10,000 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
  12. Time Delay: Adjustable from 5 to 300 seconds to prevent cycling.
  13. Set-Point Adjustment: Equip with deadband adjustment of 25, 50, and 75 percent above the "on" set point, or provide with separate adjustable "on" and "off" set points.
  14. Test Mode: User selectable, overriding programmed time delay to allow settings check.
  15. Control Load Status: User selectable to confirm that load wiring is correct.
  16. Indicator: Two digital displays to indicate the beginning of on-off cycles.

## 2.4 DAYLIGHT-HARVESTING DIMMING CONTROLS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description: Sensing daylight and electrical lighting levels, the system adjusts the indoor electrical lighting levels. As daylight increases, the lights are dimmed.
  1. Lighting control set point is based on two lighting conditions:
    - a. When no daylight is present (target level).
    - b. When significant daylight is present.
  2. System programming is done with two hand-held, remote-control tools.
    - a. Initial setup tool.
    - b. Tool for occupants to adjust the target levels by increasing the set point up to 25 percent, or by minimizing the electric lighting level.
- C. Ceiling-Mounted Dimming Controls: Solid-state, light-level sensor unit, with [integrated] [separate] power pack[ mounted on luminaire], to detect changes in indoor lighting levels that are perceived by the eye.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Sensor Output: 0- to 10-V dc to operate luminaires. Sensor is powered by controller unit.
  3. Light-Level Sensor Set-Point Adjustment Range: 20 to 60 fc.
- E. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for [20-A] <Insert value> [ballast] [or] [LED] load at 120- and 277-V ac, for [13-A] <Insert value> tungsten at 120-V ac, and for [1 hp] <Insert value> at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
1. LED status lights to indicate load status.
  2. Plenum rated.
- F. Power Pack: Digital controller capable of accepting [3] [4] <Insert number> RJ45 inputs with [one] [two] outputs rated for [20-A] <Insert value> incandescent [ or] [LED] load at 120- and 277-V ac, for [13-A] [16-A] <Insert value> [ballast load] [or] [LED] at 120- and 277-V ac, and for [1 hp] <Insert value> at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
1. With integral current monitoring
    - a. Compatible with digital addressable lighting interface.
      - 1) Plenum rated.

## 2.5 INDOOR OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. General Requirements for Sensors:
1. [Wall] [Ceiling]-mounted, solid-state indoor [occupancy] [and] [vacancy] sensors.
  2. [Passive infrared] [Ultrasonic] [Dual] technology.
  3. [Integrated] [Separate] power pack.
  4. [Hardwired] [Wireless] connection to switch[ and BAS] [; and BAS and lighting control system].
  5. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  6. Operation:
    - a. Occupancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
    - b. Vacancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, lights are manually turned on and sensor turns lights off when the room is unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
    - c. Combination Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, sensor shall be programmed to turn lights on when coverage area is occupied and turn them off when unoccupied, or to turn off lights that have been manually turned on; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.

7. Sensor Output: [**Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A**] [**Sensor is powered from the power pack**] [**Wireless**].
  8. Power: [**Line voltage**] [**Integral photovoltaic collector**].
  9. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A [**ballast**] [**or**] [**LED**] load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
  10. Mounting:
    - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
    - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
    - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
  11. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
  12. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
  13. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc; turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.
- C. PIR Type: [**Wall**] [**Ceiling**] mounted; detect occupants in coverage area by their heat and movement.
1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in..
  2. Detection Coverage (Room, Ceiling Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere in a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.
  3. Detection Coverage (Corridor, Ceiling Mounted): Detect occupancy within 90 feet when mounted on a 10-foot- high ceiling.
  4. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of [**1000 square feet**] [**2000 square feet**] [**3000 square feet**] when mounted 48 inches above finished floor.
- D. Ultrasonic Type: [**Wall**] [**Ceiling**] mounted; detect occupants in coverage area through pattern changes of reflected ultrasonic energy.
1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.
  2. Detection Coverage (Small Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 600 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.
  3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.
  4. Detection Coverage (Large Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 2000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.
  5. Detection Coverage (Corridor): Detect occupancy anywhere within 90 feet when mounted on a 10-foot- high ceiling in a corridor not wider than 14 feet.
  6. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of [**1000 square feet**] [**2000 square feet**] [**3000 square feet**] when mounted 84 inches above finished floor.

- E. Dual-Technology Type: **[Wall]** **[Ceiling]** mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.
1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
  2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in., and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.
  3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.
  4. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of **[1000 square feet]** **[2000 square feet]** **[3000 square feet]** when mounted 48 inches above finished floor.

## 2.6 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor with manual on-off switch, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox[, **with provisions for connection to BAS**] **[using hardwired connection]** **[using wireless connection]**.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application[, **and shall comply with California Title 24**].
  2. Occupancy Sensor Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn lights off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
  3. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F.
  4. Switch Rating: Not less than 800-VA **[ballast]** [ or ] **[LED]** load at 120 V, 1200-VA **[ballast]** [ or ] **[LED]** load at 277 V, and 800-W incandescent.
- C. Wall-Switch Sensor Tag WS1:
1. Standard Range: 180-degree field of view, field adjustable from 180 to 40 degrees; with a minimum coverage area of **[900 sq. ft.]** **[2100 sq. ft.]**.
  2. Sensing Technology: **[PIR]** **[Dual technology - PIR and ultrasonic]**.
  3. Switch Type: **[SP.]** **[SP, dual circuit.]** **[SP, manual "on," automatic "off."]** **[SP, field-selectable automatic "on," or manual "on," automatic "off."]**
  4. Capable of controlling load in three-way application.
  5. Voltage: **[Match the circuit voltage]** **[120 V]** **[277 V]** **[Dual voltage - 120 and 277 V]**.
  6. Ambient-Light Override: Concealed, field-adjustable, light-level sensor from 10 to 150 fc. The switch prevents the lights from turning on when the light level is higher than the set point of the sensor.
  7. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
  8. Concealed, "off" time-delay selector at 30 seconds and 5, 10, and 20 minutes.
  9. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of the space and helps eliminate false "off" switching.
  10. Color: **[White]** **[Black]** **<Insert color>**.
  11. Faceplate: Color matched to switch.

D. Wall-Switch Sensor Tag WS2:

1. Standard Range: 210-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft..
2. Sensing Technology: PIR.
3. Switch Type: [SP.] [SP, dual circuit.] [SP, manual "on," automatic "off."] [SP, field-selectable automatic "on," or manual "on," automatic "off."]
4. Capable of controlling load in three-way application.
5. Voltage: [Match the circuit voltage] [120 V] [277 V] [Dual voltage, 120 and 277 V].
6. Ambient-Light Override: Concealed, field-adjustable, light-level sensor from 10 to 150 fc. The switch prevents the lights from turning on when the light level is higher than the set point of the sensor.
7. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
8. Concealed, "off" time-delay selector at 30 seconds and 5, 10, and 20 minutes.
9. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of the space and helps eliminate false "off" switching.
10. Color: [White] [Black] <Insert color>.
11. Faceplate: Color matched to switch.

2.7 DIGITAL TIMER LIGHT SWITCH

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description: Combination digital timer and conventional switch lighting control unit. Switchbox-mounted, backlit LCD display, with selectable time interval in [10] [20] minute increments.
1. Rated 960 W at 120-V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120-V ac or 10 amps at 277-V ac for [ballast] [or] [LED], and 1/4 horsepower at 120-V ac.
  2. Integral relay for connection to BAS.
  3. Voltage: [Match the circuit voltage] [120 V] [277 V] [Dual voltage - 120 and 277 V].
  4. Color: [White] [Black] <Insert color>.
  5. Faceplate: Color matched to switch.

2.8 HIGH-BAY OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description: Solid-state unit. The unit is designed to operate with the lamp and ballasts indicated.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Operation: Turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and to half-power when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights to half-power that is adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 16 minutes.
  3. Continuous Lamp Monitoring: When lamps are dimmed continuously for 24 hours, automatically turn lamps on to full power for 15 minutes for every 24 hours of continuous dimming.
  4. Power: Line voltage.

5. Operating Ambient Conditions: 32 to 149 deg F.
  6. Mounting: Threaded pipe.
  7. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
  8. Detector Technology: PIR.
  9. Power and dimming control from the luminaire ballast that has been modified to include the dimming capacitor[ **and MyzerPORT option**].
- C. Detector Coverage: User selectable by interchangeable PIR lenses, suitable for mounting heights from 12 to 50 feet.
- D. Accessories: Obtain manufacturer's installation and maintenance kit with laser alignment tool for sensor positioning and power port connectors.

## 2.9 EXTREME-TEMPERATURE OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description: Ceiling-mounted, solid-state, extreme-temperature occupancy sensors with a separate power pack.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended application in damp locations.
  2. Operation: Turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 30 minutes.
  3. Operating Ambient Conditions: From minus 40 to plus 125 deg F.
  4. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor is powered from the power pack.
  5. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A [ballast] [ or ] [LED] load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
  6. Mounting:
    - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
    - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
    - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind cover.
  7. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
  8. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 10 fc; keep lighting off when selected lighting level is present.
- C. Detector Technology: PIR. Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area by their heat and movement.
1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in..
  2. Detection Coverage (Room): Detect occupancy anywhere in a circular area of 1500 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.

3. Detection Coverage (High Bay): Detect occupancy within 25 feet when mounted on a 25-foot- high ceiling.

## 2.10 OUTDOOR MOTION SENSORS

A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

B. Description: Solid-state outdoor motion sensors.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application[, **and shall comply with California Title 24**].
2. **[PIR] [Dual-technology (PIR and ultrasonic)]** type, weatherproof. Detect occurrences of 6-inch- minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in.. Comply with UL 773A.
3. Switch Rating:
  - a. Luminaire-Mounted Sensor: **[1000-W incandescent, 500-VA fluorescent/LED]** **<Insert rating>**.
  - b. Separately Mounted Sensor: Dry contacts rated for 20-A **[ballast]** [ or ] **[LED]** load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
4. Switch Type: **[SP.] [SP, dual circuit.] [SP, manual "on," automatic "off.]" [SP, field-selectable automatic "on," or manual "on," automatic "off.]" [ With bypass switch to override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.]**
5. Voltage: **[Match the circuit voltage] [120-V] [277-V] [Dual voltage, 120- and 277-V]** type.
6. Detector Coverage:
  - a. Standard Range: 210-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft..
  - b. Long Range: 180-degree field of view and 110-foot detection range.
  - c. **<Insert coverage area>**.
7. Ambient-Light Override: Concealed, field-adjustable, light-level sensor from 10 to 150 fc. The switch prevents the lights from turning on when the light level is higher than the set point of the sensor.
8. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
9. Concealed, "off" time-delay selector at 30 seconds and 5, 10, and 20 minutes.
10. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of the space and help eliminate false "off" switching.
11. Operating Ambient Conditions: Suitable for operation in ambient temperatures ranging from minus 40 to plus 130 deg F, rated as "raintight" according to UL 773A.

## 2.11 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- B. Description: Electrically operated and [**mechanically**] [**electrically**] held, combination-type lighting contactors with [**fusible switch**] [**nonfused disconnect**], complying with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.
1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including tungsten filament, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less THD of normal load current).
  2. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the point of installation.
  3. Enclosure: Comply with NEMA 250.
  4. Provide with control and pilot devices as [**indicated on Drawings**] [**scheduled**], matching the NEMA type specified for the enclosure.
- C. Interface with DDC System for HVAC: Provide hardware interface to enable the DDC system for HVAC to monitor and control lighting contactors.
1. Monitoring: On-off status, <**Insert monitoring point**>.
  2. Control: On-off operation, <**Insert control point**>.

## 2.12 EMERGENCY SHUNT RELAY

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description: NC, electrically held relay, arranged for wiring in parallel with manual [**or automatic**] switching contacts; complying with UL 924.
1. Coil Rating: [**120**] [**277**] V.

## 2.13 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than [**No. 18**] [**No. 22**] [**No. 24**] AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than [**No. 14**] [**No. 16**] [**No. 18**] AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine lighting control devices before installation. Reject lighting control devices that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

- B. Examine walls and ceilings for suitable conditions where lighting control devices will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 SENSOR INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.
- C. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90-percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 CONTACTOR INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Mount electrically held lighting contactors with elastomeric isolator pads to eliminate structure-borne vibration unless contactors are installed in an enclosure with factory-installed vibration isolators.

### 3.4 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
  - 2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.

- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: **[Owner will engage]** **[Engage]** a qualified testing agency to evaluate lighting control devices and perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections[ **with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**]:
  - 1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within **[12]** **<Insert number>** months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting lighting control devices to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to **[two]** **<Insert number>** visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
  - 1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.
  - 2. For daylighting controls, adjust set points and deadband controls to suit Owner's operations.
  - 3. Align high-bay occupancy sensors using manufacturer's laser aiming tool.

### 3.8 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for **[two]** **<Insert number>** years.
- B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within **[two]** **<Insert number>** years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
  - 1. Upgrade Notice: At least **[30]** **<Insert number>** days to allow Owner to schedule and access the system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Coordinate demonstration of products specified in this Section with demonstration requirements for low-voltage, programmable lighting control systems specified in Section 260943.16 "Addressable-Luminaire Lighting Controls" and Section 260943.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls."
- B. **[Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train] [Train]** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices.

END OF SECTION 260923

## SECTION 260943.16 - ADDRESSABLE-LUMINAIRE LIGHTING CONTROLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes lighting controls for addressable luminaires, based on DALI digital controls.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BAS: Building automation system.
- B. DALI: Digital addressable lighting interface.
- C. Data Bus: Two wires used to communicate with bus connected devices.
- D. DDC: Direct digital control.
- E. Device: A collective term for DALI-compliant bus connected devices, including fluorescent ballasts, incandescent luminaires, manual switches, switching relays, and similar. Sometimes also called "slave unit."
- F. Group: A set of devices that respond at the same time to messages on the data bus.
- G. IP: Internet protocol.
- H. IR: Infrared.
- I. LAN: Local area network.
- J. Monitoring: Acquisition, processing, communication, and display of equipment status data, metered electrical parameter values, power quality evaluation data, event and alarm signals, tabulated reports, and event logs.
- K. Scene: Digital light level associated with a preset; stored in the luminaire ballast.
- L. TCP/IP: Transmission control protocol/Internet protocol.
- M. VPN: Virtual private network.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for control modules, power distribution components, relays, manual switches and plates, and conductors and cables.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
3. Sound data including results of operational tests of central dimming controls.
4. Operational documentation for software and firmware.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Floor Plans: Location, orientation, and coverage area of each sensor; group designations; and other specific design symbols and designations as required to define the installation, location, and configuration of all control devices.
2. Address Drawing: Reflected ceiling plan and floor plans, showing data-bus-connected devices, address for each device, and device groups. The plans shall be based on construction plans, using the same legend, symbols, and schedules.
3. Point List and Data Bus Load: Summary list of all control devices, sensors, ballasts, and other loads connected to each data bus and total connected load for each data bus. Include percentage of rated connected load and device addresses.
4. Wire Termination Diagrams and Schedules: Coordinate nomenclature and presentation with Drawings and block diagram. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
5. Block Diagram: Show interconnections between components specified in this Section and devices furnished with power distribution system components. Indicate data communication paths and identify networks, data buses, data gateways, concentrators, and other devices used. Describe characteristics of network and other data communication lines.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Submit evidence that lighting controls are compatible with connected monitoring and control devices and systems specified in [**Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."**] <Insert Section number and title.>

1. Show interconnecting signal and control wiring, and interface devices that show compatibility of inputs and outputs.
2. For control interfaces and adapters, list network protocols and provide statements from manufacturers that input and output devices comply with interoperability requirements of the protocol.

B. Field quality-control reports.

C. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

D. Software licenses and upgrades required by and installed for operation and programming of digital and analog devices.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lighting controls to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
  - 1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
  - 2. Program Software Backup: [**On USB drive.**] [**Username and password for manufacturer's support website.**]
  - 3. Device address list.
  - 4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.
  - 5. Adjustments of scene preset controls, adjustable fade rates, and fade overrides.
  - 6. Operation of adjustable zone controls.
  - 7. Testing and adjusting of panic and emergency power features.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Bus Power Supplies: Equal to [**two**] **<Insert number>** percent of amount installed, but no fewer than [**two**] **<Insert number>**.
  - 2. Controller/Gateways: Equal to [**two**] **<Insert number>** percent of amount installed, but no fewer than [**two**] **<Insert number>**.
  - 3. Incandescent Switching and Dimming Modules: Equal to [**two**] **<Insert number>** percent of amount installed, but no fewer than [**two**] **<Insert number>**.
  - 4. Fluorescent Ballasts: Equal to [**two**] **<Insert number>** percent of amount installed, but no fewer than [**two**] **<Insert number>**.
  - 5. Lighting Control Relays: Equal to [**two**] **<Insert number>** percent of amount installed, but no fewer than [**two**] **<Insert number>**.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of lighting controls that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Software: Failure of input and output to execute switching or dimming commands.
    - b. Failure of modular relays to operate under manual or software commands.
    - c. Ballast failure.
    - d. Damage of electronic components due to transient voltage surges.
  - 2. Warranty Periods:
    - a. For DALI Ballasts: [**Three**] **<Insert number>** years from date of Substantial Completion.

- b. For Control Components That Are Not Part of Ballasts: [**Three**] <Insert number> years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

#### A. DALI:

1. Components: Individually addressable devices (such as ballasts, relays, dimmers, and switches) that are operated from digital signals received through a DALI-compliant bus, from data-entry and -retrieval devices (such as computers, Internet portals, hand-held IR programming devices, wired Ethernet hubs, wireless IEEE 802.11 hubs[, and] <Insert digital communications device>). Devices also report status to data-entry and -retrieval devices through the bus.
2. Digital Control: Use peer-to-peer communication and distributed logic, where the failure of any single component shall be automatically isolated and not affect global system functions.

#### B. Ethernet LAN:

1. Provide an Ethernet LAN to connect controller/gateways to a PC running a Microsoft Windows operating system. Comply with requirements in Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."
2. Ethernet Protocols: Comply with and be compatible with 10/100 BaseT TCP/IP routers and networks.
3. TCP/IP Modem: Capable of maintaining a secure Internet connection using VPN or equivalent protocol.

#### C. Interface with HVAC DDC System: Hardware and software shall interface with HVAC DDC system to monitor, control, display, and record data for use in processing reports. Comply with requirements in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."

##### 1. Hardwired Points:

- a. Monitoring: On-off status, <Insert monitoring point>.
- b. Control: On-off operation, <Insert control point>.

2. Communication Interface: Comply with [ASHRAE 135] <Insert type of interface>. Communication shall interface with HVAC DDC system to remotely control and monitor lighting from HVAC DDC system operator workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at lighting panel shall be available through DDC system for HVAC. Comply with requirements in Section 230923 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."

#### D. Surge Protective Device: Factory installed as an integral part of control components or field-mounted surge protective device complying with UL 1449, SPD Type 2.

- E. Operation: Input signal from digital signal sources switches or dims DALI devices associated with ballasts or luminaires, or switches field-deployed, DALI-compliant, control relays.
  - 1. Each device and relay is connected to a digital data bus.
  - 2. Each DALI device and relay has a digital address and can be operated by a digital signal.
  - 3. Each device or relay can be assigned to any or all of 16 available groups connected to a single data bus.
  - 4. Each dimming ballast may have as many as 16 preset lighting levels or scenes. Scenes can be programmed to ballasts and may be applied to groups.
- F. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- G. Comply with 47 CFR 15, Subparts A and B, for Class A digital devices.
- H. Comply with protocol described in IEC 60929, Annexes E and G, for DALI lighting control devices, wiring, and computer hardware and software.
- I. Comply with UL 916.

## 2.2 BUS POWER SUPPLY

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description: Supply power to data bus for 64 addressable devices, suitable for use with NFPA 70, Class 2 control circuit.
  - 1. Primary Power: Field selectable, 120 and 277 V.
  - 2. Power Supply: Regulated to maintain the operating voltage above 15-V dc under full load, and rated for full charging load of 250 mA and a minimum maintained connected load of 190 mA.
  - 3. Pilot Lights: Indicate data bus ground-fault and data bus traffic.

## 2.3 CONTROLLER/GATEWAYS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description: DALI controller/gateways link the distributed data buses with an Ethernet network to provide computer configuration, control, analysis, and maintenance. Controller/gateways operate independently and continue to process local inputs and schedules when disconnected from the LAN. Controller/gateways shall provide local intelligence and features including the following:
  - 1. Integrated real-time clock with automatic daylight savings adjustment and leap-year correction.
  - 2. Integrated sunrise/sunset support based on the site location (latitude and longitude).
  - 3. Automatic time schedules, to control groups for scheduled occupancy with support for holiday exceptions.

4. Two digital outputs for additional control and interlocking with external equipment such as fans, valves, and security panels.
  5. Support [one] [two] data bus(es).
  6. Computer Monitoring and Configuration: The controller/gateway shall allow configuration, monitoring, and analysis from PCs on the Ethernet LAN.
- C. Each data bus shall have the capacity to control 64 addressable devices, using NFPA 70, Class 2 control circuit.
1. Each data bus shall have the capacity to control up to 16 groups and scenes.
  2. 10 BaseT Ethernet port for DDC system for HVAC connection.
  3. LED indicator lights for Ethernet status (link, send, and receive), power-on, and LAN failure.
  4. Linking of switch and sensor inputs to relay and ballast outputs.
  5. Viewing relay and ballast output status.
  6. Controlling relay and ballast outputs.
  7. Setting device addresses.
  8. Assigning switch and sensor inputs and relay and ballast output modes.
- D. Allow connection of the following DALI-compliant addressable devices:
1. Fluorescent luminaire switching and dimming, for linear and compact lamps.
  2. Incandescent luminaire switching and dimming.
  3. HID and HPS luminaire switching and dimming.
  4. LED luminaire switching and dimming.
  5. Occupancy and photoelectric sensors.
  6. Emergency lighting interface complying with UL 924.
- E. Stores system programming in nonvolatile memory.
1. Switch to enable or disable software programming.

## 2.4 USER INTERFACE

- A. Workstations: A laptop PC, with Microsoft Windows operating system and lighting control system management software installed. With automatic backup.
1. Include documentation, storage media, and licensing for a minimum of five concurrent users.
- B. Tablet Computer: Handheld, with custom graphical user-interface software, supplied by the controller/gateway supplier. The software shall provide for all DALI-protocol programming commands to be applied to the controller/gateway via a tethered connection.
- C. Web Interface: Internet portal, with [one] [10] <Insert number> unique username and password(s), and a custom graphical user interface, allowing DALI-protocol programming commands to be applied to the controller gateway via [LAN] [the Internet].
- D. IR Programming Assistant: Handheld, with custom graphical user-interface software, supplied by the controller/gateway supplier to program the manual switches.

## 2.5 LIGHTING CONTROL SYSTEM MANAGEMENT SOFTWARE

- A. The software shall provide for programming, configuring, and monitoring all devices connected to all data buses of the lighting control system, using application-specific software with Microsoft Windows-based, user-friendly software with graphical user-interface designed screens.
  - 1. The software shall be object oriented with pop-up menus and built-in help screens. All specified features of the data-bus-connected devices and those associated with controller/gateways shall be included in the software.

## 2.6 LUMINAIRE SWITCHING AND DIMMING MODULES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description: Comply with DALI exponential dimming curve calibrated for the connected lamp type, group, and scene settings, and with DALI light-level and configuration commands. Dimmer rise time shall be not less than 15 microseconds.

## 2.7 BALLAST SWITCHING AND DIMMING MODULES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Each ballast or group shall be addressable and shall include on-off, fade, dimming, scene settings, and other standard DALI control functions and as required to meet the sequence of operation.
- C. Ballasts: Comply with requirements in [**Section 265116 "Fluorescent Interior Lighting" for ballasts for linear fluorescent lamps**] [**and**] [**Section 265123 "HID Interior Lighting" for ballasts for HID lamps**]; electronic programmed-start; and the following:
  - 1. Starting Method: Programmed rapid start with antifeedback (turns on at previously set light level).
  - 2. Dimming Range: 100 to 10 percent of rated lumens unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Ballast Factor: 1.0 at full output; 0.01 at full dim.
  - 4. Input Voltage Range: 108 to 305 V.

## 2.8 SENSORS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices." All sensors shall be DALI-protocol compliant.
- B. Daylight Harvesting Switching and Dimming Controls:
  - 1. Adjustments and Set Points: All adjustments with exception of sensor range shall be made via the communication network.
  - 2. Remote Monitoring and Reporting: Sensor value shall be displayed when queried by lighting management software or shall automatically report based on a change of value or change of time period setting.

- C. Indoor Occupancy Sensors: May be powered directly from the lighting control network or with a standalone power supply. Units powered with a standalone power supply shall interface with the lighting control system through an electrically isolated digital input.

## 2.9 RELAYS

- A. Relays: Electrically operated, mechanically held single-pole switch, rated at 20 A at 277 V. Short-circuit current rating shall be not less than 5 kA. Pilot light indicates when relay is closed and latched. Control shall be by DALI digital data bus. Relay status shall be displayed when queried by lighting management software.
- B. Relay Panel: A single enclosure with incoming lighting branch circuits, relays, and connection to the DALI digital control network.
  - 1. Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 1 unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Barriers to separate low-voltage and line-voltage components.
  - 3. Directory: Cover mounted, identifying each relay with its device address and naming the load controlled.
- C. Individually Mounted Relays:
  - 1. Enclosure: Standard outlet box or NEMA 250, Type 1 unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Directory: Cover mounted, identifying each relay with its device address.

## 2.10 MANUAL SWITCHES AND PLATES

- A. Connection Type: RS-485 protocol, [**Category 5**] [**Category 5e**] UTP cable, using RJ-45 connectors. Power shall be from the control unit.
- B. Push-Button Switches: Modular, operating over the DALI digital data bus.
  - 1. Each switch shall control the following functions, in coordination with programmed sequence of operation and related sensors:
    - a. On.
    - b. Off.
    - c. Dimming, increase light level.
    - d. Dimming, decrease light level.
    - e. Return to preset light level.
  - 2. LED Pilot Lights: On to indicate that the control is active, or when the manual control is operated.
  - 3. Match color and style specified in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
  - 4. Integral IR receiver for programming.
- C. Wall Plates: Single and multigang plates as specified in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
- D. Legend: Engraved or permanently silk-screened on wall plate where indicated. Use designations indicated on Drawings.

## 2.11 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Class 2 Power Source: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG, complying with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Class 2 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than [No. 18] [No. 22] [No. 24] AWG, complying with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than [No. 14] [No. 16] [No. 18] AWG, complying with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- D. Digital and Multiplexed Signal Cables: UTP cable with copper conductors, complying with [Category 5e] [Category 6] for horizontal copper cable and with Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters[ **and except in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used**]. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
  - 1. Install plenum cable in environmental airspaces, including plenum ceilings.
  - 2. Comply with requirements for cable trays specified in Section 260536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems."
  - 3. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- C. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
- D. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

### 3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, boxes, cabinets, and terminals. Comply with identification requirements specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

- C. Identify all ceiling-mounted controls with data bus number and device address.
- D. Label each device cable within 6 inches of connection to bus power supply or termination block.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - 1. Test continuity of each circuit.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections[ **with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**]:
  - 1. Test each bus controller using local and remote controls.
  - 2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 3. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- C. Field Test Reports:
  - 1. Printed list of all points created from actual queries of all addressed control points to include lamps, ballasts, manual controls, and sensors.
  - 2. Event log verifying the performance of all devices generating event messages to include occupancy sensors, control buttons, alarm messages, and any other change of value messages.
- D. Lighting controls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies bus controllers included and describes query results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations made after remedial action.

### 3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. [**Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform**] [**Perform**] startup service.
  - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Activate luminaires and verify that all lamps are operating at 100 percent.
  - 3. Burn-in fluorescent lamps at 100 percent for 100 hours.
  - 4. Confirm correct communications wiring, initiate communications between DALI devices and controller/gateways, and program the lighting control system according to approved configuration schedules, time-of-day schedules, and input override assignments.
  - 5. **<Insert startup steps if any>**.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within [12] <Insert number> months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to [two] <Insert number> visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

### 3.6 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for [two] <Insert number> years.
- B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within [two] <Insert number> years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
  - 1. Upgrade Notice: At least [30] <Insert number> days to allow Owner to schedule and access the system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

### 3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. [Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train] [Train] Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain the control unit and operator interface.

END OF SECTION 260943.16

## SECTION 262213 - LOW-VOLTAGE DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes distribution, dry-type transformers with a nominal primary and secondary rating of 600 V and less, with capacities up to 1500 kVA.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type and size of transformer.
  - 2. Include rated nameplate data, capacities, weights, dimensions, minimum clearances, installed devices and features, and performance for each type and size of transformer.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Source quality-control reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For transformers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
  - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Inspection: On receipt, inspect for and note any shipping damage to packaging and transformer.
  - 1. If manufacturer packaging is removed for inspection, and transformer will be stored after inspection, re-package transformer using original or new packaging materials that provide protection equivalent to manufacturer's packaging.
- B. Storage: Store in a warm, dry, and temperature-stable location in original shipping packaging.
- C. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat according to manufacturer's written instructions within the enclosure of each ventilated-type unit, throughout periods during which equipment is not energized and when transformer is not in a space that is continuously under normal control of temperature and humidity.
- D. Handling: Follow manufacturer's instructions for lifting and transporting transformers.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each transformer type from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 GENERAL TRANSFORMER REQUIREMENTS

- A. Description: Factory-assembled and -tested, air-cooled units for 60-Hz service.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
  - 1. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- C. Transformers Rated 15 kVA and Larger:
  - 1. Comply with 10 CFR 431 (DOE 2016) efficiency levels.
  - 2. Marked as compliant with DOE 2016 efficiency levels by an NRTL.
- D. Shipping Restraints: Paint or otherwise color-code bolts, wedges, blocks, and other restraints that are to be removed after installation and before energizing. Use fluorescent colors that are easily identifiable inside the transformer enclosure.

## 2.3 DISTRIBUTION TRANSFORMERS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70, and list and label as complying with UL 1561.
- B. Cores: Electrical grade, non-aging silicon steel with high permeability and low hysteresis losses.
  - 1. One leg per phase.
  - 2. Core volume shall allow efficient transformer operation at 10 percent above the nominal tap voltage.
  - 3. Grounded to enclosure.
- C. Coils: Continuous windings without splices except for taps.
  - 1. Coil Material: Aluminum
  - 2. Internal Coil Connections: Brazed or pressure type.
  - 3. Terminal Connections: Welded.
- D. Enclosure: Ventilated.
  - 1. NEMA 250, Type 2: Core and coil shall be encapsulated within resin compound using a vacuum-pressure impregnation process] to seal out moisture and air.
  - 2. KVA Ratings: Based on convection cooling only and not relying on auxiliary fans.
  - 3. Wiring Compartment: Sized for conduit entry and wiring installation.
  - 4. Finish: Comply with NEMA 250.
    - a. Finish Color: ANSI 49 gray weather-resistant enamel.
- E. Taps for Transformers 3 kVA and Smaller: None.
- F. Taps for Transformers 7.5 to 24 kVA: One 5 percent tap above and one 5 percent tap below normal full capacity.
- G. Taps for Transformers 25 kVA and Larger: Two 2.5 percent taps above and four 2.5 percent taps below normal full capacity.
- H. Insulation Class, Smaller Than 30 kVA: 180 deg C, UL-component-recognized insulation system with a maximum of 115 deg C rise above 40 deg C ambient temperature.
- I. Insulation Class, 30 kVA and Larger: 220 deg C, UL-component-recognized insulation system with a maximum of 115 deg C rise above 40 deg C ambient temperature.
- J. Grounding: Provide ground-bar kit or a ground bar installed on the inside of the transformer enclosure.
- K. K-Factor Rating: Transformers indicated to be K-factor rated shall comply with UL 1561 requirements for nonsinusoidal load current-handling capability to the degree defined by designated K-factor.
  - 1. Unit shall not overheat when carrying full-load current with harmonic distortion corresponding to designated K-factor, without exceeding the indicated insulation class in a 40 deg C maximum ambient and a 24-hour average ambient of 30 deg C.
  - 2. Indicate value of K-factor on transformer nameplate.

3. Unit shall comply with requirements of DOE 2016 efficiency levels when tested according to NEMA TP 2 with a K-factor equal to one.
- L. Electrostatic Shielding: Each winding shall have an independent, single, full-width copper electrostatic shield arranged to minimize interwinding capacitance.
1. Arrange coil leads and terminal strips to minimize capacitive coupling between input and output terminals.
  2. Include special terminal for grounding the shield.
- M. Neutral: Rated 200 percent of full load current for K-factor-rated transformers.
- N. Low-Sound-Level Requirements: Maximum sound levels when factory tested according to IEEE C57.12.91, as follows:
1. 9.00 kVA and Less: 40 dBA.
  2. 9.01 to 30.00 kVA: 45 dBA.
  3. 30.01 to 50.00 kVA: 45 dBA for K-factors of 1, 4, and 9. 48 dBA for K-factors of 13 and 20.
  4. 50.01 to 150.00 kVA: 50 dBA for K-factors of 1, 4, and 9, and 53 dBA for K-factors of 13 and 20.
  5. 300.01 to 500.00 kVA: 60 dBA for K-factors of 1, 4, and 9. 63 dBA for K-factors of 13 and 20.

## 2.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Nameplates: Engraved, laminated-acrylic or melamine plastic signs for each distribution transformer, mounted with corrosion-resistant screws. Nameplates and label products are specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## 2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and inspect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.01 and IEEE C57.12.91.
1. Resistance measurements of all windings at rated voltage connections and at all tap connections.
  2. Ratio tests at rated voltage connections and at all tap connections.
  3. Phase relation and polarity tests at rated voltage connections.
  4. No load losses, and excitation current and rated voltage at rated voltage connections.
  5. Impedance and load losses at rated current and rated frequency at rated voltage connections.
  6. Applied and induced tensile tests.
  7. Regulation and efficiency at rated load and voltage.
  8. Insulation-Resistance Tests:
    - a. High-voltage to ground.
    - b. Low-voltage to ground.
    - c. High-voltage to low-voltage.

9. Temperature tests.

B. Factory Sound-Level Tests: Conduct prototype sound-level tests on production-line products.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions for compliance with enclosure- and ambient-temperature requirements for each transformer.
- B. Verify that field measurements are as needed to maintain working clearances required by NFPA 70 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and concrete bases for suitable mounting conditions where transformers will be installed.
- D. Verify that ground connections are in place and requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" have been met. Maximum ground resistance shall be 5 ohms at location of transformer.
- E. Environment: Enclosures shall be rated for the environment in which they are located. Covers for NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosures shall not cause accessibility problems.
- F. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install transformers level and plumb on a concrete base with vibration-dampening supports. Locate transformers away from corners and not parallel to adjacent wall surface.
- B. Construct concrete bases according to Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete and anchor floor-mounted transformers according to manufacturer's written instructions and requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases with actual transformer provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.
- C. Secure transformer to concrete base according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Secure covers to enclosure and tighten all bolts to manufacturer-recommended torques to reduce noise generation.
- E. Remove shipping bolts, blocking, and wedges.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- D. Provide flexible connections at all conduit and conductor terminations and supports to eliminate sound and vibration transmission to the building structure.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- B. Small (Up to 167-kVA Single-Phase or 500-kVA Three-Phase) Dry-Type Transformer Field Tests:
  - 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection.
    - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
    - b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
    - c. Verify that resilient mounts are free and that any shipping brackets have been removed.
    - d. Verify the unit is clean.
    - e. Perform specific inspections and mechanical tests recommended by manufacturer.
    - f. Verify that as-left tap connections are as specified.
    - g. Verify the presence of surge arresters and that their ratings are as specified.
  - 2. Electrical Tests:
    - a. Measure resistance at each winding, tap, and bolted connection.
    - b. Perform insulation-resistance tests winding-to-winding and each winding-to-ground. Apply voltage according to manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, comply with NETA ATS, Table 100.5. Calculate polarization index: the value of the index shall not be less than 1.0.
    - c. Perform turns-ratio tests at all tap positions. Test results shall not deviate by more than one-half percent from either the adjacent coils or the calculated ratio. If test fails, replace the transformer.
    - d. Verify correct secondary voltage, phase-to-phase and phase-to-neutral, after energization and prior to loading.
- C. Remove and replace units that do not pass tests or inspections and retest as specified above.
- D. Infrared Scanning: Two months after Substantial Completion, perform an infrared scan of transformer connections.

1. Use an infrared-scanning device designed to measure temperature or detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide documentation of device calibration.
  2. Perform two follow-up infrared scans of transformers, one at four months and the other at 11 months after Substantial Completion.
  3. Prepare a certified report identifying transformer checked and describing results of scanning. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and scanning observations after remedial action.
- E. Test Labeling: On completion of satisfactory testing of each unit, attach a dated and signed "Satisfactory Test" label to tested component.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Record transformer secondary voltage at each unit for at least 48 hours of typical occupancy period. Adjust transformer taps to provide optimum voltage conditions at secondary terminals. Optimum is defined as not exceeding nameplate voltage plus 5 percent and not being lower than nameplate voltage minus 3 percent at maximum load conditions. Submit recording and tap settings as test results.
- B. Output Settings Report: Prepare a written report recording output voltages and tap settings.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning.

END OF SECTION 262213

## SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Distribution panelboards.
  - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
  - 3. Load centers.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ATS: Acceptance testing specification.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.
- D. HID: High-intensity discharge.
- E. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- F. SPD: Surge protective device.
- G. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.
  - 1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
  - 2. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
  - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.

2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.
3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
6. Include evidence of NRTL listing for SPD as installed in panelboard.
7. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
  2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9001 or 9002 certified.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.
- B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NECA 407.

## 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

### A. Environmental Limitations:

1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

### B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:

1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.

### C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Construction Manager's written permission.
3. Comply with NFPA 70E.

## 1.11 WARRANTY

### A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Panelboard Warranty Period: 24 months from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PANELBOARDS AND LOAD CENTERS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

- E. Enclosures: Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.
  - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
    - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2. Height: 84 inches maximum.
  - 3. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
  - 4. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
  - 5. Finishes:
    - a. Panels and Trim: Galvanized steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
    - b. Back Boxes: Galvanized steel.
- F. Incoming Mains:
  - 1. Location: Convertible between top and bottom.
  - 2. Main Breaker: Main lug interiors up to 400 amperes shall be field convertible to main breaker.
- G. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
  - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
    - a. Plating shall run entire length of bus.
    - b. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length.
  - 2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors.
  - 3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
  - 4. Isolated Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.
  - 5. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
- H. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
  - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
  - 2. Terminations shall allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
  - 3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required, for larger conductors.
  - 4. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
  - 5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.

- I. NRTL Label: Panelboards or load centers shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards or load centers shall have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.
- J. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
  - 1. Percentage of Future Space Capacity: **10** percent.
- K. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.
  - 1. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
  - 2. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449 SPD [**Type 1**] [**Type 2**].

## 2.3 POWER PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Eaton
  - 2. General Electric
  - 3. Square D.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.
- C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
  - 1. For doors more than 36 inches high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
- D. Mains: Circuit breaker.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers.
- F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers.

## 2.4 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Eaton.
  2. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management - Electrical Distribution.
  3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- C. Mains: Circuit breaker or lugs only.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- E. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- F. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with multipoint latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike. Outer door shall permit full access to the panel interior. Inner door shall permit access to breaker operating handles and labeling, but current carrying terminals and bus shall remain concealed.

## 2.5 LOAD CENTERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Eaton.
  2. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management - Electrical Distribution.
  3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
- B. Load Centers: Comply with UL 67.
- C. Mains: Circuit breaker or lugs only.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Plug-in circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- E. Doors: Concealed hinges secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- F. Conductor Connectors: Mechanical type for main, neutral, and ground lugs and buses.

## 2.6 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Eaton.
2. General Electric Company; GE Energy Management - Electrical Distribution.
3. Square D; by Schneider Electric.

B. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:
  - a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
  - b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
  - c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
3. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers:
  - a. RMS sensing.
  - b. Field-replaceable rating plug or electronic trip.
  - c. Digital display of settings, trip targets, and indicated metering displays.
  - d. Multi-button keypad to access programmable functions and monitored data.
  - e. Ten-event, trip-history log. Each trip event shall be recorded with type, phase, and magnitude of fault that caused the trip.
  - f. Integral test jack for connection to portable test set or laptop computer.
  - g. Field-Adjustable Settings:
    - 1) Instantaneous trip.
    - 2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
    - 3) Long and short time adjustments.
    - 4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared T response.
4. MCCB Features and Accessories:
  - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
  - b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
  - c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
  - d. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
  - e. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and HID lighting circuits.
  - f. Ground-Fault Protection: **[Integrally mounted]** **[Remote-mounted]** relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
  - g. Rating Plugs: Three-pole breakers with ampere ratings greater than **[150]** **<Insert value>** amperes shall have interchangeable rating plugs or electronic adjustable trip units.
  - h. Auxiliary Contacts: **[One, SPDT switch]** **[Two, SPDT switches]** with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts and "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
  - i. Alarm Switch: Single-pole, normally open contact that actuates only when circuit breaker trips.

- j. Multipole units enclosed in a [**single housing with a single handle**] [**or**] [**factory assembled to operate as a single unit**].
- k. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in [**on**] [**off**] [**on or off**] position.
- l. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.
- m.

## 2.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.
- B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.
- C. Circuit Directory: Directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.
  - 1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.
- D. Circuit Directory: Computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover.
  - 1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.
- B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NECA 407.
- C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.
- D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Install panelboards on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
  - 2. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
- E. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.
- F. Mount top of trim 90 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- H. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- I. Mount surface-mounted panelboards to steel slotted supports 1 1/4 inch in depth. Orient steel slotted supports vertically.
- J. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
  - 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
  - 2. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver per manufacturer's written instructions.
- K. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
- L. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- M. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers[ **and low-voltage surge arrestors**] stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers[ **and Paragraph 7.19.1 Surge Arrestors, Low-Voltage**]. [**Do not perform**] [**Perform**] optional tests. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
  - 3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
    - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    - c. Instruments and Equipment:
      - 1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
- D. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of the two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges as specified in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Prior to energizing panelboards, apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 262416

## SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Standard-grade receptacles, 125 V, [**15**] [**20**] A.
  - 2. GFCI receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
  - 3. Toggle switches, 120/277 V, [**15**] [**20**] A.
  - 4. Occupancy sensors.
  - 5. Wall-box dimmers.
  - 6. Wall plates.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AFCI: Arc-fault circuit interrupter.
- B. BAS: Building automation system.
- C. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- D. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- E. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
- F. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- G. SPD: Surge protective device.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.
- C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. RoHS compliant.
- D. Comply with NEMA WD 1.
- E. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:
  - 1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
  - 2. Devices shall comply with requirements in this Section.
- F. Devices for Owner-Furnished Equipment:
  - 1. Receptacles: Match plug configurations.
  - 2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.
- G. Device Color:
  - 1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: [**Almond**] [**Black**] [**Brown**] [**Gray**] [**Ivory**] [**White**] [**As selected by Architect**] <Insert color> unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
  - 2. Wiring Devices Connected to Essential Electrical System: [**Red**] <Insert color>.
  - 3. SPD Devices: Blue.
  - 4. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: [**Orange**] [**As specified above, with orange triangle on face**].
- H. Wall Plate Color: For plastic covers, match device color.
- I. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 STANDARD-GRADE RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

A. Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A **<Insert drawing designation>**:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.

B. Isolated-Ground Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A **<Insert drawing designation>**:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Straight blade; equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.

C. Tamper-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A **<Insert drawing designation>**:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.

D. Weather-Resistant Duplex Receptacle, 125 V, 20 A **<Insert drawing designation>**:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" Article.

E. Tamper- and Weather-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A **<Insert drawing designation>**:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.

2.3 STANDARD-GRADE RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 15 A

A. Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A **<Insert drawing designation>**:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.

B. Isolated-Ground Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A **<Insert drawing designation>**:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Straight blade; equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.

C. Tamper-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A **<Insert drawing designation>**:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.

D. Weather-Resistant Duplex Receptacle, 125 V, 15 A **<Insert drawing designation>**:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" Article.

E. Tamper- and Weather-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A **<Insert drawing designation>**:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.

2.4 GFCI RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

A. Duplex GFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A <Insert drawing designation>:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Type: [**Feed**] [**Non-feed**] through.
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.

B. Tamper-Resistant Duplex GFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A <Insert drawing designation>:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Type: [**Feed**] [**Non-feed**] through.
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.
6. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.

C. Tamper- and Weather-Resistant, GFCI Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A <Insert drawing designation>:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
4. Type: [**Feed**] [**Non-feed**] through.
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and UL 943 Class A.
6. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.

2.5 TOGGLE SWITCHES, 120/277 V, 15 A

A. Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 15 A <Insert drawing designation>:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

B. Two-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 15 A <Insert drawing designation>:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
3. Description: Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

- C. Three-Way Switches, 120/277 V, 15 A <Insert drawing designation>:
    - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
    - 2. Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
  
  - D. Four-Way Switches, 120/277 V, 15 A <Insert drawing designation>:
    - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
    - 2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
  
  - E. Pilot-Light, Single-Pole Switches: 120/277 V, 15 A <Insert drawing designation>:
    - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
    - 2. Description: Illuminated when switch is [on] [off].
    - 3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
  
  - F. Lighted Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 15 A <Insert drawing designation>:
    - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
    - 2. Description: Handle illuminated when switch is [on] [off].
    - 3. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.
  
  - G. Key-Operated, Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 15 A <Insert drawing designation>:
    - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
    - 2. Description: Factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
    - 3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
  
  - H. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches, 120/277 V, 15 A <Insert drawing designation>:
    - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
    - 2. Description: For use with mechanically held lighting contactors.
    - 3. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.
  
  - I. Key-Operated, Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches, 120/277 V, 15 A <Insert drawing designation>:
    - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
    - 2. Description: For use with mechanically held lighting contactors, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
    - 3. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.
- 2.6 TOGGLE SWITCHES, 120/277 V, 20 A
- A. Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A <Insert drawing designation>:
    - 1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
    - 2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
  
  - B. Antimicrobial, Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A <Insert drawing designation>:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  2. Description: Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
  3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- C. Two-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A <Insert drawing designation>:
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  2. Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- D. Antimicrobial, Double-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A <Insert drawing designation>:
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  2. Description: Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
  3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- E. Three-Way Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A <Insert drawing designation>:
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  2. Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- F. Antimicrobial, Three-Way Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A <Insert drawing designation>:
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  2. Description: Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
  3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- G. Four-Way Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A <Insert drawing designation>:
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- H. Pilot-Light, Single-Pole Switches: 120/277 V, 20 A <Insert drawing designation>:
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  2. Description: Illuminated when switch is [on] [off].
  3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.
- I. Lighted Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A <Insert drawing designation>:
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  2. Description: Handle illuminated when switch is [on] [off].
  3. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.
- J. Key-Operated, Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A <Insert drawing designation>:
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  2. Description: Factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
  3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

- K. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A <Insert drawing designation>:
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  2. Description: For use with mechanically held lighting contactors.
  3. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.
- L. Key-Operated, Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A <Insert drawing designation>:
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  2. Description: For use with mechanically held lighting contactors, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
  3. Standards: Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

## 2.7 DECORATOR-STYLE DEVICES, 15 A

- A. Decorator Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A <Insert drawing designation>:
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Square face.
  3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
  4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
- B. Decorator, Tamper-Resistant, Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A, <Insert drawing designation>:
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
  3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
  4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
  5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.
- C. Decorator, Tamper- and Weather-Resistant, Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 15 A <Insert drawing designation>:
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
  3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
  4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
  5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.
- D. Decorator Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 15 A <Insert drawing designation>:
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  2. Comply with UL 20.

E. Decorator Single-Pole Lighted Switches, 120/277 V, 15 A <Insert drawing designation>:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Square face illuminated when circuit is switched off.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.

F. Decorator, Antimicrobial, Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 15 A <Insert drawing designation>:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

2.8 DECORATOR-STYLE DEVICES, 20 A

A. Decorator Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A <Insert drawing designation>:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.

B. Decorator Tamper-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A <Insert drawing designation>:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.

C. Decorator, Tamper- and Weather-Resistant, Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A <Insert drawing designation>:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.

D. Decorator Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A <Insert drawing designation>:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Comply with UL 20.

E. Decorator Single-Pole Lighted Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A <Insert drawing designation>:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Square face illuminated when circuit is switched off.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.

F. Decorator, Antimicrobial, Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A **<Insert drawing designation>**:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

## 2.9 OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. Wall Switch Sensor Light Switch, Dual Technology **<Insert drawing designation>**:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination lighting-control sensor and conventional switch lighting-control unit using dual (ultrasonic and passive infrared) technology.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
4. Rated 960 W at 120 V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120 V ac or 10 A at 277 V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120 V ac.
5. Adjustable time delay of [**five**] [**10**] [**15**] [**20**] minutes.
6. Able to be locked to [**Automatic**] [**Manual**]-On mode.
7. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc.
8. Connections: Provisions for connection to BAS.
9. Connections: RJ-45 communications outlet.
10. Connections: Integral wireless networking.

B. Wall Sensor Light Switch, Passive Infrared **<Insert drawing designation>**:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination, lighting-control sensor and conventional switch lighting-control unit using passive infrared technology.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
4. Connections: Provisions for connection to BAS.
5. Connections: Hard wired.
6. Connections: Wireless.
7. Rated 960 W at 120 V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120 V ac or 10 A at 277 V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120 V ac.
8. Integral relay for connection to BAS.
9. Adjustable time delay of [**five**] [**10**] [**15**] [**20**] minutes.
10. Able to be locked to [**Automatic**] [**Manual**]-On mode.
11. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc.

C. Wall Sensor Light Switch, Ultrasonic **<Insert drawing designation>**:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination, lighting-control sensor and conventional switch lighting-control unit using ultrasonic technology.

3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
4. Connections: Provisions for connection to BAS.
5. Connections: RJ-45 communications outlet.
6. Connections: Integral wireless networking.
7. Rated 960 W at 120 V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120 V ac or 10 A at 277 V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120 V ac.
8. Integral relay for connection to BAS.
9. Adjustable time delay of [**five**] [**10**] [**15**] [**20**] minutes.
10. Able to be locked to [**Automatic**] [**Manual**]-On mode.
11. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc.

## 2.10 TIMER LIGHT SWITCH

### A. Digital Timer Light Switch <Insert drawing designation>:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination digital timer and conventional switch lighting-control unit, with backlit digital display, with selectable time interval in [**10**] [**20**]-minute increments.
3. Standards: Comply with UL 20.
4. Rated 960 W at 120 V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120 V ac or 10 A at 277 V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120 V ac.
5. Integral relay for connection to BAS.
- 6.

## 2.11 DIMMERS

### A. Wall-Box Dimmers:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Description: Modular, full-wave, solid-state dimmer switch with integral, quiet on-off switches, with audible frequency and EMI/RFI suppression filters.
3. Control: Continuously adjustable [**slider**] [**toggle switch**] [**rotary knob**]; with single-pole or three-way switching.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 1472.
5. Incandescent Lamp Dimmers: 120 V; control shall follow square-law dimming curve. On-off switch positions shall bypass dimmer module.
  - a. 600 W; dimmers shall require no derating when ganged with other devices. [**Illuminated when "off."**]
  - b. <Insert wattage ratings and descriptions>.
6. Fluorescent Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with dimmer ballasts; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; dimmer-ballast combination capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.
7. LED Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with LED lamps; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

## 2.12 WALL PLATES

- A. Single Source: Obtain wall plates from same manufacturer of wiring devices.
- B. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.
  - 1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
  - 2. Material for Finished Spaces: [**Steel with white baked enamel, suitable for field painting**] [**Smooth, high-impact thermoplastic**] [**0.035-inch- thick, satin-finished, Type 302 stainless steel**] [**0.04-inch- thick, brushed brass with factory polymer finish**] [**0.05-inch- thick, anodized aluminum**] [**0.04-inch- thick steel with chrome-plated finish**].
  - 3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: [**Galvanized steel**] [**Smooth, high-impact thermoplastic**].
  - 4. Material for Damp Locations: [**Thermoplastic**] [**Cast aluminum**] with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.
- C. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant[, **die-cast aluminum**] [**thermoplastic**] with lockable cover.
- D. Antimicrobial Cover Plates:
  - 1. Contact surfaces treated with a coating that kills 99.9 percent of certain common bacteria within two hours when regularly and properly cleaned.
  - 2. Tarnish resistant.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
  - 1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes, and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
  - 2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
  - 3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
  - 4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.
- C. Conductors:
  - 1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.

2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall comply with NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:
  - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
  - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
  - c. Pigtailling existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles [**up**] [**down**], and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the [**right**] [**left**].
2. Install hospital-grade receptacles in patient-care areas with the ground pin or neutral blade at the top.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Dimmers:

1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
2. Verify that dimmers used for fan-speed control are listed for that application.
3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device, listing conditions in the written instructions.

H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

- I. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

### 3.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. Install non-feed-through GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each receptacle with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with **[black]** **[white]** **[red]**-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.
- C. Essential Electrical System: Mark receptacles supplied from the essential electrical system to allow easy identification using a self-adhesive label.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
- B. Test Instrument for Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections[ **with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**]:
  1. In healthcare facilities, prepare reports that comply with NFPA 99.
  2. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
  3. Test Instrument for Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- D. Tests for Receptacles:
  1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
  2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.
  3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
  4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
  5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
  6. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault-current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.
- E. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 262726

## SECTION 262813 - FUSES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Cartridge fuses rated 600 V ac and less for use in the following:
  - a. Control circuits.
  - b. Motor-control centers.
  - c. Panelboards.
  - d. Switchboards.
  - e. Enclosed controllers.
  - f. Enclosed switches.
2. Spare-fuse cabinets.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:
  1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.
    - a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
    - b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.
  2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
  3. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
  4. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse. Submit in electronic format suitable for use in coordination software and in PDF format.
  5. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures," and Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
1. Ambient temperature adjustment information.
  2. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
  3. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse used on the Project. Submit in electronic format suitable for use in coordination software and in PDF format.
  4. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
1. Bussmann, an Eaton business.
  2. Littelfuse, Inc.
  3. Mersen USA.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.

#### 2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, current-limiting, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.
1. Type RK-1: [250] [600]-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC[, **time delay**].
  2. Type RK-5: [250] [600]-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC[, **time delay**].
  3. Type CC: 600-V, zero- to 30-A rating, 200 kAIC[, **fast acting**] [, **time delay**].
  4. Type CD: 600-V, 31- to 60-A rating, 200 kAIC[, **fast acting**] [, **time delay**].
  5. Type J: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC[, **time delay**].
  6. Type L: 600-V, 601- to 6000-A rating, 200 kAIC[, **time delay**].

7. Type T: **[250-V, zero- to 1200-A] [600-V, zero- to 800-A]** rating, 200 kAIC[, **very fast acting**] [, **time delay**].
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

### 2.3 SPARE-FUSE CABINET

- A. Characteristics: Wall-mounted steel unit with full-length, recessed piano-hinged door and key-coded cam lock and pull.
  1. Size: Adequate for storage of spare fuses specified with 15 percent spare capacity minimum.
  2. Finish: Gray, baked enamel.
  3. Identification: "SPARE FUSES" in 1-1/2-inch- high letters on exterior of door.
  4. Fuse Pullers: For each size of fuse, where applicable and available, from fuse manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.
- B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.
- C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.
- D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

- A. Cartridge Fuses:

1. Feeders: [**Class L, fast acting**] [**Class L, time delay**] [**Class RK1, fast acting**] [**Class RK1, time delay**] [**Class RK5, fast acting**] [**Class RK5, time delay**] [**Class J, fast acting**] [**Class J, time delay**].
2. Motor Branch Circuits: [**Class RK1**] [**Class RK5**] [**Class CC, motor duty**], time delay.
3. Large Motor Branch (601-4000 A): Class L, time delay.
4. Power Electronics Circuits: [**Class J, high speed**] [**Class T, fast acting**].
5. Other Branch Circuits: [**Class RK1, time delay**] [**Class RK5, time delay**] [**Class J, fast acting**] [**Class J, time delay**] [**Class CC, fast acting**].
6. Control Transformer Circuits: Class CC, time delay, control transformer duty.
7. Provide open-fuse indicator fuses or fuse covers with open fuse indication.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.
- B. Install spare-fuse cabinet(s) in location shown on the Drawings or as indicated in the field by Construction Manager and Owner.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information inside of door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION 262813

## SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Fusible switches.
  - 2. Nonfusible switches.
  - 3. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
  - 4. Enclosures.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
  - 1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2. Current and voltage ratings.
  - 3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
  - 4. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
  - 5. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF and electronic format.
- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
    - b. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF and electronic format.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
  - 2. Fuse Pullers: Two for each size and type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
  - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
  - 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: [**One**] <Insert number> year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

### 2.2 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty:
  - 1. [**Single**] [**Double**] throw.
  - 2. [**Three**] [**six**] pole.
  - 3. [**240**] [**600**]-V ac.
  - 4. [**1200 A and smaller**] [**200 A and smaller**].
  - 5. UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate [**specified**] [**indicated**] fuses.
  - 6. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Accessories:
  - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
  - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  - 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  - 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.

5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: [**One**] [**Two**] NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - [**24-V ac**] [**120-V ac**] [**208-V ac**] [**240-V ac**] [**6-V dc**] [**12-V dc**] [**24-V dc**].
6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
7. Lugs: [**Mechanical**] [**Compression**] type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

## 2.3 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Type GD, General Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 240-V ac, 600 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept two padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, [**240**] [**600**]-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- D. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Six Pole, Single Throw, [**240**] [**600**]-V ac, 200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- E. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Double Throw, [**240**] [**600**]-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- F. Accessories:
  1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
  2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
  5. Auxiliary Contact Kit: [**One**] [**Two**] NO/NC (Form "C") auxiliary contact(s), arranged to activate before switch blades open. Contact rating - [**24-V ac**] [**120-V ac**] [**208-V ac**] [**240-V ac**] [**6-V dc**] [**12-V dc**] [**24-V dc**].
  6. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
  7. Lugs: [**Mechanical**] [**Compression**] type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
  8. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

## 2.4 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- B. Circuit breakers shall be constructed using glass-reinforced insulating material. Current carrying components shall be completely isolated from the handle and the accessory mounting area.
- C. Circuit breakers shall have a toggle operating mechanism with common tripping of all poles, which provides quick-make, quick-break contact action. The circuit-breaker handle shall be over center, be trip free, and reside in a tripped position between on and off to provide local trip indication. Circuit-breaker escutcheon shall be clearly marked on and off in addition to providing international I/O markings. Equip circuit breaker with a push-to-trip button, located on the face of the circuit breaker to mechanically operate the circuit-breaker tripping mechanism for maintenance and testing purposes.
- D. The maximum ampere rating and UL, IEC, or other certification standards with applicable voltage systems and corresponding interrupting ratings shall be clearly marked on face of circuit breaker. Circuit breakers shall be **[100 percent rated][series rated][100 percent rated or series rated as indicated on the Drawings]. [Circuit breaker/circuit breaker] [Fuse/circuit breaker]** combinations for series connected interrupting ratings shall be listed by UL as recognized component combinations. Any series rated combination used shall be marked on the end-use equipment along with the statement "Caution - Series Rated System. \_\_\_\_\_ Amps Available. Identical Replacement Component Required."
- E. MCCBs shall be equipped with a device for locking in the isolated position.
- F. Lugs shall be suitable for **[140 deg F rated wire on 125-A circuit breakers and below] [167 deg F rated wire] [194 deg F rated wire, sized according to the 167 deg F temperature rating in NFPA 70]**.
- G. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- H. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current thermal element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
- I. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
- J. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, rms sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:
  - 1. Instantaneous trip.
  - 2. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
  - 3. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
  - 4. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I-squared t response.
- K. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
- L. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker and trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.

- M. Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
- N. Ground-Fault Equipment-Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: With Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
- O. Features and Accessories:
  - 1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
  - 2. Lugs: [**Mechanical**] [**Compression**] type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
  - 3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.
  - 4. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; [**integrally mounted, self-powered**] [**remote-mounted and powered**] type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
  - 5. Communication Capability: [**Circuit-breaker-mounted**] [**Universal-mounted**] [**Integral**] [**Din-rail-mounted**] communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system, specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
  - 6. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
  - 7. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
  - 8. Auxiliary Contacts: [**One SPDT switch**] [**Two SPDT switches**] with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
  - 9. Alarm Switch: One [**NO**] [**NC**] contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.
  - 10. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
  - 11. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with [**electronic**] [**ground-fault**] trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
  - 12. Electrical Operator: Provide remote control for on, off, and reset operations.
  - 13. Accessory Control Power Voltage: [**Integrally mounted, self-powered**] [**Remote mounted and powered**]; [**24-V ac**] [**120-V ac**] [**208-V ac**] [**240-V ac**] [**12-V dc**] [**24-V dc**] [**120-V dc**].

## 2.5 MOLDED-CASE SWITCHES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Description: MCCB with fixed, high-set instantaneous trip only, and short-circuit withstand rating equal to equivalent breaker frame size interrupting rating.
- C. Standard: Comply with UL 489 with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- D. Features and Accessories:

1. Standard frame sizes and number of poles.
2. Lugs:
  - a. **[Mechanical] [Compression]** type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
  - b. Lugs shall be suitable for **[140 deg F rated wire on 125-A circuit breakers and below] [167 deg F rated wire] [194 deg F rated wire, sized according to the 167 deg F temperature rating in NFPA 70]**.
3. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1053; remote-mounted and powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator; relay with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, internal memory, and shunt trip unit; and three-phase, zero-sequence current transformer/sensor.
4. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.
5. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
6. Auxiliary Contacts: **[One SPDT switch] [Two SPDT switches]** with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic switch contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of switch contacts.
7. Alarm Switch: One **[NO] [NC]** contact that operates only when switch has tripped.
8. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit switch operation; key shall be removable only when switch is in off position.
9. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with ground-fault shunt trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
10. Electrical Operator: Provide remote control for on, off, and reset operations.
11. Accessory Control Power Voltage: **[Integrally mounted, self-powered] [Remote mounted and powered]; [24-V ac] [120-V ac] [208-V ac] [240-V ac] [12-V dc] [24-V dc] [120-V dc]**.

## 2.6 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. Enclosure Finish: The enclosure shall be **[finished with] [gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized steel (NEMA 250 Type 1)] [gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized galvanized steel (NEMA 250 Types 3R, 12)] [a brush finish on Type 304 stainless steel (NEMA 250 Type 4-4X stainless steel)] [copper-free cast aluminum alloy (NEMA 250 Types 7, 9)]**.
- C. Conduit Entry: NEMA 250 Types 4, 4X, and 12 enclosures shall contain no knockouts. NEMA 250 Types 7 and 9 enclosures shall be provided with threaded conduit openings in both endwalls.
- D. Operating Mechanism: The circuit-breaker operating handle shall be **[externally operable with the operating mechanism being an integral part of the box, not the cover] [directly operable through the front cover of the enclosure (NEMA 250 Type 1)] [directly operable through the dead front trim of the enclosure (NEMA 250 Type 3R)] [externally operable with the operating mechanism being an integral part of the cover (NEMA 250 Types 7, 9)]**. The cover interlock mechanism shall have an externally operated override. The override shall

not permanently disable the interlock mechanism, which shall return to the locked position once the override is released. The tool used to override the cover interlock mechanism shall not be required to enter the enclosure in order to override the interlock.

- E. Enclosures designated as NEMA 250 Type 4, 4X stainless steel, 12, or 12K shall have a dual cover interlock mechanism to prevent unintentional opening of the enclosure cover when the circuit breaker is ON and to prevent turning the circuit breaker ON when the enclosure cover is open.
- F. NEMA 250 Type 7/9 enclosures shall be furnished with a breather and drain kit to allow their use in outdoor and wet location applications.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Commencement of work shall indicate Installer's acceptance of the areas and conditions as satisfactory.

#### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify [**Architect**] [**Construction Manager**] [**Owner**] no fewer than [**seven**] **<Insert number>** days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
  - 2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
  - 3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without [**Architect's**] [**Construction Manager's**] [**Owner's**] written permission.
  - 4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

#### 3.3 ENCLOSURE ENVIRONMENTAL RATING APPLICATIONS

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: Provide enclosures at installed locations with the following environmental ratings.
  - 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, [**Type 1**] **<Insert type>**.
  - 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, [**Type 3R**] [**Type 4X**] **<Insert type>**.
  - 3. [**Kitchen**] [**Wash-Down**] Areas: NEMA 250, [**Type 4X**] **<Insert type>**, [**stainless steel**] **<Insert material>**.
  - 4. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, [**Type 4**] **<Insert type>**.

5. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
6. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: NEMA 250, [Type 7] [Type 9] <Insert type> [with cover attached by Type 316 stainless steel bolts].

### 3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting of eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- E. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- F. Comply with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
  2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections[ **with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**].
- E. Tests and Inspections for Switches:
  1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
    - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.

- b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
- c. Verify that the unit is clean.
- d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
- e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
- f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
- g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
  - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
    - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
  - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
    - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
- h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
- i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
- j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.

2. Electrical Tests:

- a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
- b. Measure contact resistance across each switchblade fuseholder. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
- c. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
- d. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
- e. Perform ground fault test according to NETA ATS 7.14 "Ground Fault Protection Systems, Low-Voltage."

F. Tests and Inspections for Molded Case Circuit Breakers:

1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
  - a. Verify that equipment nameplate data are as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
  - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
  - c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
  - d. Verify that the unit is clean.
  - e. Operate the circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
  - f. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
    - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
      - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
    - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
      - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
  - g. Inspect operating mechanism, contacts, and chutes in unsealed units.
  - h. Perform adjustments for final protective device settings in accordance with the coordination study.
2. Electrical Tests:
  - a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
  - b. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with circuit breaker closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
  - c. Perform a contact/pole resistance test. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
  - d. Perform insulation resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground. Applied potential shall be 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable. Test duration shall be one minute. For units with solid state components, follow manufacturer's recommendation. Insulation resistance values shall be no less than two megohms.
  - e. Determine the following by primary current injection:

- 1) Long-time pickup and delay. Pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
  - 2) Short-time pickup and delay. Short-time pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
  - 3) Ground-fault pickup and time delay. Ground-fault pickup values shall be as specified. Trip characteristics shall not exceed manufacturer's published time-current characteristic tolerance band, including adjustment factors.
  - 4) Instantaneous pickup. Instantaneous pickup values shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
- f. Test functionality of the trip unit by means of primary current injection. Pickup values and trip characteristics shall be as specified and within manufacturer's published tolerances.
  - g. Perform minimum pickup voltage tests on shunt trip and close coils in accordance with manufacturer's published data. Minimum pickup voltage of the shunt trip and close coils shall be as indicated by manufacturer.
  - h. Verify correct operation of auxiliary features such as trip and pickup indicators; zone interlocking; electrical close and trip operation; trip-free, anti-pump function; and trip unit battery condition. Reset all trip logs and indicators. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
  - i. Verify operation of charging mechanism. Investigate units that do not function as designed.
3. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
  4. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
    - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    - c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  5. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- G. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- H. Prepare test and inspection reports.
1. Test procedures used.
  2. Include identification of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker tested and describe test results.

3. List deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

### 3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges[ **as specified in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."**] [ **to values indicated on the Drawings.**] [ **to values indicated in attached schedule.**]

END OF SECTION 262816

## SECTION 262923 - VARIABLE-FREQUENCY MOTOR CONTROLLERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes separately enclosed, preassembled, combination VFCs, rated 600 V and less, for speed control of three-phase, squirrel-cage induction motors.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 262419 "Motor-Control Centers" for VFCs installed in motor-control centers.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CE: Conformance Europeene (European Compliance).
- B. CPT: Control power transformer.
- C. DDC: Direct digital control.
- D. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. NC: Normally closed.
- G. NO: Normally open.
- H. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
- I. PID: Control action, proportional plus integral plus derivative.
- J. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- K. VFC: Variable-frequency motor controller.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and rating of VFC indicated.

1. Include dimensions and finishes for VFCs.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For each VFC indicated.

1. Include mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, drawn to scale, showing dimensioned layout on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Required working clearances and required area above and around VFCs.
2. Show VFC layout and relationships between electrical components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements.
3. Show support locations, type of support, and weight on each support.
4. Indicate field measurements.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

C. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for each VFC, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Certificate of compliance.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based, and their installation requirements.

D. Product Certificates: For each VFC from manufacturer.

E. Harmonic Analysis Report: Provide Project-specific calculations and manufacturer's statement of compliance with IEEE 519.

F. Source quality-control reports.

G. Field quality-control reports.

H. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For VFCs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  - a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting thermal-magnetic circuit breaker and motor-circuit protector trip settings.
  - b. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable overload relays.
  - c. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing, adjusting, and reprogramming microprocessor control modules.
  - d. Manufacturer's written instructions for setting field-adjustable timers, controls, and status and alarm points.
  - e. Load-Current and Overload-Relay Heater List: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that selection of heaters suits actual motor nameplate, full-load currents.
  - f. Load-Current and List of Settings of Adjustable Overload Relays: Compile after motors have been installed, and arrange to demonstrate that switch settings for motor-running overload protection suit actual motors to be protected.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Power Fuses: Equal to [10] <Insert number> percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than [three] <Insert number> of each size and type.
  2. Control Power Fuses: Equal to [10] <Insert number> percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than [two] <Insert number> of each size and type.
  3. Indicating Lights: [Two] <Insert number> of each type and color installed.
  4. Auxiliary Contacts: Furnish [one] <Insert number> spare(s) for each size and type of magnetic controller installed.
  5. Power Contacts: Furnish [three] <Insert number> spares for each size and type of magnetic contactor installed.
  6. <Insert extra materials>.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
  1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. If stored in space that is not permanently enclosed and air conditioned, remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside controllers and **[install temporary electric heating, with at least 250 W per controller] [connect factory-installed space heaters to temporary electrical service]**.

- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for VFCs, including clearances between VFCs, and adjacent surfaces and other items.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace VFCs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: [**Five**] <Insert number> years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

#### 2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. General Requirements for VFCs:
  - 1. VFCs and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 2. Comply with NEMA ICS 7, NEMA ICS 61800-2, and [**UL 508A**] [**UL 508C**] <Insert standard>.
- B. Application: [**Constant torque**] [**and**] [**variable torque**] <Insert application>.
- C. VFC Description: Variable-frequency motor controller, consisting of power converter that employs pulse-width-modulated inverter, factory built and tested in an enclosure, with integral disconnecting means and overcurrent and overload protection; listed and labeled by an NRTL as a complete unit; arranged to provide self-protection, protection, and variable-speed control of one or more three-phase induction motors by adjusting output voltage and frequency.
  - 1. Units suitable for operation of NEMA MG 1, Design A and Design B motors, as defined by NEMA MG 1, Section IV, Part 30, "Application Considerations for Constant Speed Motors Used on a Sinusoidal Bus with Harmonic Content and General Purpose Motors Used with Adjustable-Voltage or Adjustable-Frequency Controls or Both."
  - 2. Units suitable for operation of inverter-duty motors as defined by NEMA MG 1, Section IV, Part 31, "Definite-Purpose Inverter-Fed Polyphase Motors."
  - 3. Listed and labeled for integrated short-circuit current (withstand) rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Design and Rating: Match load type, such as fans, blowers, and pumps; and type of connection used between motor and load such as direct or through a power-transmission connection.
- E. Output Rating: Three phase; 10 to [**60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout voltage range**] [**66 Hz, with torque constant as speed changes**]; maximum voltage equals input voltage.

F. Unit Operating Requirements:

1. Input AC Voltage Tolerance: Plus 10 and minus [10] [15] percent of VFC input voltage rating.
2. Input AC Voltage Unbalance: Not exceeding [3] [5] percent.
3. Input Frequency Tolerance: Plus or minus 3 percent of VFC frequency rating.
4. Minimum Efficiency: [96] [97] <Insert number> percent at 60 Hz, full load.
5. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: [96] [98] <Insert number> percent under any load or speed condition.
6. Minimum Short-Circuit Current (Withstand) Rating: [10] [22] [65] [100] <Insert value> kA.
7. Ambient Temperature Rating: Not less than 32 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
8. Humidity Rating: Less than 95 percent (noncondensing).
9. Altitude Rating: Not exceeding 3300 feet.
10. Vibration Withstand: Comply with NEMA ICS 61800-2.
11. Overload Capability: [1.1] [1.5] times the base load current for 60 seconds; minimum of 1.8 times the base load current for three seconds.
12. Starting Torque: Minimum 100 percent of rated torque from 3 to 60 Hz.
13. Speed Regulation: Plus or minus [5] [10] percent.
14. Output Carrier Frequency: Selectable; 0.5 to [15] <insert number> kHz.
15. Stop Modes: Programmable; includes fast, free-wheel, and dc injection braking.

G. Inverter Logic: Microprocessor based, [16] [32] bit, isolated from all power circuits.

H. Isolated Control Interface: Allows VFCs to follow remote-control signal over a minimum 40:1 speed range.

1. Signal: [Electrical] [Pneumatic].

I. Internal Adjustability Capabilities:

1. Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
2. Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
3. Acceleration: [0.1 to 999.9] <Insert range> seconds.
4. Deceleration: [0.1 to 999.9] <Insert range> seconds.
5. Current Limit: 30 to minimum of 150 percent of maximum rating.
6. <Insert adjustment and parameters>.

J. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:

1. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of the VFC, complying with UL 1449 SPD, Type 1 or Type 2.
2. Surge Suppression: Field-mounted surge suppressors complying with Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits," UL 1449 SPD, Type 2.
3. Loss of Input Signal Protection: Selectable response strategy, including speed default to a percent of the most recent speed, a preset speed, or stop; with alarm.
4. Under- and overvoltage trips.
5. Inverter overcurrent trips.
6. VFC and Motor-Overload/Overtemperature Protection: Microprocessor-based thermal protection system for monitoring VFCs and motor thermal characteristics, and for

- providing VFC overtemperature and motor-overload alarm and trip; settings selectable via the keypad.
7. Critical frequency rejection, with **[three]** **<Insert number>** selectable, adjustable deadbands.
  8. Instantaneous line-to-line and line-to-ground overcurrent trips.
  9. Loss-of-phase protection.
  10. Reverse-phase protection.
  11. Short-circuit protection.
  12. Motor-temperature fault.
  13. **<Insert protection or reliability feature>**.
- K. Automatic Reset/Restart: Attempt three restarts after drive fault or on return of power after an interruption and before shutting down for manual reset or fault correction; adjustable delay time between restart attempts.
- L. Power-Interruption Protection: To prevent motor from re-energizing after a power interruption until motor has stopped, unless "Bidirectional Autospeed Search" feature is available and engaged.
- M. Bidirectional Autospeed Search: Capable of starting VFC into rotating loads spinning in either direction and returning motor to set speed in proper direction, without causing damage to drive, motor, or load.
- N. Torque Boost: Automatically varies starting and continuous torque to at least 1.5 times the minimum torque to ensure high-starting torque and increased torque at slow speeds.
- O. Motor Temperature Compensation at Slow Speeds: Adjustable current fall-back based on output frequency for temperature protection of self-cooled, fan-ventilated motors at slow speeds.
- P. Integral Input Disconnecting Means and OCPD: **[UL 489, instantaneous-trip circuit breaker]** **[UL 489, molded-case switch, with power fuse block and current-limiting fuses]** **[UL 489, thermal-magnetic circuit breaker]** **[NEMA KS 1, nonfusible switch, with power fuse block and current-limiting fuses]** **[NEMA KS 1, fusible switch]** with pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.
1. Disconnect Rating: Not less than 115 percent of VFC input current rating.
  2. Disconnect Rating: Not less than 115 percent of NFPA 70 motor full-load current rating or VFC input current rating, whichever is larger.
  3. Auxiliary Contacts: NO or NC, arranged to activate before switch blades open.
  4. Auxiliary contacts "a" and "b" arranged to activate with circuit-breaker handle.
  5. **[NC]** **[NO]** alarm contact that operates only when circuit breaker has tripped.

## 2.3 CONTROLS AND INDICATION

- A. Status Lights: Door-mounted LED indicators displaying the following conditions:
1. Power on.
  2. Run.
  3. Overvoltage.
  4. Line fault.

5. Overcurrent.
  6. External fault.
  7. **<Insert condition>**.
- B. Panel-Mounted Operator Station: Manufacturer's standard front-accessible, sealed keypad and plain-English-language digital display; allows complete programming, program copying, operating, monitoring, and diagnostic capability.
1. Keypad: In addition to required programming and control keys, include keys for HAND, OFF, and AUTO modes.
  2. Security Access: Provide electronic security access to controls through identification and password with at least three levels of access: View only; view and operate; and view, operate, and service.
    - a. Control Authority: Supports at least four conditions: Off, local manual control at VFC, local automatic control at VFC, and automatic control through a remote source.
- C. Historical Logging Information and Displays:
1. Real-time clock with current time and date.
  2. Running log of total power versus time.
  3. Total run time.
  4. Fault log, maintaining last **[four]** **<Insert number>** faults with time and date stamp for each.
  5. **<Insert information or display>**.
- D. Indicating Devices: Digital display[ **and additional readout devices as required,**] mounted flush in VFC door and connected to display VFC parameters including, but not limited to:
1. Output frequency (Hz).
  2. Motor speed (rpm).
  3. Motor status (running, stop, fault).
  4. Motor current (amperes).
  5. Motor torque (percent).
  6. Fault or alarming status (code).
  7. PID feedback signal (percent).
  8. DC-link voltage (V dc).
  9. Set point frequency (Hz).
  10. Motor output voltage (V ac).
  11. **<Insert parameter>**.
- E. Control Signal Interfaces:
1. Electric Input Signal Interface:
    - a. A minimum of **[two]** **<Insert number>** programmable analog inputs: **[0- to 10-V dc]** **[4- to 20-mA dc]** **[Operator-selectable "x"- to "y"-mA dc]** **<Insert signal parameters>**.
    - b. A minimum of **[six]** **<Insert number>** multifunction programmable digital inputs.

2. Pneumatic Input Signal Interface: 3 to 15 psig.
  3. Remote Signal Inputs: Capability to accept any of the following speed-setting input signals from the DDC system for HVAC or other control systems:
    - a. 0- to 10-V dc.
    - b. 4- to 20-mA dc.
    - c. Potentiometer using up/down digital inputs.
    - d. Fixed frequencies using digital inputs.
    - e. **<Insert signal input>**.
  4. Output Signal Interface: A minimum of [**one**] **<Insert number>** programmable analog output signal(s) ([**0- to 10-V dc**] [**4- to 20-mA dc**] [**operator-selectable "x"- to "y"-mA dc**] **<Insert signal parameters>**), which can be configured for any of the following:
    - a. Output frequency (Hz).
    - b. Output current (load).
    - c. DC-link voltage (V dc).
    - d. Motor torque (percent).
    - e. Motor speed (rpm).
    - f. Set point frequency (Hz).
    - g. **<Insert indication>**.
  5. Remote Indication Interface: A minimum of [**two**] **<Insert number>** programmable dry-circuit relay outputs (120-V ac, 1 A) for remote indication of the following:
    - a. Motor running.
    - b. Set point speed reached.
    - c. Fault and warning indication (overtemperature or overcurrent).
    - d. PID high- or low-speed limits reached.
    - e. **<Insert indication>**.
- F. PID Control Interface: Provides closed-loop set point, differential feedback control in response to dual feedback signals. Allows for closed-loop control of fans and pumps for pressure, flow, or temperature regulation.
1. Number of Loops: [**One**] [**Two**] **<Insert number>**.
- G. Interface with DDC System for HVAC: Factory-installed hardware and software shall interface with DDC system for HVAC to monitor, control, display, and record data for use in processing reports. VFC settings shall be retained within VFC's nonvolatile memory.
1. Hardwired Points:
    - a. Monitoring: On-off status, **<Insert monitoring point>**.
    - b. Control: On-off operation, **<Insert control point>**.
  2. Communication Interface: Comply with [**ASHRAE 135**] **<Insert type of interface>**. Communication shall interface with DDC system for HVAC to remotely control and monitor lighting from a DDC system for HVAC operator workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at lighting panel shall be available through the DDC system for HVAC.

## 2.4 LINE CONDITIONING AND FILTERING

- A. Input Line Conditioning: Based on the manufacturer's harmonic analysis study and report, provide input filtering, as required, to limit total demand (harmonic current) distortion and total harmonic voltage demand at the defined point of common coupling to meet IEEE 519 recommendations.
- B. Output Filtering: <Insert requirements>.
- C. EMI/RFI Filtering: CE marked; certify compliance with IEC 61800-3 for [Category C2] <Insert category>.
- D. EMI/RFI Filtering: <Insert requirements>.

## 2.5 BYPASS SYSTEMS

- A. Bypass Operation: Safely transfers motor between power converter output and bypass circuit, manually, automatically, or both. Selector switches set modes and indicator lights indicate mode selected. Unit is capable of stable operation (starting, stopping, and running) with motor completely disconnected from power converter.
- B. Bypass Mode: Manual operation only; requires local operator selection at VFC. Transfer between power converter and bypass contactor, and retransfer shall only be allowed with the motor at zero speed.
- C. Bypass Mode: Field-selectable automatic or manual, allows local and remote transfer between power converter and bypass contactor and retransfer, either via manual operator interface or automatic-control system feedback.
- D. Bypass Controller: Two-contactor-style bypass allows motor operation via the power converter or the bypass controller[; **with input isolating switch and barrier arranged to isolate the power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode**].
  - 1. Bypass Contactor: Load-break, [IEC] [NEMA]-rated contactor.
  - 2. Output Isolating Contactor: Non-load-break, [IEC] [NEMA]-rated contactor.
  - 3. Isolating Switch: Non-load-break switch arranged to isolate power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode; pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.
- E. Bypass Controller: Three-contactor-style bypass allows motor operation via the power converter or the bypass controller[; **with input isolating switch and barrier**] arranged to isolate the power converter input and output and permit safe testing[ **and troubleshooting**] of the power converter, both energized and de-energized, while motor is operating in bypass mode.
  - 1. Bypass Contactor: Load-break, [IEC] [NEMA]-rated contactor.
  - 2. Input and Output Isolating Contactors: Non-load-break, [IEC] [NEMA]-rated contactors.
  - 3. Isolating Switch: Non-load-break switch arranged to isolate power converter and permit safe troubleshooting and testing of the power converter, both energized and de-energized,

while motor is operating in bypass mode; pad-lockable, door-mounted handle mechanism.

- F. Bypass Contactor Configuration: [**Full-voltage (across-the-line)**] [**Reduced-voltage (autotransformer)**] <Insert type> type.
1. NORMAL/BYPASS selector switch.
  2. HAND/OFF/AUTO selector switch.
  3. NORMAL/TEST Selector Switch: Allows testing and adjusting of VFC while the motor is running in the bypass mode.
  4. Contactor Coils: Pressure-encapsulated type[ **with coil transient suppressors**].
    - a. Operating Voltage: Depending on contactor NEMA size and line-voltage rating, manufacturer's standard matching control power or line voltage.
    - b. Power Contacts: Totally enclosed, double break, and silver-cadmium oxide; assembled to allow inspection and replacement without disturbing line or load wiring.
  5. Control Circuits: [**120**] <Insert number>-V ac; obtained from [**integral CPT, with primary and secondary fuses**] <Insert source of control power>, with [**CPT**] [**control power source**] of sufficient capacity to operate all integral devices and remotely located pilot, indicating, and control devices.
    - a. CPT Spare Capacity: [**50**] [**100**] [**200**] <Insert number> VA.
  6. Overload Relays: NEMA ICS 2.
    - a. Melting-Alloy Overload Relays:
      - 1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
      - 2) [**Class 10**] [**Class 20**] [**Class 30**] tripping characteristic.
      - 3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
    - b. Bimetallic Overload Relays:
      - 1) Inverse-time-current characteristic.
      - 2) [**Class 10**] [**Class 20**] [**Class 30**] tripping characteristic.
      - 3) Heaters in each phase matched to nameplate full-load current of actual protected motor and with appropriate adjustment for duty cycle.
      - 4) Ambient compensated.
      - 5) Automatic resetting.
    - c. Solid-State Overload Relays:
      - 1) Switch or dial selectable for motor-running overload protection.
      - 2) Sensors in each phase.
      - 3) [**Class 10**] [**Class 20**] [**Class 10/20 selectable**] tripping characteristic selected to protect motor against voltage and current unbalance and single phasing.

- 4) Class II ground-fault protection, with start and run delays to prevent nuisance trip on starting.
  - 5) Analog communication module.
- d. [NC] [NO] isolated overload alarm contact.
  - e. External overload, reset push button.

## 2.6 OPTIONAL FEATURES

- A. Multiple-Motor Capability: VFC suitable for variable-speed service to multiple motors. Overload protection shuts down VFC and motors served by it, and generates fault indications when overload protection activates.
  1. Configure to allow two or more motors to operate simultaneously at the same speed; separate overload relay for each controlled motor.
  2. Configure to allow two motors to operate separately; operator selectable via local or remote switch or contact closures; single overload relay for both motors; separate output magnetic contactors for each motor.
  3. Configure to allow two motors to operate simultaneously and in a lead/lag mode, with one motor operated at variable speed via the power converter and the other at constant speed via the bypass controller; separate overload relay for each controlled motor.
- B. Damper control circuit with end-of-travel feedback capability.
- C. Sleep Function: Senses a minimal deviation of a feedback signal and stops the motor. On an increase in speed-command signal deviation, VFC resumes normal operation.
- D. Motor Preheat Function: Preheats motor when idle to prevent moisture accumulation in the motor.
- E. Firefighter's Override (Smoke Purge) Input: On a remote contact closure from [**the firefighter's control station**] [**smoke-control fan controller**] <Insert location>, this password-protected input:
  1. Overrides all other local and external inputs (analog/digital, serial communication, and all keypad commands).
  2. Forces VFC to operate motor, without any other run or speed command, at a field-adjustable, preset speed.
  3. Forces VFC to transfer to bypass mode and operate motor at full speed.
  4. Causes display of override mode on the VFC display.
  5. Reset VFC to normal operation on removal of override signal [**automatically**] [**manually**].
- F. Remote Indicating Circuit Terminals: Mode selection, controller status, and controller fault.
- G. Remote digital operator kit.
- H. Communication Port: RS-232 port, USB 2.0 port, or equivalent connection capable of connecting a printer[ **and a notebook computer**].

I. <Insert feature>.

## 2.7 ENCLOSURES

- A. VFC Enclosures: NEMA 250, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
1. Dry and Clean Indoor Locations: [Type 1] <Insert type>.
  2. Outdoor Locations: [Type 3R] [Type 4X] <Insert type>.
  3. [Kitchen] [Wash-Down] Areas: [Type 4X] <Insert type>, [stainless steel] <Insert material>.
  4. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: [Type 4] <Insert type>.
  5. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: Type 12.
  6. <Insert enclosure requirements>.
- B. Plenum Rating: UL 1995; NRTL certification label on enclosure, clearly identifying VFC as "Plenum Rated."

## 2.8 ACCESSORIES

- A. General Requirements for Control-Circuit and Pilot Devices: NEMA ICS 5; factory installed in VFC enclosure cover unless otherwise indicated.
1. Push Buttons: [Covered] [Lockable] [Shielded] [Unguarded].
  2. Pilot Lights: Push to test.
  3. Selector Switches: [Rotary] <Insert description> type.
  4. Stop and Lockout Push-Button Station: Momentary-break, push-button station with a factory-applied hasp arranged so padlock can be used to lock push button in depressed position with control circuit open.
- B. [NC] [NO] [Reversible NC/NO] bypass contactor auxiliary contact(s).
- C. Control Relays: Auxiliary and adjustable [pneumatic] [solid-state] time-delay relays.
- D. Phase-Failure, Phase-Reversal, and Undervoltage and Overvoltage Relays: Solid-state sensing circuit with isolated output contacts for hard-wired connections. Provide adjustable undervoltage, overvoltage, and time-delay settings.
1. Current Transformers: Continuous current rating, basic impulse insulating level (BIL) rating, burden, and accuracy class suitable for connected circuitry. Comply with IEEE C57.13.
- E. Supplemental Digital Meters:
1. Elapsed-time meter.
  2. Kilowatt meter.
  3. Kilowatt-hour meter.

- F. Breather and drain assemblies, to maintain interior pressure and release condensation in NEMA 250, [**Type 4**] [**Type 4X**] [**Type 12**] <Insert type> enclosures installed outdoors or in unconditioned interior spaces subject to humidity and temperature swings.
- G. Space heaters, with NC auxiliary contacts, to mitigate condensation in NEMA 250, [**Type 3R**] [**Type 4X**] [**Type 12**] <Insert type> enclosures installed outdoors or in unconditioned interior spaces subject to humidity and temperature swings.
- H. Cooling Fan and Exhaust System: For NEMA 250, [**Type 1**] [**Type 12**] <Insert enclosure type>; UL 508 component recognized: Supply fan, with [**composite**] [**stainless-steel**] <Insert material> intake and exhaust grills [**and filters**]; [**120**] <Insert number>-V ac; obtained from [**integral CPT**] <Insert source of control power>.
- I. Sun shields installed on fronts, sides, and tops of enclosures installed outdoors and subject to direct and extended sun exposure.
- J. Spare control-wiring terminal blocks[; **unwired**][; **wired**].
- K. <Insert accessory>.

## 2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Test and inspect VFCs according to requirements in [**NEMA ICS 61800-2**] <Insert standard>.
  - 1. Test each VFC while connected to [**its specified motor**] [**a motor that is comparable to that for which the VFC is rated**].
  - 2. Verification of Performance: Rate VFCs according to operation of functions and features specified.
- B. VFCs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, surfaces, and substrates to receive VFCs, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, <insert **Project-specific conditions**,> and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine VFC before installation. Reject VFCs that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for conduit systems to verify actual locations of conduit connections before VFC installation.

- D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Wall-Mounting Controllers: Install with tops at uniform height and with disconnect operating handles not higher than 79 inches above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to wall or mounting on lightweight structural-steel channels bolted to wall. For controllers not on walls, provide freestanding racks complying with Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- B. Floor-Mounting Controllers: Install VFCs on 4-inch nominal thickness concrete base. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in [**Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."**] [**Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."**]
  - 1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
  - 2. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
- C. Roof-Mounting Controllers: Install VFC on roofs with tops at uniform height and with disconnect operating handles not higher than 79 inches above finished roof surface unless otherwise indicated, and by bolting units to curbs or mounting on freestanding, lightweight, structural-steel channels bolted to curbs. Seal roof penetrations after raceways are installed.
  - 1. Curbs and roof penetrations are specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."
  - 2. Structural-steel channels are specified in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- D. Seismic Bracing: Comply with requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- F. Install fuses in each fusible-switch VFC.
- G. Install fuses in control circuits if not factory installed. Comply with requirements in Section 262813 "Fuses."
- H. Install heaters in thermal-overload relays. Select heaters based on actual nameplate full-load amperes after motors are installed.
- I. Install, connect, and fuse thermal-protector monitoring relays furnished with motor-driven equipment.

- J. Comply with NECA 1.

### 3.3 CONTROL WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Install wiring between VFCs and remote devices[ **and facility's central-control system**]. Comply with requirements in Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- B. Bundle, train, and support wiring in enclosures.
- C. Connect selector switches and other automatic-control devices where applicable.
  - 1. Connect selector switches to bypass only those manual- and automatic-control devices that have no safety functions when switches are in manual-control position.
  - 2. Connect selector switches with control circuit in both manual and automatic positions for safety-type control devices such as low- and high-pressure cutouts, high-temperature cutouts, and motor-overload protectors.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify VFCs, components, and control wiring. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
  - 2. Label each VFC with engraved nameplate.
  - 3. Label each enclosure-mounted control and pilot device.
- B. Operating Instructions: Frame printed operating instructions for VFCs, including control sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished metal, and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of VFC units.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: [**Owner will engage**] [**Engage**] a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections[ **with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**].
- D. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - 1. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- E. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect VFC, wiring, components, connections, and equipment installation. [ **Test and adjust controllers, components, and equipment.** ]
  2. Test insulation resistance for each VFC element, component, connecting motor supply, feeder, and control circuits.
  3. Test continuity of each circuit.
  4. Verify that voltages at VFC locations are within 10 percent of motor nameplate rated voltages. If outside this range for any motor, notify [ **Architect** ] [ **Construction Manager** ] [ **Owner** ] before starting the motor(s).
  5. Test each motor for proper phase rotation.
  6. Perform tests according to the Inspection and Test Procedures for Adjustable Speed Drives stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  7. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
  8. Perform the following infrared (thermographic) scan tests and inspections, and prepare reports:
    - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each VFC. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each VFC 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    - c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
  9. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- F. VFCs will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies the VFC and describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations made after remedial action.

### 3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. [ **Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform** ] [ **Perform** ] startup service.
1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. < **Insert startup steps if any** >.

### 3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Program microprocessors for required operational sequences, status indications, alarms, event recording, and display features. Clear events memory after final acceptance testing and prior to Substantial Completion.

- B. Set field-adjustable switches, auxiliary relays, time-delay relays, timers, and overload-relay pickup and trip ranges.
- C. Adjust the trip settings of instantaneous-only circuit breakers and thermal-magnetic circuit breakers with adjustable, instantaneous trip elements. Initially adjust to 6 times the motor nameplate full-load amperes and attempt to start motors several times, allowing for motor cool-down between starts. If tripping occurs on motor inrush, adjust settings in increments until motors start without tripping. Do not exceed 8 times the motor full-load amperes (or 11 times for NEMA Premium Efficient motors if required). Where these maximum settings do not allow starting of a motor, notify [Architect] [Construction Manager] [Owner] before increasing settings.
- D. Set the taps on reduced-voltage autotransformer controllers.
- E. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges[ as specified in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."]
- F. Set field-adjustable pressure switches.

### 3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions until controllers are ready to be energized and placed into service.
- B. Replace VFCs whose interiors have been exposed to water or other liquids prior to Substantial Completion.

### 3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. [Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train] [Train] Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, reprogram, and maintain VFCs.

END OF SECTION 262923

## SECTION 264113 - LIGHTNING PROTECTION FOR STRUCTURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes lightning protection system for ordinary structures.
- B. Section includes lightning protection system for the following:
  - 1. Ordinary structures.
  - 2. **<Insert one or more miscellaneous structures or special occupancies>.**

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include layouts of the lightning protection system, with details of the components to be used in the installation.
  - 2. Include raceway locations needed for the installation of conductors.
  - 3. Details of air terminals, ground rods, ground rings, conductor supports, splices, and terminations, including concealment requirements.
  - 4. Include roof attachment details, coordinated with roof installation.
  - 5. Calculations required by NFPA 780 for bonding of metal bodies.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Lightning protection system Shop Drawings, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Lightning protection cabling attachments to roofing systems and accessories.
  - 2. Lightning protection strike termination device attachment to roofing systems, coordinated with the roofing system manufacturer.
  - 3. Lightning protection system components penetrating roofing and moisture protection systems and system components, coordinated with the roofing system manufacturer.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer.

- C. Product Certificates: For each type of roof adhesive for attaching the roof-mounted air terminal assemblies, approved by the roofing-material manufacturer.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For lightning protection system to include in maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Dimensioned site plan showing dimensioned route of the ground loop conductor and the ground rod locations. Comply with requirements of Section 017839 "Project Record Documents."
    - b. A system testing and inspection record, listing the results of inspections and ground resistance tests, as recommended by NFPA 780, Annex D.
- B. Completion Certificate:
  - 1. **[UL Master Label Certificate] [UL Letter of Findings Limited Scope Inspection Report] [LPI Master Certificate] [LPI Limited Scope Certification].**

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: **[UL-listed installer, category OWAY] [or] [LPI Master Installer].**

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Lightning Protection Standard: Comply with NFPA 780 requirements for **[Class I] [Class II]** buildings.
- B. UL Lightning Protection Standard: Comply with UL 96A requirements for **[Class I] [Class II]** buildings.
- C. Lightning Protection Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency as complying with UL 96, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.3 MATERIALS

### A. Air Terminals:

1. [Copper] [Stainless steel] [or] [Aluminum] unless otherwise indicated.
2. [3/8-inch] [1/2-inch] [5/8-inch] diameter by [10 inches] [12 inches] [15 inches] [18 inches] [24 inches] <Insert length of air terminal> long.
3. [Pointed] [Rounded] tip.
4. [Integral base support] [Threaded base support].

### B. Air Terminal Bracing:

1. [Aluminum] [Copper] [Stainless steel] [Galvanized steel].
2. [1/4-inch] <Insert size> diameter rod.

### C. Class I Main Conductors:

1. [Stranded Copper: 57,400 circular mils in diameter].
2. [Aluminum: 98,600 circular mils in diameter].

### D. Class II Main Conductors:

1. [Stranded Copper: 115,000 circular mils in diameter].
2. [Aluminum: 192,000 circular mils in diameter].

### E. Secondary Conductors:

1. [Stranded Copper: 26,240 circular mils in diameter].
2. [Aluminum: 41,400 circular mils in diameter].

### F. Ground Loop Conductor: [Stranded copper] [Tinned copper].

### G. Ground Rods:

1. Material: [Solid copper] [Copper-clad steel] [Stainless steel].
2. Diameter: [5/8 inch] [3/4 inch].
3. Rods shall be not less than 120 inches long.
4. [Sectional type, with integral threads].

### H. Conductor Splices and Connectors: Compression fittings that are installed with hydraulically operated tools, or exothermic welds, approved for use with the class type.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install lightning protection components and systems according to [UL 96A] [NFPA 780].
- B. Install conductors with direct paths from air terminals to ground connections. Avoid bends less than 90 degrees and 8 inches in radius and narrow loops.

- C. Conceal conductors within normal view from exterior locations at grade within 200 feet of building. Comply with requirements for [**concealed installations in UL 96A**] [**concealed systems in NFPA 780**].
  - 1. Roof penetrations required for down conductors and connections to structural-steel framework shall be made using listed through-roof fitting and connector assemblies with solid rods and appropriate roof flashings. Use materials approved by the roofing manufacturer for the purpose. Conform to the methods and materials required at roofing penetrations of the lightning protection components to ensure compatibility with the roofing specifications and warranty.
  - 2. Install conduit where necessary to comply with conductor concealment requirements.
  - 3. Air Terminals on Single-Ply Membrane Roofing: Comply with adhesive manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Ground Ring Electrode: The conductor shall be not less than the main-size lightning conductor.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Aboveground concealed connections, and connections in earth or concrete, shall be done by exothermic welds or by high-compression fittings listed for the purpose.
- B. Aboveground exposed connections shall be done using the following types of connectors, listed and labeled for the purpose: [**bolted connectors**] [**exothermic weld**] [**high compression**] [**crimp**].
- C. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
  - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
  - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.

### 3.3 CORROSION PROTECTION

- A. Do not combine materials that can form an electrolytic couple that will accelerate corrosion in the presence of moisture unless moisture is permanently excluded from junction of such materials.
- B. Use conductors with protective coatings where conditions would cause deterioration or corrosion of conductors.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Special Inspections: [**Owner will engage**] [**Engage**] a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:
  - 1. Perform inspections as required to obtain a UL Master Label for system.
  - 2. Perform inspections to obtain an LPI certification.

- B. Prepare test and inspection reports and certificates.

END OF SECTION 264113

## SECTION 265119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following types of LED luminaires:

1. Cylinder.
2. Downlight.
3. Highbay, linear.
4. Highbay, nonlinear.
5. Linear industrial.
6. Lowbay.
7. Parking garage.
8. Recessed, linear.
9. Strip light.
10. Surface mount, linear.
11. Surface mount, nonlinear.
12. Suspended, linear.
13. Suspended, nonlinear.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.
2. Section 260926 "Lighting Control Panelboards" for panelboards used for lighting control.
3. Section 260933 "Central Dimming Controls" or Section 260936 "Modular Dimming Controls" for architectural dimming systems and for fluorescent dimming controls with dimming ballasts specified in interior lighting Sections.
4. Section 260943.16 "Addressable-Luminaire Lighting Controls" and Section 260943.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls" for manual or programmable control systems with low-voltage control wiring or data communication circuits.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."

- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
  - 2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
  - 3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
  - 4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
  - 5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
  - 6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests[, **complying with IES "Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides" for each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project**] [IES LM-79] [and] [IES LM-80].
    - a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
    - b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
  - 2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Sustainable Design Submittals:
  - 1. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for lighting submittals.>](#)
- D. Samples: For each luminaire and for each color and texture with standard factory-applied finish.
- E. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of luminaire with custom factory-applied finishes.
  - 1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories involving color and finish selection.
- F. Samples for Verification: For each type of luminaire.
  - 1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories to verify finish selection.

- G. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps.[ **Use same designations indicated on Drawings.**]

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Luminaires.
  2. Suspended ceiling components.
  3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches of the plane of the luminaires.
  4. Structural members to which **[equipment]** **[and]** **[or]** luminaires will be attached.
  5. Initial access modules for acoustical tile, including size and locations.
  6. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
    - a. Other luminaires.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Sprinklers.
    - e. Access panels.
    - f. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
    - g. **<Insert item>**.
  7. Moldings.
  8. **<Insert feature>**.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.
- C. Seismic Qualification Data: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.
- E. Product Test Reports: For each type of luminaire, for tests performed by **[manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency]** **[a qualified testing agency]**.
- F. Sample warranty.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Lamps: [**Ten for every 100**] <Insert quantity> of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  2. Diffusers and Lenses: [**One for every 100**] <Insert quantity> of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  3. Globes and Guards: [**One for every 20**] <Insert quantity> of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.
- C. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- D. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.
- E. Mockups: For interior luminaires in room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.
  1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires in mockups before starting installations.
  2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: **[Five]** <Insert number> year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to [ASCE/SEI 7] <Insert requirement>.
- B. Seismic Performance: Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.
  - 1. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified[ **and the luminaire will be fully operational during and after the seismic event**]."
- C. Ambient Temperature: **[41 to 104 deg F]** **[5 to 104 deg F]**.
  - 1. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.
- D. Altitude: Sea level to **[1000 feet]** <Insert altitude>.

### 2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
  - 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
    - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
    - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
    - c. CCT and CRI.
- C. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.
- D. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
- E. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

F. California Title 24 compliant.

2.3 CYLINDER <Insert drawing designation>.

A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

B. Nominal Operating Voltage: [120 V ac] [240 V ac] [277 V ac] [12 V dc] [24 V dc].

C. Lamp:

1. Minimum [250] [575] [1000] <Insert number> lm.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of [80] <Insert number> lm/W.
3. CRI of [minimum] [65] [70] [80] <Insert number>. CCT of [2700 K] [3000 K] [4100 K] <Insert value>.
4. Rated lamp life of [35,000] [50,000] <Insert number> hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
  - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
  - b. Lamp base complying with [ANSI C81.61] [or] [IEC 60061-1].
8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. [Extruded-aluminum] <Insert option> housing and heat sink.
2. [Clear] <Insert color> [anodized] [powder-coat] [painted] finish.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. [Tempered Fresnel glass] [Prismatic glass] [Diffuse glass] [Clear glass] [Prismatic acrylic] [Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic] <Insert material>.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. With integral mounting provisions.

H. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.4 DOWNLIGHT <Insert drawing designation>.

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Nominal Operating Voltage: [120 V ac] [240 V ac] [277 V ac] [12 V dc] [24 V dc].
- C. Lamp:
1. Minimum [250] [575] [1000] <Insert number> lm.
  2. Minimum allowable efficacy of [80] <Insert number> lm/W.
  3. CRI of [minimum] [65] [70] [80] <Insert number>. CCT of [2700 K] [3000 K] [4100 K] <Insert value>.
  4. Rated lamp life of [35,000] [50,000] <Insert number> hours to L70.
  5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
  6. Internal driver.
  7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
    - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
    - b. Lamp base complying with [ANSI C81.61] [or] [IEC 60061-1].
  8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Housings:
1. [Extruded-aluminum] <Insert option> housing and heat sink.
  2. [Clear] <Insert color> [anodized] [powder-coat] [painted] finish.
  3. Universal mounting bracket.
  4. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.
- E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- F. Diffusers and Globes:
1. [Fixed] [Adjustable] lens.
  2. [Spot] [Medium] [Wide] light distribution.
  3. [Tempered Fresnel glass] [Prismatic glass] [Diffuse glass] [Clear glass] [Prismatic acrylic] [Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic] <Insert material>.
  4. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
  5. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
  6. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Standards:
1. ENERGY STAR certified.
  2. RoHS compliant.
  3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
  4. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.

2.5 HIGHBAY, LINEAR <Insert drawing designation>.

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Nominal Operating Voltage: [120 V ac] [240 V ac] [277 V ac] [12 V dc] [24 V dc].
- C. Lamp:
1. Minimum [250] [575] [1000] <Insert number> lm.
  2. Minimum allowable efficacy of [80] <Insert number> lm/W.
  3. CRI of [minimum] [65] [70] [80] <Insert number>. CCT of [2700 K] [3000 K] [4100 K] <Insert value>.
  4. Rated lamp life of [35,000] [50,000] <Insert number> hours to L70.
  5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
  6. Internal driver.
  7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
    - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
    - b. Lamp base complying with [ANSI C81.61] [or] [IEC 60061-1].
  8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Housings:
1. [Extruded-aluminum] <Insert option> housing and heat sink.
  2. [Clear] <Insert color> [anodized] [powder-coat] [painted] finish.
  3. With integral mounting provisions.
- E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- F. Diffusers and Globes:
1. [Tempered Fresnel glass] [Prismatic glass] [Diffuse glass] [Clear glass] [Prismatic acrylic] [Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic] <Insert material>.
  2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
  3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Standards:
1. ENERGY STAR certified.
  2. RoHS compliant.
  3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.6 HIGHBAY, NONLINEAR <Insert drawing designation>.

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- B. Nominal Operating Voltage: [120 V ac] [240 V ac] [277 V ac] [12 V dc] [24 V dc].
- C. Lamp:
1. Minimum [250] [575] [1000] <Insert number> lm.
  2. Minimum allowable efficacy of [80] <Insert number> lm/W.
  3. CRI of [minimum] [65] [70] [80] <Insert number>. CCT of [2700 K] [3000 K] [4100 K] <Insert value>.
  4. Rated lamp life of [35,000] [50,000] <Insert number> hours to L70.
  5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
  6. Internal driver.
  7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
    - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
    - b. Lamp base complying with [ANSI C81.61] [or] [IEC 60061-1].
  8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Housings:
1. [Extruded-aluminum] <Insert option> housing and heat sink.
  2. [Clear] <Insert color> [anodized] [powder-coat] [painted] finish.
  3. Universal mounting bracket.
  4. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.
- E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- F. Diffusers and Globes:
1. [Tempered Fresnel glass] [Prismatic glass] [Diffuse glass] [Clear glass] [Prismatic acrylic] [Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic] <Insert material>.
  2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
  3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Standards:
1. ENERGY STAR certified.
  2. RoHS compliant.
  3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.7 LINEAR INDUSTRIAL <Insert drawing designation>.

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Lamp:

1. Minimum [5,000] <Insert number> lm.
  2. Minimum allowable efficacy of [80] <Insert number> lm/W.
  3. CRI of [minimum] [65] [70] [80] <Insert number>. CCT of [2700 K] [3000 K] [4100 K] <Insert value>.
  4. Rated lamp life of [35,000] [50,000] <Insert number> hours to L70.
  5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
  6. Internal driver.
  7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
    - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
    - b. Lamp base complying with [ANSI C81.61] [or] [IEC 60061-1].
  8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Housings:
1. [Extruded-aluminum] <Insert option> housing and heat sink.
  2. [Clear] <Insert color> [anodized] [powder-coat] [painted] finish.
- D. Housing and Heat Sink Rating:
1. Class 1, Division 2 Group(s) [A] [B] [C] [and] [D].
  2. NEMA 4X.
  3. IP 54.
  4. IP 66.
  5. Marine and wet locations.
  6. CSA C22.2 No 137.
  7. <Insert standard or certification>.
- E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- F. Diffusers and Globes:
1. [Tempered Fresnel glass] [Prismatic glass] [Diffuse glass] [Clear glass] [Prismatic acrylic] [Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic] <Insert material>.
  2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
  3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- G. With integral mounting provisions.
- H. Standards:
1. ENERGY STAR certified.
  2. RoHS compliant.

2.8 LOWBAY <Insert drawing designation>

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Nominal Operating Voltage: [120 V ac] [240 V ac] [277 V ac] [12 V dc] [24 V dc].
- C. Lamp:
1. Minimum [5,000] [10,000] <Insert number> lm.
  2. Minimum allowable efficacy of 80 lm/W.
  3. CRI of [minimum] [65] [70] [80] <Insert number>. CCT of [2700 K] [3000 K] [4100 K] <Insert value>.
  4. Rated lamp life of [35,000] [50,000] <Insert number> hours to L70.
  5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
  6. Internal driver.
  7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
    - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
    - b. Lamp base complying with [ANSI C81.61] [or] [IEC 60061-1].
  8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Housings:
1. [Extruded-aluminum] <Insert option> housing and heat sink.
  2. [Clear] <Insert color> [anodized] [powder-coat] [painted] finish.
- E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- F. Diffusers and Globes:
1. [Tempered Fresnel glass] [Prismatic glass] [Diffuse glass] [Clear glass] [Prismatic acrylic] [Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic] <Insert material>.
  2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
  3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Standards:
1. ENERGY STAR certified.
  2. RoHS compliant.
  3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.9 PARKING GARAGE <Insert drawing designation>.

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- B. Nominal Operating Voltage: [120 V ac] [240 V ac] [277 V ac] [12 V dc] [24 V dc].
- C. Lamp:
1. Minimum [2,000] <Insert number> lm.
  2. Minimum allowable efficacy of [75] <Insert number> lm/W.
  3. CRI of [minimum] [65] [70] [80] <Insert number>. CCT of [2700 K] [3000 K] [4100 K] <Insert value>.
  4. Rated lamp life of [35,000] [50,000] <Insert number> hours to L70.
  5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
  6. Internal driver.
  7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
    - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
    - b. Lamp base complying with [ANSI C81.61] [or] [IEC 60061-1].
  8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Housings:
1. [Extruded-aluminum] <Insert option> housing and heat sink.
  2. [Clear] <Insert color> [anodized] [powder-coat] [painted] finish.
  3. Low-profile housing and heat sink.
  4. Fully gasketed and sealed. [ IP 65 rated.]
  5. Stainless-steel latches.
  6. Integral pressure equalizer.
- E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- F. Diffusers and Globes:
1. [Tempered Fresnel glass] [Prismatic glass] [Diffuse glass] [Clear glass] [Prismatic acrylic] [Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic] <Insert material>.
  2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
  3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- G. With integral mounting provisions.
- H. Standards:
1. ENERGY STAR certified.
  2. RoHS compliant.
  3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

- 2.10 RECESSED, LINEAR <Insert drawing designation>.
- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Nominal Operating Voltage: [120 V ac] [240 V ac] [277 V ac] [12 V dc] [24 V dc].
- C. Lamp:
1. Minimum [1,500] [2,000] [3,000] <Insert number> lm.
  2. Minimum allowable efficacy of [85] <Insert number> lm/W.
  3. CRI of [minimum] [65] [70] [80] <Insert number>. CCT of [2700 K] [3000 K] [4100 K] <Insert value>.
  4. Rated lamp life of [35,000] [50,000] <Insert number> hours to L70.
  5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
  6. Internal driver.
  7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
    - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
    - b. Lamp base complying with [ANSI C81.61] [or] [IEC 60061-1].
  8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Housings:
1. [Extruded-aluminum] <Insert option> housing and heat sink.
  2. [Clear] <Insert color> [anodized] [powder-coat] [painted] finish.
  3. With integral mounting provisions.
- E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- F. Diffusers and Globes:
1. [Tempered Fresnel glass] [Prismatic glass] [Diffuse glass] [Clear glass] [Prismatic acrylic] [Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic] <Insert material>.
  2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
  3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Standards:
1. ENERGY STAR certified.
  2. RoHS compliant.
  3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
  4. NEMA LE 4.

2.11 STRIP LIGHT <Insert drawing designation>.

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Nominal Operating Voltage: [120 V ac] [240 V ac] [277 V ac] [12 V dc] [24 V dc].
- C. Lamp:
  - 1. Minimum [750] <Insert number> lm.
  - 2. Minimum allowable efficacy of [75] [80] <Insert number> lm/W.
  - 3. CRI of [minimum] [65] [70] [80] <Insert number>. CCT of [2700 K] [3000 K] [4100 K] <Insert value>.
  - 4. Rated lamp life of [35,000] [50,000] <Insert number> hours to L70.
  - 5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
  - 6. Internal driver.
  - 7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
    - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
    - b. Lamp base complying with [ANSI C81.61] [or] [IEC 60061-1].
  - 8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Housings:
  - 1. [Extruded-aluminum] <Insert option> housing and heat sink.
  - 2. [Clear] <Insert color> [anodized] [powder-coat] [painted] finish.
  - 3. With integral mounting provisions.
- E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping of luminaire without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- F. Diffusers and Globes:
  - 1. [Tempered Fresnel glass] [Prismatic glass] [Diffuse glass] [Clear glass] [Prismatic acrylic] [Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic] <Insert material>.
  - 2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
  - 3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Standards:
  - 1. ENERGY STAR certified.
  - 2. RoHS compliant.
  - 3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.12 SURFACE MOUNT, LINEAR <Insert drawing designation>.

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)

- B. Nominal Operating Voltage: [120 V ac] [240 V ac] [277 V ac] [12 V dc] [24 V dc].
- C. Lamp:
1. Minimum [750] <Insert number> lm.
  2. Minimum allowable efficacy of [75] [80] <Insert number> lm/W.
  3. CRI of [minimum] [65] [70] [80] <Insert number>. CCT of [2700 K] [3000 K] [4100 K] <Insert value>.
  4. Rated lamp life of [35,000] [50,000] <Insert number> hours to L70.
  5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
  6. Internal driver.
  7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
    - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
    - b. Lamp base complying with [ANSI C81.61] [or] [IEC 60061-1].
  8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Housings:
1. [Extruded-aluminum] <Insert option> housing and heat sink.
  2. [Clear] <Insert color> [anodized] [powder-coat] [painted] finish.
  3. With integral mounting provisions.
- E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- F. Diffusers and Globes:
1. [Tempered Fresnel glass] [Prismatic glass] [Diffuse glass] [Clear glass] [Prismatic acrylic] [Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic] <Insert material>.
  2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
  3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Standards:
1. ENERGY STAR certified.
  2. RoHS compliant.
  3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.13 SURFACE MOUNT, NONLINEAR <Insert drawing designation>

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Nominal Operating Voltage: [120 V ac] [240 V ac] [277 V ac] [12 V dc] [24 V dc].
- C. Lamp:

1. Minimum [750] <Insert number> lm.
  2. Minimum allowable efficacy of [75] [80] <Insert number> lm/W.
  3. CRI of [minimum] [65] [70] [80] <Insert number>. CCT of [2700 K] [3000 K] [4100 K] <Insert value>.
  4. Rated lamp life of [35,000] [50,000] <Insert number> hours to L70.
  5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
  6. Internal driver.
  7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
    - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
    - b. Lamp base complying with [ANSI C81.61] [or] [IEC 60061-1].
  8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Housings:
1. [Extruded-aluminum] <Insert option> housing and heat sink.
  2. [Clear] <Insert color> [anodized] [powder-coat] [painted] finish.
  3. With integral mounting provisions.
- E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- F. Diffusers and Globes:
1. [Tempered Fresnel glass] [Prismatic glass] [Diffuse glass] [Clear glass] [Prismatic acrylic] [Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic] <Insert material>.
  2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
  3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Standards:
1. ENERGY STAR certified.
  2. RoHS compliant.
  3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
- 2.14 SUSPENDED, LINEAR <Insert drawing designation>
- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Nominal Operating Voltage: [120 V ac] [240 V ac] [277 V ac] [12 V dc] [24 V dc].
- C. Lamp:
1. Minimum [1,500] [2,000] [3,000] <Insert number> lm.
  2. Minimum allowable efficacy of [85] <Insert number> lm/W.

3. CRI of [minimum] [65] [70] [80] <Insert number>. CCT of [2700 K] [3000 K] [4100 K] <Insert value>.
  4. Rated lamp life of [35,000] [50,000] <Insert number> hours to L70.
  5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
  6. Internal driver.
  7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
    - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
    - b. Lamp base complying with [ANSI C81.61] [or] [IEC 60061-1].
  8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Housings:
1. [Extruded-aluminum] <Insert option> housing and heat sink.
  2. [Clear] <Insert color> [anodized] [powder-coat] [painted] finish.
  3. With integral mounting provisions.
- E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- F. Diffusers and Globes:
1. [Tempered Fresnel glass] [Prismatic glass] [Diffuse glass] [Clear glass] [Prismatic acrylic] [Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic] <Insert material>.
  2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
  3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Standards:
1. ENERGY STAR certified.
  2. RoHS compliant.
  3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
- 2.15 SUSPENDED, NONLINEAR <Insert drawing designation>
- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Nominal Operating Voltage: [120 V ac] [240 V ac] [277 V ac] [12 V dc] [24 V dc].
- C. Lamp:
1. Minimum [1,500] [2,000] [3,000] <Insert number> lm.
  2. Minimum allowable efficacy of [85] <Insert number> lm/W.
  3. CRI of [minimum] [65] [70] [80] <Insert number>. CCT of [2700 K] [3000 K] [4100 K] <Insert value>.

4. Rated lamp life of [35,000] [50,000] <Insert number> hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:
  - a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
  - b. Lamp base complying with [ANSI C81.61] [or] [IEC 60061-1].
8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. [Extruded-aluminum] <Insert option> housing and heat sink.
2. [Clear] <Insert color> [anodized] [powder-coat] [painted] finish.
3. Universal mounting bracket.
4. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. [Tempered Fresnel glass] [Prismatic glass] [Diffuse glass] [Clear glass] [Prismatic acrylic] [Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic] <Insert material>.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

## 2.16 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Steel:

1. ASTM A 36/A 36M for carbon structural steel.
2. ASTM A 568/A 568M for sheet steel.

C. Stainless Steel:

1. 1. Manufacturer's standard grade.
2. 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A 240/240 M.

D. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A 653/A 653M.

E. Aluminum: ASTM B 209.

## 2.17 METAL FINISHES

- A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.18 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.
- C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641 M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, [**12 gage**] <Insert size>.
- D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

- A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
  - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
  - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
  - 3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
  - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- E. Flush-Mounted Luminaires:
  - 1. Secured to outlet box.
  - 2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
  - 3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.
- F. Wall-Mounted Luminaires:
  - 1. **[Attached to structural members in walls] [Attached to a minimum 20 gauge backing plate attached to wall structural members] [Attached using through bolts and backing plates on either side of wall] <Insert means of attachment>.**
  - 2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
- G. Suspended Luminaires:
  - 1. Ceiling Mount:
    - a. **[Two] <Insert number> 5/32-inch- <Insert value> diameter aircraft cable supports [adjustable to] [10 feet in length] <Insert length>.**
    - b. **[Pendant mount] [Four-point pendant mount] with [5/32-inch-] <Insert value> diameter aircraft cable supports [adjustable to] [10 feet in length] <Insert length>.**
    - c. Hook mount.
  - 2. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
  - 3. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
  - 4. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and **[tubing or rod] [wire support]** for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
  - 5. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

H. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure luminaire to the luminaire opening using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

I. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Comply with requirements for startup specified in Section 260943.16 "Addressable-Luminaire Lighting Controls."

B. Comply with requirements for startup specified in Section 260943.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls."

3.7 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within [12] <Insert number> months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to [two] <Insert number> visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.

1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 265119

## SECTION 265213 - EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Emergency lighting units.
  - 2. Exit signs.
  - 3. Luminaire supports.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Emergency Lighting Unit: A lighting unit with internal or external emergency battery powered supply and the means for controlling and charging the battery and unit operation.
- D. Fixture: See "Luminaire" Paragraph.
- E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting support.
  - 1. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
  - 2. Include physical description of the unit and dimensions.
  - 3. Battery and charger for light units.
  - 4. Include life, output of luminaire (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
  - 5. Include photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES LM-45, for each luminaire type.

- a. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated **[luminaires]** **[and]** **[signs]**, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining **[luminaires]** **[and]** **[signs]** shall be certified by manufacturer.
  - b. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
  2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Sustainable Design Submittals:
1. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for lighting submittals.>](#)
  2. [<Double click to insert sustainable design text for fluorescent lamp mercury submittal.>](#)
- D. Samples: For each product and for each color and texture specified.
- E. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of luminaire with factory-applied finishes.
- F. Samples for Verification: For each type of luminaire.
1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories to verify finish selection.
- G. Product Schedule:
1. For emergency lighting units.[ **Use same designations indicated on Drawings.**]
  2. For exit signs.[ **Use same designations indicated on Drawings.**].
- 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Luminaires.
  2. Suspended ceiling components.
  3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches of the plane of the luminaires.
  4. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
  5. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
    - a. Other luminaires.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.

- d. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
  - e. Sprinklers.
  - f. Access panels.
  - g. **<Insert item>**.
7. Moldings.
  8. **<Insert feature>**.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.
- D. Seismic Qualification Data: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
  2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
  3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
  4. Provide seismic qualification certificate for each piece of equipment.
- E. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire for tests performed by **[manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency] [a qualified testing agency]**.
- F. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's[ **special**] warranty.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Lamps: **[10 for every 100] <Insert quantity>** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  2. Luminaire-mounted, emergency battery pack: One for every **[20] [50] <Insert quantity>** emergency lighting units. Furnish at least one of each type.
  3. Diffusers and Lenses: **[One for every 100] <Insert quantity>** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  4. Globes and Guards: **[One for every 20] <Insert quantity>** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.
- C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
- D. Mockups: For interior luminaires in room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.
  - 1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires and signs in mockups before starting installations.
  - 2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
  - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: [**Two**] <Insert number> year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period for Emergency Power Unit Batteries: [**Five**] <Insert number> years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for [**first year and prorated warranty for the remaining four years**] [**the entire warranty period**].

2. Warranty Period for Self-Powered Exit Sign Batteries: **[Two] [Five] <Insert number>** years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for **[first year and prorated warranty for the remaining six years] [the entire warranty period]**.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **[ASCE/SEI 7] <Insert requirement>**. **[Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.]**
  1. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified[ **and the luminaire will be fully operational during and after the seismic event**]."

### 2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NRTL Compliance: Fabricate and label emergency lighting units, exit signs, and batteries to comply with UL 924.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70 and NFPA 101.
- D. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.
- E. Comply with UL 1598 for fluorescent luminaires.
- F. Lamp Base: Comply with **[ANSI C81.61] [or] [IEC 60061-1]**.
- G. Bulb Shape: Complying with ANSI C79.1.
- H. Internal Type Emergency Power Unit: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within luminaire body[ **and compatible with ballast**].
  1. Emergency Connection: Operate **[one] <Insert number>** lamp(s) continuously at an output of **[1100] <Insert value>** lumens each upon loss of normal power. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire ballast.
  2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
  3. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

- a. Ambient Temperature: Less than 0 deg F or exceeding 104 deg F, with an average value exceeding 95 deg F over a 24-hour period.
  - b. Ambient Storage Temperature: Not less than minus 4 deg F and not exceeding 140 deg F.
  - c. Humidity: More than 95 percent (condensing).
  - d. Altitude: Exceeding 3300 feet.
  - e. **<Insert unusual service condition>**.
4. Nightlight Connection: Operate lamp continuously at [40] **<Insert value>** percent of rated light output.
  5. Test Push-Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening luminaire or entering ceiling space.
    - a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
    - b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
  6. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, [nickel-cadmium] [lead-acid] type.
  7. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
  8. Remote Test: Switch in handheld remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
  9. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.
- I. External Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, suitable for powering one or more lamps, remote mounted from luminaire.
    1. Emergency Connection: Operate [one] **<Insert number>** [fluorescent] [incandescent] [LED] lamp continuously. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire[ ballast].
    2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
    3. Nightlight Connection: Operate lamp in a remote luminaire continuously.
    4. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, [nickel-cadmium] [lead-acid] type.
    5. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type.
    6. Housing: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure listed for installation inside, on top of, or remote from luminaire. Remote assembly shall be located no less than half the distance recommended by the [ballast] [emergency power unit] manufacturer, whichever is less.
    7. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
    8. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.

9. Remote Test: Switch in handheld remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
10. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

## 2.3 EMERGENCY LIGHTING

A. General Requirements for Emergency Lighting Units: Self-contained units.

B. Emergency Luminaires:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Emergency Luminaires: **<Insert Drawing designation>** as indicated on [**Interior Luminaire Schedule**] [**Drawings**] [**and described in Section <Insert Specification Section>**], with the following additional features:
  - a. Operating at nominal voltage of [**120 V ac**] [**277 V ac**] [**6 V dc**] [**9.6 V dc**] [**12 V dc**] [**24 V dc**].
  - b. [**Internal**] [**External**] emergency power unit.
  - c. Rated for installation in damp locations, and for sealed and gasketed luminaires in wet locations.
  - d. UL 94 [**5VA**] [**5VB**] [**V-0**] [**V-1**] [**V-2**] [**HB**] flame rating.

C. Emergency Lighting Unit:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Emergency Lighting Unit: **<Insert Drawing designation>** as indicated on [**Interior Luminaire Schedule**] [**Drawings**].
3. Operating at nominal voltage of [**120 V ac**] [**277 V ac**] [**6 V dc**] [**9.6 V dc**] [**12 V dc**] [**24 V dc**].
4. [**Wall**] **<Insert mount type>** with universal junction box adaptor.
5. UV stable thermoplastic housing[, **rated for damp locations**].
6. Two [**Halogen**] [**Krypton**] [**LED**] lamp heads.
7. [**Internal**] [**External**] emergency power unit.

D. Remote Emergency Lighting Units:

1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
2. Emergency Lighting Unit: **<Insert Drawing designation>** as indicated on [**Interior Luminaire Schedule**] [**Drawings**].
3. Operating at nominal voltage of [**120 V ac**] [**277 V ac**] [**6 V dc**] [**9.6 V dc**] [**12 V dc**] [**24 V dc**].
4. [**Wall**] **<Insert mount type>** with universal junction box adaptor.
5. UV stable thermoplastic housing[, **rated for damp locations**].
6. [**One**] [**Two**] [**Halogen**] [**Krypton**] [**LED**] lamp heads.
7. External emergency power unit.

## 2.4 EXIT SIGNS

- A. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Internally Lighted Signs:
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  2. Operating at nominal voltage of [120 V ac] [277 V ac] [6 V dc] [9.6 V dc] [12 V dc] [24 V dc].
  3. Lamps for AC Operation: Fluorescent, two for each luminaire; 20,000 hours of rated lamp life.
  4. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
  5. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Internal emergency power unit.
  6. Master/Remote Sign Configurations:
    - a. Master Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, and provide additional capacity in [LED power supply] [ballast] [battery] for power connection to remote unit.
    - b. Remote Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, except omit power supply, battery, and test features. Arrange to receive full power requirements from master unit. Connect for testing concurrently with master unit as a unified system.
- C. Self-Luminous Signs:
1. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
  2. Powered by tritium gas, with universal bracket for flush-ceiling, wall, or end mounting. Signs shall be guaranteed by manufacturer to maintain the minimum brightness requirements in UL 924 for [10] [15] [20] years.
  3. Use strontium oxide aluminate compound to store ambient light and release the stored energy when the light is removed. Include universal bracket for flush-ceiling, wall, or end mounting.

## 2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
  2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access:
1. Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions.
  2. Designed to permit relamping without use of tools.
  3. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- C. Diffusers and Globes:

1. [Tempered Fresnel glass] [Prismatic glass] [Diffuse glass] [Clear glass] [Prismatic acrylic] [Clear, UV-stabilized acrylic].
2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
3. Acrylic: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. [Extruded aluminum] <Insert type> housing[ and heat sink].
2. [Clear] <Insert color> [anodized] [powder coat] [painted] finish.

E. Conduit: [Rigid galvanized steel] [Electrical metallic tubing] [Flexible metallic conduit], minimum 3/4 inch in diameter.

## 2.6 METAL FINISHES

- A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.7 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Support Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, [12 gage] <Insert size>.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of luminaires.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where emergency lighting luminaires will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.

- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
  - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire[ **and emergency power unit**] weight.
  - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position when testing emergency power unit.
  - 3. Provide support for luminaire and emergency power unit without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
  - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire and emergency power unit weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- E. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
  - 1. [**Attached to structural members in walls**] [**Attached to a minimum 20-gage backing plate attached to wall structural members**] [**Attached using through bolts and backing plates on either side of wall**] <Insert means of attachment>.
  - 2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
- F. Suspended Luminaire Support:
  - 1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.
  - 2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
  - 3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and [**tubing or rod**] [**wire support**] for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
  - 4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.
- G. Ceiling Grid Mounted Luminaires:
  - 1. Secure to any required outlet box.
  - 2. Secure emergency power unit using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of emergency power unit.
  - 3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.
- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service:
  1. Charge **[emergency power units]** **[and]** **[batteries]** minimum of one hour and depress switch to conduct short-duration test.
  2. Charge **[emergency power units]** **[and]** **[batteries]** minimum of 24 hours and conduct one-hour discharge test.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjustments: Within **[12]** **<Insert number>** months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site visit to do the following:
  1. Inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps, **[emergency power units]** [, **batteries,**] **[signs,**] or luminaires that are defective.
    - a. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
  2. Conduct short-duration tests on all emergency lighting.

END OF SECTION 265213

## SECTION 311000 - SITE CLEARING

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Protecting existing vegetation to remain.
2. Clearing and grubbing.
3. Temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities" for temporary utility services, construction and support facilities, security and protection facilities, and temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures.
2. Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal", for demolition of buildings, structures, and site improvements.
3. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for soil materials, excavating, backfilling and site grading.
4. Division 32 Section "Turf and Grasses" for finish grading including preparing and placing planting soil mixes and testing of topsoil material.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Topsoil: Natural or cultivated surface-soil layer containing organic matter and sand, silt and clay particles; friable and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than 2 inches in diameter; and free of subsoil and weeds, roots, toxic materials, or other non-soil materials.
- B. Tree-Protection Zone: Area surrounding individual trees or groups of trees to be protected during construction, and defined by the drip line of individual trees or the perimeter drip line of groups of trees, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Critical Root Zone: As a distance of three feet equal distance from the trunk, for each inch of trunk diameter.

#### 1.4 MATERIAL OWNERSHIP

- A. Except for materials indicated to remain on Owner's property, cleared materials shall become Contractor's property and shall be removed from Project site.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Pre-clearing photograph or videotape, sufficiently detailed, of existing trees and plantings, adjoining construction, and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by site clearing.
- B. Record Drawings, according to Division 01 Section “Project Record Documents,” identifying and accurately showing locations of capped utilities and other subsurface structural, electrical, and mechanical conditions.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section “Project Management and Coordination.”
  - 1. Identify and accurately locate utilities and other substructure structural, electrical and mechanical conditions.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during site-clearing operations.
  - 1. Do not close or obstruct roads, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner.
  - 2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner.
- B. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before site clearing.
- C. Do not commence site clearing operations until temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures are in place.
- D. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards tree protection zones.
- E. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources and smoking within or near tree protection zones.

## PART 2 - GENERAL

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Satisfactory Soil Material: Requirements for satisfactory soil material are specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
  - 1. Obtain approved borrow soil material off-site.

PART 3 - GENERAL

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect and maintain benchmarks and survey control points from disturbance during construction.
- B. Locate and clearly identify vegetation to remain or to be relocated.
- C. Protect existing site improvements to remain from damage during construction.
  - 1. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to Owner.

3.2 TEMPORARY EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL

- A. Provide temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to Maryland Department of Environment (MDE) approved erosion- and sedimentation-control drawings.
- B. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree protection zones.
- C. Inspect, maintain, and repair erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
- D. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

3.3 UTILITIES

- A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Architect not less than 72 hours in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  - 2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Owner's written permission.

3.4 CLEARING AND GRUBBING

- A. Remove obstructions and other vegetation to permit installation of new construction as indicated on the Site Plan.
- B. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.
  - 1. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding a loose depth of 8 inches, and compact each layer to a density equal to adjacent original ground.

3.5 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Remove all excavated material, obstructions, demolished materials, and waste materials including trash and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 311000

SECTION 312000 – EARTH MOVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

1. Preparing subgrades for slabs-on-grade walks, pavements, turf and grasses and plants.
2. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
3. Subbase course for concrete walks and pavements.
4. Subbase course and base course for asphalt paving.
5. Subsurface drainage backfill for walls and trenches.
6. Excavating and backfilling for utility trenches.
7. Excavating and backfilling trenches for utilities and pits for buried utility structures.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

1. List below only products and construction that the reader might expect to find in this Section but are specified elsewhere.
2. Division 01 Section "Unit Prices" for unit-price authorized additional excavation provisions.
3. Division 01 Sections "Submittal Procedures" for recording pre-excavation and earthwork progress.
4. Division 01 50 00 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for temporary controls, utilities, and support facilities.
5. Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
6. Divisions 21, 22, 23, 26, 27 and 28 Sections for installing underground mechanical and electrical utilities and buried mechanical and electrical structures.
7. Section 31 10 00 "Site Clearing" for temporary erosion and sedimentation control measures, site stripping, grubbing, stripping topsoil, and removal of above- and below-grade improvements and utilities.
8. Section 31 23 19 "Dewatering" for lowering and disposing of ground water during construction.
9. Section 31 50 00 "Excavation Support and Protection" for shoring, bracing, and sheet piling of excavations.
10. Division 32 Section "Turf and Grasses" for finish grading, including preparing and placing topsoil and planting soil for lawns.

1.3 UNIT PRICES

- A. Work of this section is affected by unit prices for earth moving specified in Division 01 Section "Unit Prices." Unit prices are applied only to areas beyond volumes as outlined in Part B of this section.
- B. Rock Measurement: Weight of rock actually removed, measured in original position, but not to exceed the following. Unit prices for rock excavation, measured in "tons" include replacement with approved materials.

1. 24 inches outside of concrete forms other than at footings.
2. 12 inches outside of concrete forms at footings.
3. 6 inches outside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
4. Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
5. 6 inches beneath bottom of concrete slabs-on-grade.
6. 9 inches beneath pipe in trenches, and the greater of 24 inches wider than pipe or 42 inches wide.
7. 24 inches beneath recharge bed for Stormwater Management Facilities.
8. Outermost dimensions as required to provide geogrid reinforcement for segmental block retaining walls.
9. 6 inches beneath bottom of pavement base material.
10. 8 inches beneath finished grades outside of secured areas.
11. 12 inches beneath finished grades inside of secured areas.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Backfill: Soil material used to fill an excavation.
1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
  2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.
- B. Base Course: Course placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving.
- C. Bedding Course: Course placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.
- D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil (Select Borrow) imported from off-site, or manufactured onsite and approved by the Geotechnical Engineer, for use as fill or backfill.
- E. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations.
1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations as directed by the Geotechnical Engineer. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for unit prices.
  2. Bulk Excavation: Excavation more than **10 feet** in width and more than **30 feet** in length.
  3. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations without direction by the Geotechnical Engineer. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by the Geotechnical Engineer, shall be without additional compensation.
- F. Fill: Soil materials approved by the Geotechnical Engineer to be used to raise existing grades.
- G. Recycled Material: Recycled Material shall contain a minimum of 90% post-consumer material.
- H. Rock: Rock material in beds, ledges, unstratified masses, conglomerate deposits, and boulders of rock material that exceed **1 cu. yd.** for bulk excavation or **3/4 cu. yd.** for footing, trench, and pit excavation that cannot be removed by rock excavating equipment equivalent to the following in size and performance ratings, without systematic drilling, ram hammering, ripping, or blasting, when permitted:
1. Revise size and performance ratings of equipment to suit Project; ratings are based on Caterpillar's "Model No. 320CL."
  2. Excavation of Trenches, and Pits: Late-model, track-mounted hydraulic excavator; equipped with a 42-inch-wide, maximum, short-tip-radius rock bucket; rated at not less than 138-hp flywheel

- power with bucket-curling force of not less than 28,090 lbf and stick-crowd force of not less than 18,650 lbf; measured according to SAE J-1179.
3. Revise size and performance ratings of equipment to suit Project; ratings are based on Caterpillar's "Model No. 973C."
  4. Bulk Excavation: Late-model, track-mounted loader; rated at not less than 210-hp flywheel power and developing a minimum of 48,510-lbf breakout force with a general-purpose bare bucket; measured according to SAE J-732.
- I. Structures: Buildings, footings, retaining walls, slabs, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
  - J. Subbase Course: Course placed between the subgrade and base course for hot-mix asphalt pavement, or course placed between the subgrade and a cement concrete pavement or a cement concrete or hot-mix asphalt walk.
  - K. Subgrade: Surface or elevation remaining after completing excavation, or top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, or topsoil materials.
  - L. Topsoil: Natural or cultivated surface-soil layer containing organic matter and sand, silt and clay particles; friable and black or a darker shade of brown, gray, or red than underlying subsoil; reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, gravel, and other objects more than **1 inch** in diameter in secure areas and **2 inches** in diameter in unsecure; and free of subsoil and weeds, roots, toxic materials, or other non-soil materials. Topsoil composition and characteristics shall be in accordance with MSHA Standard Specifications for Construction and Materials Section 920.
  - M. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  1. Detectable warning tape.
  2. Geotextile fabric.
  3. Recycled Materials.
  4. Requirements for local material source.
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- C. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance of the following with requirements indicated:
  1. Classification according to ASTM D 2487 of each borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.
  2. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D 1557 for each on-site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.
- D. Topsoil Analysis: Furnish soil analysis by a qualified soil-testing laboratory stating percentages of organic matter; gradation of sand, silt, and clay content; cation exchange capacity; sodium absorption ratio; deleterious material; pH; and mineral and plant-nutrient content of the topsoil.
  1. Laboratory analysis of composition and characteristics of topsoil for each source, whether onsite or offsite borrow, shall be in accordance with MSHA Standard Specifications for Construction and

Materials Section 920. A qualified soils scientist, approved by the owner, shall furnish a nutrient management plan for soils amendments. Topsoil shall be amended as specified by the nutrient management plan. Costs of all testing, the nutrient management plan, and amendments shall be included in the base bid, with no additional compensation by the owner.

2. Report suitability of tested topsoil for turf growth including testing laboratory recommended quantities of nitrogen, phosphorus, and potash nutrients and soil amendments to be added to produce satisfactory topsoil.
- E. Pre-excavation Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces that might be misconstrued as damage caused by earthwork operations. Submit before earthwork begins.
- F. LEED Submittals.
1. Product data for Credit MR 4: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of pre-consumer and post-consumer recycled content. Include statement indicating cost of each product with recycled content..
  2. Product data for Credit MR 5: For products having regional material content, documentation indicating location of manufacture and location of extraction, recovery or harvest of primary raw materials. Include statement indicating cost of each product with regional material content.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Geotechnical Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct soil materials and rock-definition testing, as documented according to ASTM D 3740 and ASTM E 548.
- B. Contractor shall follow all OSHA requirements and all local, State and Federal regulations for soil excavation, rock removal, and rock blasting.
- C. Pre-excavation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 General Requirements.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted in writing by Engineer and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated.
1. Notify Owner and Architect not less than 72 hours in advance of proposed utility interruptions.
  2. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Owner's written permission.
  3. Contact utility-locator service for area where Project is located before excavating.
  4. Verify existing utility services for area where Project is located before excavation.
- B. Demolish and completely remove from site existing underground utilities indicated to be removed. Coordinate with utility companies to shut off services if lines are active.
- C. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during earth moving operations.
1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner.

2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner.
- D. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator service for area where Project is located before beginning earth moving operations.
- E. Do not commence earth moving operations until temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures, specified in Division 31 Section "Site Clearing," are in place.
- F. Do not commence earth moving operations until plant-protection measures specified in the Maryland Department of Environment approved Erosion and Sedimentation Control Plans are in place.
- G. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:
  1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
  2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
  3. Foot traffic.
  4. Erection of sheds or structures.
  5. Impoundment of water.
  6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
  7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards protection zones.
- I. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Sections 916 and 920 of MSHA Standard Specifications for Construction and Materials.
- B. General: Provide select borrow soil materials for replacement of all excavated unsuitable material removed from the pipe trench. All excavated material removed from the trench excavations shall be hauled and disposed off-site. Provide test results or certifications that borrow material meets the requirements for the specified material.
- C. Recycled Content of Backfill: Recycled concrete (RC-6) for temporary roads, subbase, pipe bedding, and fill material, except under the building slab. Recycled aggregates shall contain a minimum of 90% post-consumer aggregate content.
- D. Regional Materials: Provide aggregate and sand products manufactured and of primary raw materials extracted or recovered within 500 mile radius of Project Site.
- E. Satisfactory Soils: Select Borrow as Per Section 916.01.01 of the MSHA Standard Specifications for Construction and Materials.
- F. Terms, descriptions, and gradations of granular soil materials in paragraphs below are examples only. Revise to comply with local practices and to suit Project. For example, granular materials may be referenced by state or local highway designations rather than by ASTM classifications.
- G. Subbase Material: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not

more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 sieve per Section 901 of the MSHA Standard Specifications for Construction and Materials .

- H. Base Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with at least 95 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 sieve per Section 901 of the MSHA Standard Specifications for Construction and Materials.
- I. Engineered Fill: Soils classified as CL, CM, SC, SM, GC or GM per ASTM D-2487, free organic matter (less than 3 percent by weight) and debris, and containing no particles greater than 4 inches in their largest dimension. In addition, soils classified as CL or ML should have a liquid limit and plastic index less than 40 and 20, respectively and a maximum dry density greater than 105 pcf. However, materials used as backfill behind below-grade walls or retaining walls should have classifications of SM, or more granular, in accordance with ASTM D 2487.
- J. Bedding Course: Narrowly graded mixture of washed crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 67; with 100 percent passing a 1-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 4 sieve.
- K. Topsoil: Loam, without stones or debris larger than 1 inch in diameter in secure areas and 2 inches in diameter in unsecure areas, without roots, vegetation, and without harmful materials or other debris which may be harmful to plant life. The topsoil shall contain a minimum of 2% of organic matter by weight when tested in accordance with AASHTO T 194. Other components shall be in accordance with MSHA Section 920 with the following percentages by weight:

Silt	10 – 60 %
Clay	5 – 30 %
Sand	20 – 75 %
pH	6.2 – 7.0
Soluble Salts	500 ppm maximum
- 1. Off-Site Topsoil: Topsoil furnished by the Contractor shall meet the requirements specified above, as tested by the Contractor per Section 1.5.C of this specification and approved by the Geotechnical Engineer.
- L. Filter Material: Narrowly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone and natural sand; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 67; with 100 percent passing a **1-inch** sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a **No. 4** sieve.
- M. Sand: ASTM C 33; fine aggregate, natural, or manufactured sand.
- N. Impervious Fill: Clayey gravel and sand mixture capable of compacting to a dense state.
- O. Structural Fill: All fills placed directly below or within the zone of influence of any bearing foundation or structural slab. Structural fill material shall consist of soils meeting Unified Soil Classification System (USCS) of SC or greater (i.e. SC through GW) with a Liquid Limit no greater than 30 and a maximum Plasticity Index of 10. All soil materials that fall within the USCS type ML, CL, CL-ML, OL, MH, CH, OH, PT, as well as material containing organic matter, ashes, cinders, refuse, frozen or other unsuitable materials are prohibited for use as Structural Fill.

## 2.2 GEOTEXTILES

- A. Subsurface Drainage Geotextile: Woven; manufactured for subsurface drainage applications, made from fibers consisting of long chain synthetic polymers, composed of a minimum 95 percent by weight of

polyolefins or polyesters; with 15 percent minimum elongation; complying with Maryland State Highway Administration type ST per SHA Standard Specifications for Construction and Materials.

### 2.3 CONTROLLED LOW-STRENGTH MATERIAL

- A. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Self-compacting, low-density, flowable concrete material produced from the following:
1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I Type II or Type III.
  2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F.
  3. Normal-Weight Aggregate: ASTM C 33, **3/8-inch** nominal maximum aggregate size.
  4. Foaming Agent: ASTM C 869.
  5. Water: ASTM C 94.
  6. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.

### 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, **6 inches** wide and **4 mils** thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with a metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches. Color shall be as follows.
1. Red: Electric.
  2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam and dangerous materials.
  3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
  4. Blue: Water systems.
  5. Green: Sewer systems.
  6. Purple: Storm Drain Systems.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations.
- B. Prepare subgrade for earthwork operations including removal of vegetation, topsoil, debris, obstructions, and deleterious materials from ground surface as specified in Division 31 Section "Site Clearing."
- C. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls, which are specified in Division 31 Section "Site Clearing," during earthwork operations.
- D. Provide protective insulating materials to protect subgrades and foundation soils against freezing temperatures or frost.
- E. Provide soil moisture control for sub grade material, imported or excavated borrow material, backfill, bedding, and top soil; in accordance with the recommendations of the geotechnical engineer. Costs of all soil moisture control will be solely the onus of the contractor with no additional compensation by the owner.

### 3.2 DEWATERING

- A. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.
- B. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.
  - 1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.
  - 2. Install a dewatering system to keep subgrades dry and convey ground water away from excavations. Maintain until dewatering is no longer required.

### 3.3 EXPLOSIVES

- A. Explosives: Obtain written permission from authorities having jurisdiction before bringing explosives to Project site or using explosives on Project site.
- B. Perform blasting without damaging adjacent structures, property, or site improvements.
- C. Perform blasting without weakening the bearing capacity of rock subgrade and with the least-practicable disturbance to rock to remain.
- D. Perform blasting in accordance with all Federal, State, and Local regulations. Consult the geotechnical engineer prior to any blasting and follow all recommendations so as to avoid "overshooting".

### 3.4 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

- A. All excavations and trenching shall be accomplished in strict accordance with applicable OSHA regulations.
- B. Do not excavate within twelve (12) inches of any building wall, column, pier, etc. Where excavation is required next to an existing structure or utility pole, excavate up to twenty-four (24) inches and allow the balance of soil to "fall away". Take care to not damage the existing structure or utility pole.
- C. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, trash, debris, soil materials, and obstructions. No changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time will be authorized for rock excavation or removal of trash, debris, soil materials, or obstructions.
  - 1. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials.
  - 2. Remove rock to lines and grades indicated to permit installation of permanent construction without exceeding the following dimensions:
    - a. **24 inches** outside of concrete forms other than at footings.
    - b. **12 inches** outside of concrete forms at footings.
    - c. **6 inches** outside of minimum required dimensions of concrete cast against grade.
    - d. Outside dimensions of concrete walls indicated to be cast against rock without forms or exterior waterproofing treatments.
    - e. **6 inches** beneath bottom of concrete slabs-on-grade.
    - f. **9 inches** beneath pipe in trenches, and the greater of **24 inches** wider than pipe or **42 inches** wide.

- g. **24 inches** beneath recharge bed for Stormwater Management Facilities.
- h. Outermost dimensions as required to provide geogrid reinforcement for segmental block retaining walls
- i. **6 inches** beneath bottom of pavement base material.
- j. **8 inches** beneath finished grades outside of secured areas.
- k. **12 inches** beneath finished grades inside of secured areas.

### 3.5 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

- A. Excavate to the indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus **1 inch**. If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.
  - 1. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.
  - 2. Excavation for Underground Basins and Electrical Utility Structures: Excavate to elevations and dimensions indicated within a tolerance of plus or minus **1 inch**. Do not disturb bottom of excavations intended as bearing surfaces.
- B. Excavations at Edges of Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:
  - 1. Excavate by hand to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. Use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
  - 2. Cut and protect roots according to the written recommendations of the Landscape Architect.

### 3.6 EXCAVATION FOR WALKS AND PAVEMENTS

- A. Excavate surfaces under walks and pavements to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades.

### 3.7 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

- A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.
  - 1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.
- B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to **12 inches** higher than top of pipe or conduit, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Clearance: As indicated.
- C. Trench Bottoms: Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints and barrels of pipes, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. For pipes less than 6 inches in nominal diameter, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe on an undisturbed subgrade.
  - 2. For pipes 6 inches or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe circumference. Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill.

3. Excavate trenches 9 inches deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.

D. Trenches in Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:

1. Hand-excavate to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. Use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.
2. Do not cut main lateral roots or taproots; cut only smaller roots that interfere with installation of utilities.
3. Cut and protect roots according to the written recommendations of the Landscape Architect.

### 3.8 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

- A. Notify Geotechnical Engineer when excavations have reached required subgrade.
- B. If Geotechnical Engineer determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.
- C. Proof-roll subgrade below the building slabs and pavements with a pneumatic-tired and loaded 10-wheel, tandem-axle dump truck weighing not less than **15 tons** to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.
  1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph.
  2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by the Geotechnical Engineer, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.
- D. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for Unit Price Items.
- E. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Engineer, without additional compensation.

### 3.9 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

- A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of **2500 psi**, may be used when approved by the Engineer.
  1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction or utility pipe as directed by the Engineer.

### 3.10 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

- A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
  1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

### 3.11 BACKFILL

- A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:
  - 1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
  - 2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.
  - 3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
  - 4. Removing concrete formwork.
  - 5. Removing trash and debris.
  - 6. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
  - 7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.
- B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

### 3.12 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

- A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.
- C. Backfill trenches excavated under structure and within **18 inches** of bottom of structure with satisfactory soil; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings. Concrete is specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- D. Trenches under Roadways: Provide **4-inch-** thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than **30 inches** below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of **4 inches** of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase course. Concrete is specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete"
- E. After installing compacted pipe bedding material, place and compact initial backfill of satisfactory soil, free of particles larger than **1 inch** in any dimension, to a height of **12 inches** over the utility pipe or conduit.
  - 1. Carefully compact initial bedding material under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
- F. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place initial backfill of controlled low-strength material to a height of **12 inches** over the pipe or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
- G. Backfill voids with satisfactory soil while installing and removing shoring and bracing.
- H. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation.
- I. Install detectable warning tape directly above utilities, **12 inches** below finished grade, except **6 inches** below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

### 3.13 SOIL FILL

- A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.
- B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:
  - 1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
  - 2. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
  - 3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
  - 4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
  - 5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.
- C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

### 3.14 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

- A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 2 percent of optimum moisture content.
  - 1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
  - 2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 2 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.
  - 3. Soil moisture control shall be the responsibility of the contractor and is to be done with no additional cost to the owner.

### 3.15 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

- A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than **8 inches** in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment, and not more than **4 inches** in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.
- B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations, and uniformly along the full length of each structure.
- C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698:
  - 1. Under structures and pavements, scarify and recompact top **12 inches** of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
  - 2. Under walkways, scarify and recompact top **6 inches** below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
  - 3. Under lawn or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top **6 inches** below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 92 percent. Under structures, building slabs, steps, and pavements, scarify and recompact top **12 inches** of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.
  - 4. Under walkways, scarify and recompact top **6 inches** below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 92 percent.
  - 5. Under turf or unpaved areas, scarify and recompact top **6 inches** below subgrade and compact each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 92 percent.
  - 6. For utility trenches, compact each layer of initial and final backfill soil material at 95 percent.

### 3.16 GRADING

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.
  - 1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
  - 2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.
- B. Site Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to required elevations within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Lawn or Unpaved Areas: Plus or minus **1 inch**.
  - 2. Walks: Plus or minus **1/4 inch**. ADA routes to remain in compliance.
  - 3. Pavements: Plus or minus **1/2 inch**.
  - 4. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of **1/2 inch** when tested with a **10-foot** straightedge.

### 3.17 SUBBASE AND BASE COURSES

- A. Place subbase and base course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.
- B. On prepared subgrade, place subbase and base course under pavements and walks as follows:
  - 1. Install separation geotextile fabric on prepared subgrade according to manufacturer's written instructions, overlapping sides and ends.
  - 2. Place base course material over subbase course under hot-mix asphalt pavement.
  - 3. Shape subbase and base course to required crown elevations and cross-slope grades.
  - 4. Place subbase and base course **6 inches** or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
  - 5. Place subbase and base course that exceeds **6 inches** in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than **6 inches** thick or less than **3 inches** thick.
  - 6. Compact subbase and base course at optimum moisture content to required grades, lines, cross sections, and thickness to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

### 3.18 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: The Contractor shall engage a qualified independent geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform field quality-control testing.
- B. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earthwork only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.
- C. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Geotechnical Engineer.
- D. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D 1556, ASTM D 2167, ASTM D 2922, and ASTM D 2937, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:

1. Paved and Building Slab Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, at least one test for every **2000 sq. ft.** or less of paved area or building slab, but in no case fewer than three tests.
  2. Foundation Wall and Retaining Wall Backfill: At each compacted backfill layer, at least one test for every **100 feet** or less of wall length, but no fewer than two tests.
  3. Trench Backfill: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least one test for every **150 feet** or less of trench length, but no fewer than two tests.
- E. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

### 3.19 PROTECTION

- A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.
- B. Repair and reestablish grades to the specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.
  1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Engineer; reshape and recompact.
- C. Where settling occurs before Project warranty period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.
  1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

### 3.20 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 312000

## SECTION 31 2000 – EARTH MOVING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this section.

#### 1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Earthwork includes areas below building foundations, below concrete slabs on grade, below paved areas and grading of all unpaved area in the site.
  - 1. Layout and staking for earthwork.
  - 2. Excavation and rough grading.
  - 3. Erosion and sediment control.
  - 4. Foundation excavation for footings.
  - 5. Establishing subgrades, leveling and proofrolling.
  - 6. Filling, backfilling and compaction.
  - 7. Keeping streets clean of materials tracked off site.
  - 8. Includes trenching, excavation and backfill for utilities.
  - 9. Maintenance and/or repair of damage to the rough grading.
  - 10. Removal and disposal of stones, debris, excess and unsuitable materials.
  - 11. Soil treatment for termite control.
  - 12. Field quality control, testing, and inspection.

#### 1.3 RELATED WORK

- A. DIVISION 3 - CONCRETE, as placed on earth or fill.
- B. DIVISION 23 - MECHANICAL, utilities.
- C. DIVISION 26 - ELECTRICAL, utilities.
- D. DIVISION 31 - EARTH WORK, all other sections.
- E. DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS, all sections
- F. DIVISION 33 – UTILITIES, all sections

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Rock Excavation: Natural geological formations or other material which cannot be removed by adequate equipment (in good condition) as defined below, shall be considered a part of the work if encountered above the subgrade elevation, and a change in the scope of work and paid for by the Owner if encountered below the subgrade elevation.
  - 1. Open Excavation and Grading: Rock in excess of the capabilities of a Caterpillar D-8 tractor weighted at not less than 285 HP flywheel power with 2 cu. yd. bucket and equipped with a single-shank hydraulic ripper, capable of exerting not less than 45,000 lbs. breakout force, or

- equivalent machinery.
2. Trenches, Pits and Footings: rock in excess of the capabilities of a Caterpillar 345 L track-type Hydraulic Backhoe weighing not less than 99,000 lbs. equipped with a 30-inch wide short-tip radius rock bucket, rated at not less than 345 hp flywheel power with bucket-digging force of not less than 39,000 lbs, or equivalent machinery.
  3. Minimum Effort: If rock is not removed during the process of normal digging and ripping, then extend the excavation to expose the rock surface within the limit of original excavation. Contact the A/E and he may direct the sides of rock to be exposed to a depth of 3 feet. This will be to determine the extent of additional work.
- B. Earth Excavation: Anything not classified as rock including as example: soils, gravels, stones, boulders, vegetation, debris, and unsuitable materials.
  - C. Unsuitable Materials: All excavated materials; debris, manmade or fabricated materials, concrete spoil, organic, soft, expansive, or unstable matter; all shall be disposed of as herein specified. Excessive moisture content shall not classify a material as unsuitable.
  - D. Removal and disposal of unsuitable material above the subgrade elevation and placement of approved specific fill material (from on or off the site) above the subgrade elevation as directed by the Soils Engineer shall be considered a part of the work.
  - E. Removal and disposal of unsuitable material approved below the subgrade elevation and placement of approved specific fill material (from on or off the site) below the subgrade elevation as directed by the Soils Engineer shall be considered a change in the scope of work.
  - F. Soils Engineer or Inspection Agency: An Agency and its designated representatives who monitor and approve all earthwork operations described herein.
  - G. Subgrade: The finished elevation of the earth immediately below all slabs, granular and porous fill, paving, footings, walls, etc., except the subgrade elevation shall not be higher than 12" below the existing earth elevation at the start of the project.
  - H. Subgrade for utility construction: Underside of barrel of pipe, or underside of any cradle or bedding if noted on drawings, or referenced in applicable local government specifications. For pipe drains and miscellaneous structures encased in concrete or on concrete, stone and/or gravel cradle, subgrade is lowest outside surface of encasement or cradle.
  - I. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other man-made stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.
  - J. Bedding Course: Course placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.
  - K. Drainage Course: Course supporting the slab on grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.
  - L. Subbase Course: Course placed between the subgrade and base course for hot-mix asphalt pavement, or course placed between the subgrade and a cement concrete pavement or a cement concrete or hot-mix asphalt walk.
  - M. Utilities: On site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables, as well as underground services within buildings.

- N. Filter Material: Course placed around drainage pipes.
- O. Unit prices: The contractor shall provide unit prices for all earth excavation and backfill completed below the subgrade, and for all rock excavation completed by drilling and hoe ramming.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Reference Standards:
  - 1. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO).
  - 2. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM).
  - 3. Maryland Department of Transportation, State Highway Administration “Standard Specifications for Materials and Construction”, January 2001, as amended to date (M.S.H.A. as hereinafter referred). Delete references to Measurement and Payment.
- B. Tolerances: As indicated herein.
- C. Testing: Requirements as specified herein.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Notification:
  - 1. Notify and provide data to regulatory authorities and A/E prior to commencement of work.
  - 2. Provide notice of: encounter with unknown utilities; subgrades before filling; areas requiring testing or inspection.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance of the following with requirements indicated:
  - 1. Classification according to ASTM D2487 of each on site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.
  - 2. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D698 for each on site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill.
  - 3. Field reports; in-place soil density tests.
  - 4. One optimum moisture – maximum density curve for each type of soil encountered.
  - 5. Report of actual unconfined compressive strength and/or results of bearing tests of each strata tested.
  - 6. Test reports must be submitted daily to the Architect and Owner.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Subsurface Conditions: Subsurface soils investigations have been made at the site. The report and logs of the test borings and test pits are included in the Appendix of these specifications. Such investigations have been made for the purposes of design only and neither the Engineers, the Owner, nor the Geotechnical Engineer guarantee adequacy or accuracy of the data, or that data are representative of all conditions to be encountered. Such information is made available for general information only and shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility for making his own investigations, tests, and analysis. Any additional test borings and other exploratory

operations may be made by Contractor shall be at no cost to Owner.

1. See Geotechnical Engineering Report prepared by Hillis Carnes Engineering Associates, Inc. dated February 1, 2018 for test boring data and other requirements.

B. Erosion and sediment control, in addition to erosion control specified in Division 1:

1. Standards: Comply with the requirements of the "Standards and Specifications for Soil Erosion and Sediment Control in Developing Areas" by the U.S.D.A. Soil Conservation Service.
2. General Erosion: Prevent erosion of earthwork; repair and correct any ditches, gullies or erosion immediately and upon occurrence.
3. Excavations: Prevent water from flowing into open excavations and toward building walls.
4. Slopes: Cover (with continuous plastic membrane) and stake all slopes steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.

C. Environmental Conditions:

1. Do not apply soil treatment when temperature is at or below freezing or when ground is frozen or frost is expected.
2. Do not apply soil treatment when surface water is present.

D. Existing Conditions: Accept the site in the condition which it exists at the time of the award of the contract and perform all work to the grades indicated.

1. Protect plant material, lawns and other features not designated for removal.
2. Protect bench marks, existing structures, fences, sidewalks, paving and curbs from excavating equipment and vehicular traffic.

E. Existing Utilities: Locate existing underground utilities in areas of work. If utilities are to remain in place, provide adequate means of protection during earthwork operations.

1. Should uncharted, or incorrectly charted, piping or other utilities be encountered during excavation, consult utility Owner immediately for directions. Cooperate with Owner and utility companies in keeping respective services and facilities in operation. Repair damaged utilities to satisfaction of utility Owner.
2. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving facilities occupied and used by others, except when permitted in writing by A/E and then only after acceptable temporary utility services have been provided. Provide a minimum of 48 hour notices to utility Owners and receive written notice to proceed before interrupting any utility.

F. Rock Excavation: Rock excavation may be performed with hoe rams, jack hammers, or any method the Contractor wishes to employ except for explosives.

## 1.8 PROTECTION

A. Safety: Provide protective measures necessary for the safety of workmen, to the public and adjacent property. Prevent cave ins, collapse of walls, structures and slopes, both on and adjacent to the site.

B. Standards: Comply with regulations of local authorities having jurisdiction, including all

applicable O.S.H.A. requirements.

- C. Repair: Includes the removal and replacement with new materials affected by settlement.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 FILL AND BACKFILL

#### A. Satisfactory Soils:

1. Compacted fill and backfill shall be free of deleterious matter such as frozen materials, organics, wood, debris, or rock larger than 4 inches in diameter and be classified SP, SW, SM, SC, GP, GC, GM, or GW per ASTM D-2487. Fine-grain material classified as CL and ML shall be tested to ensure the material meets all of the requirements of IBC 2012. All material shall have a liquid limit and plasticity index not exceeding 40 and 15 respectively when tested in accordance with ASTM D-4318.
2. The minimum dry unit weight shall not be less than 105 PCF maximum dry density as determined by ASTM D-1557, modified proctor.
  - a. Compacted fill and backfill behind segmental masonry retaining walls shall be sands and gravels classified SM or better and shall meet all of the requirements in spec section 32 3223.
3. All fill and backfill materials shall be obtained from on site or from off site sources and shall be approved by the Geotechnical Engineer prior to placement.
4. Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.

#### B. Engineered Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D 2940; with a least 90 percent passing a 1 ½ inch sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200

1. Locations: At contractor's option for on-site fill areas requiring off-site borrow.

#### C. Drainage fill:

1. Washed, narrowly graded mixture of crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel, (ASTM D 448 Coarse - aggregate grading size 57), with 100% passing of 1-1/2" sieve and not more than 5% passing a No. 8 sieve. Aggregate shall meet MSHA specification for No. 6 aggregate. Provide by Contractor from off-site source.
  - a) Locations: All concrete slab on grade areas subject to floor loading less than 125 psf.
2. For foundation drainage, use aggregate meeting MSHA specification for No. 8 aggregate.
  - a) Locations: Drainage fill behind basement walls and retaining walls.

#### D. Stone Base Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, reclaimed concrete, and natural or crushed sand (ASTM D2490) with at least 95% passing a 1 ½" sieve and not more than 8% passing a No. 200 sieve. Provide by contractor from off site sources.

1. Locations: All concrete slab on grade areas subject to floor loading greater than 125 psf, and all vehicular traffic areas.

#### E. Subbase Material: Designation CR-6 in accordance with MSHA / Specifications.

- F. Bedding Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D2940; except with 100 percent passing a 1 inch (25-mm) sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.
- G. Filter Material: Narrowly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone and natural sand; AASHTO M-43, size No. 17.
- H. Sand: ASTM C 33; fine aggregate, natural, or manufactured sand.
- I. Impervious Fill: Clayey gravel and sand mixture capable of compacting to a dense state.

## 2.2 FILL AND BACKFILL FOR UTILITIES

- A. Backfill: Earth removed from the trench provided that in the opinion of Soils Engineer such excavated material is satisfactory for backfilling.
- B. Should the excavated material be considered unsatisfactory for backfilling, the Contractor shall remove and dispose of such unsatisfactory material and substitute, in lieu thereof, suitable material obtained from elsewhere on or off the site.
- C. Materials shall meet the requirements specified in paragraph 2.1.A above.

## 2.3 TOPSOIL

- A. Refer to Section 32 9200 Turf & Grasses (*or use the following*)
- B. Topsoil mix
  - 1. Topsoil shall be excavated and reused material supplemented by new material obtained from off site sources as required, to complete the work. Topsoil shall have a pH range of 5.0-7.0 and organic matter content of 1.0-1.5% minimum. Topsoil shall be a sandy loam in texture with a mechanical analysis of 50-60% sand, 15-25% silt, 10-15% clay.
  - 2. All topsoil shall be graded free of roots, rocks larger than 1", subsoil, debris and organic material.
  - 3. New topsoil mix shall be 2/3 topsoil and 1/3 organic matter by volume.

## 2.4 SOIL TREATMENT - TERMITE CONTROL

- A. Emulsion soil chemicals of only water-based type. Do not use any fuel oil as a diluent.
- B. Solutions and chemicals listed and approved by EPA, USDA, and Maryland State Department of Agriculture.
- C. Chemicals used in retreatment shall also be certified and state type of chemical and rate of concentration.

## 2.5 FLOWABLE FILL

- A. Stabilized flowable fly ash mixture with a maximum slump of 8" and a minimum unconfined compressive strength of 100 psi after 28 days used to fill construction excavations.
- B. Manufacturer: American Stone Mix or approved equal.

## 2.6 SUBDRAINAGE SYSTEM

- A. Four (4) inch diameter perforated 4 inch diameter, schedule 40 PVC pipe meeting the requirements of ASTM F405 with a maximum perforation width of ¼ inch.
- B. Filter Material: Narrowly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone and natural sand; ASTM D 448; coarse-aggregate grading size 67; with 100 percent passing a 1 inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 4 sieve.
- C. Drainage Fabric: Nonwoven geotextile, specifically manufactured as a drainage geotextile; made from polyolefins, polyesters, or polyamides; and with the following minimum properties determined according to ASTM D 4759 and referenced standard test methods:
  - 1. Grab Tensile Strength: 110 lbf; ASTM D 4632.
  - 2. Tear Strength: 40 lbf; ASTM D 4533.
  - 3. Puncture Resistance: 50 lbf; ASTM D 4833.
  - 4. Water Flow Rate: 150 gpm per square foot; ASTM D 4491.
  - 5. Apparent Opening Size: No. 50; ASTM D 4751.

## 2.8 ACCESSORIES

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid and alkali-resistant polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored as follows:
  - 1. Red: Electric
  - 2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
  - 3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
  - 4. Blue: Water systems
  - 5. Green: Sewer systems.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Verify existing ground surfaces have been stripped of topsoil, root mat and existing pavement, unsatisfactory soils, concrete spoil, obstructions and deleterious material.
- B. Locate underground utilities in areas of work. If utilities are to remain in place, provide adequate means of protection during earthwork operations. Contact "Miss Utility".
- C. Use of explosives will not be permitted, unless approved by Owner in writing and Regulatory Agencies having jurisdiction.
- D. Demolish and completely remove from site existing underground utilities indicated to be removed. Coordinate with utility companies to shut off services if lines are active.
- E. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by

settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earthwork operations.

- F. Protect subgrades and foundation soils against freezing temperatures or frost. Provide protective insulating materials as necessary.
- G. Provide erosion-control measures to prevent erosion or displacement of soils and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways.

### 3.2 EXCAVATION

Excavation consists of removal and disposal of material encountered when establishing required finish grade elevations.

- A. Unauthorized Excavations:
  - 1. Unauthorized excavation consists of removal of materials beyond indicated subgrade elevations or dimensions without specific direction of A/E. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by A/E, shall be at Contractor's expense.
  - 2. Under footings, foundations, or retaining walls, fill unauthorized excavation by extending indicated bottom elevation of footing to excavation bottom, without altering required top elevation. Lean concrete, flowable fill, or compacted engineered fill may be used to bring elevations to proper position, when acceptable by A/E.
- B. Additional Excavation: When excavation has reached required subgrade elevations, notify Soils Engineer who will make an inspection of conditions.
  - 1. If unsuitable bearing materials are encountered at required subgrade elevations, carry excavations deeper and wider (9(H):12(V)) and replace excavated materials as directed by A/E
  - 2. Removal of unsuitable material below the subgrade elevation and its replacement as directed will be paid by the Owner on basis of contract conditions relative to change in work.
- C. Stability of Excavations: Slope sides of excavations to comply with local codes and ordinances having jurisdiction. Shore and brace where sloping is not possible because of space restrictions or stability of materials excavated.
  - 1. Maintain sides and slopes of excavations in safe conditions until completion of backfilling.
- D. Shoring and Bracing: Provide materials for shoring and bracing, such as sheet piling, uprights, stringers, and cross-braces, in good serviceable condition.
  - 1. Establish requirements for trench shoring and bracing to comply with local codes and authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Maintain shoring and bracing in excavations regardless of time period excavations will be open. Carry down shoring and bracing as excavation progresses.
- E. Dewatering: Prevent surface water and subsurface or ground water from flowing into excavations and from flooding project site and surrounding area.
  - 1. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Remove water to prevent softening of

- foundation bottoms, undercutting footings, and soil changes detrimental to stability of subgrades and foundations. Provide and maintain pumps, well points, sumps, suction and discharge lines, and other dewatering system components necessary to convey water away from excavations.
2. Convey water removed from excavations and rain water into approved sediment control devices. Establish and maintain temporary drainage ditches and other diversions outside excavation limits for each structure. Do not use trench excavations as temporary drainage ditches.
  3. Excessive groundwater conditions: Refer to the General Conditions.
- F. Material Storage: Stockpile satisfactory excavated materials where directed, until required for backfill or fill. Place, grade and shape stockpiles for proper drainage.
1. Prevent saturation of soil above the optimum moisture content.
  2. Locate and retain soil materials away from edge of excavations.
  3. Dispose of excess soil material and waste materials as herein specified.
- G. Excavation for Structures: Conform to elevations and dimensions shown within a tolerance of plus or minus 0.10', and extending sufficient distance from footings and foundations to permit placing and removal of concrete formwork, installation of services, other construction, and for inspection.
1. In excavating for footings and foundations, take care not to disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before concrete reinforcement is placed. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.
  2. If in excavating for building foundations the soil directly below the building foundations is disturbed, the disturbed soil shall be removed and shall be recompacted to 95% compaction or replaced with concrete backfill.
- H. Excavation for Stone and Concrete Pavements: Cut surface under pavements to comply with cross-sections, elevations and grades as shown:
1. Where rock or concrete spoil is encountered, carry excavation 18" below subgrade and backfill with suitable material approved by the A/E.
- I. Excavation for Trenches: Dig trenches to the uniform width required for particular item to be installed with ample working room.
1. Excavate trenches to depth, lines, gradients, and elevations indicated or required. Carry depth of trenches for piping to establish indicated flow lines and invert elevations. Beyond building perimeter, keep bottoms of trenches sufficiently below finish grade to avoid freeze-ups.
  2. Where rock is encountered, carry excavation 6" below required elevation and backfill with a 6" layer of crushed stone or gravel prior to installation of pipe.
  3. Grade bottoms of trenches as indicated, notching under pipe bells to provide solid bearing for entire body of pipe.
    - a) For pipes and conduit less than 6 inches in nominal diameter and flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe and conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
    - b) For pipes and conduit 6 inches or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe circumference. Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill.

4. Backfill trenches with concrete where trench excavations pass within 18" of column or wall footings and which are carried below bottom of such footings, or which pass under wall footings. Place concrete to level of bottom of adjacent footing. Concrete is specified in Division 3.
  5. Do not backfill trenches until tests and inspections have been made and backfilling authorized by A/E. Use care in backfilling to avoid damage or displacement of pipe systems.
- J. Cold Weather Protection: Protect excavation bottoms against freezing when atmospheric temperature is less than 35 degrees F. (1 degree C.).
- K. Ground Surface Preparation (Structural and Pavement areas):
1. The existing ground surface in the structural and pavement areas shall be stripped of topsoil, root mat, existing pavements, unsatisfactory soils, concrete spoil, obstructions and deleterious material. Base course material from the existing pavements may remain if approved by the A/E. The entire area shall be proofrolled, a minimum of four (4) passes, with a loaded 20 ton dump truck or equivalent heavy construction equipment in the presence of the soils engineer. Soft spots identified by the Soils Engineer during proofrolling will be undercut and backfilled in accordance with Section 3.4. Proofrolling and compaction equipment shall meet the requirements of Section 3.3.D. Undercutting and backfilling operations for eliminating soft spots above the subgrade elevation shall be included in the base bid.
  2. In cut areas, prior to the construction of paving or concrete slab on grade, the entire subgrade shall be proofrolled in the presence of the Soils Engineer. Soft areas encountered during proofrolling shall be undercut and backfilled in accordance with section 3.4. Proofrolling and compaction equipment shall be in compliance with Section 3.3 D. The cost of undercutting and backfilling above the subgrade elevation shall be included in the base bid.
- L. Earthwork Quantities:
1. Contractor shall be responsible for determining earthwork quantities for the completion of the work.
- 3.3 DEMOLITION FILL, PROCESSING, & PLACEMENT
- A. All demolition debris shall be removed from the existing ballroom and lower level.
  - B. Foundation walls shall be removed to a minimum of 42 inches below any future floor slabs and foundation beams.
  - C. Existing lower level slabs only shall be removed per demolition plan.
- 3.4 COMPACTION
- A. General: Control soil compaction during construction providing percentage of dry density specified for each area classification.
  - B. Percentage of Maximum Density Requirements: Compact soil to not less than the following percentages of the maximum dry density which is determined in accordance with ASTM D-1557, or in accordance with ASTM D-2049 for soils which will not exhibit a well-defined moisture-density relationship.

1. Structural, pavement and walkway areas, steps and utility trenches - 95% of the maximum dry density, except the top 12" under slab on grade and paving shall be compacted at 98% of the maximum dry density.
  2. Lawn areas outside the designated structural fill limits - 90% of the maximum dry density.
- C. Moisture Control: Obtaining a uniformly high degree of compaction requires control over the moisture content of the material being placed in the fills and backfill. The soils used in fill and backfill shall be brought to within 3% of optimum moisture at no additional cost to the Owner.
1. Where the soil layer is too dry, the Contractor shall apply water uniformly using approved equipment to increase the moisture content to within 3% of the optimum, taking precautions to prevent free water from appearing on the surface during or subsequent to compaction operations.
  2. Where the soil layer is too wet, the Contractor shall dry the soils by plowing, discing or using chemical additives to aerate the soil and reduce the moisture content to within 3% of the optimum.
- D. Compaction equipment shall be as required to complete the scope of work outlined in the geotechnical report, contract documents and specifications for this project.

### 3.5 BACKFILL AND FILL

- A. General: Place acceptable soil material in layers not more than eight (8) inches in thickness to required subgrade elevations, for each area classification listed below. Each layer shall be compacted to the requirements of Section 3.3B.
1. Fill and backfill within building and pavement limits and in utility trenches shall be engineered fill soils meeting the requirements of Section 2.1.B.
  2. Under lawn areas outside the designated structural fill limits, backfill and fill soils shall be soils meeting the requirements of Section 2.1.A, or other on site materials approved by the Geotechnical Engineer.
  3. Fill and backfill located below walkways and steps shall be constructed of engineered fill soils meeting the requirements of Section 2.1.B.
  4. Drainage fill material shall be proof rolled to a uniform stable condition prior to placement of vapor retarder.
  5. Stone base course shall be compacted to 98% maximum dry density per ASTM D-1557.
- B. Backfill excavations as promptly as work permits, but not until completion of the following:
1. Acceptance of construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage damp proofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
  2. Concrete and masonry have cured 28 days and is adequately braced.
  3. Inspection, testing, approval, and recording locations of underground utilities.
  4. Removal of concrete formwork.
  5. Removal of trash and debris.
  6. Removing temporary shoring and bracing, and sheeting.
  7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.
- C. Ground surface preparation: Shall be in accordance with Section 3.2K.
1. When existing ground surface has density less than that specified under Section 3.3B for

particular area classification, break up ground surface, pulverize, moisture condition to optimum moisture content, and compact to required depth and percentage of maximum dry density.

- D. Placement and Compaction: Place backfill and fill materials in layers not more than 8" in loose depth, for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment and not more than 4" in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers. No heavy compaction equipment shall be allowed within 5 ft. of masonry or concrete retaining walls.
1. Before compaction, moisten or aerate each layer as may be necessary to provide optimum moisture content. Compact each layer to required percentage of maximum dry density for each classification. Do not place backfill or fill material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
  2. Place backfill and fill materials evenly adjacent to structures, to required elevations. Take care to prevent wedging action of backfill against structures by carrying material uniformly around structure to approximately same elevation in each lift.
  3. Structural fill shall extend a minimum of five (5) feet laterally beyond building and road pavement limits plus 1 foot for each foot of fill above the subgrade elevation and shall include the support slopes to their full width.
  4. Backfilling against pipe structures, whose joints involve the use of cement mortar or other concrete, or where buttresses are constructed, shall not be done until mortar has set at least 12 hours.
  5. Compaction over one foot above the pipe shall be done with approved mechanical tampers. Compaction density shall be as specified in Section 3.3.
- E. Utility trench backfill
1. Place and compact initial backfill of subbase material, free of particles larger than 1 inch, to a height of 12 inches over the utility pipe or conduit. Carefully compact material under pipe haunches and bring backfill evenly up on both sides and along the full length of utility piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of utility system.
  2. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.
  3. Provide 4-inch thick, concrete-base slab support for piping or conduit less than 30 inches below surface of roadways. After installing and testing, completely encase piping or conduit in a minimum of 4 inches of concrete before backfilling or placing roadway subbase.
  4. Fill voids with approved backfill materials while shoring, bracing, and sheeting is removed.
  5. Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil material to final subgrade.
  6. Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

### 3.6 ROUGH GRADING

- A. General: Uniformly grade areas within limits of grading under this section, including adjacent transition areas. Smooth finished surfaces with specified tolerances, compact with uniform levels or slopes between points where elevations are shown, or between such points and existing grades. In fill areas, sloped surfaces steeper than 5 horizontal to 1 vertical shall be benched so that fill materials will be placed on a level surface. All fill subgrades shall be observed by the Geotechnical Engineer.
- B. Grading Outside Building Lines: Grade areas adjacent to building lines to drain away from structures and to prevent ponding. Finish surfaces free from irregular surface changes, and as

follows:

1. Lawn or Unpaved Areas: Finish areas to receive topsoil to within not more than 0.10' above or below required subgrade elevations.
  2. Walks: Shape surface or areas under walks to line, grade and cross-section, with finish surface not more than .04' above or below required subgrade elevation
  3. Pavements: Shape surface areas under pavement to line, grade and cross-section, with finish surface not more than .04' for bituminous surfaces and 08' for stone surfaces, above or below required subgrade elevation.
- C. Grading Surface or Fill Under Building Slabs: Grade smooth and even, free of voids, compacted as specified, and to required elevation. Provide final grades within a tolerance of .02' when tested with a 10' straightedge.
- D. Install grading stakes for checking rough and finished grade throughout area to be graded.
1. Set at 50 foot grid intervals, or as directed to reflect grading variations.
  2. Stakes: 1 x 2 x 24 inch, sound woods.
  3. Set securely so that minimum of 6 inches is above rough grade.
  4. Mark each stake to indicate design finished grade.
- E. At the end of each work day, all fill areas, shall be graded to facilitate surface drainage of any surface runoff associated with precipitation, and shall be sealed by use of a smooth-drum roller to limit infiltration of surface water. During placement and compaction of new fill at the beginning of each workday, the Contractor shall scarify existing subgrade soils so that a weak plane will not be formed between the new fill and the existing subgrade soils. Subgrade soils shall be scarified to depths of 4 inches prior to placement of new fill.

### 3.7 BUILDING SLAB BASE COURSE

- A. General: Slab base course consists of placement of drainage fill or stone base course material, in layers of indicated thickness, over subgrade surface to support concrete building slabs.
- B. Placing: Place slab base course on prepared subgrade in layers of uniform thickness, conforming to indicate cross-section and thickness. Maintain optimum moisture content for compacting material during placement operations.
1. When a compacted drainage course is shown to be 6" thick or less, place material in a single layer. Where shown to be more than 6" thick, place material in equal layers, except no single layers more than 6" or less than 3" in thickness when compacted.
- C. Any ruts or soft yielding spots which may occur or any areas having inadequate compaction or deviations from the requirements set forth herein shall be corrected by removing and adding uniformly graded crushed stone or by loosening crushed gravel, reshaping and recompacting. The subgrade shall have a uniform density throughout its entire depth and width and shall be approved by the A/E prior to pouring any concrete.
- D. Following this preparation, the subgrade shall be protected from damage as described below:
1. The subgrade shall be protected from damage by heavy loads or equipment moving on tracks or cleats.

2. The contractor shall at all times keep the subgrade drained.
3. No concrete shall be deposited upon a frozen subgrade nor, until the subgrade has been approved by the A/E.
4. Immediately in advance of placing concrete, the subgrade shall be sprinklered with as much water as it can readily absorb.

### 3.8 SUBDRAINAGE SYSTEM

- A. Subdrainage system: Polyethylene tubing shall be placed with the perforations down, using straight sections and standard available connections, with inverts at least six inches below the final floor subgrade. The subdrain system shall drain by gravity to a sump or exterior storm drain line, with provisions made to avoid back pressures from acting in the event that water flows full in storm sewers or sump pump.
  1. Clean outs shall be installed at each right angle bend to allow flushing of the system during routine building maintenance.
  2. Place a layer of drainage fabric around the perimeter of the drainage trench at the base of the exterior basement walls and site retaining walls. Place 6 inch course of filter material on drainage fabric to support drainage pipe. Encase drainage pipe in a minimum of 12 inches of filter material and wrap in drainage fabric, overlapping sides and ends at least 6 inches. Compact each course of filter material to 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D 698.

### 3.9 FINISH GRADING

- A. Verify surfaces are to the prescribed subgrades, within tolerances and properly compacted.
- B. Remove mounds or ridges, gullies and depressions and perform other necessary repairs.
- C. Tillage: After the areas to be topsoiled have been approved for proper subgrade, the surface shall be loosened and made friable by cross-discing or other satisfactory methods, to a depth of at least 4" to permit bonding of topsoil to the subgrade.
- D. Remove stones and debris 1 inch or more in any dimension from the surface of the subgrade.

### 3.10 PLACING TOPSOIL

- A. Topsoil shall not be placed when either the subgrade or the topsoil is wet or frozen enough to cause clodding.
- B. Spread stockpiled topsoil evenly over designated lawn areas to a depth of 3 inches.
- C. Finished surface of topsoiled areas shall have a maximum vertical tolerance of 0.10 foot.

### 3.11 MAINTENANCE

- A. Protection of graded areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris. Repair and re-establish grades in settled, eroded and rutted areas to specified tolerances.
- B. Reconditioning compacted areas: Where completed compacted areas are disturbed by subsequent

construction operations or adverse weather, scarify surface, reshape, and compact to required density prior to further construction.

- C. Restore areas previously occupied by stockpiled materials to match finished condition of the remainder of the work.

### 3.12 APPLICATION OF SOIL TREATMENT

- A. Do not apply soil treatment until preparations for slab placements are complete, including backfilling, and placement of base course, grading, and soil compaction.
- B. Complete treatment application prior to placement of vapor retarders and insulation.
- C. Take particular care not to disturb the subgrade after treatment.
- D. Apply soil treatment at rates recommended by manufacturer to the following areas: Area of earth fill within the limit of the building; coarse or porous fill; voids of foundations walls; beneath concrete floor slabs; along, and adjacent to interior and exterior sides of foundation walls, beams and footings; immediately below expansion joints, control joints and areas where slabs will be penetrated by construction features; where exterior facings or veneers extend below grade level along exterior side of foundation walls, or where unit masonry foundation construction is used.

### 3.13 DISPOSAL OF EXCESS AND WASTE MATERIALS

- A. Removal from Owner's Property: Remove waste materials including trash, debris, and unsuitable and excess excavated material, and dispose of legally off Owner's property.

### 3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL - SOILS

- A. Quality Control Testing During Construction: Allow testing service to inspect and approve subgrades and fill layers before further construction work is performed.
  1. Perform field density tests in accordance with ASTM D-1556 (sand cone method) or ASTM D-2922 and D-3017 (shallow depth nuclear method), as applicable.
  2. Paved Areas and Building Slab Subgrade: Make at least one field density test of subgrade for every 2,000 sq. ft. of paved area or building slab area, but in no case less than 3 tests. In each compacted fill layer, make one field density test for every 2,000 sq. ft. of overlaying building slab or paved area, but in no case less than 2 tests. Field density tests shall be made at all walkway entrances and ramps into the proposed building.
  3. Foundation Wall Backfill: Take enough field density tests to ensure backfill is being properly compacted.
  4. Utility Trench Backfill: Perform field density tests on a spot-check basis to assist the Contractor in determining if compaction is in accordance with the specifications.
  5. If in opinion of A/E, based on testing service reports and inspection, subgrade or fills which have been placed are below specified density, provide additional compaction and testing at no additional expense.
  6. Footing Subgrade: For each strata of soil on which footings will be placed, conduct at least one test to verify required design bearing capacities. Subsequent evaluation and approval of each footing subgrade should be performed by Geotechnical Testing Agency.
  7. Costs of testing and inspection shall be borne by the Owner.

### 3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL - SOIL TREATMENTS

- A. Pay costs for required testing of termite control materials. Samples shall be taken and analyzed by an independent testing laboratory.
- B. Sampling: Test one sample of working solution for each 10,000 square feet of area applied. Take samples from discharge end of spraying equipment for each batch mixed and applied if less than 10,000 square feet.
- C. Retreating: Retreat all areas if the test results average less than 90 percent of listed minimum concentration.

### 3.16 TESTING AND INSPECTION

- A. INSPECTION AGENCY: Inspect and test construction of embankments, fills, backfills, trenches, and subgrades and report to the A/E conformance in all particulars to specification requirements. Inspection Agency shall be independent of any Contractor or Sub-contractor or Supplier for this project.
- B. Scheduling:
  - 1. Assign qualified personnel to be on site at all times when operations are scheduled.
  - 2. The Contractor should note that no earthwork operation shall be permitted in their absence.
- C. Responsibilities:
  - 1. Evaluation of subgrade preparation and suitability.
  - 2. Moisture content and field density tests on all layers of fill and backfill material placed.
  - 3. Evaluation of degree of compaction attained for all fill and backfill material placed.
  - 4. Testing and evaluation of borrow material.
  - 5. Sources of borrow and of select fill.
  - 6. Footing subgrade suitability.
  - 7. Inspection of installation of Subdrainage system.
- D. Results of Tests:
  - 1. Make results available to the Soils Engineer and A/E immediately upon completion of areas of layers.

### 3.17 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY

- A. Submit copies of all reports indicating conformance and exceptions to contract documents in a timely fashion to General Contractor for distribution to design consultants, owner, subcontractors and other interested parties.
- B. Final Report: The Inspection Agency shall prepare a written report that summarizes the work inspected during the course of the project, and certifies that the work meets the requirements of the contract documents, specifications, and all governing agencies.

END OF SECTION 31 2000

SECTION 31 23 19 - DEWATERING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes construction dewatering.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for excavating, backfilling, site grading, and controlling surface-water runoff and ponding.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Verify availability of Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 2. Review condition of site to be dewatered including coordination with temporary erosion-control measures and temporary controls and protections.
  - 3. Review geotechnical report.
  - 4. Review proposed site clearing and excavations.
  - 5. Review existing utilities and subsurface conditions.
  - 6. Review observation and monitoring of dewatering system.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For dewatering system, prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
  - 2. Show arrangement, locations, and details of wells and well points; locations of risers, headers, filters, pumps, power units, and discharge lines; and means of discharge, control of sediment, and disposal of water.
  - 3. Include layouts of piezometers and flow-measuring devices for monitoring performance of dewatering system.
  - 4. Include written plan for dewatering operations including sequence of well and well-point placement coordinated with excavation shoring and bracings and control procedures to be adopted if dewatering problems arise.
- B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For dewatering system indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer registered in Maryland responsible for their preparation.
- C. Qualification Data: For Installer and professional engineer.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

- E. Existing Conditions: Using photographs or video recordings, show existing conditions of adjacent construction and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by dewatering operations. Submit before Work begins.
- F. Record Drawings: Identify locations and depths of capped wells and well points and other abandoned-in-place dewatering equipment.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer that has specialized in design of dewatering systems and dewatering work.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning dewatering. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of the Owner.

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Project-Site Information: A geotechnical report has not been prepared for this Project. Contractor shall employ a geotechnical engineer as necessary, to be approved by the owner, to render opinions and represent interpretations of subsoil conditions, tests, and results of analyses conducted by a geotechnical engineer. Owner is not responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn from this data.
  - 1. Make additional test borings and conduct other exploratory operations necessary for dewatering according to the performance requirements.
- B. Survey Work: Engage a qualified land surveyor or professional engineer to survey adjacent existing buildings, structures, and site improvements; establish exact elevations at fixed points to act as benchmarks. Clearly identify benchmarks and record existing elevations.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Dewatering Performance: Design, furnish, install, test, operate, monitor, and maintain dewatering system of sufficient scope, size, and capacity to control hydrostatic pressures and to lower, control, remove, and dispose of ground water and permit excavation and construction to proceed on dry, stable subgrades.
  - 1. Design dewatering system, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.
  - 2. Continuously monitor and maintain dewatering operations to ensure erosion control, stability of excavations and constructed slopes, prevention of flooding in excavation, and prevention of damage to subgrades and permanent structures.
  - 3. Prevent surface water from entering excavations by grading, dikes, or other means.
  - 4. Accomplish dewatering without damaging existing buildings, structures, and site improvements adjacent to excavation.
  - 5. Remove dewatering system when no longer required for construction.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning dewatering. Comply with water- and debris-disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by dewatering operations.
  - 1. Prevent surface water and subsurface or ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding site or surrounding area.
  - 2. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from softening and damage by rain or water accumulation.
- B. Install dewatering system to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Provide temporary grading to facilitate dewatering and control of surface water.
- D. Protect and maintain temporary erosion and sedimentation controls, which are specified on the MDE approved plans.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install dewatering system utilizing wells, well points, or similar methods complete with pump equipment, standby power and pumps, filter material gradation, valves, appurtenances, water disposal, and surface-water controls.
  - 1. Space well points or wells at intervals required to provide sufficient dewatering.
  - 2. Use filters or other means to prevent pumping of fine sands or silts from the subsurface.
- B. Place dewatering system into operation to lower water to specified levels before excavating below ground-water level.
- C. Provide sumps, sedimentation tanks, and other flow-control devices as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Provide standby equipment on-site, installed and available for immediate operation, to maintain dewatering on continuous basis if any part of system becomes inadequate or fails.

#### 3.3 OPERATION

- A. Operate system continuously until drains, sewers, and structures have been constructed and fill materials have been placed or until dewatering is no longer required.
- B. Operate system to lower and control ground water to permit excavation, construction of structures, and placement of fill materials on dry subgrades. Drain water-bearing strata above and below bottom of foundations, drains, sewers, and other excavations.
  - 1. Do not permit open-sump pumping that leads to loss of fines, soil piping, subgrade softening, and slope instability.
  - 2. Reduce hydrostatic head in water-bearing strata below subgrade elevations of foundations, drains, sewers, and other excavations.
  - 3. Maintain piezometric water level a minimum of 24 inches below bottom of excavation.

- C. Dispose of water removed by dewatering in a manner that avoids endangering public health, property, and portions of work under construction or completed. Dispose of water and sediment in a manner that avoids inconvenience to others.
- D. Remove dewatering system from Project site on completion of dewatering. Plug or fill well holes with sand or cut off and cap wells a minimum of 36 inches below overlying construction.

#### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Observation Wells: Provide observation wells or piezometers, take measurements, and maintain at least the minimum number indicated; additional observation wells may be required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Observe and record daily elevation of ground water and piezometric water levels in observation wells.
  - 2. Repair or replace, within 24 hours, observation wells that become inactive, damaged, or destroyed. In areas where observation wells are not functioning properly, suspend construction activities until reliable observations can be made. Add or remove water from observation-well risers to demonstrate that observation wells are functioning properly.
  - 3. Fill observation wells, remove piezometers, and fill holes when dewatering is completed.
- B. Survey-Work Benchmarks: Resurvey benchmarks regularly during dewatering and maintain an accurate log of surveyed elevations for comparison with original elevations. Promptly notify Architect if changes in elevations occur or if cracks, sags, or other damage is evident in adjacent construction.
- C. Provide continual observation to ensure that subsurface soils are not being removed by the dewatering operation.
- D. Prepare reports of observations.

#### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect and maintain dewatering system during dewatering operations.
- B. Promptly repair damages to adjacent facilities caused by dewatering.

END OF SECTION 31 23 19

## SECTION 31 4600 – NEEDLING, SHORING & BRACING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS:

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections apply to this section.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Furnish all labor, materials, equipment and services necessary for and incidental to the execution and completion of needling and shoring of existing floors and walls without producing damage to the existing building structures. Work shall be performed by a Specialty Sub-Contractor.
- B. Work consists of needling and shoring of existing structures adjacent to and above new construction and the restoration of those structures to the conditions existing prior to the removal of existing floors and walls.
  - 1. Supports include the facilities required to support and prevent movement of existing structures until removal of existing columns, floors and walls is complete.
  - 2. Needling, shoring and bracing includes the temporary construction, designed by the Professional Engineer, which directly transmits existing structure vertical and lateral loads to a lower bearing elevation, and which preserves the existing structures above.
  - 3. Restoration includes the reconstruction, by repair or replacement, of portions of structures removed or altered by needling, shoring and supporting operations.

#### 1.3 REQUIREMENTS OF REGULATORY AGENCIES

- A. Materials and methods provided under this section shall conform to local codes and ordinances and shall be as directed and approved in writing by the local building officials.

#### 1.4 PROFESSIONAL RESPONSIBILITY

- A. Needling, shoring and bracing for all existing structures shall be selected, designed and supervised by a Registered Professional Engineer (hereinafter referred to as the "Construction Engineer") approved by the A/E. Engineering fees shall be paid for by the Contractor.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Detailed drawings and calculations of proposed materials and methods of installation of needling, shoring and bracing.
- B. Certification: Signed and sealed by the Construction Engineer specializing in this type of design and certifying that the needling, shoring and bracing as designed and installed are in compliance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and all governing codes and will not produce damage to the existing building structures.
  - 1. The Construction Engineer should schedule sufficient number of visits to the site to enable him to verify that the systems as installed meet the requirements of the Contract Documents.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Concrete (for needling and shoring): Compressive strength of 3,000 psi at the end of 28 days, with a minimum of 5.5 bags of cement per cubic yard of concrete. As specified in DIVISION 3.
- B. Reinforcement (for needling and shoring): As specified in DIVISION 3.
- C. Rolled steel shapes, plates and bars as specified in DIVISION 5.
- D. Wood columns, beams, and studs as specified in Division 6.
- E. Non-metallic Non-shrink Grout: Pre-mixed, non-metallic, non-corrosive, non-staining product containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage compensating agents, plasticizing and water reducing agents, complying with CRD C-588.
- F. Supports: Props, shores, jacks, needles, braces, sheeting, cribbing, etc., shall be materials standard with and available to the Contractor, which are of proper size and are in good serviceable condition. Materials that are unsuitable for the intended purpose, or which are severely damaged, shall not be used.
- G. Materials and Techniques: Contractor's option, as approved; however, needling, shoring and bracing shall be accomplished in such a manner as not to produce lateral movement or settlement in the existing building structures.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DETECTION OF MOVEMENT

- A. Inscribe or firmly affix bench marks on columns, floors and walls to be needled, shored and braced at locations as approved by the Construction Engineer. The method used is optional, but shall be capable of being read to an accuracy of 0.005 feet.
- B. Take readings daily during removal of existing columns, floors and walls, and installation of new floors, beams and support operations under the existing structure.
- C. Stop work, notify the Construction Engineer and take immediate remedial action if movement of the existing structure occurs during progress of the work.
- D. Upon completion of needling, shoring and bracing of the existing structure, take daily readings of the measurement point for a period of 30 days, and report the results to the A/E.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Inspection: Examine the areas and conditions under which this work is to be installed, and notify the Construction Engineer in writing of conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work.
- B. Protection: During the progress of the work, the Contractor shall protect the occupants and contents of the existing buildings from damage or injury. The Contractor shall confer with the

Construction Engineer and make arrangements with the Owner for his removal or protection of any building contents and personnel which may be affected by this work, or which are especially vulnerable to damage or injury.

### 3.3 PROPPING, BRACING, NEEDLING, SHORING ETC

- A. All walls, piers, columns, beams and floors shall be properly braced and supported as necessary to prevent any improper deflection or misalignment during the course of normal construction and abnormal loading.
- B. Props, jacks, needles, shores, bracing, sheeting, cribbing, etc., shall remain in place until such time as construction has sufficiently aged or has been permanently braced and is ready to withstand normal loading, abnormal loads have been removed, etc., and such removal has been approved by the A/E.
- C. All required cutting and drilling in connection with this work shall be performed by the Contractor, and the Contractor shall be fully responsible for any damage to the existing structure or new construction, or injury to persons due to any neglect in installing adequate braces and supports for existing structures.

### 3.4 OPTIONAL METHODS

- A. Contractor shall change methods of needling, shoring and bracing, as approved, to accommodate unforeseen conditions.
- B. Any suggestion that the Contractor may have to expedite work of this Section, to promote greater safety, or insure a more practical or efficient installation will be considered for approval.
- C. Contractor is responsible for all phases of work of this Section, regardless of the methods specified or used. He shall take all practical precautions to insure the complete safety and sufficiency of the work under this Section and of related or existing work.

### 3.5 RESPONSIBILITY FOR PERFORMANCE

- A. The responsibility for the performance of the needling, shoring and bracing methods and devices shall lie entirely with the Contractor.
- B. During the progress of the work, the Contractor shall protect the occupants and contents of the existing buildings from damage or injury.
- C. Any damage to persons, property, structures, or contents, due to cracking, movement, failure of other conditions caused by inadequate support (needling, shoring and bracing) work, shall be repaired to the satisfaction of the Owner without any additional cost to the Owner.

### 3.6 TESTING AND INSPECTION

- A. The Owner shall employ an Inspection Agency approved by the A/E to inspect the needling and shoring operation to assure compliance in all particulars to these specification requirements. The cost of all testing and inspections shall be borne by the Owner.

### 3.7 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITY

- A. Submit copies of all reports indicating conformance and exceptions to contract documents in a timely fashion to General Contractor for distribution to design consultants, owner, subcontractors and other interested parties.
- B. Final Report: The Inspection Agency shall prepare a written report that summarizes the work inspected during the course of the project, and certifies that the work meets the requirements of the contract documents, specifications, and all governing agencies.

END OF SECTION 31 4600

SECTION 31 50 00 – EXCAVATION SUPPORT AND PROTECTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes temporary excavation support and protection systems.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for excavating and backfilling and for controlling surface-water runoff and ponding.
  - 2. Section 31 23 19 "Dewatering" for dewatering excavations.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review existing utilities and subsurface conditions.
  - 2. Review coordination for interruption, shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
  - 3. Review proposed excavations.
  - 4. Review proposed equipment.
  - 5. Review monitoring of excavation support and protection system.
  - 6. Review coordination with waterproofing.
  - 7. Review abandonment or removal of excavation support and protection system.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For excavation support and protection system, prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer.
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
  - 2. Show arrangement, locations, and details of soldier piles, piling, lagging, tiebacks, bracing, and other components of excavation support and protection system according to engineering design.
  - 3. Indicate type and location of waterproofing.
  - 4. Include a written plan for excavation support and protection, including sequence of construction of support and protection coordinated with progress of excavation.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer and Professional Engineer.
- C. Contractor Calculations: For excavation support and protection system. Include analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- D. Existing Conditions: Using photographs or video recordings, show existing conditions of adjacent construction and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by inadequate performance of excavation support and protection systems. Submit before Work begins.

- E. Record Drawings: Identify locations and depths of capped utilities, abandoned-in-place support and protection systems, and other subsurface structural, electrical, or mechanical conditions.
- F. LEED Submittals.
  - 1. Product data for Credit MR 4: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of pre-consumer and post-consumer recycled content. Include statement indicating cost of each product with recycled content..
  - 2. Product data for Credit MR 5: For products having regional material content, documentation indicating location of manufacture and location of extraction, recovery or harvest of primary raw materials. Include statement indicating cost of each product with regional material content.
  - 3. Product Data for Credit MR 7 Alternative Compliance Path for Legal Wood: For permanently installed wood, documentation of legal wood status traceable to applicable jurisdiction in compliance with Section 018113.

#### 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt any utility serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Architect and Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of utility.
  - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of utility without Owner's written permission.
- B. Project-Site Information: A geotechnical report has not been prepared for this Project. Contractor shall employ a geotechnical engineer as necessary, to be approved by the owner, to render opinions and represent interpretations of subsoil conditions, tests, and results of analyses conducted by a geotechnical engineer. Owner is not responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn from this data.
  - 1. Make additional test borings and conduct other exploratory operations necessary for excavation support and protection according to the performance requirements.
  - 2. The geotechnical report is included elsewhere in Project Manual.
- C. Survey Work: Engage a qualified land surveyor or professional engineer to survey adjacent existing buildings, structures, and site improvements; establish exact elevations at fixed points to act as benchmarks. Clearly identify benchmarks and record existing elevations.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Geotechnical Testing Agency: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct soil materials and rock-definition testing, as documented according to ASTM D 3740 and ASTM E 548.
- B. Provide, design, monitor, and maintain excavation support and protection system capable of supporting excavation sidewalls and of resisting earth and hydrostatic pressures and superimposed and construction loads.
  - 1. Contractor Design: Design excavation support and protection system, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.
  - 2. Prevent surface water from entering excavations by grading, dikes, or other means.

3. Install excavation support and protection systems without damaging existing buildings, structures, and site improvements adjacent to excavation.
4. Continuously monitor vibrations, settlements, and movements to ensure stability of excavations and constructed slopes and to ensure that damage to permanent structures is prevented.

## 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials that are either new or in serviceable condition.
- B. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36, ASTM A 690, or ASTM A 992.
  1. Recycled Content: Provide Steel with minimum 90 percent total recycled content, including at least 60 percent post-consumer recycled content.
  2. Regional Content: Provide steel manufactured and of primary raw materials extracted or recovered within 500 mile radius of Project Site.
- C. Steel Sheet Piling: ASTM A 328, ASTM A 572, or ASTM A 690; with continuous interlocks.
  1. Corners: Site-fabricated mechanical interlock.
- D. Wood Lagging: Lumber, mixed hardwood, nominal rough thickness of size and strength required for application.
  1. Legal Wood: For permanently installed wood, provide legally sourced wood in compliance with Section 018113
- E. Tiebacks: Steel bars, ASTM A 722.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards that could develop during excavation support and protection system operations.
  1. Shore, support, and protect utilities encountered.
- B. Install excavation support and protection systems to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
  1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner.
- C. Locate excavation support and protection systems clear of permanent construction so that construction and finishing of other work is not impeded.

### 3.2 SOLDIER PILES AND LAGGING

- A. Install steel soldier piles before starting excavation. Extend soldier piles below excavation grade level to depths adequate to prevent lateral movement. Space soldier piles at regular intervals not to exceed

allowable flexural strength of wood lagging. Accurately align exposed faces of flanges to vary not more than 2 inches from a horizontal line and not more than 1:120 out of vertical alignment.

- B. Install wood lagging within flanges of soldier piles as excavation proceeds. Trim excavation as required to install lagging. Fill voids behind lagging with soil, and compact.
- C. Install wales horizontally at locations indicated on Drawings and secure to soldier piles.

### 3.3 SHEET PILING

- A. Before starting excavation, install one-piece sheet piling lengths and tightly interlock vertical edges to form a continuous barrier.
- B. Accurately place the piling, using templates and guide frames unless otherwise recommended in writing by the sheet piling manufacturer. Limit vertical offset of adjacent sheet piling to 60 inches. Accurately align exposed faces of sheet piling to vary not more than 2 inches from a horizontal line and not more than 1:120 out of vertical alignment.
- C. Cut tops of sheet piling to uniform elevation at top of excavation.

### 3.4 TIEBACKS

- A. Drill, install, grout, and tension tiebacks.
- B. Test load-carrying capacity of each tieback and replace and retest deficient tiebacks.
  - 1. Have test loading observed by a qualified professional engineer responsible for design of excavation support and protection system.
- C. Maintain tiebacks in place until permanent construction is able to withstand lateral earth and hydrostatic pressures.

### 3.5 BRACING

- A. Bracing: Locate bracing to clear columns, floor framing construction, and other permanent work. If necessary to move brace, install new bracing before removing original brace.
  - 1. Do not place bracing where it will be cast into or included in permanent concrete work unless otherwise approved by Architect.
  - 2. Install internal bracing if required to prevent spreading or distortion of braced frames.
  - 3. Maintain bracing until structural elements are supported by other bracing or until permanent construction is able to withstand lateral earth and hydrostatic pressures.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Survey-Work Benchmarks: Resurvey benchmarks regularly during installation of excavation support and protection systems, excavation progress, and for as long as excavation remains open. Maintain an accurate log of surveyed elevations and positions for comparison with original elevations and positions. Promptly notify Architect if changes in elevations or positions occur or if cracks, sags, or other damage is evident in adjacent construction.
- B. Promptly correct detected bulges, breakage, or other evidence of movement to ensure that excavation support and protection system remains stable.

- C. Promptly repair damages to adjacent facilities caused by installation or faulty performance of excavation support and protection systems.

### 3.7 REMOVAL AND REPAIRS

- A. Remove excavation support and protection systems when construction has progressed sufficiently to support excavation and earth and hydrostatic pressures. Remove in stages to avoid disturbing underlying soils and rock or damaging structures, pavements, facilities, and utilities.
  - 1. Remove excavation support and protection systems to a minimum depth of 48 inches below overlying construction and abandon remainder.
  - 2. Fill voids immediately with approved backfill compacted to density specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."
  - 3. Repair or replace, as approved by Architect, adjacent work damaged or displaced by removing excavation support and protection systems.
- B. Leave excavation support and protection systems permanently in place.

END OF SECTION 31 50 00

## SECTION 32 12 16 – ASPHALT PAVING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Hot-mix asphalt paving.
  - 2. Hot-mix asphalt patching.
  - 3. Pavement-marking paint.
  - 4. Cold milling of existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 02 Section “Demolition” for demolition and removal of existing asphalt pavements, and for geotextiles.
  - 2. Division 31 Section “Earth Moving” for aggregate subbase and base courses and for aggregate pavement shoulders.
  - 3. Division 32 Section “Pavement Joint Sealants” for joint sealants and fillers at paving terminations.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Paving Terminology: Refer to ASTM D 8 for definitions of terms.
- B. DOT: Department of Transportation.
- C. MSHA: Maryland State Highway Administration.

#### 1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Provide hot-mix asphalt paving according to materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of Maryland State Highway standard specifications.
  - 1. Standard Specification: Maryland State Highway Administration Standard Specification for Construction and Materials.
  - 2. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in standard specifications do not apply to this Section.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.

- B. Job-Mix Designs: Certification, by authorities having jurisdiction, of approval of each job mix proposed for the Work.
- C. Material Test Reports: For each paving material.
- D. Material Certificates: For each paving material, signed by manufacturers.
- E. LEED Submittals.
  - 1. Product data for Credit MR 4: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of pre-consumer and post-consumer recycled content. Include statement indicating cost of each product with recycled content..
  - 2. Product data for Credit MR 5: For products having regional material content, documentation indicating location of manufacture and location of extraction, recovery or harvest of primary raw materials. Include statement indicating cost of each product with regional material content.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: manufacturer shall be registered with and approved by Maryland State Highway Administration.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM D 3666 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with Maryland State Highway standard specifications for asphalt paving work.
- D. Asphalt-Paving Publication: Comply with AI MS-22, "Construction of Hot Mix Asphalt Pavements," unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pavement-marking materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken and bearing manufacturer's labels containing brand name and type of material, date of manufacture, and directions for storage.
- B. Store pavement-marking materials in a clean, dry, protected location within temperature range required by manufacturer. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply asphalt materials if subgrade is wet or excessively damp or if the following conditions are not met:
  - 1. Prime and Tack Coats: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F.
  - 2. Slurry Coat: Comply with weather limitations of ASTM D 3910.
  - 3. Asphalt Base Course: Minimum surface temperature of 40 deg F and rising at time of placement.
  - 4. Asphalt Surface Course: Minimum surface temperature of 60 deg F at time of placement.
- B. Pavement-Marking Paint: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 50 deg F and not exceeding 100 deg F in a 24 hour period.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 AGGREGATES

- A. General: Use materials and gradations that have performed satisfactorily in previous installations.
- B. Recycled Content: Provide maximum reclaimed asphalt pavement (RAP) as feasible.
- C. Regional Materials: Provide aggregate products manufactured and of primary raw materials extracted or recovered within 500 mile radius of Project Site.
- D. Coarse Aggregate: In accordance with Maryland State Highway standards and specifications.
- E. Fine Aggregate: In accordance with Maryland State Highway standards and specifications.
- F. Mineral Filler: In accordance with Maryland State Highway standards and specifications.

### 2.2 ASPHALT MATERIALS

- A. Asphalt Binder: AASHTO MP 1, PG 64-22.
- B. Asphalt Cement: ASTM D 3381 for viscosity-graded material; ASTM D 946 for penetration-graded material.
- C. Prime Coat: Asphalt emulsion prime complying with Maryland State Highway Administration requirements.
- D. Tack Coat: ASTM D 977 or AASHTO M 140, emulsified asphalt or ASTM D 2397 or AASHTO M 208, cationic emulsified asphalt, slow setting, diluted in water, of suitable grade and consistency for application.
- E. Undersealing Asphalt: ASTM D 3141 or AASHTO M 238, pumping consistency.

### 2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Herbicide: Commercial chemical for weed control, registered by the EPA. Provide in granular, liquid, or wettable powder form.
- B. Paving Geotextile: AASHTO M 288, nonwoven polypropylene; resistant to chemical attack, rot, and mildew; and specifically designed for paving applications.
- C. Pavement-Marking Paint: Low-VOC alkyde traffic marking paint , with drying time of less than 45 minutes.
  - 1. Color: White.

### 2.4 MIXES

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt: Dense, hot-laid, hot-mix asphalt plant mixes approved by Maryland State Highway Administration; and complying with the following requirements:

1. Provide mixes with a history of satisfactory performance in geographical area where Project is located.
2. Base Course: Superpave 19.0 mm.
3. Surface Course: Superpave 9.5 mm.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that subgrade is dry and in suitable condition to support paving and imposed loads.
- B. Proceed with paving only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 COLD MILLING

- A. Clean existing pavement surface of loose and deleterious material immediately before cold milling. Remove existing asphalt pavement by cold milling to grades and cross sections indicated.
  1. Mill to a depth of as indicated on plans.
  2. Mill to a uniform finished surface free of gouges, grooves, and ridges.
  3. Control rate of milling to prevent tearing of existing asphalt course.
  4. Repair or replace curbs, manholes, and other construction damaged during cold milling.
  5. Excavate and trim unbound-aggregate base course, if encountered, and keep material separate from milled hot-mix asphalt.
  6. Retain first subparagraph below, if applicable.
  7. Transport milled hot-mix asphalt to asphalt recycling facility.
  8. Keep milled pavement surface free of loose material and dust.

#### 3.3 PATCHING

- A. Hot-Mix Asphalt Pavement: Saw cut perimeter of patch and excavate existing pavement section to sound base. Excavate rectangular or trapezoidal patches, extending 12 inches into adjacent sound pavement, unless otherwise indicated. Cut excavation faces vertically. Remove excavated material. Recompact existing unbound-aggregate base course to form new subgrade.
- B. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to vertical surfaces abutting or projecting into new, hot-mix asphalt paving at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd..
  1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
  2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.
- C. Patching: Fill excavated pavements with hot-mix asphalt base mix and, while still hot, compact flush with adjacent surfaces.

#### 3.4 REPAIRS

- A. Leveling Course: Install and compact leveling course consisting of hot-mix asphalt surface course to level sags and fill depressions deeper than 1 inch in existing pavements.
  1. Install leveling wedges in compacted lifts not exceeding 3 inches thick.

- B. Crack and Joint Filling: Remove existing joint filler material from cracks or joints to a depth of 1/4 inch.
  - 1. Clean cracks and joints in existing hot-mix asphalt pavement.
  - 2. Use hot-applied joint sealant to seal cracks and joints more than 1/4 inch wide. Fill flush with surface of existing pavement and remove excess.

### 3.5 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Proof-roll subbase using heavy, pneumatic-tired rollers to locate areas that are unstable or that require further compaction.
- B. Immediately before placing asphalt materials, remove loose and deleterious material from substrate surfaces. Ensure that prepared subgrade is ready to receive paving.
  - 1. Sweep loose granular particles from surface of unbound-aggregate base course. Do not dislodge or disturb aggregate embedded in compacted surface of base course.
- C. Herbicide Treatment: Apply herbicide according to manufacturer's recommended rates and written application instructions. Apply to dry, prepared subgrade or surface of compacted-aggregate base before applying paving materials.
  - 1. Mix herbicide with prime coat if formulated by manufacturer for that purpose.
- D. Prime Coat: Apply uniformly over surface of compacted unbound-aggregate base course at a rate of 0.15 to 0.50 gal./sq. yd. Apply enough material to penetrate and seal but not flood surface. Allow prime coat to cure for 72 hours minimum.
  - 1. If prime coat is not entirely absorbed within 24 hours after application, spread sand over surface to blot excess asphalt. Use enough sand to prevent pickup under traffic. Remove loose sand by sweeping before pavement is placed and after volatiles have evaporated.
  - 2. Protect primed substrate from damage until ready to receive paving.
- E. Tack Coat: Apply uniformly to surfaces of existing pavement at a rate of 0.05 to 0.15 gal./sq. yd.
  - 1. Allow tack coat to cure undisturbed before applying hot-mix asphalt paving.
  - 2. Avoid smearing or staining adjoining surfaces, appurtenances, and surroundings. Remove spillages and clean affected surfaces.

### 3.6 PAVING GEOTEXTILE INSTALLATION

- A. Apply tack coat uniformly to existing pavement surfaces at a rate of 0.20 to 0.30 gal./sq. yd.
- B. Place paving geotextile promptly according to manufacturer's written instructions. Broom or roll geotextile smooth and free of wrinkles and folds. Overlap longitudinal joints 4 inches and transverse joints 6 inches.
  - 1. Protect paving geotextile from traffic and other damage and place hot-mix asphalt paving overlay the same day.

### 3.7 HOT-MIX ASPHALT PLACING

- A. Machine place hot-mix asphalt on prepared surface, spread uniformly, and strike off. Place asphalt mix by hand to areas inaccessible to equipment in a manner that prevents segregation of mix. Place each course to required grade, cross section, and thickness when compacted.

1. Spread mix at minimum temperature of 250 deg F.
  2. Regulate paver machine speed to obtain smooth, continuous surface free of pulls and tears in asphalt-paving mat.
- B. Place paving in consecutive strips not less than 8 feet wide unless infill edge strips of a lesser width are required.
- C. Promptly correct surface irregularities in paving course behind paver. Use suitable hand tools to remove excess material forming high spots. Fill depressions with hot-mix asphalt to prevent segregation of mix; use suitable hand tools to smooth surface.

### 3.8 JOINTS

- A. Construct joints to ensure a continuous bond between adjoining paving sections. Construct joints free of depressions with same texture and smoothness as other sections of hot-mix asphalt course.
1. Clean contact surfaces and apply tack coat to joints.
  2. Offset longitudinal joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 6 inches.
  3. Offset transverse joints, in successive courses, a minimum of 24 inches.
  4. Construct transverse joints as described in AI MS-22, "Construction of Hot Mix Asphalt Pavements."
  5. Compact joints as soon as hot-mix asphalt will bear roller weight without excessive displacement.
  6. Compact asphalt at joints to a density within 2 percent of specified course density.

### 3.9 COMPACTION

- A. General: Begin compaction as soon as placed hot-mix paving will bear roller weight without excessive displacement. Compact hot-mix paving with hot, hand tampers or vibratory-plate compactors in areas inaccessible to rollers.
1. Complete compaction before mix temperature cools to 185 deg F.
- B. Breakdown Rolling: Complete breakdown or initial rolling immediately after rolling joints and outside edge. Examine surface immediately after breakdown rolling for indicated crown, grade, and smoothness. Correct laydown and rolling operations to comply with requirements.
- C. Intermediate Rolling: Begin intermediate rolling immediately after breakdown rolling while hot-mix asphalt is still hot enough to achieve specified density. Continue rolling until hot-mix asphalt course has been uniformly compacted to the following density:
1. Average Density: 92 percent of reference maximum theoretical density according to ASTM D 2041, but not less than 90 percent nor greater than 96 percent.
- D. Finish Rolling: Finish roll paved surfaces to remove roller marks while hot-mix asphalt is still warm.
- E. Protection: After final rolling, do not permit vehicular traffic on pavement until it has cooled and hardened.
- F. Erect barricades to protect paving from traffic until mixture has cooled enough not to become marked.

### 3.10 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Thickness: Compact each course to produce the thickness indicated within the following tolerances:
  - 1. Base Course: Plus or minus 1/2 inch.
  - 2. Surface Course: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
  
- B. Surface Smoothness: Compact each course to produce a surface smoothness within the following tolerances as determined by using a 10-foot straightedge applied transversely or longitudinally to paved areas:
  - 1. Base Course: 1/8 inch.
  - 2. Surface Course: 1/8 inch.

### 3.10 PAVEMENT MARKING

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.
  
- B. Allow paving to age for 30 days before starting pavement marking.
  
- C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
  
- D. Prime asphalt surfaces with sealer, as recommended by thermoplastic material manufacturer based on surface conditions. Include adhesive or adhesion promoter when asphaltic surfaces exhibit polished aggregate.
  
- E. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 30 mils.

### 3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Contractor will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and to prepare test reports.
  
- B. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
  
- C. Thickness: In-place compacted thickness of hot-mix asphalt courses will be determined according to ASTM D 3549.
  
- D. Surface Smoothness: Finished surface of each hot-mix asphalt course will be tested for compliance with smoothness tolerances.
  
- E. In-Place Density: Testing agency will take samples of uncompacted paving mixtures and compacted pavement according to ASTM D 979 or AASHTO T 168.
  - 1. Reference maximum theoretical density will be determined by averaging results from four samples of hot-mix asphalt-paving mixture delivered daily to site, prepared according to ASTM D 2041, and compacted according to job-mix specifications.
  - 2. In-place density of compacted pavement will be determined by testing core samples according to ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
    - a. One core sample will be taken for every 1000 sq. yd. or less of installed pavement, with no fewer than 3 cores taken.

- b. Field density of in-place compacted pavement may also be determined by nuclear method according to ASTM D 2950 and correlated with ASTM D 1188 or ASTM D 2726.
- F. Remove and replace or install additional hot-mix asphalt where test results or measurements indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

### 3.13 DISPOSAL

- A. All excavated and demolished material shall be removed from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.

END OF SECTION 32 12 16

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes exterior cement concrete pavement for the following:
  - 1. Curbs and gutters.
  - 2. Sidewalks.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for subgrade preparation, grading, and subbase course.
  - 2. Division 32 Section "Pavement Joint Sealants" for joint sealants of joints in concrete pavement and at isolation joints of concrete pavement with adjacent construction.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, and ground granulated blast-furnace slag.

### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of manufactured material and product indicated.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data for stamping unit, including preparation and application instructions.
- C. Submit manufacturer's samples of standard colors for area of stamped concrete.
- D. Submit 10 lb. bag sample of each color and mix of all exposed aggregates and information from aggregate supplier indicating source, type, color and gradation of aggregate shall accompany sample.
- E. Design Mixtures: For each concrete pavement mixture. Include alternate mixture designs when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
- F. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.
- G. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance of the following with requirements indicated, based on comprehensive testing of current materials:

1. Aggregates. Include service record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali-aggregate reactivity.
- H. Material Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that each of the following materials complies with requirements:
1. Cementitious materials.
  2. Steel reinforcement and reinforcement accessories.
  3. Admixtures.
  4. Curing compounds.
  5. Joint fillers.
- I. Field quality-control test reports.
- J. Applicator's Project References: Submit applicator's list of successfully completed stamped concrete projects, including project name and location, name of architect, and type and quantity of materials applied.
- K. LEED Submittals.
1. Product data for Credit MR 4: For products having recycled content, documentation indicating percentages by weight of pre-consumer and post-consumer recycled content. Include statement indicating cost of each product with recycled content..
  2. Product data for Credit MR 5: For products having regional material content, documentation indicating location of manufacture and location of extraction, recovery or harvest of primary raw materials. Include statement indicating cost of each product with regional material content.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer of ready-mixed concrete products who complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-01 or an equivalent certification program.
- C. ACI Publications: Comply with ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- D. Concrete Testing Service: Contractor will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.
- E. Source Limitations:

1. Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from one source, and obtain admixtures through one source from one manufacturer.
  2. Use of fly ash, slag, or Portland cement produced from methods using hazardous material, medical waste, municipal solid waste generators, or tire-derived fuels is prohibited.
- F. Regional Materials: Provide aggregate products manufactured and of primary raw materials extracted or recovered within 500 mile radius of Project Site.
- G. Mock-ups:
1. Construct Mock-ups of Stamped Concrete:
    - a. Use same materials and methods for use in the Work.
    - b. Location: Determined by Architect.
    - c. Minimum Size: 4 feet by 4 feet.
    - d. Notify owner's representative seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
    - e. Obtain approval of the samples from Owner or Owner's representative before starting construction
    - f. Maintain approved mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed pavement.
    - g. Demolish and remove approved mockups from the site when finished concrete pavement has been accepted.
  2. Construct Mock-ups of Exposed Aggregate Concrete:
    - a. Use same materials and methods for use in the Work.
    - b. Location: Determined by Architect.
    - c. Minimum Size: 3 feet by 3 feet.
    - d. Notify owner's representative seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
    - e. Obtain approval of the samples from Owner or Owner's representative before starting construction
    - f. Maintain approved mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed pavement.
    - g. Demolish and remove approved mockups from the site when finished concrete pavement has been accepted.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Traffic Control: Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities.
- B. Pavement-Marking Paint: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 50 deg F and not exceeding 100 deg F in a 24 hour period.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.

### 2.2 FORMS

- A. Form Materials: Plywood, metal, metal-framed plywood, or other approved panel-type materials to provide full-depth, continuous, straight, smooth exposed surfaces.
  - 1. Use flexible or curved forms for curves with a radius 100 feet or less.
- B. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
- C. Stamp Mats: Semi-rigid polyurethane mats with projected texture and ridged underside capable of imprinting texture and joint patterns to plastic cementitious stampable overlay. Include texture skins matching stamp mat textures for texturing areas that cannot be reached with stamping mats.
  - 1. Pattern: Wood-grain pattern showing no knots or major irregularities.
  - 2. Depth of recession shall not exceed 1/4" and shall comply with ADAAG regulations.

### 2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Steel Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed billet steel bars, unfinished.
  - 1. Recycled Content: Provide steel with minimum 90 percent total recycled content, including at least 60 percent post-consumer recycled content.
  - 2. Regional Materials: Provide steel products manufactured and of primary raw materials extracted or recovered within 500 mile radius of the Project Site.
- B. Plain Steel Wire: ANSI/ASTM A82, unfinished.
- C. Welded Steel Wire Fabric: ASTM A185 in flat sheets galvanized.

### 2.4 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source throughout the Project:
  - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I, white. Supplement with the following:

- a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C.
  - b. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 4S coarse aggregate, uniformly graded. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar pavement applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.
1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1-1/2 inches nominal.
  2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
  3. Regional Materials: Provide aggregate manufactured and of primary raw materials extracted or recovered within 500 mile radius of Project Site.
- C. Aggregate for Exposed Concrete Pavement: Selected, hard, and durable; washed; free of materials with deleterious reactivity to cement or that cause staining; from a single source, with gap-graded coarse aggregate as follows:
1. Aggregate Size: 1/2 inch nominal.
  2. Aggregate Shape, and Color: Rounded, neutral tone (grey, black, brown, tan, etc.) color.
- D. Solar Reflectance Index (SRI) of Concrete Paving: Minimum value of 29.

## 2.5 ADMIXTURES

- A. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- B. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material.
1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.
  2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type B.
  3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D.
  4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type F.
  5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type G.
  6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017, Type II.
- C. Integral Concrete Colorant for area of stamped concrete shall contain tints of light brown and gray.
1. Shall comply with ASTM C 979
  2. Factory-measured powdered mix, consisting of nonfading finely ground synthetic mineral-oxide coloring pigments and water reducing wetting agent.
- D. Colorless Bond Breaker / Release Agent:
1. Liquid Release Agent: Clear, evaporating formulation that facilitates release of stamp mats and texture skins from cementitious stampable overlay.

## 2.6 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- B. Water: Potable.
- C. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming; manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
  - 1. Available Products:
    - a. Axim Concrete Technologies; Cimfilm.
    - b. Burke by Edeco; BurkeFilm.
    - c. ChemMasters; Spray-Film.
    - d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Aquafilm.
    - e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Film.
    - f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Eucobar.
    - g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Vapor Aid.
    - h. Lambert Corporation; Lambco Skin.
    - i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; E-Con.
    - j. MBT Protection and Repair, ChemRex Inc.; Confilm.
    - k. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Sealtight Evapre.
    - l. Metalcrete Industries; Waterhold.
    - m. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Monofilm.
    - n. Sika Corporation, Inc.; SikaFilm.
    - o. Symons Corporation; Finishing Aid.
    - p. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex EnvioAssist.
- D. Clear Waterborne Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B.
  - 1. Available Products:
    - a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Curing Compound #2 DR WB.
    - b. Burke by Edoko; Aqua Resin Cure.
    - c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
    - d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; W.B. Resin Cure.
    - e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day Chem Rez Cure (J-11-W).
    - f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Kurez DR VOX.
    - g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Thinfilm 420.
    - h. Lambert Corporation; Aqua Kure-Clear.
    - i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M Cure R.
    - j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1100 Clear.
    - k. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Resin Cure E.
    - l. Symons Corporation; Resi-Chem Clear.
    - m. Tamms Industries Inc.; Horncure WB 30.
    - n. Unitex; Hydro Cure 309.
    - o. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex Enviocure 100.

## 2.7 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.
- B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.

- C. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
  - 1. Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.

## 2.8 PAVEMENT MARKINGS

- A. Pavement Markings to be performed in accordance with Specification 32 17 23 "Pavement Markings".

## 2.9 CONCRETE MIXTURES

- A. Prepare design mixtures, proportioned according to ACI 301, for each type and strength of normal-weight concrete determined by either laboratory trial mixes or field experience.
  - 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed concrete mixture designs for the trial batch method.
- B. Proportion mixtures to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
  - 1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): 3500 psi.
  - 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio at Point of Placement: 0.45.
  - 3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
- C. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in normal-weight concrete at point of placement having an air content as follows:
  - 1. Air Content: 5-1/2 percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for 1-1/2-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
  - 2. Air Content: 6 percent plus or minus 1.5 percent for 1-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
- D. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.15 percent by weight of cement.
- E. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Use water-reducing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
  - 2. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
  - 3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete required to be watertight and concrete with a water-cementitious materials ratio below 0.50.
- F. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to ACI 301 requirements for concrete exposed to deicing chemicals. as follows:
  - 1. Fly Ash or Pozzolan: 25 percent.
  - 2. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent.
  - 3. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan, and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.

## 2.10 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116. Furnish batch certificates for each batch discharged and used in the Work.
  - 1. When air temperature is between 85 deg F and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine exposed subgrades and subbase surfaces for compliance with requirements for dimensional, grading, and elevation tolerances.
- B. Proceed with concrete pavement operations only after nonconforming conditions have been corrected and subgrade is ready to receive pavement.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove loose material from compacted subbase surface immediately before placing concrete.

### 3.3 EDGE FORMS AND SCREED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Set, brace, and secure edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed guides for pavement to required lines, grades, and elevations. Install forms to allow continuous progress of work and so forms can remain in place at least 24 hours after concrete placement.
- B. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
- C. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete.
- D. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to ensure separation from concrete without damage.
- E. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work.

### 3.4 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, or other bond-reducing materials.

- C. Accurately position, support and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
- D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- E. Install welded wire reinforcement in lengths as long as practicable. Lap adjoining pieces at least one full mesh, and lace splices with wire. Offset laps of adjoining widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction.

### 3.5 JOINTS

- A. General: Form construction, isolation, and contraction joints and tool edgings true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete. Construct transverse joints at right angles to centerline, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. When joining existing pavement, place transverse joints to align with previously placed joints, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construction Joints: Set construction joints at side and end terminations of pavement and at locations where pavement operations are stopped for more than one-half hour unless pavement terminates at isolation joints.
  - 1. Continue steel reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of pavement strips, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Provide tie bars at sides of pavement strips where indicated.
  - 3. Butt Joints: Use bonding agent or epoxy bonding adhesive at joint locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
  - 4. Keyed Joints: Provide preformed keyway-section forms or bulkhead forms with keys, unless otherwise indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.
  - 5. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt-coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- C. Isolation Joints: Form isolation joints of preformed joint-filler strips abutting concrete curbs, catch basins, manholes, inlets, structures, walks, other fixed objects, and where indicated.
  - 1. Expansion joints are types of isolation joints. Revise spacing in first subparagraph below to suit Project or delete if not required.
  - 2. Locate expansion joints at intervals of 50 feet, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Extend joint fillers full width and depth of joint.
  - 4. Terminate joint filler not less than 1/2 inch or more than 1 inch below finished surface if joint sealant is indicated.
  - 5. Place top of joint filler flush with finished concrete surface if joint sealant is not indicated.
  - 6. Furnish joint fillers in one-piece lengths. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip joint-filler sections together.
  - 7. Protect top edge of joint filler during concrete placement with metal, plastic, or other temporary preformed cap. Remove protective cap after concrete has been placed on both sides of joint.
- D. Contraction Joints: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of the concrete thickness, as follows to match jointing of existing adjacent concrete pavement:

1. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before developing random contraction cracks.
- E. Edging: Tool edges of pavement, gutters, curbs, and joints in concrete after initial floating with an edging tool to a 1/4-inch radius. Repeat tooling of edges after applying surface finishes. Eliminate tool marks on concrete surfaces.

### 3.6 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Inspection: Before placing concrete, inspect and complete formwork installation, steel reinforcement, and items to be embedded or cast in. Notify other trades to permit installation of their work.
- B. Remove snow, ice, or frost from subbase surface and reinforcement before placing concrete. Do not place concrete on frozen surfaces.
- C. Moisten subbase to provide a uniform dampened condition at time concrete is placed. Do not place concrete around manholes or other structures until they are at required finish elevation and alignment.
- D. Comply with ACI 301 requirements for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete.
- E. Do not add water to concrete during delivery or at Project site.
- F. Do not add water to fresh concrete after testing.
- G. Deposit and spread concrete in a continuous operation between transverse joints. Do not push or drag concrete into place or use vibrators to move concrete into place.
- H. Consolidate concrete according to ACI 301 by mechanical vibrating equipment supplemented by hand spading, rodding, or tamping.
  1. Consolidate concrete along face of forms and adjacent to transverse joints with an internal vibrator. Keep vibrator away from joint assemblies, reinforcement, or side forms. Use only square-faced shovels for hand spreading and consolidation. Consolidate with care to prevent dislocating reinforcement, dowels, and joint devices.
- I. Place concrete in two operations; strike off initial pour for entire width of placement and to the required depth below finish surface. Lay welded wire fabric or fabricated bar mats immediately in final position. Place top layer of concrete, strike off, and screed.
  1. Remove and replace concrete that has been placed for more than 15 minutes without being covered by top layer, or use bonding agent if approved by Engineer.
- J. Screed pavement surfaces with a straightedge and strike off.
- K. Commence initial floating using bull floats or darbies to impart an open textured and uniform surface plane before excess moisture or bleed water appears on the surface. Do not further disturb concrete surfaces before beginning finishing operations or spreading surface treatments.

- L. Slip-Form Pavers: When automatic machine placement is used for pavement, submit revised mix design and laboratory test results that meet or exceed requirements. Produce pavement to required thickness, lines, grades, finish, and jointing as required for formed pavement.
1. Compact subbase and prepare subgrade of sufficient width to prevent displacement of paver machine during operations.
- M. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
1. When air temperature has fallen to or is expected to fall below 40 deg F, uniformly heat water and aggregates before mixing to obtain a concrete mixture temperature of not less than 50 deg F and not more than 80 deg F at point of placement.
  2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow.
  3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mix designs.
- N. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows when hot-weather conditions exist:
1. Cool ingredients before mixing to maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
  2. Cover steel reinforcement with water-soaked burlap so steel temperature will not exceed ambient air temperature immediately before embedding in concrete.
  3. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade moisture uniform without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.
- O. Stamping
1. Stamp overlay surfaces according to manufacturer's instructions. Plan stamp layout prior to application of stamps.
  2. Liquid Release Agent Application: Apply a liberal coat of liquid release agent to cementitious stampable overlay when set sufficiently to achieve a clean impression.
  3. Stamping:
    - a. Stamp perimeter of pour using texture skins.
    - b. Accurately align stamp mats in sequence and tamp into cementitious stampable overlay to produce imprint pattern, texture, and depth of imprint, according to manufacturer's instructions. Remove stamps from cementitious stampable overlay immediately.
    - c. Stamp edges and surfaces unable to be imprinted with stamp mat with texture skins.
    - d. Use stamp tools to imprint grout lines at edges and surfaces unable to be imprinted with stamp mats.
    - e. Recut existing control joints before cracking occurs, generally within 12 to 24 hours after placement at 70 deg F.

### 3.7 CONCRETE FINISHING

- A. General: Do not add water to concrete surfaces during finishing operations.

- B. Float Finish: Begin the second floating operation when bleed-water sheen has disappeared and concrete surface has stiffened sufficiently to permit operations. Float surface with power-driven floats, or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power units. Finish surfaces to true planes. Cut down high spots and fill low spots. Refloat surface immediately to uniform granular texture.
  - 1. Medium-to-Coarse-Textured Broom Finish: Provide a coarse finish by striating float-finished concrete surface 1/16 to 1/8 inch deep with a stiff-bristled broom, perpendicular to line of traffic.
- C. Monolithic Exposed Aggregate Concrete Finish: Expose coarse aggregate in pavement surfaces as follows:
  - 1. Immediately after float finishing, spray-apply chemical surface retarder to pavement according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 2. Cover pavement surface with plastic sheeting, sealing laps with tape, and remove when ready to continue finishing operations.
  - 3. Without dislodging aggregate, remove excess mortar by lightly brushing surface with a stiff, nylon-bristle broom.
  - 4. Fine-spray surface with water and brush. Repeat water flushing and brushing cycle until cement film is removed from aggregate surfaces to depth required.

### 3.8 CONCRETE PROTECTION AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Begin curing after finishing concrete but not before free water has disappeared from concrete surface.
- D. Cure concrete by moisture curing, moisture-retaining-cover curing, curing compound as follows:
  - 1. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
- E. Sealers: Clear, Solvent-Borne, Membrane-Forming Sealing Compound: ASTM C 309, non-yellowing, VOC-compliant, high-gloss, clear liquid.
  - 1. Apply sealer to clean and dry concrete surfaces in accordance with manufacturer's instructions after concrete has cured a minimum of 28 days.
  - 2. Apply sealer uniformly over entire stamped concrete surface by sprayer or short nap roller according to manufacturer's instructions. After initial application is dry and tack free, apply a second coat.
  - 3. Do not allow traffic on finished sealed surfaces for the following periods after application:
    - a. Foot Traffic: Minimum 24 hours.
    - b. Heavy Traffic: Minimum 72 hours.

### 3.9 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least one month or as recommended by manufacturer, whichever is longer. Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.

### 3.10 PAVEMENT TOLERANCES

- A. Comply with tolerances of ACI 117 and as follows:
  - 1. ACI 117 establishes few pavement tolerances; those in subparagraphs below are based on ACI 330.1.
  - 2. Elevation: 1/4 inch.
  - 3. Thickness: Plus 3/8 inch, minus 1/4 inch.
  - 4. Surface: Gap below 10-foot- long, unlevelled straightedge not to exceed 1/4 inch.
  - 5. Lateral Alignment and Spacing of Tie Bars and Dowels: 1 inch.
  - 6. Vertical Alignment of Tie Bars and Dowels: 1/4 inch.
  - 7. Alignment of Tie-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Pavement Edge: 1/2 inch.
  - 8. Alignment of Dowel-Bar End Relative to Line Perpendicular to Pavement Edge: Length of dowel 1/4 inch per 12 inches.
  - 9. Joint Spacing: 3 inches.
  - 10. Contraction Joint Depth: Plus 1/4 inch, no minus.
  - 11. Joint Width: Plus 1/8 inch, no minus.

### 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Contractor shall engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing Services: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
  - 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least 1 composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mix placed each day.
    - a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
  - 2. Slump: ASTM C 143; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
  - 3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix.
  - 4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.

5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39; test 1 specimen at 7 days and 2 specimens at 28 days.
  - a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from 2 specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.
- C. Strength of each concrete mix will be satisfactory if average of any 3 consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
- D. Test results shall be reported in writing to Engineer, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
- E. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Engineer but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
- F. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Engineer.
- G. Remove and replace concrete pavement where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- H. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

### 3.12 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace concrete pavement that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section.
- B. Drill test cores, where directed by Engineer, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory pavement areas with portland cement concrete bonded to pavement with epoxy adhesive.
- C. Protect concrete from damage. Exclude traffic from pavement for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain pavement as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
- D. Maintain concrete pavement free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep concrete pavement not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

END OF SECTION 32 13 13

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Expansion and contraction joints within cement concrete and masonry pavement.
  - 2. Joints between cement concrete and asphalt pavement.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 32 Section "Asphalt Paving" for constructing joints between concrete and asphalt pavement.
  - 2. Division 32 Section "Cement Concrete Pavement" for concrete base under unit pavers and for cast-in-place concrete curbs and gutters and paver edge restraints.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.
- B. Pavement-Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
  - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
  - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
  - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
  - 4. Joint-sealant color.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of joint sealant and accessory, signed by product manufacturer.
- D. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- E. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
  - 1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
  - 2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- F. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for sealants.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.
  - 1. Use ASTM C 1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
  - 2. Submit not fewer than three pieces of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, joint-sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
  - 3. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
  - 4. For materials failing tests, obtain joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including use of specially formulated primers.
  - 5. Retain subparagraph below only if sealant installation is not critical.
  - 6. Testing will not be required if joint-sealant manufacturers submit joint preparation data that are based on previous testing of current sealant products for adhesion to, and compatibility with, joint substrates and other materials matching those submitted.
- D. Product Testing: Obtain test results for "Product Test Reports" Paragraph in Division 1 "Submittal Procedures" Article from a qualified testing agency based on testing of current sealant products within a 36-month period preceding the commencement of the Work.
  - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to Project site in original unopened containers or bundles with labels indicating manufacturer, product name and designation, color, expiration date, pot life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multi-component materials.
- B. Store and handle materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, high or low temperatures, contaminants, or other causes.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
  - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
  - 2. When joint substrates are wet or covered with frost.
  - 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
  - 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products listed in other Part 2 articles.

### 2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backing materials, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Coal-Tar sealants shall not be used in parking or paved areas.
- C. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

### 2.3 COLD-APPLIED JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Type SL Silicone Sealant for Concrete and Asphalt: Single-component, low-modulus, neutral-curing, self-leveling silicone sealant complying with ASTM D 5893 for Type SL.
  - 1. Available Products:
    - a. Crafcoc Inc.; RoadSaver Silicone SL.
    - b. Dow Corning Corporation; 890-SL.
    - c. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; SOF-Seal.

### 2.4 JOINT-SEALANT BACKER MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide joint-sealant backer materials that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by joint-sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Round Backer Rods for Cold- and Hot-Applied Sealants: ASTM D 5249, Type 1, of diameter and density required to control sealant depth and prevent bottom-side adhesion of sealant.

### 2.5 PRIMERS

- A. Primers: Product recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where indicated or where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install backer materials of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
  - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of backer materials.
  - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear backer materials.
  - 3. Remove absorbent backer materials that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
  - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  - 2. Completely fill recesses provided for each joint configuration.
  - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- E. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
  - 1. Remove excess sealants from surfaces adjacent to joint.

2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
- F. Provide joint configuration to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.
  - G. Provide recessed joint configuration for silicone sealants of recess depth and at locations indicated.

#### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealants or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

#### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately and replace with joint sealant so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from the original work.

END OF SECTION 32 13 73

## SECTION 32 17 23 - PAVEMENT MARKINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes painted markings applied to asphalt and concrete pavement.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 321216 "Asphalt Paving" for placement of asphalt pavement surfaces.
  - 2. Section 321313 "Concrete Paving" for placement of concrete pavement surfaces.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Review methods and procedures related to marking pavement including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Pavement aging period before application of pavement markings.
    - b. Review requirements for protecting pavement markings, including restriction of traffic during installation period.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.
- B. Shop Drawings: For pavement markings.
  - 1. Indicate pavement markings, colors, lane separations, defined parking spaces, and dimensions to adjacent work.
  - 2. Indicate, with international symbol of accessibility, spaces allocated for people with disabilities.
- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified; on rigid backing, 8 inches square.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of MDSHA for pavement-marking work.
  - 1. Measurement and payment provisions and safety program submittals included in standard specifications do not apply to this Section.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 40 deg F for alkyd materials 55 deg F for water-based materials, and not exceeding 95 deg F .

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Aexcel Inc.
  2. Benjamin Moore & Co.
  3. Color Wheel Paints & Coatings.
  4. Columbia Paint & Coatings.
  5. Conco Paints.
  6. Coronado Paint; Division of INSL-X Products Corporation.
  7. Diamond Vogel Paints.
  8. Dunn-Edwards Corporation.
  9. Ennis Traffic Safety Solutions, Inc.
  10. Frazee Paint.
  11. General Paint.
  12. Kwal Paint.
  13. M.A.B. Paints.
  14. McCormick Paints.
  15. Miller Paint.
  16. Parker Paint Mfg. Co. Inc.
  17. PPG Industries.
  18. Pratt & Lambert.
  19. Rodda Paint Co.
  20. Rohm and Haas Company; a subsidiary of The Dow Chemical Company.
  21. Scott Paint Company.
  22. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).

### 2.2 PAVEMENT-MARKING PAINT

- A. Pavement-Marking Paint: Alkyd-resin type, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with AASHTO M 248, Type N; colors complying with FS TT-P-1952, with drying time of less than 45 minutes.
1. Color: White, handicapped blue, yellow.
  2. Used for symbols, roadway lane striping, and stop bars.
- B. Pavement-Marking Paint: MPI #32, alkyd traffic-marking paint, with drying time of less than 45 minutes.
1. Color: White

2. Used for parking lot space striping.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that pavement is dry and in suitable condition to begin pavement marking according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Proceed with pavement marking only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 PAVEMENT MARKING

- A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.
- B. Allow paving to age for a minimum of 30 days before starting pavement marking.
- C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils.
  1. Apply graphic symbols and lettering with paint-resistant, die-cut stencils, firmly secured to pavement. Mask an extended area beyond edges of each stencil to prevent paint application beyond the stencil. Apply paint so that it cannot run beneath the stencil.
  2. Broadcast glass beads uniformly into wet markings at a rate of 6 lb/gal.

#### 3.3 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect pavement markings from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.
- B. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 32 17 23

## SECTION 33 05 10 – UTILITY STRUCTURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Precast Structures.
  - 2. Utility Structure Accessories.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Accessories for structures.
- B. Shop Drawings for Precast or Factory-Fabricated Underground Utility Structures: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, attachments to other work, and accessories, including the following:
  - 1. Reinforcement details.
  - 2. Frame and cover design and structure frame support rings.
  - 3. Ladder details.
  - 4. Grounding details.
  - 5. Dimensioned locations and sizes of all openings and sumps.
  - 6. Joint details.
- C. Product Certificates: For concrete and steel used in precast concrete structures, comply with ASTM C 858.
- D. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer and testing agency.
- E. Source quality-control reports.
- F. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with IEEE C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store precast concrete underground utility structures at Project site as recommended by manufacturer to prevent physical damage. Arrange so identification markings are visible.
- B. Lift and support precast concrete units only at designated lifting or supporting points.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of structures with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field.
- B. Coordinate elevations of pipe and conduit entrances into structures with final locations and profiles of those utilities as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations from those indicated as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that pipe and conduit runs drain to structures, and as approved by Architect.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRECAST STRUCTURES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Christy Concrete Products.
  - 2. Cretex Concrete Products West, Inc.; Riverton Division.
  - 3. Oldcastle Precast Group.
  - 4. Oldcastle Precast Inc.; Utility Vault Division.
  - 5. Utility Concrete Products, LLC.
- B. Comply with ASTM C 858, with structural design loading as specified on the drawings, and with interlocking mating sections, complete with accessories, hardware, and features.
  - 1. Openings: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching pipes and conduits with the manufacturer's standard allowance, vertically and horizontally, to accommodate alignment variations.
    - a. Openings shall be framed with at least two additional No. 4 steel reinforcing bars in concrete around each opening.
- C. Joint Sealant: Asphaltic-butyl material with adhesion, cohesion, flexibility, and durability properties necessary to withstand maximum hydrostatic pressures at the installation location with the ground-water level at grade.

### 2.2 UTILITY STRUCTURE ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Bilco Company (The).
  - 2. Campbell Foundry Company.
  - 3. McKinley Iron Works.
  - 4. Neenah Foundry Company.
  - 5. Oldcastle Precast Group.
  - 6. Oldcastle Precast Inc.; Utility Vault Division.
- B. Ferrous metal hardware, where indicated, shall be hot-dip galvanized complying with ASTM A 153 and A 123.
- C. Structure Frames, Covers, and Chimney Components: Comply with structural design loading specified for structure.

1. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof, gray cast iron complying with ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 30B with milled cover-to-frame bearing surfaces; diameter as indicated on the drawings.
    - a. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
  2. Cover Legend: Cast in. Retained to suit system.
  3. Structure Chimney Components: Precast concrete rings with dimensions matched to those of roof opening.
    - a. Mortar for Chimney Ring and Frame and Cover Joints: Comply with ASTM C 270, Type M, except for quantities less than 2.0 cu. ft. where packaged mix complying with ASTM C 387/C 387M, Type M, may be used.
- D. Expansion Anchors for Installation after Concrete Is Cast: Zinc-plated, carbon-steel-wedge type with stainless-steel expander clip with 1/2-inch bolt, 5300-lbf rated pullout strength, and minimum 6800-lbf rated shear strength.
- E. Sealing Compound: Nonhardening, safe for contact with human skin and workable at temperatures as low as 35 deg F. Capable of withstanding temperature of 300 deg F without slump and adhering to clean surfaces of plastic ducts, metallic conduits, conduit coatings, concrete, masonry, lead, cable sheaths, cable jackets, insulation materials, and common metals.
- F. Fixed Structure Ladders: Arranged for attachment to wall and floor of structure. Ladder and mounting brackets and braces shall be fabricated from hot-dip galvanized steel.
- G. Cover Hooks: Heavy duty, designed for lifts 60 lbf required.
- 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Test and inspect precast concrete utility structures according to ASTM C 1037.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 CORROSION PROTECTION

- A. Aluminum shall not be installed in contact with earth or concrete.

#### 3.2 UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURE APPLICATION

- A. Structures: Precast concrete.
1. Units Located in Roadways and Other Deliberate Traffic Paths by Heavy or Medium Vehicles: H-20 structural load rating according to AASHTO HB 17.
  2. Units Not Located in Deliberate Traffic Paths by Heavy or Medium Vehicles: H-10 load rating according to AASHTO HB 17.

#### 3.3 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with Division 31 Section "Earth Moving," but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.
- B. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation and reestablish original grades unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.

- C. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching. Comply with Division 2 Sections "Lawns and Grasses" and "Exterior Plants."
- D. Cut and patch existing pavement in the path of underground ducts and utility structures according to Division 2 Section "Cement Concrete Pavement."

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE STRUCTURES

- A. Precast Concrete Handhole and Structure Installation:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM C 891 unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Install units level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting ducts to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
  - 3. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- B. Elevations:
  - 1. Structure Roof: Install with rooftop at least 15 inches below finished grade.
  - 2. Structure Frame: In paved areas and trafficways, set frames flush with finished grade. Set other structure frames 1 inch above finished grade.
- C. Drainage: Install drains in bottom of structures where indicated. Coordinate with drainage provisions indicated.
- D. Structure Access: Circular opening in structure roof; sized to match cover size.
  - 1. Structures with Fixed Ladders: Offset access opening from structure centerlines to align with ladder.
  - 2. Install chimney, constructed of precast concrete collars and rings to support frame and cover and to connect cover with structure roof opening. Provide moisture-tight masonry joints and waterproof grouting for cast-iron frame to chimney.
- E. Fixed Structure Ladders: Arrange to provide for safe entry with maximum clearance from other items in structures.
- F. Field-Installed Bolting Anchors in Structures: Do not drill deeper than 3-7/8 inches for anchor bolts installed in the field.
- G. Warning Sign: Install "Confined Space Hazard" warning sign on the inside surface of each structure cover.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground utility structures.
  - 2. Test structure grounding to ensure electrical continuity of grounding and bonding connections. Measure and report ground resistance as specified in Division 16 Section "Grounding and Bonding."
- B. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 CLEANING

A. Clean internal surfaces of structures, including sump. Remove foreign material.

END OF SECTION 33 05 10

SECTION 33 41 00 – STORM UTILITY DRAINAGE PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipe and fittings.
  - 2. Nonpressure transition couplings.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Section 01 “Temporary Facilities and Controls” for temporary utilities, temporary construction and support facilities, temporary security and protection facilities, and temporary erosion and sedimentation control procedures.
  - 2. Section 01 “Closeout Submittals” for preparation of record documents identifying and accurately locating final storm drainage infrastructure.
  - 3. Section 31 “Earth Moving” for soil materials, excavating, backfilling, and site grading.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- B. HDPE: High Density Polyethylene Pipe
- C. RCP: Reinforced Concrete Pipe

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Gravity-Flow, Non-pressure, Drainage-Piping Pressure Rating: At least equal to system test pressure. Pipe joints shall be water tight.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of pipe and fitting, from manufacturer.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store plastic pipe and fittings in direct sunlight.
- B. Protect pipe, pipe fittings, and seals from dirt and damage.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

#### A. PVC Water-Service Piping:

1. Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40 PVC, with plain ends for solvent-cemented joints.
2. Fittings: ASTM D 2466, Schedule 40 PVC, socket type.

### 2.2 NONPRESSURE TRANSITION COUPLINGS

#### A. Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition coupling, for joining underground nonpressure piping. Include ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

#### B. Sleeve Materials:

1. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.

### 2.3 HIGH DENSITY POLYETHYLENE PIPE AND FITTINGS

#### A. HDPE Pipe and Fittings, NPS 6 and Larger: Corrugated and smooth lined pipe and fittings manufactured in accordance with requirements of ASTM F 2306, latest edition. Pipe shall be type S with a full circular cross section, with an outer corrugated pipe wall and a smooth inner wall. Fittings shall be water-tight.

#### B. HDPE corrugated and smooth lined pipe shall be manufactured from virgin PE compounds which conform with the requirements of cell classification 335444C as defined and described in ASTM D 3350.

#### C. Minimum pipe stiffness at five percent deflection shall be as described in ASTM F 2306, Section 6.3 when tested in accordance with ASTM D 2412.

#### D. HDPE pipe and fittings shall be supplied by the same Manufacturer. Pipe and fittings from different Manufacturers shall not be interchanged.

### 2.4 CONCRETE

#### A. General: Cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318, ACI 350/350R, and the following:

1. Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II.
2. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33, sand.
3. Coarse Aggregate: ASTM C 33, crushed gravel.
4. Water: Potable.

#### B. Portland Cement Design Mix: 3500 psi minimum, with 0.45 maximum water/cementitious materials ratio.

1. Reinforcing Fabric: ASTM A 185, steel, welded wire fabric, plain.
2. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60 deformed steel.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

#### A. Excavation, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. General Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and details indicate general location and arrangement of underground storm drainage piping. Location and arrangement of piping layout take into account design considerations. Install piping as indicated, to extent practical. Where specific installation is not indicated, follow piping manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install piping beginning at low point, true to grades and alignment indicated with unbroken continuity of invert. Place bell ends of piping facing upstream. Install gaskets, seals, sleeves, and couplings according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
- C. Install gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:
  - 1. Install piping pitched down in direction of flow.
  - 2. Install piping NPS 6 and larger with restrained joints at tee fittings and at changes in direction. Use corrosion-resistant rods, pipe or fitting manufacturer's proprietary restraint system, or cast-in-place concrete supports or anchors.
  - 3. Install piping with 36-inch minimum cover, unless noted otherwise on the plans.
  - 4. Install PVC water-service piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 1668.

### 3.3 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join gravity-flow, nonpressure drainage piping according to the following:
  - 1. Join PVC cellular-core piping according to ASTM D 2321 and ASTM F 891 for solvent-cemented joints.

### 3.4 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Place cast-in-place concrete according to ACI 318.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect nonpressure, gravity-flow drainage piping in building's storm building drains specified in Section 22 14 13 "Facility Storm Drainage Piping."
- B. Make connections to existing piping and underground manholes.
  - 1. Use commercially manufactured wye fittings for piping branch connections. Remove section of existing pipe; install wye fitting into existing piping; and encase entire wye fitting, plus 6-inch overlap, with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3500 psi.
  - 2. Make branch connections from side into existing piping, NPS 4 to NPS 20. Remove section of existing pipe, install wye fitting into existing piping, and encase entire wye with not less than 6 inches of concrete with 28-day compressive strength of 3500 psi.
  - 3. Protect existing piping, manholes, and structures to prevent concrete or debris from entering while making tap connections. Remove debris or other extraneous material that may accumulate.
- C. Pipe couplings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Materials and their installation are specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving." Arrange for installation of green warning tape directly over piping and at outside edge of underground structures.

1. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping.

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect interior of piping to determine whether line displacement or other damage has occurred. Inspect after approximately 24 inches of backfill is in place, and again at completion of Project.

1. Submit separate reports for each system inspection.
2. Defects requiring correction include the following:
  - a. Alignment: Less than full diameter of inside of pipe is visible between structures.
  - b. Deflection: Flexible piping with deflection that prevents passage of ball or cylinder of size not less than 92.5 percent of piping diameter.
  - c. Damage: Crushed, broken, cracked, or otherwise damaged piping.
  - d. Infiltration: Water leakage into piping.
  - e. Exfiltration: Water leakage from or around piping.
3. Replace defective piping using new materials, and repeat inspections until defects are within allowances specified.
4. Reinspect and repeat procedure until results are satisfactory.

- B. Test new piping systems, and parts of existing systems that have been altered, extended, or repaired, for leaks and defects.

1. Do not enclose, cover, or put into service before inspection and approval.
2. Test completed piping systems according to requirements of MDE.
3. Schedule tests and inspections by the Owner with at least 24 hours' advance notice.
4. Submit separate report for each test.
5. Gravity-Flow Storm Drainage Piping: Test according to requirements of MDE, UNI-B-6, and the following:
  - a. Exception: Piping with water tight joints.
  - b. Test plastic piping according to ASTM F 1417.

- C. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.

- D. Replace leaking piping using new materials, and repeat testing until leakage is within allowances specified.

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping of dirt and superfluous materials. Flush with water.

END OF SECTION 33 41 00

**Attachment G**  
**Capacity Summary Sheet**



**Attachment H**

**Sample Request for Financial Proposal**

**Pricing Form**

**Testing & Inspection Services - Phase III - Ocean City Convention Center - Expansion & Improvements**

Offeror's Name:

**Offerors must provide Labor Rates and Unit Prices for each category in this form even if there are no quantities stated.**

ALL Labor Rates and Unit Prices shall be completed (all cells highlighted in yellow) and include all costs for overhead, profit, travel, meals, all applicable Federal, State, Municipal or local taxes, bonds, labor, fringes, materials, equipment, insurance and any other incidentals related to the completion of the Work, and shall remain firm for the period of the contract.

	Labor Rate/Hour (Regular Time)	Unit Prices	Estimated Quantity	Estimated Fee
--	--------------------------------	-------------	--------------------	---------------

**LABOR RATES**

Field Technician - Soils			480	\$0.00
Field Technician – Asphalt			106	\$0.00
Field Technician – Concrete			420	\$0.00
Field Technician – Masonry			576	\$0.00
Environmental Inspector			96	\$0.00
Structural Steel Inspector			48	\$0.00
Roofing Inspector				\$0.00
Fireproofing Inspector			96	\$0.00
Visual Weld Inspector (Structural Steel Source)			48	\$0.00
Visual Weld Inspector (Structural Steel field Quality Control)			96	\$0.00
Principal Engineer			48	\$0.00
Project Manager			77	\$0.00
<b>Total Estimated Labor Hours</b>			2,091	\$0.00

**TEST PROCEDURES:**

Soil Density Test – Laboratory (each), see technician rate				\$0.00
In Place Backfill Density Test (each), see technician rate				\$0.00
In Place Asphalt Density Test (each), see technician rate				\$0.00
Soil Bearing Capacity Test (each), see technician rate				\$0.00
Soil Proctor and Classification Test- Field (each)			6	\$0.00
Soil Classification (lab)(each)			6	\$0.00
Soil sampling and analysis to determine petroleum contamination (each)			6	\$0.00
Concrete Compression Test (each cylinder)			120	\$0.00

\* included in labor hours above

Windsor Probe (set of 3)			\$0.00
Impact Hammer Test (each)			\$0.00
Floor Flatness Test (each)		12	\$0.00
Concrete Core and Test (each)			\$0.00
Mortar and Grout Compressive Strength Test (per set)		36	\$0.00
Masonry Prism Test (Composite)(each)			\$0.00
Grout Prism Test (each), see grout test per set		60	\$0.00
Bracing, Needling, & Shoring Compliance (per inspection)			\$0.00
Structural Steel Source Quality Control - Liquid Penetrant Weld Inspection (per test)		6	\$0.00
Structural Steel Source Quality Control - Magnetic Particle Weld Inspection (per test)		6	\$0.00
Structural Steel Source Quality Control - Ultrasonic Weld Inspection (per test)		6	\$0.00
Structural Steel Source Quality Control - Radiographic Weld Inspection (per test)		6	\$0.00
Structural Steel Source Quality Control - Radiographic Mobilization (each)		6	\$0.00
Structural Steel Field Quality Control - Liquid Penetrant Weld Inspection (per test)		6	\$0.00
Structural Steel Field Quality Control - Magnetic Particle Weld Inspection (per test)		6	\$0.00
Structural Steel Field Quality Control - Ultrasonic Weld Inspection (per test)		6	\$0.00
Structural Steel Field Quality Control - Radiographic Weld Inspection (per test)		6	\$0.00
Structural Steel Field Quality Control - Radiographic Mobilization (each)		1	\$0.00
Intumescent Paint Inspection (each)		4	\$0.00
Roofing - Electronic Leak Detection (per 100 sf)		450	\$0.00
Fireproofing Density Test (each)		30	\$0.00
Fireproofing Adhesion/Cohesion Test (each)		30	\$0.00
Radiographic (X-RAY) Test (each)		4	\$0.00

\* included in labor hours above

Precondition Survey (lump sum - electronic report)			1	\$0.00
Crack Gauge (per gauge/installation)			4	\$0.00
Crack Gauge Monitoring (per visit for all gauges)			6	\$0.00
Total Estimated Test Procedures			830	\$0.00

Estimated Fee (Labor and Tests)				\$0.00
Fee Adjustment (if applicable)				\$0.00
Not-to-Exceed Fee				\$0.00
Owner's Contingency				\$20,000.00
Estimated Contract Amount				\$20,000.00

Signature and Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Instructions and Assumptions to be considered before completing the Pricing Form: The Offeror has been provided with copies of the Project's specifications and drawings to determine a not to exceed fee. In the Pricing Form, MSA has provided its best estimate of quantities associated with this Project. The Owner's contingency included in the Pricing Form is for services outside the current scope of the Project, based on the specifications and drawings provided. The Pricing Form includes an adjustment fee, if necessary to account for discrepancies between the estimated fee (per Pricing Form) and Offeror's estimate of the fee. For the section related to Test Procedures only, if the Offeror deems that these tests are already incorporated in the estimated labor hours, Offerors can state \$0 in the estimate fee field.

Offerors MUST NOT revise the quantities set forth in the Pricing Form. Structural steel fabricator is located within 50 miles of Baltimore City. Pre-condition Survey is priced for a single structure. This worksheet contains formulas to determine total cost. Firms are expected to validate these calculations and provide accurate numbers for total fees.

Clarifications:

**Attachment I**  
**Anticipated Project Schedule**

**ATTACHMENT I**

**ANTICIPATED PROJECT SCHEDULE**

**Phase III - Ocean City Convention Center Expansion and Improvements**

Design Start – ***In progress***

Design Completion – December 2019

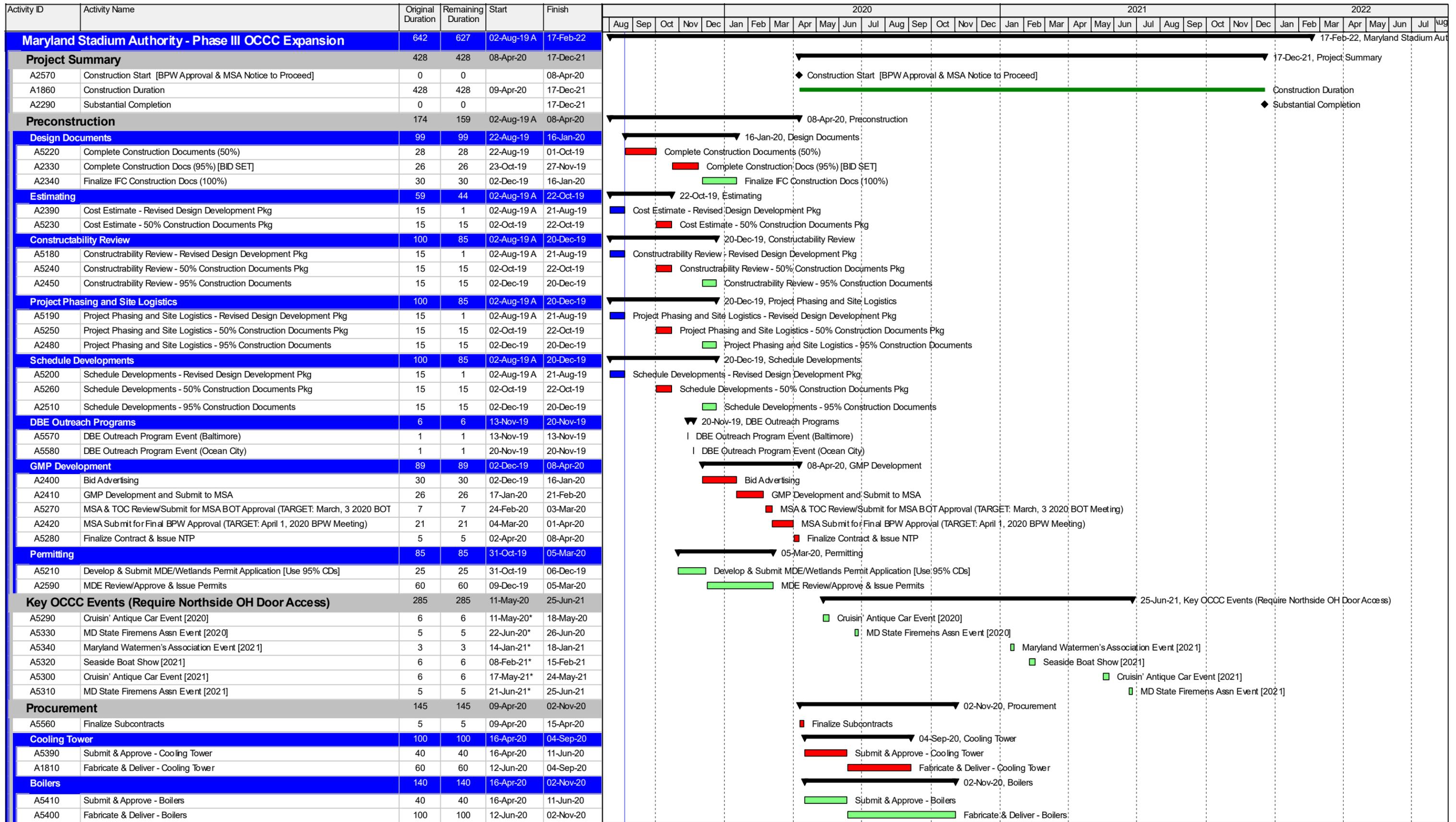
Construction Start – April 2020

Construction Completion – December 2021

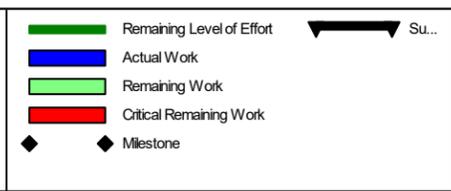
Occupancy – December 2021

Post Occupancy – January 2022 through December 2023

Construction Manager's DRAFT Baseline Schedule attached for use and reference

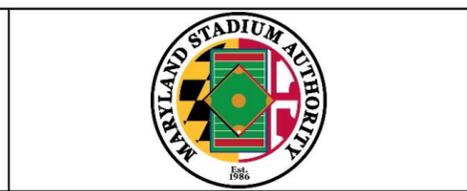


Project ID: 171211  
 Print Date: 27-Aug-19 12:09  
 Data Date: 21-Aug-19  
 Project Start: 02-Aug-17  
 Substantial Completion: 17-Dec-21  
 Page: 1 of 7



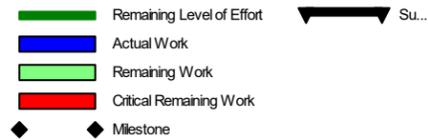
**Maryland Stadium Authority - Phase III OCCC Expansion**  
 PreCon Schedule Update - 27-Aug-19

*\*\*NOTE: Preliminary Summary Construction Schedule based on 8/1/19 VE Set. Final Construction Baseline Schedule pending complete design & GMP development.\*\**



Activity ID	Activity Name	Original Duration	Remaining Duration	Start	Finish	2020												2021												2022											
						Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul
<b>Chillers</b>		140	140	16-Apr-20	02-Nov-20	02-Nov-20, Chillers																																			
A5430	Submit & Approve - Chillers	40	40	16-Apr-20	11-Jun-20	Submit & Approve - Chillers																																			
A5420	Fabricate & Deliver - Chillers	100	100	12-Jun-20	02-Nov-20	Fabricate & Deliver - Chillers																																			
<b>Hot Water Coils</b>		140	140	16-Apr-20	02-Nov-20	02-Nov-20, Hot Water Coils																																			
A5520	Submit & Approve - Hot Water Coils	40	40	16-Apr-20	11-Jun-20	Submit & Approve - Hot Water Coils																																			
A5530	Fabricate & Deliver - Hot Water Coils	100	100	12-Jun-20	02-Nov-20	Fabricate & Deliver - Hot Water Coils																																			
<b>Air Handlers (RTUs)</b>		140	140	16-Apr-20	02-Nov-20	02-Nov-20, Air Handlers (RTUs)																																			
A5510	Submit & Approve - Air Handlers (RTUs)	40	40	16-Apr-20	11-Jun-20	Submit & Approve - Air Handlers (RTUs)																																			
A5500	Fabricate & Deliver - Air Handlers (RTUs)	100	100	12-Jun-20	02-Nov-20	Fabricate & Deliver - Air Handlers (RTUs)																																			
<b>Structural Steel (Loading Dock)</b>		60	60	16-Apr-20	10-Jul-20	10-Jul-20, Structural Steel (Loading Dock)																																			
A5470	Submit & Approve - Structural Steel (Loading Dock) **EXPEDITED**	20	20	16-Apr-20	13-May-20	Submit & Approve - Structural Steel (Loading Dock) **EXPEDITED**																																			
A5460	Fabricate & Deliver - Structural Steel (Loading Dock) **EXPEDITED**	40	40	14-May-20	10-Jul-20	Fabricate & Deliver - Structural Steel (Loading Dock) **EXPEDITED**																																			
<b>Structural Steel (Bayfront Gallery)</b>		80	80	16-Apr-20	07-Aug-20	07-Aug-20, Structural Steel (Bayfront Gallery)																																			
A5450	Submit & Approve - Structural Steel (Bayfront)	40	40	16-Apr-20	11-Jun-20	Submit & Approve - Structural Steel (Bayfront)																																			
A5440	Fabricate & Deliver - Structural Steel (Bayfront)	40	40	12-Jun-20	07-Aug-20	Fabricate & Deliver - Structural Steel (Bayfront)																																			
<b>Structural Steel (Hall C)</b>		120	120	16-Apr-20	05-Oct-20	05-Oct-20, Structural Steel (Hall C)																																			
A5490	Submit & Approve - Structural Steel (Hall C)	40	40	16-Apr-20	11-Jun-20	Submit & Approve - Structural Steel (Hall C)																																			
A5480	Fabricate & Deliver - Structural Steel (Hall C)	80	80	12-Jun-20	05-Oct-20	Fabricate & Deliver - Structural Steel (Hall C)																																			
<b>Overhead Doors (Loading Dock)</b>		100	100	16-Apr-20	04-Sep-20	04-Sep-20, Overhead Doors (Loading Dock)																																			
A5540	Submit & Approve - Overhead Doors (Loading Dock)	40	40	16-Apr-20	11-Jun-20	Submit & Approve - Overhead Doors (Loading Dock)																																			
A5550	Fabricate & Deliver - Overhead Doors (Loading Dock)	60	60	12-Jun-20	04-Sep-20	Fabricate & Deliver - Overhead Doors (Loading Dock)																																			
<b>Construction</b>		415	415	09-Apr-20	30-Nov-21	30-Nov-21, Construction																																			
<b>Site</b>		49	49	09-Apr-20	17-Jun-20	17-Jun-20, Site																																			
<b>Mobilization</b>		7	7	09-Apr-20	17-Apr-20	17-Apr-20, Mobilization																																			
A1850	Mobilize to Site	2	2	09-Apr-20	10-Apr-20	Mobilize to Site																																			
A4340	Temporary Power	5	5	13-Apr-20	17-Apr-20	Temporary Power																																			
A4360	Office Fit Out	5	5	13-Apr-20	17-Apr-20	Office Fit Out																																			
A5120	Project Controls and Benchmarks	5	5	13-Apr-20	17-Apr-20	Project Controls and Benchmarks																																			
A5090	Start of Construction	0	0		17-Apr-20	Start of Construction																																			
<b>Bus Loop</b>		42	42	20-Apr-20	17-Jun-20	17-Jun-20, Bus Loop																																			
A2820	Electrical & Irrigation Demo @ Bus Loop	5	5	20-Apr-20	24-Apr-20	Electrical & Irrigation Demo @ Bus Loop																																			
A2830	Site Demo @ Bus Loop	5	5	22-Apr-20	28-Apr-20	Site Demo @ Bus Loop																																			
A2850	Storm Drain & Fire Hydrant	2	2	27-Apr-20	28-Apr-20	Storm Drain & Fire Hydrant																																			
A2840	Grading	5	5	29-Apr-20	05-May-20	Grading																																			
A2880	New Electrical & Irrigation	8	8	06-May-20	15-May-20	New Electrical & Irrigation																																			
A2860	Curb & Gutter	5	5	12-May-20	18-May-20	Curb & Gutter																																			
A4500	Base Paving New Parking Area	2	2	19-May-20	20-May-20	Base Paving New Parking Area																																			
A2870	Sidewalks	4	4	21-May-20	27-May-20	Sidewalks																																			
A2890	Mill Paving in Existing Lot	5	5	28-May-20	03-Jun-20	Mill Paving in Existing Lot																																			
A2900	Paving & Striping	10	10	04-Jun-20	17-Jun-20	Paving & Striping																																			
<b>Renovations</b>		283	283	20-Apr-20	02-Jun-21	02-Jun-21, Renovations																																			
<b>Loading Dock &amp; 2nd Floor - Area C</b>		143	143	20-Apr-20	09-Nov-20	09-Nov-20, Loading Dock & 2nd Floor - Area C																																			
A3210	Site Demo - Loading Dock	5	5	20-Apr-20	24-Apr-20	Site Demo - Loading Dock																																			
A3230	Temporary Partitions - Loading Dock	2	2	20-Apr-20	21-Apr-20	Temporary Partitions - Loading Dock																																			
A3240	Interior Demolition - Loading Dock	10	10	20-Apr-20	01-May-20	Interior Demolition - Loading Dock																																			
A4680	Temporary Cooling Tower - Loading Dock	20	20	27-Apr-20	22-May-20	Temporary Cooling Tower - Loading Dock																																			
A5100	Storm Drain Relocation - Loading Dock	5	5	27-Apr-20	01-May-20	Storm Drain Relocation - Loading Dock																																			
A2790	Grading @ Loading Dock	5	5	04-May-20	08-May-20	Grading @ Loading Dock																																			
A3220	Storm Drain New - Loading Dock	5	5	04-May-20	08-May-20	Storm Drain New - Loading Dock																																			
A2780	Water & Sewer	15	15	11-May-20	01-Jun-20	Water & Sewer																																			
A3260	FRP Footings - Loading Dock	5	5	11-May-20	15-May-20	FRP Footings - Loading Dock																																			
A3270	FRP Walls - Loading Dock	10	10	18-May-20	01-Jun-20	FRP Walls - Loading Dock																																			
A2800	Curb & Gutter / Sidewalks	5	5	02-Jun-20	08-Jun-20	Curb & Gutter / Sidewalks																																			
A3250	Underslab Plumbing - Loading Dock	3	3	02-Jun-20	04-Jun-20	Underslab Plumbing - Loading Dock																																			

Project ID: 171211  
Print Date: 27-Aug-19 12:09  
Data Date: 21-Aug-19  
Project Start: 02-Aug-17  
Substantial Completion: 17-Dec-21  
Page: 2 of 7



### Maryland Stadium Authority - Phase III OCCC Expansion PreCon Schedule Update - 27-Aug-19

**\*\*NOTE: Preliminary Summary Construction Schedule based on 8/1/19 VE Set. Final Construction Baseline Schedule pending complete design & GMP development.\*\***













**Attachment J**

**Sample Contract**

To be issued via addendum

**Attachment K**  
**Experience Form**

**Request for Proposals (RFP) - Testing and Inspection Services - Phase III - Ocean City Convention Center - Expansion and Improvements**

**Project Experience**

	<b>PROJECT #1</b>	<b>PROJECT #2</b>	<b>PROJECT #3</b>
Project Name and Location			
Owner Name, Contact Person, Email & Phone Number			
Offeror's Role in the Project			
Project Type (New, Renovation, etc.)			
Gross Square Footage of Project			
Project Delivery Method (CMR, CM Agency, DB, Negotiated GMP, GC, etc.)			
Similarities/Relevance to this Project			
Original Completion Date			
Actual Completion Date			
Reason(s) for Variance (if applicable)			
Original Project Construction Cost			
Final Construction Cost			
Reason(s) for Cost Difference (if applicable)			
Offeror's Original Contract Amount			
Offeror's Final Contract Amount			
Reason(s) for Cost Difference (if applicable)			